

04/2023

Outdoor Living ► Patio awnings

# Patio awnings

Technical data

*Der SonnenLichtManager*





## Technical data

### Valid from 01.04.2023

The publication of this document supersedes all previous corresponding documents. Our general terms and conditions (GTC) can be viewed and downloaded on our homepage at <http://www.warema.de/agb>.

We will gladly provide our information in printed form. Please note that in the event of updates, the online version is binding. Particular care was taken in producing the text and graphics in this documentation. In spite of this, we cannot accept liability for any existing (printing) errors, mistakes or the consequences thereof. Changes and deviations from the technical specifications and product presentations are possible as a result of the individual structural conditions.

Our products are individual or made-to-measure items and therefore cannot be exchanged or returned.

## Safety instructions

For detailed information please see the Tech-Data or the installation and operating instructions.

## © Copyright 2023 / Copyright notice

All contents of this publication, particularly texts, photographs and graphics, are protected by copyright. Unless expressly stated otherwise, the copyright is held by WAREMA. All rights, including reproduction, publication, editing and translation remain reserved.

WAREMA and the WAREMA logo are trademarks of WAREMA Renkhoff SE. Other logos used here are brands or trademarks of their respective owners.

## Legal details

WAREMA International GmbH  
Dillberg 14  
97828 Marktheidenfeld  
Germany

# Contents

Interesting facts about planning.....	9	Planning
Colours and finishes.....	10	
General information.....	12	
Articulated arm/cassette awnings Terrea.....	15	Terrea
Cassette awnings Terrea.....	17	
Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open.....	75	
Articulated arm awnings Terrea, half open.....	109	
Details.....	123	
Pergola awnings Perea.....	125	Perea
Pergola awning Perea P20.....	126	
Pergola awning Perea P40.....	140	
Pergola awning Perea P40 WeatherEdition.....	156	
Pergola awning Perea P60.....	172	
Pergola awning Perea P70.....	188	
Patio side screens.....	201	Patio side screens
Patio side screen 390.....	202	
Conservatory awnings Climara.....	211	Climara
Under-glass conservatory awnings Climara.....	213	
Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass.....	275	
Supplementary accessories.....	325	Supplementary accessories
WMS Wind sensor and WMS sensor system.....	326	
Smart Living packages.....	330	
Valance roller blind.....	332	
Lighting.....	342	
Radiant heater.....	350	
Multicube set.....	354	
Protection against light rain - Perea P20 and P40.....	356	
Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance.....	366	
PVC viewing field.....	374	
GranTex with easyZIP guidance.....	382	
Patio frame.....	390	
Turning gear.....	402	
Printed fabrics.....	404	
Stretcher frame.....	406	
Protective fabric cover.....	412	
Balcony fabrics.....	413	
Components.....	417	Components
Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara.....	418	
Guide rails for window awnings.....	456	
Wall connection profiles.....	459	
Awning collection.....	460	
Fabrics.....	464	
Valance.....	469	
Drive variants.....	471	Drive variants
Motor.....	472	
Manual operation.....	500	
Standards.....	503	Standards



## Navigating the document



### Ordering from WAREMA

In this document you will find for each product a link to the relevant **Order form**. Open the link or copy it into your browser. Alternatively, you can order directly via **myWAREMA** by opening the link or entering the article number after logging in. Please make sure to register as a customer first.

### Drawings

Download your desired drawings: in the digital version of this document, start the download by clicking on the PDF or DWG symbol.

### WAREMA tools

#### Sun Shading Planner

Use our free planning programme to plan your sun protection systems

<https://sonnenschutzplaner.de>

#### Collection Assistant

Experience the range of colours and fabrics of the WAREMA collections

<https://www.warema.de/Tools/Kollektionsberater.php>

#### Fastener Assistant

Calculate the individual suitable and permissible fixing materials

<https://www.warema.com/fastener-assistant>

#### Console Planner

Calculate the exact position of the console, tensile force and wind resistance class

<https://konsolenplaner.warema.de/v2/>

#### Dimensions Assistant

Conveniently and easily determine the slat stack height

<https://my.warema.com/v2/dimensionAssistant?page=0>

### More TechData

#### External venetian blinds

<https://docs.warema.com/1.1686.2>

#### Roller shutters

<https://docs.warema.com/1.1706.5>

#### Window awnings

<https://docs.warema.com/1.1718.8>

#### Insect and pollen protection

<https://docs.warema.com/1.1798.6>

#### Integrated fall protection VisioNeo

<https://docs.warema.com/1.1739.1>

#### Patio awnings

<https://docs.warema.com/1.1744.7>

#### Internal sun shading systems and glare control

<https://docs.warema.com/1.1809.9>

#### Black-out blinds

<https://docs.warema.com/1.1763.8>

#### Control systems

<https://docs.warema.com/1.1847.1>



## WAREMA Update

### Patio awnings

#### News and Highlights

##### Awning collection

###### Always the right themed world at hand

The WAREMA awning collection has been optimised to give you a helpful and robust visual at hand when talking to customers. The modular structure according to colour and themed worlds makes it easier for you to offer specific advice. The new fabric qualities expand the diversity and range of uses of the previous collection.



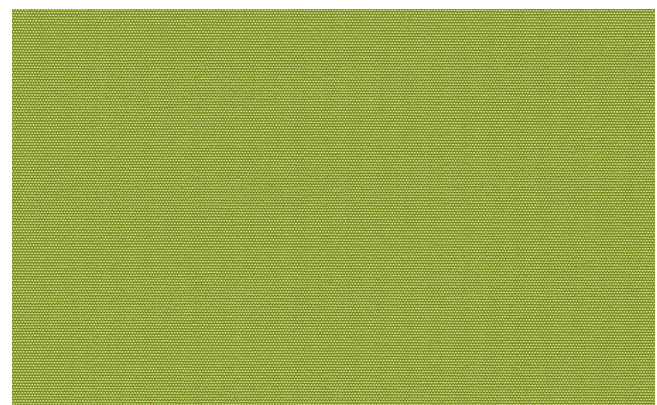
##### Starlight Blue

###### Sustainable recycled fabric

The innovative sun protection fabric developed for outdoor use consists of 85% recycled PET and is GRS certified. The manufacturing process for the Starlight Blue awning fabric uses 90% less water and 60% less energy, and produces 45% less CO<sub>2</sub>.

Can be used for

- Patio awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Conservatory awnings Climara
- Lamaxa L50 Tex



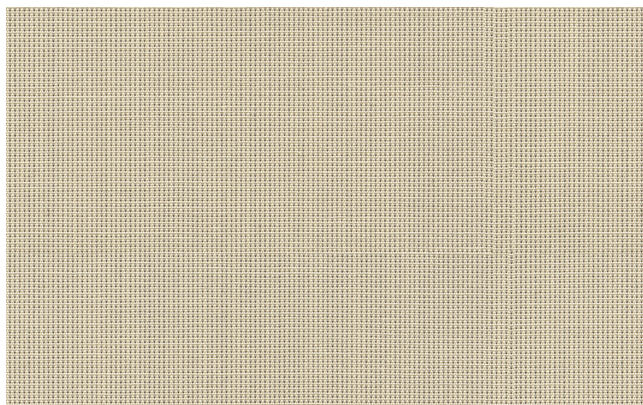
## Sunvas Perla FR

### Reliable high-tech fabric

With a water column of 1,000 mm, the space beneath the pergola awning with Sunvas Perla FR remains dry even in light rain. Made of polyester with a unilateral, transparent coating, the awning fabric is flame retardant (B-s1, d0), and dirt, water and oil repellent.

Can be used for

- Pergola awnings Perea P60
- Pergola awnings Perea P40 WeatherEdition



Planning

Terrea

## WMS dimmer for Design radiant heaters

### Controllable warmth

Hot or cold? Just right! The Design radiant heater in combination with the WMS dimmer provides pleasant warmth on cool days or in the evening hours. The dimmer can be used to set different heating levels for controlling the heat output from the radiant heater.



Perea

Patio side screens

## Discontinued products

- Horizontal awning H1
- Horizontal awning H3
- Solar drive - Terrea
- Motor with additional collapsible crank - Terrea
- Stoffqualitäten
  - Perfora acrylic
  - Rainproof textile W36
  - Sunprint

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards





# Contents

## Interesting facts about planning

Colours and finishes.....	10
WAREMA Colour World for powder-coated aluminium components.....	10
Colour categories.....	10
Finish qualities.....	11
General information.....	12
Manufacturing tolerances, patio awnings.....	12
Awning fabrics.....	12
Run time of conservatory awnings.....	13

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Interesting facts about planning Colours and finishes

### WAREMA Colour World for powder-coated aluminium components

#### Guide rails, guide profiles, cover panels, boxes and frames

Choose the perfect shade from a wide range of attractive powder colours for guide rails, guide profiles, cover panels, boxes and frames. The classification into categories helps you to find the right colour for your individual sun shading system. Coating differing from that of the WAREMA Colour World upon request.

More information:

[www.warema.com/colour-world](http://www.warema.com/colour-world)

Individual collections and colour charts for external venetian blind slats, roller shutter curtains and fabrics.

### Colour categories

#### Highlight

12 RAL and DB basic colours form the foundation of the WAREMA Colour World. The Highlight category includes selected standard colours which align with the latest colour trends.

#### Variation

50 more RAL basic colours are compiled under Variation.

#### Individual

For even more individuality, over 200 more colours complete the WAREMA Colour World.

#### Special version

Special colour shades deviating from the WAREMA colour specification upon request

#### Highlight colours



Colour deviations are due to printing technology

## Finish qualities

With various gloss levels and textures, the appearances of the five finish qualities adapt perfectly to the structural conditions at hand.

The outstanding quality of the coating guarantees long-term satisfaction with our products. Independently tested by the German Quality Association for the Coating of Building Materials (GSB).

The surface coating with a chrome-free pretreatment complies with the GSB AL 631 directive.

The aluminium parts are delivered in "GSB Sea-Proof" as standard.



### Satin finish

Satin finish has a slightly glossy surface with a smooth finish. The texture is light-proof and weather-proof.



### Matt

Matt has a smooth matt finish. The texture is light-proof and weather-proof.



### Highly weather-resistant matt

The highly weather-resistant surface with smooth matt finish is particularly suited to regions with severe weather conditions. It is colour-fast, has a long-lasting uniform finish, does not chalk and is extremely weather-proof.



### Fine texture

Fine texture is particularly light- and weather-proof. Perfect for large, powder-coated elements.



### Highly weather-resistant fine texture

The highly weather-resistant finish in fine texture is particularly suited to regions with severe weather conditions. It is colour-fast, has a long-lasting uniform finish, does not chalk, maintains the glossy finish and is extremely weather-proof. Perfect for large, powder-coated elements which are exposed to weather all year round.

### Special version

Alternatively, WAREMA offers anodised finishes for numerous extruded aluminium parts.

- natural colours anodised
  - C0
- anodised in colour
  - C31 Light bronze
  - C32 Pale bronze
  - C33 Medium bronze
  - C34 Dark bronze
  - C35 Black

The anodised shades are shown in the anodisation colour chart.



## Interesting facts about planning

### General information

### Manufacturing tolerances, patio awnings

Perfection is in the detail - no wonder, then, that WAREMA sees even the minor details as paramount: each product is manufactured with millimetre precision according to the customer's requirements. Please note that when manufacturing to this degree of precision, production-related deviations can occur:

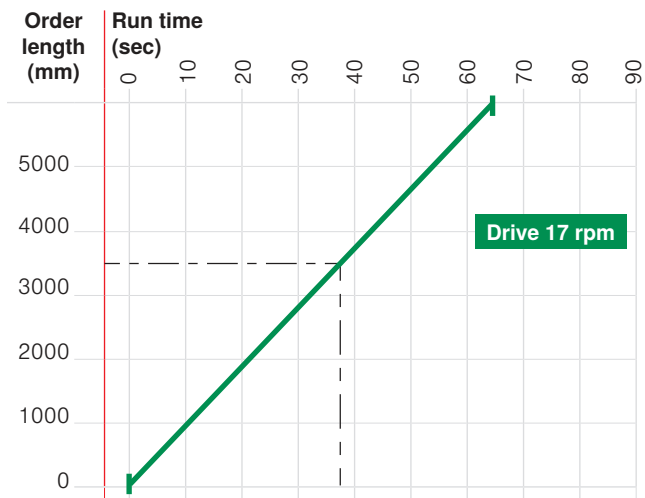
Manufacturing tolerances	Order width B in mm	T in mm	Order height H/length L in mm	T in mm
Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea	$W \leq 6000$	$\pm 5$	All projections	$\pm 40$
	$6000 < W \leq 12000$	$\pm 10$	All projections	$\pm 40$
	$12000 < W \leq 13500$	$\pm 12$	All projections	$\pm 40$
Pergola awnings Perea	$W \leq 2000$	$\pm 1.5$	$H/L \leq 1500$	$\pm 2$
	$2000 < W \leq 4000$	$\pm 2$	$1500 < H/L \leq 2500$	$\pm 3$
	$W > 4000$	$\pm 2.5$	$H/L > 2500$	$\pm 5$
Conservatory awnings Climara	$W \leq 2000$	$\pm 1.5$	$L \leq 1500$	$\pm 2$
	$2000 < W \leq 4000$	$\pm 2$	$1500 < L \leq 2500$	$\pm 3$
	$W > 4000$	$\pm 2.5$	$L > 2500$	$\pm 5$
Fabrics	$W \leq 12500$	$\pm 10$	All projections	$\pm 10$

### Awning fabrics

Awning fabrics are high-performance products. Nevertheless, there are also limits to their perfection, set according to the current state-of-the-art technology and by the environmental protection requirements. Certain fabric characteristics such as wrinkles, chalk effect and waviness, which laypeople occasionally find fault with, may occur in spite of advanced production and processing technology and do not justify any complaints. For more information, please refer to the awning collection and the document "Regulation about the Evaluation of Finished Awning Fabrics" by the Industrieverband Technische Textilien - Rollladen - Sonnenschutz in Mönchengladbach, Germany.

# Run time of conservatory awnings

Run time of conservatory awnings



How to read the diagram:

An awning with order length of 3500 mm and drive speed of 17 rpm has a run time of approx. 38 sec.



# Contents

## Articulated arm/cassette awnings Terrea

Cassette awnings Terrea.....	17	Planning
Cassette awning Terrea 550.....	18	Terrea
Cassette awning Terrea 580.....	28	
Cassette awning Terrea K50.....	40	
Cassette awning Terrea K60.....	50	
Cassette awning Terrea K70.....	66	
Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open.....	75	Terrea
Articulated arm awning Terrea 530.....	76	
Articulated arm awning Terrea 700S.....	86	
Articulated arm awning Terrea G60.....	96	Terrea
Articulated arm awnings Terrea, half open.....	109	
Articulated arm awning Terrea H60.....	110	Perea
Details.....	123	
		Patio side screens
		Climara
		Supplementary accessories
		Components
		Drive variants
		Standards





# Cassette awnings Terrea

Cassette awning Terrea 550.....	18
Cassette awning Terrea 580.....	28
Cassette awning Terrea K50.....	40
Cassette awning Terrea K60.....	50
Cassette awning Terrea K70.....	66

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Cassette awnings Terrea

### Cassette awning Terrea 550

#### Unobtrusive

Compact and elegant: The slender cassette integrates harmoniously into any facade thanks to its flat design.

#### Durable

Robust construction: The cassette optimally protects the fabric and articulated arms - while stable brackets guarantee a secure hold.

#### Universal

Flexible installation: The awning can be installed in both protected and unprotected positions.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	4500 mm
Maximum projection	2500 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036160](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/878203.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Console Planner](#)

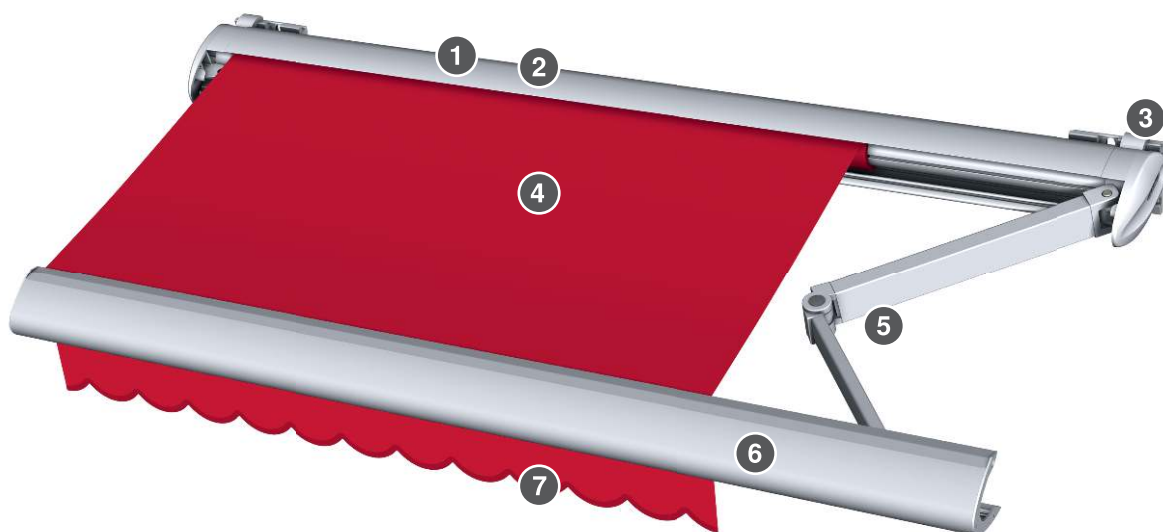
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

Cassette awning Terrea 550



- 1 Cassette
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric

- 5 Articulated arm
- 6 Front rail
- 7 Valance

## Cassette

### Cassette - 550

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	182 mm
Height	108 mm

#### + Side cover

### Cassette side cover - 550

Material	Diecast aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 63 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	63 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - 550

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	102 mm
Height	99 mm

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - 550

Material	Diecast aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Articulated arm

### Articulated arm - 550

#### + Articulated arm profile

### Articulated arm profile, front, 25x44 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	25 mm
Height	44 mm

### Articulated arm profile, rear, 29x55 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	29 mm
Height	55 mm

#### + Articulated arm seat

### Articulated arm seat - 550

Material	Aluminium, permanent mould cast
Surface	Powder-coated

#### + Power transmission

### Flexband

Steel tension spring and flexband with integrated steel strands

## Valance, optional

### Valance - 550/580/K60

Height	95 mm
--------	-------

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Wall connection profile, optional

- Wall connection profile with large rain hood

⊕ see "Wall connection profiles", Page 459

## Console

### Wall console type A - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	140 mm
Height	140 mm
Depth	29 mm

### Wall console type B - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	185 mm
Height	140 mm
Depth	29 mm

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Wall console type C - 550

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	210 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	39 mm

Wall console type A with mounting plate, small (steel).

### Wall console type D - 550

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	330 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	39 mm

Wall console type A with mounting plate, large (steel).

### Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	183 mm
Depth	182 mm

### Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	413 mm
Depth	182 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

## Motor

- Orea WT

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

## Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with integrated limit stop 5.33:1

⊕ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- RAL 9016 traffic white, satin finish
- RAL 9006 white aluminium, satin finish
- W 4916 Anthracite iron mica effect, fine texture

Colours, optional:

- WAREMA Colour World

⊕ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

⊕ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living control package
- WMS Wind sensor
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Patio frame

⊕ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Construction limit values

The indicated construction limit values and number of consoles relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>				
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Soltis 92 / Twilight Pearl + Motor / Crank	Minimum order width	1760 mm	2260 mm	2770 mm
	Maximum order width	4500 mm	4500 mm	4500 mm
All Weather acrylic + Motor / Crank	Minimum order width	1760 mm	2260 mm	
	Maximum order width	4500 mm	4500 mm	
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Control systems</b>				
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Soltis 92 / Twilight Pearl + Motor + WMS Wind sensor	Minimum order width	1830 mm	2330 mm	2840 mm
	Maximum order width	4500 mm	4500 mm	4500 mm
All Weather acrylic + Motor + WMS Wind sensor	Minimum order width	1830 mm	2330 mm	
	Maximum order width	4500 mm	4500 mm	

2500 mm projection not possible with **bonded fabric connection**.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 14 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 40 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

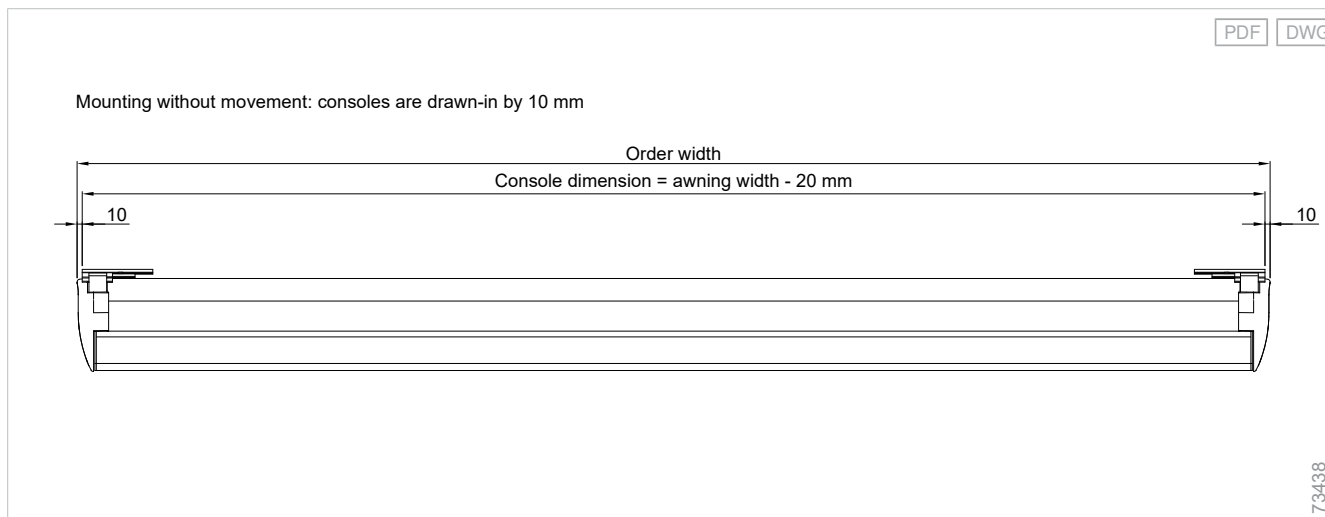
Inclination angle for rain class 2: 25 - 40 °

- Inclination angle with **crank** 5°-25°
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance ±5°.

## Dimension determination

The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

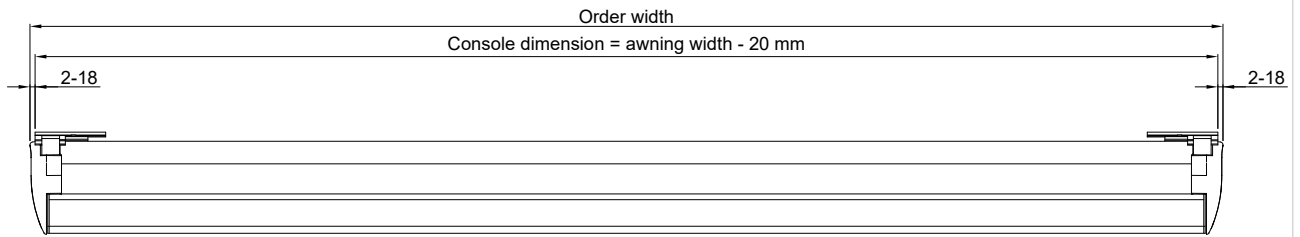
Wall/ceiling installation, ideal position - 550



## Wall and ceiling installation, shifting range of consoles - 550

PDF DWG

For difficult installation situations, the consoles can be shifted by  $\pm 10$  mm



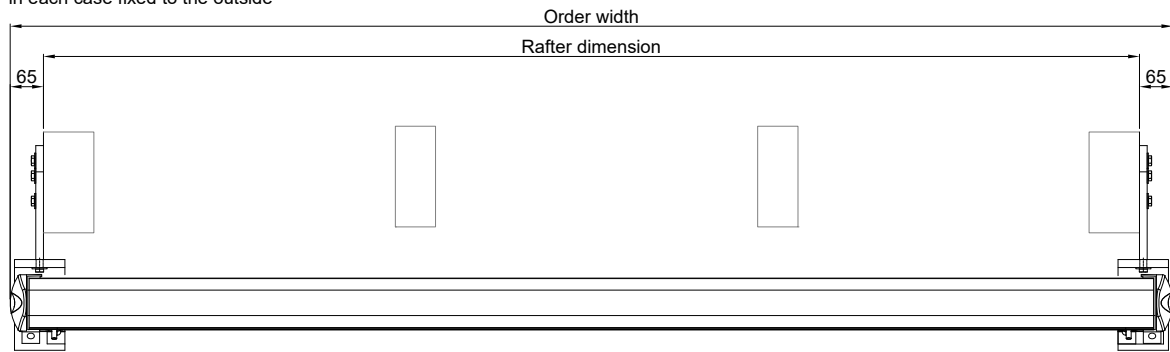
73439

For a perfect position for wall and ceiling installations, the consoles are drawn in by 10 mm.

## Rafter installation, outside fixing - 550

PDF DWG

Rafter installation  
in each case fixed to the outside



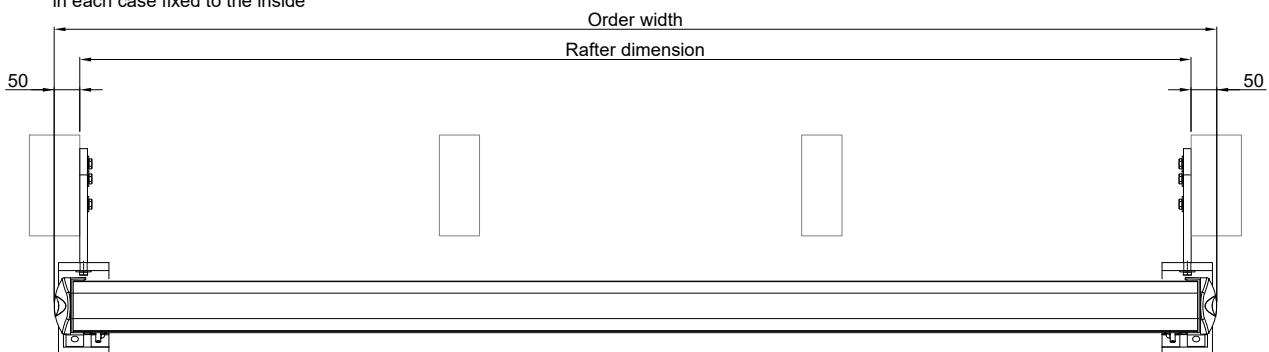
Awning width = width between the outer rafter edges + 130 mm

73440

## Rafter installation, inside fixing - 550

PDF DWG

Rafter installation  
in each case fixed to the inside



Awning width = width between the inner rafter edges + 100 mm

73441

## Quantity determination

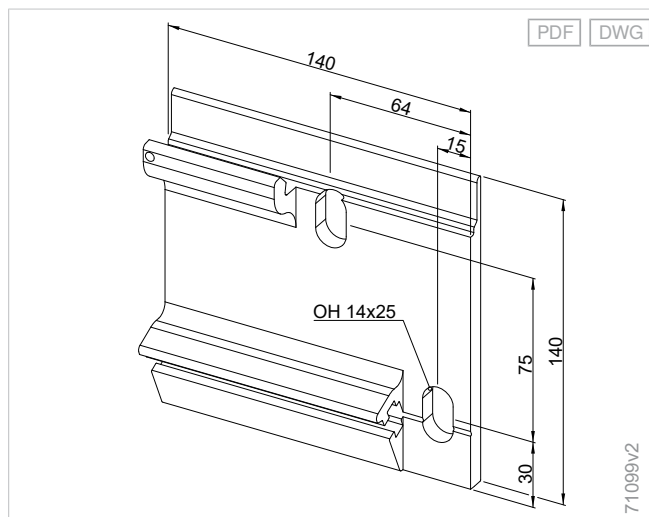
### Number of consoles, individual unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection		
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm
Console/Bracket				
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	0 - 4500 mm	2	2	2

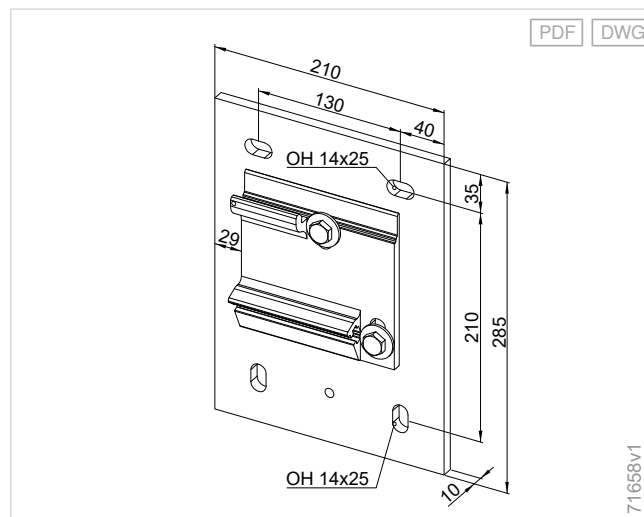
Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

## Details

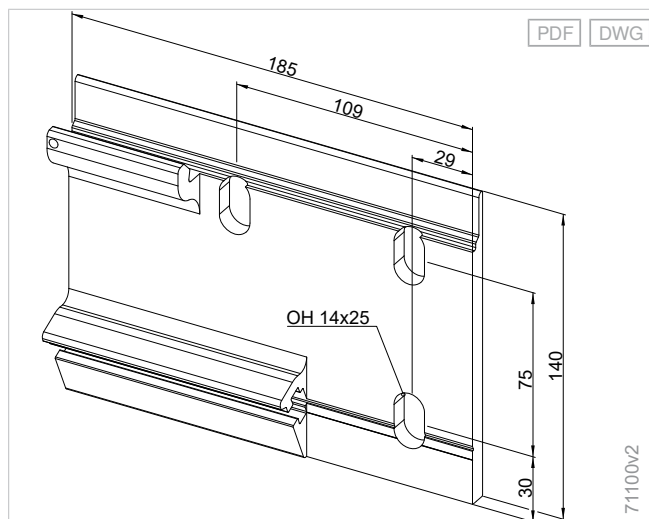
Wall console type A, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



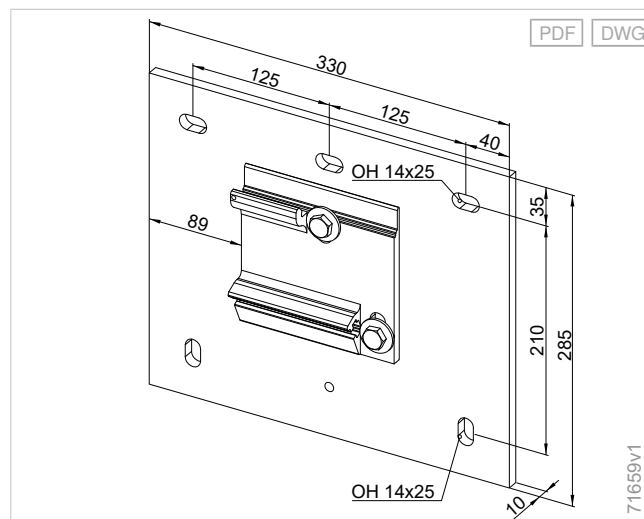
Wall console type C with mounting plate, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550



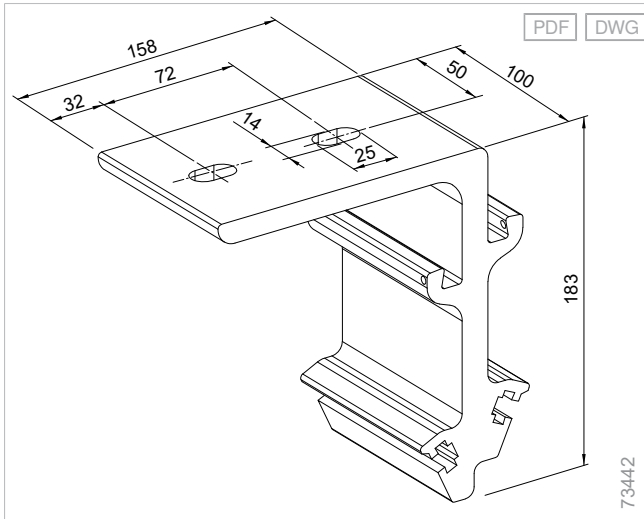
Wall console type B, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



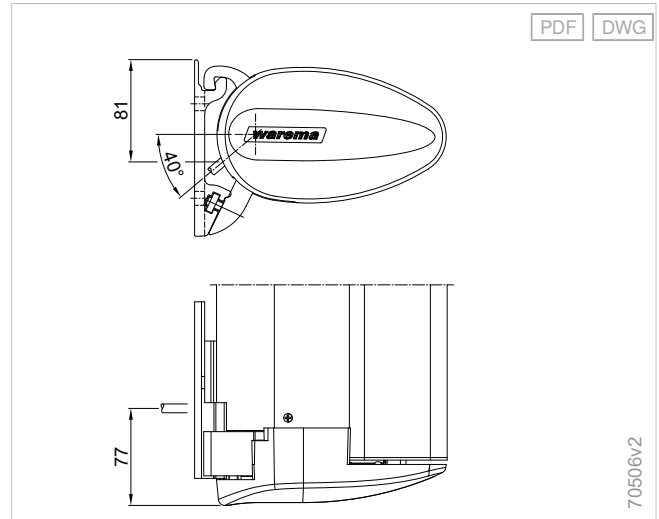
Wall console type D with mounting plate, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550



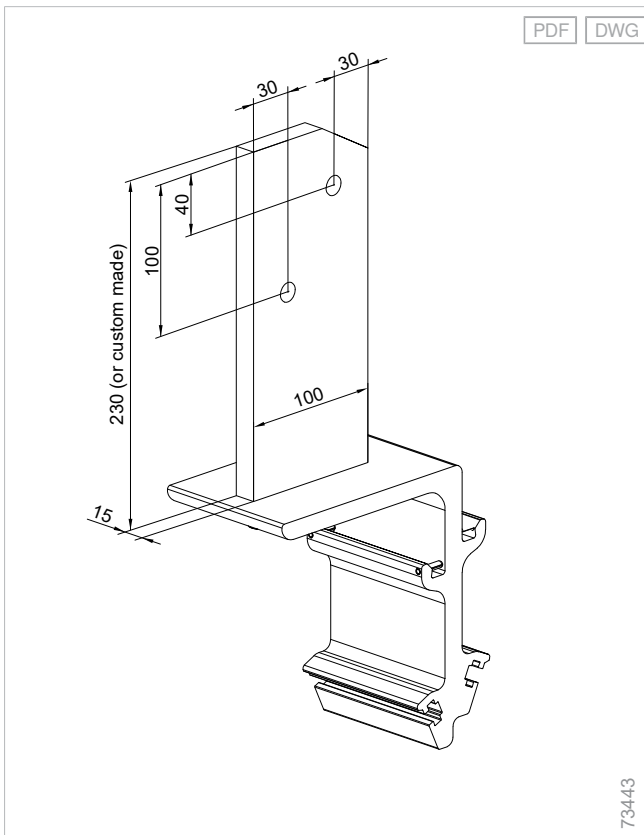
Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P60



Cable exit - 550



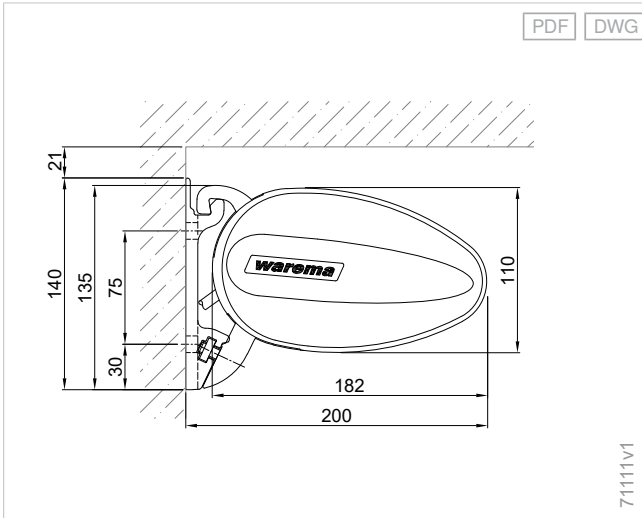
Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P60



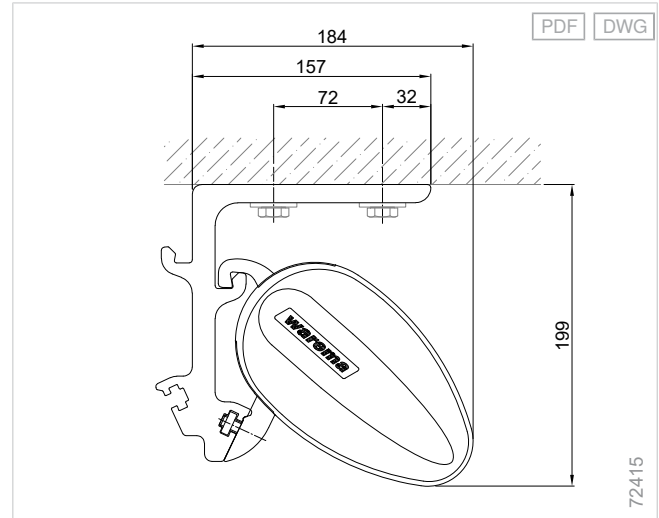


## Mounting examples

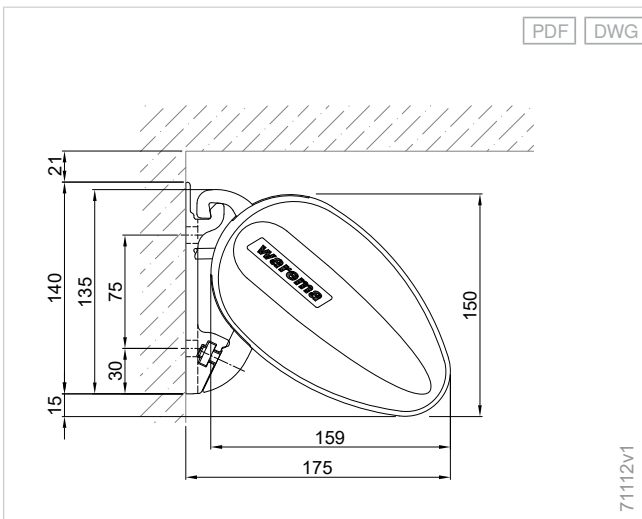
Wall installation, inclination 5° - 550



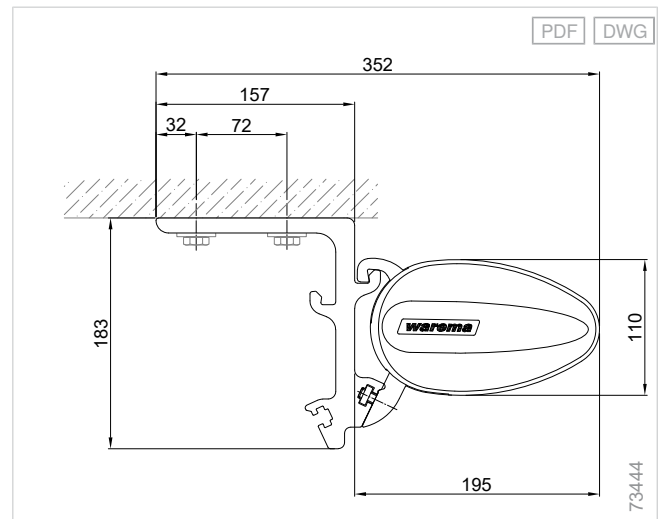
Ceiling installation (front), inclination 40° - 550



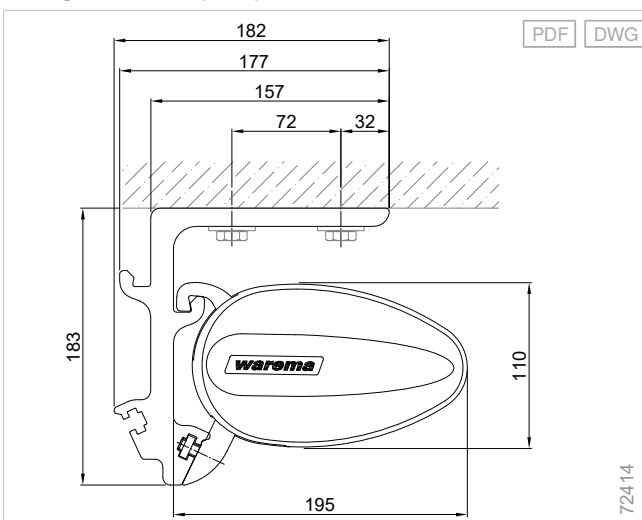
Wall installation, inclination 40° - 550



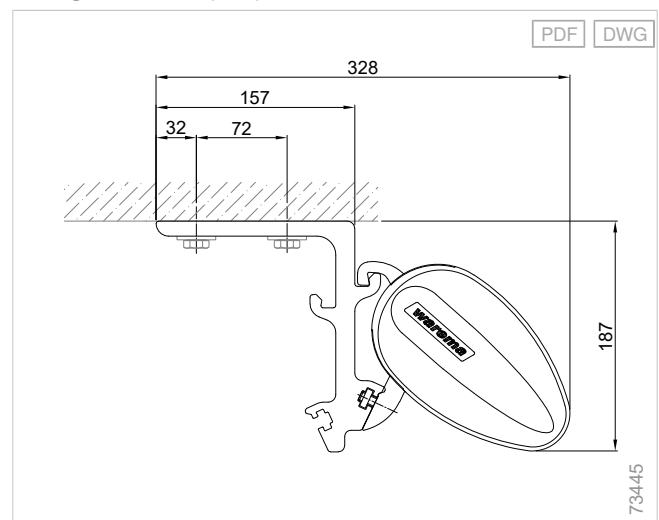
Ceiling installation (rear), inclination 5° - 550



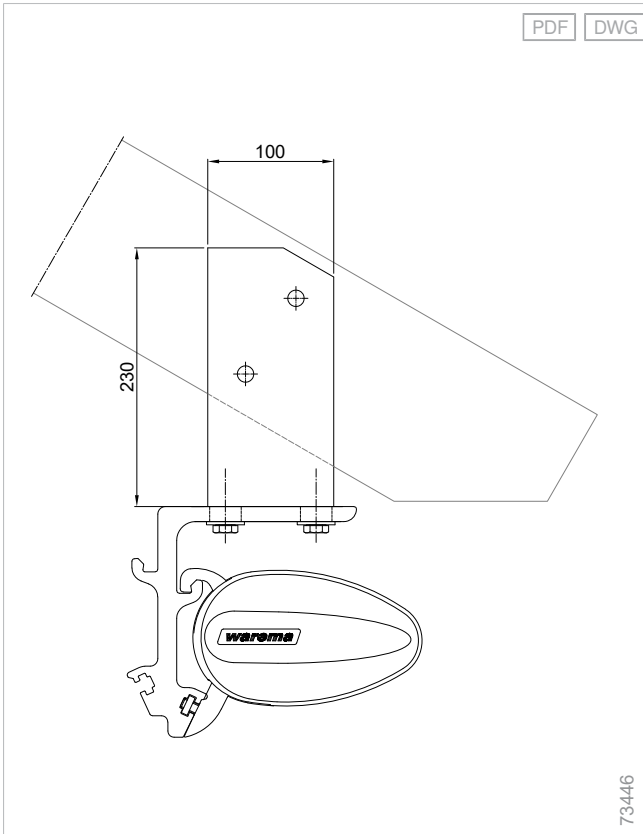
Ceiling installation (front), inclination 5° - 550



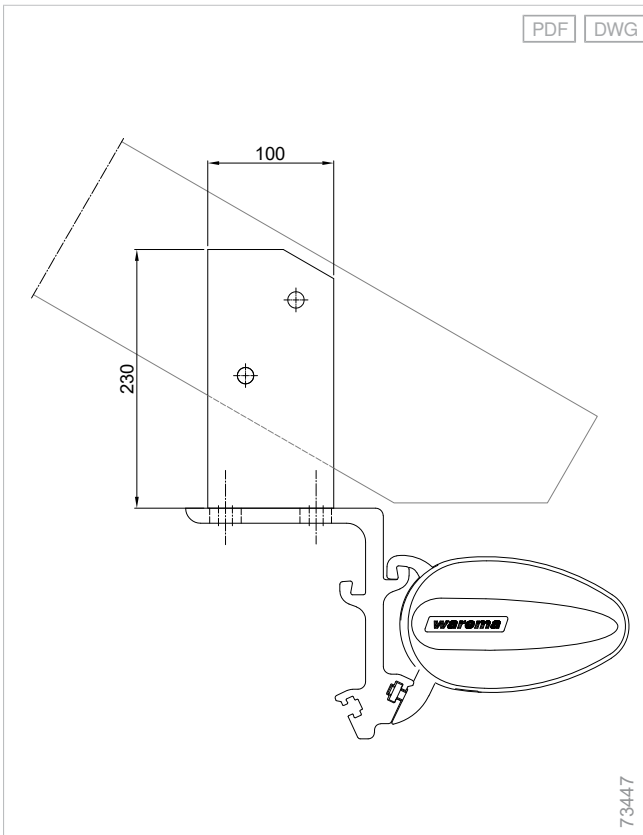
Ceiling installation (rear), inclination 40° - 550



Rafter installation, inclination 0° (front) - 550



Rafter installation, inclination 0° (rear) - 550







## Cassette awnings Terrea

### Cassette awning Terrea 580

#### Glare-free

Less glare from the sun, more privacy: Retractable valance roller blind provides glare-free views, even when the sun is low in the sky, and offers additional visual privacy.

#### Durable

Robust construction: The cassette optimally protects the fabric and articulated arms - while stable brackets guarantee a secure hold.

#### Universal

Installation regardless of weather: The awning can be installed in both protected and unprotected positions.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	5500 mm
Maximum projection	3000 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036159](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/878203.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Console Planner](#)

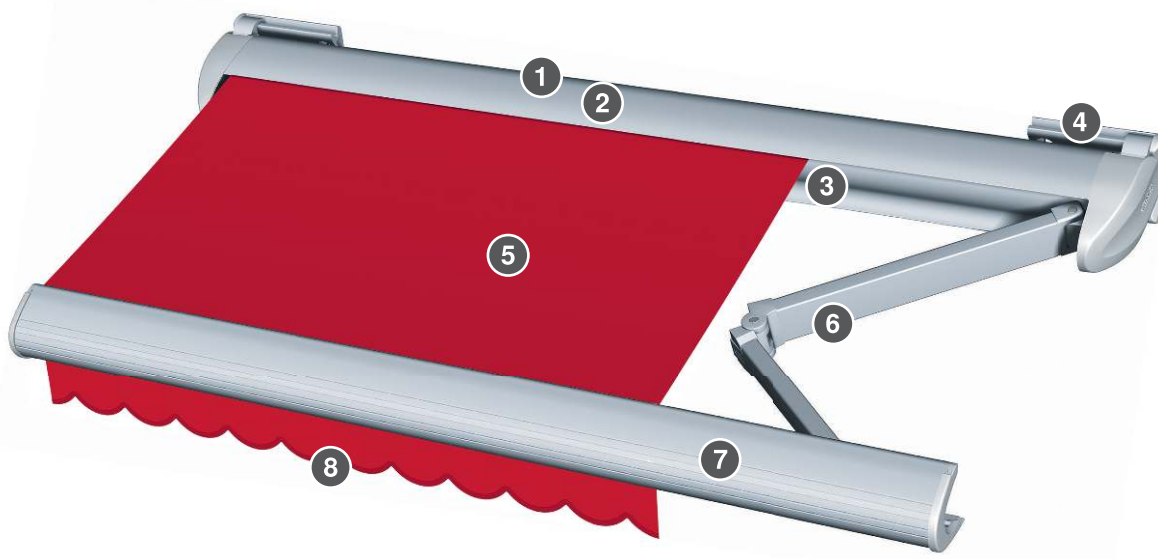
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

Cassette awning Terrea 580



- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric bearing shell
- 4 Console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Valance

## Cassette

### Cassette - 580

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	226 mm
Height	129 mm

### + Side cover

#### Cassette side cover - 580

Material	Plastic, injection moulded part
Surface	Powder-coated

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 78 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	78 mm

## Fabric bearing shell

### Fabric bearing shell - 580

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

## Front rail

### Front rail - 580

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	99 mm
Height	111 mm

### + Side cover

#### Front rail side cover - 580

Material	Diecast aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Front rail, optional

### Front rail - 580 with valance roller blind

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	144 mm
Height	111 mm

### + Side cover

#### Front rail side cover - 580 with valance roller blind

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Articulated arm

### Articulated arm - 580

Depending on the projection or equipment, the small or large **articulated arm profiles** are used.

### + Articulated arm profile

#### Articulated arm profile, front, 25x44 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	25 mm
Height	44 mm

### Articulated arm profile, front, 30x56 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	30 mm
Height	56 mm

### Articulated arm profile, rear, 29x55 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	29 mm
Height	55 mm

### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x67 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	35 mm
Height	67 mm

### + Articulated arm seat

#### Articulated arm seat - 580

Material	Aluminium, permanent mould cast
Surface	Powder-coated

### + Power transmission

#### Flexband

Steel tension spring and flexband with integrated steel strands

### Valance, optional

#### Valance - 550/580/K60

Height	95 mm
--------	-------

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

### Wall connection profile, optional

- Wall connection profile with large rain hood

+ see "Wall connection profiles", Page 459

### Console

#### Wall console type B - 580

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	160 mm
Height	148 mm
Depth	34 mm

#### Wall console type D - 580

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	330 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	44 mm

Wall console type B with mounting plate, large (steel).

### Ceiling console type E - 580

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	150 mm
Height	182 mm
Depth	180 mm

### Console for rafters Type F - 580

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	150 mm
Height	412 mm
Depth	180 mm

### Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

### Motor

- Orea WT

### Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

### Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

### Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with integrated limit stop 3:1

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

### Colours

- RAL 9016 traffic white, satin finish
- RAL 9006 white aluminium, satin finish
- W 4916 Anthracite iron mica effect, fine texture

Colours, optional:

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

### Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living control package
- WMS Wind sensor
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Construction limit values

The indicated construction limit values and number of consoles relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>					
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor / Crank	Minimum order width	1840 mm	2340 mm	2850 mm	3340 mm
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm
Soltis 92 + Motor / Crank	Minimum order width	1840 mm	2340 mm	2850 mm	
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm	
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Control systems</b>					
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + WMS Wind sensor	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2410 mm	2920 mm	3410 mm
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm
Soltis 92 + Motor + WMS Wind sensor	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2410 mm	2920 mm	
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm	
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b>					
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor / Crank + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1840 mm	2340 mm	2850 mm	
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm	
Soltis 92 + Motor / Crank + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1840 mm	2340 mm	2850 mm	
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm	
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories + Control systems</b>					
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Valance roller blind + WMS Wind sensor	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2410 mm	2920 mm	
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm	
Soltis 92 + Motor + Valance roller blind + WMS Wind sensor	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2410 mm	2920 mm	
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm	

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 15 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 40 °

Inclination angle, standard: 5 °

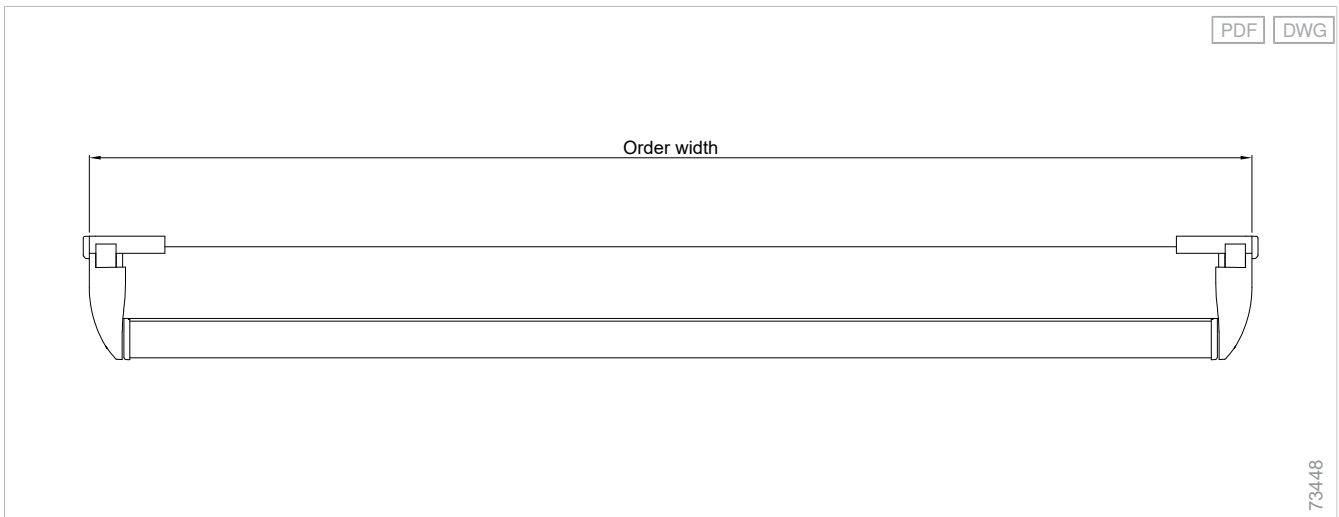
Inclination angle for rain class 2: 25 - 40 °

- Inclination angle with **crank** 5°-25°
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .

## Dimension determination

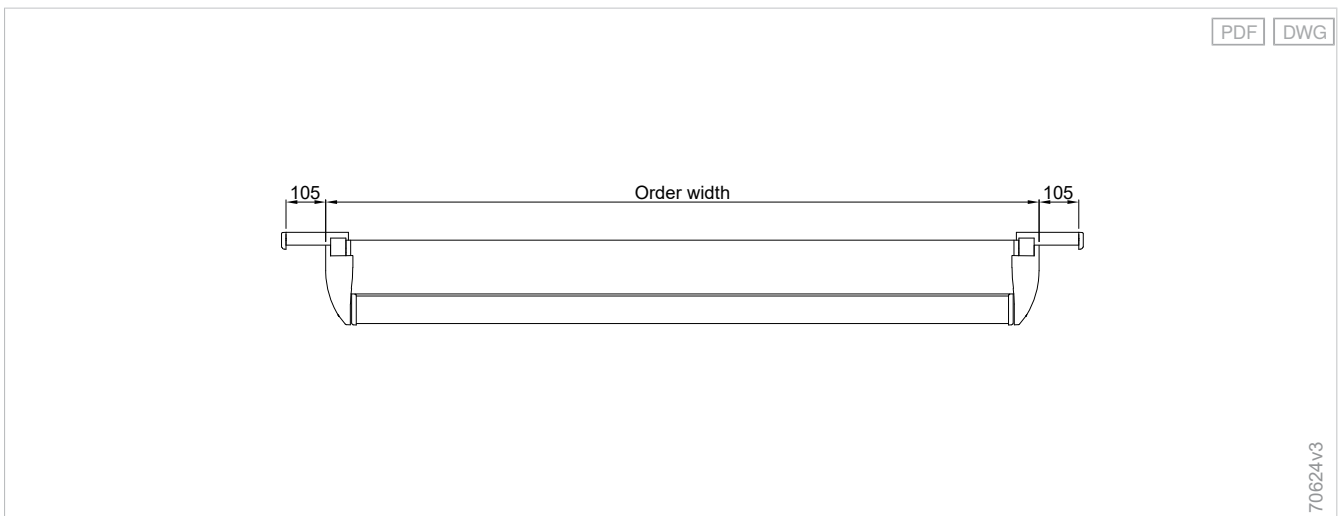
The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

### Perfect position for wall and ceiling installation – 580



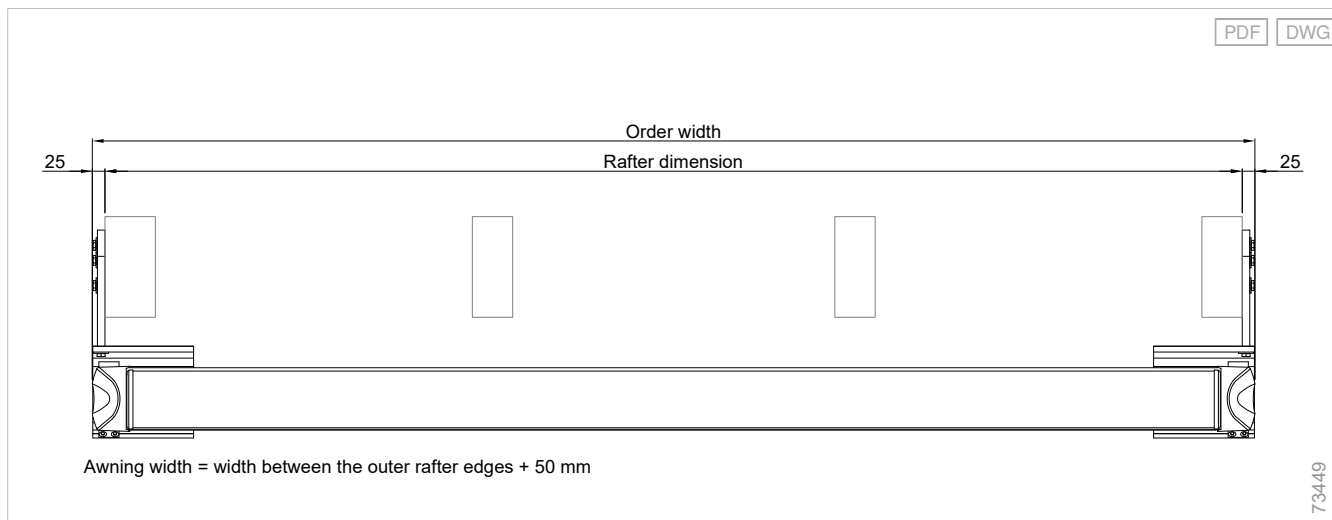
Outer edge of consoles is outer edge of awning.

### Wall and ceiling installation, shifting range of consoles - 580

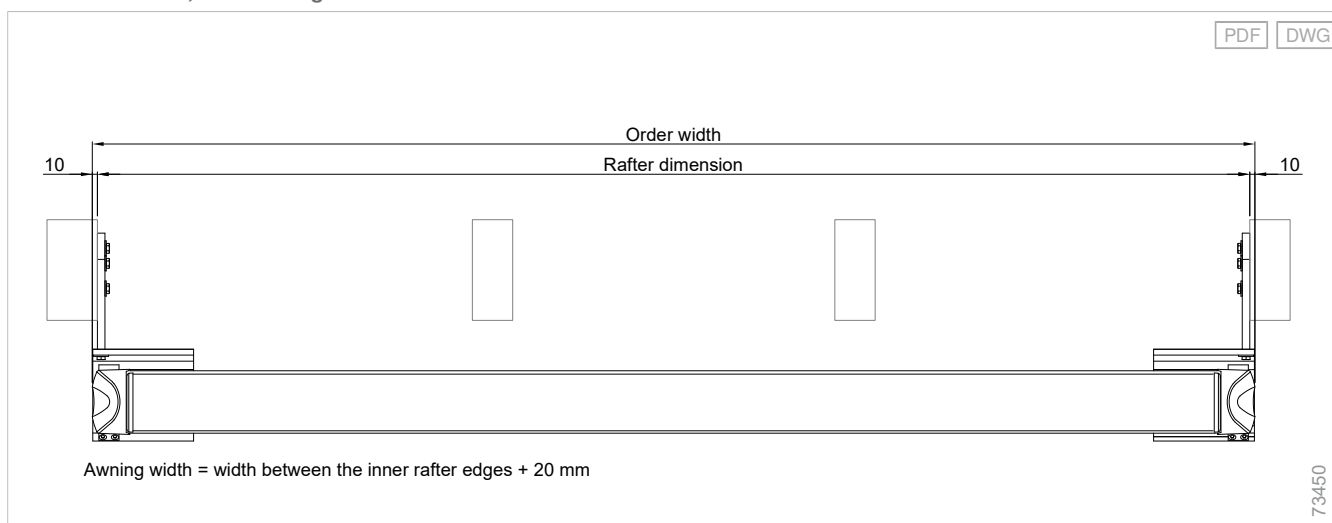




### Rafter installation, outside fixing - 580



### Rafter installation, inside fixing - 580



## Quantity determination

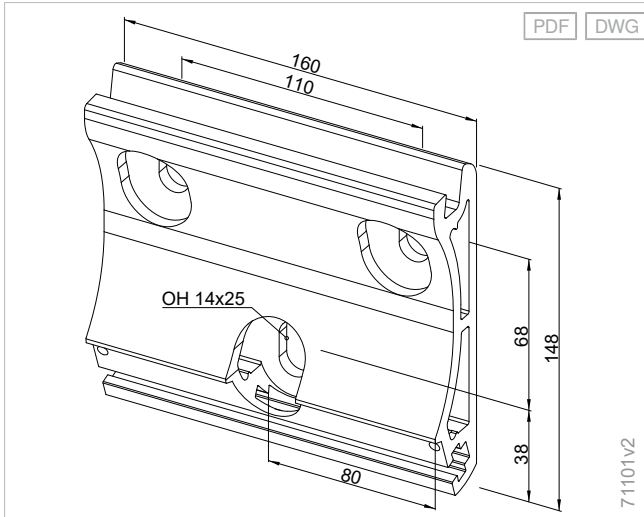
### Number of consoles, individual unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection			
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>					
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	0 - 5500 mm	2	2	2	2
<b>Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories</b>					
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	0 - 5500 mm	2	2	2	

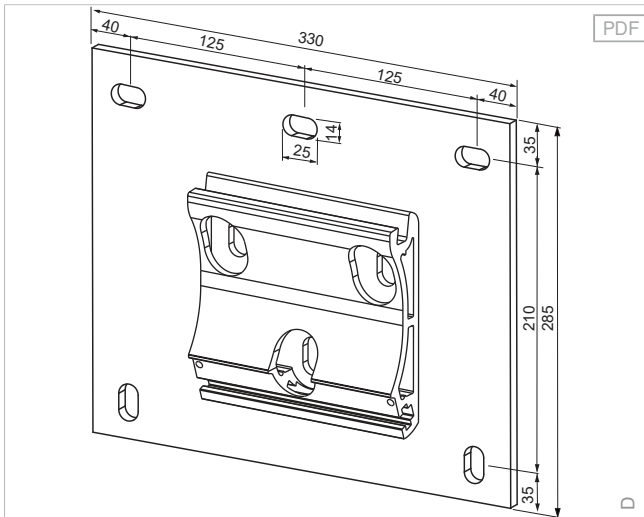
Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

## Details

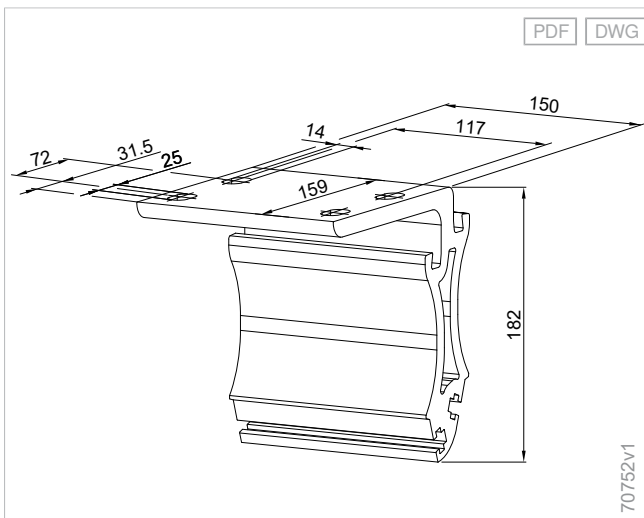
Wall console type B - 580



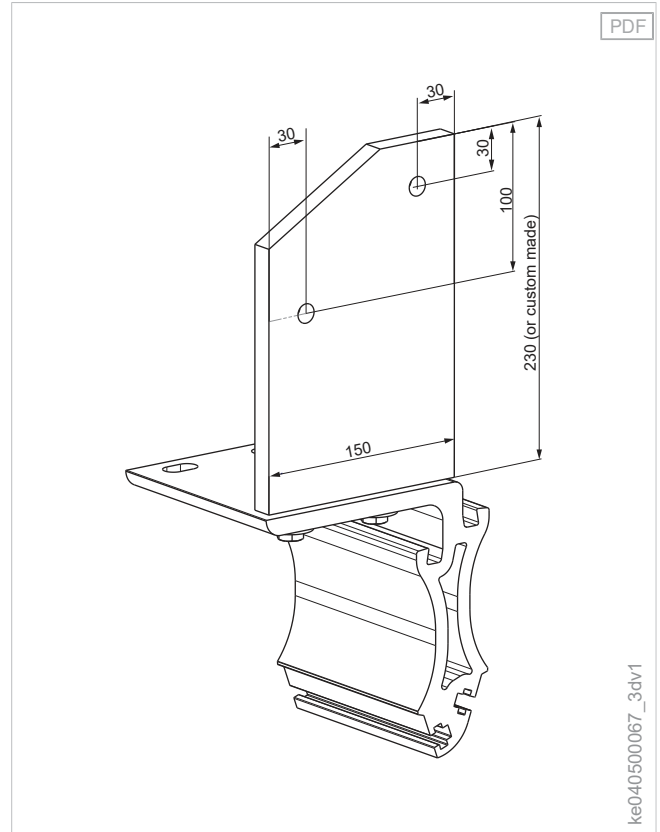
Wall console type D mounting plate - 580



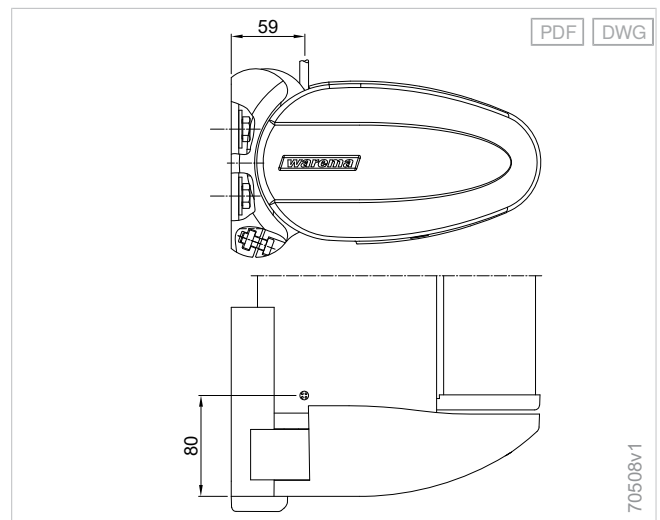
Ceiling console type E - 580



Console for rafters type F - 580

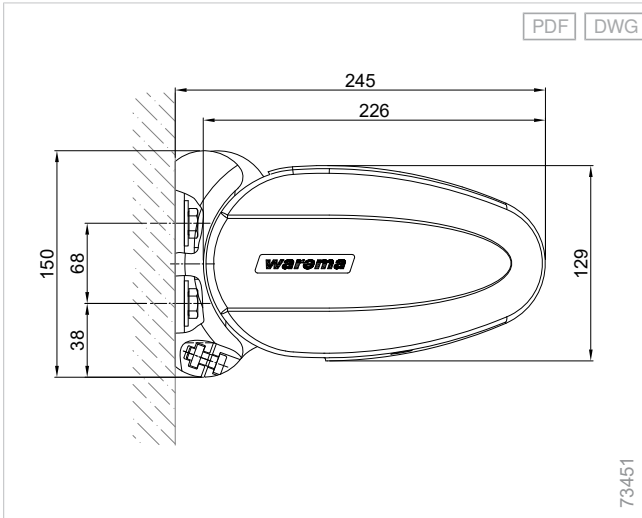


Cable exit - 580

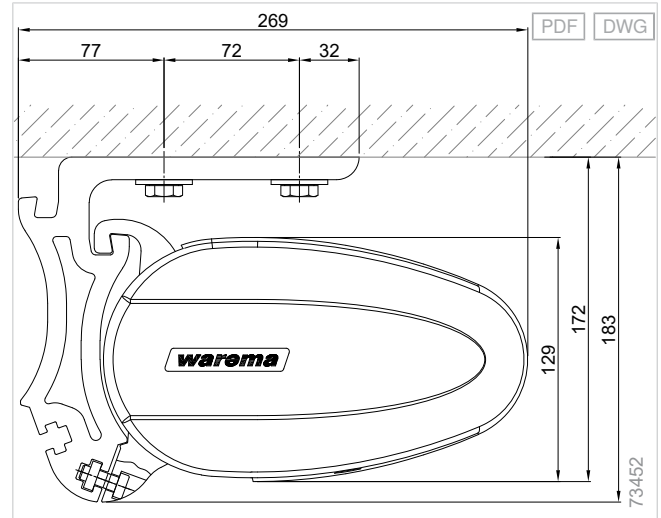


## Mounting examples

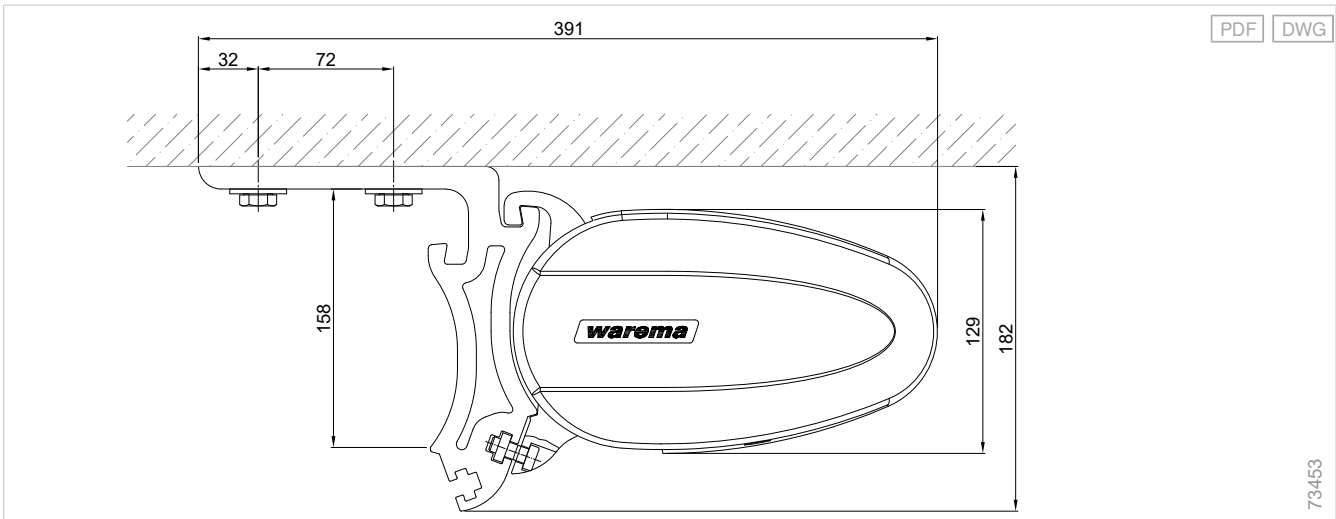
Wall installation, inclination 5° - 580



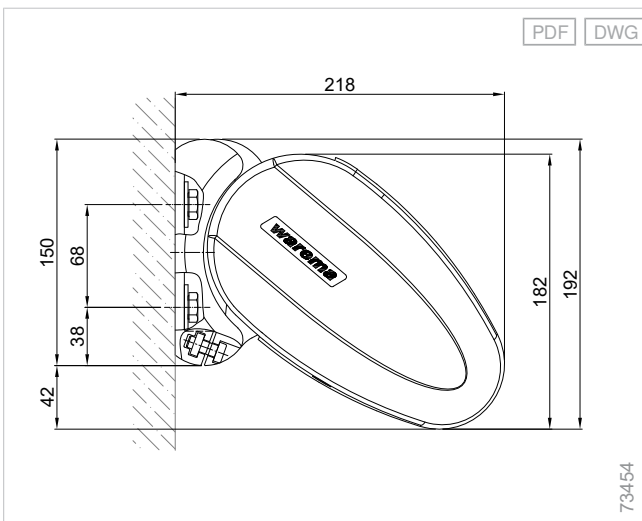
Ceiling installation (front), inclination 5° - 580



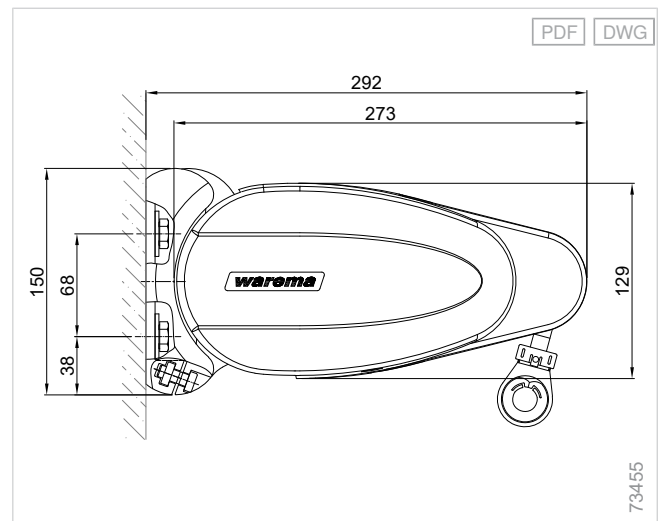
Ceiling installation (rear), inclination 5° - 580



Wall installation, inclination 40° - 580



Wall installation with valance roller blind, inclination 5° - 580



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

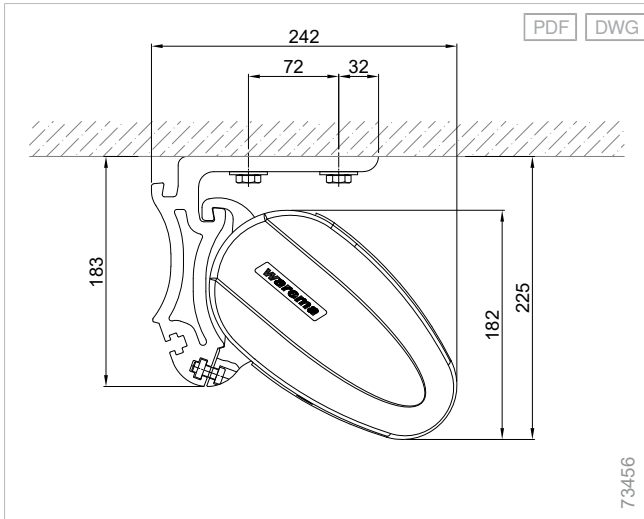
Supplementary accessories

Components

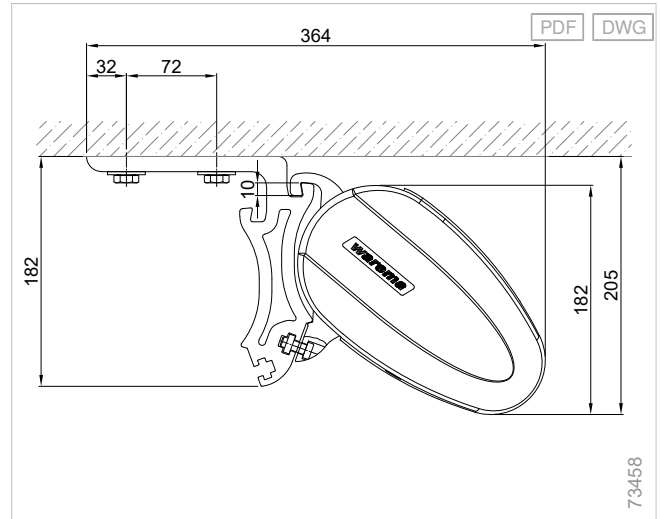
Drive variants

Standards

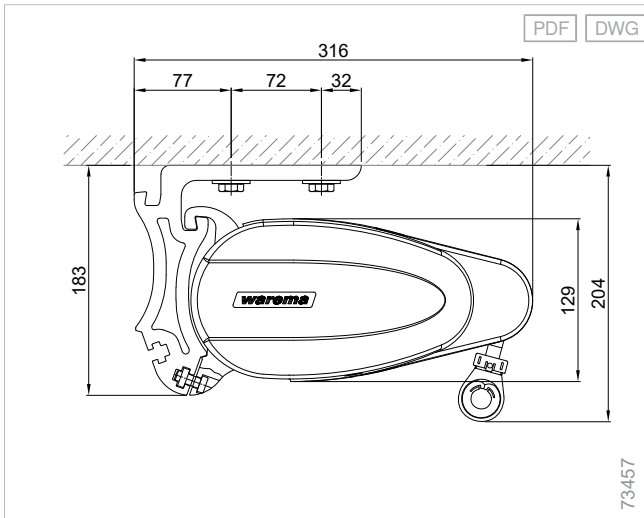
Ceiling installation (front), inclination 40° - 580



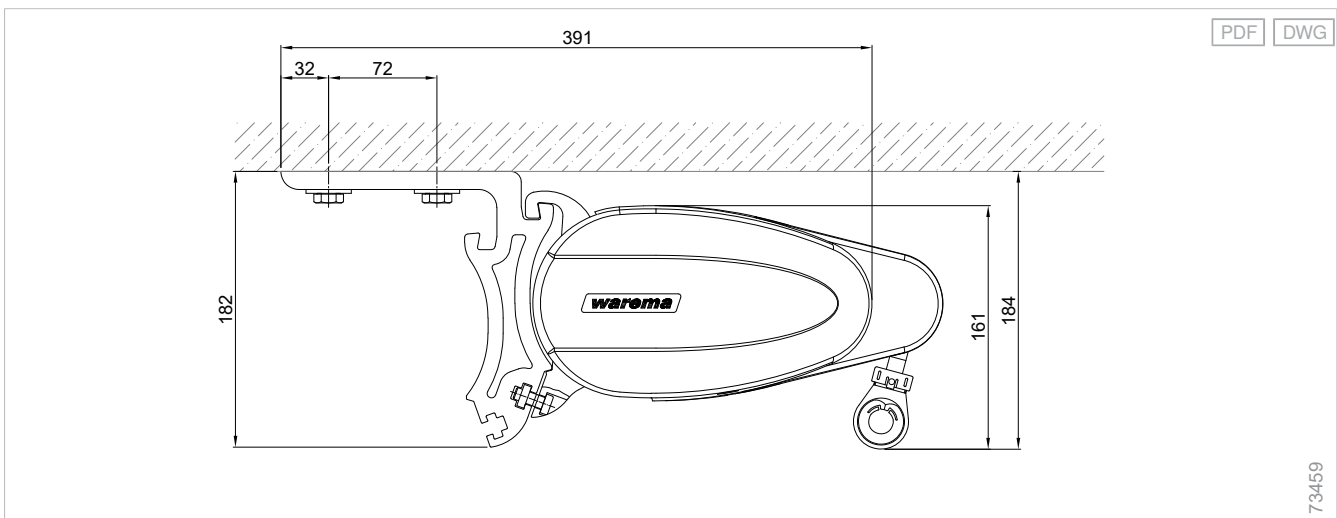
Ceiling installation (rear), inclination 40° - 580



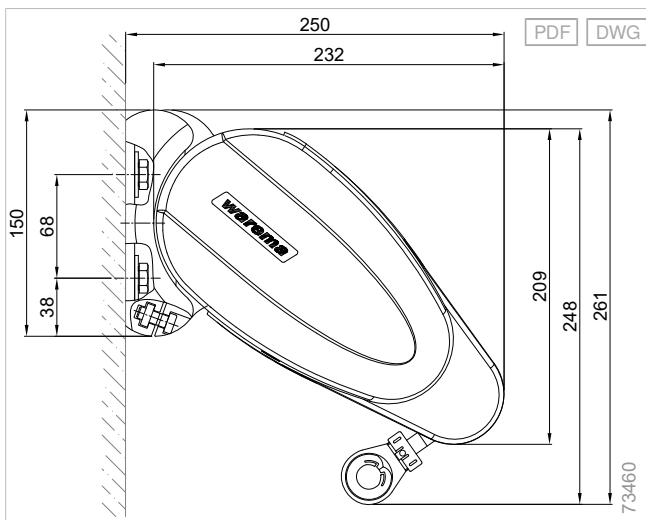
Ceiling installation (front) with valance roller blind, inclination 5° - 580



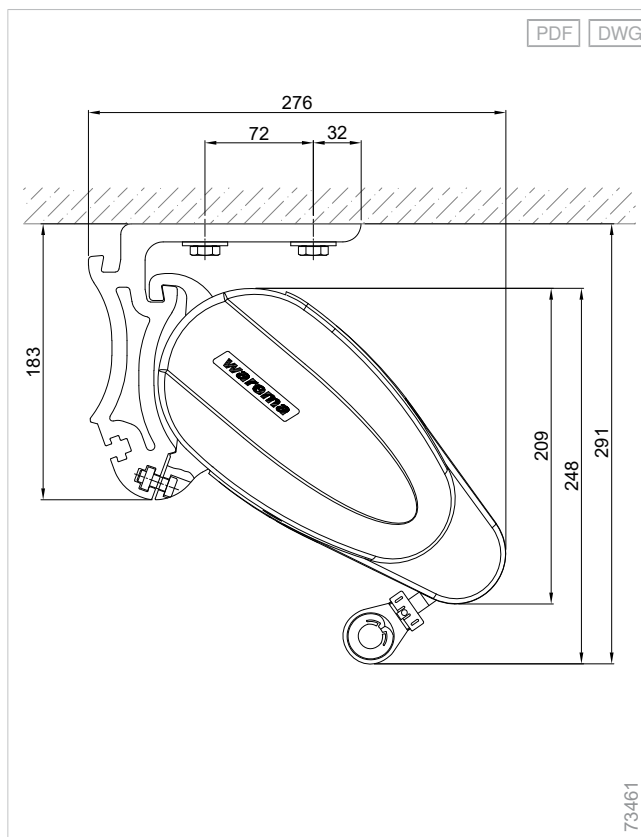
Ceiling installation (rear) with valance roller blind, inclination 5° - 580



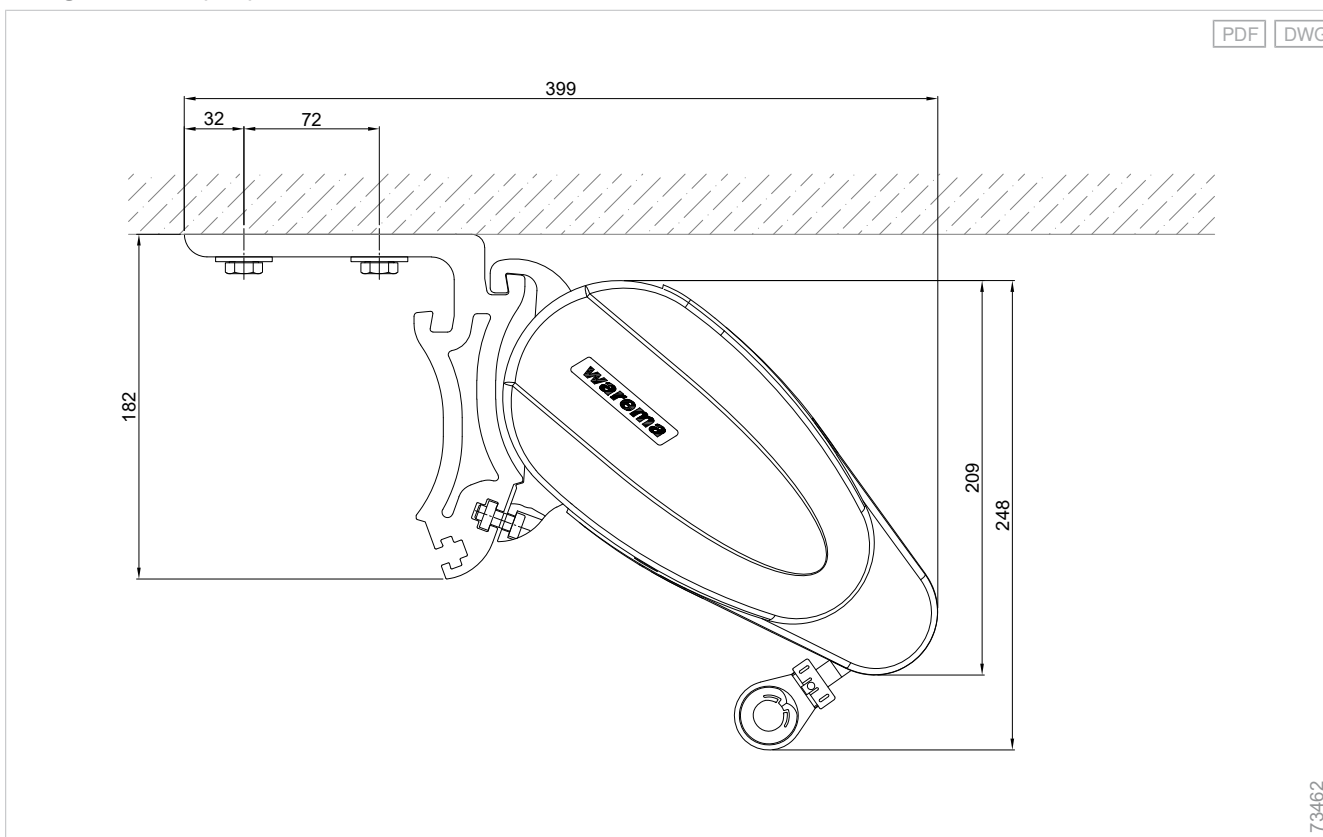
Wall installation with valance roller blind, inclination 40° - 580



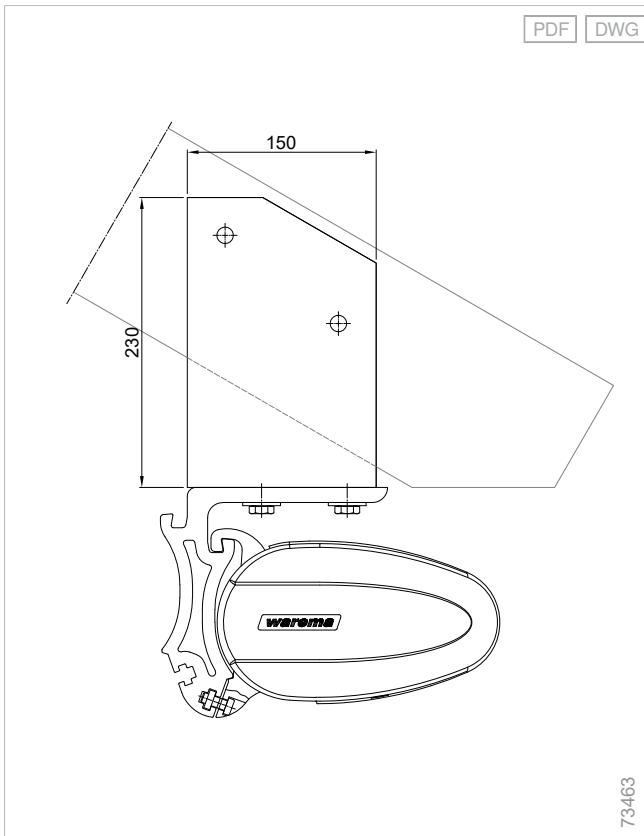
Ceiling installation (front) with valance roller blind, inclination 40° - 580



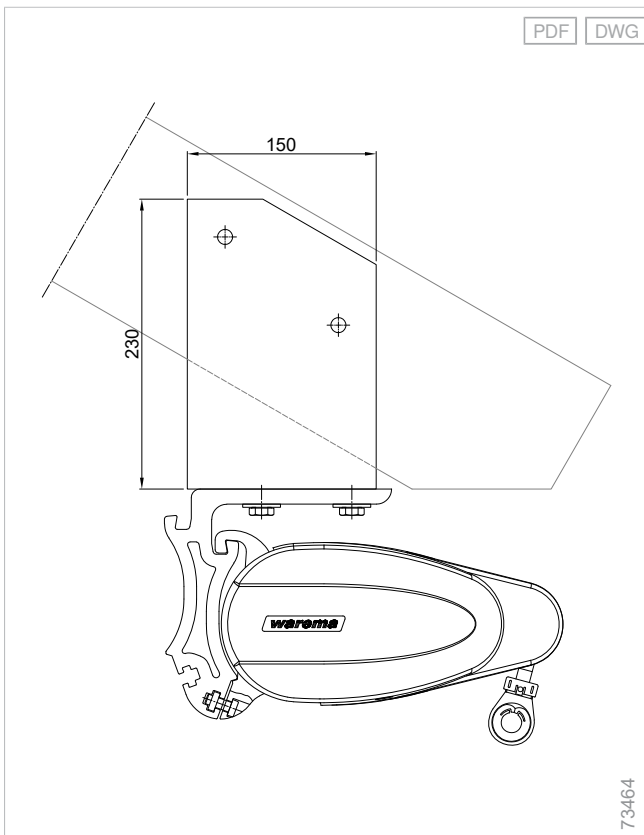
Ceiling installation (rear) with valance roller blind, inclination 40° - 580



Rafter installation, inclination 5° - 580



Rafter installation with valance roller blind, inclination 5° - 580







# Cassette awnings Terrea

## Cassette awning Terrea K50

### Aesthetic

Premier design: Awarded the Red Dot Design Award 2016, the Terrea K50 sets a benchmark in design.

### Discreet

Especially small installation distance from wall and ceiling, meaning that the awning can be unobtrusively integrated into the patio.

### Durable

Robust construction: The cassette optimally protects the fabric and articulated arms - while stable brackets guarantee a secure hold.



reddot award 2016  
winner



### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	5000 mm
Maximum projection	3000 mm

### Order here

myWAREMA

[Art.-Nr. 2036161](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/2013154.pdf>

### WAREMA tools

[Console Planner](#)

[Sun Shading Planner](#)

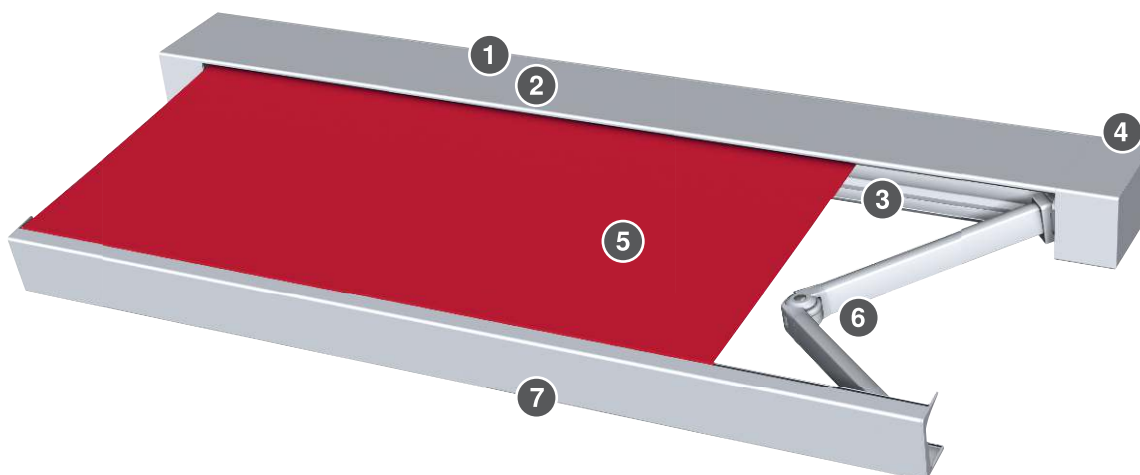
[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)



# Components

## Cassette awning Terrea K50



- 1 Cassette
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric bearing shell
- 4 Console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail

### Cassette

#### Cassette - K50

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	200 mm
Height	130 mm

#### + Side cover

##### Cassette side cover - K50

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

### Cassette, optional

#### Cassette - K50 with valance roller blind

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	260 mm
Height	130 mm

#### + Side cover

##### Cassette side cover - K50

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 78 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	78 mm

### Fabric bearing shell

#### Fabric bearing shell - K50

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

### Front rail

#### Front rail - K50

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	78 mm
Height	116 mm

#### + Side cover

##### Front rail side cover - K50

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

### Front rail, optional

#### Front rail - K50 with valance roller blind

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	138 mm
Height	116 mm

#### + Side cover

##### Front rail side cover - K50

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Articulated arm

### Articulated arm - K50

Depending on the projection or equipment, the small or large **articulated arm profiles and power transmission** are used.

#### + Articulated arm profile

##### Articulated arm profile 27x54 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	27 mm
Height	54 mm

##### Articulated arm profile, front, 25x44 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	25 mm
Height	44 mm

##### Articulated arm profile, front, 30x56 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	30 mm
Height	56 mm

##### Articulated arm profile, rear, 29x55 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	29 mm
Height	55 mm

##### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x67 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	35 mm
Height	67 mm

#### + Articulated arm seat

##### Tilting joint - K50

Material	Aluminium, permanent mould cast
Surface	Powder-coated

Tilting joint with windlock mechanism

#### + Power transmission

##### Textile tape

##### Flexband

Steel tension spring and flexband with integrated steel strands

## Wall connection profile, optional

- Wall connection profile with small rain hood
- Wall connection profile with large rain hood

+ see "Wall connection profiles", Page 459

## Console

### Wall console type A - K50

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	72 mm
Height	123 mm
Depth	94 mm

### Wall console type C - K50

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	210 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	104 mm

Wall console type A with mounting plate, small (steel).

### Wall console type D - K50

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	330 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	104 mm

Wall console type A with mounting plate, large (steel).

### Ceiling console Type E - K50

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	72 mm
Height	114 mm
Depth	182 mm

### Console for rafters type F - K50

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	72 mm
Height	344 mm
Depth	182 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

## Motor

- Orea WT

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

## Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with integrated limit stop 3:1

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- RAL 9016 traffic white, satin finish
- RAL 9006 white aluminium, satin finish
- W 4916 Anthracite iron mica effect, fine texture

Colours, optional:

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living control package
- WMS Wind sensor
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Construction limit values

The indicated construction limit values and number of consoles relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>					
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor / Crank	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2370 mm	2880 mm	3370 mm
	Maximum order width	5000 mm	5000 mm	5000 mm	5000 mm
Soltis 92 + Motor / Crank	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2370 mm	2880 mm	
	Maximum order width	5000 mm	5000 mm	5000 mm	
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Control systems</b>					
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + WMS Wind sensor	Minimum order width	1950 mm	2450 mm	2950 mm	3440 mm
	Maximum order width	5000 mm	5000 mm	5000 mm	5000 mm
Soltis 92 + Motor + WMS Wind sensor	Minimum order width	1950 mm	2450 mm	2950 mm	
	Maximum order width	5000 mm	5000 mm	5000 mm	
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b>					
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor / Crank + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2370 mm	2880 mm	
	Maximum order width	5000 mm	5000 mm	5000 mm	
Soltis 92 + Motor / Crank + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2370 mm	2880 mm	
	Maximum order width	5000 mm	5000 mm	5000 mm	
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories + Control systems</b>					
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Valance roller blind + WMS Wind sensor	Minimum order width	1950 mm	2450 mm	2950 mm	
	Maximum order width	5000 mm	5000 mm	5000 mm	
Soltis 92 + Motor + Valance roller blind + WMS Wind sensor	Minimum order width	1950 mm	2450 mm	2950 mm	
	Maximum order width	5000 mm	5000 mm	5000 mm	

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 15 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 35 °

Inclination angle, standard: 5 °

Inclination angle for rain class 2: 20 - 35 °

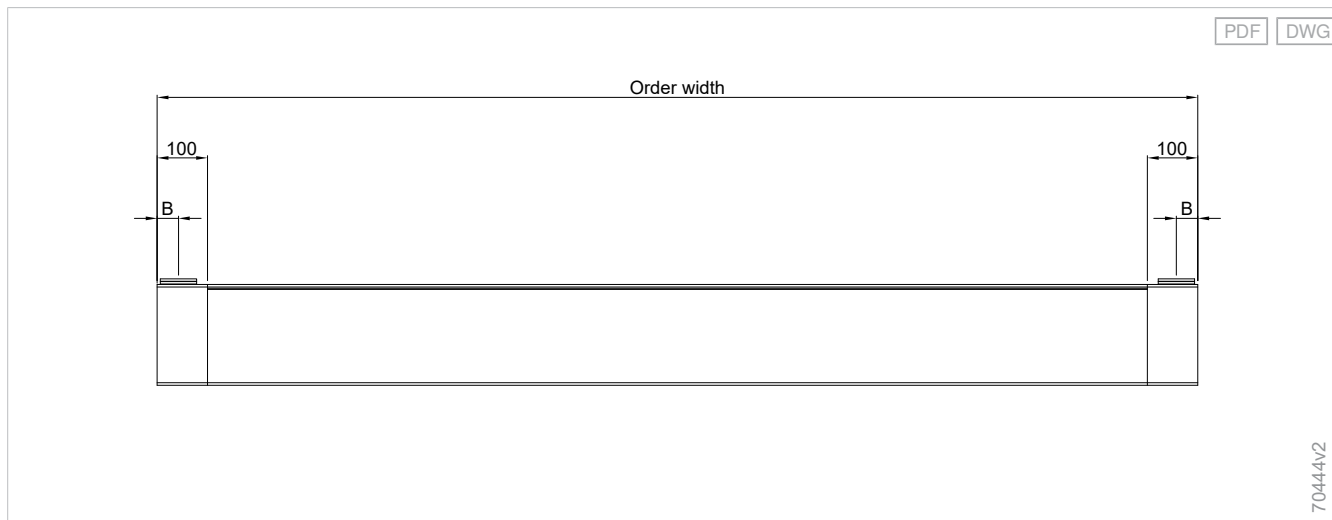
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .

## Dimension determination

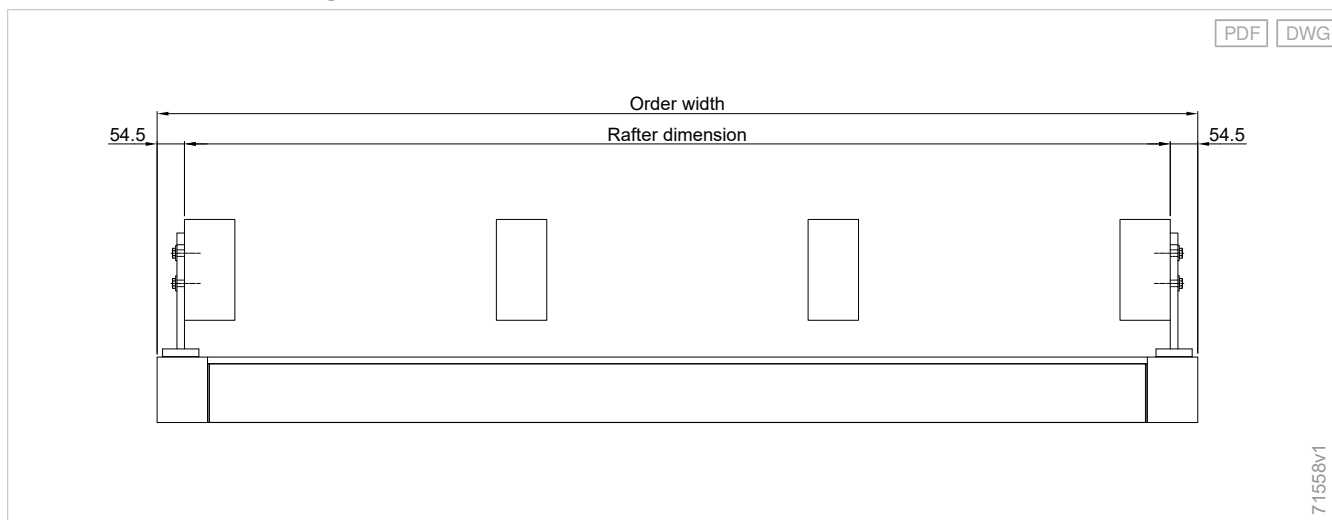
The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

For **recess installation**, additional lateral space of at least 60 mm is required.

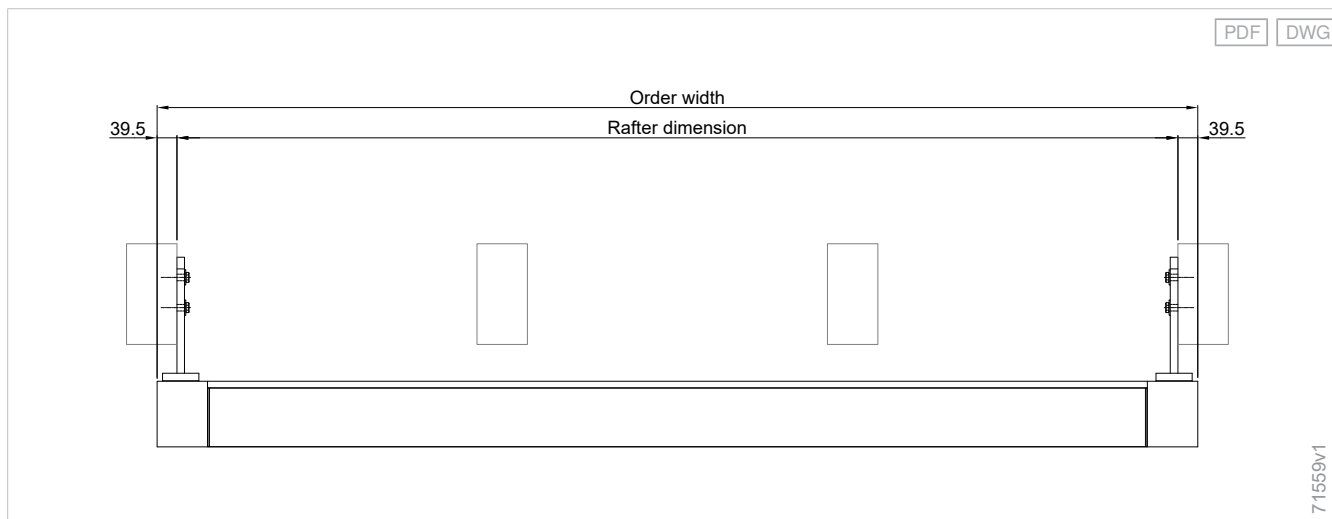
### Wall/ceiling installation - K50



### Rafter installation, outside fixing - K50



### Rafter installation, inside fixing - K50



## Quantity determination

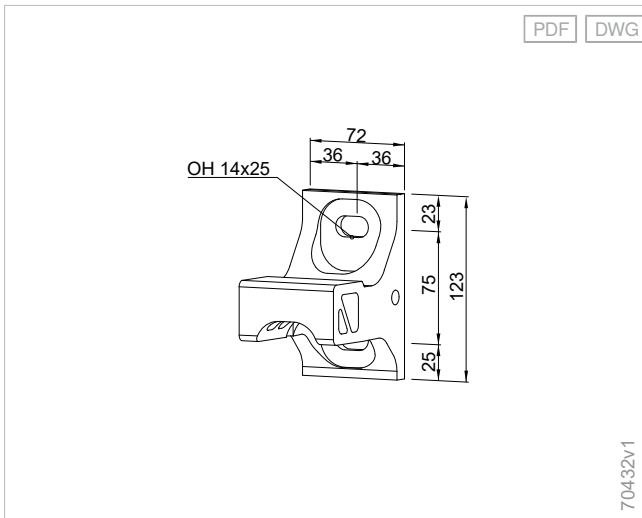
### Number of consoles, individual unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection			
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>					
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	0 - 5000 mm	2	2	2	2
<b>Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories</b>					
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	0 - 5000 mm	2	2	2	

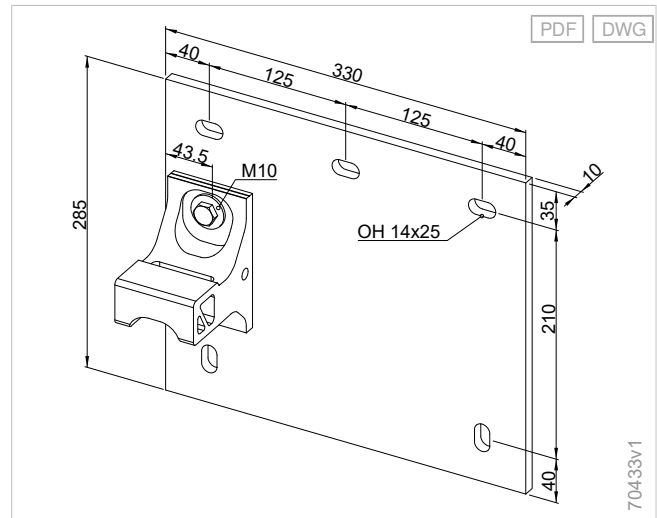
Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

## Details

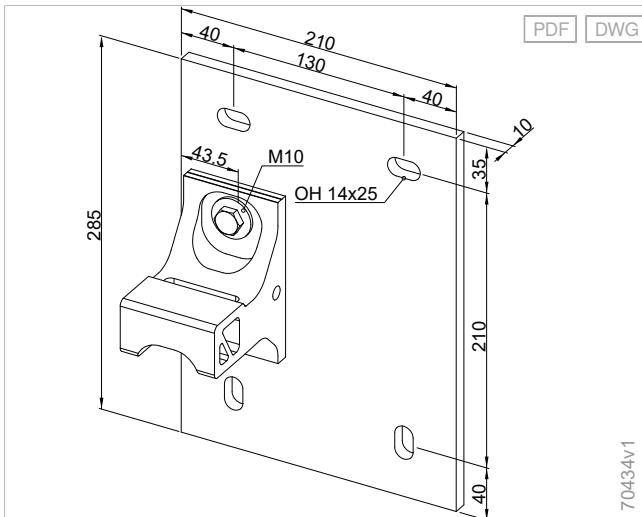
Wall console type A - K50



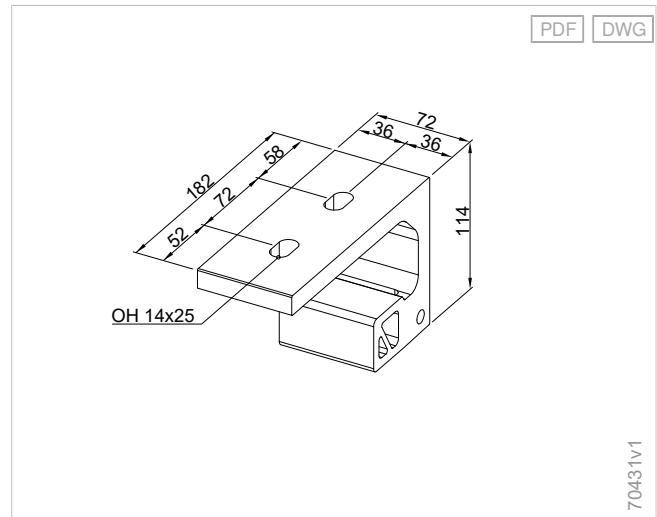
Wall console type D mounting plate - K50



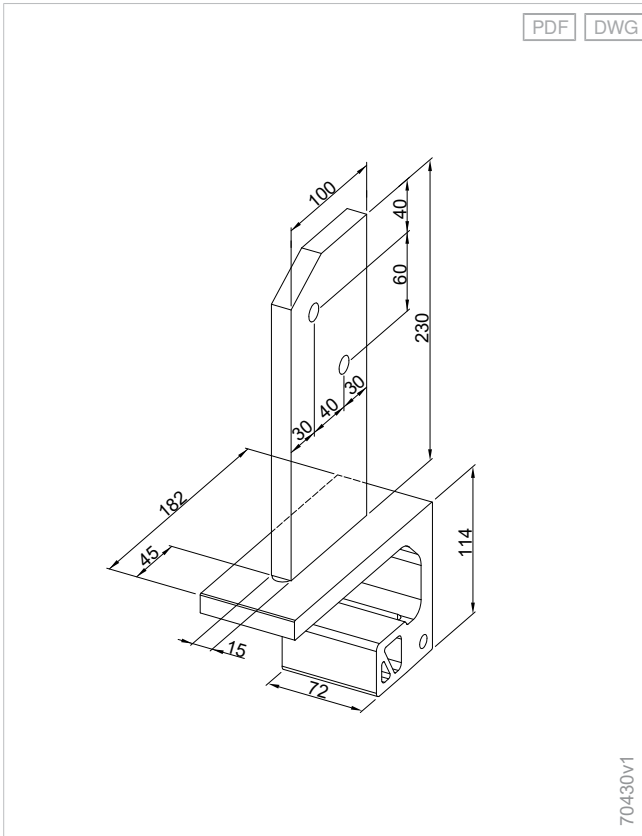
Wall console type C mounting plate - K50



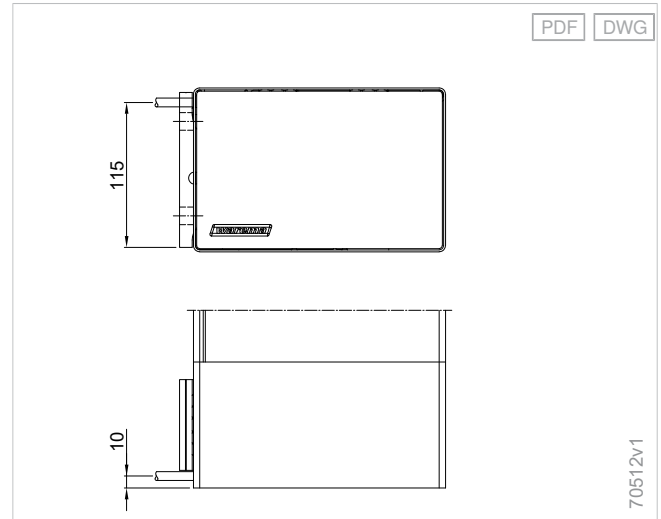
Ceiling console Type E - K50



Console for rafters type F - K50

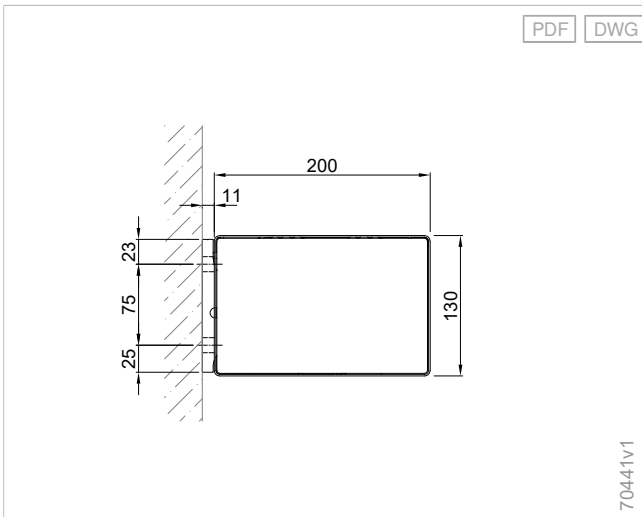


Cable exit - K50

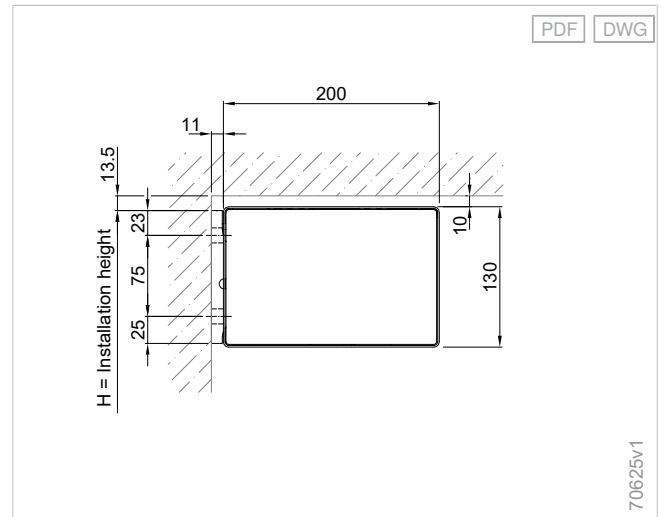


## Mounting examples

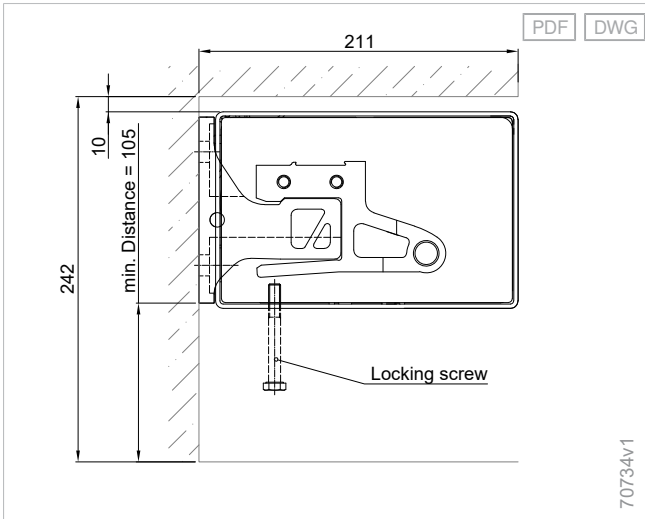
Wall installation - K50



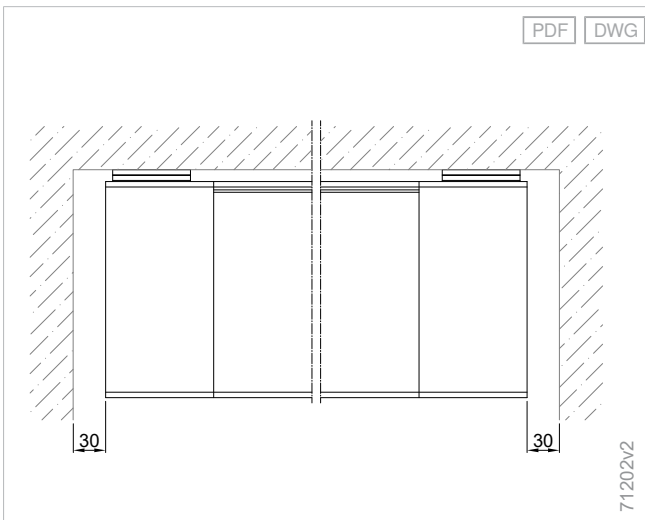
Under eaves - K50



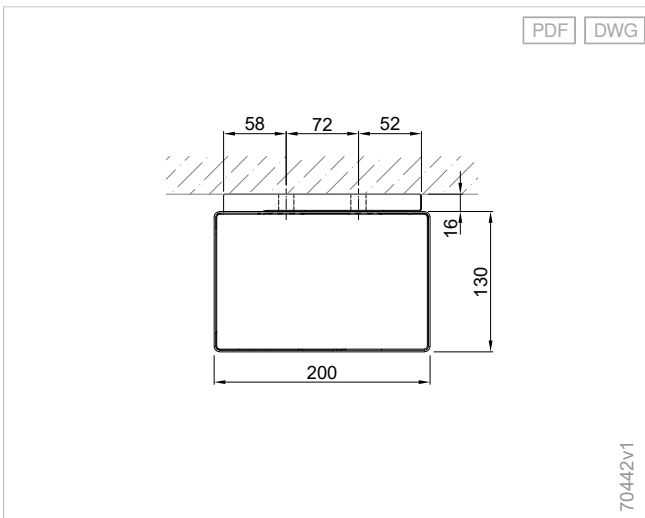
Shaft installation - K50



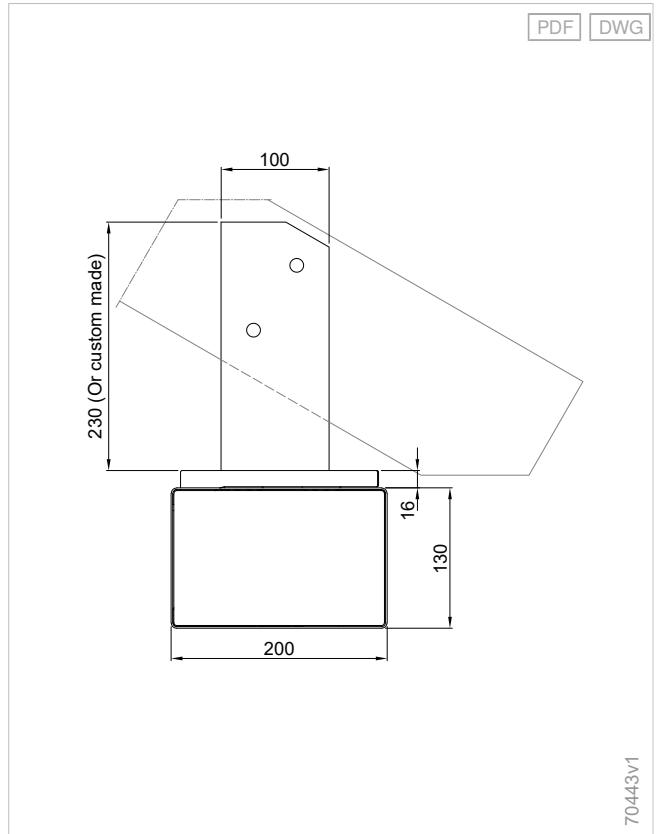
Recess installation - K50



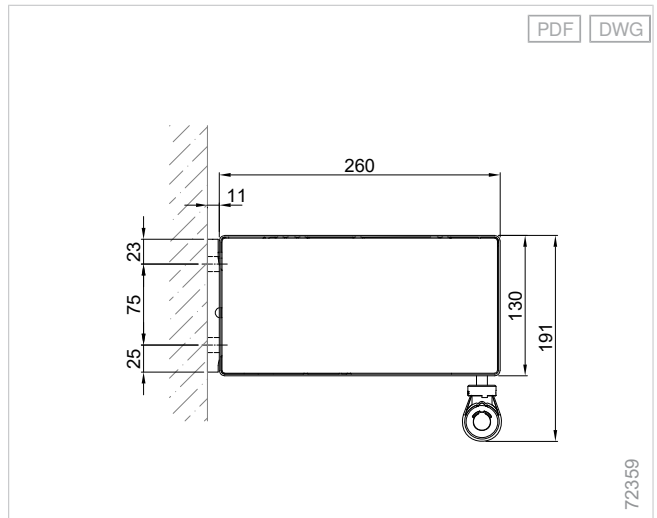
Ceiling installation - K50



Rafter installation - K50

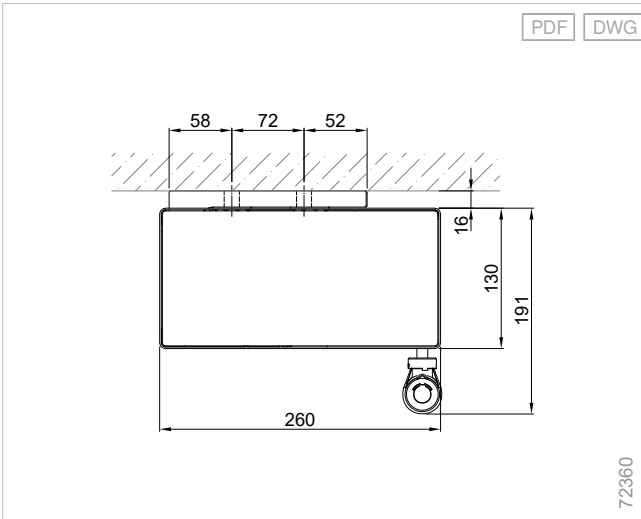


Wall installation with valance roller blind - K50

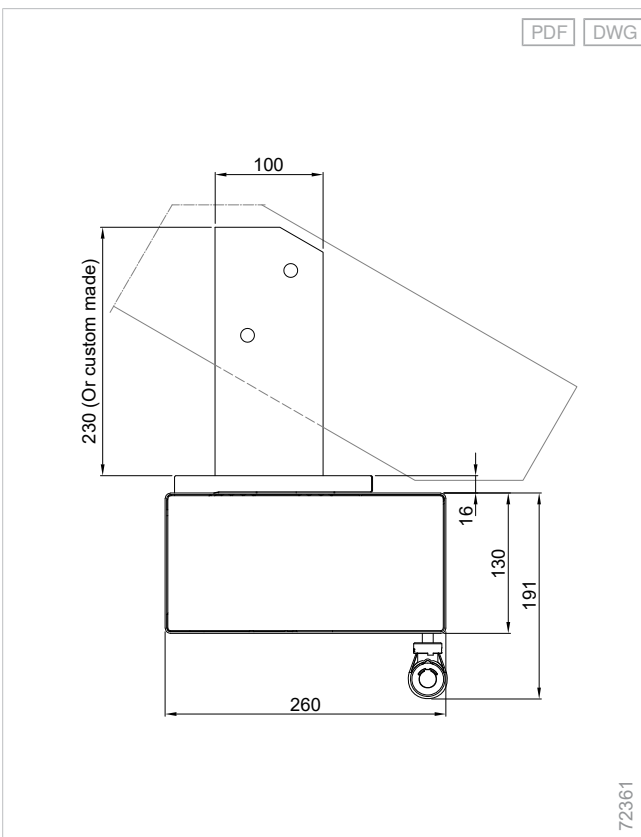




Ceiling installation with valance roller blind - K50



Rafter installation with valance roller blind - K50





## Cassette awnings Terrea

### Cassette awning Terrea K60

#### Expansive

With the oval cassette shape and large shading area, the K60 is an all-rounder for every facade.

#### Glare-free

Less glare from the sun, more privacy: Retractable valance roller blind provides glare-free views, even when the sun is low in the sky, and offers additional visual privacy.

#### Durable

Robust construction: The cassette optimally protects the fabric and articulated arms - while stable brackets guarantee a secure hold.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	7000 mm
Maximum projection	4000 mm
Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036158](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/878215.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Console Planner](#)

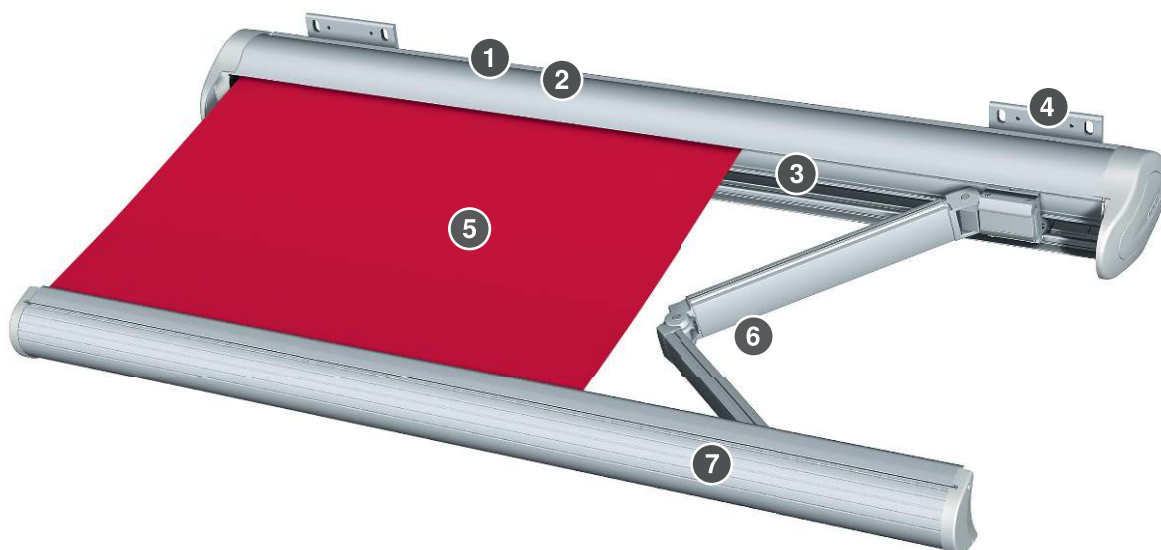
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

## Cassette awning Terrea K60



- 1 Cassette
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric bearing shell
- 4 Console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail

### Cassette

#### Cassette - K60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	240 mm
Height	165 mm

#### + Side cover

##### Cassette side cover - K60

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 78 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	78 mm

### Fabric bearing shell

#### Fabric bearing shell - K60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

### Front rail

#### Front rail - K60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	83 mm
Height	112 mm

#### + Side cover

##### Front rail side cover - K60

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

### Front rail, optional

#### Front rail - K60 with valance roller blind

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	144 mm
Height	112 mm

#### + Side cover

##### Front rail side cover - K60 with valance roller blind

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

### Articulated arm

#### Articulated arm - K60

#### + Articulated arm profile

##### Articulated arm profile, front, 33x61 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	33 mm
Height	61 mm

### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x68 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	35 mm
Height	68 mm

#### + Articulated arm seat

#### Articulated arm seat - K60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

#### + Power transmission

- Steel cable
- Link chain

#### + Power transmission, optional

#### Segment

Material	Aluminium, extruded
----------	---------------------

### Valance, optional

#### Valance - 550/580/K60

Height	95 mm
--------	-------

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

### Wall connection profile, optional

- Wall connection profile with large rain hood

⊕ see "Wall connection profiles", Page 459

### Console

#### Wall console type B - K60, adjustable

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	191 mm
Height	174 mm
Depth	100 mm

#### Wall console type D - K60, adjustable

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	330 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	110 mm

Wall console type B with mounting plate, large (steel).

#### Wall console type D - K60, adjustable with crosswise mounting plate

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	660 mm
Height	230 mm
Depth	110 mm

Wall console type B with mounting plate, crosswise (steel).

The console and mounting plate largely disappear behind the awning, even on poor substructures.

### Ceiling console type E - K60, adjustable

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	175 mm
Height	189 mm
Depth	110 mm

### Ceiling console type E - K60, adjustable, large

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	330 mm
Height	184 mm
Depth	285 mm

Ceiling console type E, adjustable with mounting plate, large (steel)

### Console for rafters type F - K60, adjustable

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	120 mm
Height	399 mm
Depth	206 mm

### Wall console type B - K60, fixed

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	191 mm
Height	187 mm
Depth	51 mm

### Wall console type D - K60, fixed

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	330 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	61 mm

Wall console type B with mounting plate, large (steel).

### Ceiling console type E - K60, fixed

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	175 mm
Height	188 mm
Depth	193 mm

### Ceiling console type E - K60, fixed, large

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	330 mm
Height	198 mm
Depth	285 mm

Ceiling console type E, fixed, large (steel)

### Console for rafters type F - K60, fixed

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	175 mm
Height	398 mm
Depth	206 mm

### Console, optional

#### Console cover for adjustable consoles K60

Material	Aluminium, permanent mould cast
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	203 mm
Height	187 mm

For facing the adjustable console mechanism. Can be used with all adjustable consoles. When using the console cover, the mounting aid cannot be used.

### Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

### Motor

- Orea WT

### Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

### Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

### Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with free wheel at the lower limit point

⊕ see "Drive variants", Page 471

### Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

⊕ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

### Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

⊕ see "Awning collection", Page 460

### Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living control package
- WMS Wind sensor
- Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control
- Valance roller blind with motor and basic model
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Patio frame

⊕ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Construction limit values

The indicated construction limit values and number of consoles relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor	Minimum order width	1950 mm	2470 mm	2970 mm	3480 mm	3990 mm	4500 mm
	Maximum order width	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm
	Minimum group unit order width	4410 mm	5450 mm	6450 mm	7470 mm	8490 mm	
	Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank	Minimum order width	1950 mm	2470 mm	2970 mm	3480 mm	3990 mm	4500 mm
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm
Soltis 92 + Motor / Crank	Minimum order width	1950 mm	2470 mm	2970 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1950 mm	2470 mm	2970 mm	3480 mm	3990 mm	
	Maximum order width	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	
	Minimum group unit order width	4410 mm	5450 mm	6450 mm	7470 mm		
	Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm		
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1950 mm	2470 mm	2970 mm	3480 mm	3990 mm	
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	
Soltis 92 + Motor / Crank + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1950 mm	2470 mm	2970 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			

4000 mm projection not possible with **bonded fabric connection**.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 20,5 - 22,5 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 30 °

Inclination angle, standard: 5 °

Inclination angle for rain class 2: 14 - 30 °

- Inclination angle with **rigid console** approx. 0°–20° depending on projection and fitted equipment according to inclination table
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .

## Dimension determination

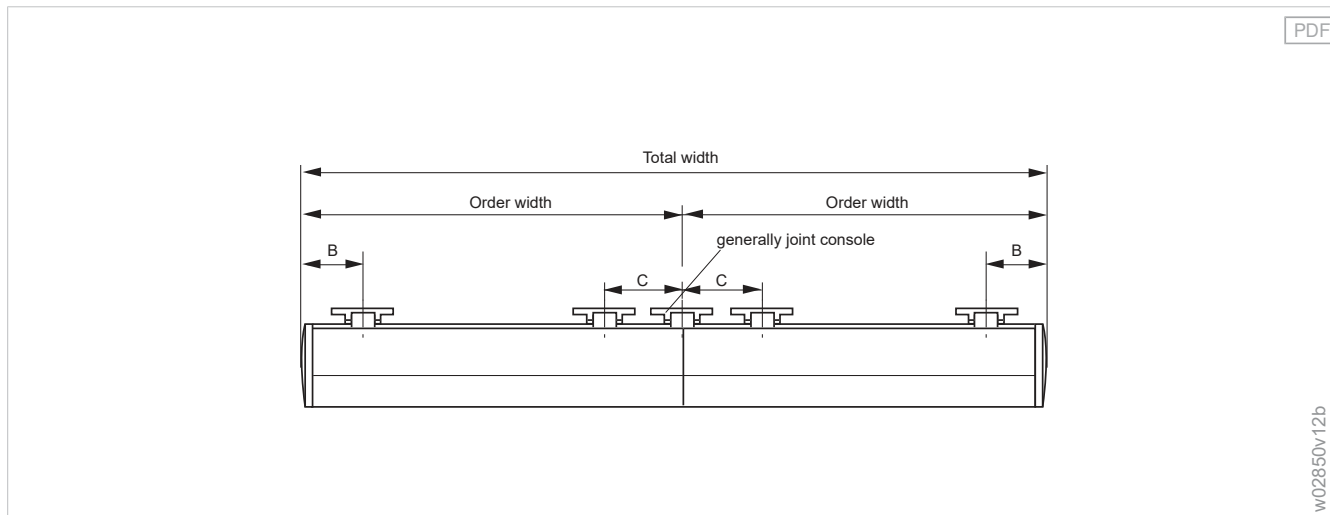
The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

When **installing group units in recesses**, additional space of at least 100 mm is required for installation.

### Individual unit - K60



### Group unit with slit cover blind - K60



## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection					
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	0 - 7000 mm	2	2	2	2	2	2
<b>Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	0 - 7000 mm	2	2	2	2	2	

### Number of consoles, group unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection				
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>						
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	0 - 13500 mm	5	5	5	5	5
<b>Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories</b>						
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	0 - 13500 mm	5	5	5	5	

Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

#### Attention:

- With **special arm positions** and console axis distances of > 5200 mm, a third console is required. A third articulated arm and a more powerful motor may also be required.
- For the following sizes, an additional mounting plate is required for **ceiling installation**.
  - Individual unit with projection of up to 3500 mm from an order width of 6501 mm
  - Individual unit with projection of up to 4000 mm from an order width of 5001 mm
  - Individual unit with valance roller blinds with projection of up to 3500 mm with an order width of 5501 mm or greater
  - Group unit with order width of 13001 mm or greater

## Inclination angle table - K60 without valance roller blind

### Inclination angle with rigid console depends on insert (no. 1, 2, 3) without valance roller blind

Projection	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
1500 mm	0° - 5°	5° - 10°	10° - 15°
2000 mm	0° - 5°	5° - 10°	10° - 15°
2500 mm	2° - 7°	7° - 12°	12° - 17°
3000 mm	3° - 8°	8° - 13°	13° - 18°
3500 mm	4° - 9°	9° - 14°	14° - 19°
4000 mm	5° - 10°	10° - 15°	15° - 20°



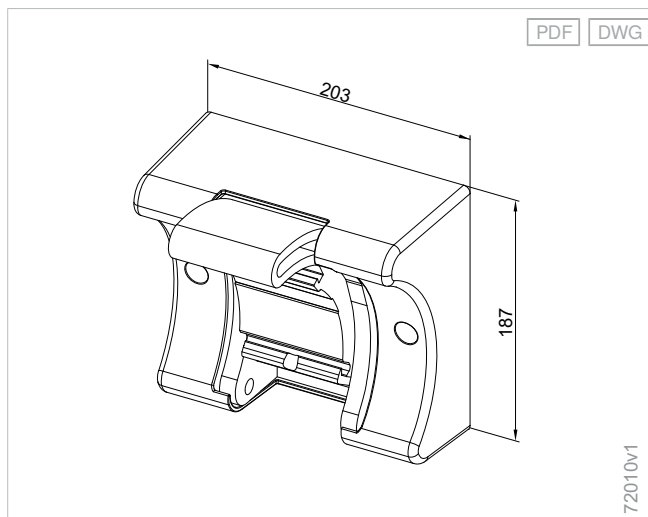
## Inclination angle table - K60 with valance roller blind

Inclination angle with rigid console depends on insert (no. 1, 2, 3) with valance roller blind

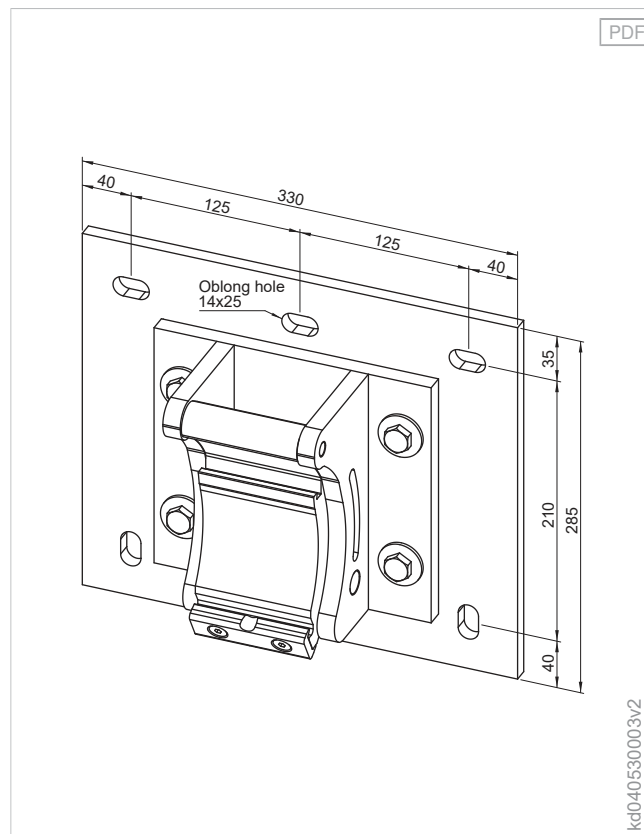
Projection	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
1500 mm	1° - 6°	6° - 11°	11° - 16°
2000 mm	1° - 6°	6° - 11°	11° - 16°
2500 mm	4° - 9°	9° - 14°	14° - 19°
3000 mm	3° - 8°	8° - 13°	13° - 18°
3500 mm	4° - 10°	10° - 15°	15° - 20°

### Details

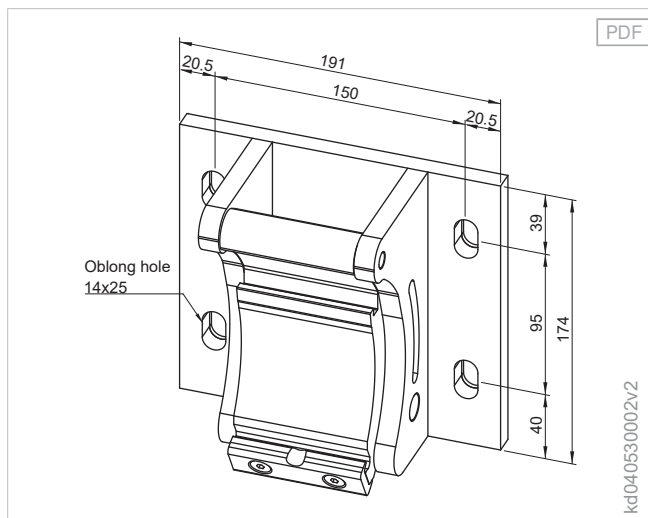
Wall console type B, adjustable with console cover - K60



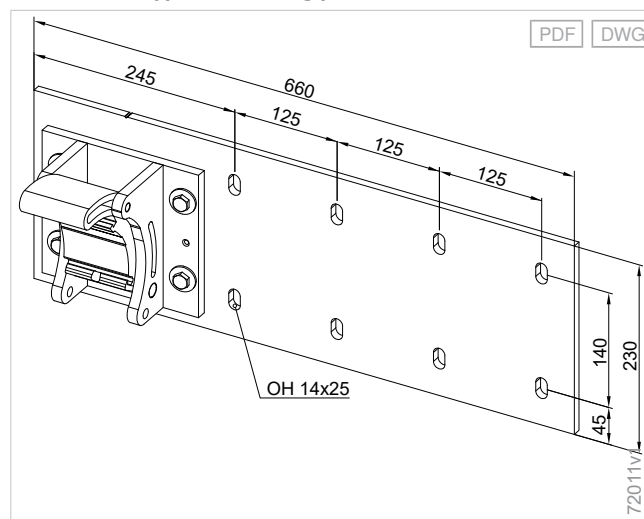
Wall console type D mounting plate, adjustable - K60



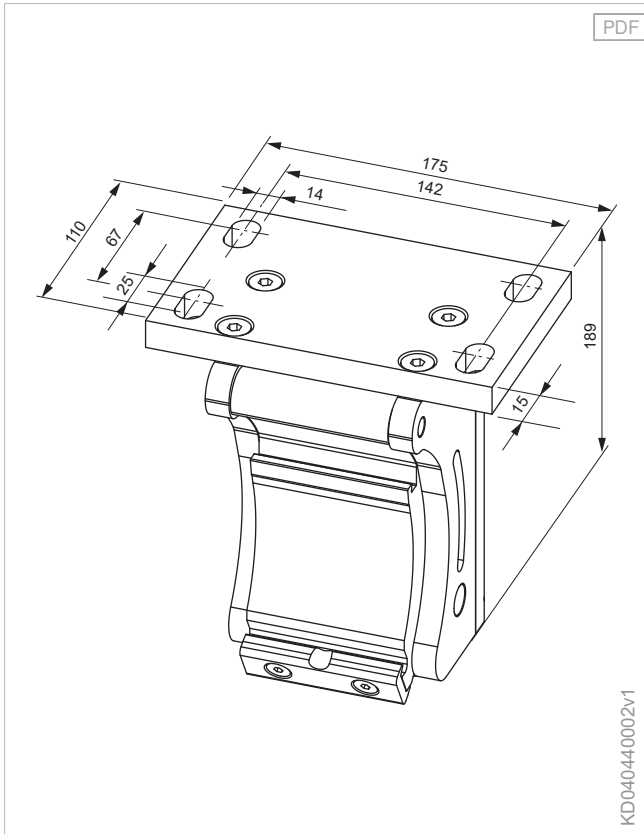
Wall console type B, adjustable - K60



Wall console type D mounting plate, crosswise - K60

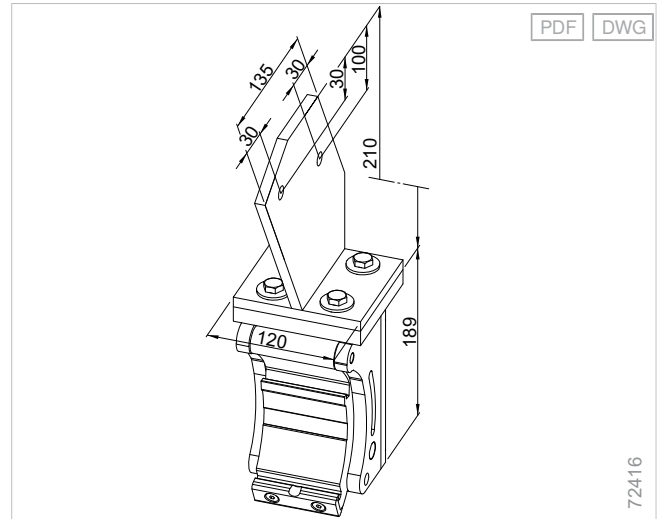


Ceiling console type E, adjustable - K60



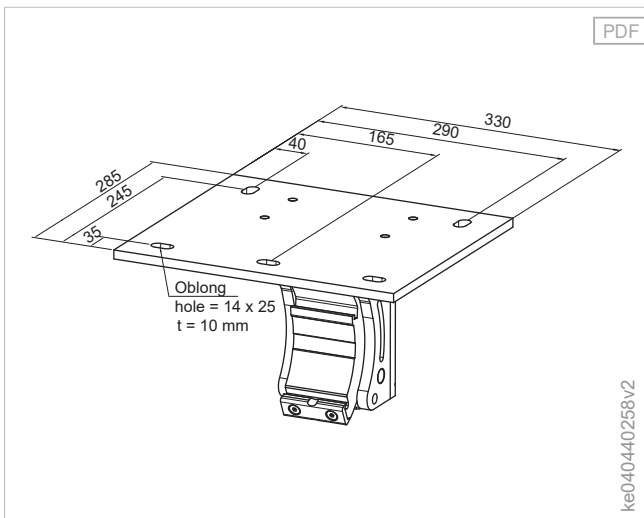
KD040440002v1

Console for rafters type F, adjustable - K60



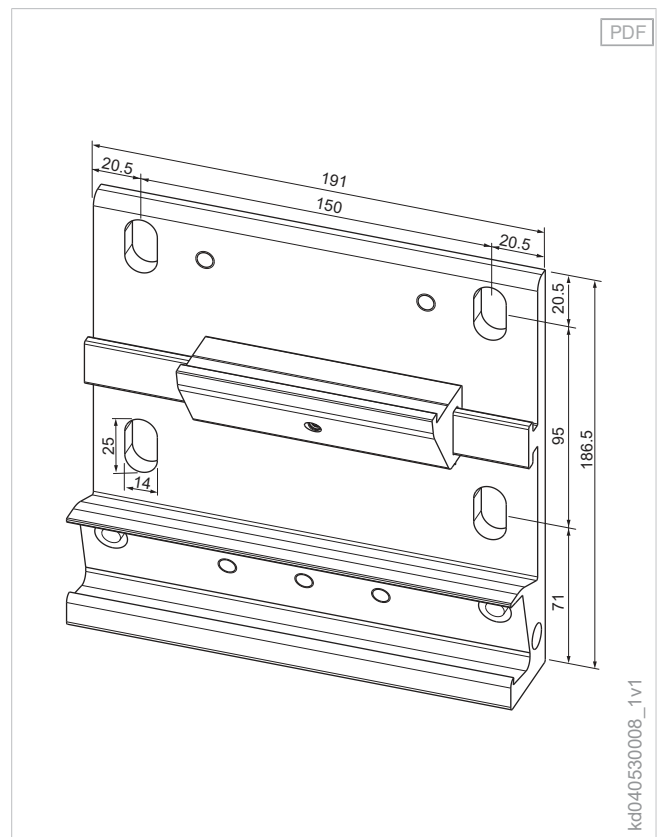
72416

Mounting plate for ceiling console - K60



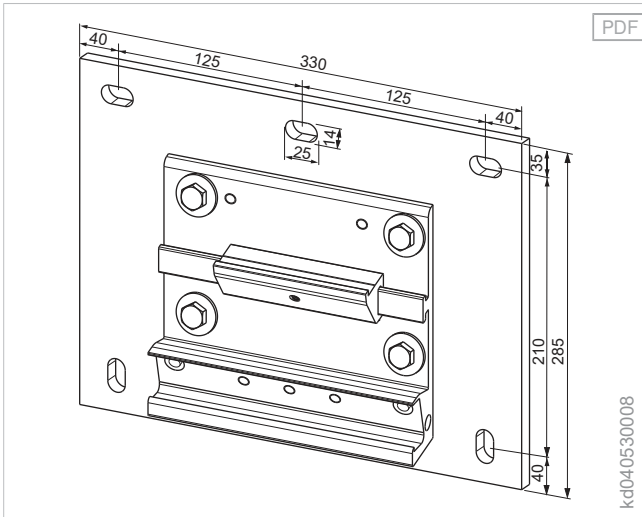
ke040440258v2

Wall console type B, fixed - K60



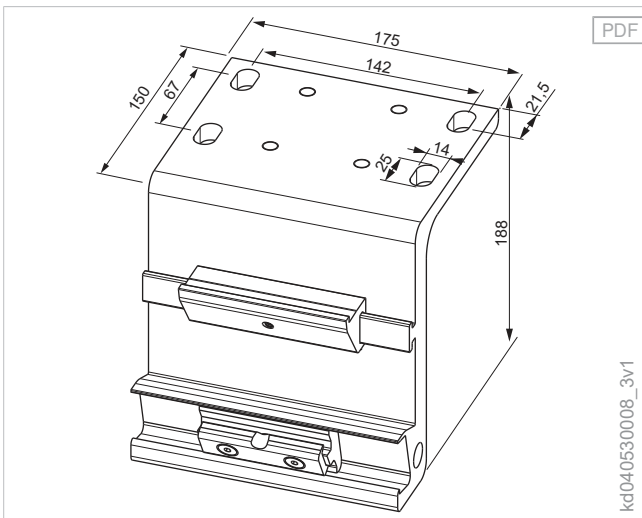
kd040530008\_1v1

Wall console type D with mounting plate, fixed - K60



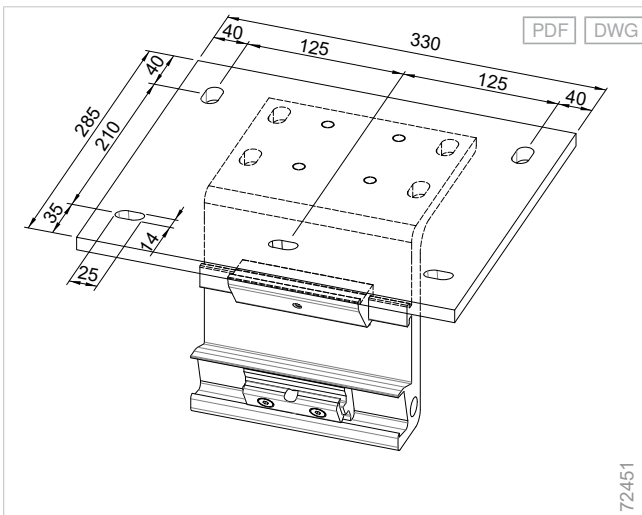
kd040530008

Ceiling console type E, fixed - K60



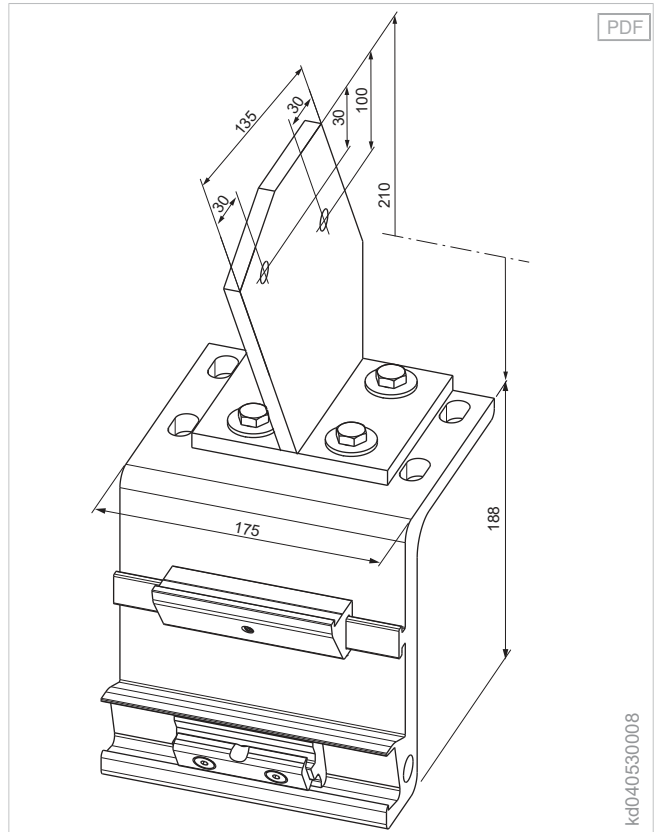
kd040530008\_3v1

Mounting plate for ceiling console - K60



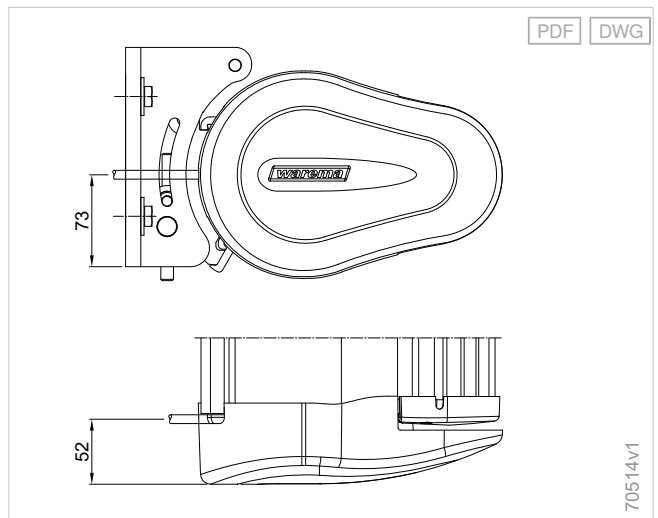
72451

Console for rafters type F, rigid - K60



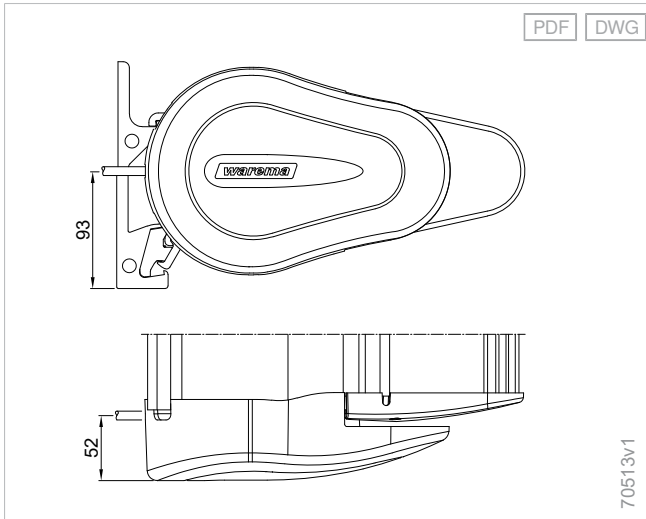
kd040530008

Cable exit with adjustable console - K60



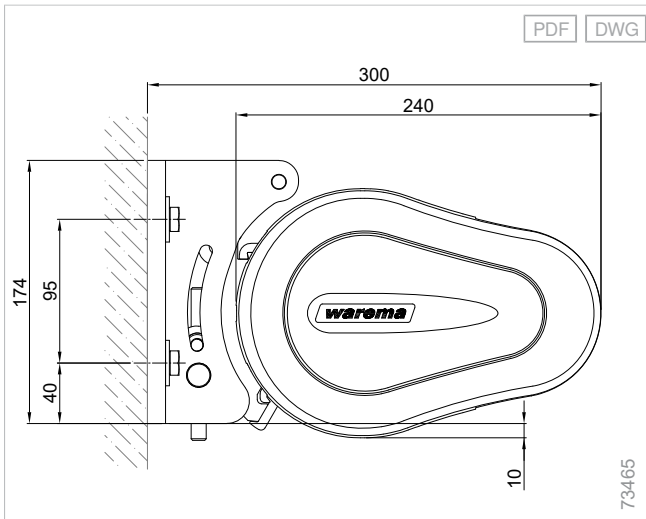
70514v1

Cable exit for fixed console - K60

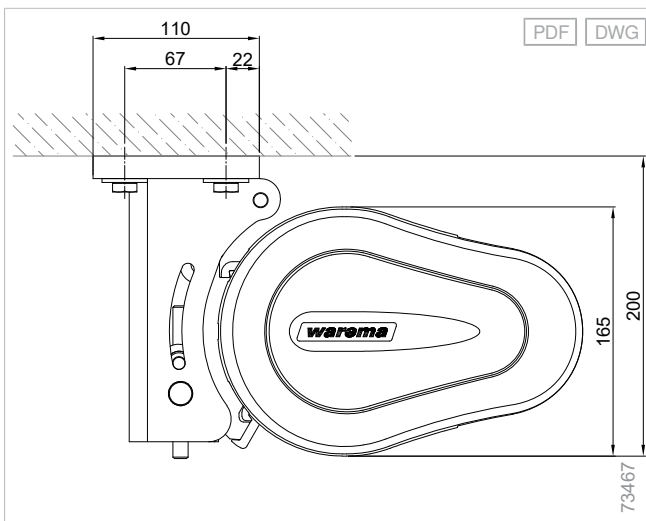


Mounting examples

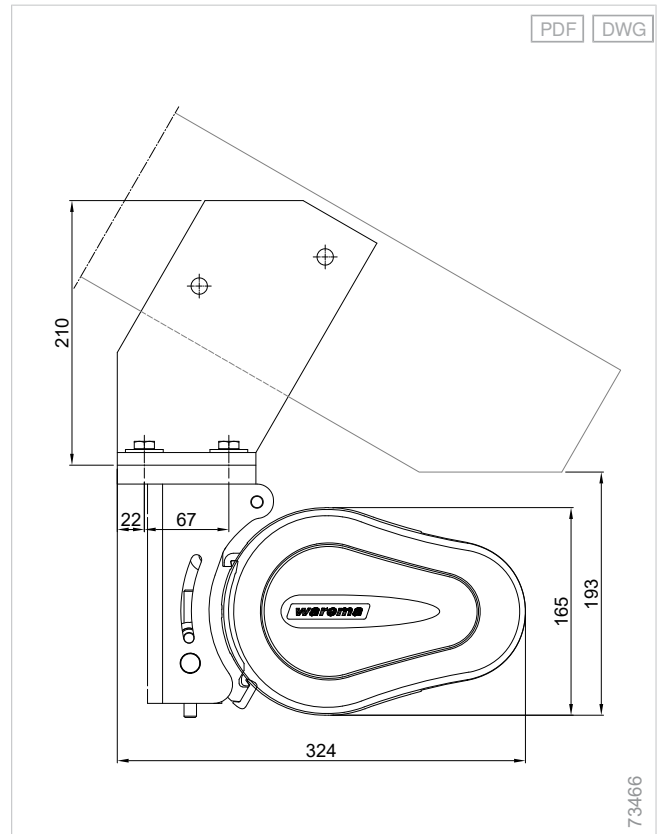
Wall installation, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60



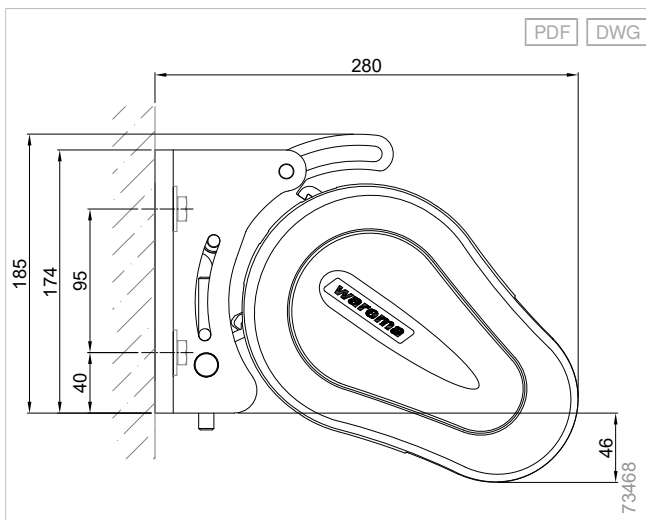
Ceiling installation, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60



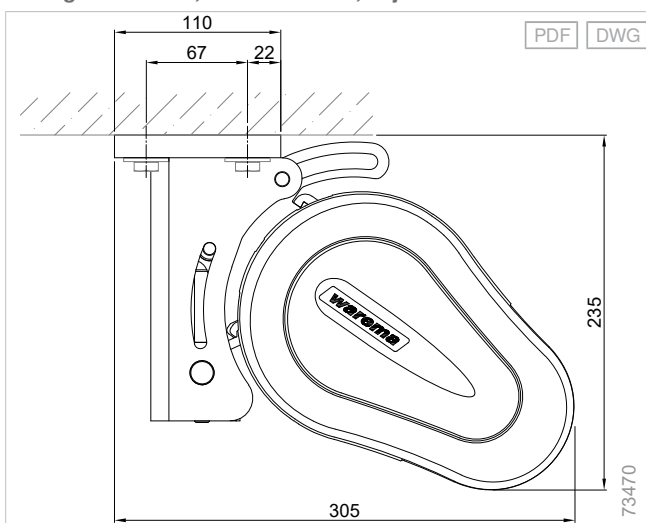
Rafter installation, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60



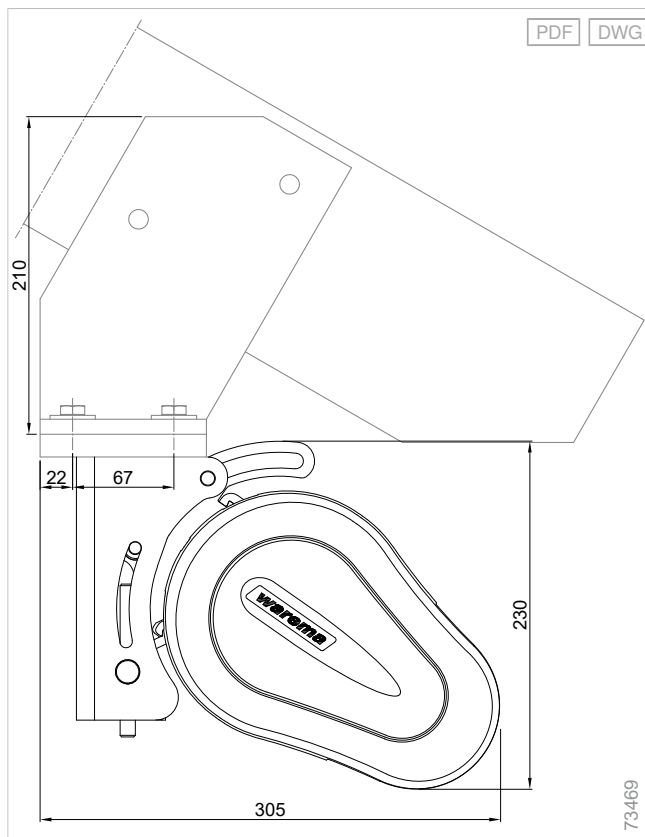
Wall installation, inclination 30°, adjustable - K60



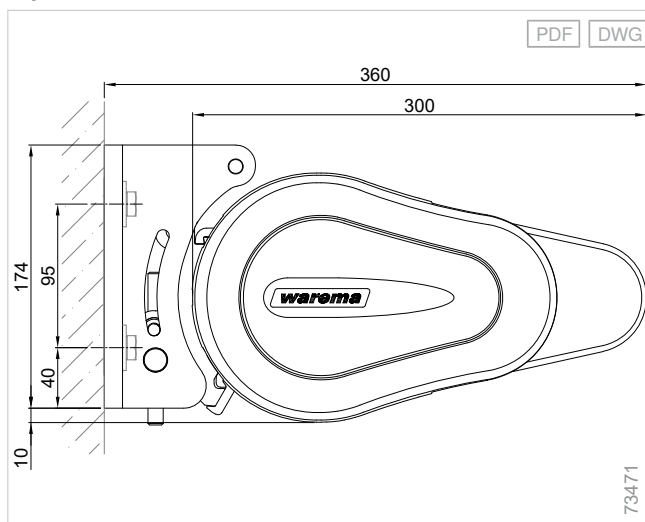
Ceiling installation, inclination 30°, adjustable - K60



Rafter installation, inclination 30°, adjustable - K60



Wall installation with valance roller blind, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

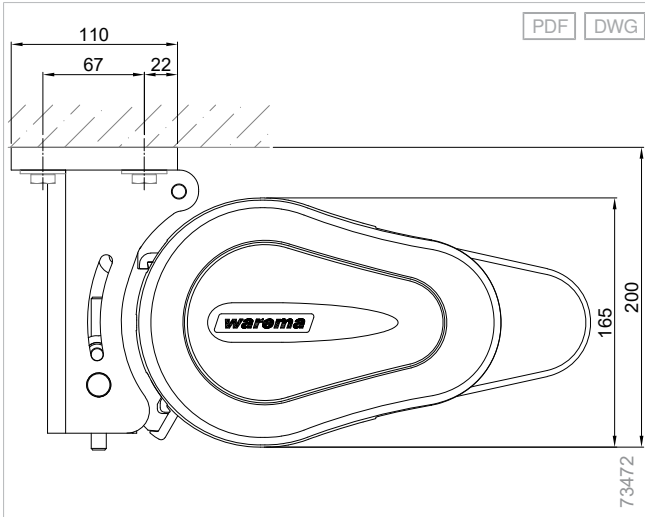
Supplementary accessories

Components

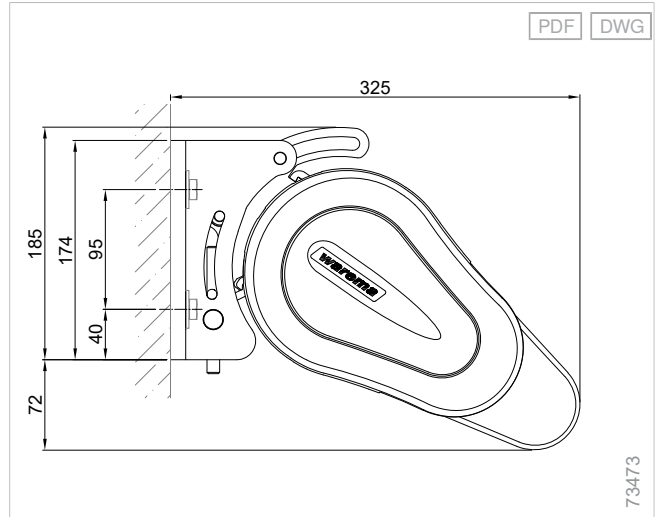
Drive variants

Standards

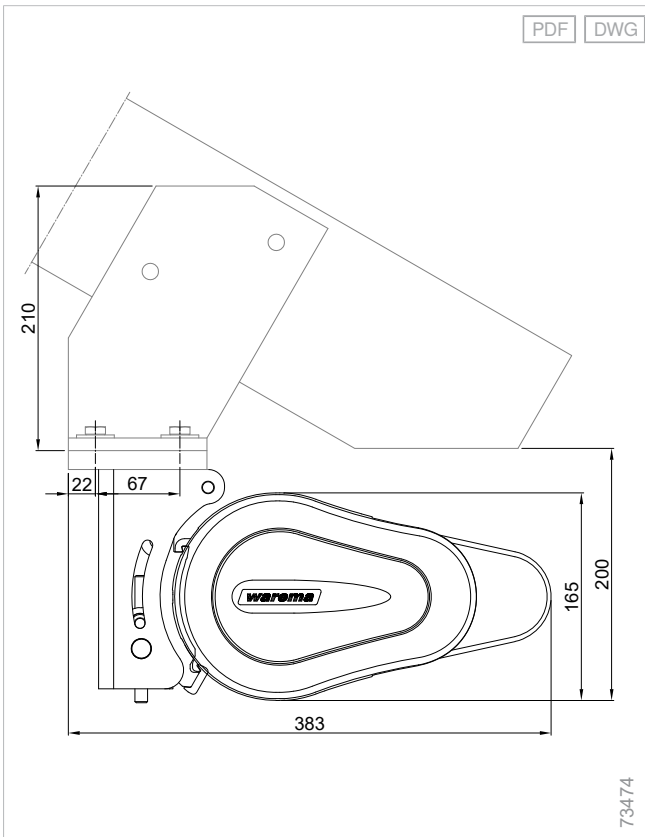
Ceiling installation with valance roller blind, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60



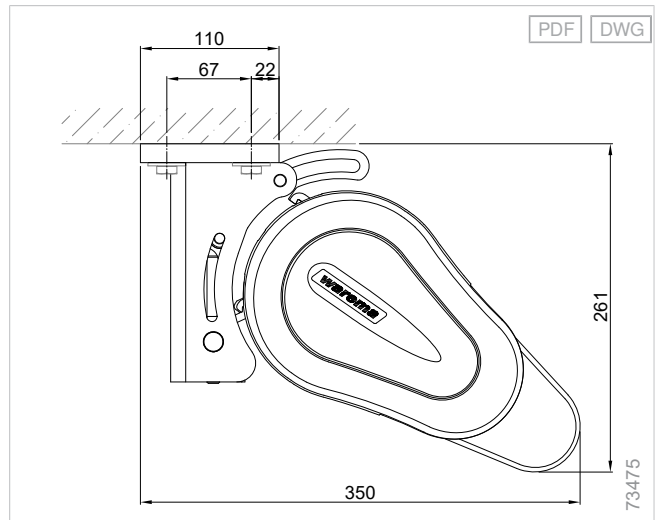
Wall installation with valance roller blind, inclination 30°, adjustable - K60



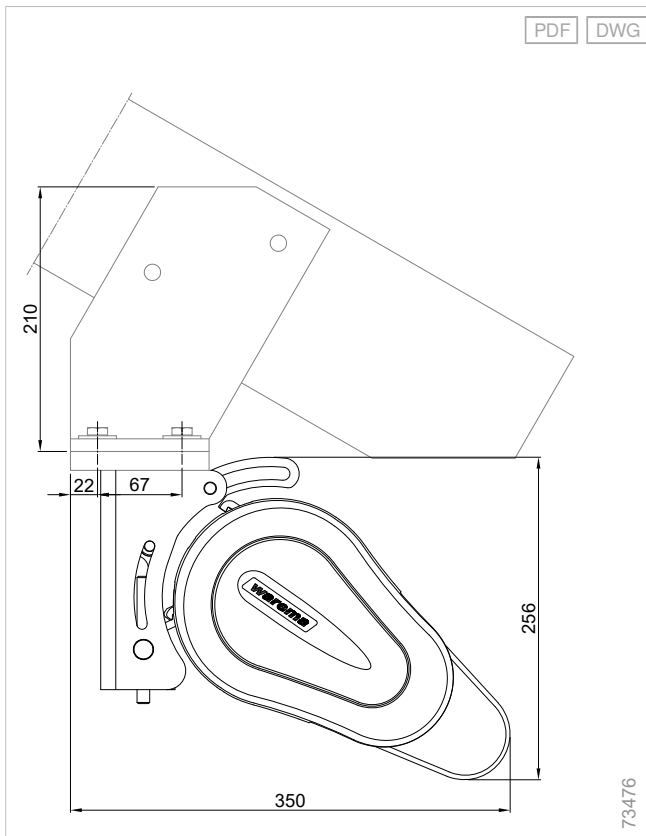
Rafter installation with valance roller blind, inclination 5°, adjustable - K60



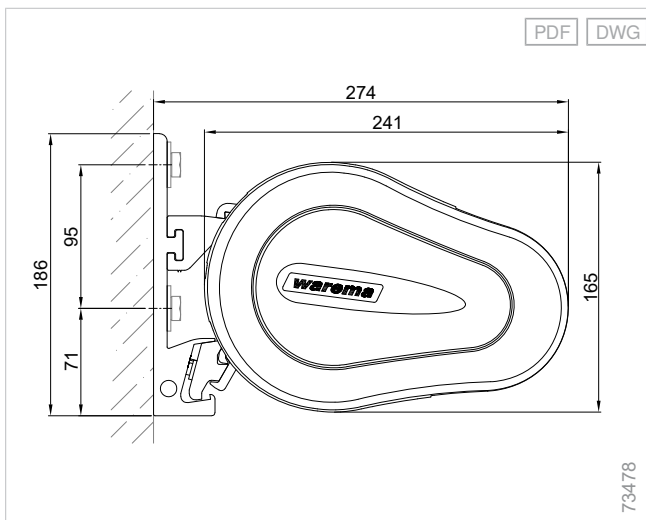
Ceiling installation with valance roller blind, inclination 30°, adjustable - K60



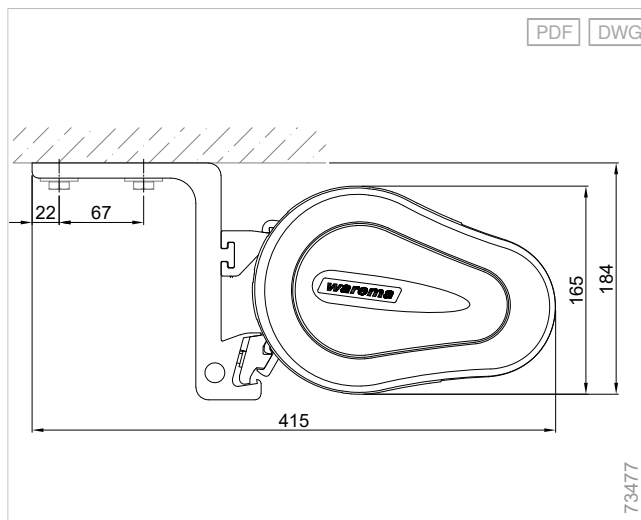
Rafter installation with valance roller blind, inclination 30°, adjustable - K60



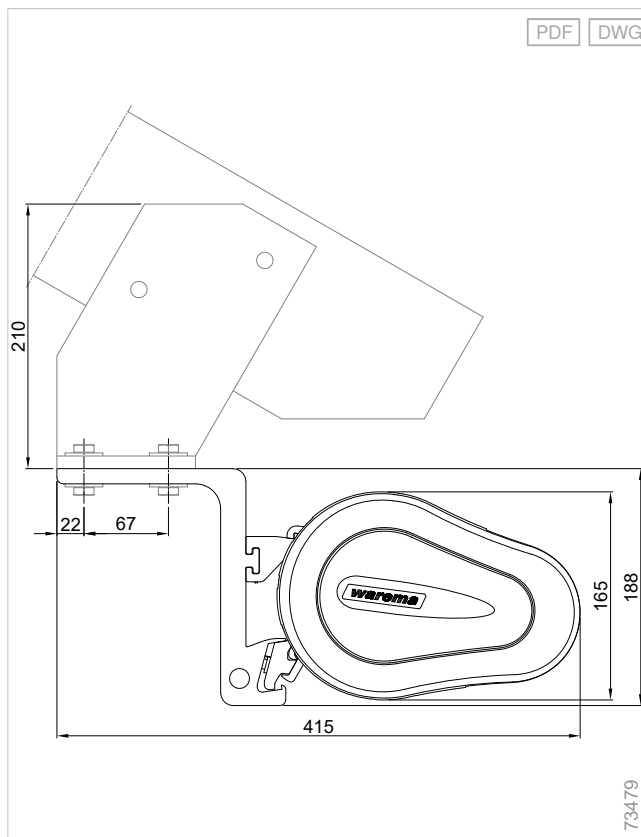
Wall installation, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60



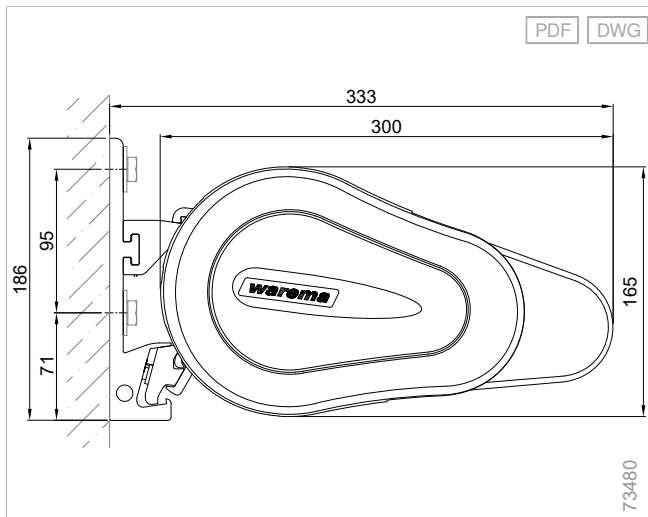
Ceiling installation, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60



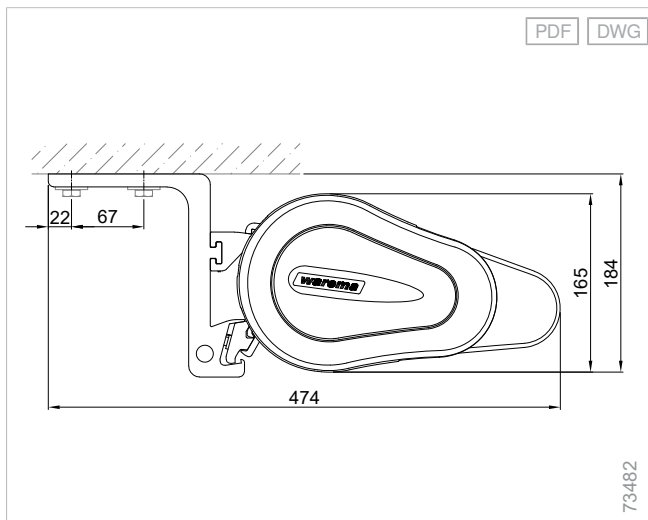
Rafter installation, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60



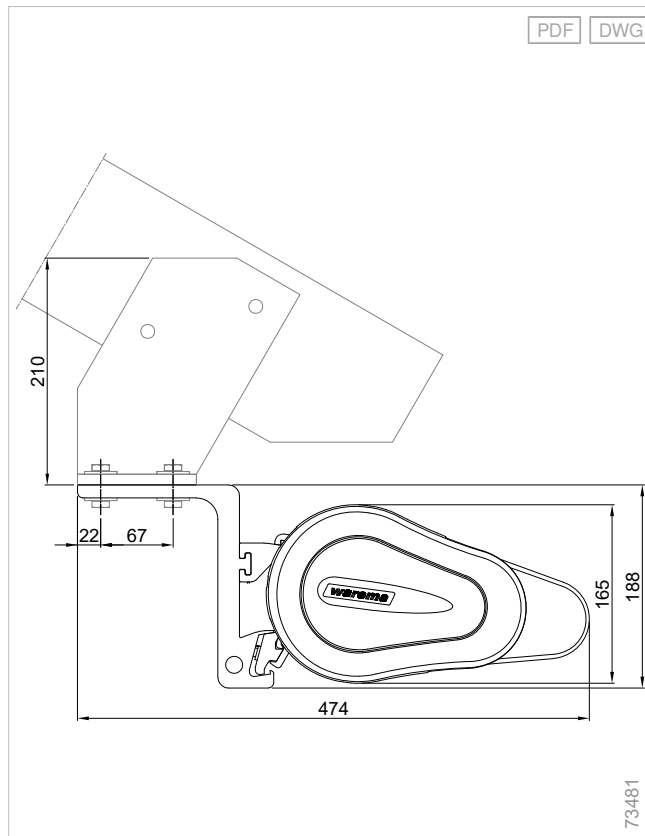
Wall installation with valance roller blind, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60



Ceiling installation with valance roller blind, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60



Rafter installation with valance roller blind, inclination approx. 5°, fixed - K60









# Cassette awnings Terrea

## Cassette awning Terrea K70

### Aesthetic

Premier design: Awarded the iF product design award 2014, the Terrea K70 sets a benchmark in design.

### Expansive

Generous shade provider: Ideally suited for shading large areas.

### Durable

Robust construction: The cassette optimally protects the fabric and articulated arms - stable brackets guarantee a secure hold.



### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	7000 mm
Maximum projection	4000 mm
Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm

### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036162](#)

### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/878218.pdf>

### WAREMA tools

[Console Planner](#)

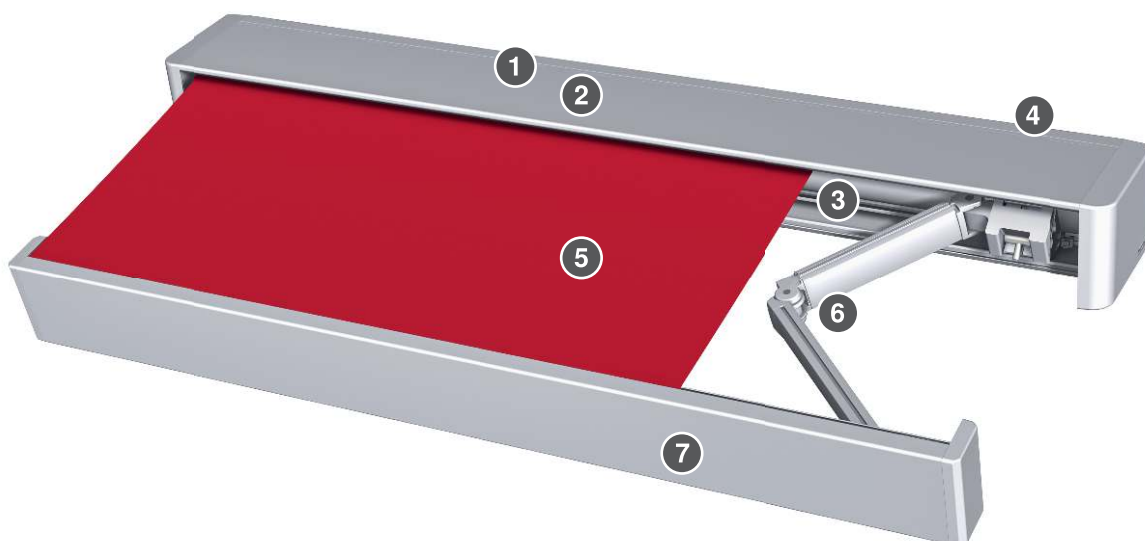
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

## Cassette awning Terrea K70



- 1 Cassette
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric bearing shell
- 4 Console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail

### Cassette

#### Cassette - K70

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Height	190 mm
Depth	240 mm

#### + Side cover

##### Cassette side cover - K70

Material	Diecast aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 78 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	78 mm

### Fabric bearing shell

#### Fabric bearing shell - K70

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

### Front rail

#### Front rail - K70

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	92 mm
Height	170 mm

#### + Side cover

##### Front rail side cover - K70

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

### Articulated arm

#### Articulated arm - K70

#### + Articulated arm profile

##### Articulated arm profile, front, 33x61 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	33 mm
Height	61 mm

##### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x68 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	35 mm
Height	68 mm

#### + Articulated arm seat

##### Tilting joint - K70

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

Tilting joint with windlock mechanism

#### + Power transmission

- Steel cable
- Link chain

+ Power transmission, optional

#### Segment

Material	Aluminium, extruded
----------	---------------------

#### Wall connection profile, optional

- Wall connection profile with small rain hood
- Wall connection profile with large rain hood

+ see "Wall connection profiles", Page 459

#### Console

##### Wall console type B - K70

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	220 mm
Height	181 mm
Depth	44 mm

##### Wall console type D - K70

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	520 mm
Height	181 mm
Depth	44 mm

##### Ceiling console type E - K70

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	220 mm
Height	230 mm
Depth	259 mm

##### Console for rafters type F - K70

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	220 mm
Height	480 mm
Depth	259 mm

#### Drive variants

- Motor

#### Motor

- Orea WT

#### Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

#### Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

#### Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

#### Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living control package
- WMS Wind sensor
- Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control
- Valance roller blind with motor and basic model
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Construction limit values

The indicated construction limit values and number of consoles relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor	Minimum order width	2210 mm	2730 mm	3230 mm	3740 mm	4250 mm	4760 mm
	Maximum order width	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	5500 mm
	Minimum group unit order width	4920 mm	5960 mm	6960 mm	7980 mm	9000 mm	
	Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	
Soltis 92 + Motor	Minimum order width	2210 mm	2730 mm	3230 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	2210 mm	2730 mm	3230 mm	3740 mm	4250 mm	
	Maximum order width	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	6000 mm	
	Minimum group unit order width	4920 mm	5960 mm	6960 mm	7980 mm		
	Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm		
Soltis 92 + Motor + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	2210 mm	2730 mm	3230 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			

Minimum width generally differs for **console type D**.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 24,5 - 26,5 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 35 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

Inclination angle for rain class 2: 14 - 35 °

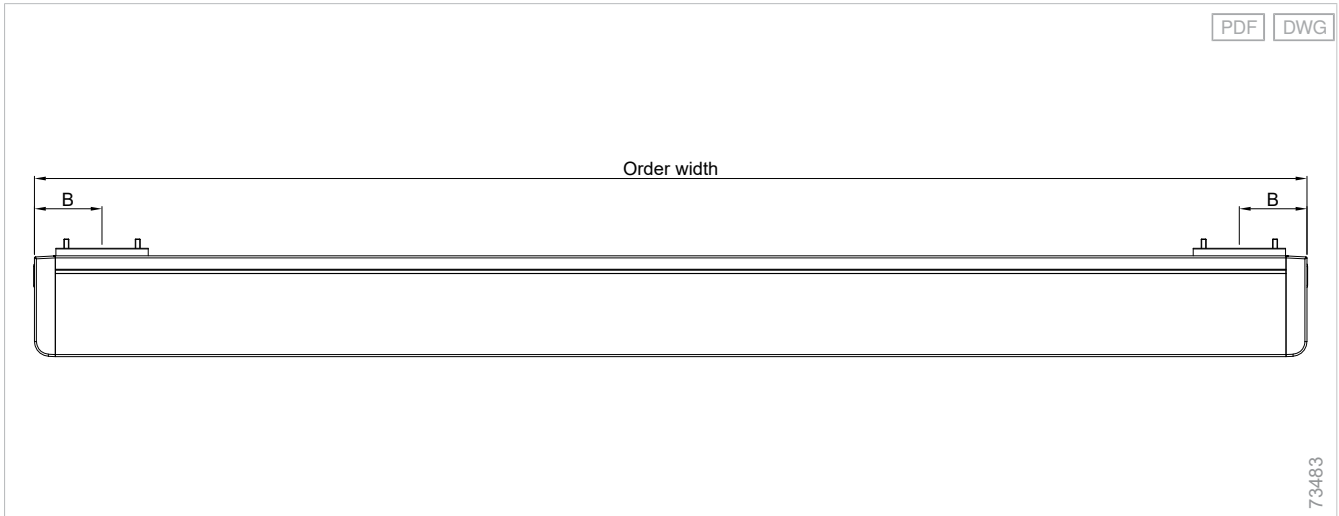
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .

## Dimension determination

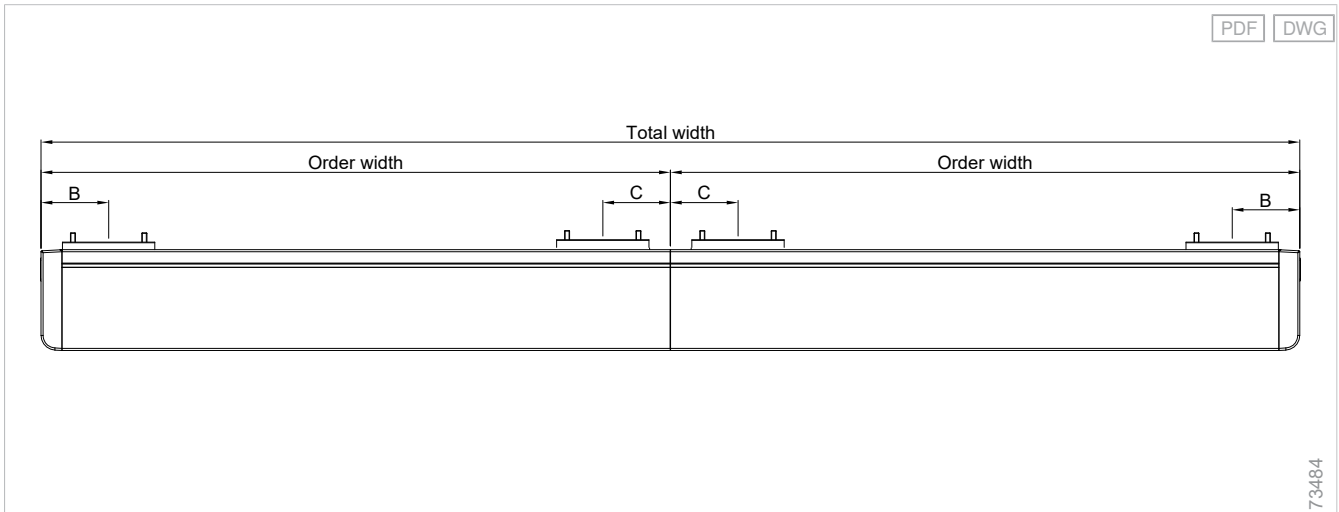
The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

When **installing group units in recesses**, additional space of at least 100 mm is required for installation.

### Individual unit - K70



### Group unit with slit cover blind - K70



## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection					
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	0 - 5500 mm	2	2	2	2	2	2
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	5501 - 7000 mm	2	2	2	2	2	
<b>Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	0 - 6000 mm	2	2	2	2	2	
Ceiling console / Wall console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	6001 - 7000 mm	2	2	2	2		

### Number of consoles, group unit

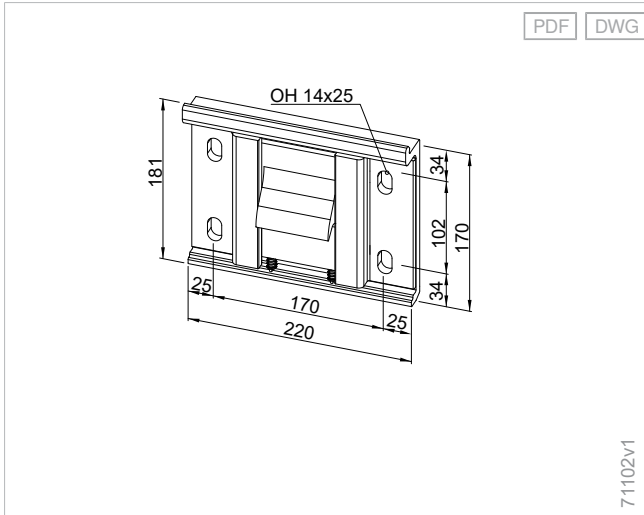
Configuration variants	Order width	Projection				
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>						
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	0 - 13500 mm	4	4	4	4	4
<b>Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories</b>						
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	0 - 13500 mm	4	4	4	4	

Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

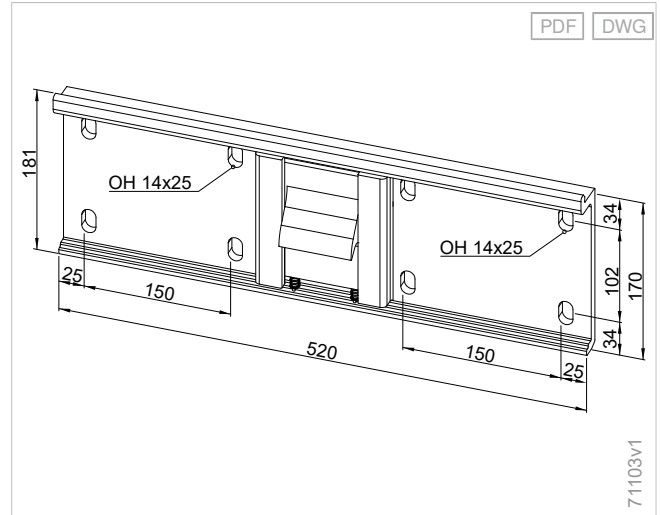
**Attention:** with **special arm positions** and console axis distances of > 5200 mm, a third console is required.

## Details

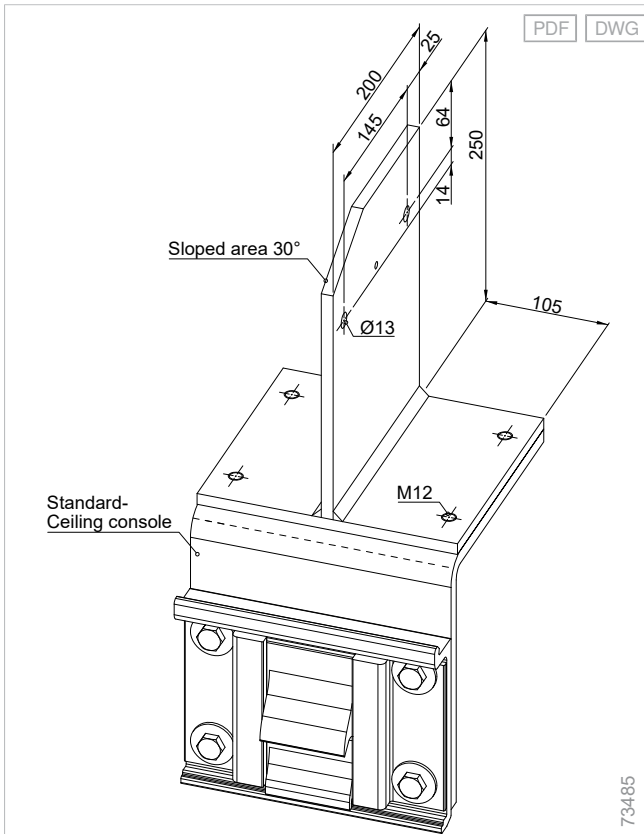
Wall console type B - K70



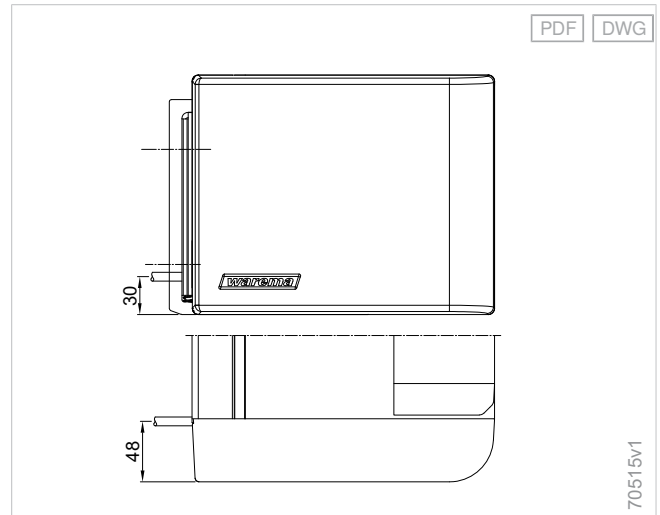
Wall console type D - K70



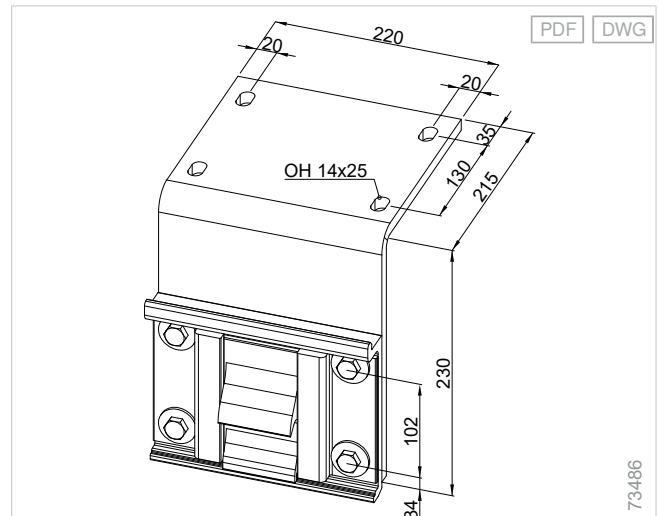
Console for rafters type F - K70



Cable exit - K70



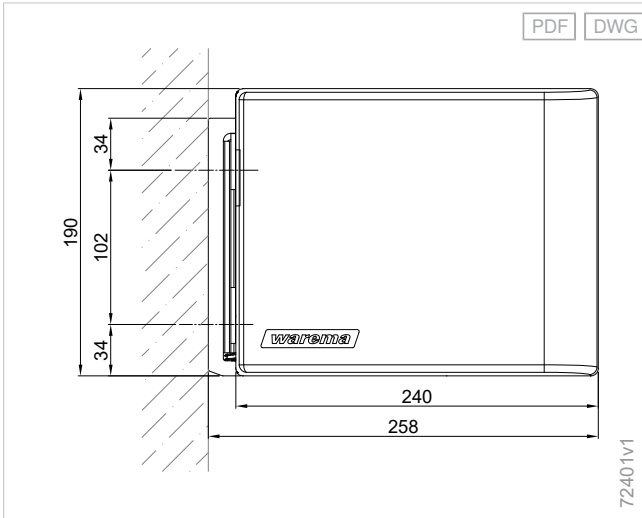
Ceiling console type E - K70



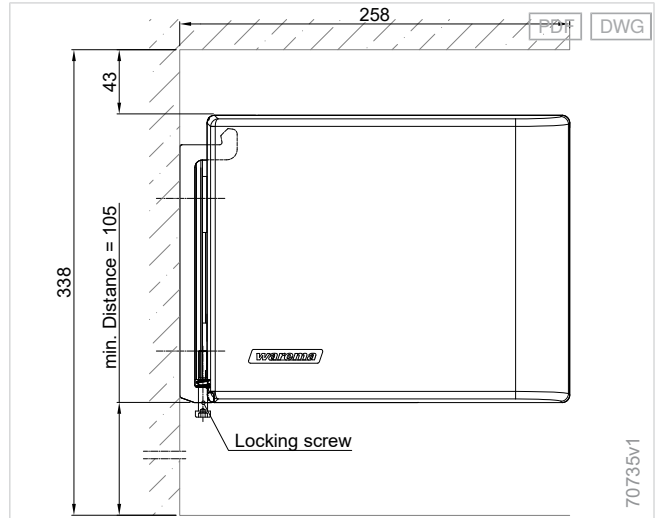


# Mounting examples

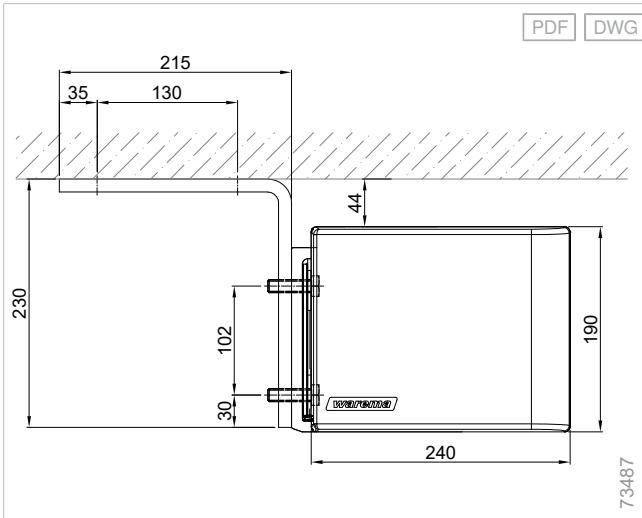
Wall installation - K70



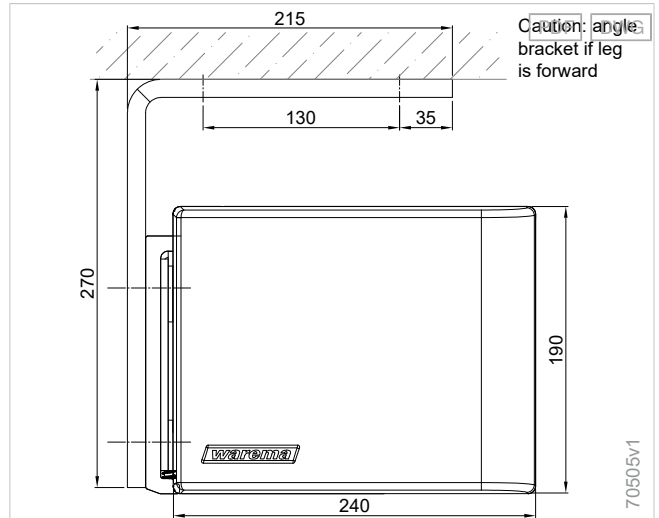
Shaft installation - K70



Ceiling installation, angle towards rear - K70



Cable exit - 550



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

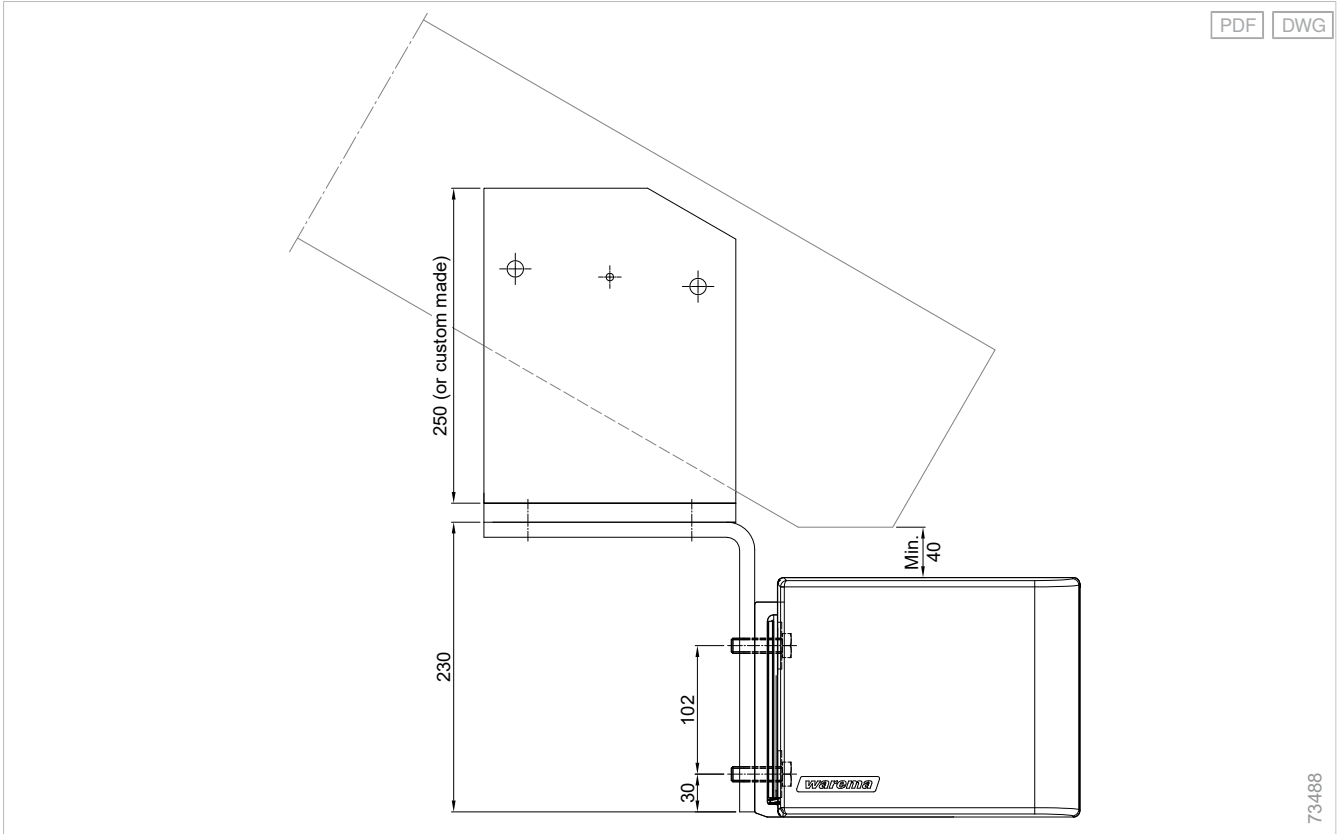
Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards



73488

# Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open

Articulated arm awning Terrea 530.....	76
Articulated arm awning Terrea 700S.....	86
Articulated arm awning Terrea G60.....	96

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open

### Articulated arm awning Terrea 530

#### Cost-optimised

The solid basic model with high quality standards for medium-sized balconies or patios.

#### Durable

More protection, less soiling: Optional rain hood protects the fabric and articulated arms from the weather.

#### Adjustable

Plenty of sun shading in tight spaces: With the LB model, both narrow and deep shaded areas can be created.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6000 mm
Maximum projection	3500 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036157](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/878199.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Console Planner](#)

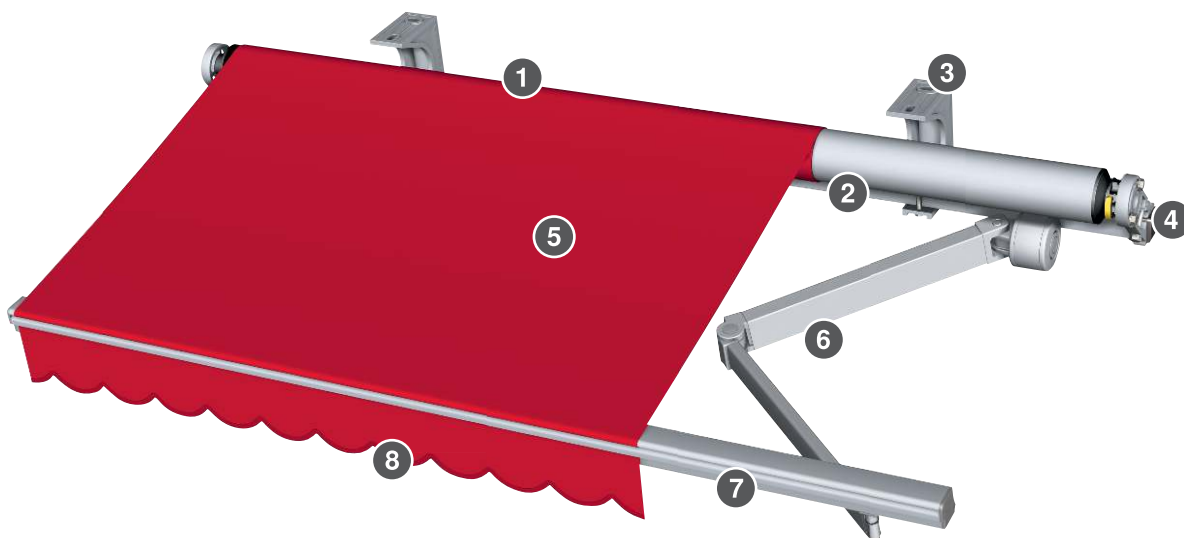
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

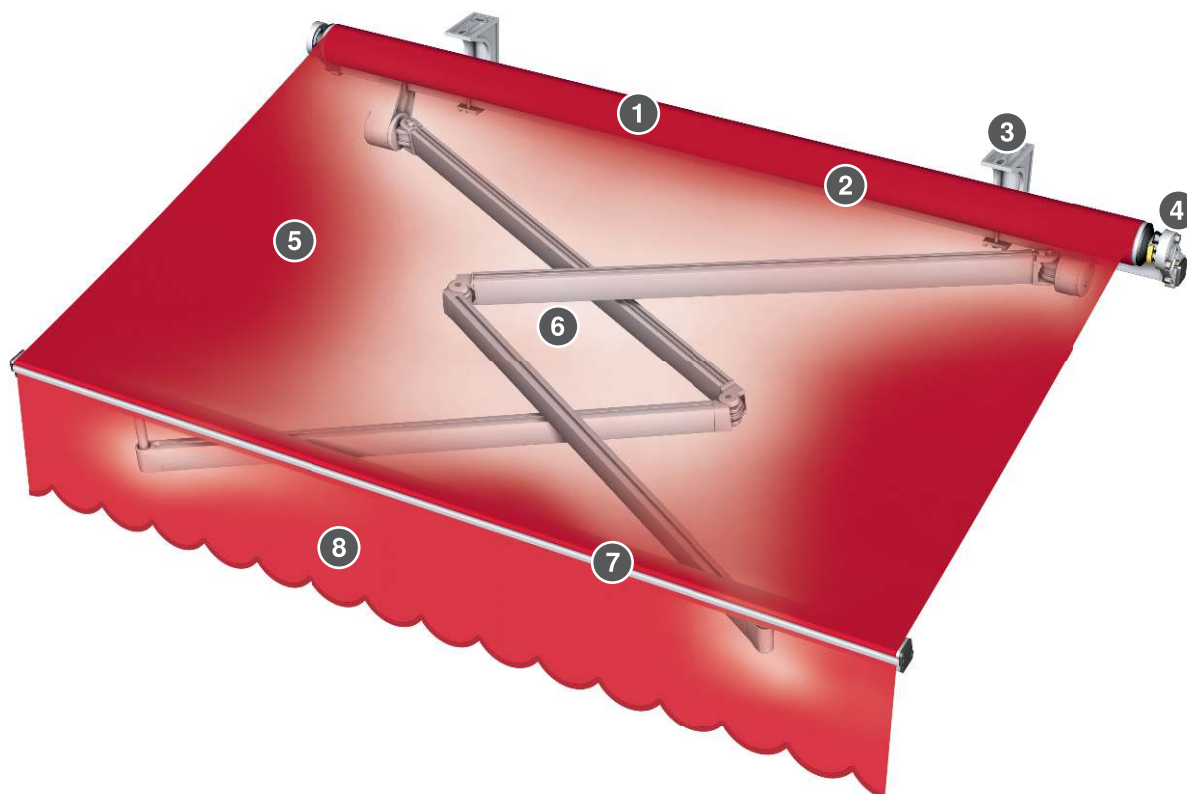
Articulated arm awning Terrea 530



- 1 Shaft
- 2 Bearing tube
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric shaft console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Valance

Articulated arm awning Terrea 530 LB



- 1 Shaft
- 2 Bearing tube
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric shaft console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Valance

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 78 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	78 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - 530

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	53 mm
Height	48 mm

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - 530

Material	Plastic
Material colour	Black

## Articulated arm

### Articulated arm - 530

#### + Articulated arm profile

### Articulated arm profile 27x54 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	27 mm
Height	54 mm

#### + Articulated arm seat

### Articulated arm seat - 530

Material	Aluminium, permanent mould cast
Surface	Powder-coated

#### + Power transmission

- Textile tape

## Rain hood, optional

### Rain hood - 530

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	290 mm
Height	44 mm

Dimensions, notes For models with side covers, the rain hood is 50 mm wider than the awning width.

#### + Side cover

### Rain hood side cover - 530

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Bearing tube

### Bearing tube

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Profile	Square tube
Width	40 mm
Height	40 mm

## Valance

### Valance - G60/H60/530

Height	180 mm
--------	--------

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Valance, optional

### LB model with valance - G60/H60/530

Height	270 mm
--------	--------

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Fabric shaft console

### Fabric shaft console - 530

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

#### + Side cover

### Bearing tube side cover - 530/700S

Material	Plastic
Material colour	Black

## Console

### Wall/ceiling console type A/E - 530

Material	Aluminium, permanent mould cast
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	65 mm
Height	222 mm
Depth	125 mm

### Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	85 mm
Height	220 mm
Depth	93 mm

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Wall console type C - 530

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	210 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	135 mm

Wall console type A/E with mounting plate, small (steel).

### Wall console type D - 530

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	330 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	135 mm

Wall console type A/E with mounting plate, large (steel).

### Console for rafters type F - 530

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	65 mm
Height	450 mm
Depth	125 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

## Motor

- LT50

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MP (WMS)
- W-MP (EWFS)

## Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear, optional

- Screw gear with limit stop

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- RAL 9016 traffic white, satin finish
- RAL 9006 white aluminium, satin finish
- W 4916 Anthracite iron mica effect, fine texture

Colours, optional:

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl
- Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living control package
- WMS Wind sensor
- LB model
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Patio frame
- Protective fabric cover

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Construction limit values

The indicated construction limit values and number of consoles relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>						
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor	Minimum order width	1890 mm	2390 mm	2890 mm	3380 mm	
	Maximum order width	6000 mm	6000 mm	6000 mm	6000 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank	Minimum order width	1940 mm	2440 mm	2940 mm	3430 mm	
	Maximum order width	6000 mm	6000 mm	6000 mm	6000 mm	
Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 / Soltis 92 + Motor	Minimum order width	1890 mm	2390 mm	2890 mm		
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm		
Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 / Soltis 92 + Crank	Minimum order width	1940 mm	2440 mm	2940 mm		
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm		
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b>						
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + LB model	Minimum order width	1270 mm	1520 mm	1770 mm	2010 mm	2550 mm
	Maximum order width	1930 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm	3420 mm	4000 mm
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + LB model	Minimum order width	1320 mm	1570 mm	1820 mm	2060 mm	2600 mm
	Maximum order width	1930 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm	3420 mm	4000 mm
Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 / Soltis 92 + Motor + LB model	Minimum order width	1270 mm	1520 mm	1770 mm		
	Maximum order width	1930 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm		
Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 / Soltis 92 + Crank + LB model	Minimum order width	1320 mm	1570 mm	1820 mm		
	Maximum order width	1930 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm		

**LB model:** Front rail seats and articulated arm seats are always height offset on the left on the non-drive end.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 16 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment



## Inclination

Inclination angle: 0 - 45 °

Inclination angle, optional: 46 - 90 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

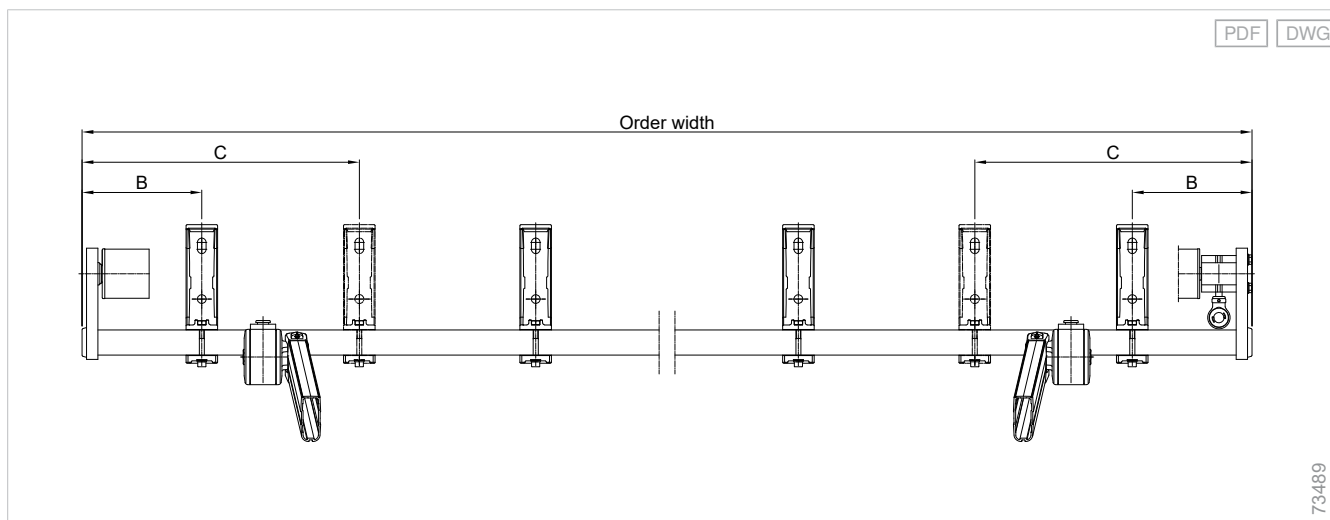
Inclination angle for rain class 2: 14 - 45 °

- Inclination angle with **LB model** 5° - 10°
- Inclination angle with **rain hood** 0° - 30°
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance ±5°.

## Dimension determination

The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

### Individual unit - 530



## Quantity determination

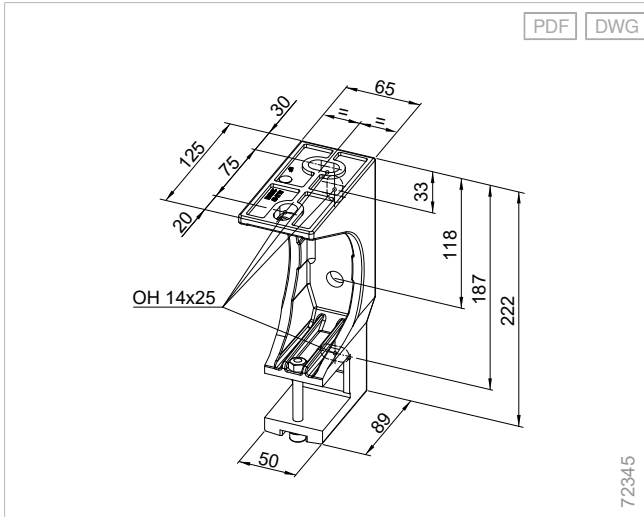
### Number of consoles, individual unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection				
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>						
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	0 - 4000 mm	2	2	2	2	
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	4001 - 6000 mm	3	3	3	5	
<b>Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories</b>						
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters + LB model	0 - 4000 mm	2	2	2	2	4

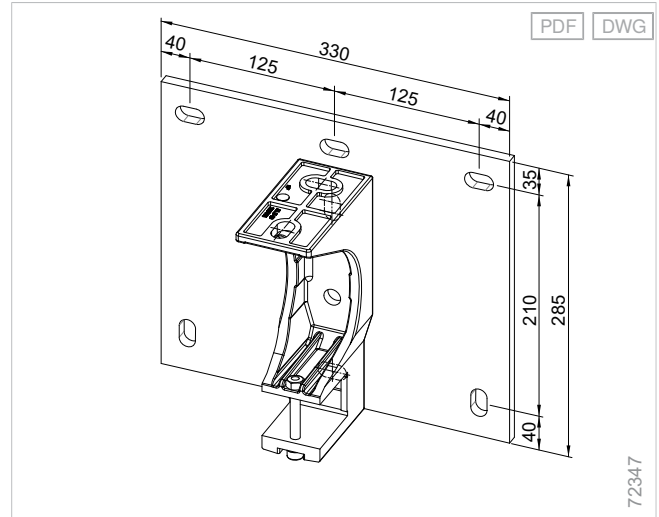
Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

## Details

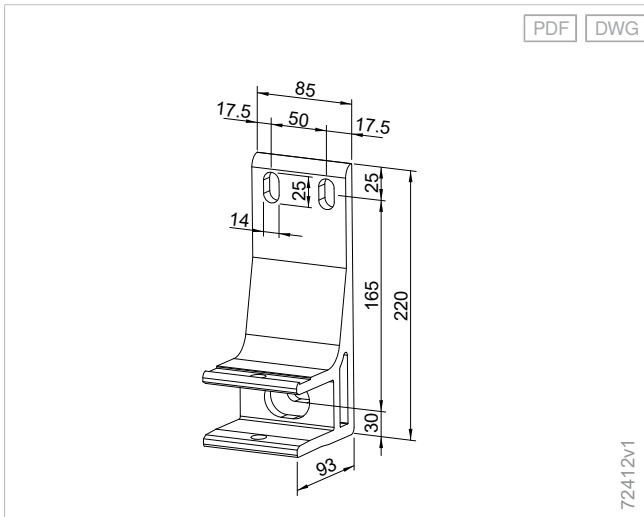
Wall/ceiling console type A/E - 530



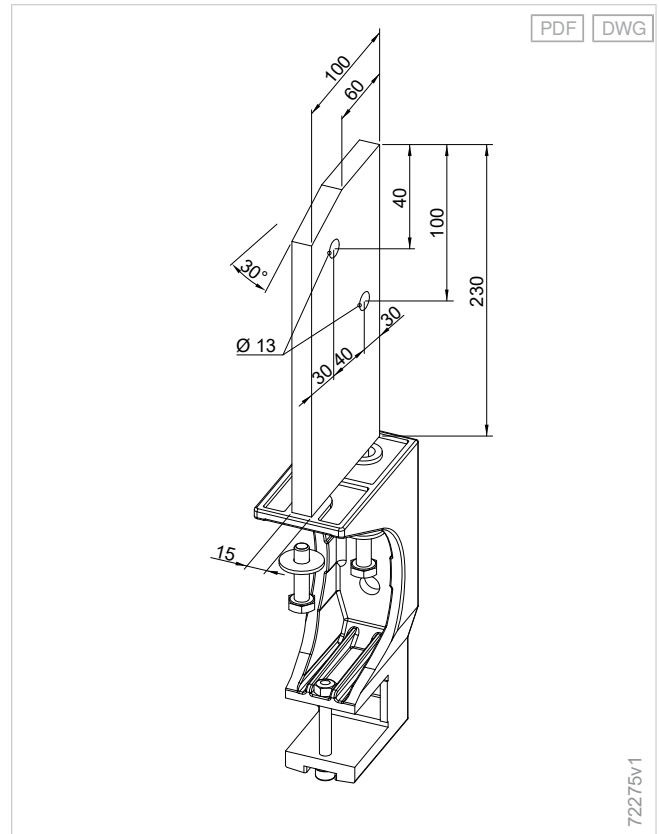
Wall console type D mounting plate - 530



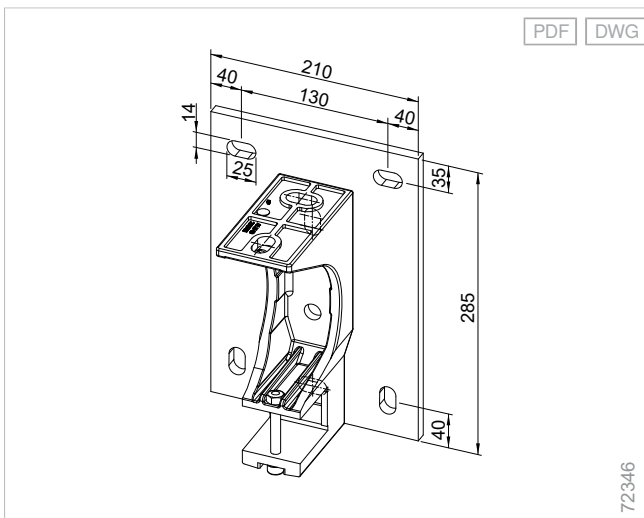
Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60



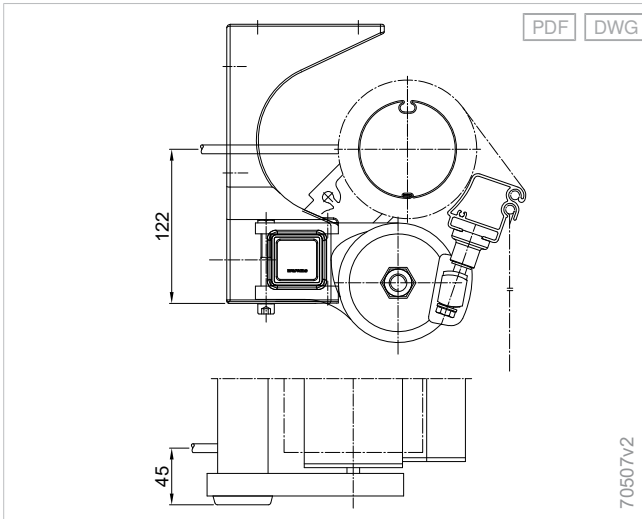
Console for rafters type F - 530



Wall console type C with mounting plate - 530

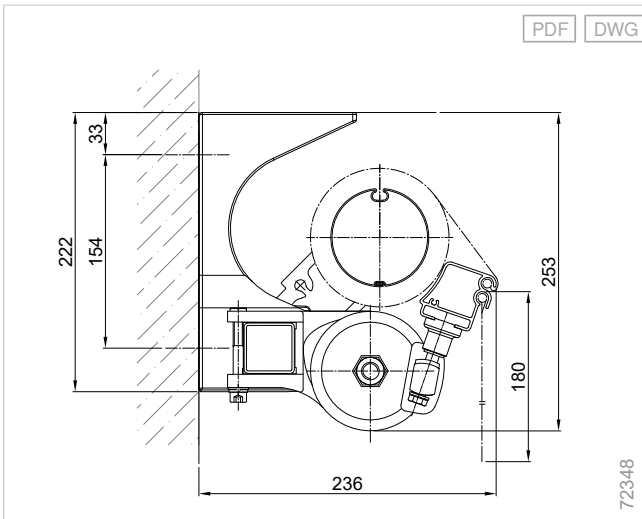


### Cable exit - 530

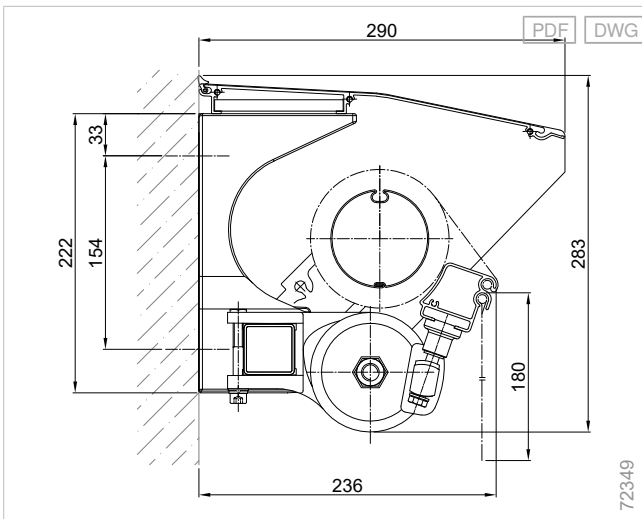


## Mounting examples

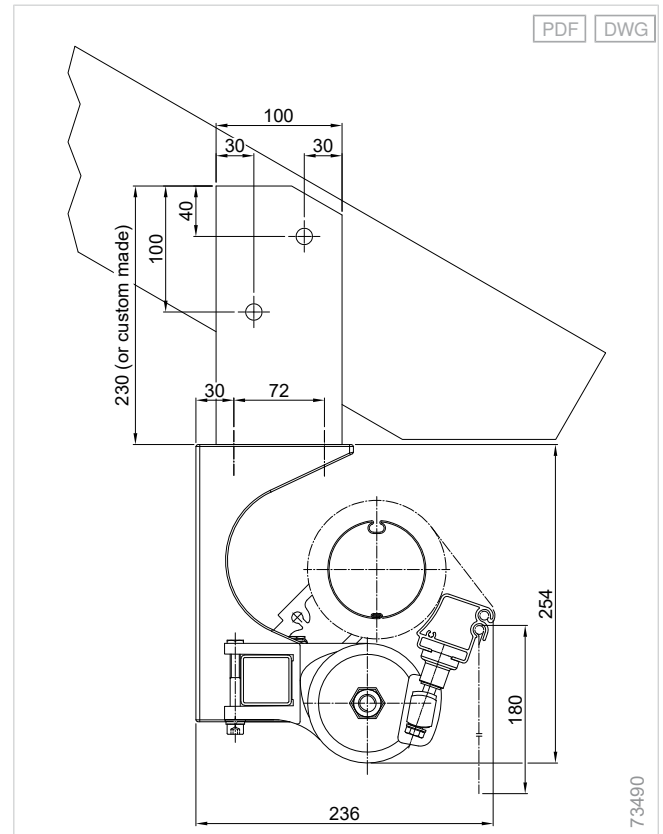
### Wall installation - 530



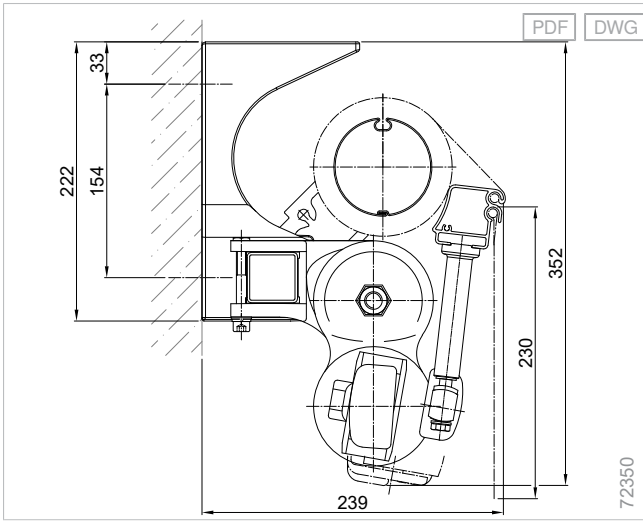
### Wall installation with rain hood - 530



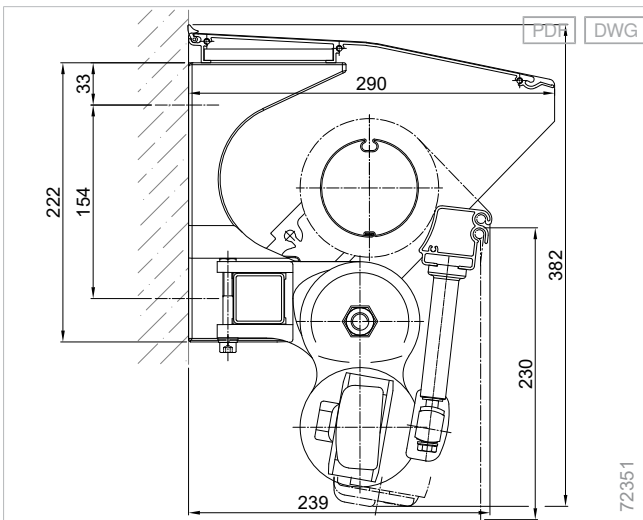
### Rafter installation - 530



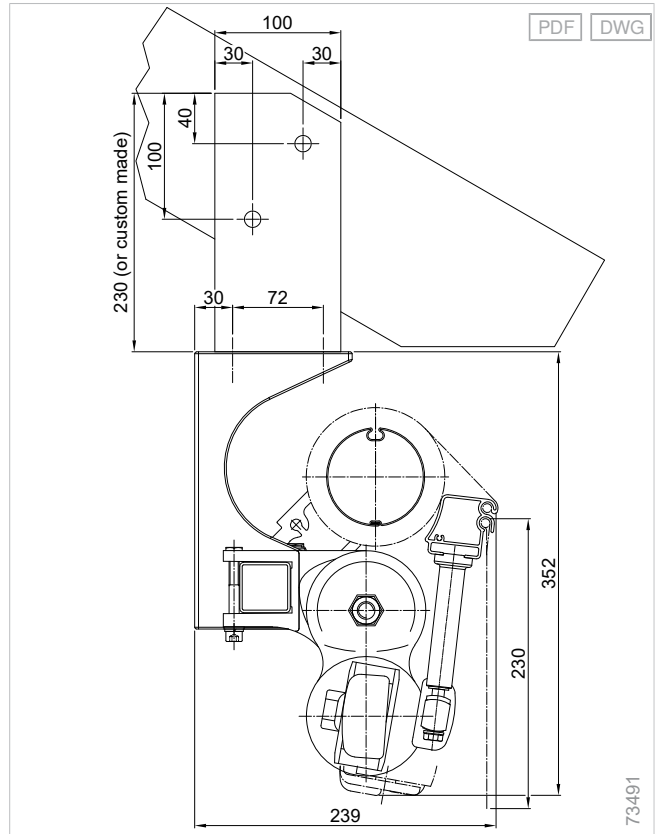
Wall installation - 530 LB



Wall installation with rain hood - 530 LB



Rafter installation - 530 LB







## Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open

### Articulated arm awning Terrea 700S

#### Discreetly integrated

Flush appearance: Perfect and protected integration into the facade so that the appearance is not interrupted from the outside - with individual cover panels on request.

#### Durable

More protection, less soiling: The fabric and articulated arms are optimally protected from the weather in the shaft.

#### Space-saving

When retracted, the patio area can be fully used.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	5960 mm
Maximum projection	3000 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036154](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/878178.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Console Planner](#)

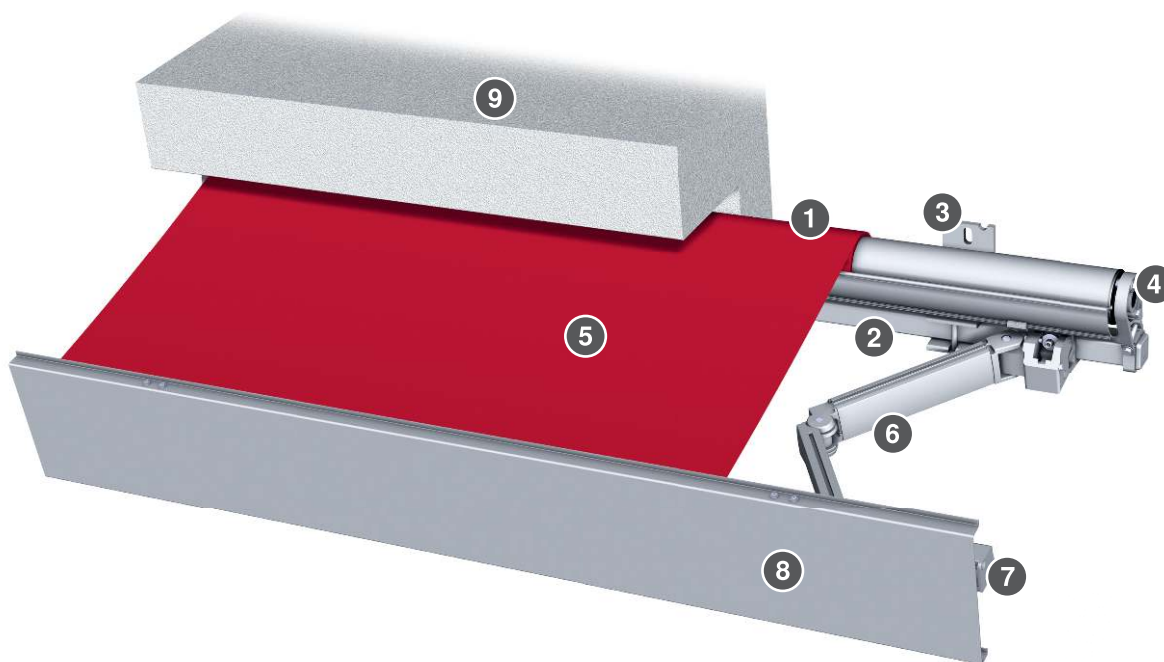
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

## Articulated arm awning Terrea 700S



- 1 Shaft
- 2 Bearing tube
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric shaft console
- 5 Fabric

- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Front cover panel
- 9 On-site shaft

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	85 mm

### Fabric bearing shell

#### Fabric bearing shell - 700S

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

### Front rail

#### Front rail - 700S

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	57 mm
Height	48 mm

#### + Side cover

#### Front rail side cover - 700S

Material	Plastic
Material colour	Black

### Front rail, optional

#### Front rail - 700S with front cover panel

Material	Aluminium, folded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	26 mm
Height	230 mm

Dimensions, notes Weight, max. 2 kg per running metre  
For order widths of up to 4000 m, the cover panel is supplied as a single piece. Larger widths are joined.

### Articulated arm

#### Articulated arm - 700S

#### + Articulated arm profile

#### Articulated arm profile, front, 33x61 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	33 mm
Height	61 mm

#### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x68 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	35 mm
Height	68 mm

## + Articulated arm seat

### Tilting joint - 700S

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

Tilting joint with windlock mechanism

## + Power transmission

- Steel cable
- Link chain

## + Power transmission, optional

### Segment

Material	Aluminium, extruded
----------	---------------------

## Bearing tube

### Bearing tube

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Profile	Square tube
Width	40 mm
Height	40 mm

## Fabric shaft console

### Fabric shaft console - 700S

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

## + Side cover

### Bearing tube side cover - 530/700S

Material	Plastic
Material colour	Black

## Console

### Wall console type A - 700S

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	85 mm
Height	191 mm
Depth	94 mm

## Construction limit values

The construction limit values and number of consoles indicated in this document relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>					
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor	Minimum order width	1850 mm	2370 mm	2870 mm	3650 mm
	Maximum order width	5960 mm	5960 mm	5960 mm	5960 mm
Soltis 92 + Motor	Minimum order width	1850 mm	2370 mm	2870 mm	
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm	

- Projection of 1500 mm up to 2500 mm: **Units with widths from 5001 mm** include a **third articulated arm**.
- Projection 3000 mm: **Units with widths from 5281 mm** include a **third articulated arm**.

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- Orea WT

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living control package
- WMS Wind sensor
- Fabric lettering, painted

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325



## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 16 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 20 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

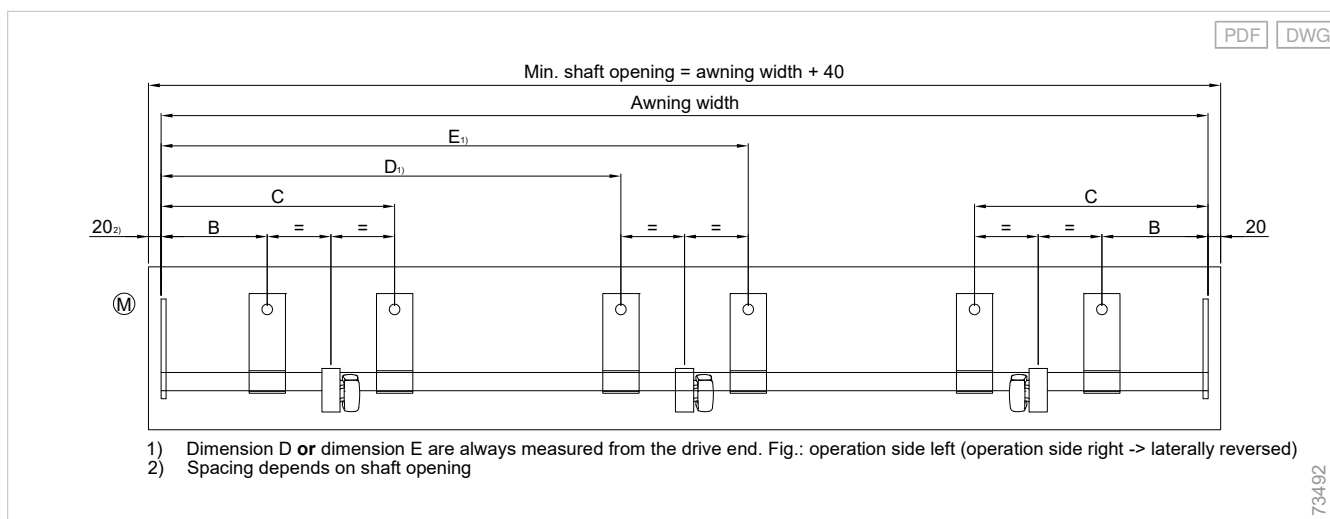
Inclination angle for rain class 2: 10 - 20 °

- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .

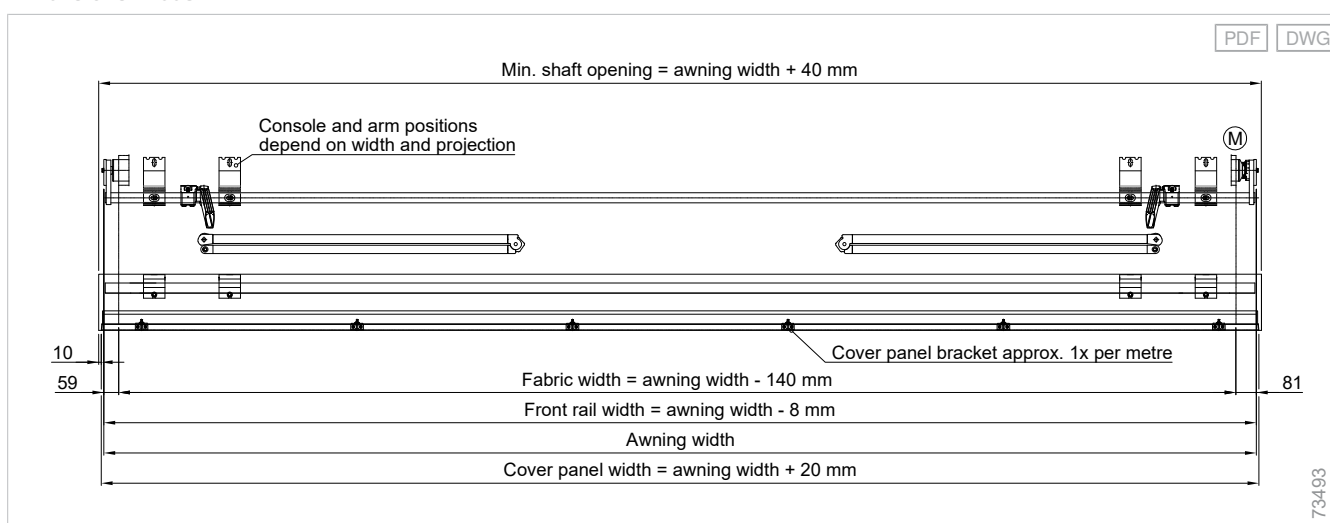
## Dimension determination

The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

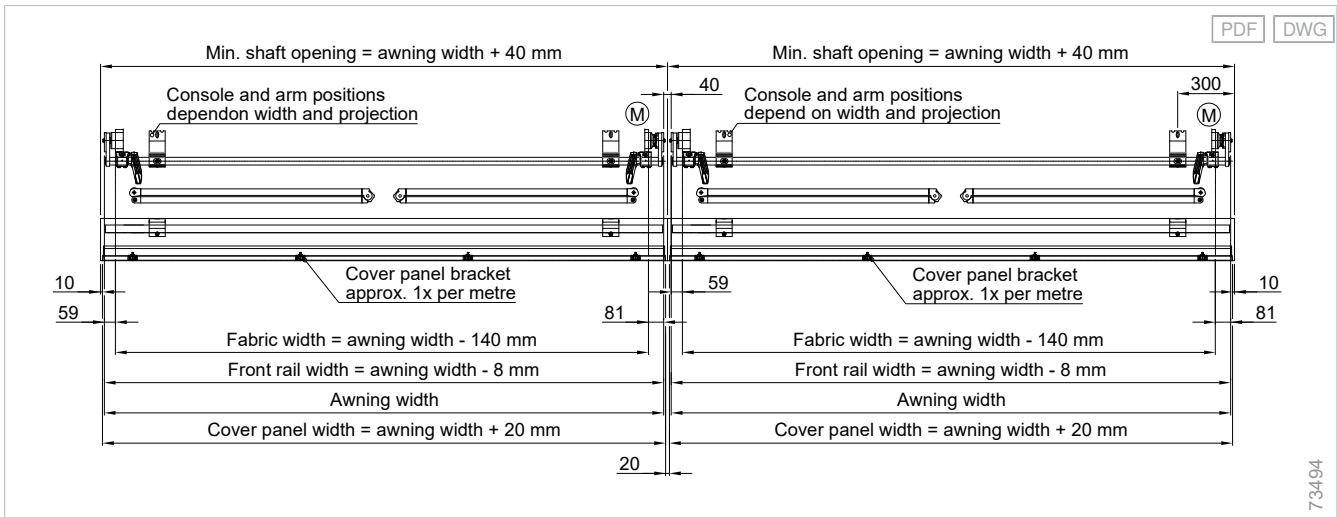
### Individual unit - 700S



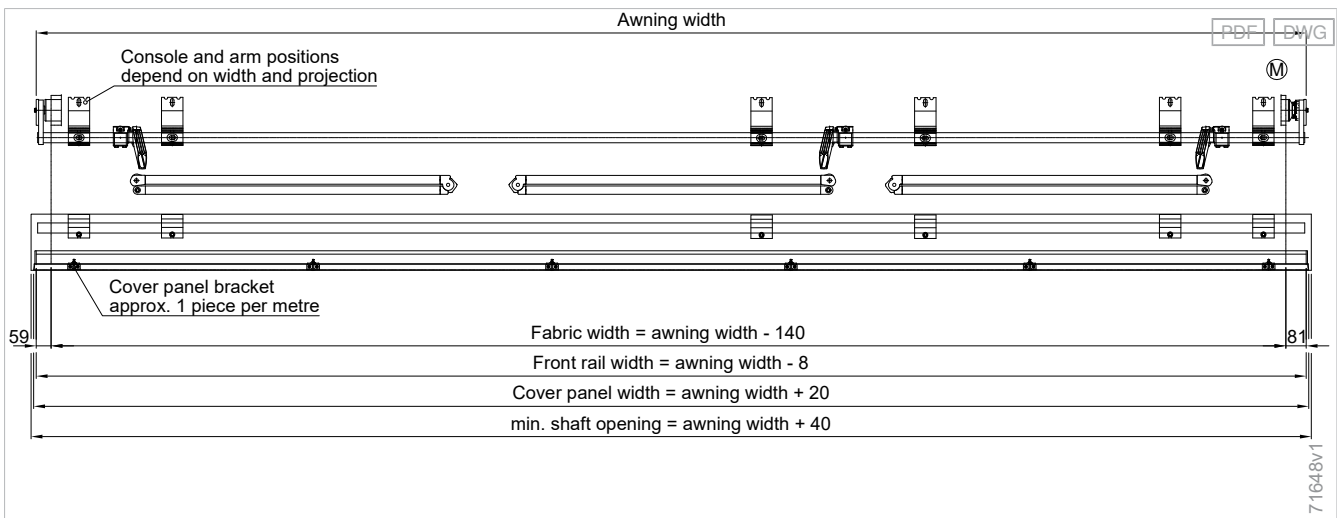
### Dimensions - 700S



## Serial mounting - 700S



## Individual unit with three articulated arms- 700S



## Quantity determination

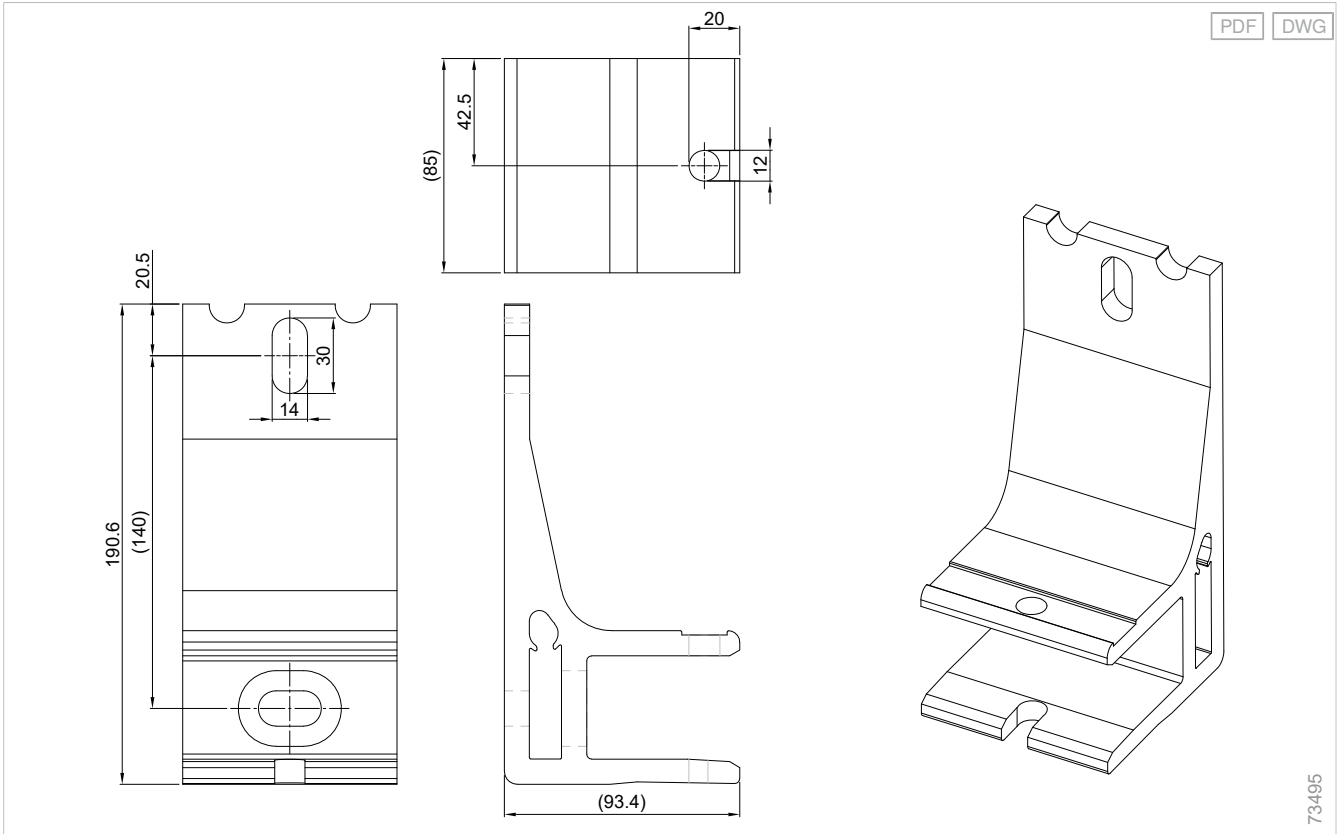
### Number of consoles, individual unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection			
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>					
Wall console	0 - 5000 mm	2	2	2	4
Wall console	5001 - 5280 mm	4	4	6	4
Wall console	5281 - 5960 mm	4	4	6	6

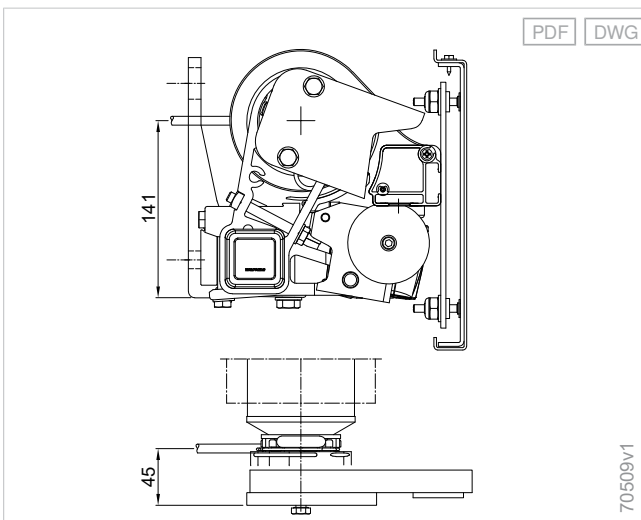
Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25).

## Details

### Wall console type A - 700S



### Cable exit - 700S



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

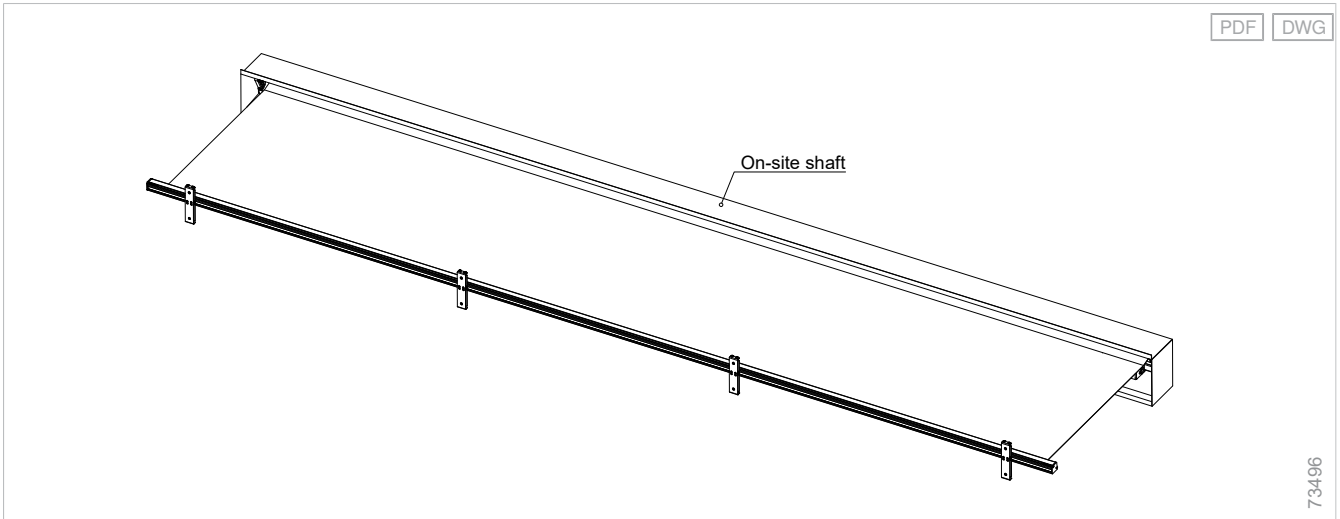
Supplementary  
accessories

Components

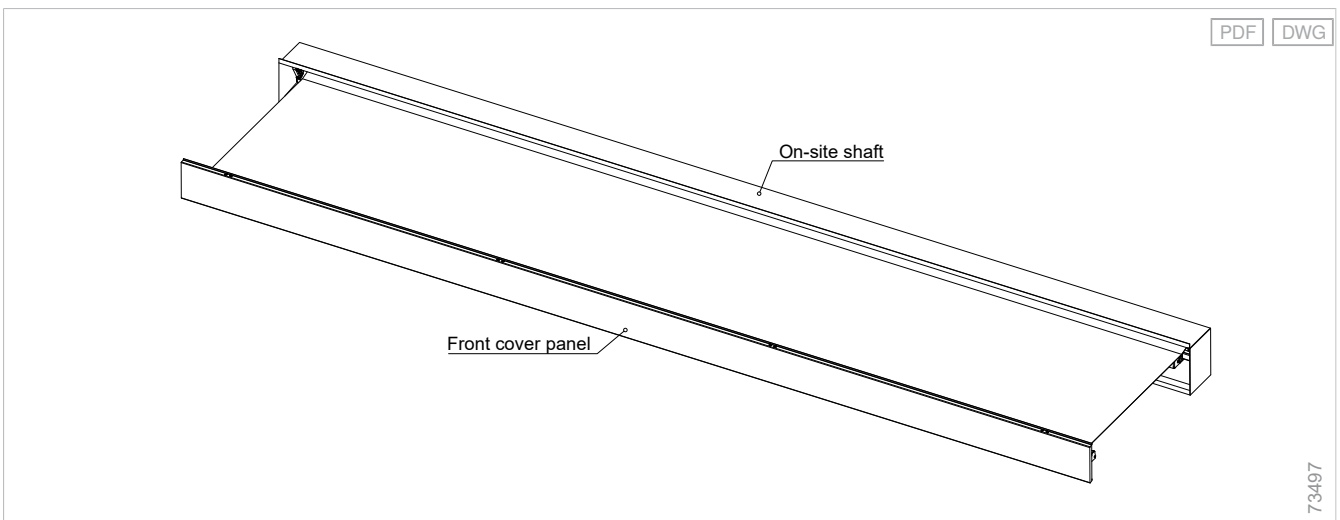
Drive  
variants

Standards

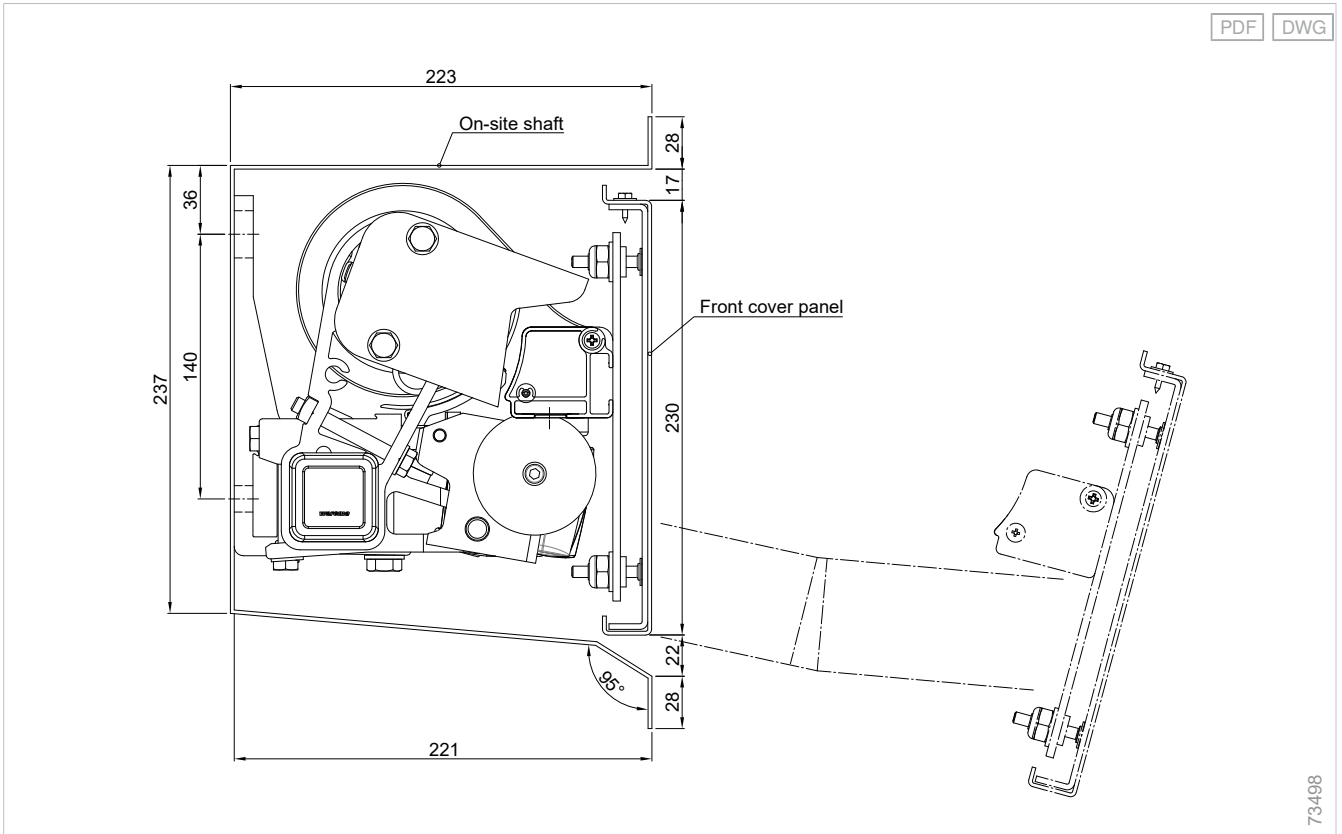
Front rail with screw-on plate and bracket - 700S



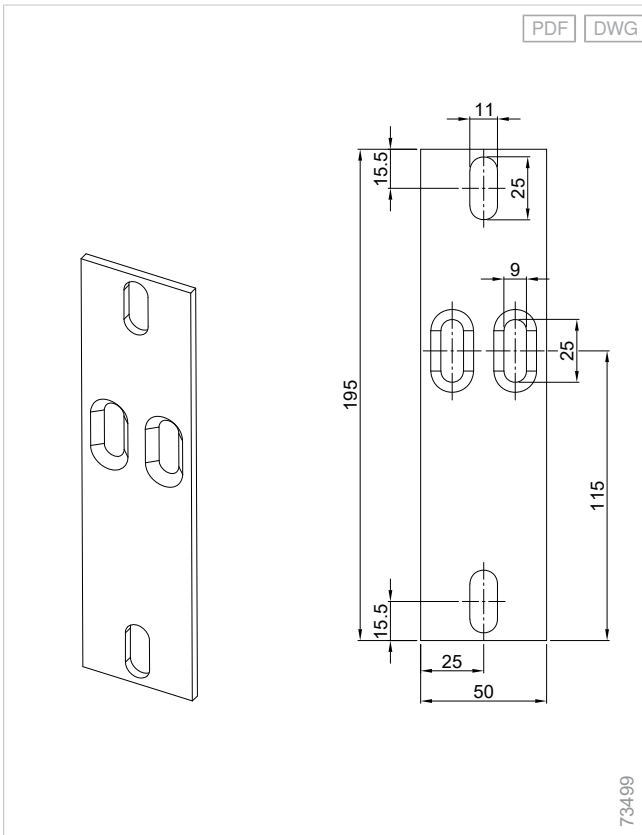
Front rail with front cover panel - 700S



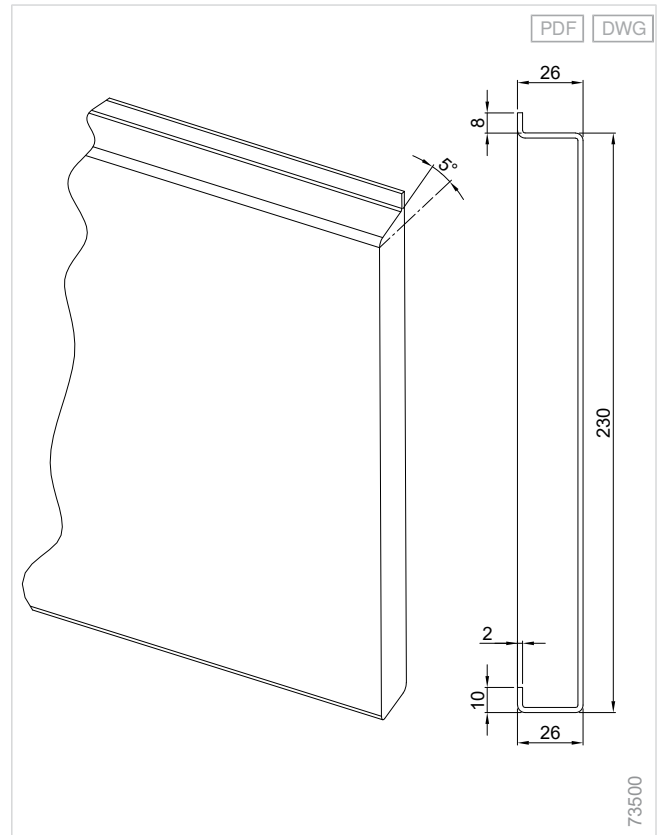
### Shaft installation with front cover panel - 700S



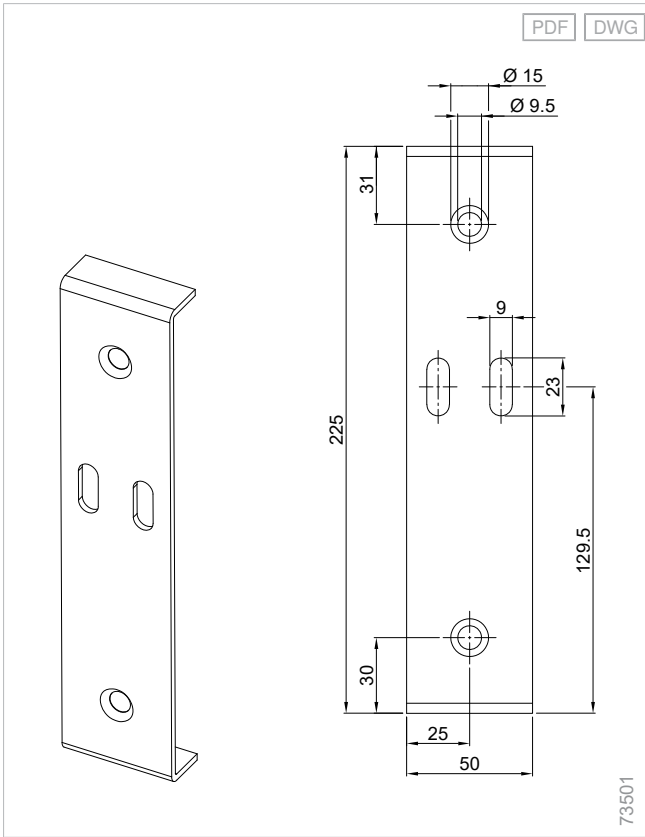
### Screw-on plate - 700S



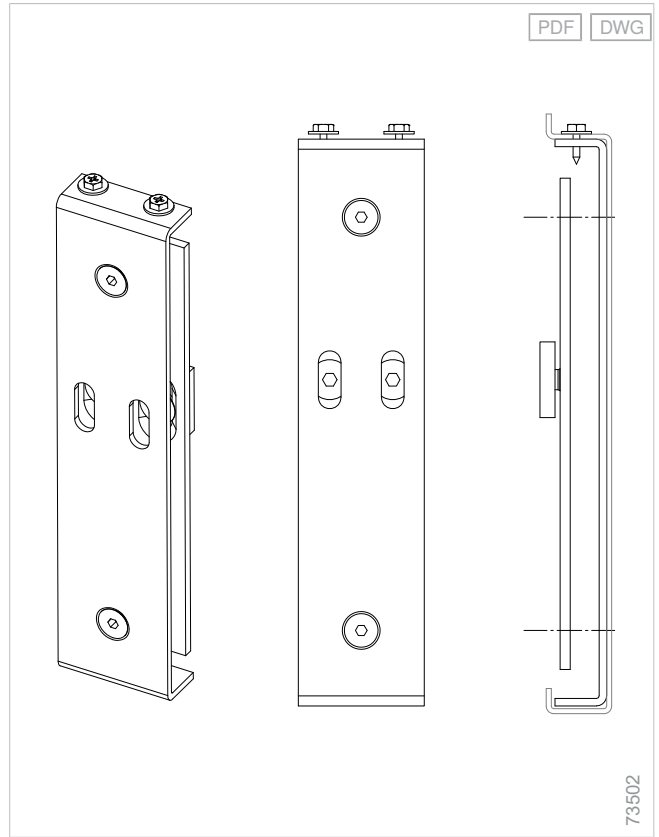
### Front cover panel - 700S



Bracket - 700S



Cover panel fixing, complete - 700S







## Articulated arm awnings Terrea, open

### Articulated arm awning Terrea G60

#### Expansive

Shades even larger areas in a protected area while still appearing slender.

#### Customisable

High-grade patio equipment: Accessories such as LED lighting or the radiant heater increase comfort and usefulness.

#### Glare-free

Optimal light with privacy: Retractable valance roller blind and adjustable inclination protect you from low sun and extend your visual privacy.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	7000 mm
Maximum projection	4000 mm
Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036155](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/2012934.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Console Planner](#)

[Sun Shading Planner](#)

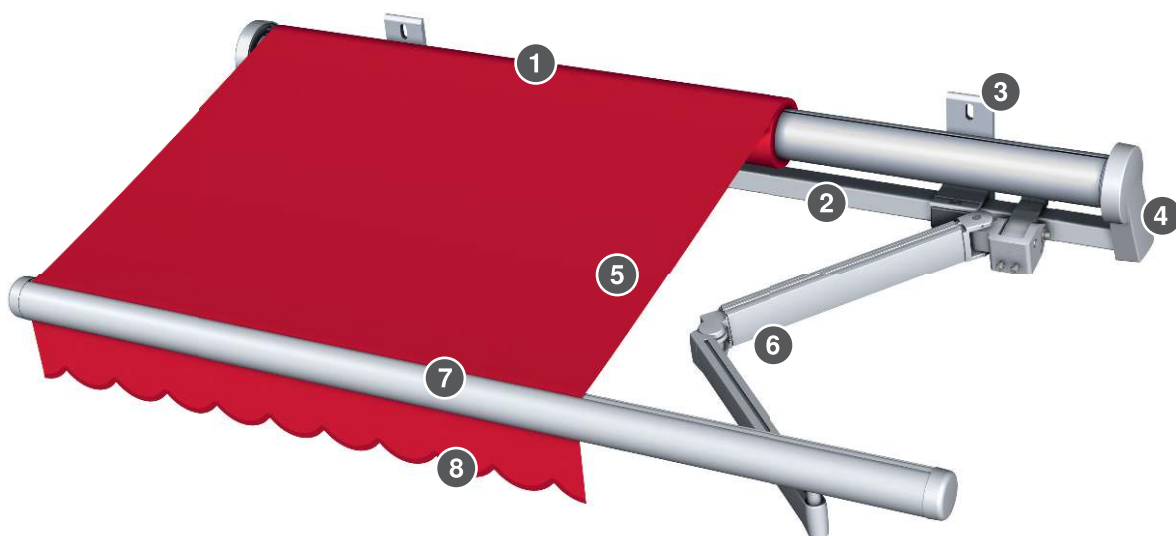
[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)



# Components

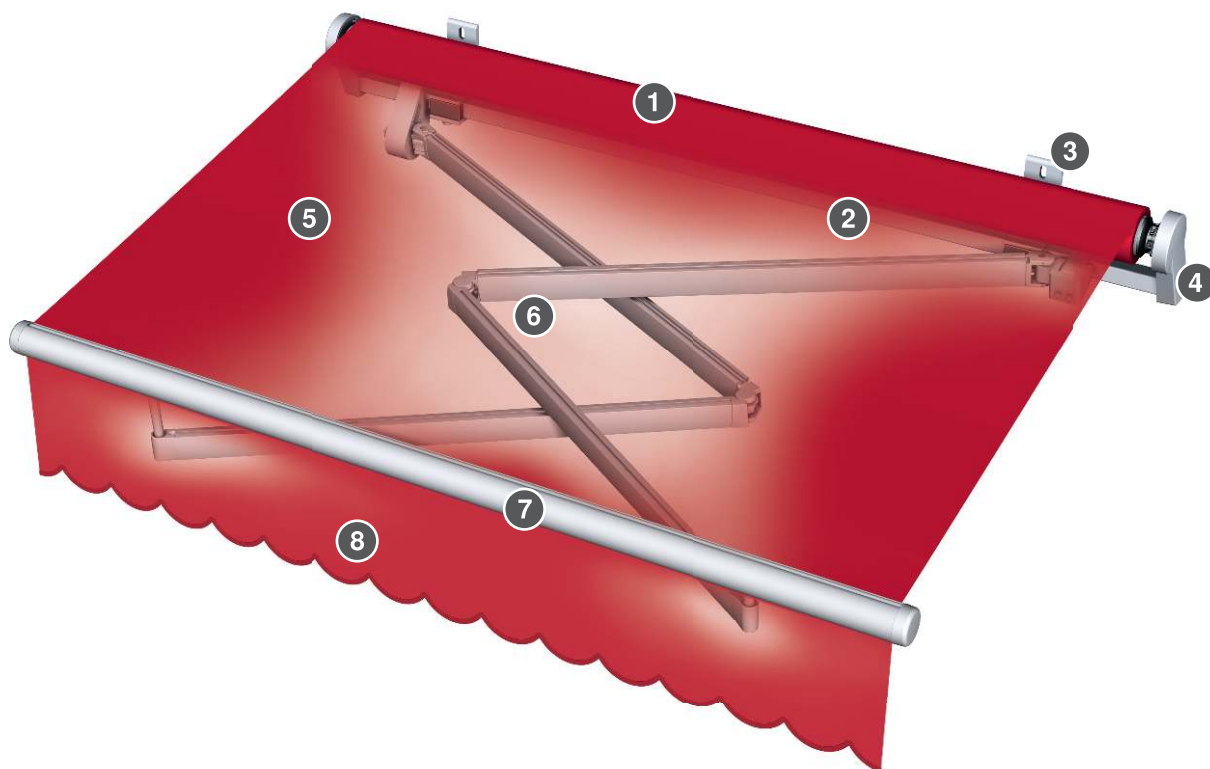
Articulated arm awning Terrea G60



- 1 Shaft
- 2 Bearing tube
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric shaft console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Valance

Articulated arm awning Terrea G60 LB



- 1 Shaft
- 2 Bearing tube
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric shaft console

- 5 Fabric
- 6 Articulated arm
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Valance

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	85 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - G60/H60 Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	70 mm

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - G60/H60 Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Front rail, optional

### Front rail - G60/H60 with valance roller blind Ø 90 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	90 mm

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - G60/H60 Ø 90 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Articulated arm

### Articulated arm - G60

#### + Articulated arm profile

### Articulated arm profile, front, 33x61 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	33 mm
Height	61 mm

### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x68 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	35 mm
Height	68 mm

#### + Articulated arm seat

### Articulated arm seat - G60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

#### + Power transmission

- Steel cable
- Link chain

#### + Power transmission, optional

### Segment

Material	Aluminium, extruded
----------	---------------------

## Bearing tube

### Bearing tube

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Profile	Square tube
Width	40 mm
Height	40 mm

## Valance

### Valance - G60/H60/530

Height	180 mm
--------	--------

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

### Valance, optional

### LB model with valance - G60/H60/530

Height	270 mm
--------	--------

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Fabric shaft console

### Fabric shaft console - G60/H60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

#### + Side cover

### Fabric shaft console side cover - G60

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Console

### Wall console type A - G60/H60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Height	220 mm
Depth	93 mm

### Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	85 mm
Height	220 mm
Depth	93 mm

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Wall console type C - G60/H60

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	210 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	103 mm

Wall console type A with mounting plate, small (steel).

### Wall console type D - G60/H60

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	330 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	103 mm

Wall console type A with mounting plate, large (steel).

### Ceiling console type E - G60/H60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Height	260 mm
Depth	159 mm

### Console for rafters type F - G60/H60

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Height	490 mm
Depth	159 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

## Motor

- LT50

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MP (WMS)
- W-MP (EWFS)

## Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with free wheel at the lower limit point

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl
- Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living control package
- WMS Wind sensor
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control
- Valance roller blind with motor and basic model
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Turning gear
- Fabric lettering, painted
- LB model
- Patio frame
- Protective fabric cover

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Construction limit values

The indicated construction limit values and number of consoles relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2390 mm	2890 mm	3400 mm	4180 mm	4690 mm
	Maximum order width	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm
	Minimum group unit order width	4600 mm	5640 mm	6640 mm	7660 mm	8950 mm	9970 mm
	Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm	3440 mm	4220 mm	4730 mm
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302 + Motor	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2390 mm	2890 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302 + Crank	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2390 mm	2890 mm	3400 mm	4180 mm	
	Maximum order width	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	
	Minimum group unit order width	4600 mm	5640 mm	6640 mm	7660 mm	8950 mm	
	Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm	3440 mm	4220 mm	
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Turning gear	Minimum order width	2110 mm	2630 mm	3130 mm	3640 mm	4420 mm	
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6000 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + Turning gear	Minimum order width	2160 mm	2680 mm	3180 mm	3690 mm	4470 mm	
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6000 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Turning gear / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	2110 mm	2630 mm	3130 mm	3640 mm	4420 mm	
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	5500 mm	4500 mm	

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + Turning gear / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	2160 mm	2680 mm	3180 mm	3690 mm	4470 mm	
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	5500 mm	4500 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + LB model	Minimum order width	1180 mm	1440 mm	1690 mm	1940 mm	2470 mm	2720 mm
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm	3430 mm	4210 mm	4720 mm
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + LB model	Minimum order width	1220 mm	1480 mm	1730 mm	1980 mm	2510 mm	2760 mm
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm	3430 mm	4210 mm	4720 mm
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + LB model / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1180 mm	1440 mm	1690 mm	1940 mm	2470 mm	
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm	3430 mm	4210 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + LB model / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1220 mm	1480 mm	1730 mm	1980 mm	2510 mm	
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm	3430 mm	4210 mm	
Soltis 92 + Motor + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2390 mm	2890 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 + Crank + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Motor + Turning gear	Minimum order width	2110 mm	2630 mm	3130 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Crank + Turning gear	Minimum order width	2160 mm	2680 mm	3180 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 + Motor + Turning gear / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	2110 mm	2630 mm	3130 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 + Crank + Turning gear / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	2160 mm	2680 mm	3180 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Motor + LB model	Minimum order width	1180 mm	1440 mm	1690 mm			
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm			
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Crank + LB model	Minimum order width	1220 mm	1480 mm	1730 mm			
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm			

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
Soltis 92 + Motor + LB model / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1180 mm	1440 mm	1690 mm			
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm			
Soltis 92 + Crank + LB model / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1220 mm	1480 mm	1730 mm			
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm			

**Lacquered fabric** not possible in combination with a fabric bearing shell or valance roller blind.

**Minimum width:**

- Increased by 270 mm for rafter installation and projection 3000 mm
- Increased by 270 mm for LB model rafter installation with valance roller blind and projection 3000 mm

**LB model:**

- Front rail seats and articulated arm seats are always height offset on the non-drive end.
- LB model not possible with turning gear.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 16 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 40 °

Inclination angle, optional: 41 - 85 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

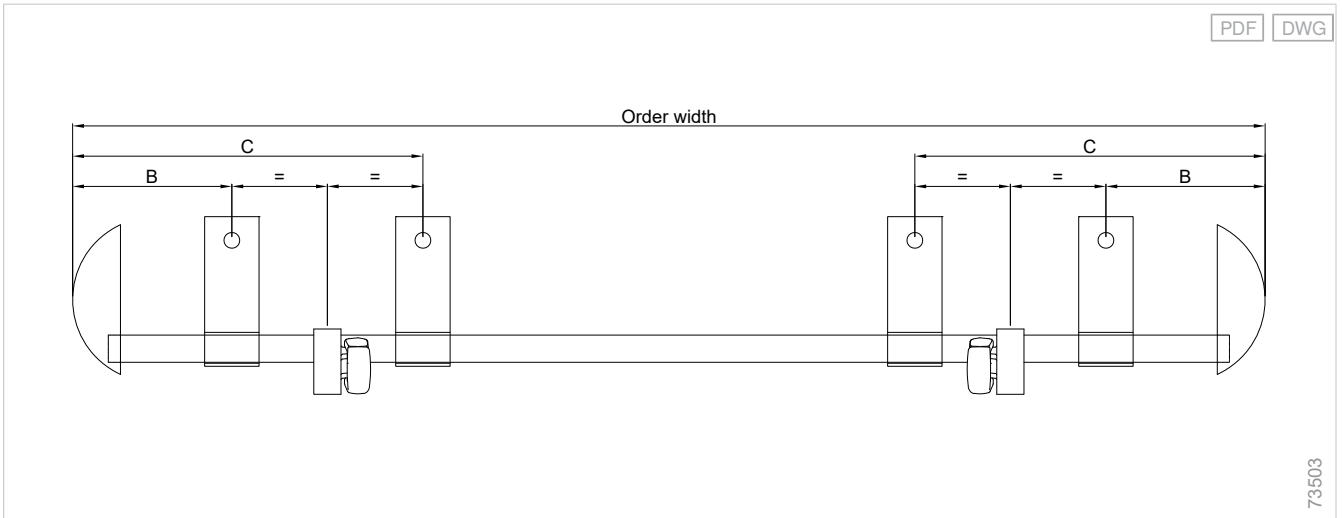
Inclination angle for rain class 2: 14 - 85 °

- Inclination angle with **LB model** 5° - 20°
- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance ±5°.

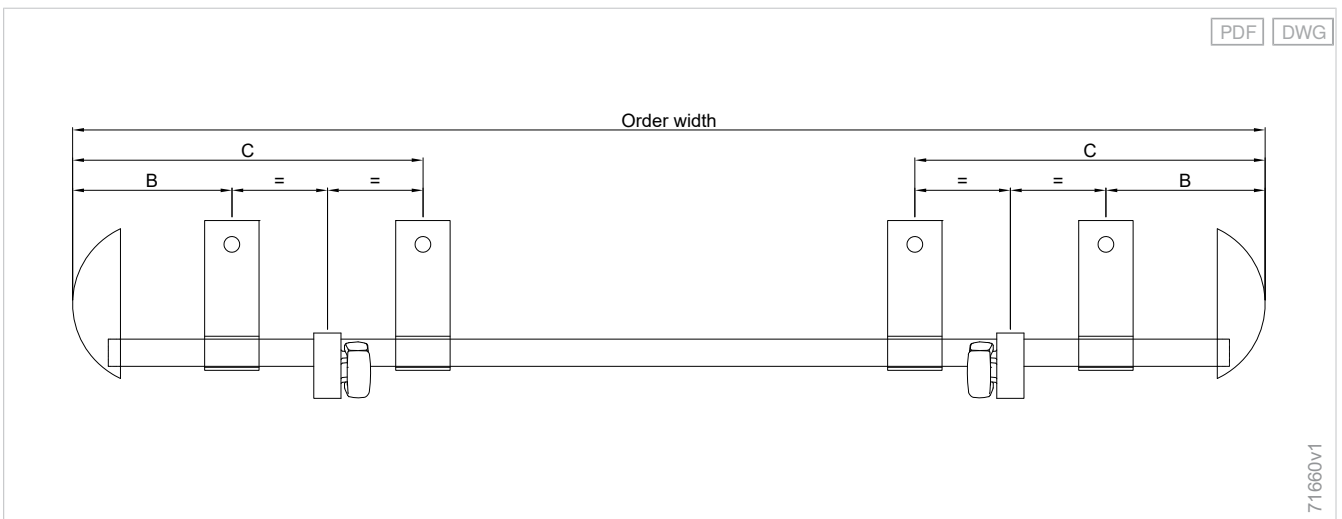
## Dimension determination

The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

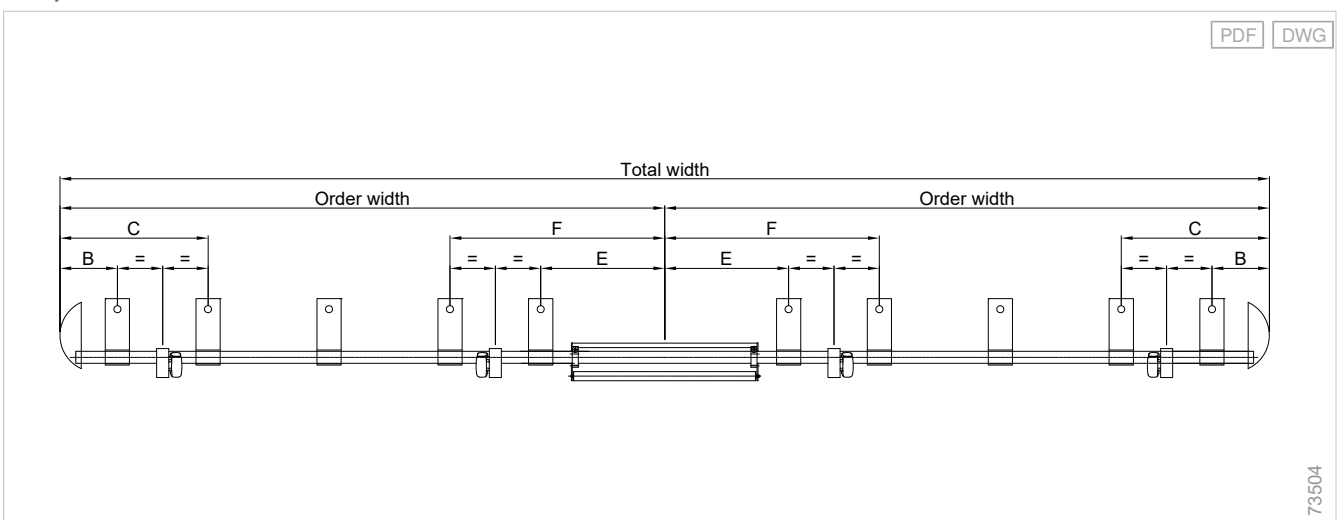
### Individual unit - G60



### Individual unit with turning gear - G60



### Group unit - G60/H60



## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection					
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console	0 - 5000 mm	2	2	2	2	4	4
Wall console / Ceiling console	5001 - 5500 mm	2	2	2	4	4	4
Wall console / Ceiling console	5501 - 6500 mm	3	3	3	5	5	5
Wall console / Ceiling console	6501 - 7000 mm	3	3	5	5	5	5
Console for rafters	0 - 4000 mm	2	2	2	4		
Console for rafters	4001 - 5500 mm	2	2	4	4	4	4
Console for rafters	5501 - 6500 mm	3	3	5	5	5	5
Console for rafters	6501 - 7000 mm	3	5	5	5	5	5
<b>Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	0 - 4500 mm	2	2	2	2	4	
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	4501 - 5500 mm	2	2	2	4	4	
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	5501 - 6000 mm	3	3	3	5	5	
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	6001 - 7000 mm	3	3	5	5	5	
Wall console / Ceiling console + LB model	0 - 4720 mm	2	2	2	2	4	4
Wall console / Ceiling console + LB model / Valance roller blind	0 - 4210 mm	2	2	2	2	4	
Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	0 - 3500 mm	2	2	2			
Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	3501 - 5000 mm	2	2	4	4	4	
Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	5001 - 5500 mm	2	4	4	4	4	
Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	5501 - 7000 mm	3	5	5	5	5	
Console for rafters + LB model	0 - 2500 mm	2	2	2	2		
Console for rafters + LB model	2501 - 4720 mm			2	4	4	4
Console for rafters + LB model / Valance roller blind	0 - 4210 mm	2	2	2	4	4	

### Number of consoles, group unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection					
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console	0 - 10000 mm	4	4	4	4	8	8
Wall console / Ceiling console	10001 - 11000 mm	4	4	4	8	8	8
Wall console / Ceiling console	11001 - 13000 mm	6	6	6	10	10	10
Wall console / Ceiling console	13001 - 13500 mm	6	6	10	10	10	10
<b>Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	0 - 9000 mm	4	4	4	4	8	

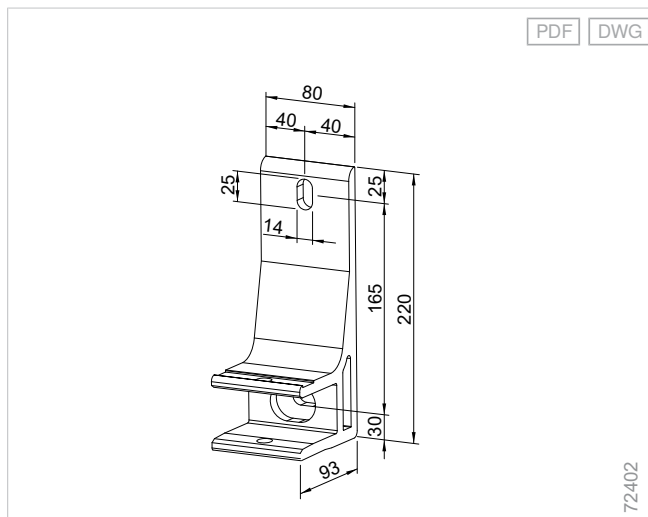


Configuration variants	Order width	Projection					
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	9001 - 11000 mm	4	4	4	8	8	
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	11001 - 12000 mm	6	6	6	10	10	
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	12001 - 13500 mm	6	6	10	10	10	

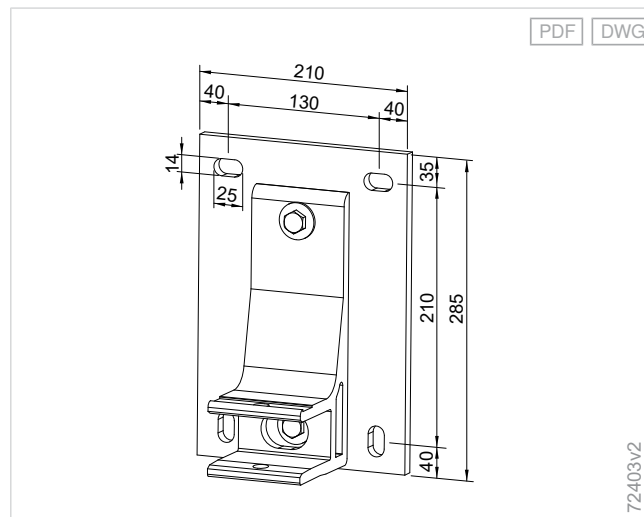
Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

## Details

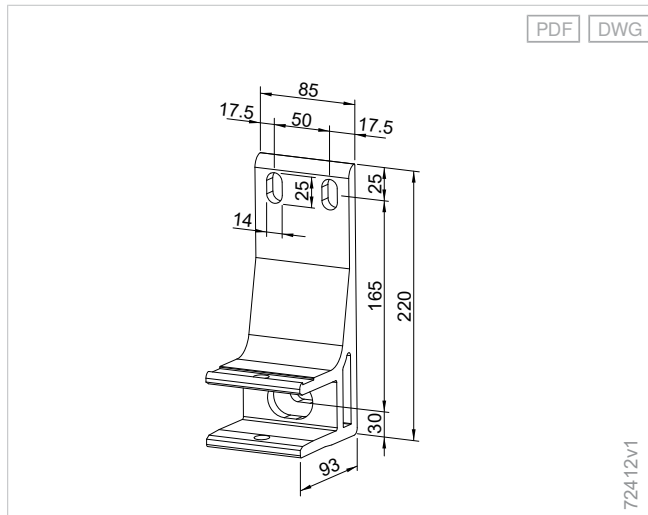
Wall console type A - G60/H60



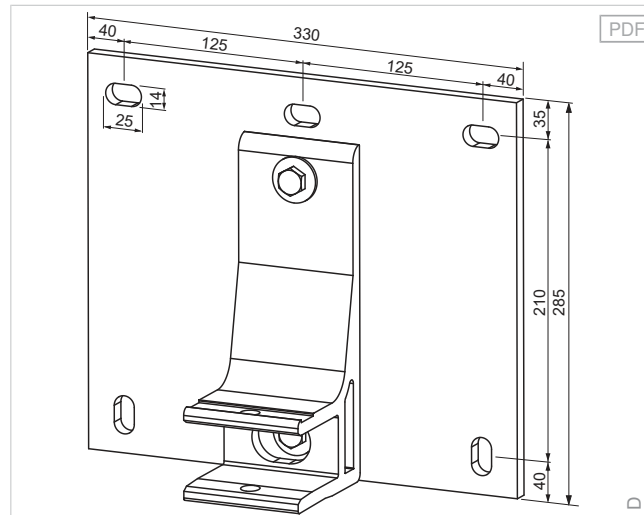
Wall console type C mounting plate - G60/H60



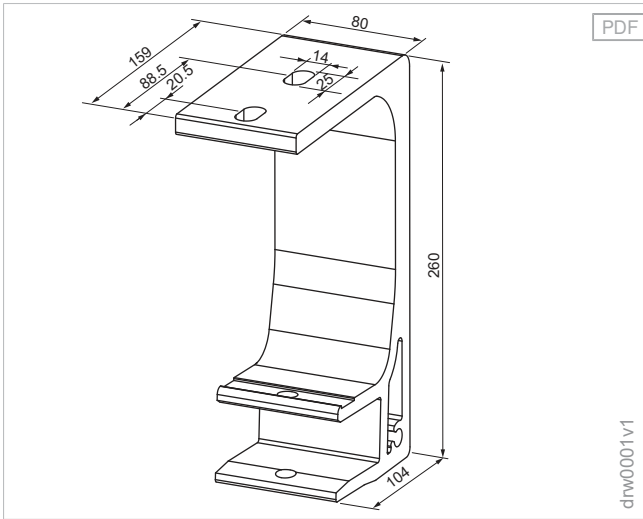
Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60



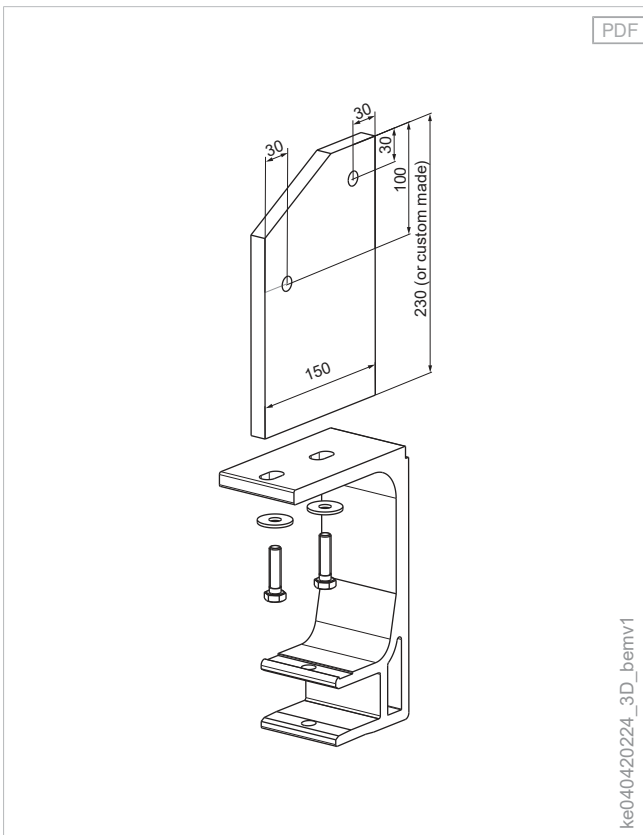
Wall console type D mounting plate - G60/H60



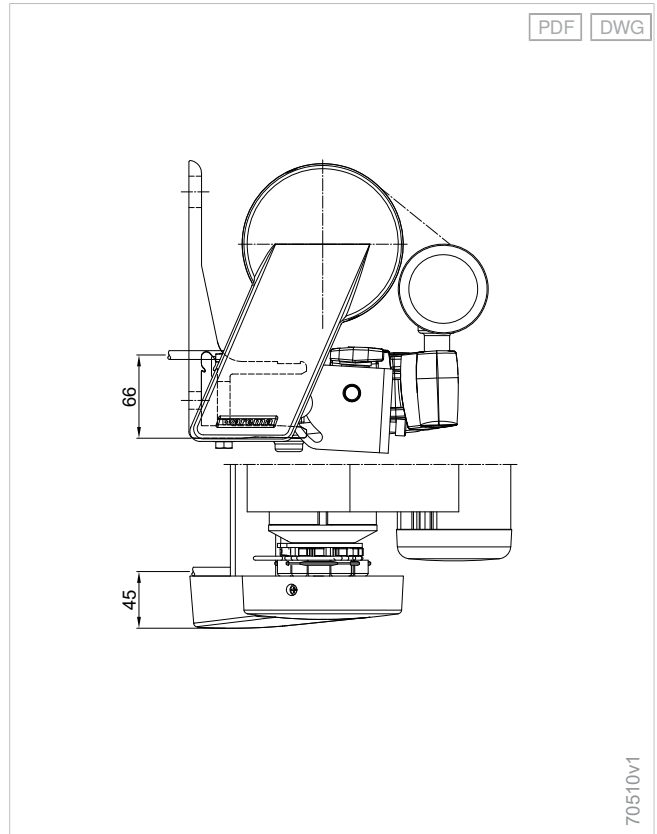
### Ceiling console type E - G60/H60



### Console for rafters type F - G60/H60

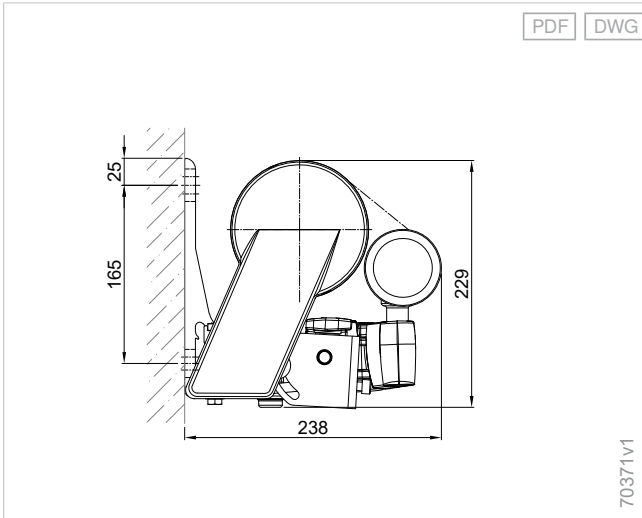


### Cable exit - G60

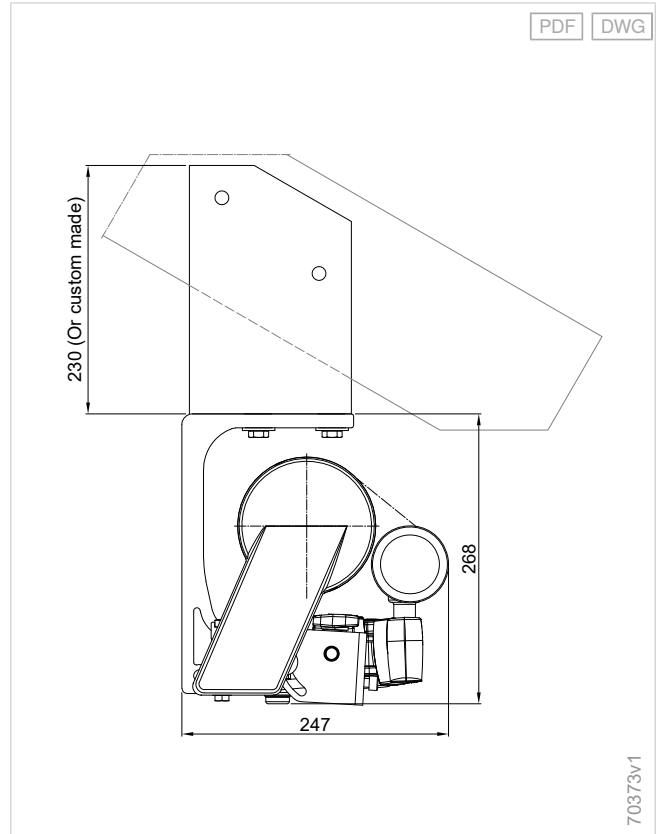


# Mounting examples

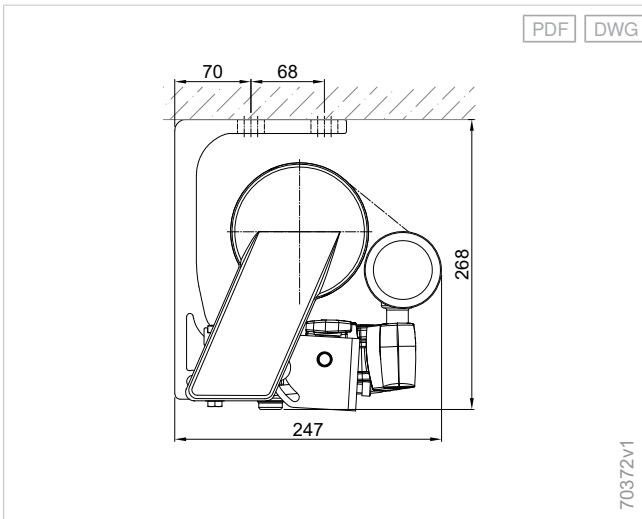
Wall installation - G60



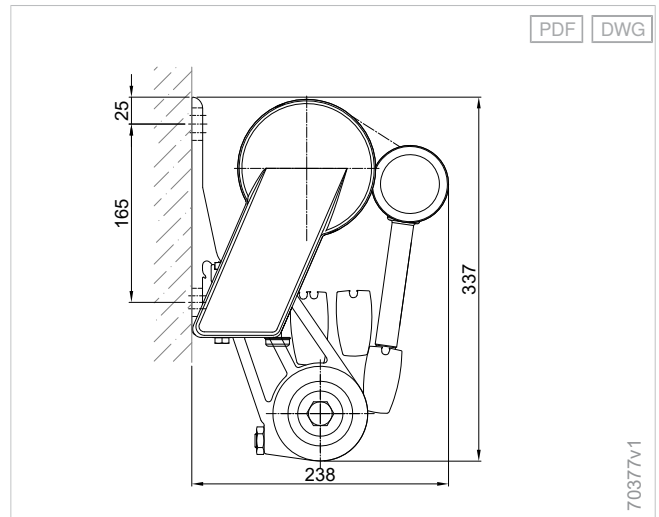
Rafter installation - G60



Ceiling installation - G60



Wall installation - G60 LB



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

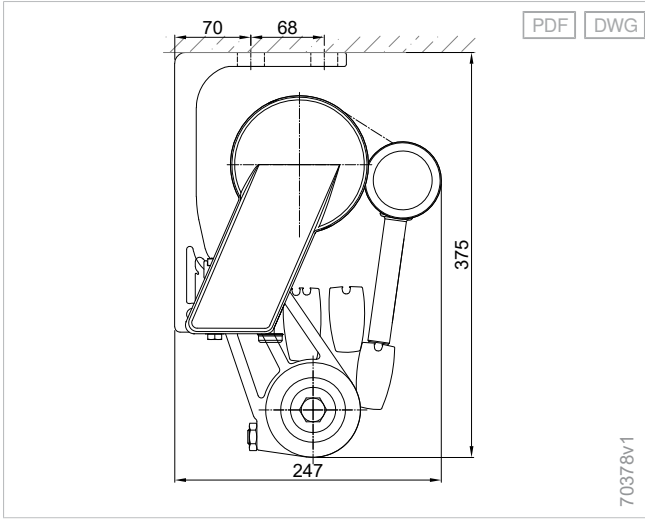
Supplementary accessories

Components

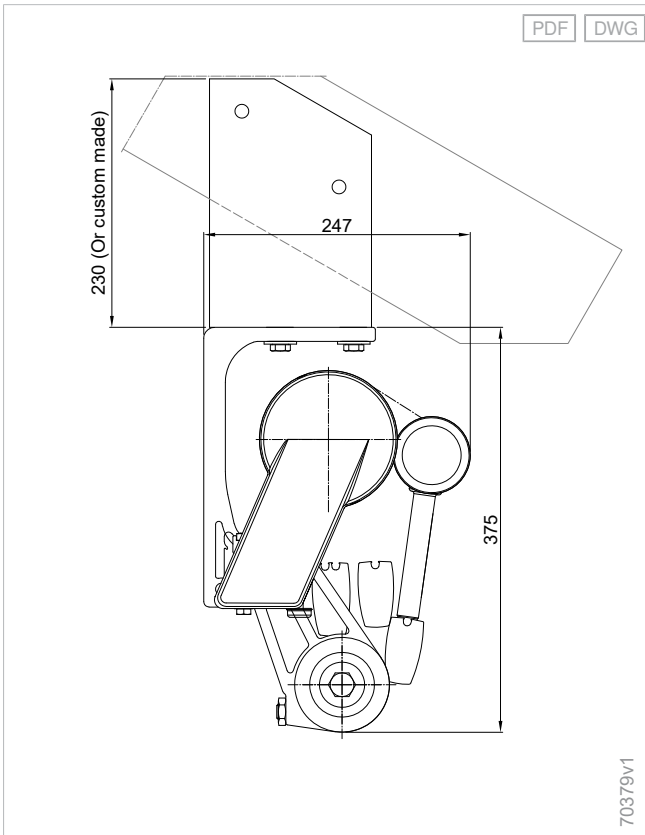
Drive variants

Standards

Ceiling installation - G60 LB



Rafter installation - G60 LB



# Articulated arm awnings Terrea, half open

Articulated arm awning Terrea H60..... 110

Planning

**Terrea**

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Articulated arm awnings Terrea, half open

### Articulated arm awning Terrea H60

#### Durable

More protection, less soiling: The integrated rain hood, the optional fabric bearing shell and the aluminium valance protect the fabric and articulated arms.

#### Rain protection

More relaxation: The fabric quality of the All Weather acrylic fabric protects you from light rain, so that more time can be spent relaxing under the awning.

#### Glare-free

Optimal light and privacy: Retractable valance roller blind and adjustable inclination protect you from low sun and extend your visual privacy.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	7000 mm
Maximum projection	4000 mm
Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036153](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/2012934.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Console Planner](#)

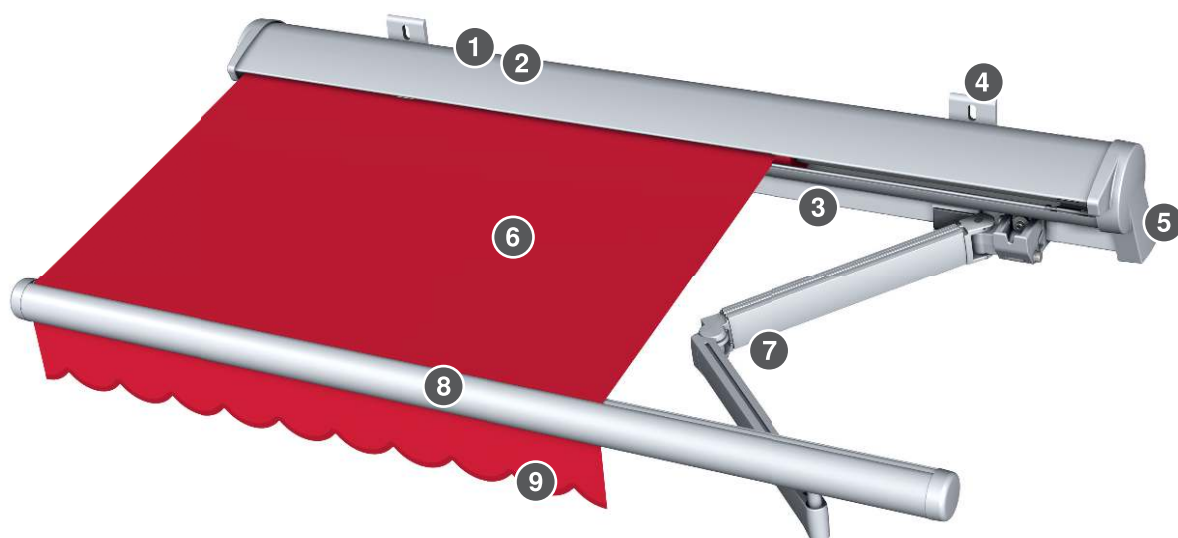
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

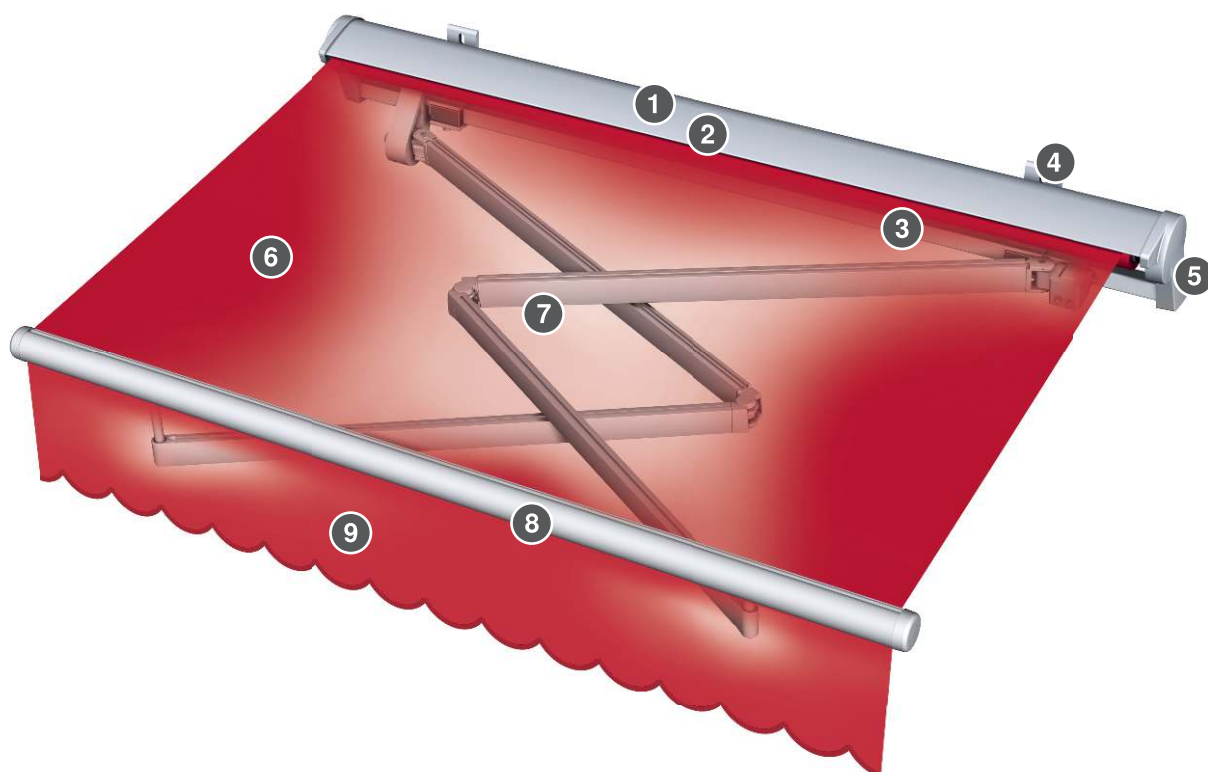
Articulated arm awning Terrea H60



- 1 Rain hood
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Bearing tube
- 4 Console
- 5 Fabric shaft console

- 6 Fabric
- 7 Articulated arm
- 8 Front rail
- 9 Valance

Articulated arm awning Terrea H60 LB



- 1 Rain hood
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Bearing tube
- 4 Console
- 5 Fabric shaft console

- 6 Fabric
- 7 Articulated arm
- 8 Front rail
- 9 Valance

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	85 mm

## Fabric bearing shell, optional

### Fabric bearing shell - H60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

As additional fabric protection from below.

Included as standard with **group units**.

## Front rail

### Front rail - G60/H60 Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	70 mm

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - G60/H60 Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Front rail, optional

### Front rail - G60/H60 with aluminium valance

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	90 mm
Height	185 mm

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - G60/H60 Ø 90 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

### Front rail - G60/H60 with valance roller blind Ø 90 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	90 mm

#### + Side cover

### Front rail side cover - G60/H60 Ø 90 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Articulated arm

### Articulated arm - H60

#### + Articulated arm profile

### Articulated arm profile, front, 33x61 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	33 mm
Height	61 mm

### Articulated arm profile, rear, 35x68 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	35 mm
Height	68 mm

#### + Articulated arm seat

### Tilting joint - H60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

Tilting joint with windlock mechanism

#### + Power transmission

- Steel cable
- Link chain

#### + Power transmission, optional

### Segment

Material	Aluminium, extruded
----------	---------------------

## Rain hood

### Rain hood - H60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

## Bearing tube

### Bearing tube

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Profile	Square tube
Width	40 mm
Height	40 mm

## Valance

### Valance - G60/H60/530

Height	180 mm
--------	--------

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).



## Valance, optional

### LB model with valance - G60/H60/530

Height	270 mm
--------	--------

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Fabric shaft console

### Fabric shaft console - G60/H60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated

#### + Side cover

### Fabric shaft console side cover - H60

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Wall connection profile, optional

### Wall connection profile with large rain hood

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	128 - 139 mm
Height	52 mm
Dimensions, notes	The adjustment range in the depth between rain hood and wall connection profile is up to 11 mm.

## Console

### Wall console type A - G60/H60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Height	220 mm
Depth	93 mm

### Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	85 mm
Height	220 mm
Depth	93 mm

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Wall console type C - G60/H60

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	210 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	103 mm

Wall console type A with mounting plate, small (steel).

### Wall console type D - G60/H60

Material	Steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	330 mm
Height	285 mm
Depth	103 mm

Wall console type A with mounting plate, large (steel).

### Console for rafters type F - G60/H60

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Height	490 mm
Depth	159 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

Drive variant, optional:

- Crank

## Motor

- Orea WT

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MM (WMS)
- W-MM (EWFS)

## Crank, optional

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear, optional

- Bevel gear with free wheel at the lower limit point

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl
- Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living control package
- WMS Wind sensor
- Turning gear
- LB model
- Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control
- Valance roller blind with motor and basic model
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Fabric lettering, painted
- Patio frame

➕ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Construction limit values

The indicated construction limit values and number of consoles relate to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2390 mm	2890 mm	3400 mm	4180 mm	4690 mm
	Maximum order width	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm
	Minimum group unit order width	4600 mm	5640 mm	6640 mm	7660 mm	8950 mm	9970 mm
	Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm	3440 mm	4220 mm	4730 mm
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Motor	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2390 mm	2890 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Crank	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
<b>Fabric qualities + Drive variants + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2390 mm	2890 mm	3400 mm	4180 mm	
	Maximum order width	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	7000 mm	
	Minimum group unit order width	4600 mm	5640 mm	6640 mm	7660 mm	8950 mm	
	Maximum order width of the group unit	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	13500 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm	3440 mm	4220 mm	
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Turning gear	Minimum order width	2110 mm	2630 mm	3130 mm	3640 mm	4420 mm	
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6000 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + Turning gear	Minimum order width	2160 mm	2680 mm	3180 mm	3690 mm	4470 mm	
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	6000 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + Turning gear / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	2110 mm	2630 mm	3130 mm	3640 mm	4420 mm	
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	5500 mm	4500 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + Turning gear / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	2160 mm	2680 mm	3180 mm	3690 mm	4470 mm	
	Maximum order width	6500 mm	6500 mm	6500 mm	5500 mm	4500 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + LB model	Minimum order width	1180 mm	1440 mm	1690 mm	1940 mm	2470 mm	2720 mm
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm	3430 mm	4210 mm	4720 mm
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + LB model	Minimum order width	1220 mm	1480 mm	1730 mm	1980 mm	2510 mm	2760 mm
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm	3430 mm	4210 mm	4720 mm
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Motor + LB model / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1180 mm	1440 mm	1690 mm	1940 mm	2470 mm	
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm	3430 mm	4210 mm	
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Crank + LB model / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1220 mm	1480 mm	1730 mm	1980 mm	2510 mm	
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm	3430 mm	4210 mm	
Soltis 92 + Motor + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1870 mm	2390 mm	2890 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 + Crank + Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1910 mm	2430 mm	2930 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Motor + Turning gear	Minimum order width	2110 mm	2630 mm	3130 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Crank + Turning gear	Minimum order width	2160 mm	2680 mm	3180 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 + Motor + Turning gear / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	2110 mm	2630 mm	3130 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

Configuration variants	Projection	1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
Soltis 92 + Crank + Turning gear / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	2160 mm	2680 mm	3180 mm			
	Maximum order width	5500 mm	5500 mm	5500 mm			
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Motor + LB model	Minimum order width	1180 mm	1440 mm	1690 mm			
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm			
Soltis 92 / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 + Crank + LB model	Minimum order width	1220 mm	1480 mm	1730 mm			
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm			
Soltis 92 + Motor + LB model / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1180 mm	1440 mm	1690 mm			
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm			
Soltis 92 + Crank + LB model / Valance roller blind	Minimum order width	1220 mm	1480 mm	1730 mm			
	Maximum order width	1900 mm	2420 mm	2920 mm			

**Lacquered fabric** not possible in combination with a fabric bearing shell or valance roller blind.

**Group units** only possible with fabric bearing shell.

**Minimum width:**

- Increased by 270 mm for rafter installation and projection 3000 mm
- Increased by 270 mm for rafter installation with valance roller blind and projection 2500 mm and 3000 mm
- Usually different for console type D

**LB model:**

- Front rail seats and articulated arm seats are always height offset on the non-drive end.
- LB model not possible with turning gear.

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 16 - 18 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Without consoles, depending on fitted equipment

## Inclination

Inclination angle: 5 - 45 °

Inclination angle, standard: 10 °

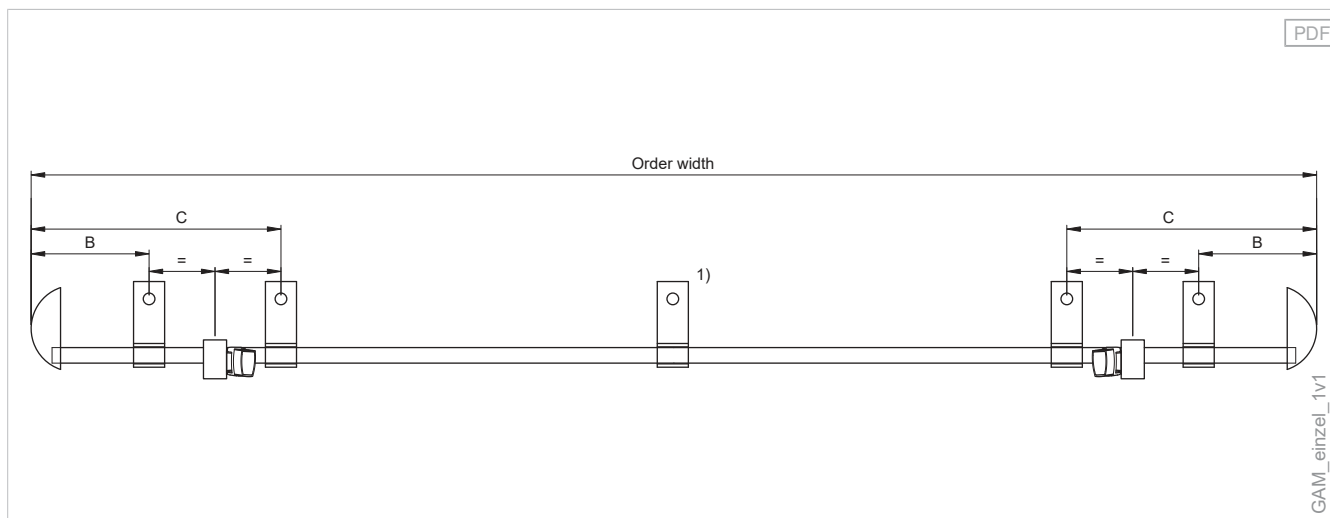
Inclination angle for rain class 2: 14 - 45 °

- Fine adjustment of inclination angle during installation.
- Basic inclination depending on building size and model, tolerance  $\pm 5^\circ$ .
- Inclination angle with **LB model** 5° - 25°

## Dimension determination

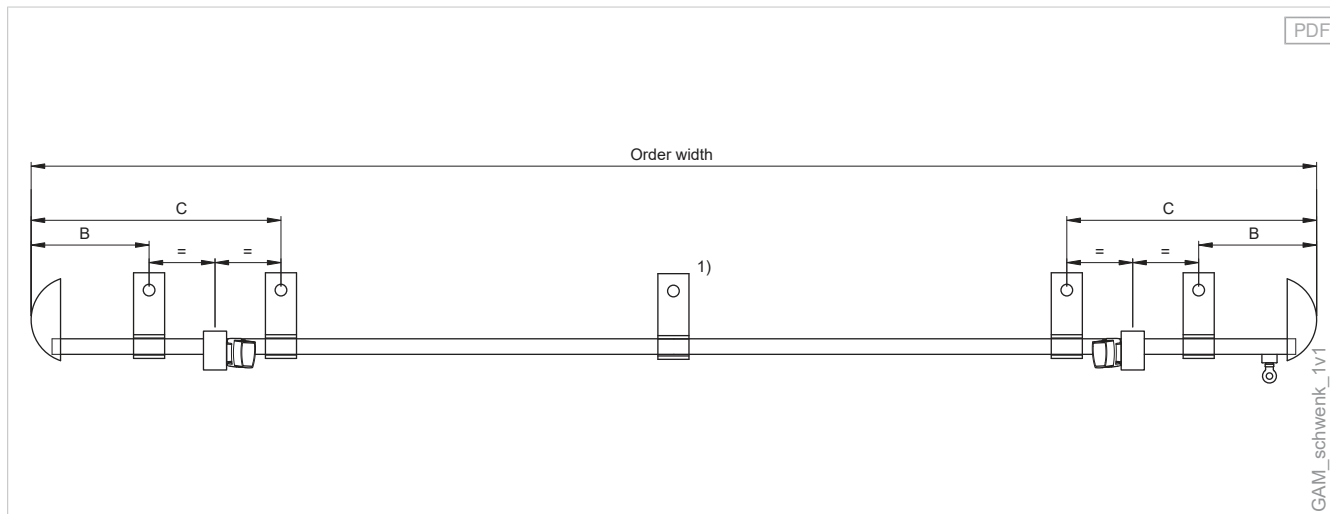
The **projection** is defined from the back edge of the console to the leading edge of the front rail, measured across the inclination angle of the fabric.

### Individual unit - H60

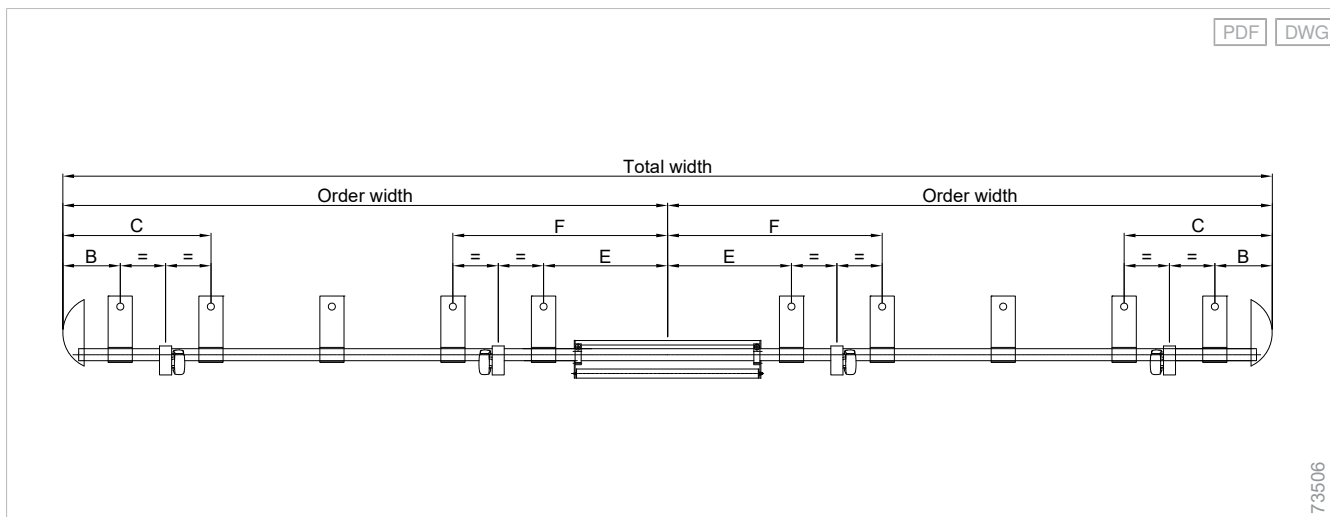


1) The third or fifth console is in the middle.

### Individual unit with turning gear - H60



1) The third or fifth console is in the middle.



73506

## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection					
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console	0 - 4500 mm	2	2	2	2	4	4
Wall console / Ceiling console	4501 - 5500 mm	2	2	2	4	4	4
Wall console / Ceiling console	5501 - 6000 mm	3	3	3	5	5	5
Wall console / Ceiling console	6001 - 7000 mm	3	3	5	5	5	5
Console for rafters	0 - 3500 mm	2	2	2			
Console for rafters	3501 - 5500 mm	2	2	4	4	4	4
Console for rafters	5501 - 7000 mm	3	5	5	5	5	5
<b>Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	0 - 4000 mm	2	2	2	2		
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	4001 - 5500 mm	2	2	2	4	4	
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	5501 - 7000 mm	3	3	5	5	5	
Wall console / Ceiling console + LB model	0 - 4720 mm	2	2	2	2	4	4
Wall console / Ceiling console + LB model / Valance roller blind	0 - 4210 mm	2	2	2	2	4	
Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	0 - 3000 mm	2	2				
Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	3001 - 4500 mm	2	2	4	4	4	
Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	4501 - 5500 mm	2	4	4	4	4	
Console for rafters + Valance roller blind	5501 - 7000 mm	3	5	5	5	5	
Console for rafters + LB model	0 - 2500 mm	2	2	2	2	4	
Console for rafters + LB model	2501 - 4720 mm			2	4	4	4
Console for rafters + LB model / Valance roller blind	0 - 4210 mm	2	2	2	4	4	

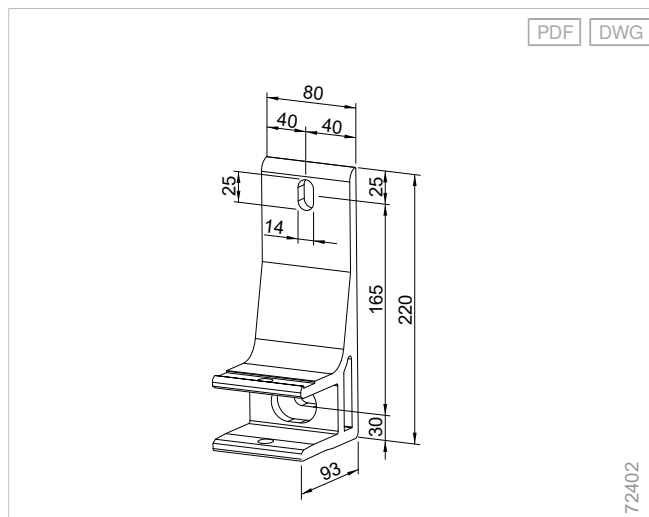
## Number of consoles, group unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Projection					
		1500 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console	0 - 9000 mm	4	4	4	4	8	
Wall console / Ceiling console	9001 - 11000 mm	4	4	4	8	8	8
Wall console / Ceiling console	11001 - 12000 mm	6	6	6	10	10	10
Wall console / Ceiling console	12001 - 13500 mm	6	6	10	10	10	10
<b>Console/Bracket + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	0 - 8000 mm	4	4	4	4		
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	8001 - 11000 mm	4	4	4	8	8	
Wall console / Ceiling console + Valance roller blind	11001 - 13500 mm	6	6	10	10	10	

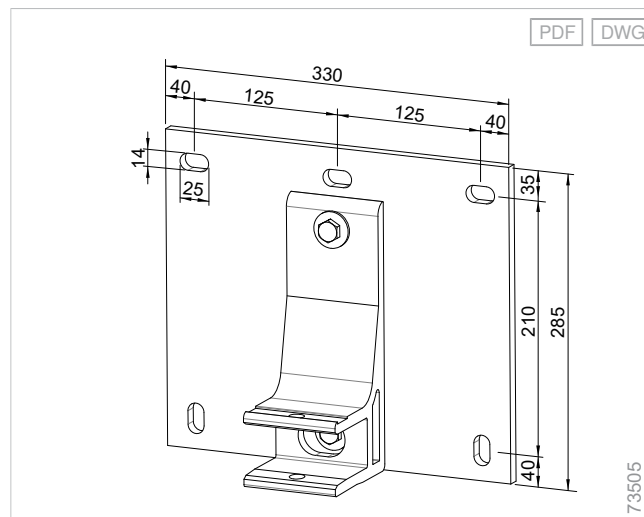
Number of consoles in relation to the concrete substructure C20/25 (B25) and installation on rafters.

## Details

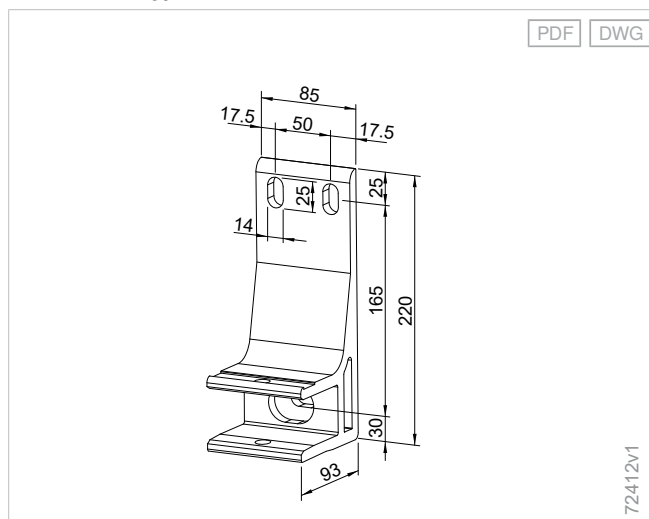
Wall console type A - G60/H60



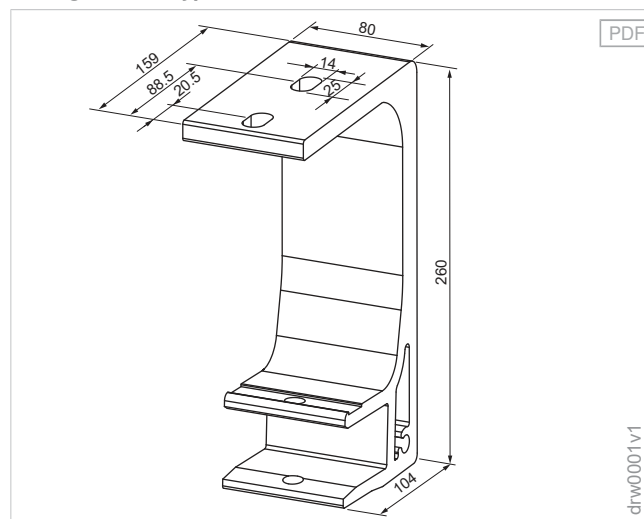
Wall console type D mounting plate - G60/H60



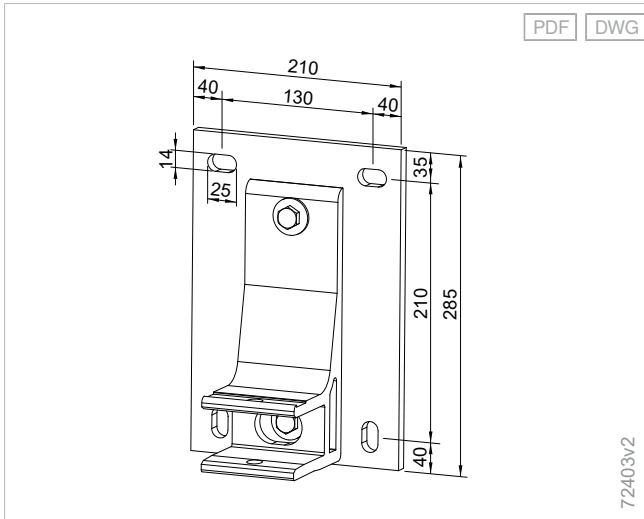
Wall console type B - 530/G60/H60



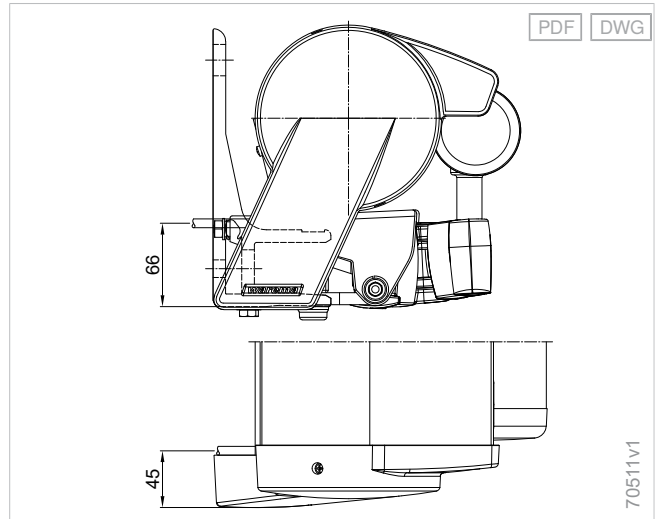
Ceiling console type E - G60/H60



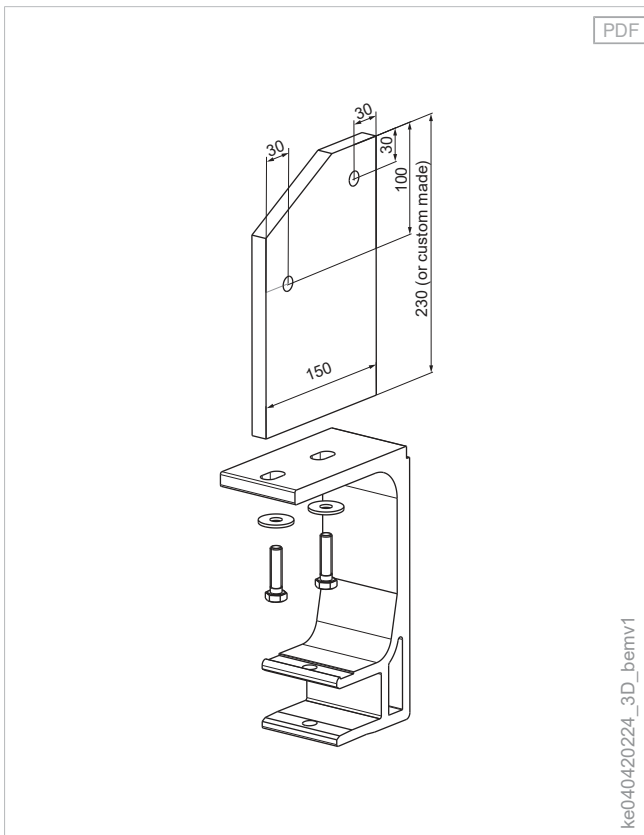
Wall console type C mounting plate - G60/H60



Cable exit - H60



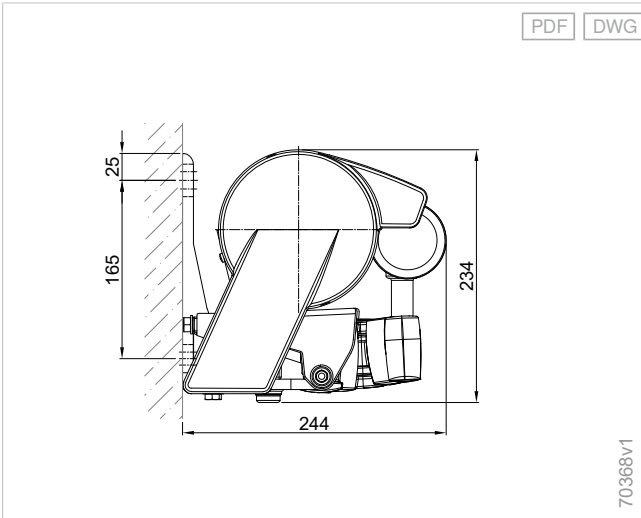
Console for rafters type F - G60/H60



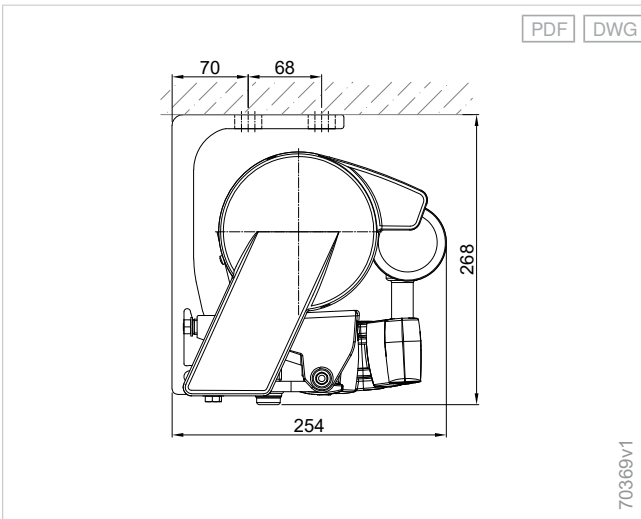


# Mounting examples

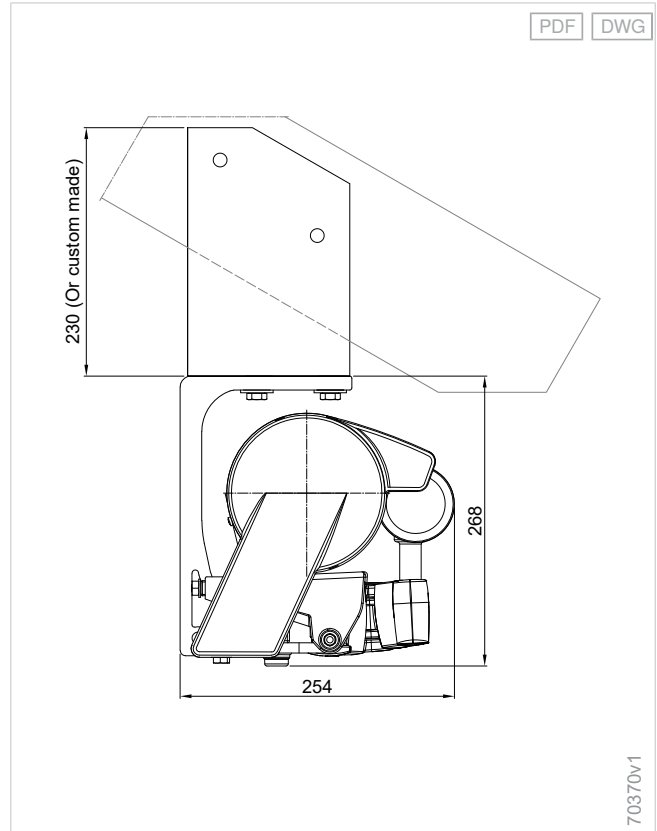
Wall installation - H60



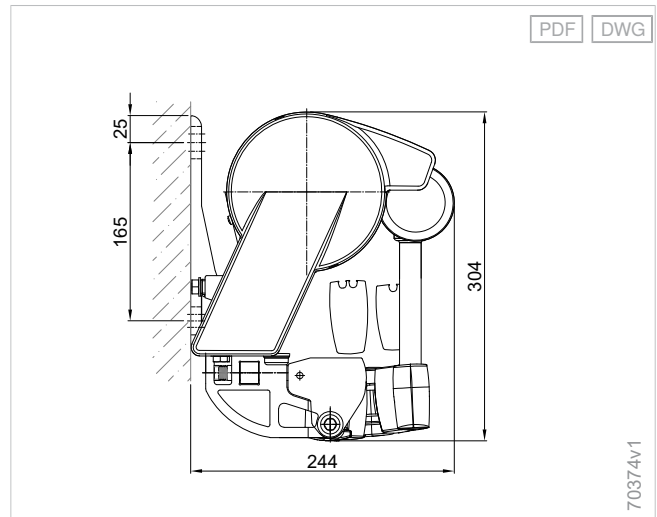
Ceiling installation - H60



Rafter installation - H60



Wall installation - H60 LB



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

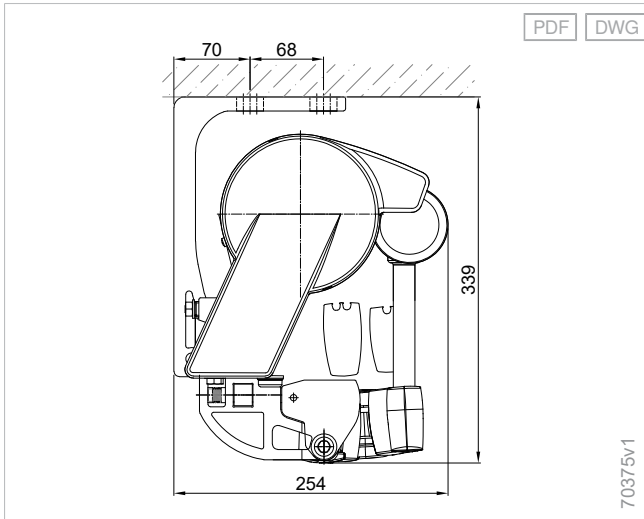
Supplementary accessories

Components

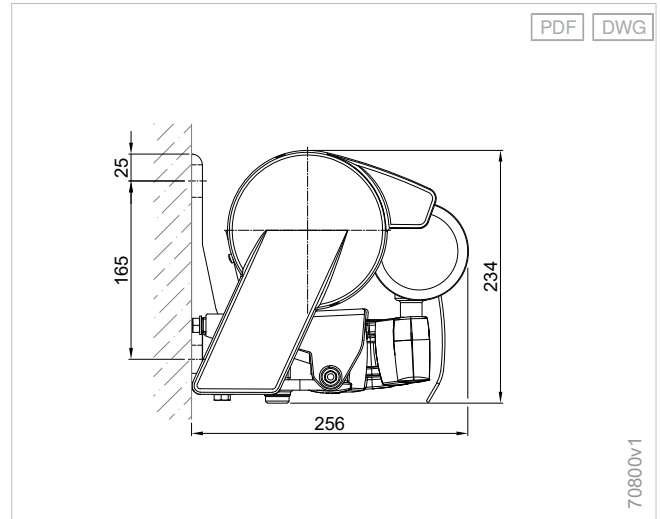
Drive variants

Standards

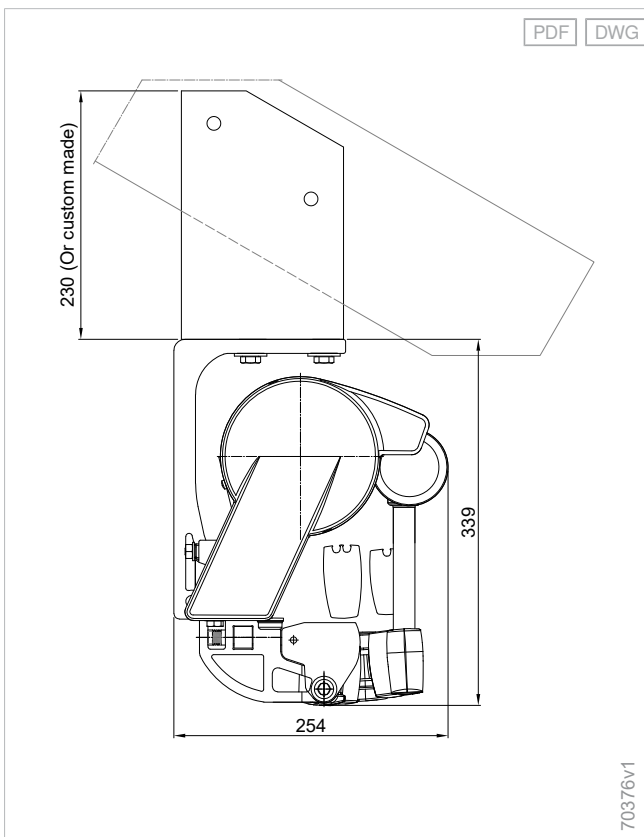
Ceiling installation - H60 LB



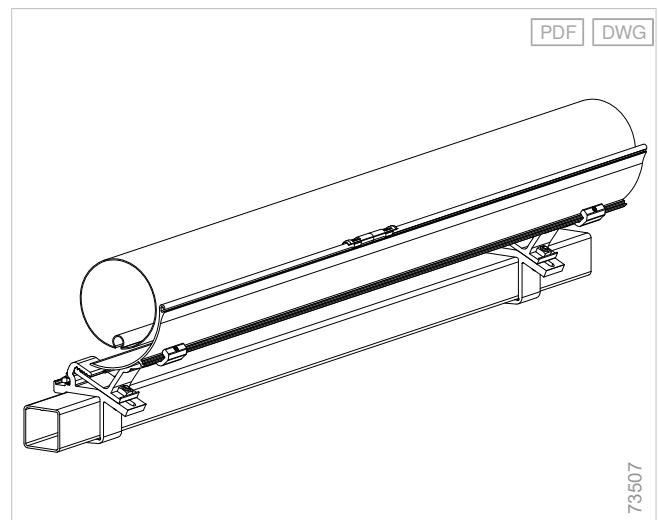
Wall installation with aluminium valance - H60



Rafter installation - H60 LB



Fabric bearing shell - H60



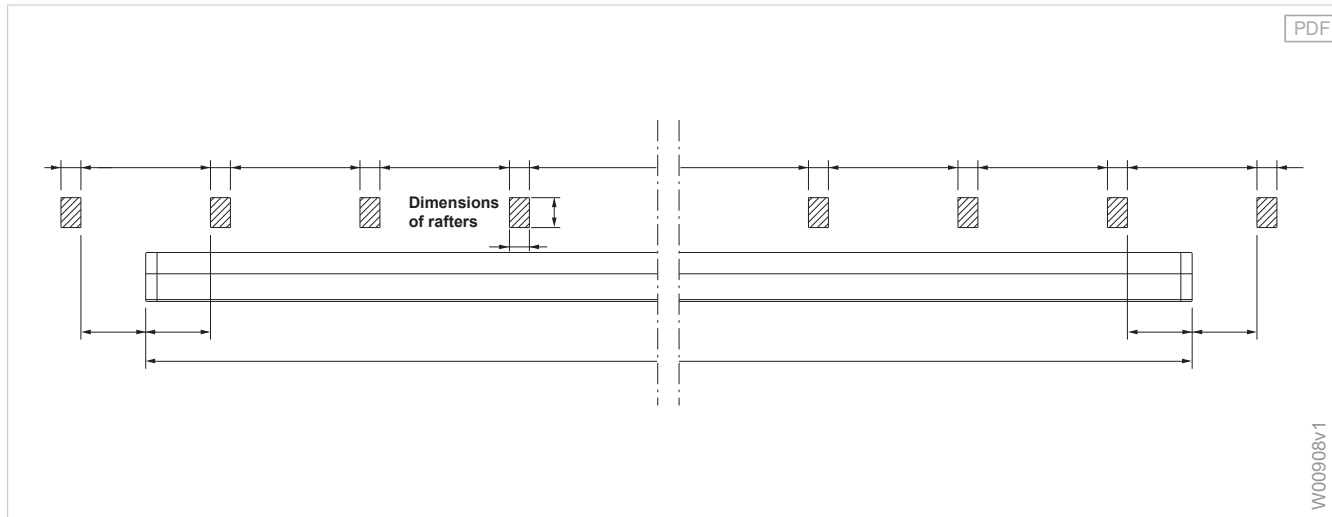
# Details

## Rafter installation of Terrea articulated arm and cassette awnings

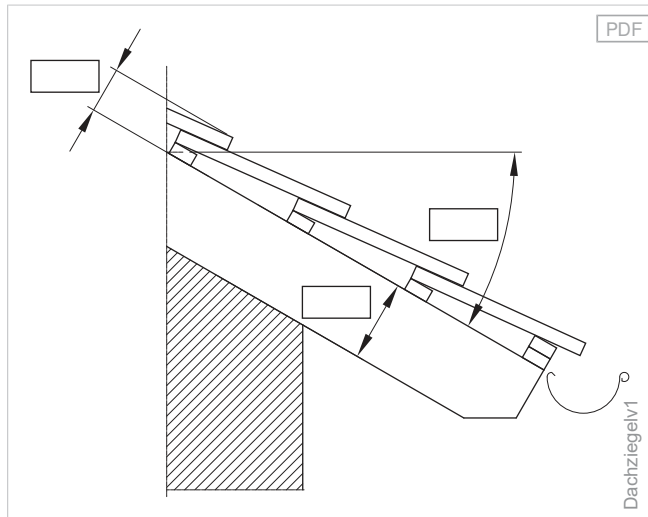
### Additional order information for rafter installation:

- Dimensions of rafters
- Roof pitch in °
- Roof structure
- Completed measuring guide for rafter installation, including rafter dimensions and distances

### Rafter installation measuring guide



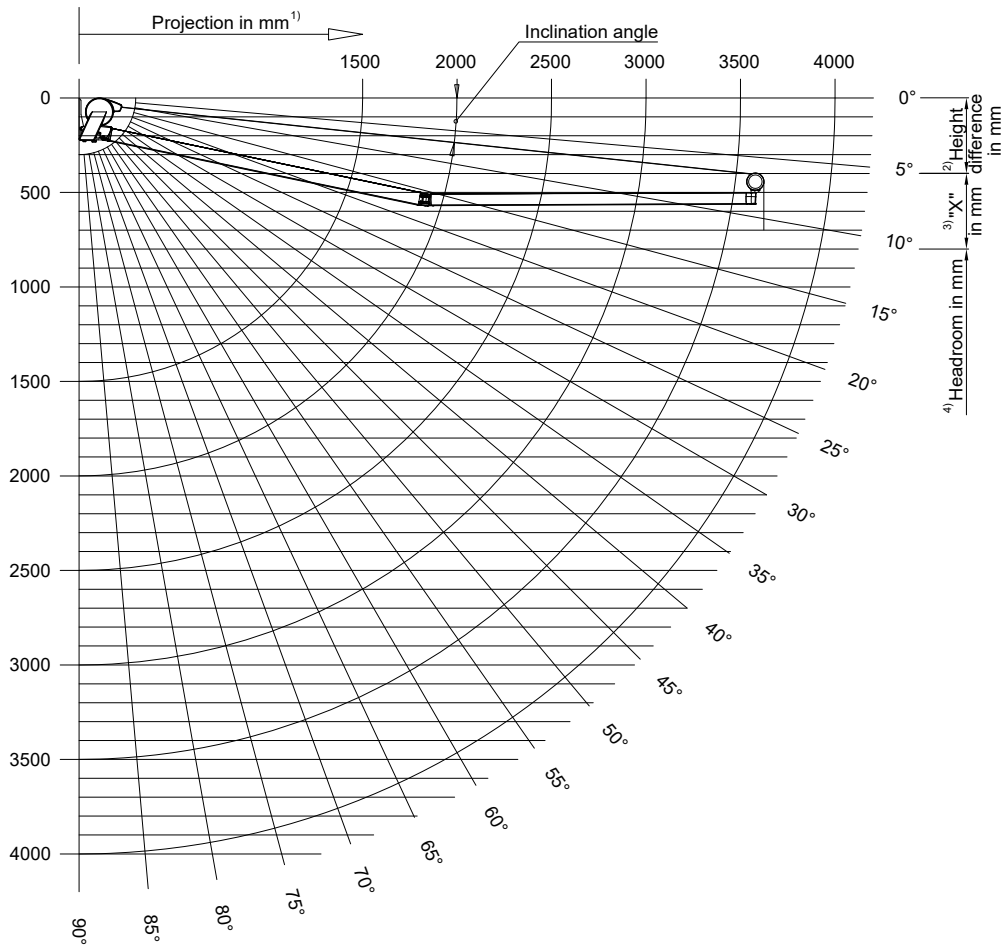
### Rafter installation measuring guide, side view



# Difference between installation height and headroom for articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea

## Difference between installation height and headroom

PDF DWG



<sup>1)</sup> Projection = back edge console to leading edge of front rail (tolerance  $\pm 40$  mm)

<sup>2)</sup> Measured from console top edge

<sup>3)</sup> Tolerance +200 mm.

The minimum and maximum possible inclination of the awning depend on both the type and the projection and equipment of the front rail!

<sup>4)</sup> Height of the valance and front rail must be added.

Awning type:

x = 200 mm	G60, 550, 580, K50, K60, K70
x = 250 mm	530, 700S
x = 300 mm	H60, G60 LB
x = 350 mm	530 LB, H60 LB

70429v4

# Contents

## Pergola awnings Perea

Pergola awning Perea P20.....	126
Pergola awning Perea P40.....	140
Pergola awning Perea P40 WeatherEdition.....	156
Pergola awning Perea P60.....	172
Pergola awning Perea P70.....	188

Planning

Terrea

**Perea**

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Pergola awnings Perea

### Pergola awning Perea P20

#### Slender

Thanks to the slim construction, the pergola awning looks particularly slender.

#### Modern

The square design blends harmoniously into cubic architecture.

#### Stable

Functional and elegant: With secudrive® technology, the fabric runs tightly and securely on the rail - a fixed or travelling reinforcement profile additionally tensions the fabric.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6500 mm
Maximum order depth	6000 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[🔗](#) Art.-Nr. 2036166

#### WAREMA tools

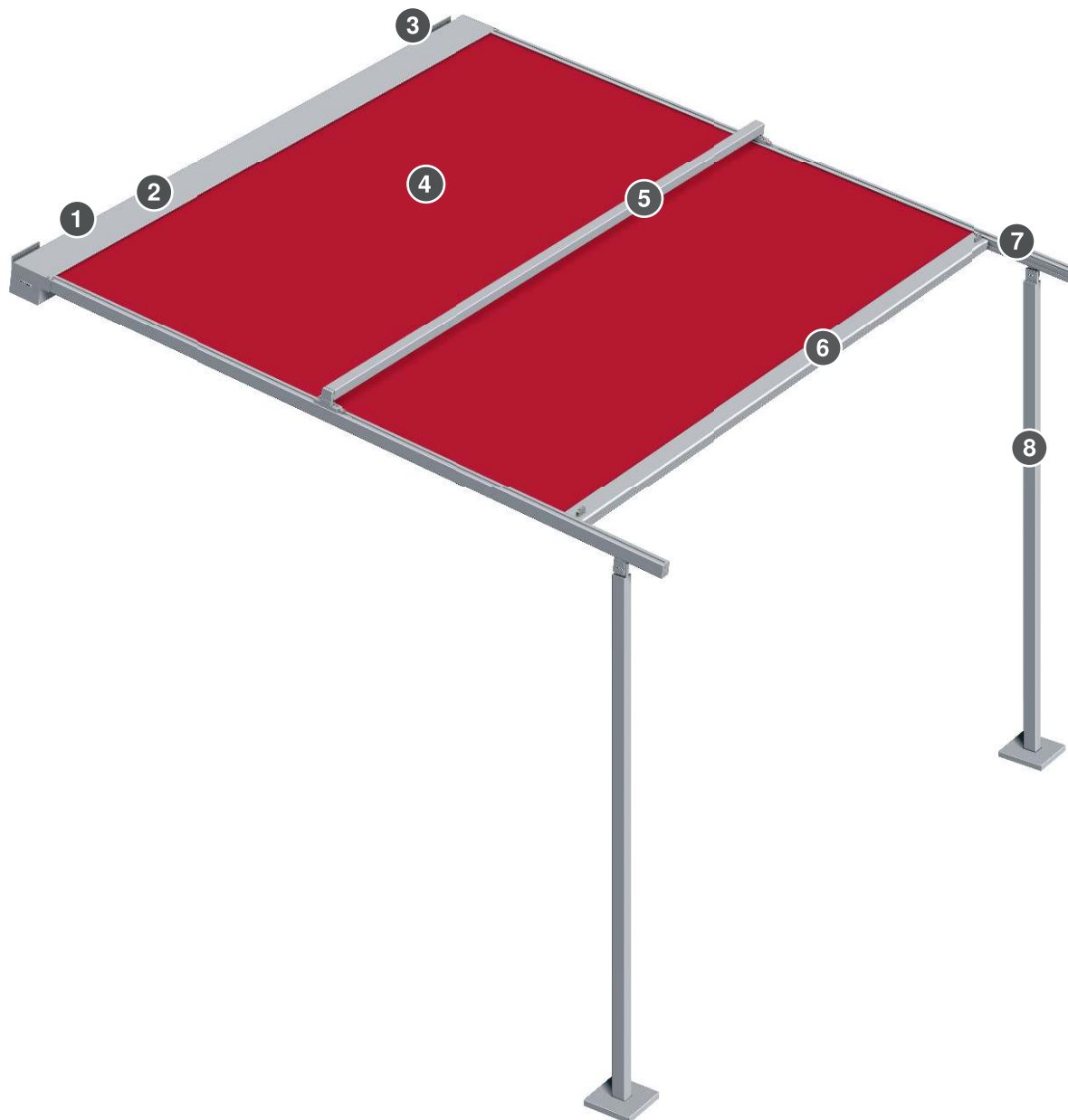
[🔗](#) Collection Assistant

[🔗](#) Sun Shading Planner

[+](#) see "Navigating the document", Page 5

# Components

Pergola awning Perea P20



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric

- 5 Reinforcement profile
- 6 Front rail
- 7 Guide rail
- 8 Pole

## Cover panel

### Cover panel rectangular - P20/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	194 mm
Height	144 mm

## + Side cover

### Side cover, cover panel, rectangular - P20/W10/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	209 mm
Height	146 mm

## Shaft

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	70 mm

### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	86.2 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20/P20/H1

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	94 mm
Height	54 mm

## Reinforcement profile

### Reinforcement profile, rectangular - P20/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	50 mm
Height	50 mm

## Reinforcement profile, optional

### Travelling reinforcement profile, rectangular - P20/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	50 mm
Height	50 mm

### Space required for travelling reinforcement profile:

The installation space for the travelling reinforcement profile is 134 mm from the top edge of the guide rail to the eaves, for example.

## Pole

### Pole - Perea

Maximum order height	2500 mm
Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Depth	60 mm

Notes on construction limit values:

Offset:

Max. 1/3 of order depth;

Max. 1200 mm; min. 105 mm

## Base plate

### Base plate - Ø 200 mm Perea

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	200 mm

## Base cover, optional

### Base cover - P20

Material	Aluminium, permanent mould cast
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	210 mm
Height	25 mm
Depth	210 mm

## Wall connection profile, optional

- Wall connection profile with small rain hood
- Wall connection profile with large rain hood

+ see "Wall connection profiles", Page 459

## Console

### Wall console type A - P20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	171 mm
Height	140 mm
Depth	28 mm

### Ceiling console type E - P20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	171 mm
Height	180 mm
Depth	150 mm

### Console for rafters type F - P20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	171 mm
Height	410 mm
Depth	178 mm

## Guide variants

- secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - P20/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Height	60 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA



## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-WM (WMS)
- WMS-PM (WMS)
- W-WM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Screen fabric
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living connect package
- Integrated lighting
- Radiant heater
- LED strip light rail
- Multicube set
- Patio frame Perea
- WMS sensor system
- Drainage cutouts

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Notes

### Planning permission

Pergola awnings require planning permission, depending on their overall size and the local regulations.

### Fixing of the radiant heater

It is not possible to fix the radiant heaters directly to pergola awnings Perea.

### Processing of Twilight Pearl

In awnings with secudrive® guide, the fabric is fastened to the spring steel strip with a fabric strip (light grey) visible at the side.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order depth	Maximum order depth	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Fabric qualities</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	15 °
All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	28 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	15 °
Soltis 92 / Screen fabric	650 mm	3500 mm	950 mm	4000 mm	14 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	15 °

### Reinforcement profile:

- From order depths of 2501 mm, a reinforcement profile (fixed or travelling) is used.

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- The lining up of several pergola awnings is possible with a flush closure.
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- The installation of two guide rails on one pole is possible with an adapter plate.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 13000 mm!

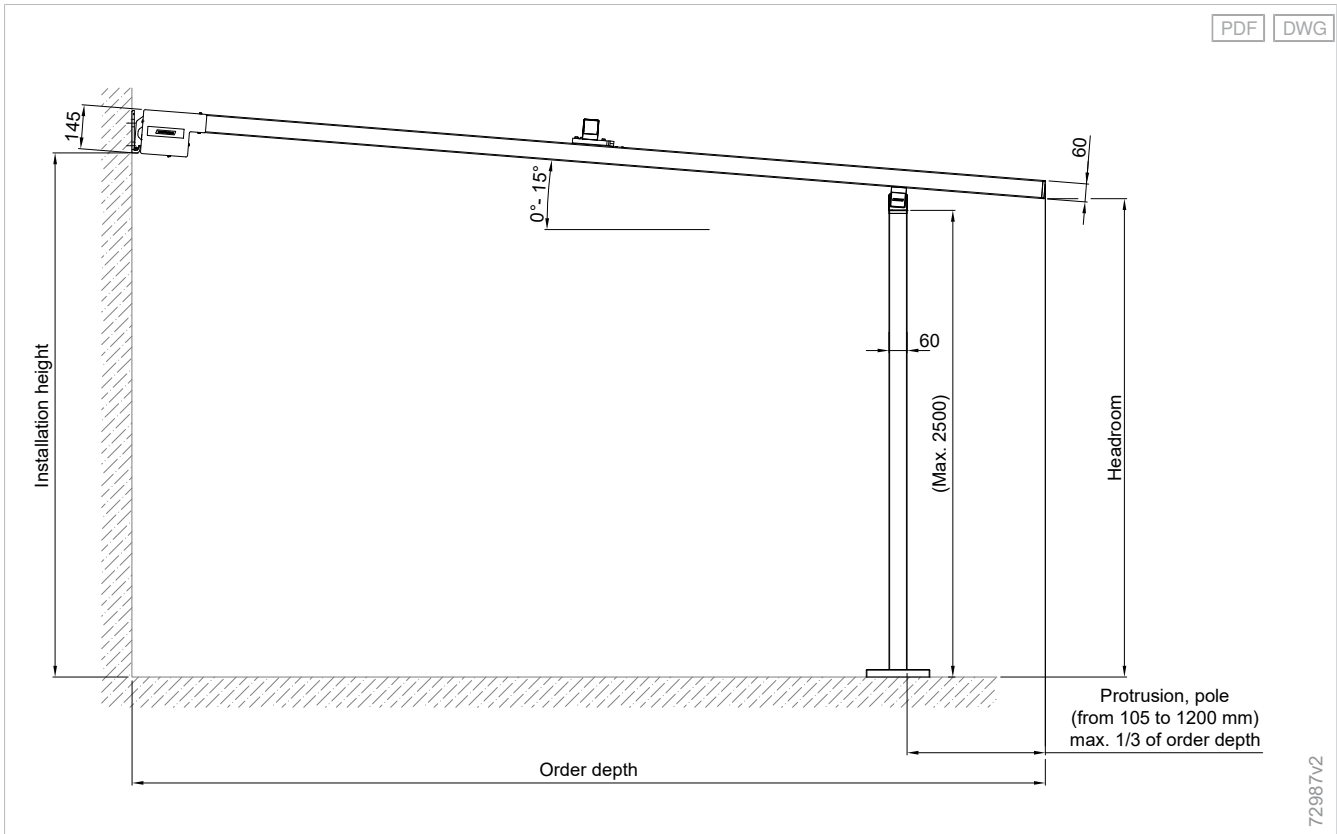
## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 13,5 - 15,5 kg/lfm

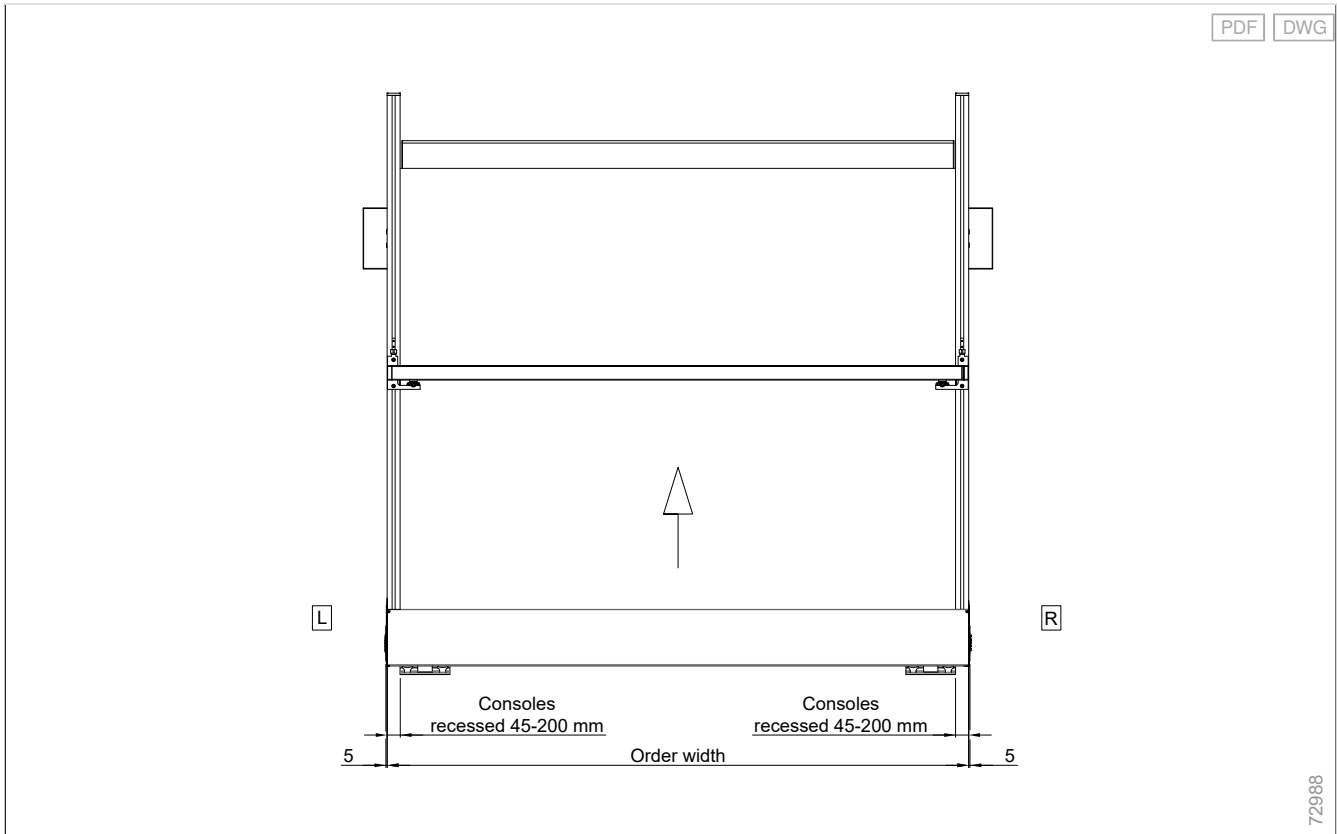
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without consoles, without guide rails and poles.

# Dimension determination

## Measuring instructions - P20

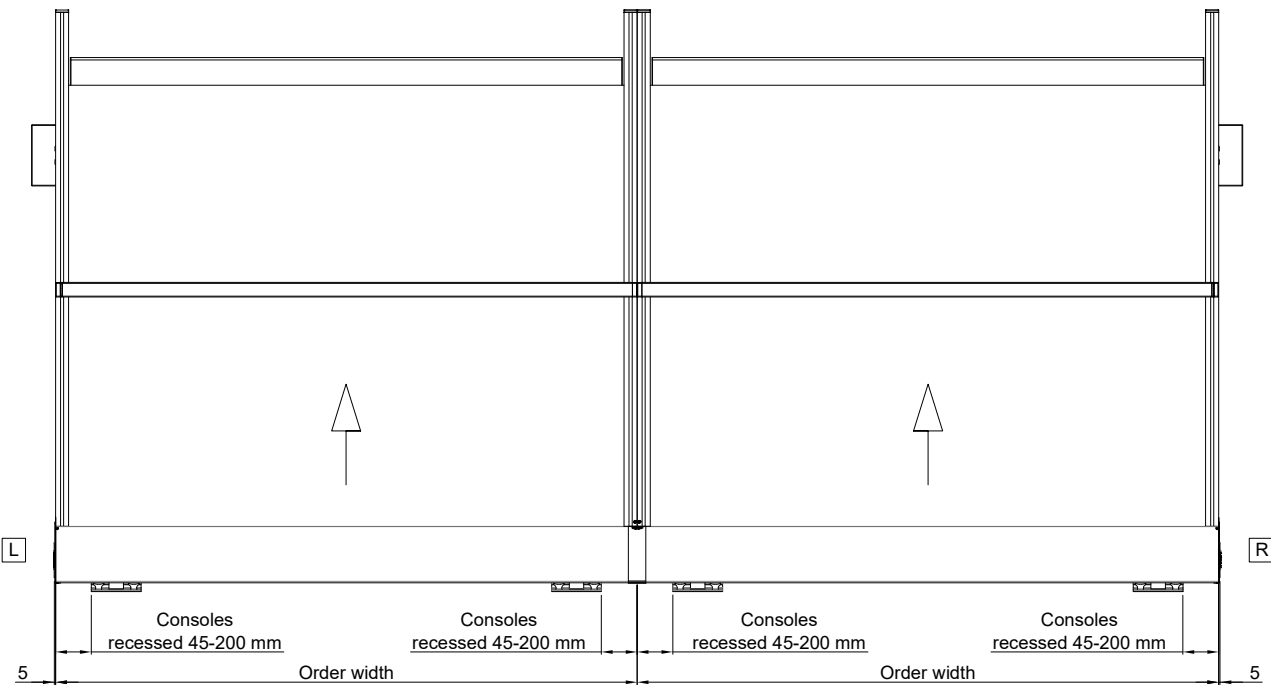
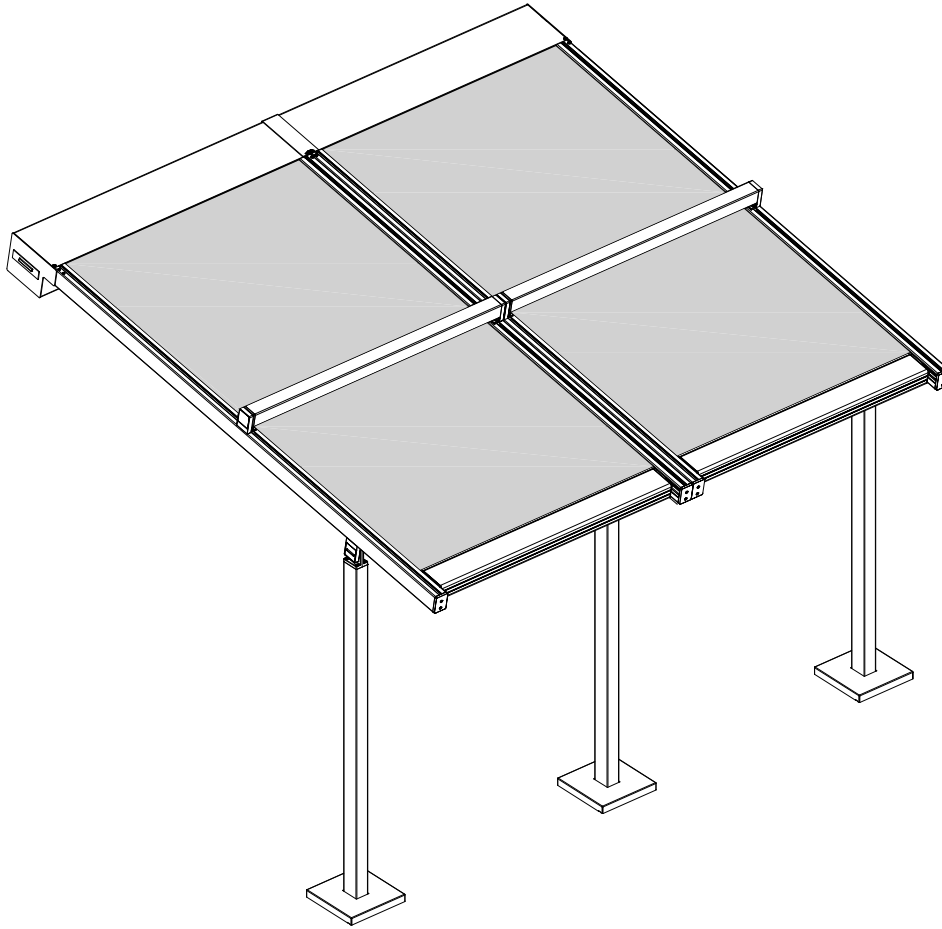


## Top view - P20



Series-mounted unit - P20

PDF DWG



72989

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

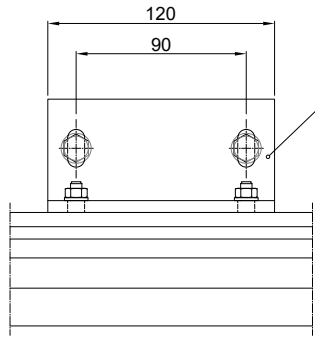
Drive variants

Standards

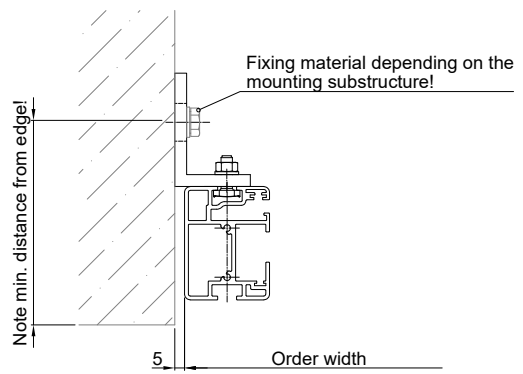
Reveal installation - P20

PDF DWG

Standard angle reveal installation



Bracket no. 52  
Aluminium  
angle bracket  
60x40x6

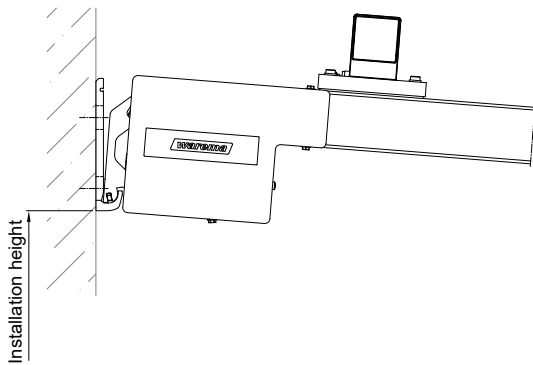


72990v1

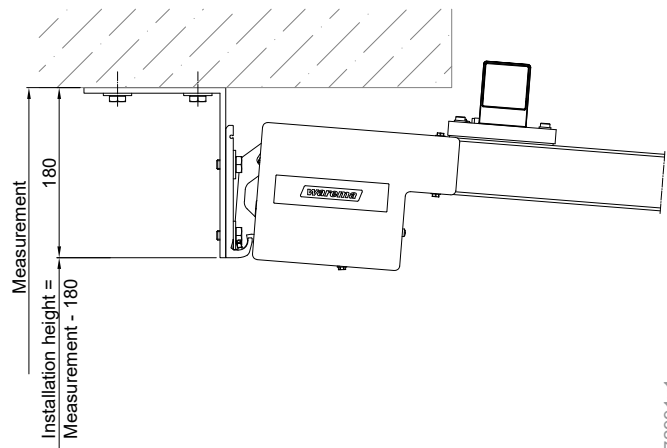
Determining the installation height for wall/ceiling console - P20

PDF DWG

Wall installation

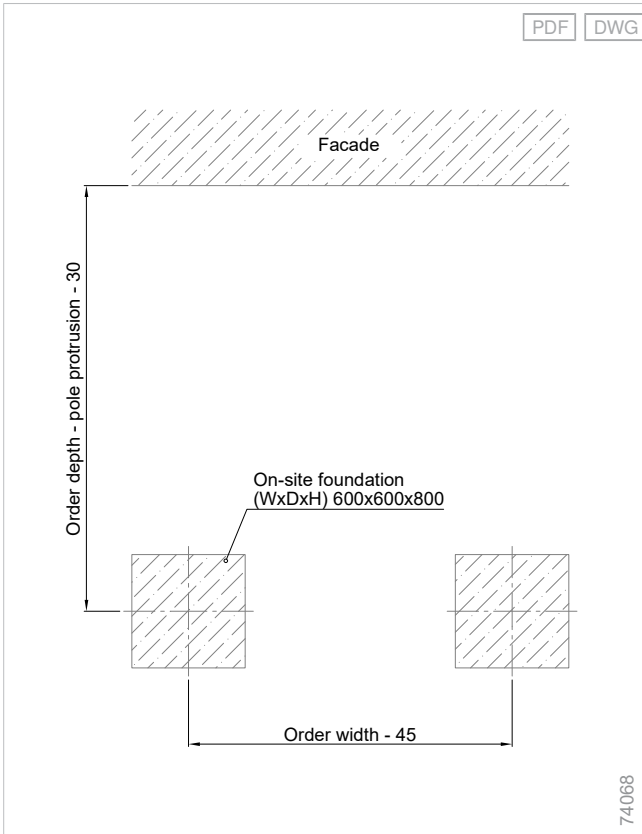


Ceiling installation



72991v1

## Foundation plan - P20



## Quantity determination

Number of consoles, individual unit

### Configuration variants

#### Console/Bracket

Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters

Order width

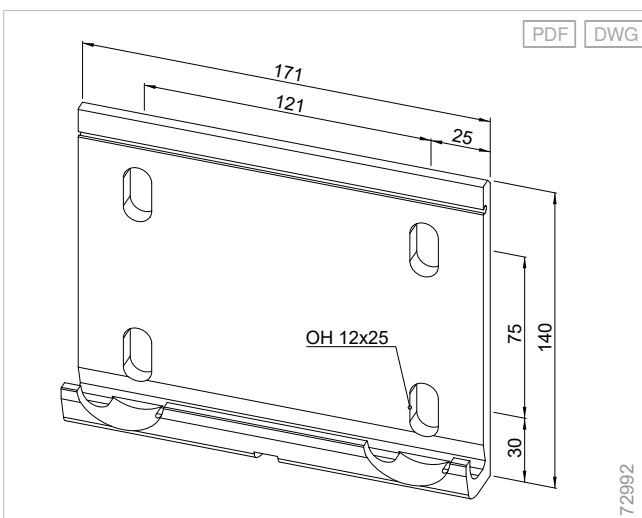
Order depth  
800 - 6000 mm

950 - 6500 mm

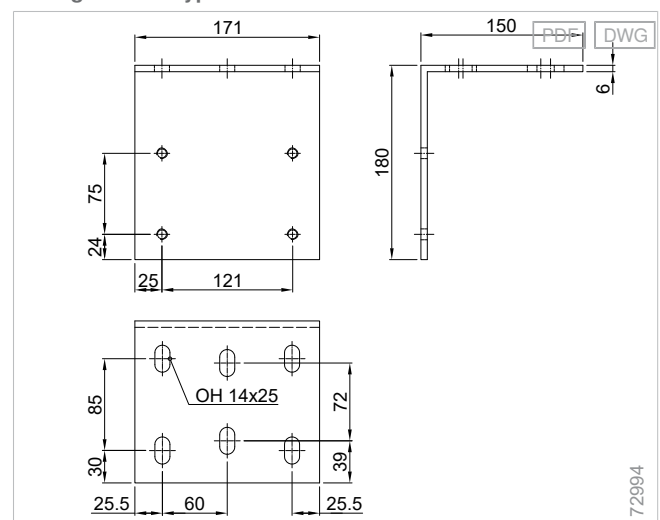
2

## Details

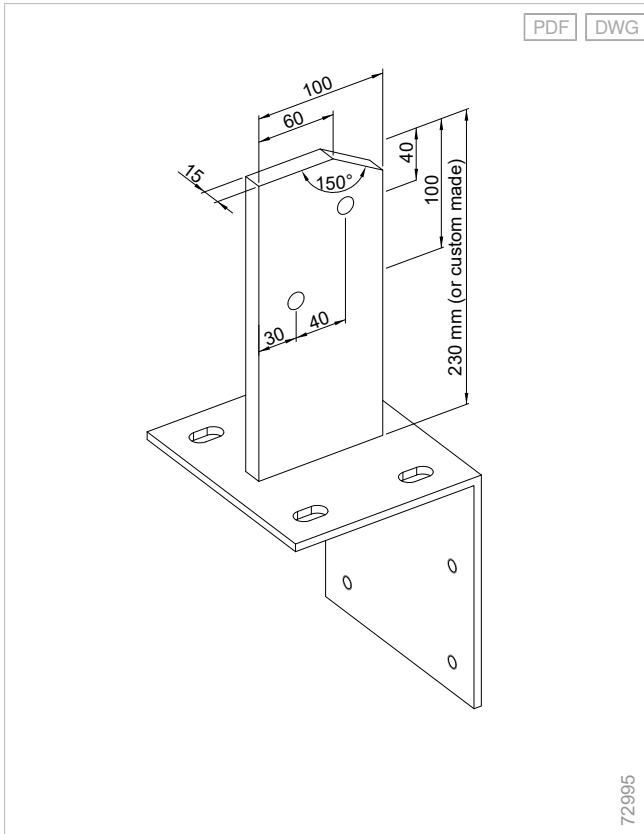
Wall console type A, left console; right console laterally reversed - P20



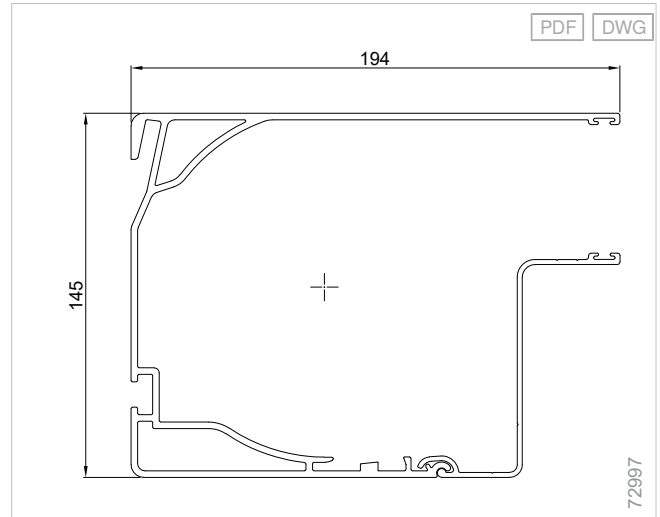
Ceiling console type E - P20



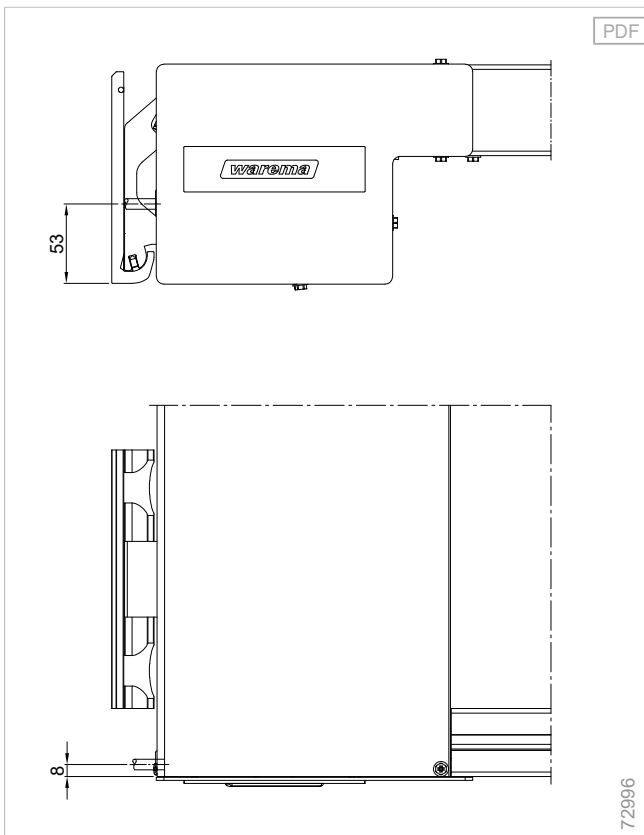
### Console for rafters type F - P20



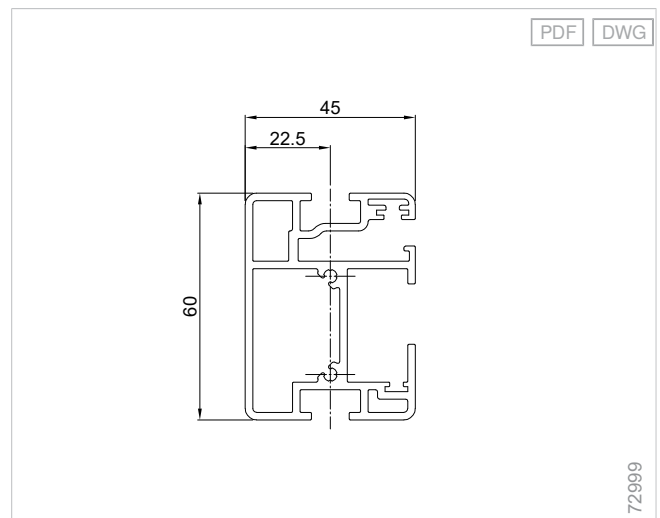
### Cover panel - P20



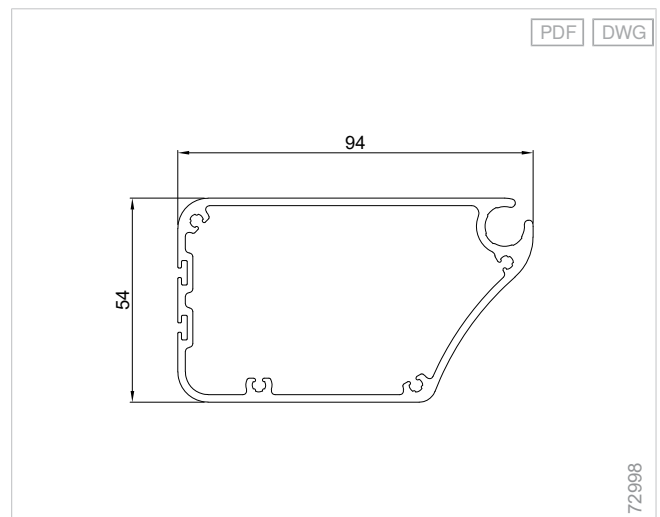
### Cable exit - P20



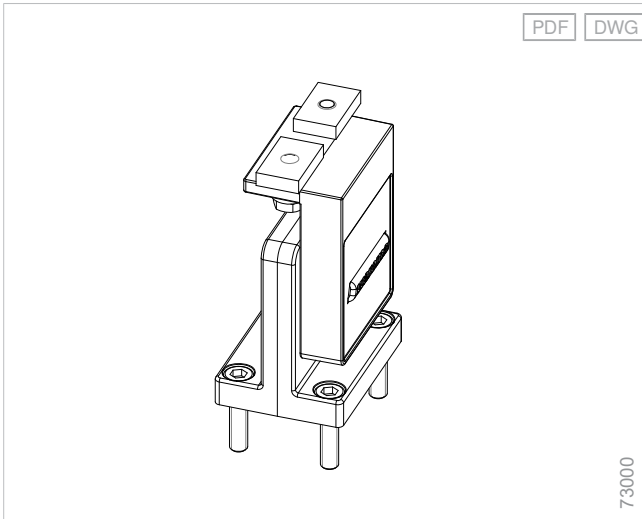
### Guide rail - P20



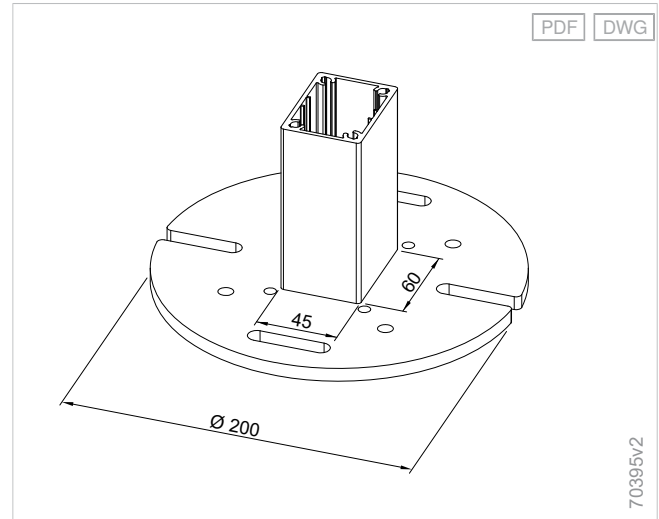
### Front rail - P20



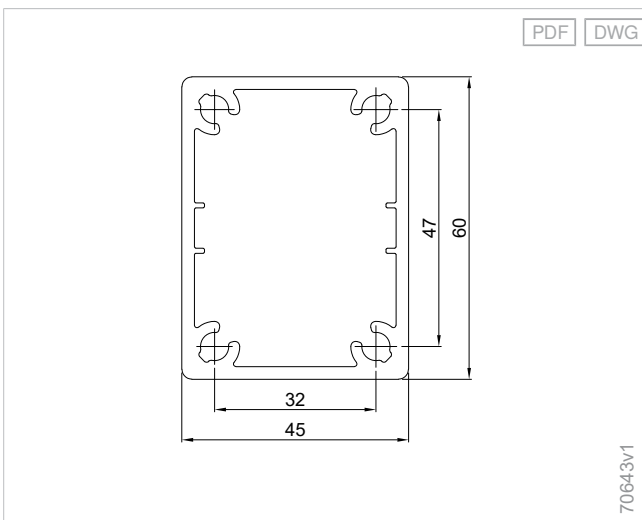
Pole attachment to guide rail - P20



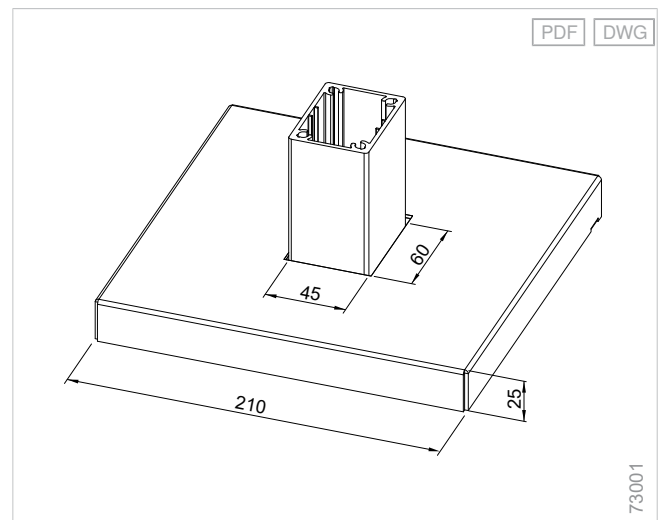
Pole fixing - P20/P40/P40 WE



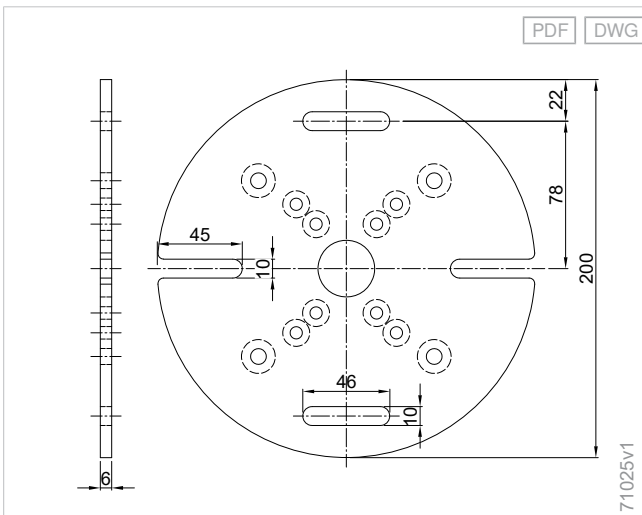
Pole - P20/P40/P40 WE



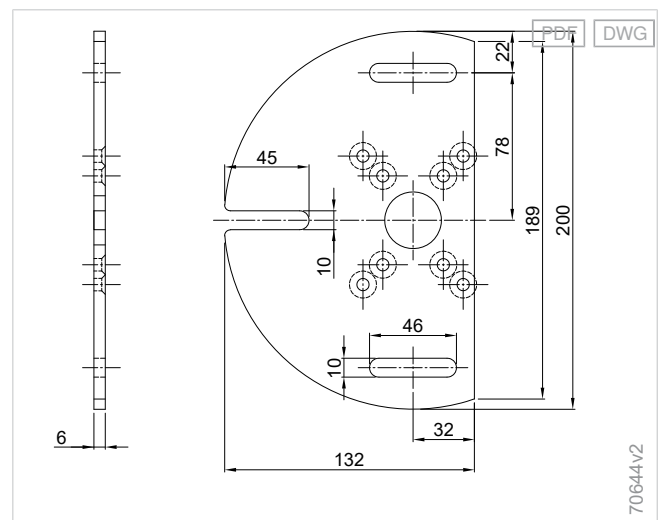
Base cover - P20



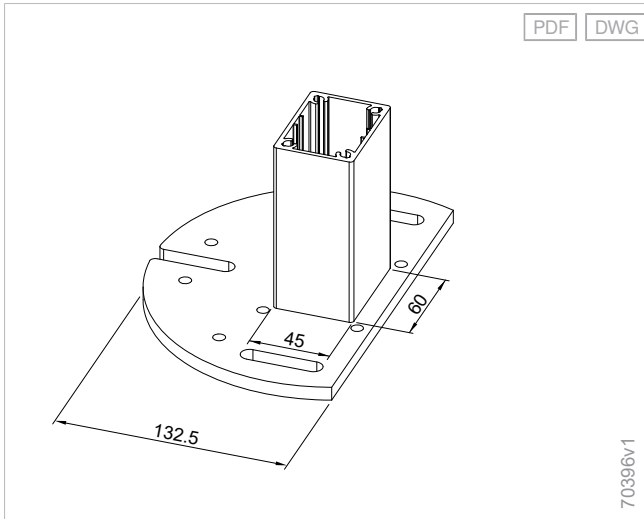
Pole fixing base plate - P20/P40/P40 WE/P60/P70



Pole fixing base plate for reveal installation, lateral - P20/P40/P40 WE

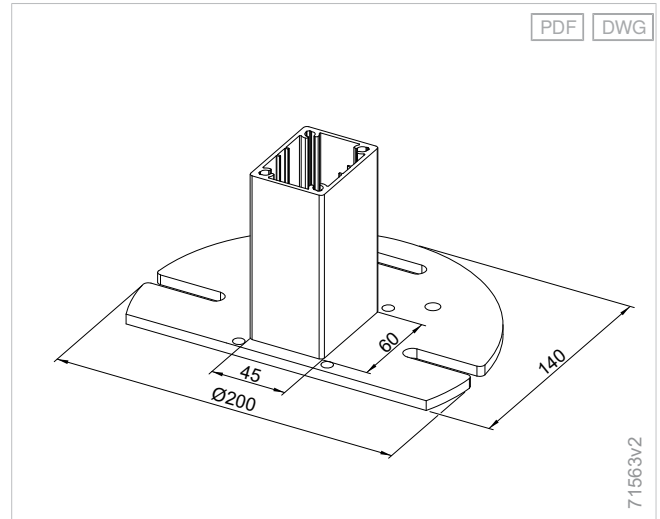


Pole fixing for lateral reveal installation - P20/P40/P40 WE



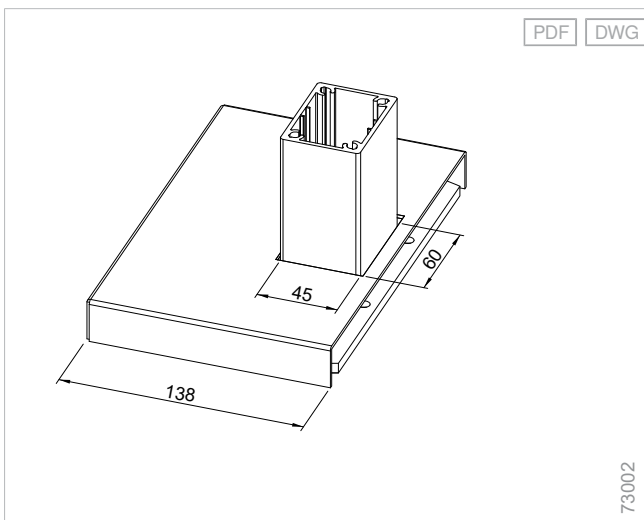
70396v1

Pole fixing for reveal installation, front - P20/P40/P40 WE



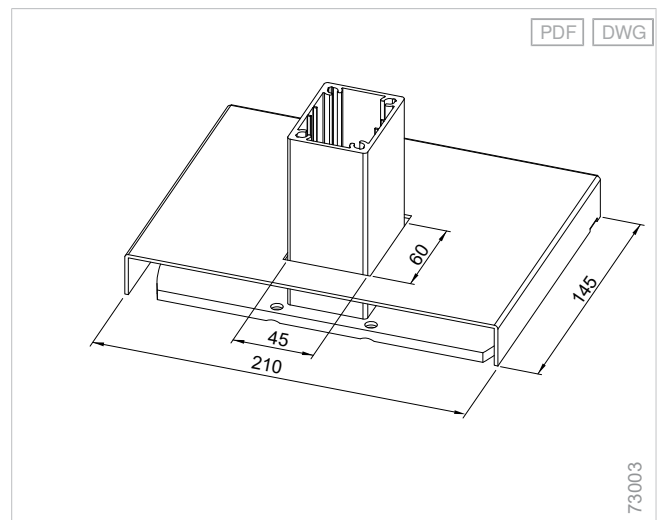
71563v2

Base cover for lateral reveal installation - P20



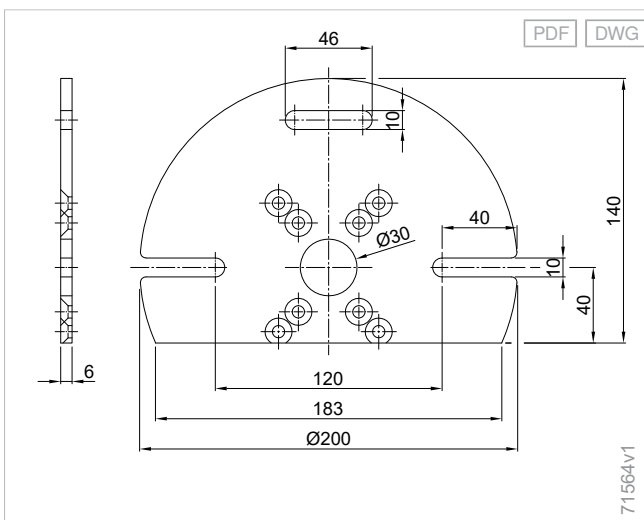
73002

Base cover for reveal installation, front - P20



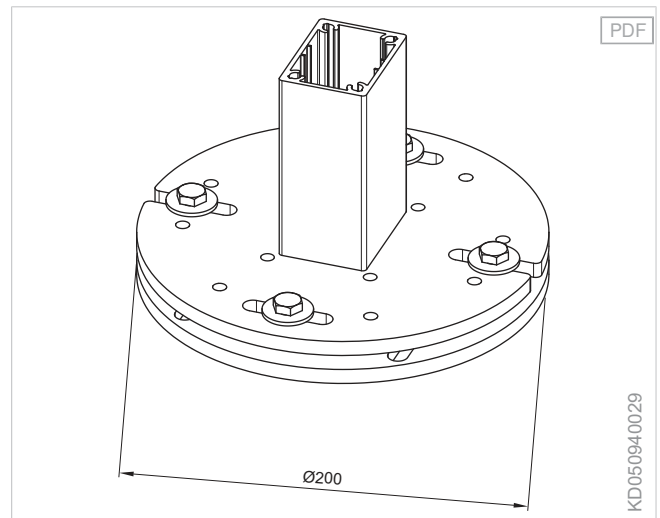
73003

Pole fixing base plate for reveal installation, front - P20/P40/P40 WE



71564v1

Adapter plate ground screw - P20/P40/P40 WE



KD050940029



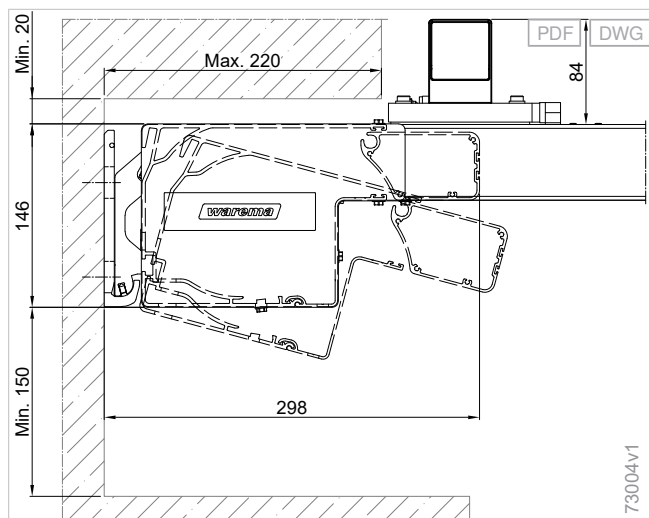
## Additional product information

### Pole installation options

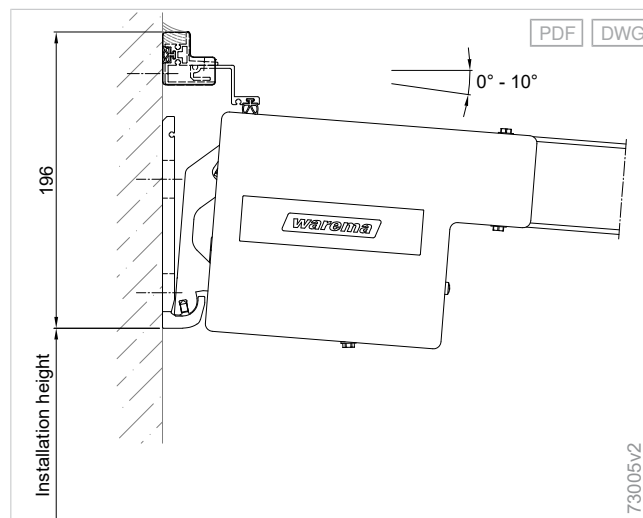
- Ground installation with frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm
- Optional ground installation with on-site Krinner ground screw
- The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery when **threaded rods** are used.

## Mounting examples

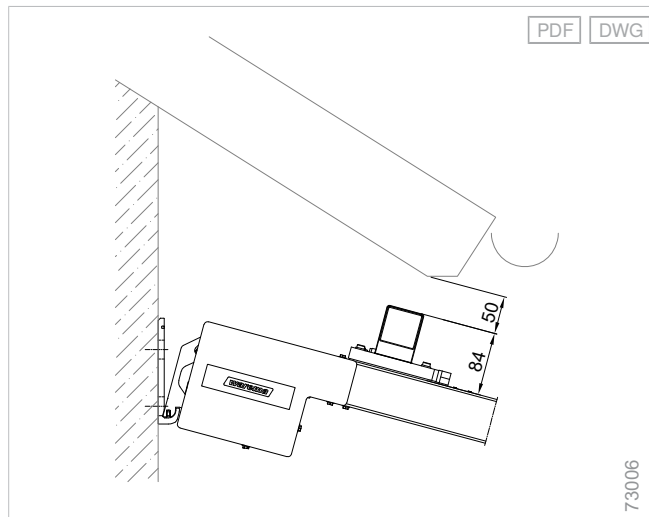
Installation space for wall installation, inclination 0° - P20



Wall connection profile with small rain hood - P20

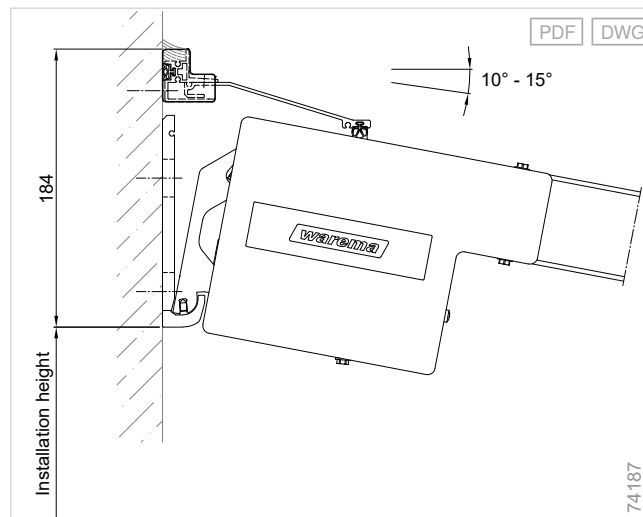


Installation space for travelling reinforcement profile - P20

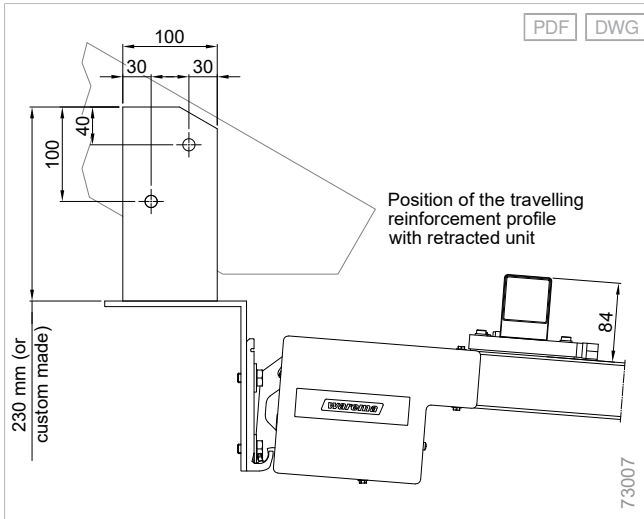


The wall connection profile with small rain hood can be used with the P20 up to an inclination angle of 10°.

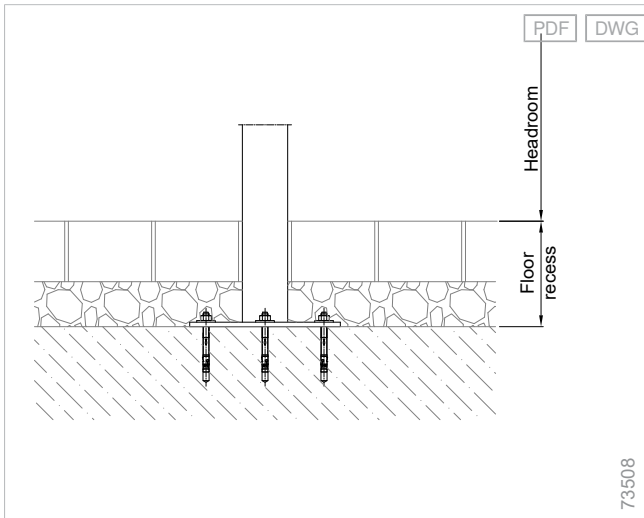
Wall connection profile with large rain hood - P20



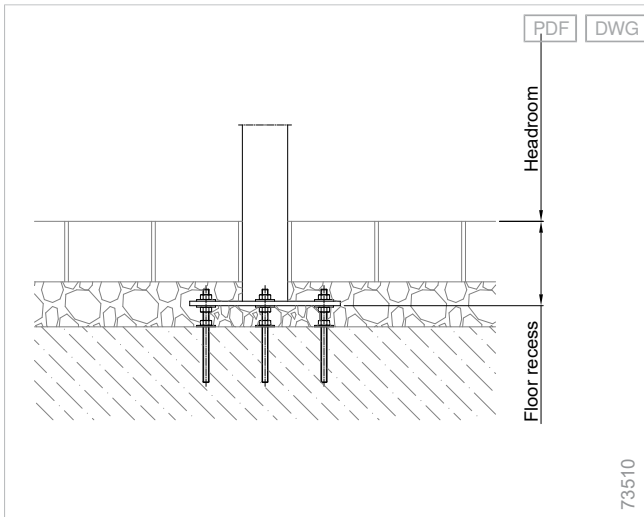
Rafter installation - P20



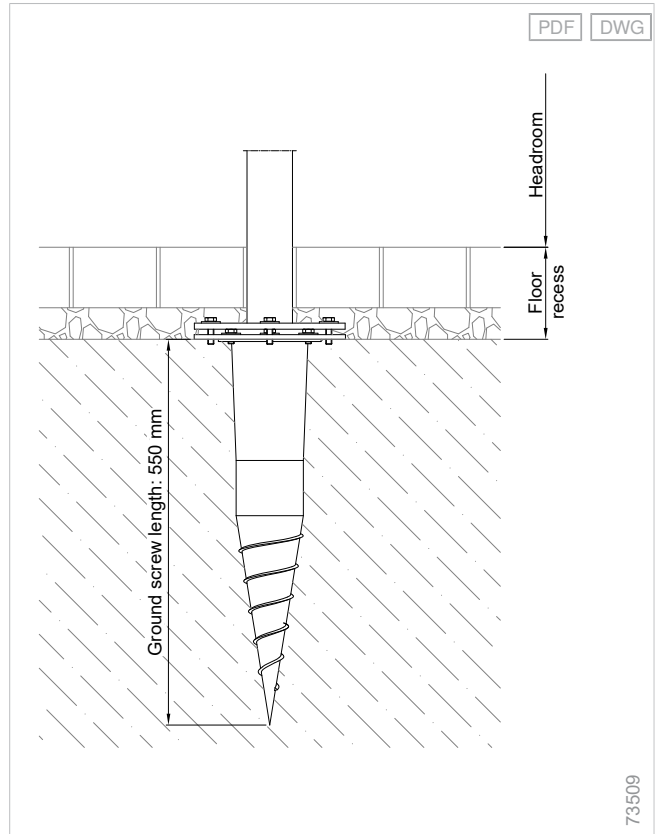
Fixing on concrete foundation without clearance - P20/P40/P40 WE



Fixing on concrete foundation with spacer - P20/P40/P40 WE



Fixing with ground screw - P20/P40/P40 WE



Krinner ground screws made of zinc-coated steel can be used to install the poles. The adapter plate for Krinner ground screw KSF 89x550 is required. The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery.





## Pergola awnings Perea

### Pergola awning Perea P40

#### Exceptional

A special eye-catcher: The guide rails are not only available in straight but also in curved design.

#### Stable

Functional and elegant: With secudrive® technology, the fabric runs tightly and securely on the rail - a fixed or travelling reinforcement profile additionally tensions the fabric.

#### Customisable

The right accessories for every wish: For example, the optional LED lighting creates a cosy atmosphere in the evening.



reddot design award  
winner 2013

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6500 mm
Maximum order depth	7000 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036165](#)

**Order form**

<https://docs.warema.com/fii/878225.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

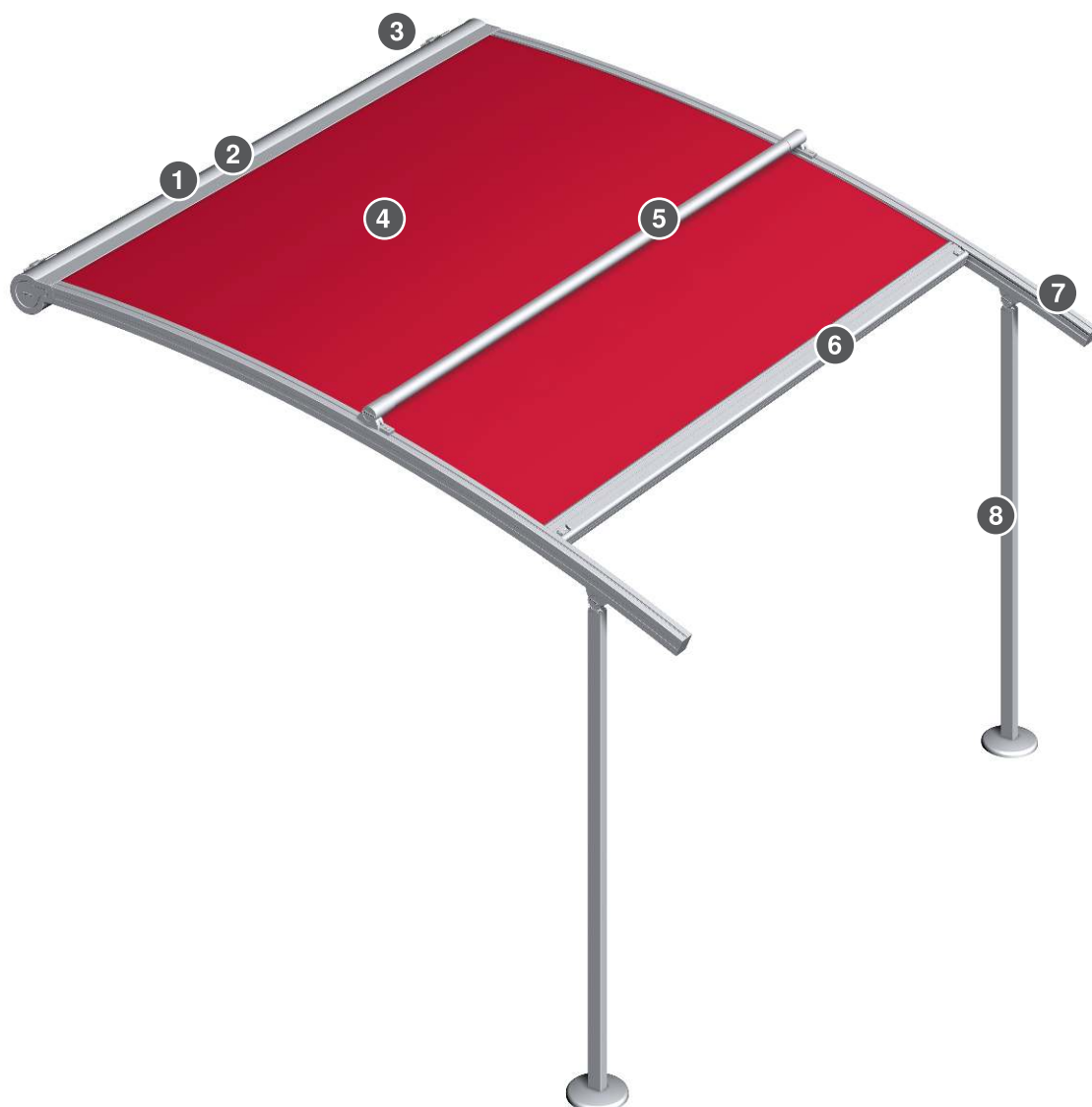
[Collection Assistant](#)

[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

Pergola awning Perea P40



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric

- 5 Reinforcement profile
- 6 Front rail
- 7 Guide rail
- 8 Pole

## Cover panel

### Cover panel - P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	210 mm
Height	180 mm

## Shaft

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	70 mm

### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	86.2 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	113 mm
Height	74 mm

## Front rail, optional

### Front rail - P40 with valance roller blind

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	113 mm
Height	74 mm

## Reinforcement profile

### Reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	60 mm

## Reinforcement profile, optional

### Travelling reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm - W20/P40

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	60 mm

### Space required for travelling reinforcement profile:

The installation space for the travelling reinforcement profile is 134 mm from the top edge of the guide rail to the eaves, for example. For ceiling installation, this installation space must be manufactured with spacer consoles.

## Pole

### Pole - Perea

Maximum order height	2500 mm
Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Depth	60 mm

Notes on construction limit values:

Offset:

Max. 1/3 of order depth;

Max. 1200 mm; min. 105 mm

## Base plate

### Base plate - Ø 200 mm Perea

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	200 mm

## Base cover, optional

### Base cover - P40/P40 WE

Material	Aluminium, permanent mould cast
Surface	Powder-coated
Height	34 mm
Diameter	240 mm

## Wall connection profile, optional

– Wall connection profile with large rain hood

⊕ see "Wall connection profiles", Page 459

## Console

### Wall console type A - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	140 mm
Height	140 mm
Depth	29 mm

### Wall console type B - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	185 mm
Height	140 mm
Depth	29 mm

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	183 mm
Depth	182 mm

### Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	413 mm
Depth	182 mm

## Guide variants

– secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - Perea curved

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	65 mm
Height	80 mm

### Guide rail - Perea straight

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	65 mm
Height	80 mm

## Drive variants

– Motor

## Motor

– WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

– WMS-PM (WMS)

⊕ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living connect package
- WMS sensor system
- Pole, lowered vertically
- Drainage cutouts
- Valance roller blind with motor and storage battery and WMS control
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Wind protection for valance roller blind
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Multicube set
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Notes

### Planning permission

Pergola awnings require planning permission, depending on their overall size and the local regulations.

### Fixing of the radiant heater

It is not possible to fix the radiant heaters directly to pergola awnings Perea.

### Processing of Twilight Pearl

In awnings with secudrive® guide, the fabric is fastened to the spring steel strip with a fabric strip (light grey) visible at the side.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order depth	Maximum order depth	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Fabric qualities + Guide rail</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue + Guide rail - Perea curved	950 mm	6500 mm	800 mm	5000 mm	32,5 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue + Guide rail - Perea straight	950 mm	6500 mm	800 mm	5000 mm	32,5 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue + Guide rail - Perea straight	950 mm	5000 mm	800 mm	7000 mm	35 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Twilight Pearl + Guide rail - Perea curved	950 mm	6500 mm	800 mm	5000 mm	28 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Twilight Pearl + Guide rail - Perea straight	950 mm	6500 mm	800 mm	5000 mm	28 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Twilight Pearl + Guide rail - Perea straight	950 mm	5000 mm	800 mm	7000 mm	28 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Soltis 92 + Guide rail - Perea straight	950 mm	3500 mm	800 mm	4000 mm	14 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °

### Inclination:

- The **maximum order depth** refers to an inclination of 14°.

### Reinforcement profile:

- For order depths of 1401 mm or greater and curved guide rails, a reinforcement profile (fixed or travelling) is used.
- For order depths of 4001 mm or greater and straight guide rails, a reinforcement profile (fixed or travelling) is used.

#### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- The lining up of several pergola awnings is possible with a flush closure.
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- The installation of two guide rails on one pole is possible with an adapter plate.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 13000 mm!

## Dimensions

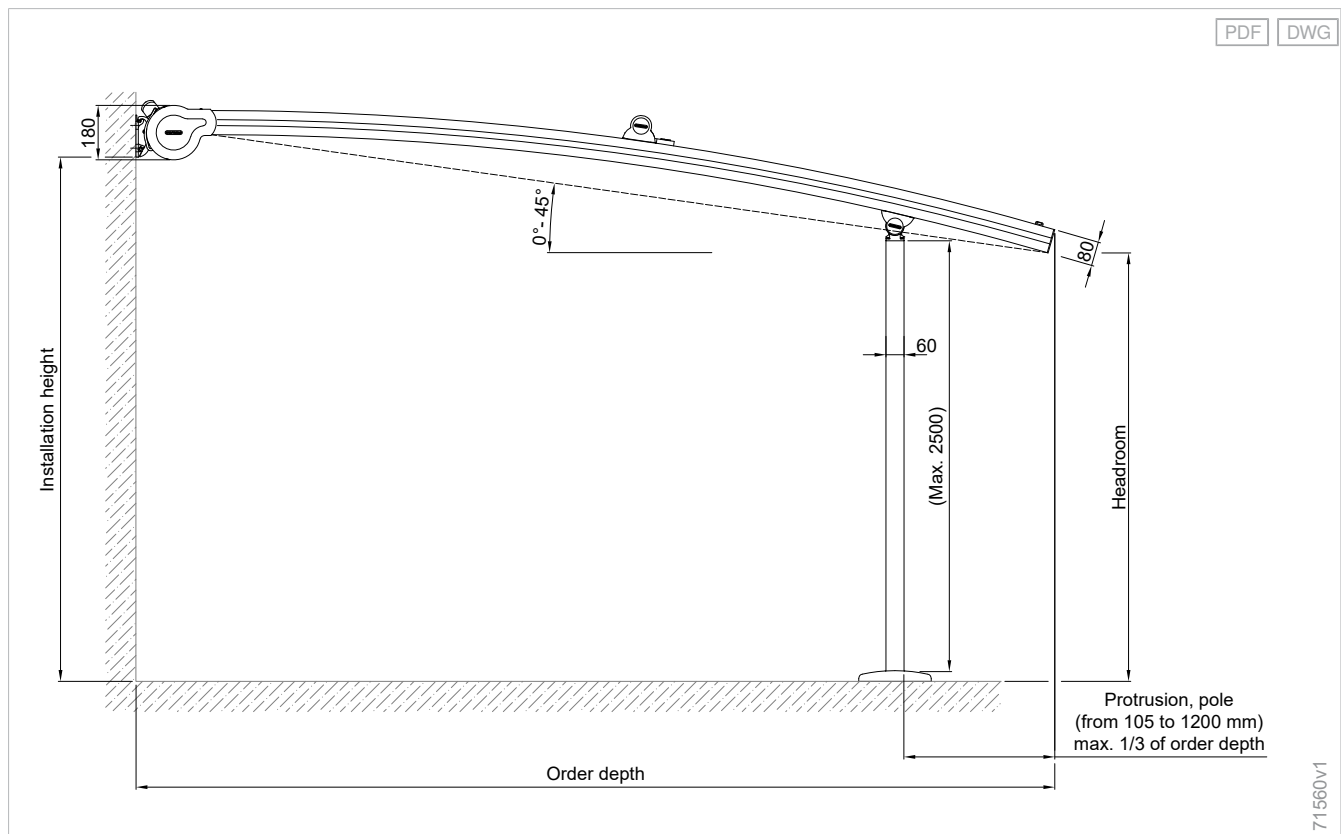
Weight per running metre: 20 - 24 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without consoles, without guide rails and poles.

## Dimension determination

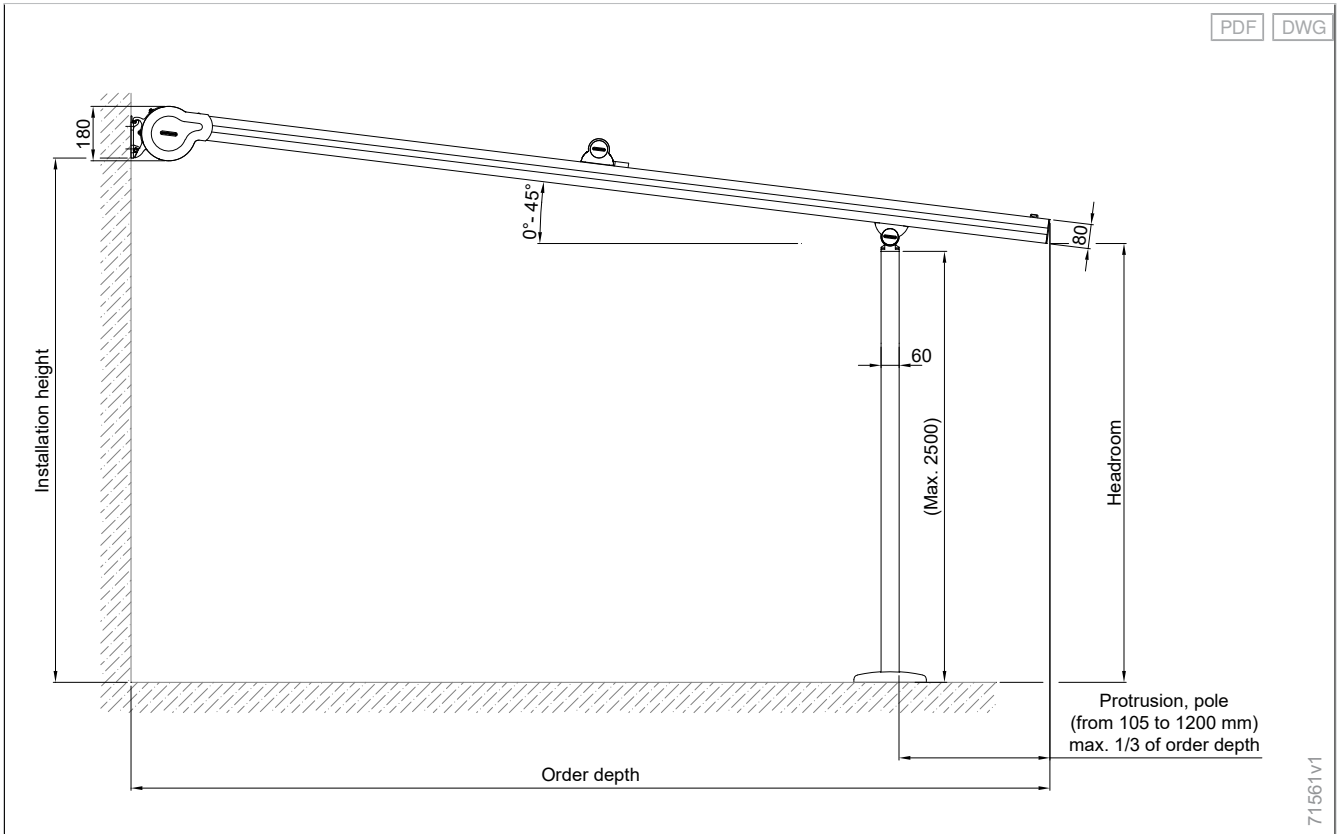
Determining the installation height differs for ceiling console!

#### Curved guide rail - P40

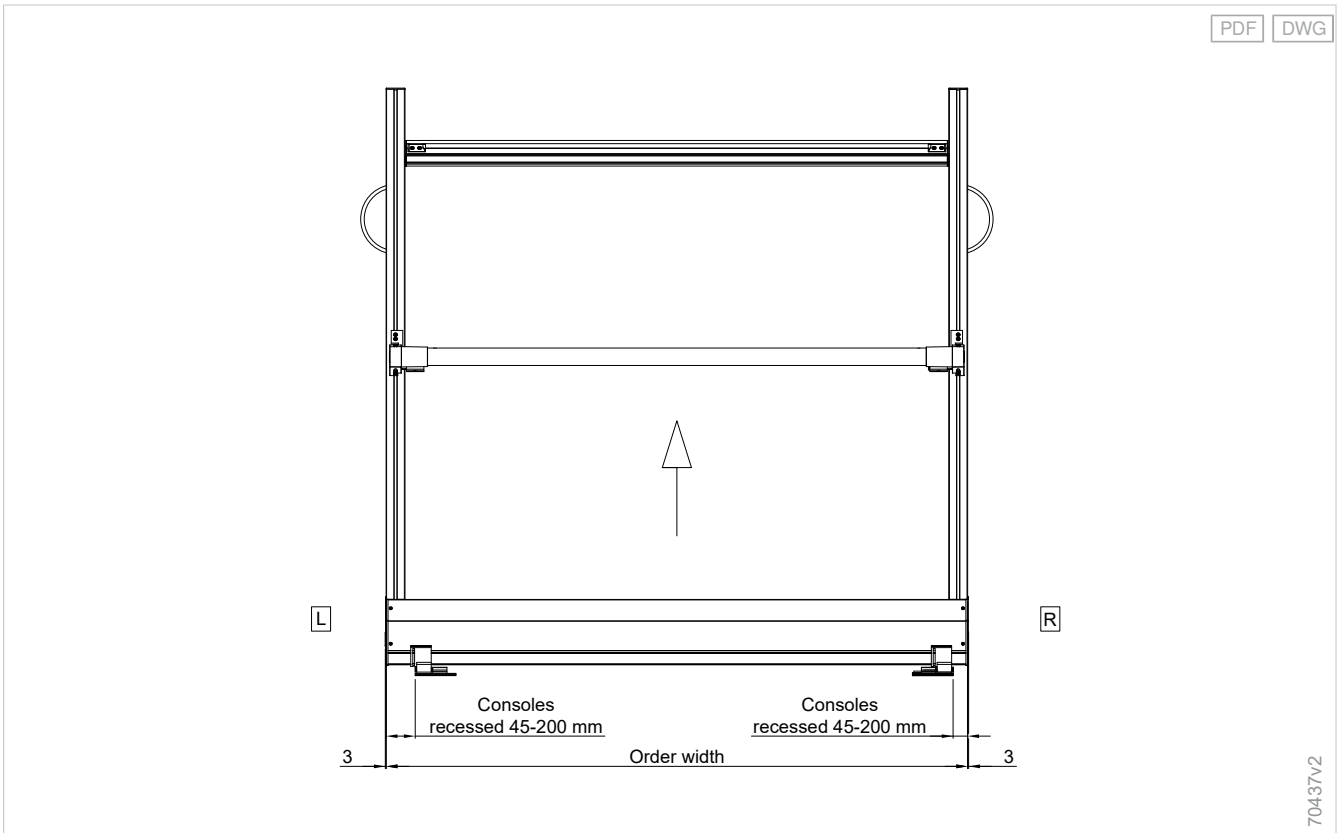




Straight guide rail - P40



Top view for all guide rail models - P40



Planning

Terrea

Perca

Patio side screens

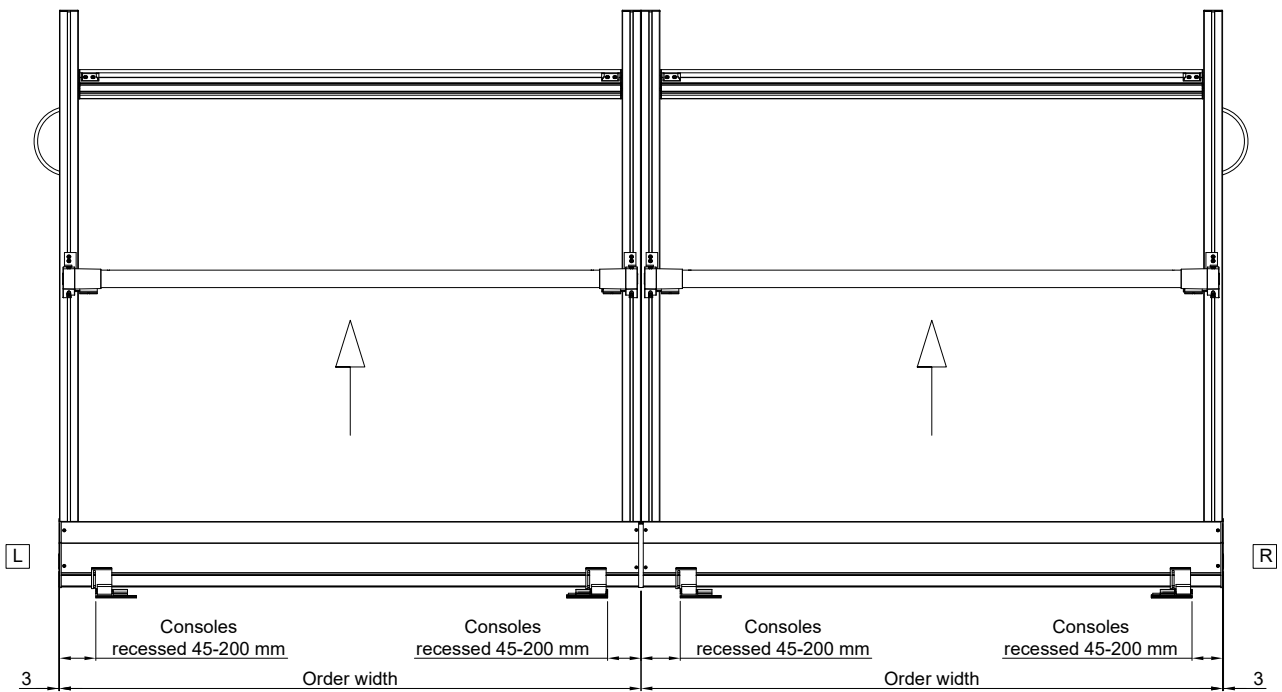
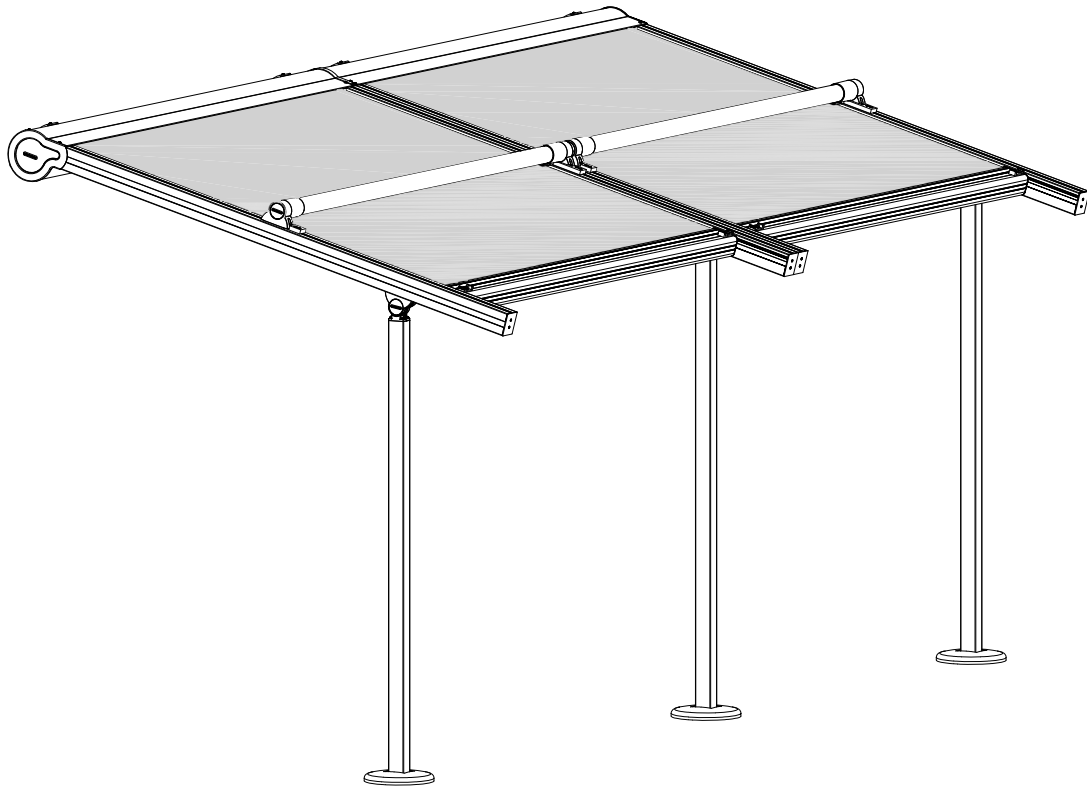
Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

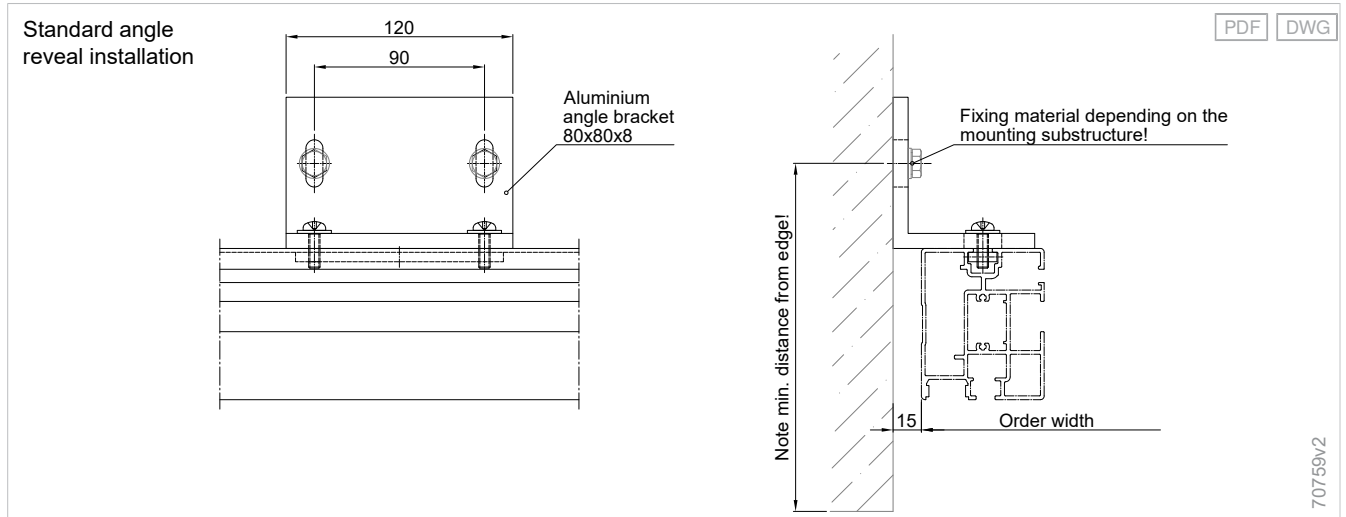
Drive variants

Standards

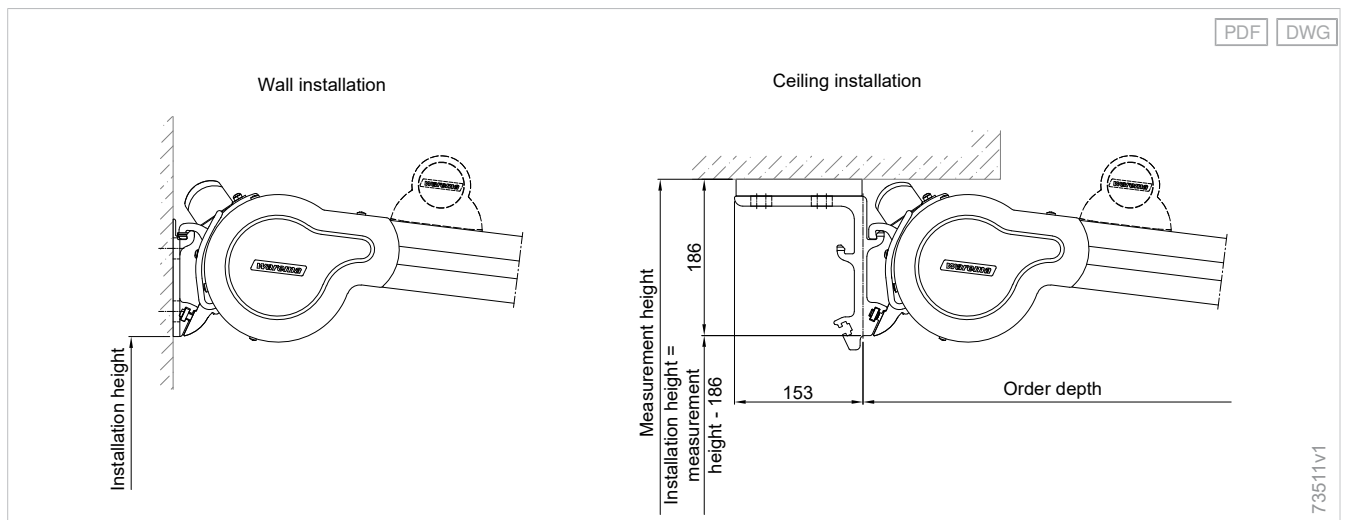


70438v1

### Reveal installation



### Determining the installation height for wall/ceiling console - P40



Planning

Terrea

Perca

Patio side screens

Climara

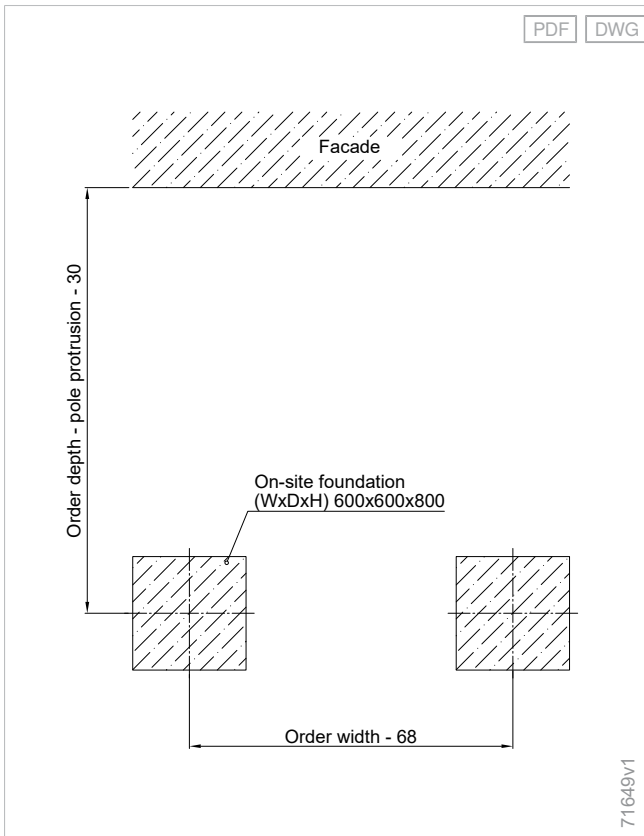
Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

## Foundation plan



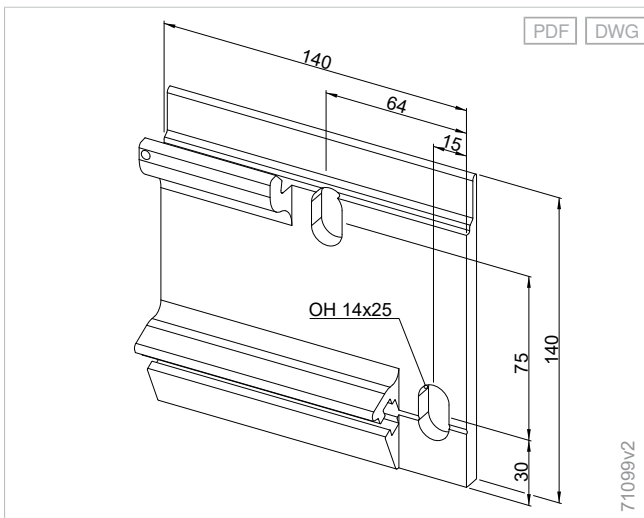
## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

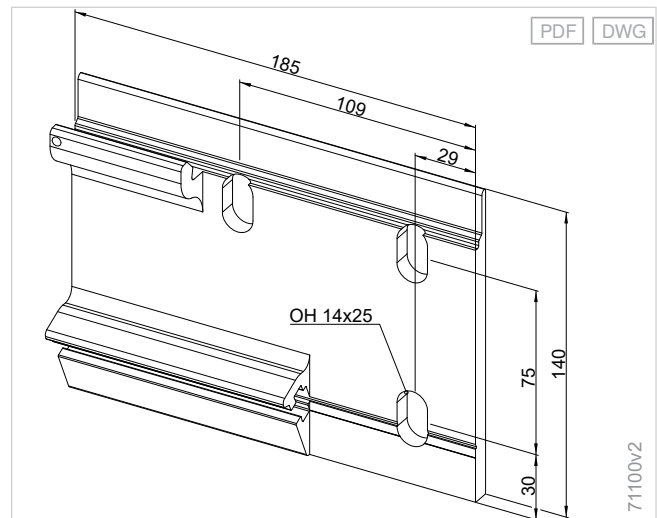
Configuration variants	Order width	Order depth	
		800 - 5000 mm	5001 - 7000 mm
Console/Bracket			
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	950 - 5000 mm	2	2
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	5001 - 6500 mm	2	

## Details

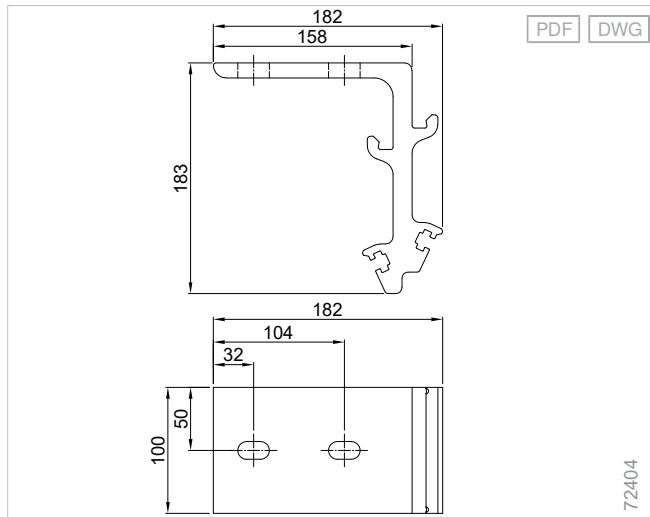
Wall console type A, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



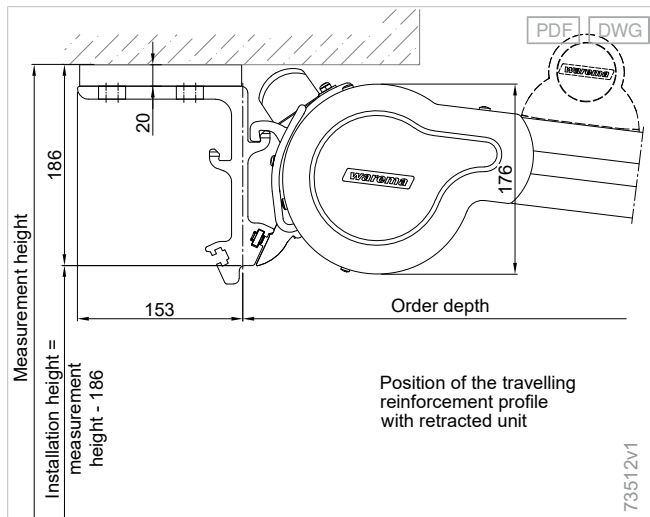
Wall console type B, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



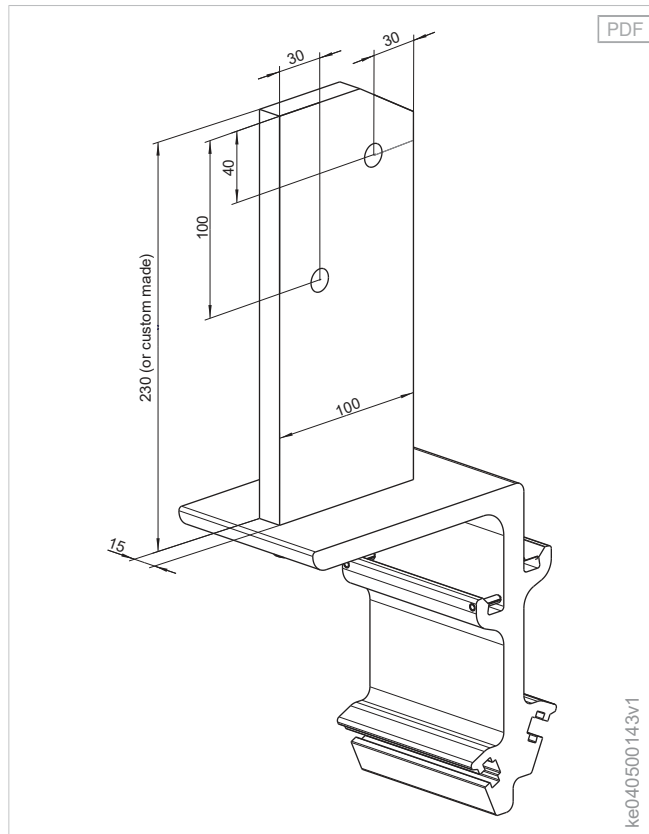
Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



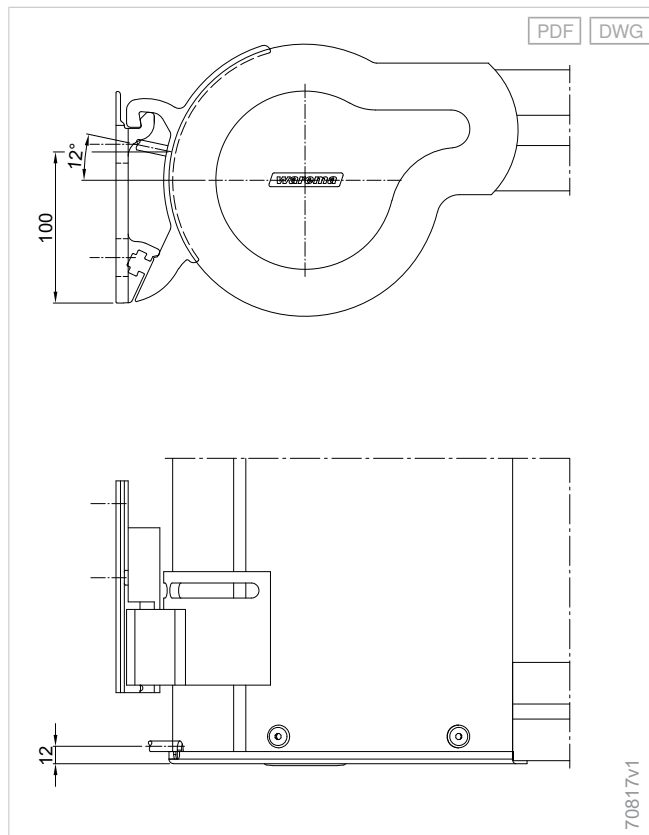
Ceiling installation (installation of the ceiling console only possible as shown) - P40



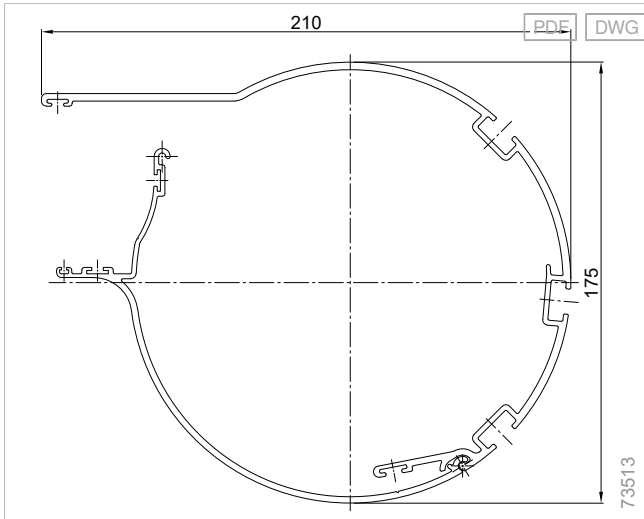
Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



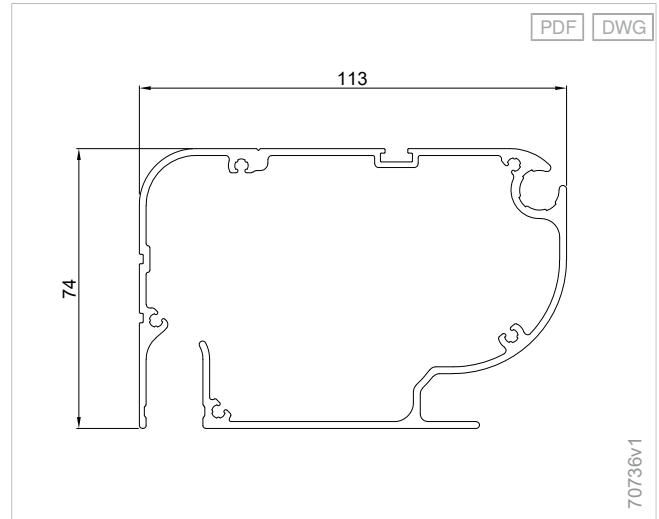
Cable exit - P40/P40 WE



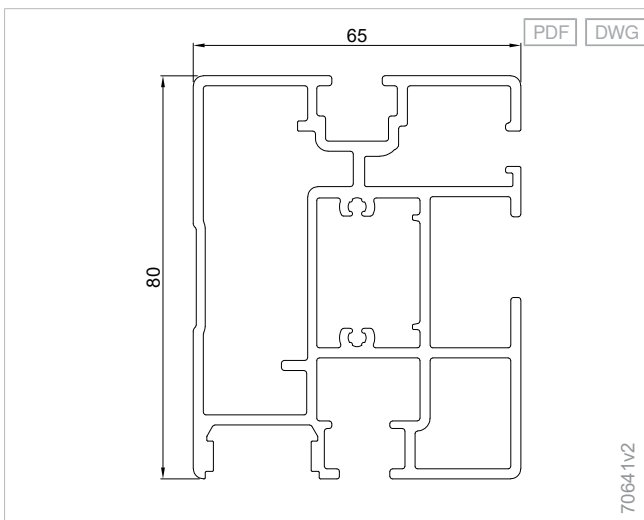
Cover panel - P40/P40 WE/P60



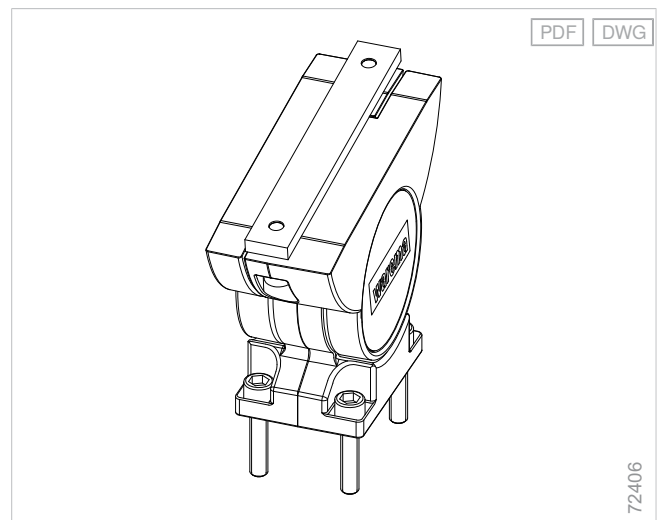
Front rail for valance roller blind - P40



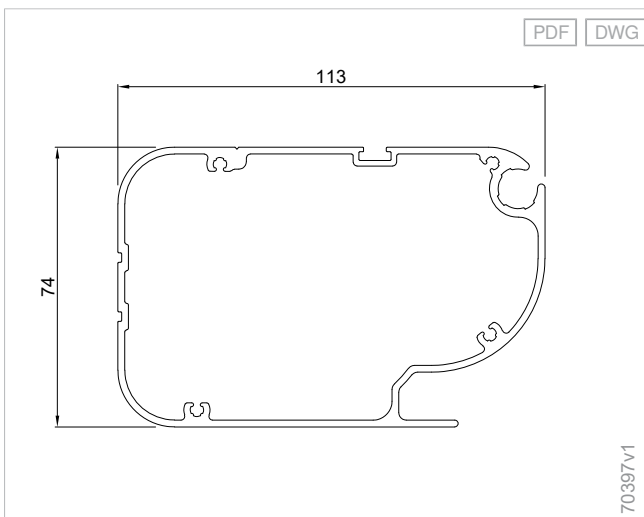
Guide rail - P40/P40 WE/P60



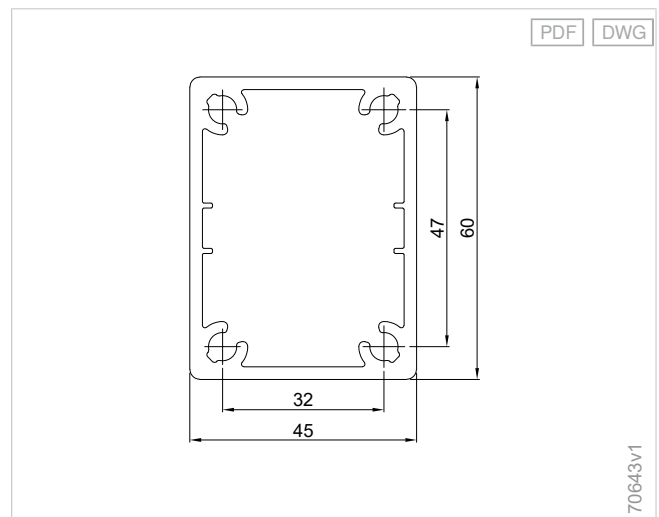
Pole attachment to guide rail - P40/P40 WE



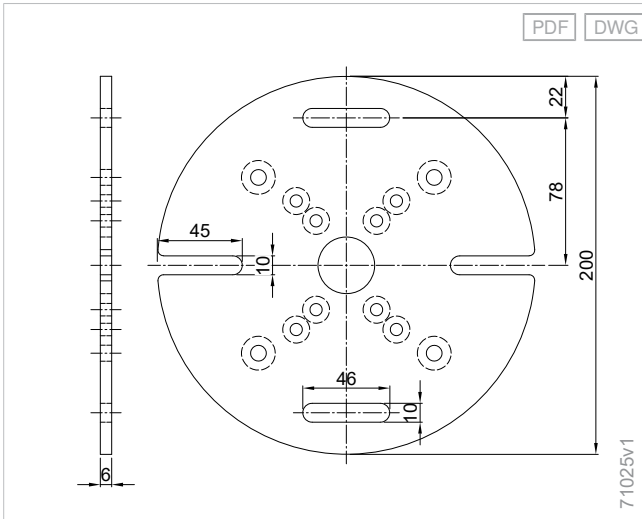
Front rail - P40/P40 WE/P60



Pole - P20/P40/P40 WE

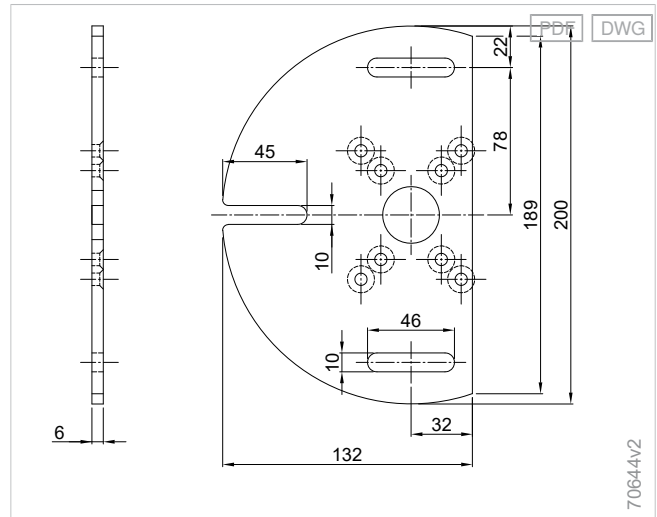


Pole fixing base plate - P20/P40/P40 WE/P60/P70



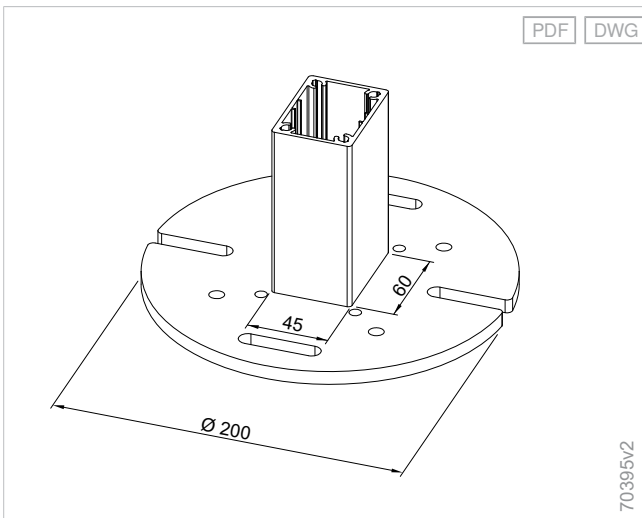
71025v1

Pole fixing base plate for reveal installation, lateral - P20/P40/P40 WE



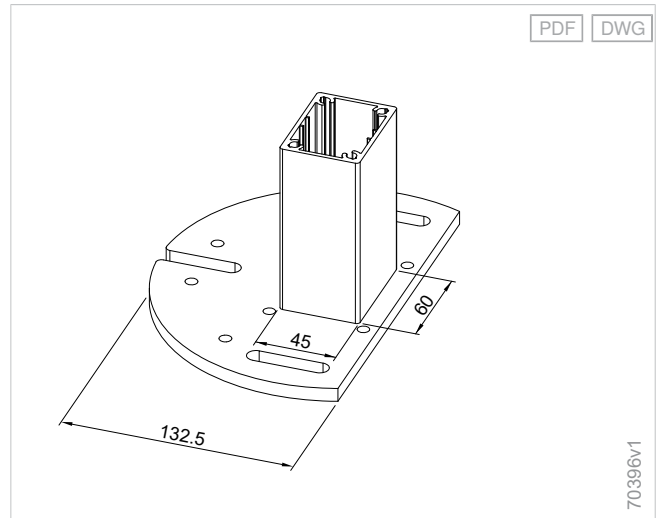
70644v2

Pole fixing - P20/P40/P40 WE



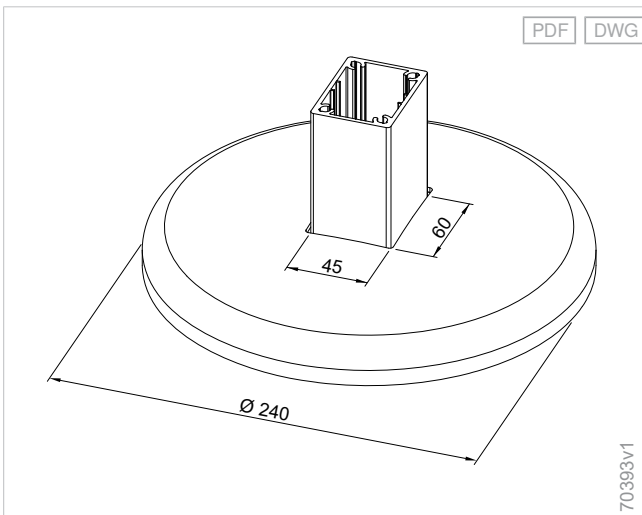
70395v2

Pole fixing for lateral reveal installation - P20/P40/P40 WE



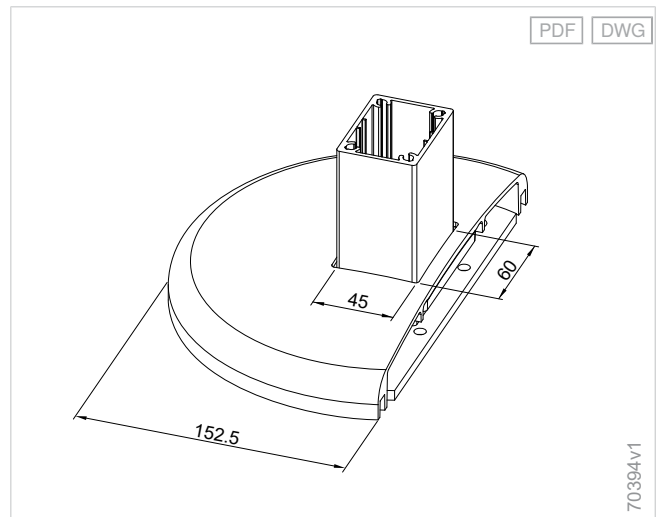
70396v1

Base cover - P40/P40 WE



70393v1

Base cover for lateral reveal installation - P40/P40 WE



70394v1

Planning

Terrea

Pereia

Patio side screens

Climara

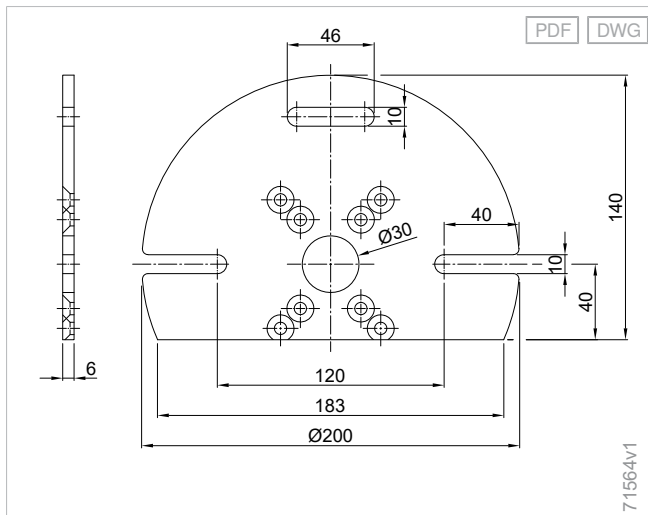
Supplementary accessories

Components

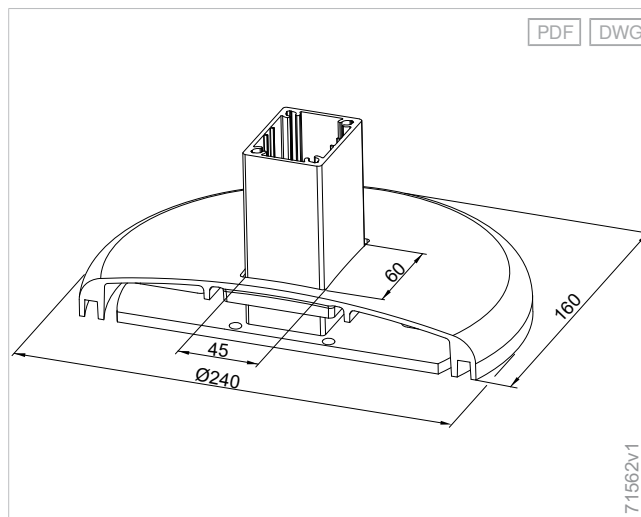
Drive variants

Standards

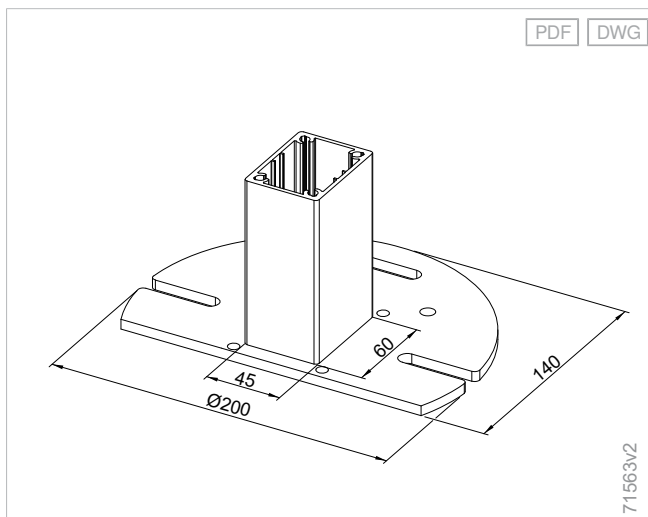
Pole fixing base plate for reveal installation, front - P20/P40/P40 WE



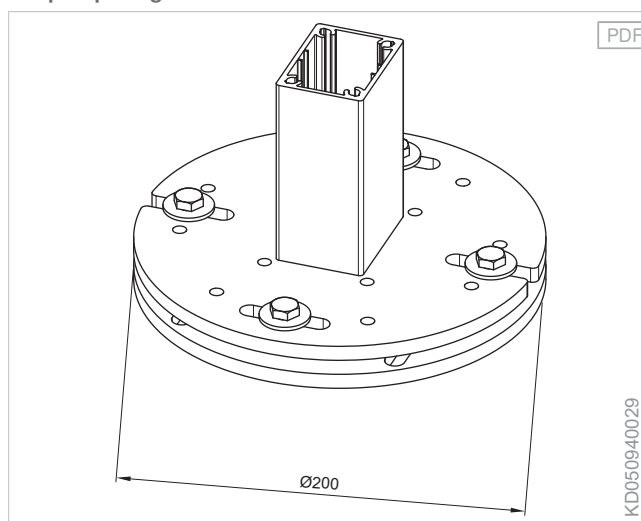
Base cover for reveal installation, front - P40/P40 WE



Pole fixing for reveal installation, front - P20/P40/P40 WE



Adapter plate ground screw - P20/P40/P40 WE



## Additional product information

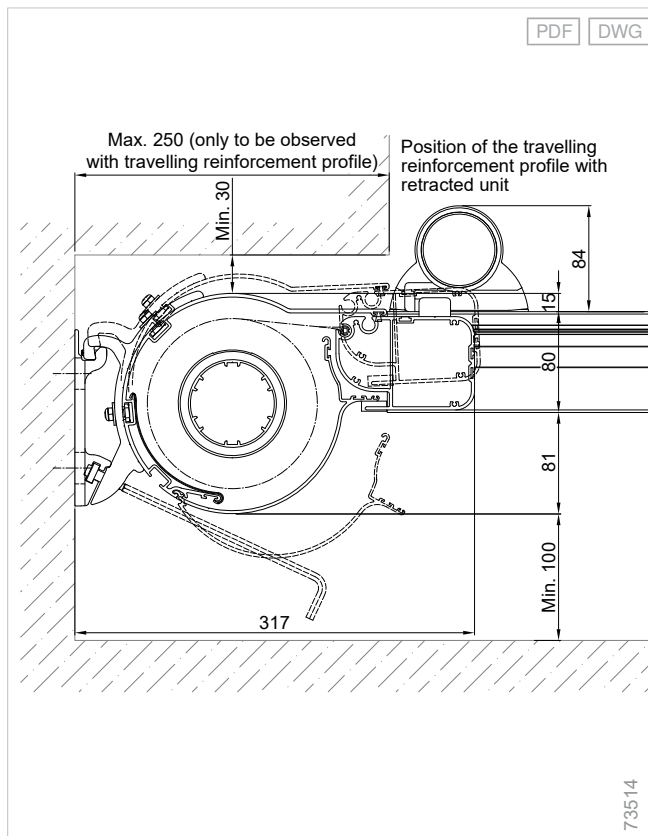
### Pole installation options

- Ground installation with frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm
- Optional ground installation with on-site Krinner ground screw
- The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery when **threaded rods** are used.

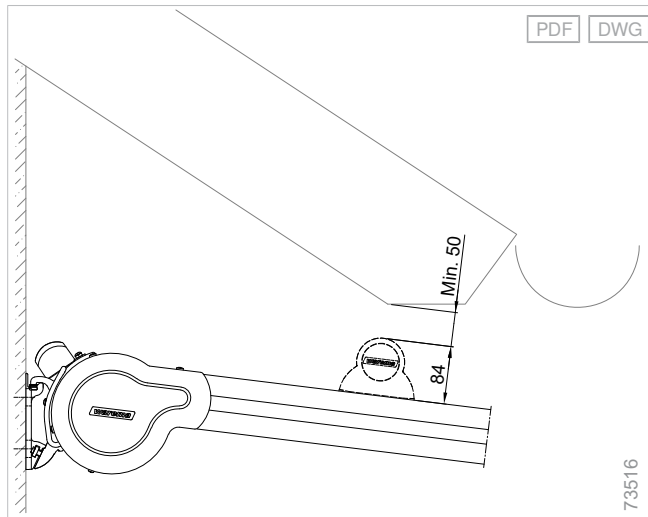


# Mounting examples

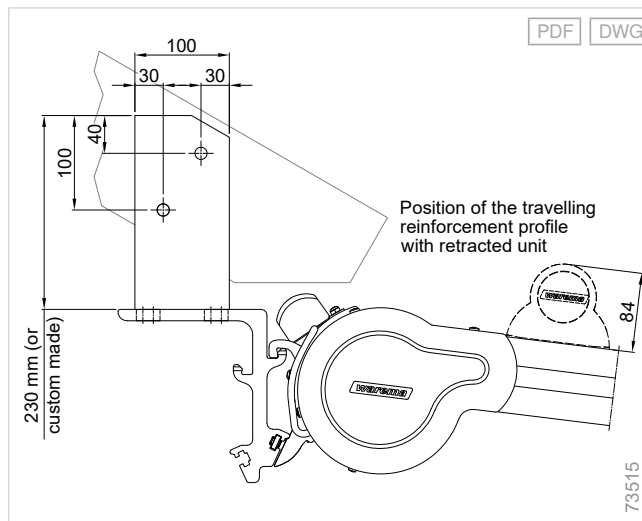
Installation space for wall installation, inclination 0° - P40



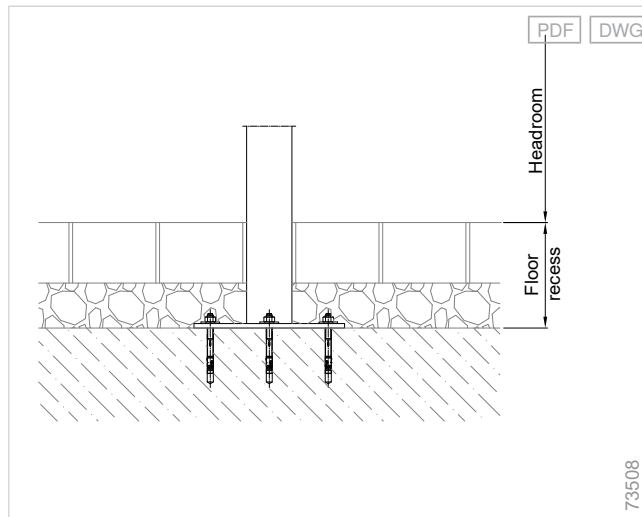
Installation space for travelling reinforcement profile - P40



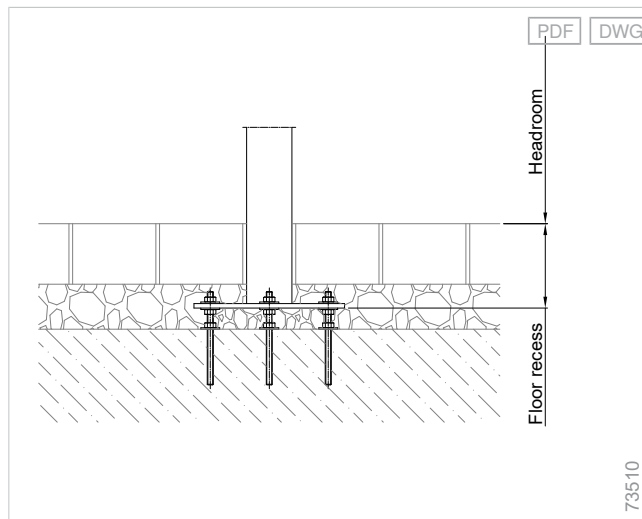
Rafter installation - P40



Fixing on concrete foundation without clearance - P20/P40/P40 WE



Fixing on concrete foundation with spacer - P20/P40/P40 WE



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

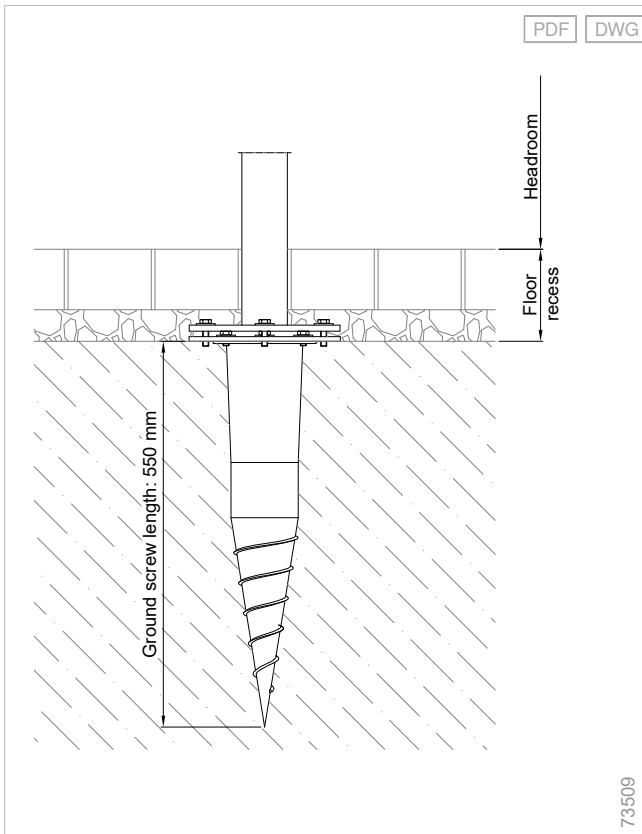
Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

## Fixing with ground screw - P20/P40/P40 WE



Krinner ground screws made of zinc-coated steel can be used to install the poles. The adapter plate for Krinner ground screw KSF 89x550 is required. The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery.





## Pergola awnings Perea

### Pergola awning Perea P40 WeatherEdition

#### Stable

Functional and elegant: With secudrive® technology, the fabric runs tightly and securely on the rail - a fixed reinforcement profile additionally tensions the fabric.

#### Doubly practical

Rain-proof (rain class 2) and translucent: With the Sunworker Top fabric quality, the area underneath the awning remains dry even when the weather is bad, without being completely darkened. Rainwater is reliably diverted by the drainage grid integrated into the fabric.

#### Customisable

The right accessories for every wish: For example, the optional LED lighting creates a cosy atmosphere in the evening.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6000 mm
Maximum order depth	5000 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2053877](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fii/2053103.pdf>

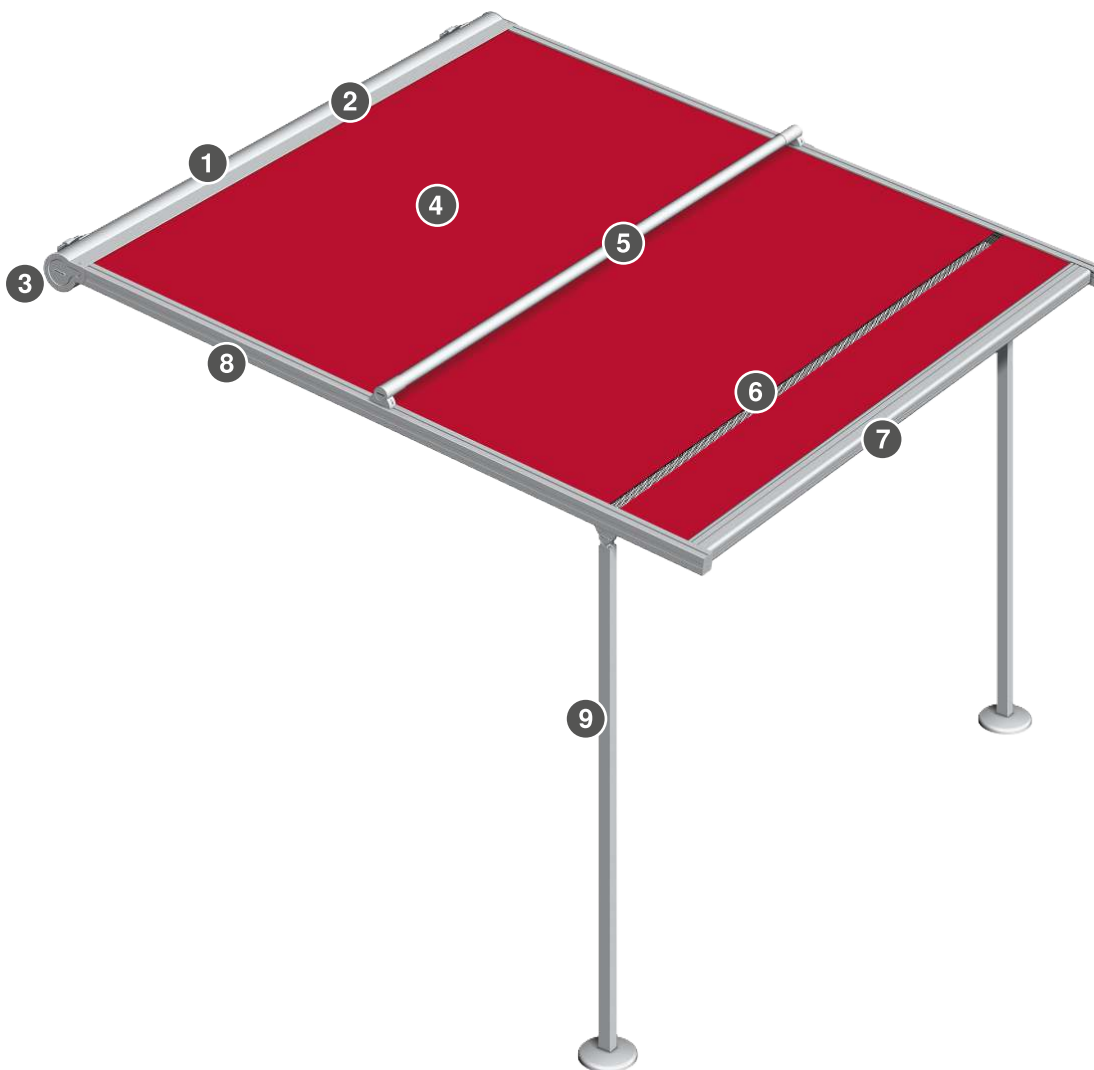
#### WAREMA tools

[Collection Assistant](#)

[see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

Pergola awning Perea P40 WeatherEdition



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Console
- 4 Fabric
- 5 Reinforcement profile

- 6 Drainage grid
- 7 Front rail
- 8 Guide rail
- 9 Pole

## Cover panel

### Cover panel - P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	210 mm
Height	180 mm

## Shaft

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	70 mm

### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	86.2 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	113 mm
Height	74 mm

## Reinforcement profile

### Reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	60 mm

## Pole

### Pole - Perea

Maximum order height	2500 mm
Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Depth	60 mm

Notes on construction limit values:

Offset:

Max. 1/3 of order depth;

Max. 1200 mm; min. 105 mm

## Base plate

### Base plate - Ø 200 mm Perea

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	200 mm

## Base cover, optional

### Base cover - P40/P40 WE

Material	Aluminium, permanent mould cast
Surface	Powder-coated
Height	34 mm
Diameter	240 mm

## Drainage

### Drainage grid

Material	PVC
Material colour	Black
Depth	30 mm

The drainage grid runs across the entire order width.

## Wall connection profile, optional

– Wall connection profile with large rain hood

⊕ see "Wall connection profiles", Page 459

## Console

### Wall console type A - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	140 mm
Height	140 mm
Depth	29 mm

### Wall console type B - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	185 mm
Height	140 mm
Depth	29 mm

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	183 mm
Depth	182 mm

### Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	413 mm
Depth	182 mm

## Guide variants

– secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - Perea straight

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	65 mm
Height	80 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

### Motor

- WM REA

### Radio motor, optional

- WMS-PM (WMS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Sunworker Top
- Sunvas Perla FR

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order depth	Maximum order depth	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Fabric qualities</b>							
Sunworker Top / Sunvas Perla FR	950 mm	6000 mm	800 mm	5000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	9 °	15 °

### Inclination:

The inclination for the rainwater drain (= difference between installation height and headroom) is at least 9°.

### Reinforcement profile:

A fixed reinforcement profile is generally used, regardless of the order depth.

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- The lining up of several pergola awnings is possible with a flush closure.
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- The installation of two guide rails on one pole is possible with an adapter plate.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 13000 mm!

+ see "Dimension determination", Page 164

## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 20 - 24 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without consoles, without guide rails and poles.

## Supplementary accessories

- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Multicube set
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

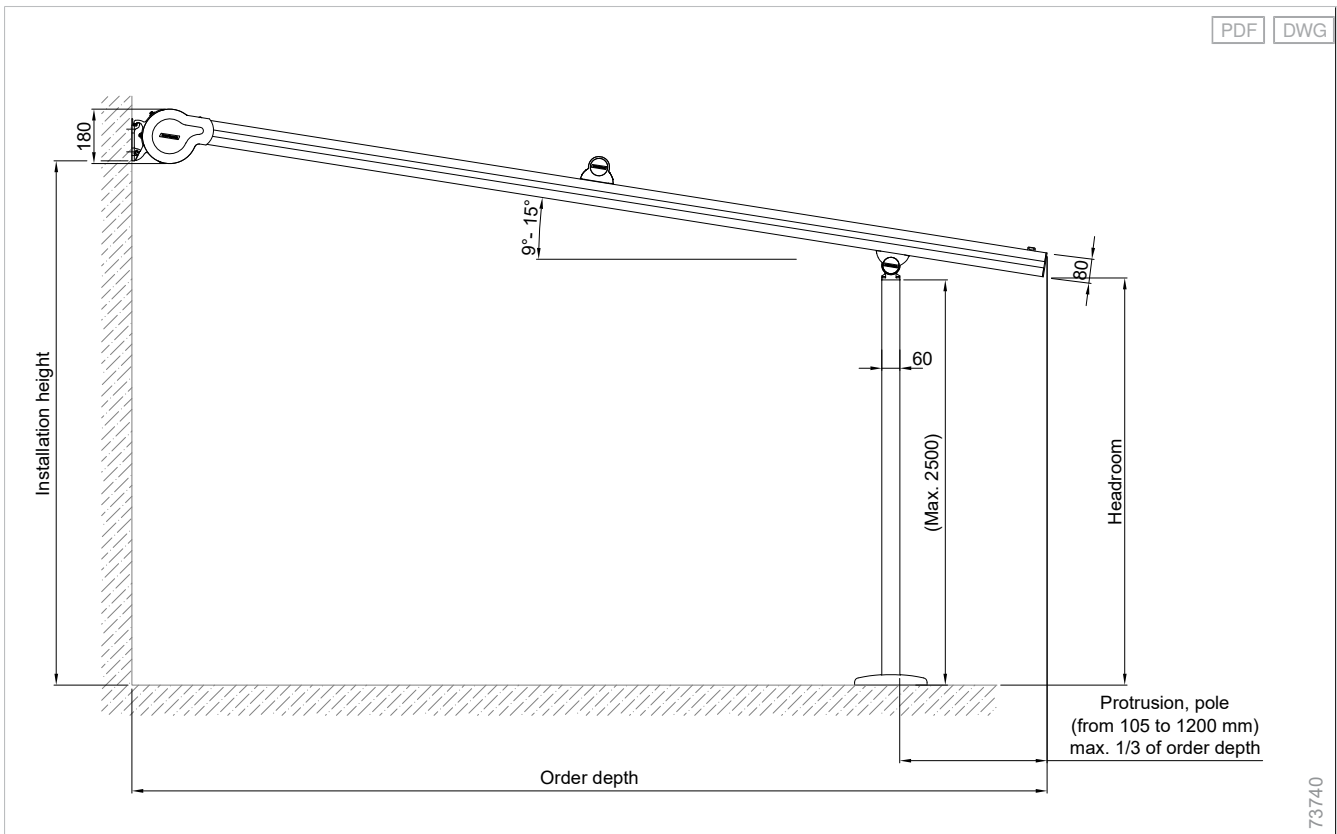
## Notes

### Fixing of the radiant heater

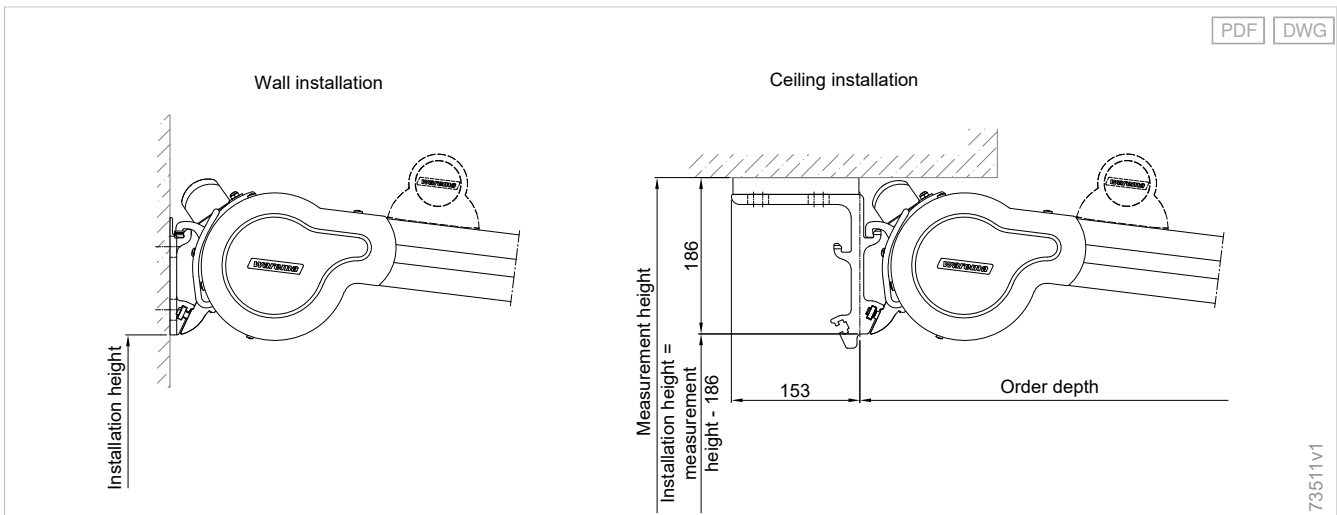
It is not possible to fix the radiant heaters directly to pergola awnings Perea.

# Dimension determination

## Guide rail - P40 WeatherEdition

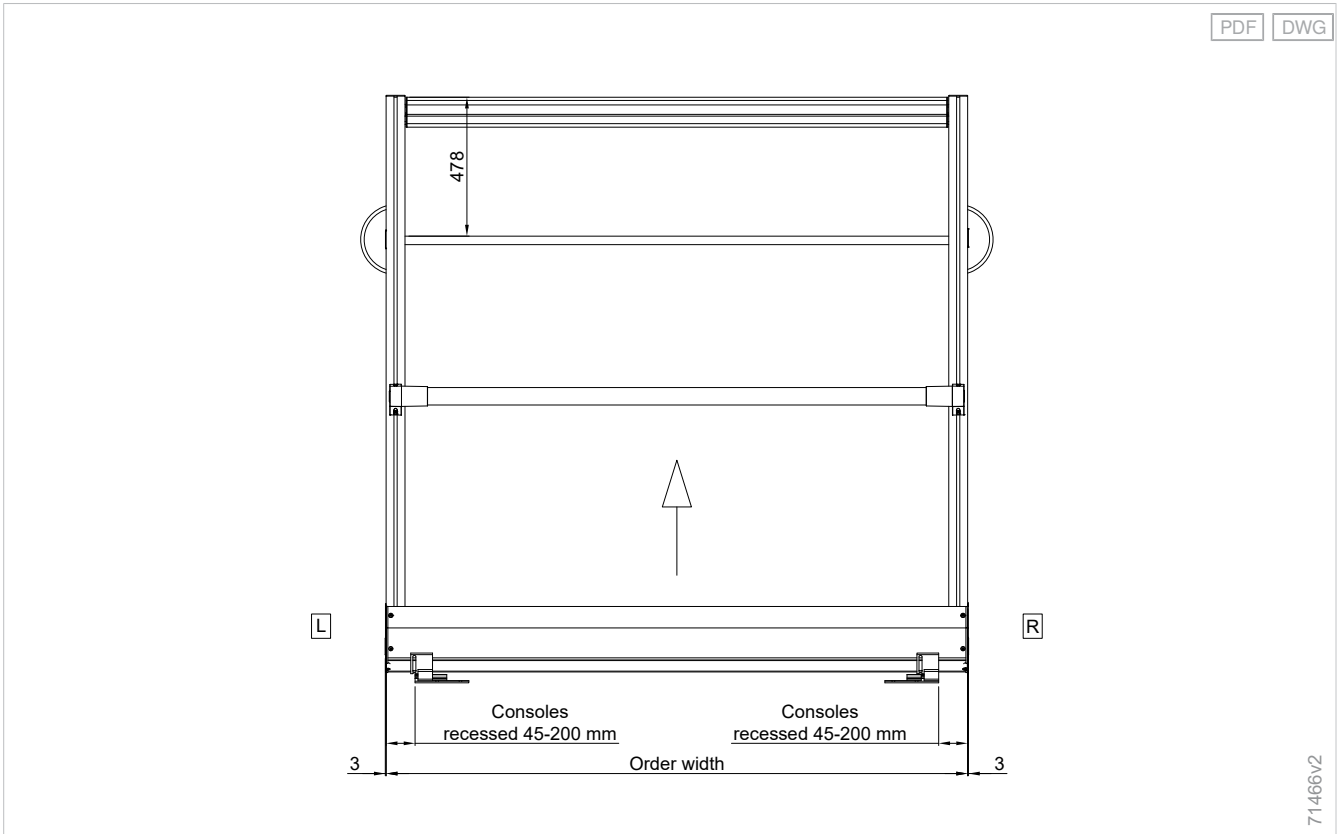


## Determining the installation height for wall/ceiling console - P40

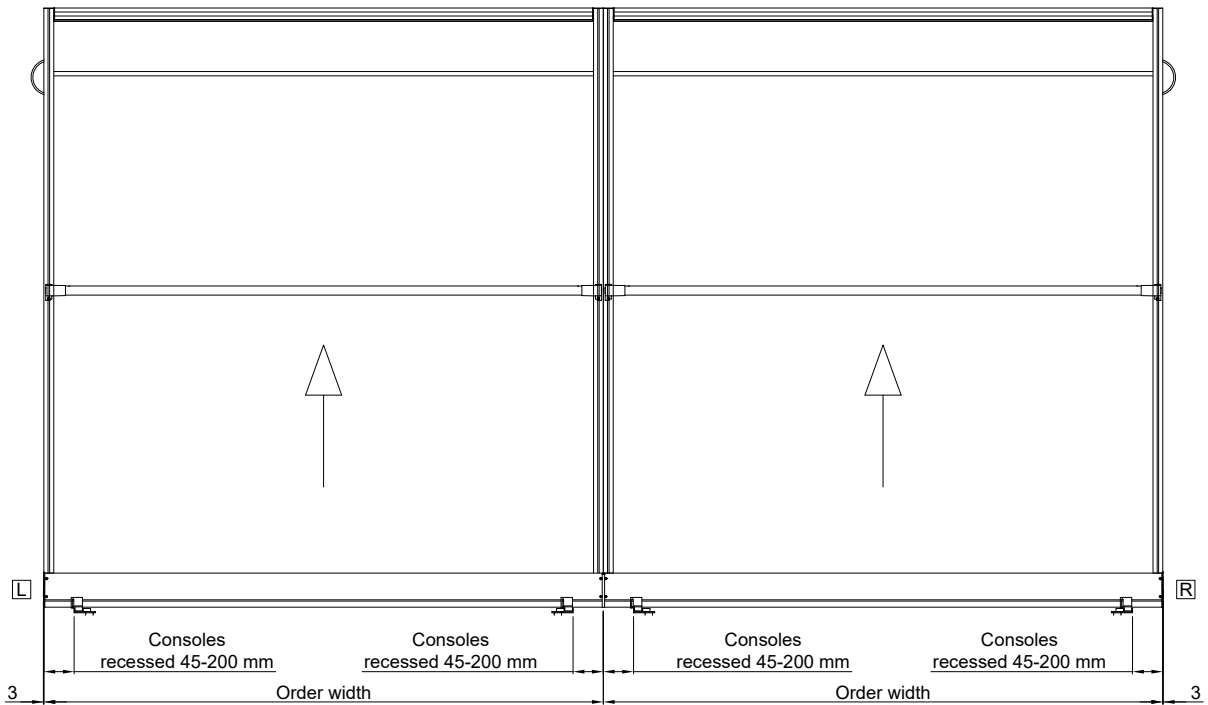
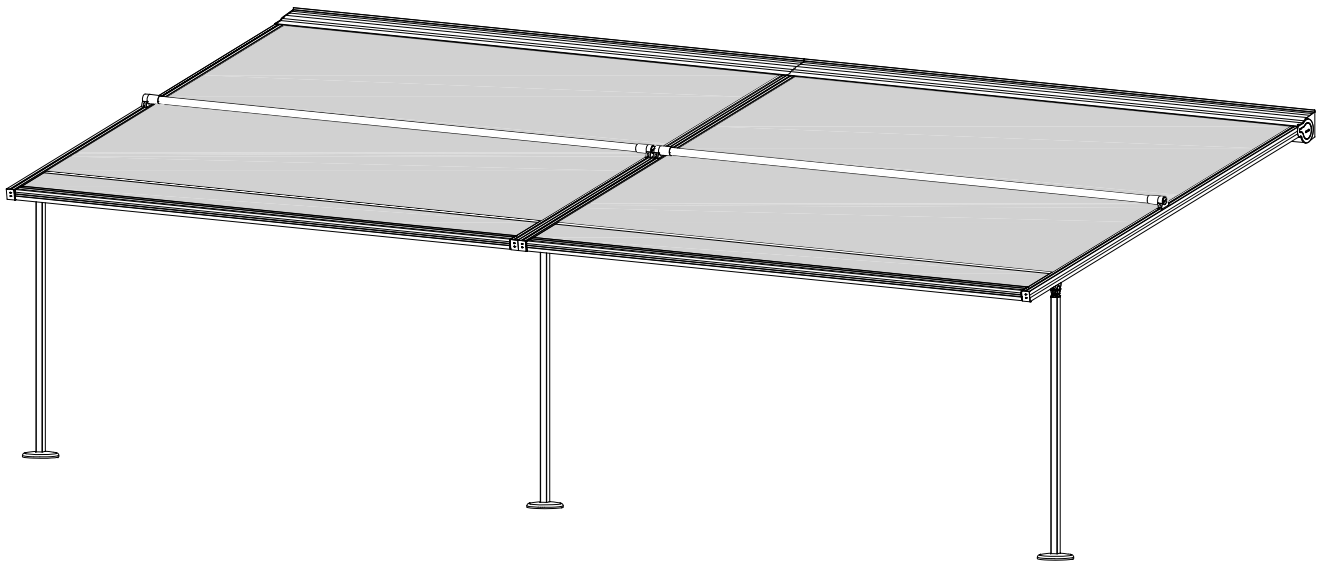




Top view for individual units

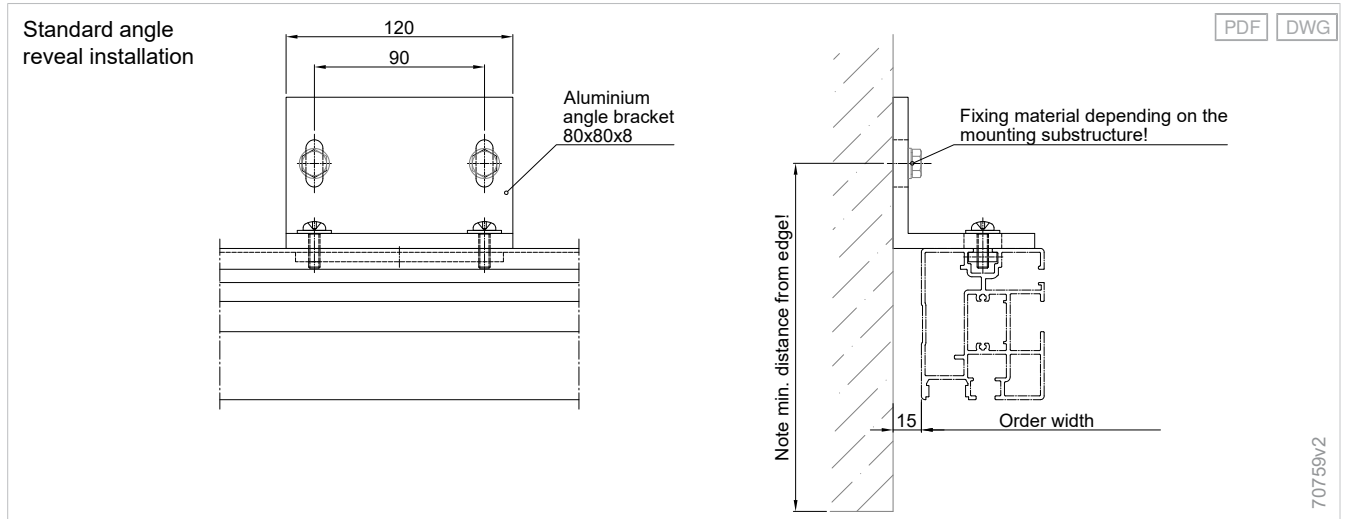


The position of the drainage grid is measured from the leading edge of the front profile to the leading edge of the drainage grid and is generally defined to be 478 mm.

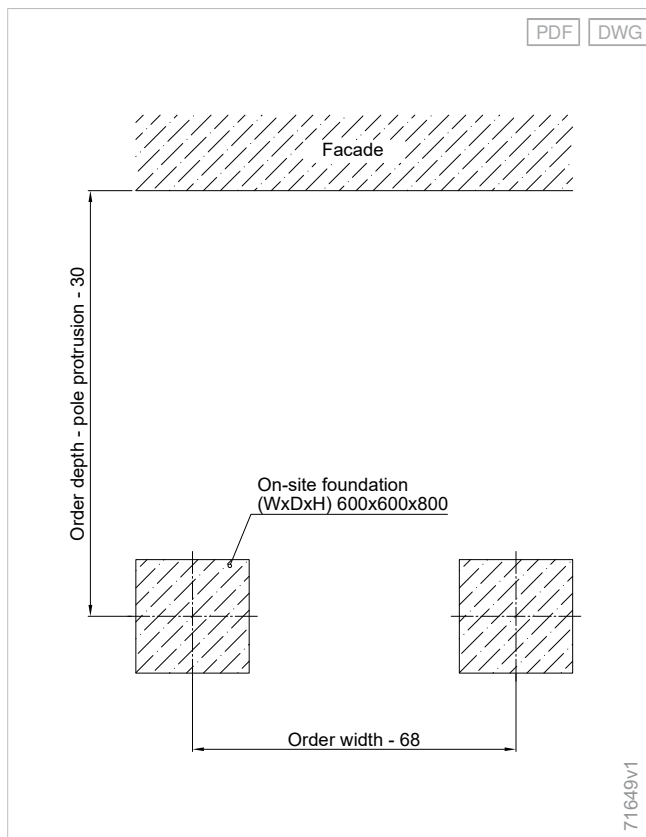


72394V1

### Reveal installation



### Foundation plan



## Dimension determination

Configuration variants	Order depth	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm	4500 mm	5000 mm
<b>Fabric qualities</b>								
Sunworker Top / Sunvas Perla FR	Minimum difference	220 mm	310 mm	390 mm	470 mm	540 mm	630 mm	710 mm

This is the minimum difference between the installation height and the headroom for the minimum inclination of 9° required for rainwater drainage.

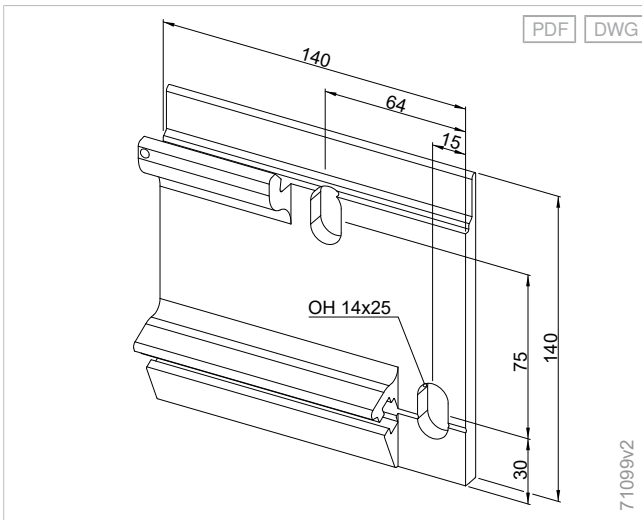
## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

Configuration variants	Order width	Order depth
<b>Console/Bracket</b>		
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	950 - 6000 mm	2

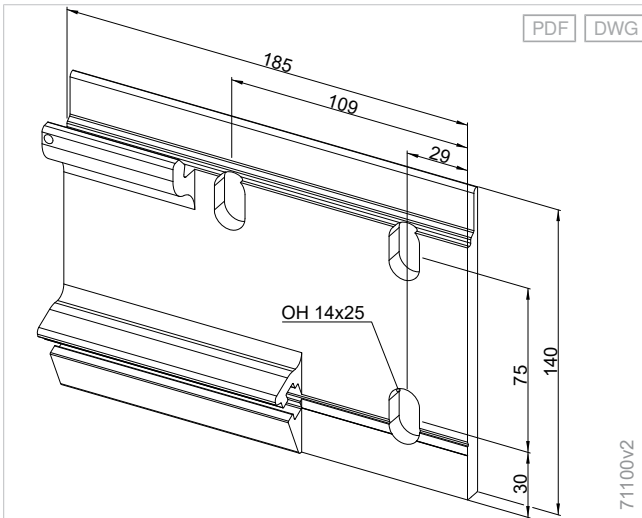
## Details

Wall console type A, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



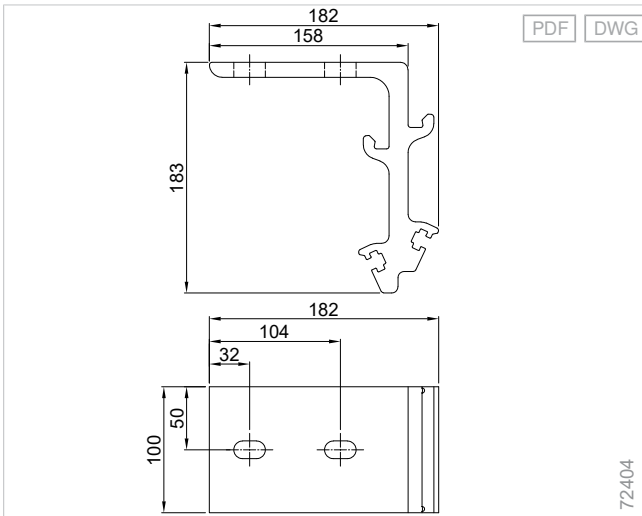
71099v2

Wall console type B, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



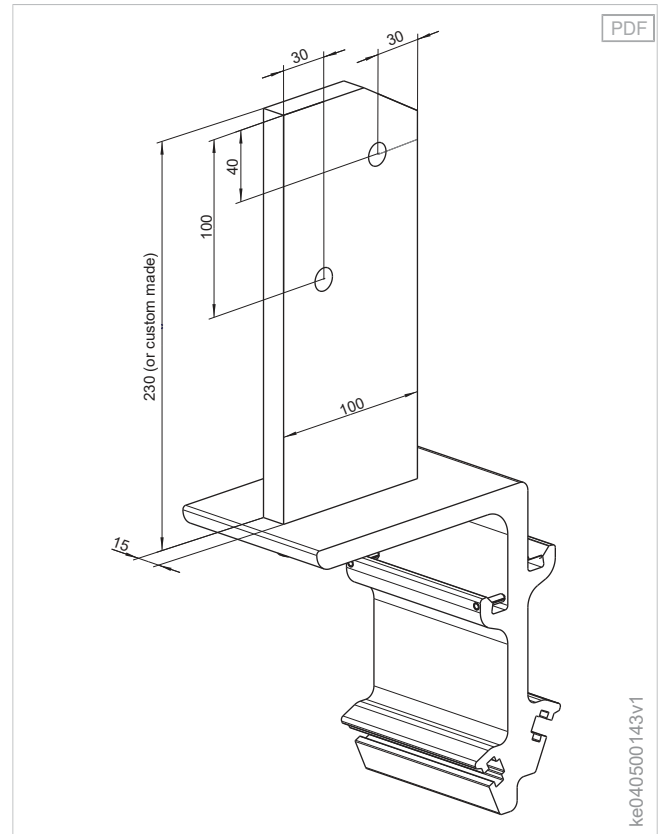
71100v2

Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



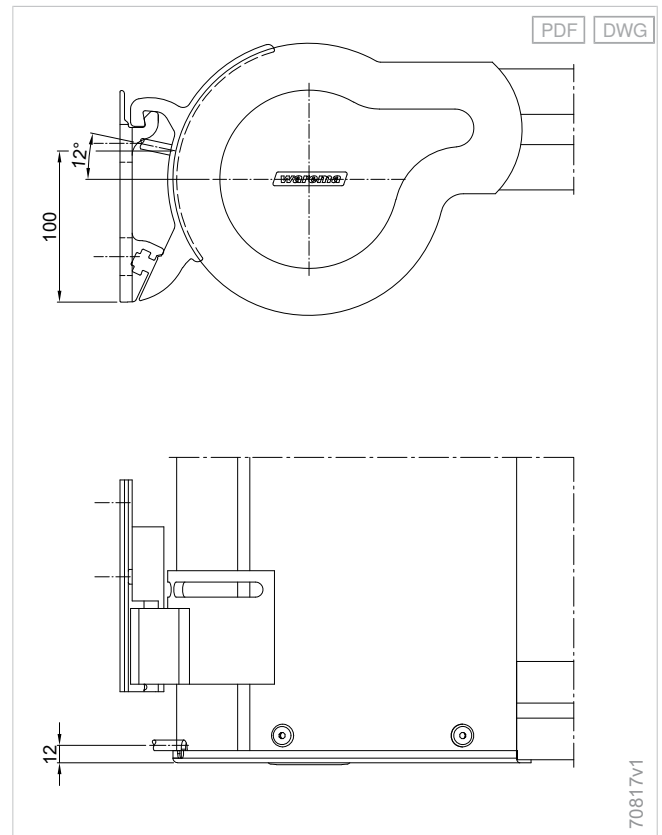
72404

Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



ke040500143v1

Cable exit - P40/P40 WE



70817v1

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

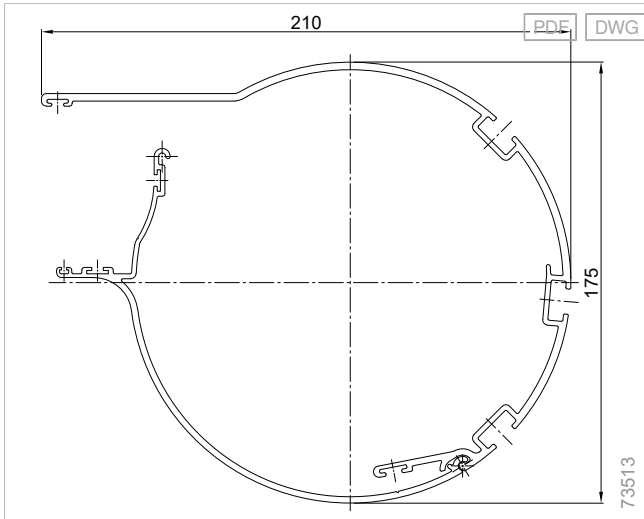
Supplementary accessories

Components

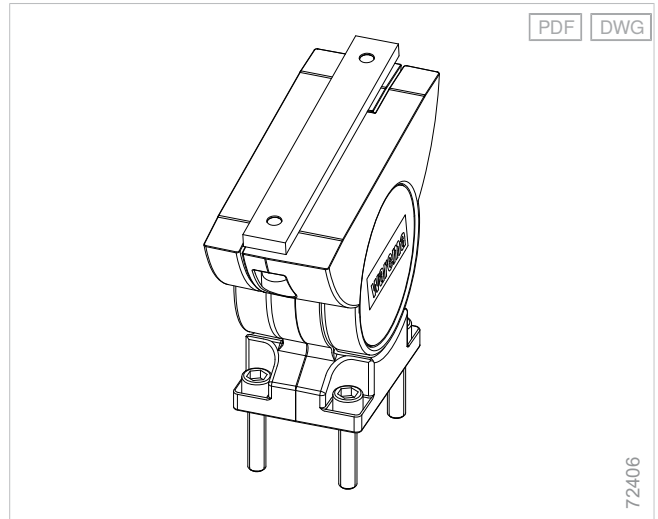
Drive variants

Standards

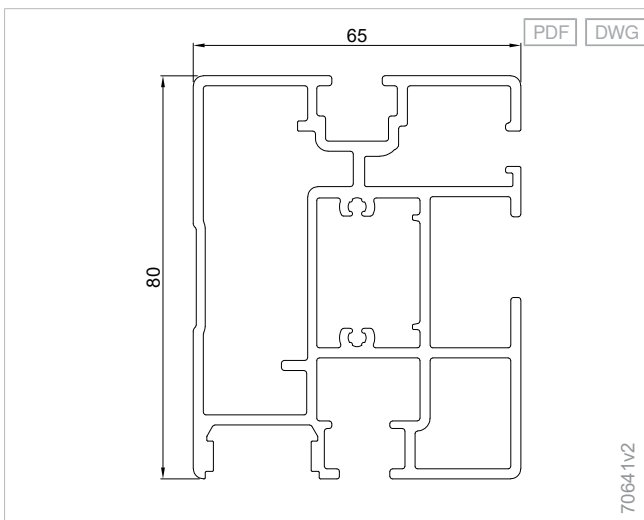
Cover panel - P40/P40 WE/P60



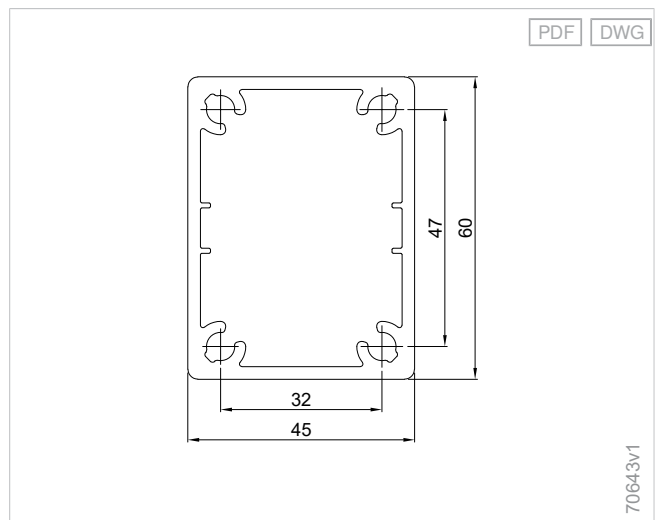
Pole attachment to guide rail - P40/P40 WE



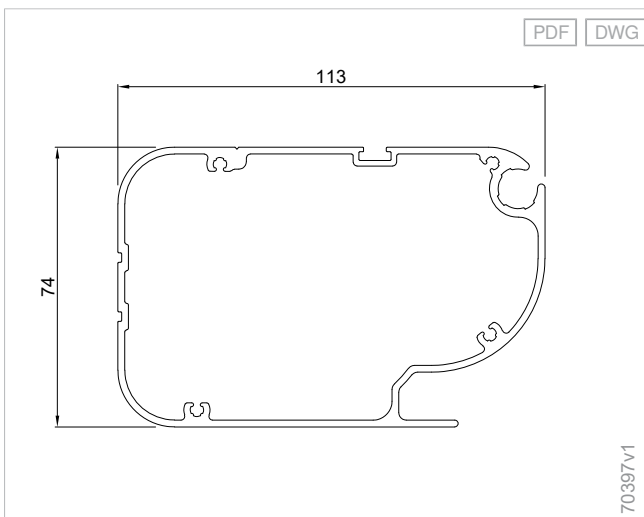
Guide rail - P40/P40 WE/P60



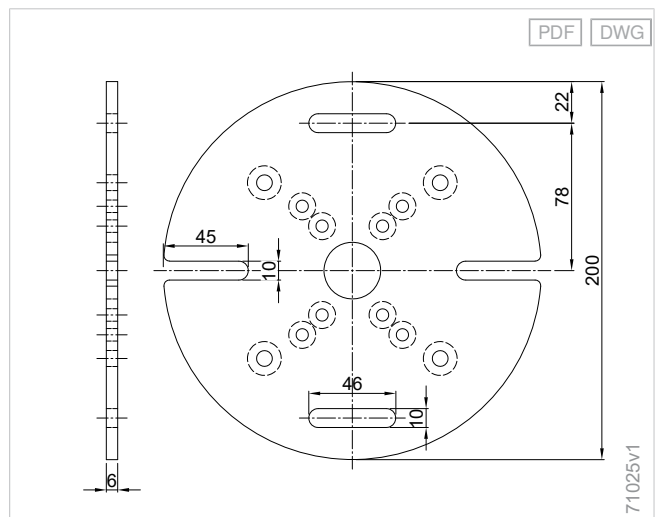
Pole - P20/P40/P40 WE



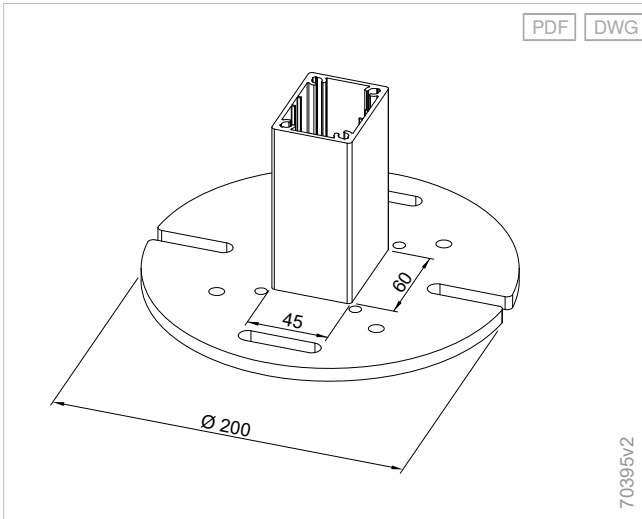
Front rail - P40/P40 WE/P60



Pole fixing base plate - P20/P40/P40 WE/P60/P70

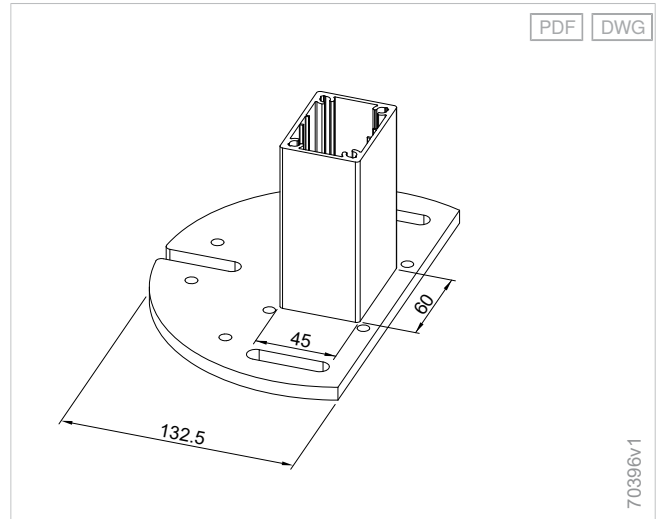


Pole fixing - P20/P40/P40 WE



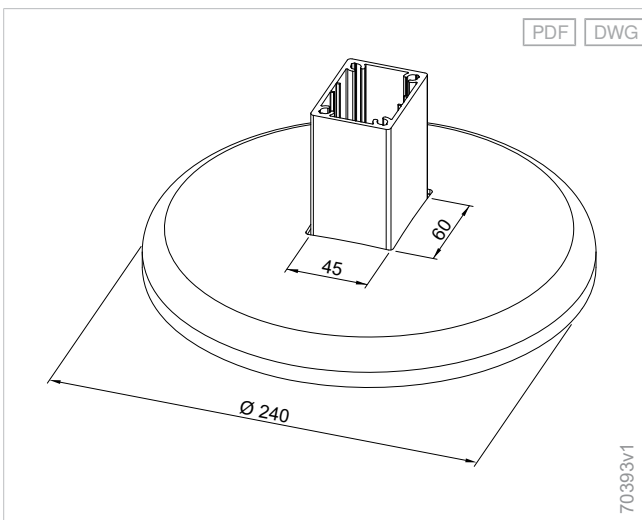
70395v2

Pole fixing for lateral reveal installation - P20/P40/P40 WE



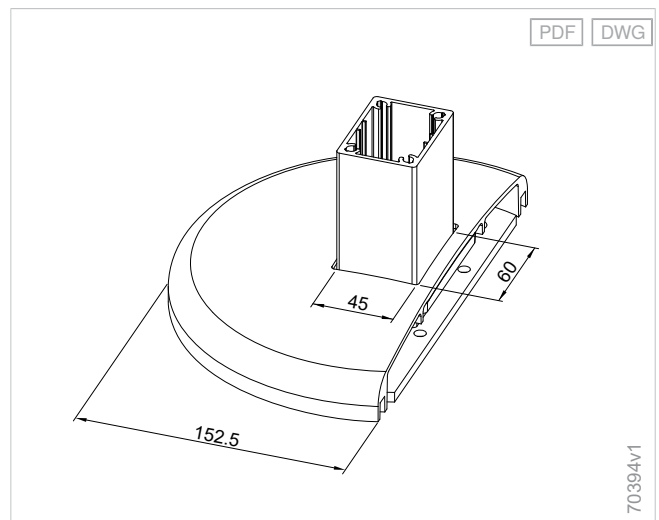
70396v1

Base cover - P40/P40 WE



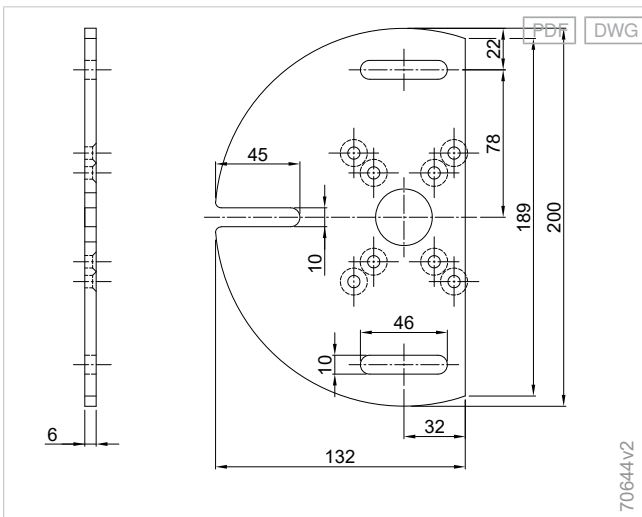
70393v1

Base cover for lateral reveal installation - P40/P40 WE



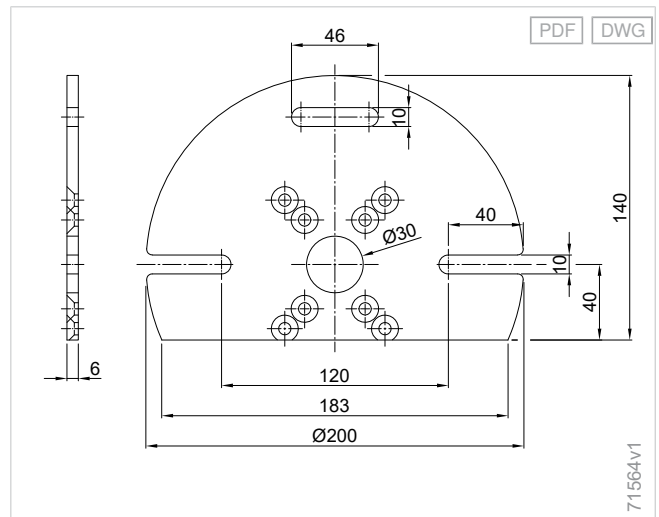
70394v1

Pole fixing base plate for reveal installation, lateral - P20/P40/P40 WE



70644v2

Pole fixing base plate for reveal installation, front - P20/P40/P40 WE



71564v1

Planning

Terrea

Perca

Patio side screens

Climara

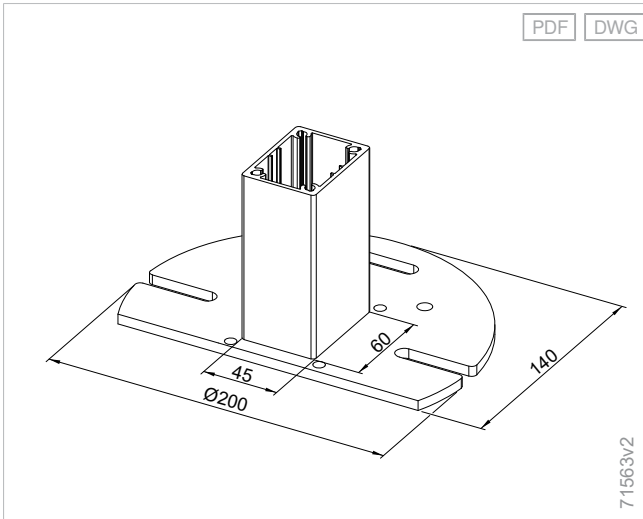
Supplementary accessories

Components

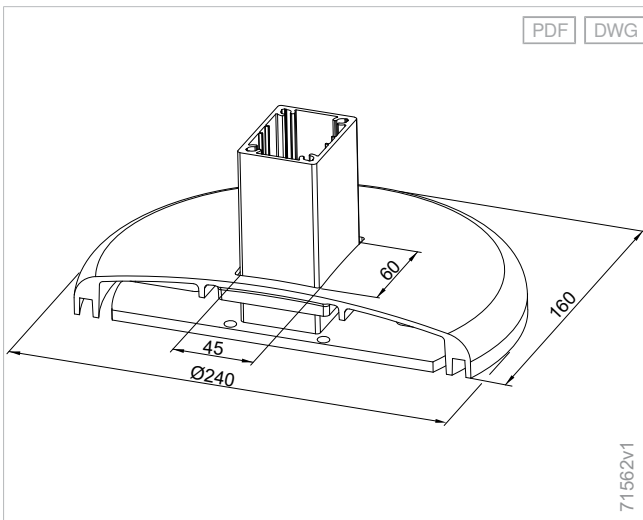
Drive variants

Standards

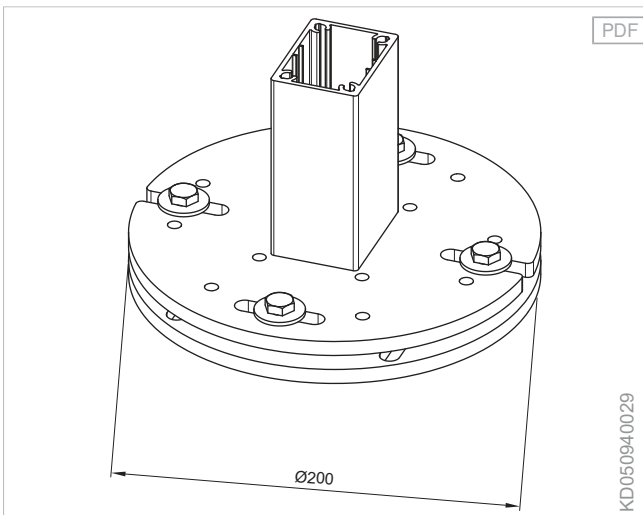
Pole fixing for reveal installation, front - P20/P40/P40 WE



Base cover for reveal installation, front - P40/P40 WE



Adapter plate ground screw - P20/P40/P40 WE





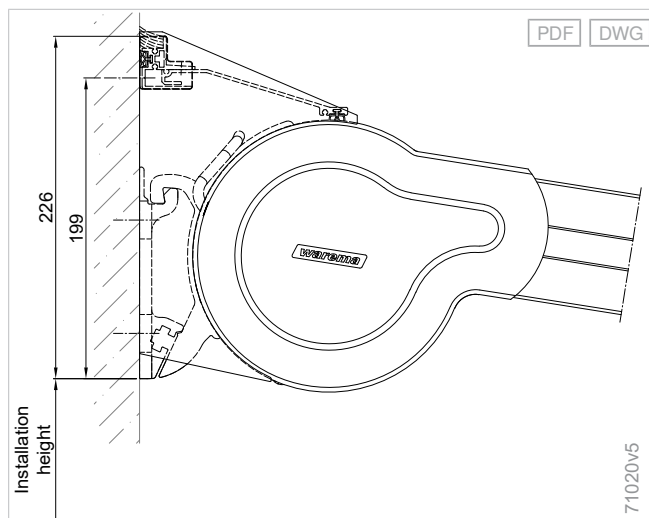
## Additional product information

### Pole installation options

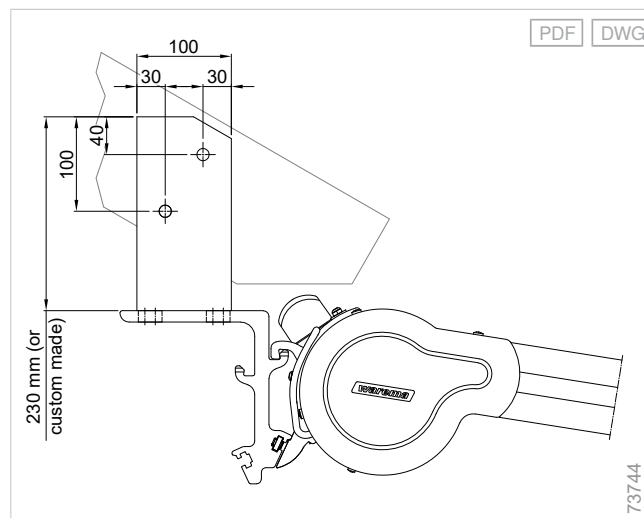
- Ground installation with frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm
- Optional ground installation with on-site Krinner ground screw
- The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery when **threaded rods** are used.

## Mounting examples

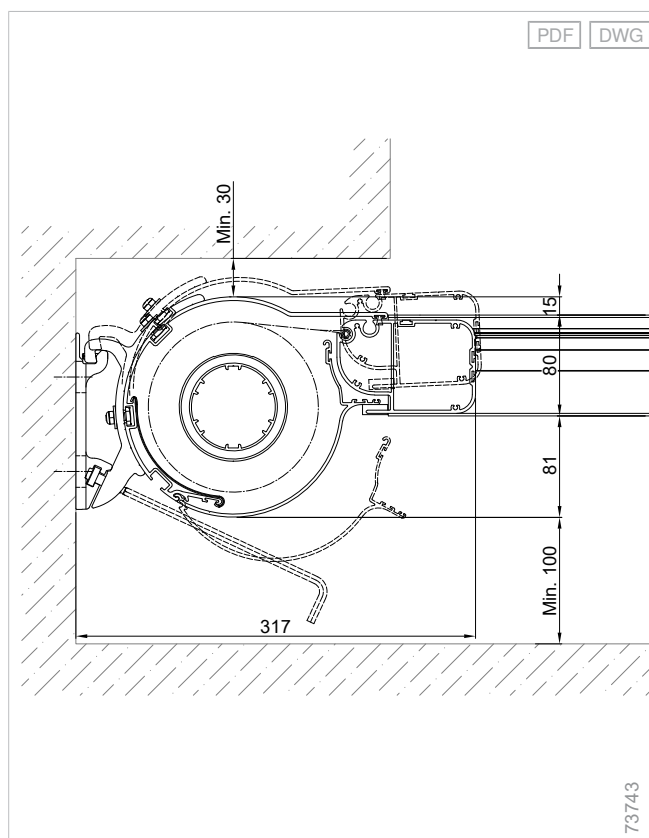
Wall connection profile with large rain hood



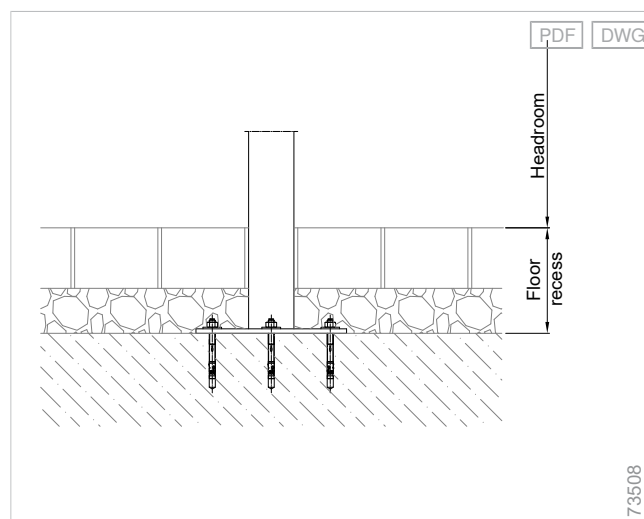
Rafter installation - P40 WeatherEdition



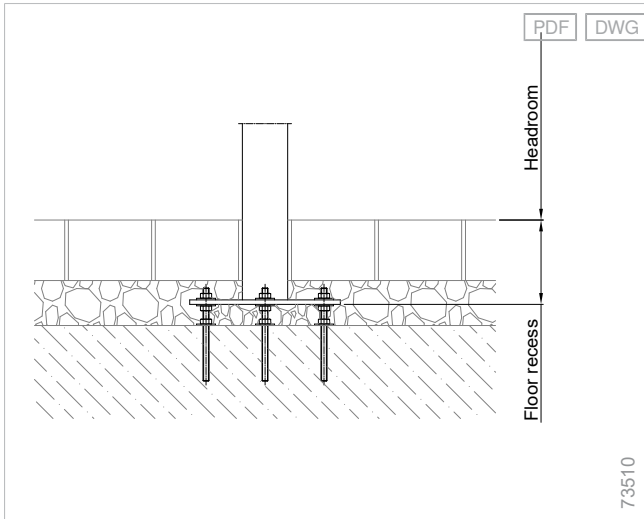
Installation space for wall installation, inclination 9° - P40 WeatherEdition



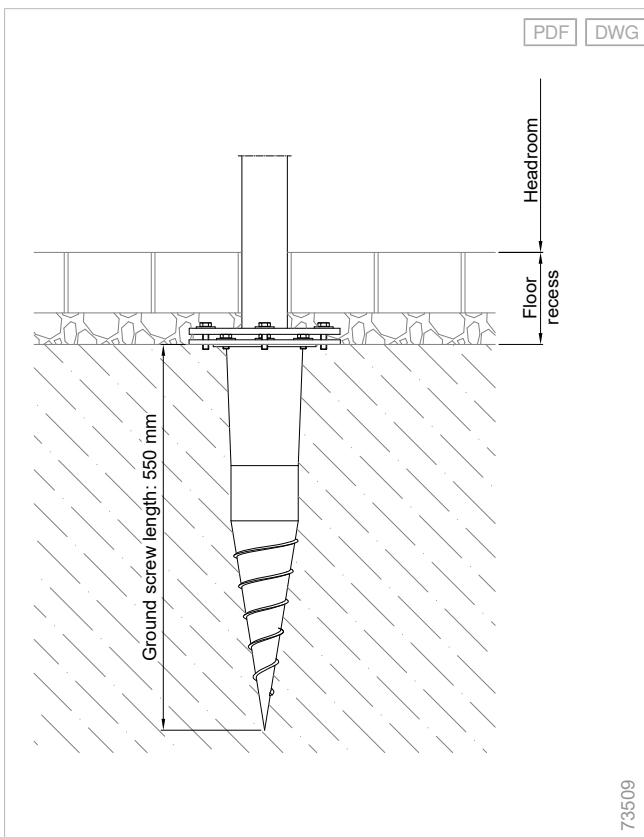
Fixing on concrete foundation without clearance - P20/P40/P40 WE



### Fixing on concrete foundation with spacer - P20/P40/P40 WE



### Fixing with ground screw - P20/P40/P40 WE



Krinner ground screws made of zinc-coated steel can be used to install the poles. The adapter plate for Krinner ground screw KSF 89x550 is required. The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery.





## Pergola awnings Perea

### Pergola awning Perea P60

#### Rain protection

A guaranteed dry patio: The rainproof fabric with integrated PVC mesh, an integrated drainage gutter and rainwater drainage in the post drain away water in a controlled manner.

#### Slender and stable

High wind stability thanks to the patented secudrive® system and fixed reinforcement profile.

#### Durable

More protection, less soiling: The cloth disappears into the aperture cover panel when retracted.



#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6000 mm
Maximum order depth	5000 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036164](#)

**Order form**

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/2022022.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

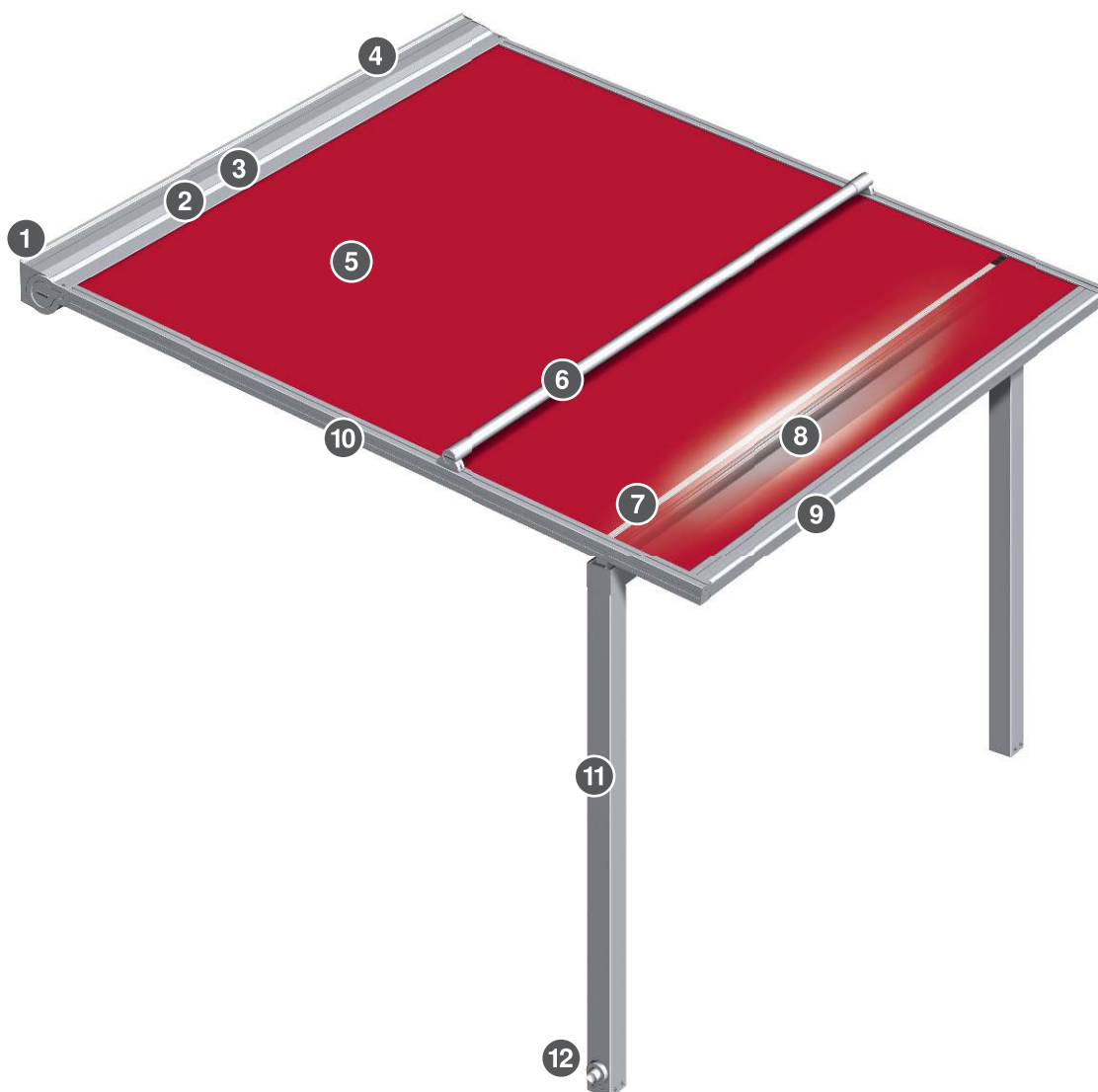
[Collection Assistant](#)

[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

Pergola awning Perea P60



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

- 1 Wall connection profile
- 2 Cover panel
- 3 Shaft
- 4 Console
- 5 Fabric
- 6 Reinforcement profile

- 7 Drainage grid
- 8 Drainage gutter
- 9 Front rail
- 10 Guide rail
- 11 Pole
- 12 Drainage in pole

## Cover panel

### Cover panel - P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	210 mm
Height	180 mm

## Shaft

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	70 mm

### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	86.2 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	113 mm
Height	74 mm

## Reinforcement profile

### Reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	60 mm

## Pole

### Pole - patio frame Perea

Maximum order height	3500 mm
Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	111 mm
Depth	111 mm

## Base plate

### Base plate - Internal P60

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	91,5 mm
Height	50 mm
Depth	91.5 mm

The maximum pole height with internal base plate is 2500 mm.

### Base plate - Ø 200 mm Perea

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	200 mm

### Niche base plate - P60/P70

Material	Galvanised steel
Width	155,5 mm
Height	6 mm
Diameter	200 mm
Dimensions, notes	Base plate is sloped on one side.

## Base cover, optional

### Base cover - P60/P70

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	210 mm
Height	25 mm
Depth	210 mm

For base plate diameter 200 mm

### Base cover for niche base plate - P60/P70

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	171,5 mm
Height	25 mm
Depth	210 mm

## Drainage

### Drainage grid

Material	PVC
Material colour	Black
Depth	30 mm

The drainage grid runs across the entire order width.

### Small drainage gutter 110x110

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	110 mm
Height	110 mm

### Drainage in pole - P60/P70

Drainage via drainage profile in pole.

### Position of drainage outlet:

- Can be on any side of the pole (front/rear/right/left).
- Height min.: 100 mm
- Max. height: 250 mm below the headroom

## Drainage, optional

### Large drainage gutter 150x150

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	150 mm
Height	150 mm

If front-mounted awnings/GranTex with easyZIP guidance are to be installed, the large drainage gutter is required.

## Wall connection profile

### Wall connection profile with large rain hood - P60

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	128 - 139 mm
Height	52 mm
Dimensions, notes	The adjustment range in the width between rain hood and wall connection profile is up to 11 mm.

## Console

### Wall console type A - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	140 mm
Height	140 mm
Depth	29 mm

### Wall console type B - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	185 mm
Height	140 mm
Depth	29 mm

Wall installation with 3 drilled holes

### Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	183 mm
Depth	182 mm

### Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	413 mm
Depth	182 mm

## Guide variants

- secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - Perea straight

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	65 mm
Height	80 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-PM (WMS)

⊕ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

⊕ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Sunworker Top
- Sunvas Perla FR

⊕ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living connect package
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance
- PVC viewing field
- GranTex with easyZIP guidance
- Stretcher frame
- Multicube set
- Patio frame

⊕ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Notes

### Water drainage

**Water drainage** in the drainage gutter is ensured only when the awning is **fully extended**.

Depending on the sizes, tolerances and temperature, **small amounts of water** may begin to accumulate on the fabric, between the grille and front rail. This accumulation of water does not pose any functional problems and cannot damage the unit.

Water may also run through the grille in the fabric and enter the drainage hole in the centre of the cover panel if the awning is moved while wet. This can cause the **rain-protected area to become wet** when the awning is extended.

### Planning permission

Pergola awnings require planning permission, depending on their overall size and the local regulations.

### Fixing of the radiant heater

It is not possible to fix the radiant heaters directly to pergola awnings Perea.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order depth	Maximum order depth	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Fabric qualities</b>							
Sunworker Top / Sunvas Perla FR	950 mm	6000 mm	800 mm	5000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	9 °	15 °

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- Lining up of two pergola awnings is possible with a flush closure.
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- The guide rails are installed on the poles directly using guide rail brackets for small drainage gutters and on the rain gutter directly using brackets for large drainage gutters.
- The water must be drained via the two outer poles.

## Dimensions

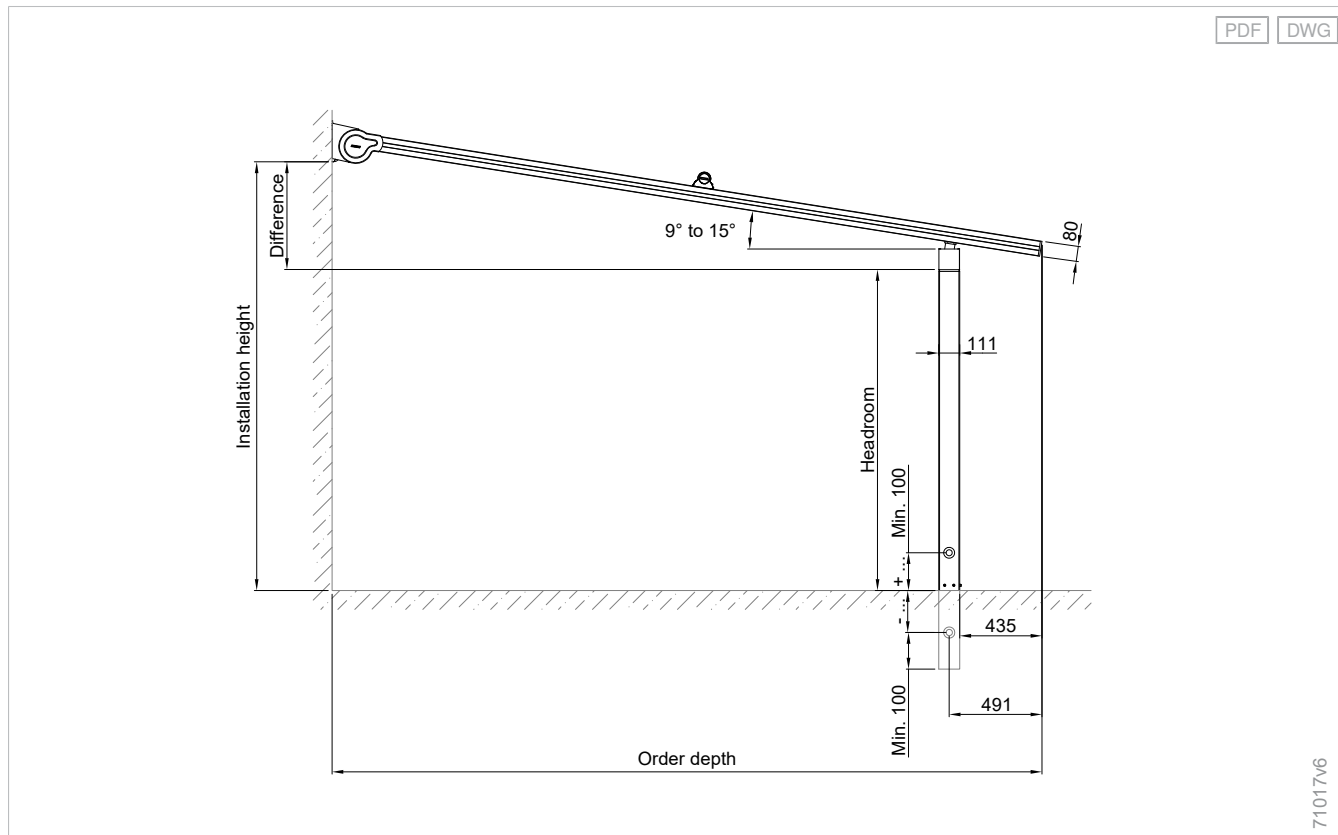
Weight per running metre: 17 - 22 kg/lfm

Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without consoles, without guide rails, drainage gutters and poles.

## Dimension determination

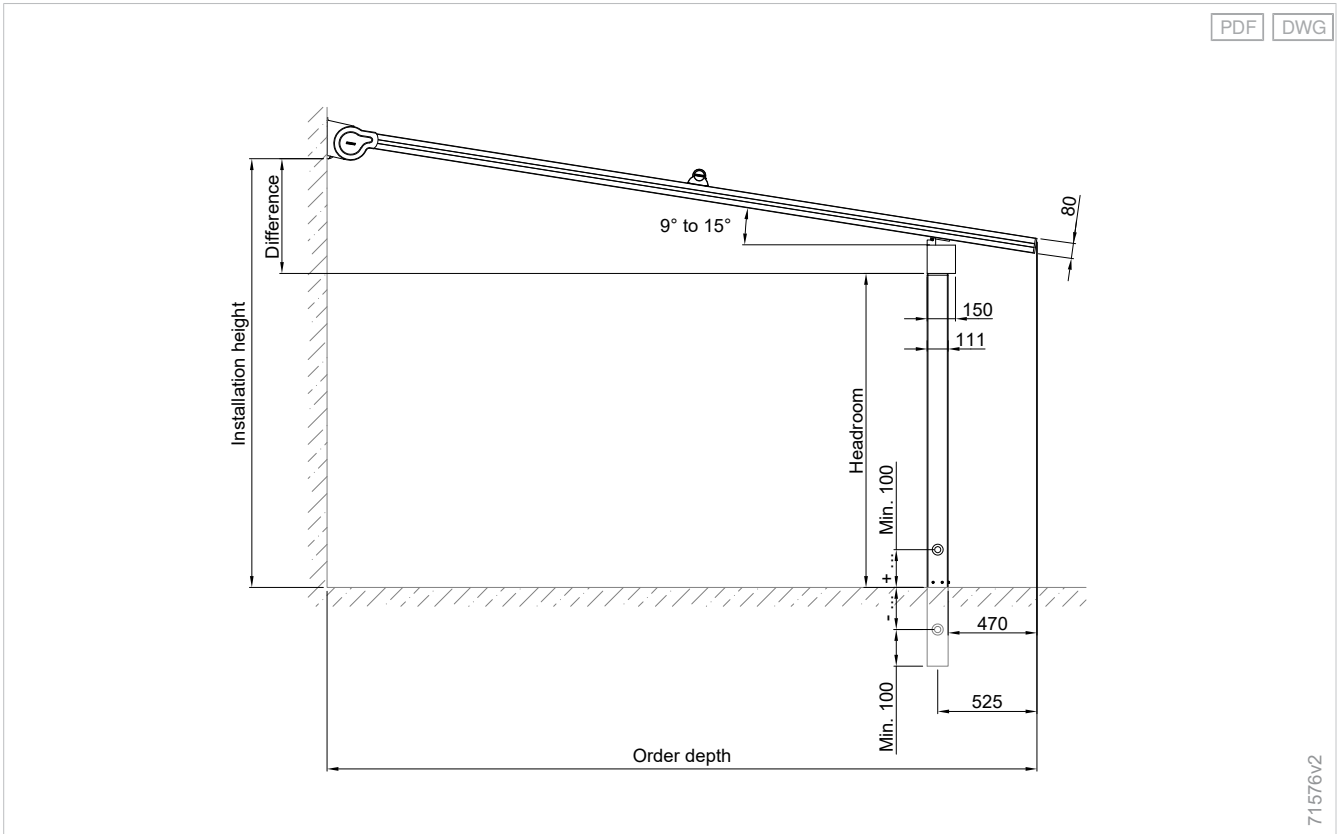
Determining the installation height differs for ceiling console!

### Small drainage gutter - P60

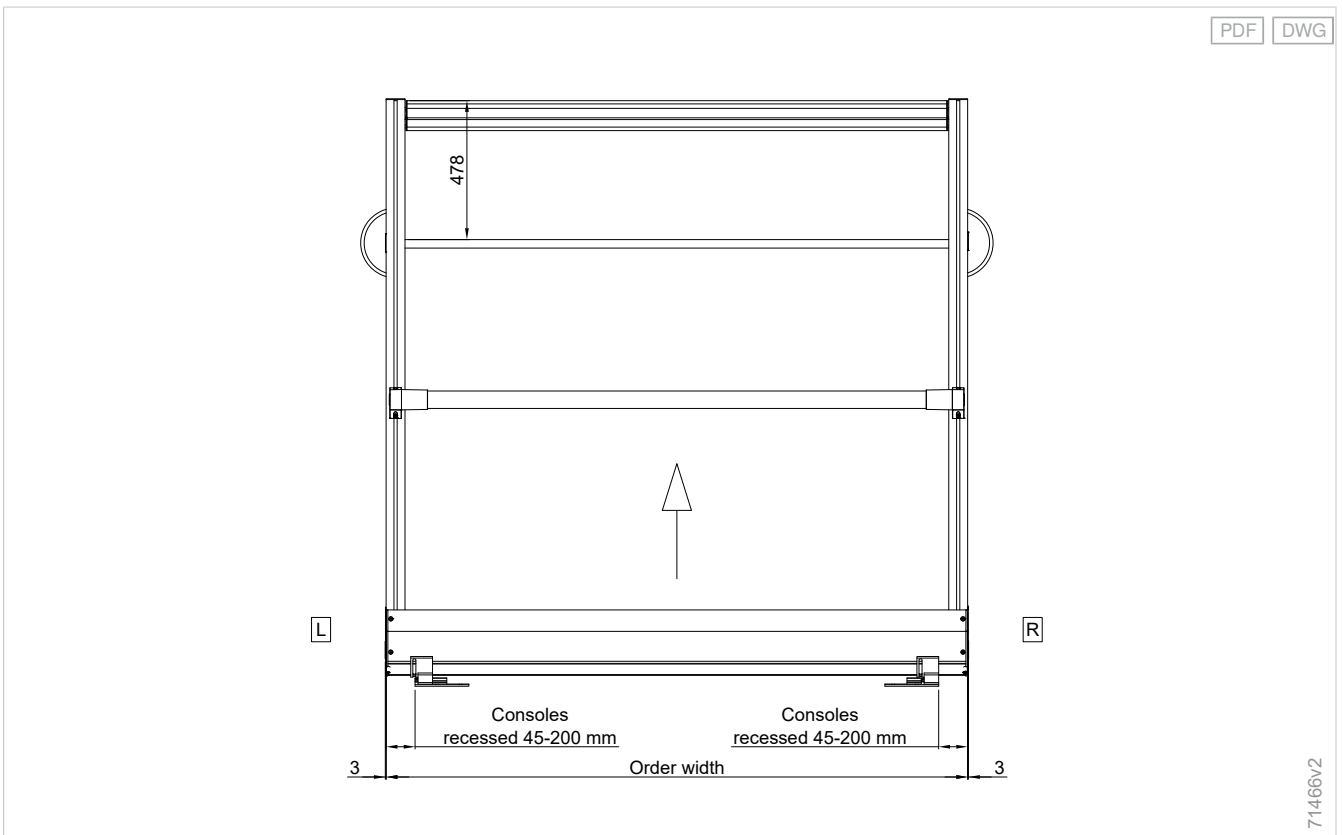




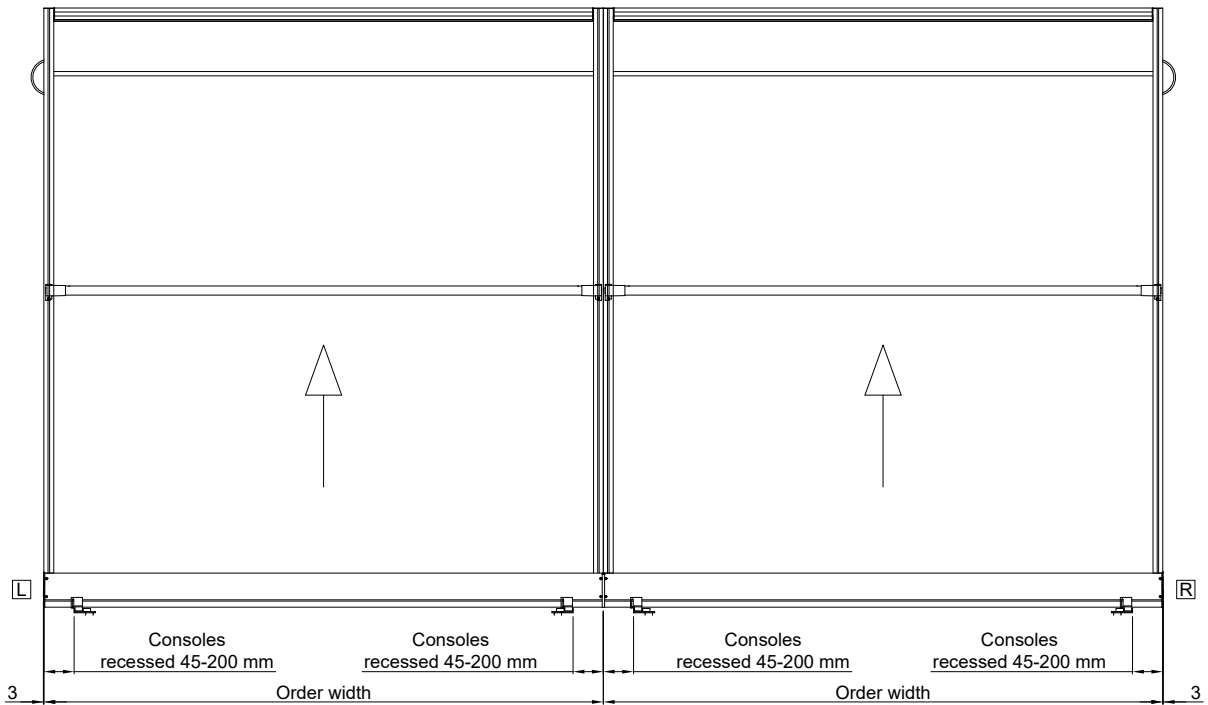
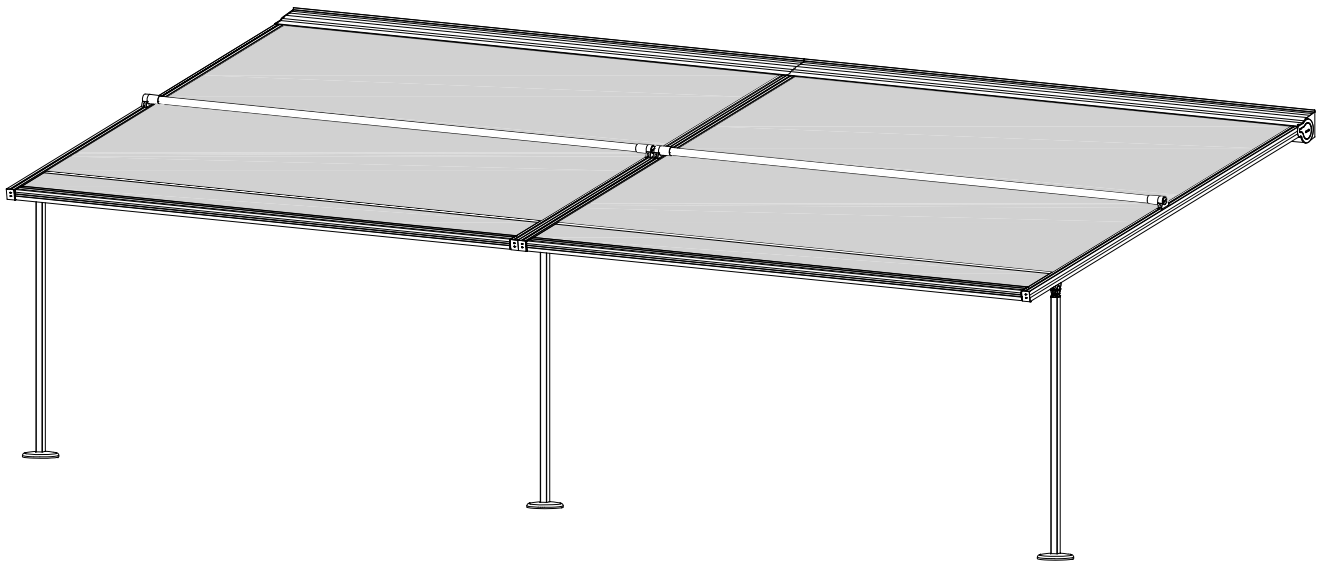
### Large drainage gutter - P60



### Top view for individual units

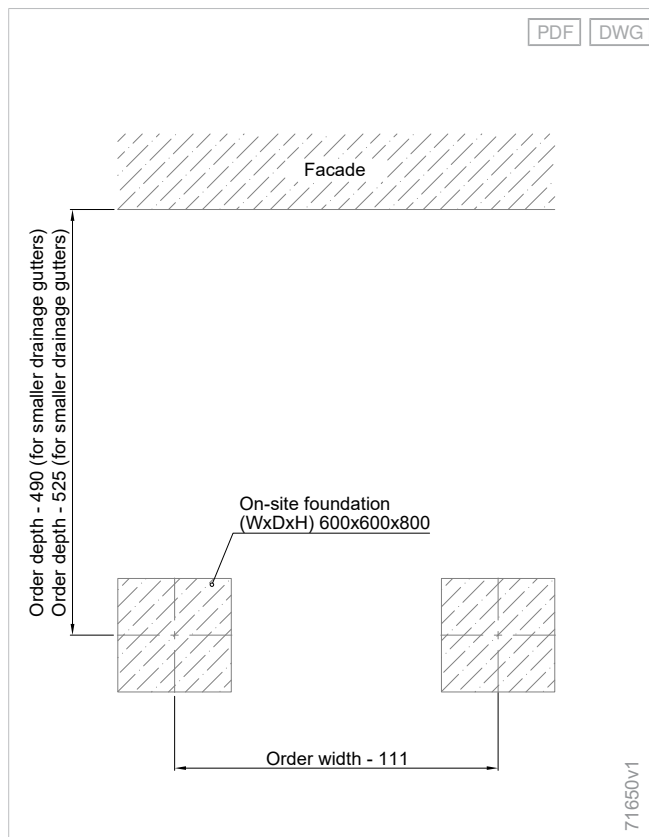


The position of the drainage grid is measured from the leading edge of the front profile to the leading edge of the drainage grid and is generally defined to be 478 mm.



72394V1

## Foundation plan - P60



## Dimension determination

### Minimum difference between installation height and headroom

Configuration variants	Order depth	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm	4500 mm	5000 mm
<b>Fabric qualities</b>								
Sunworker Top / Sunvas Perla FR	Minimum difference	324 mm	403 mm	483 mm	562 mm	641 mm	720 mm	799 mm

This is the minimum difference between the installation height and the headroom for the **minimum inclination of 9°** required for rainwater drainage.

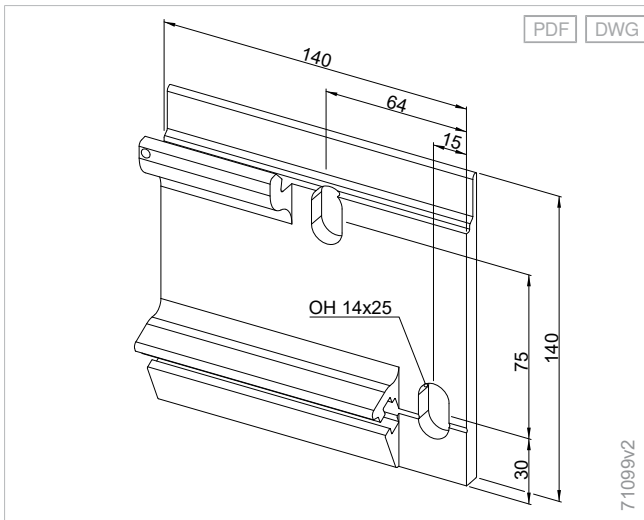
## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

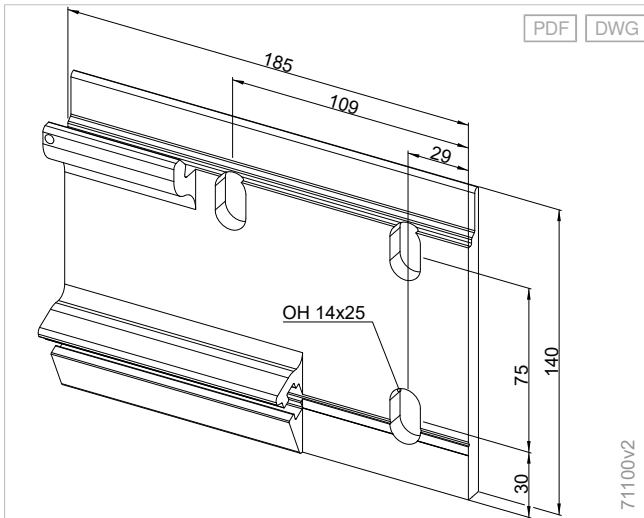
Configuration variants	Order width	Order depth
<b>Console/Bracket</b>		<b>800 - 5000 mm</b>
Wall console / Ceiling console / Console for rafters	950 - 6000 mm	2

## Details

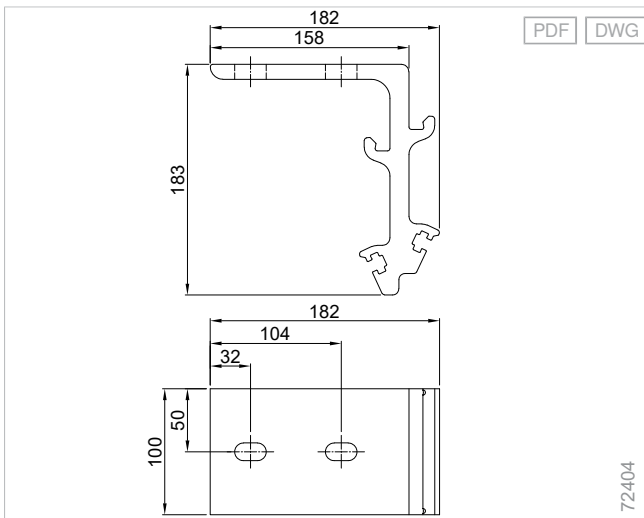
Wall console type A, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



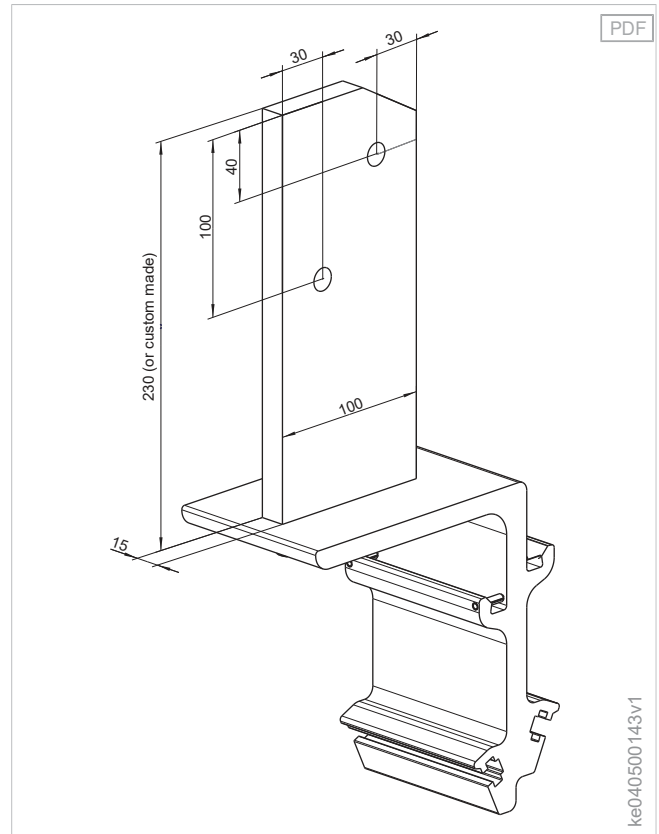
Wall console type B, left console; right console laterally reversed - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



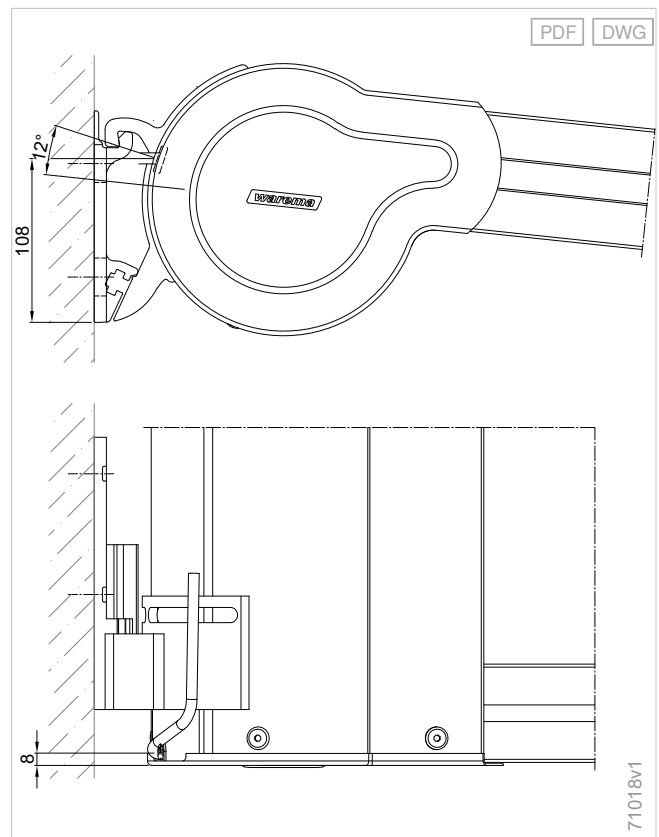
Ceiling console type E - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



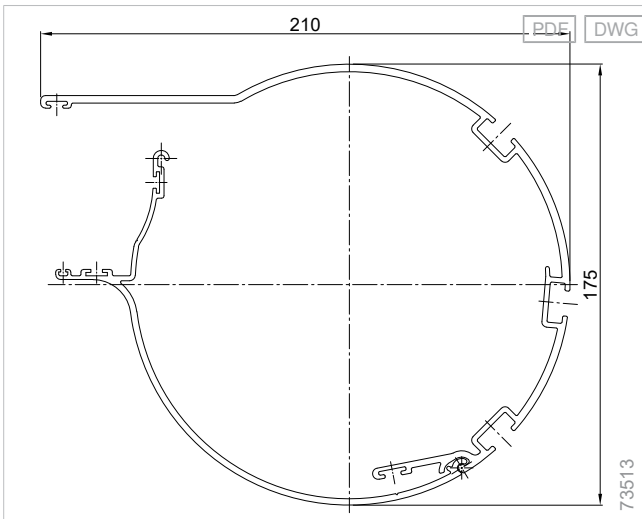
Console for rafters type F - 550/P40/P40 WE/P60



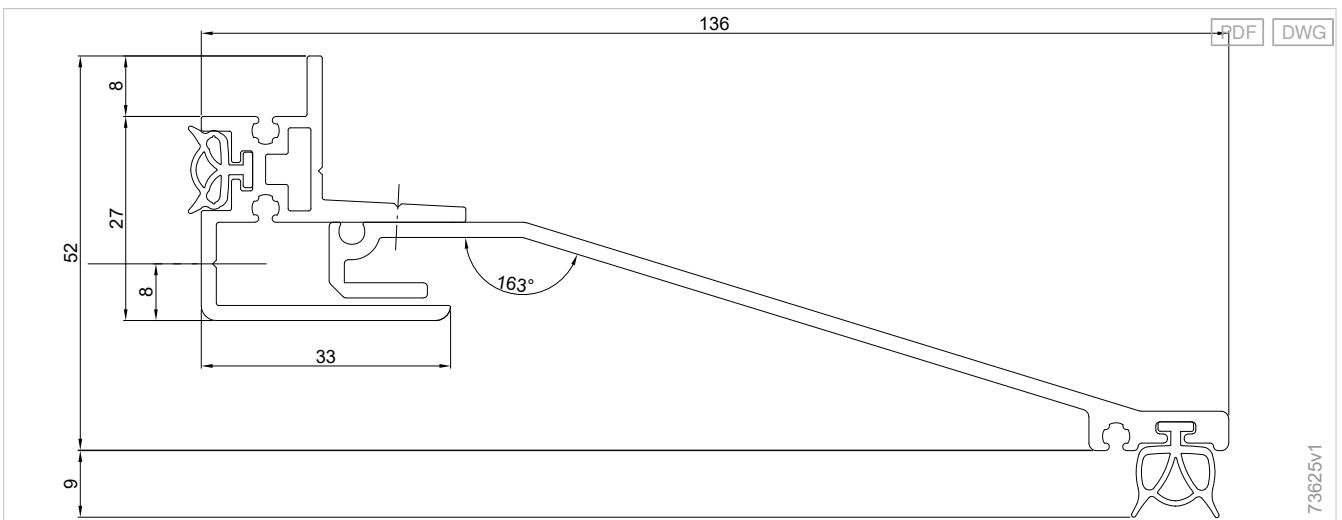
Cable exit - P60



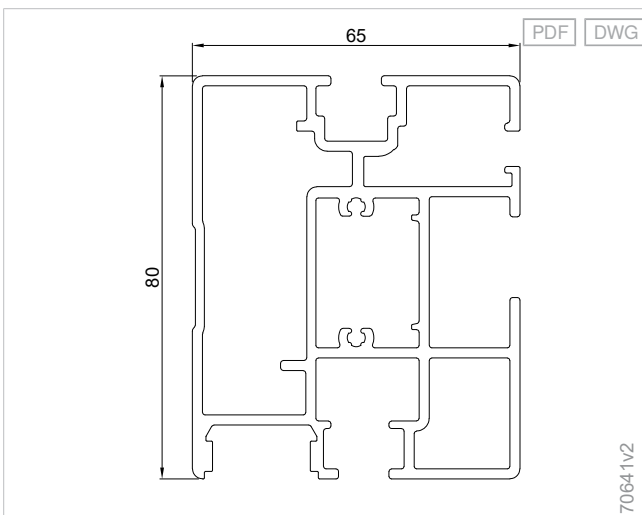
Cover panel - P40/P40 WE/P60



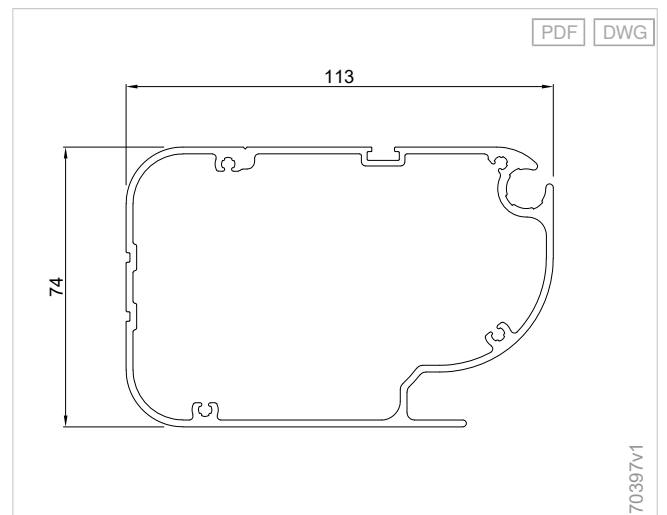
Wall connection profile with large rain hood - P60



Guide rail - P40/P40 WE/P60



Front rail - P40/P40 WE/P60



Planning

Terrea

Perce

Patio side screens

Climara

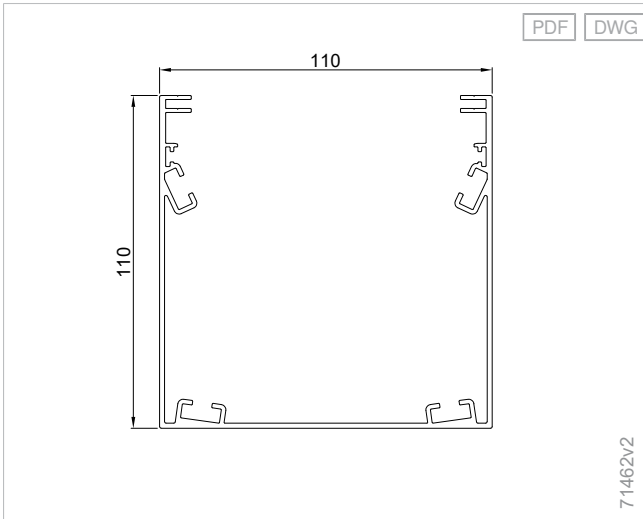
Supplementary accessories

Components

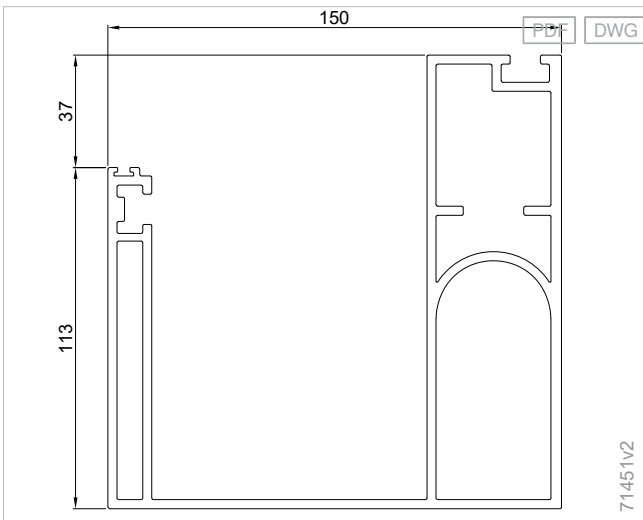
Drive variants

Standards

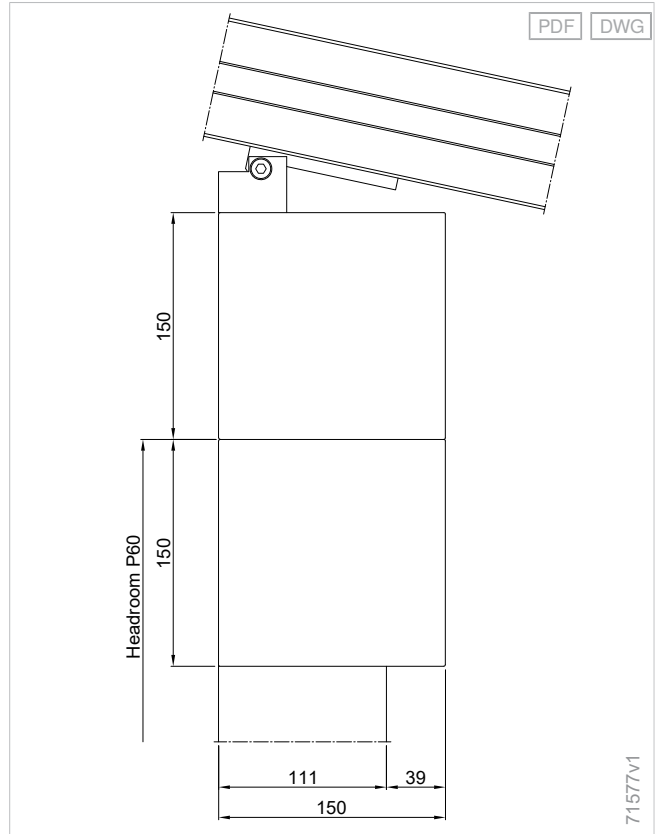
Small drainage gutter - P60



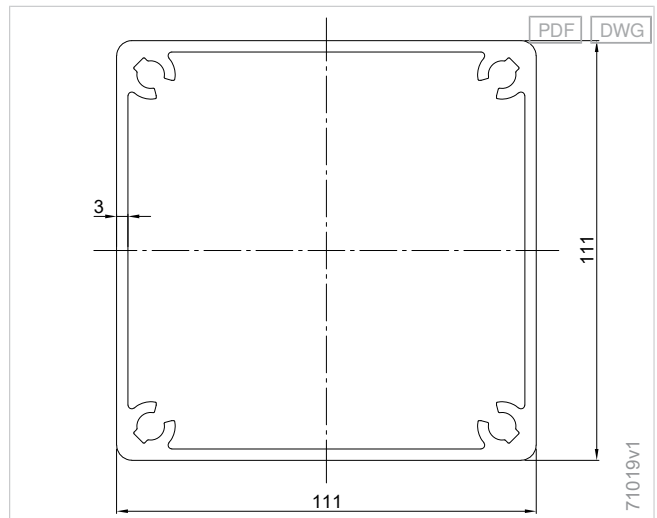
Large drainage gutter - P60/P70



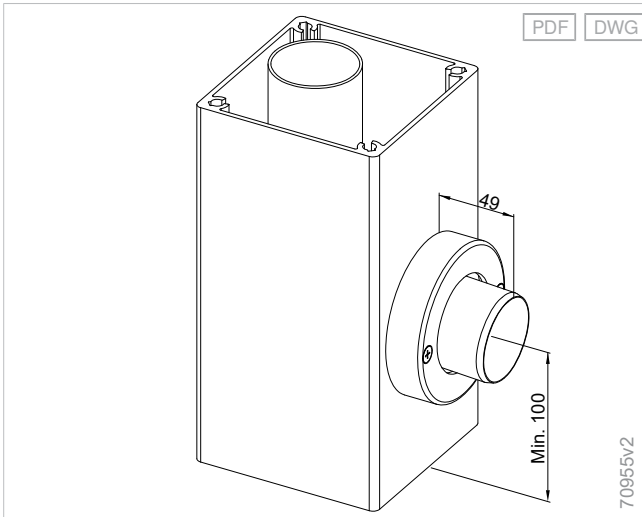
Large drainage gutter with front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance size 15 cover panel - P60



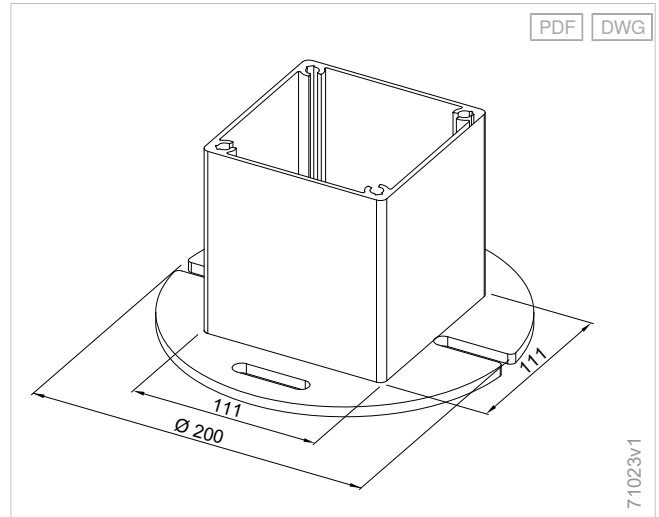
Pole - patio frame Perea



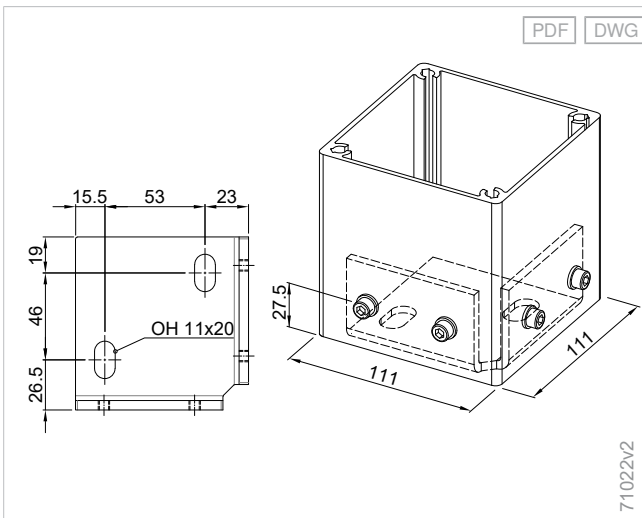
### Position of drainage - P60/P70



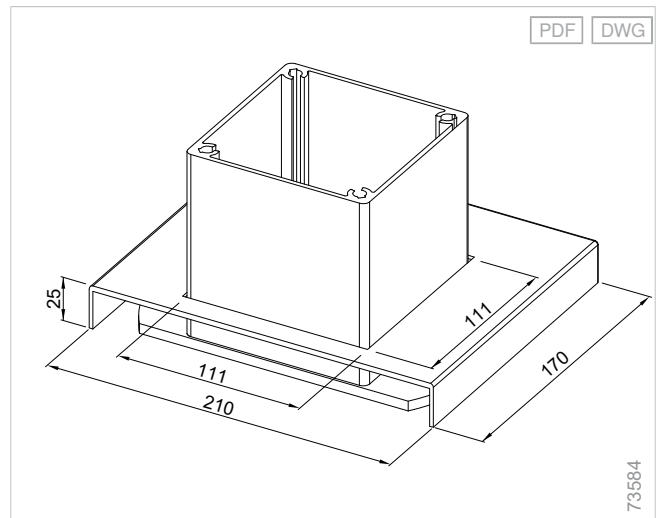
### Pole fixing with base plate - P60/P70



### Pole attachment, inside base plate - P60



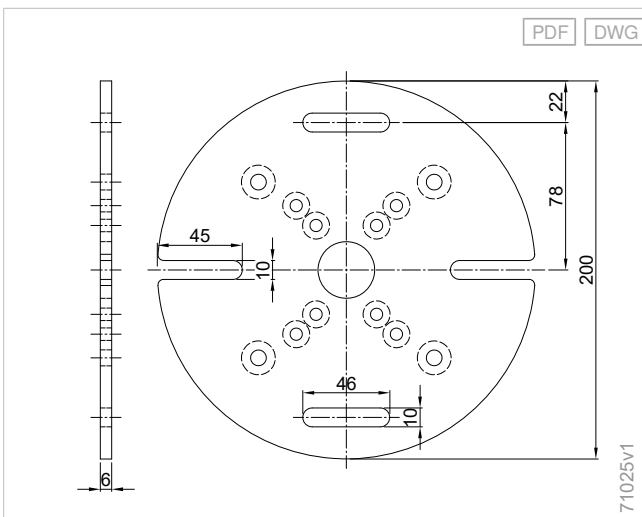
### Base cover for recess installation- P60/P70



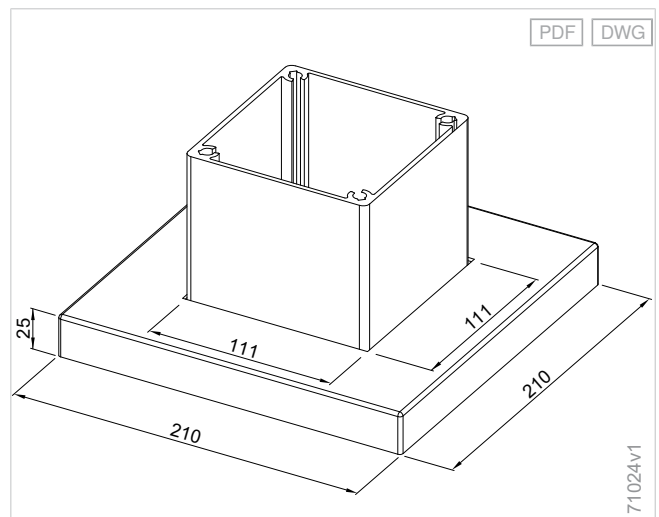
The screw connections are on the outside at the front when looking in the awning's direction of movement.

The internal base plate is suited to recess installation. For this, the screw connection may be on other side of the pole.

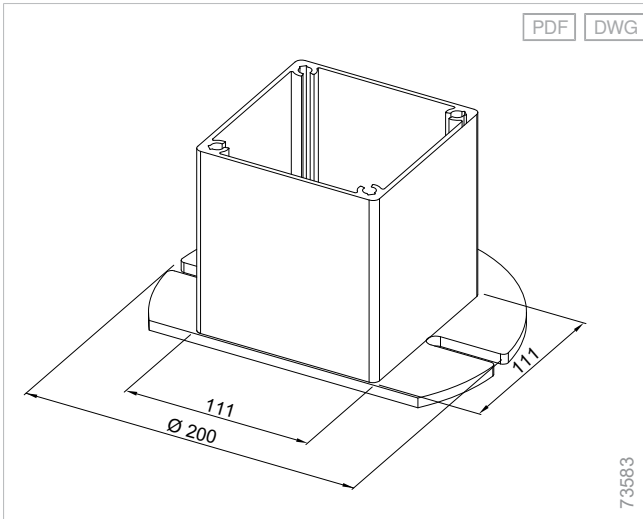
### Pole fixing base plate - P20/P40/P40 WE/P60/P70



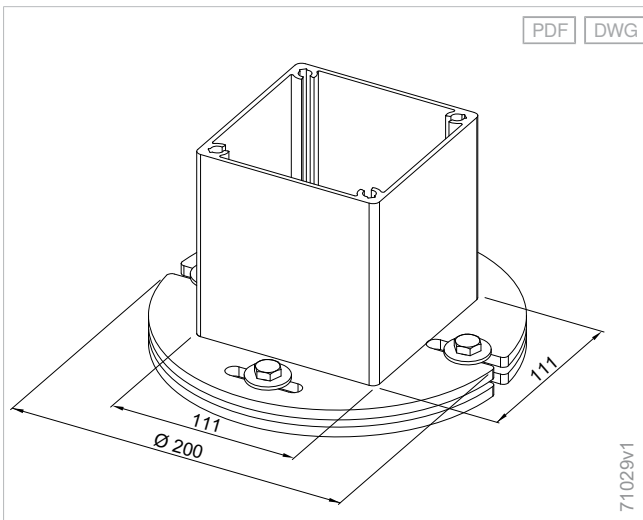
### Base cover - P60/P70



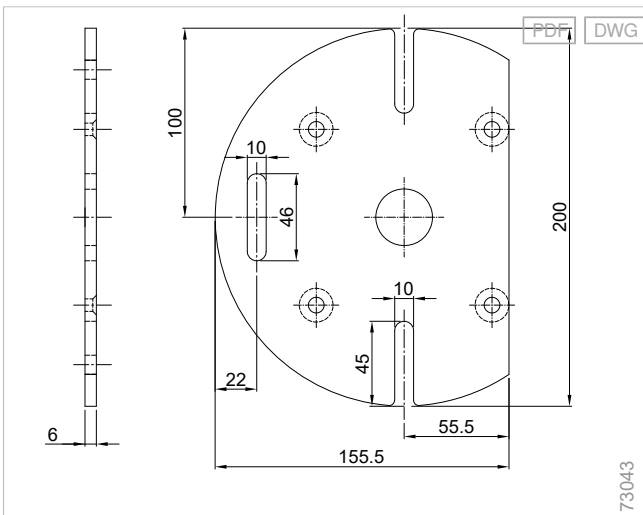
Pole fixing with base plate flush right/left - P60/P70



Adapter plate ground screw - P60/P70



Recess installation base plate - P60/P70





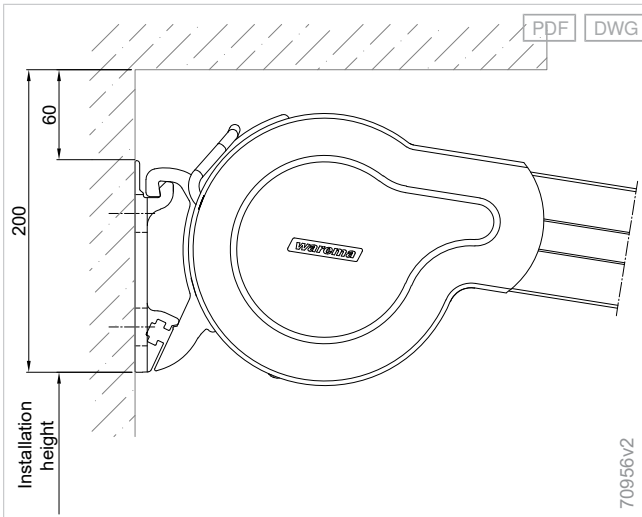
## Additional product information

### Pole installation options

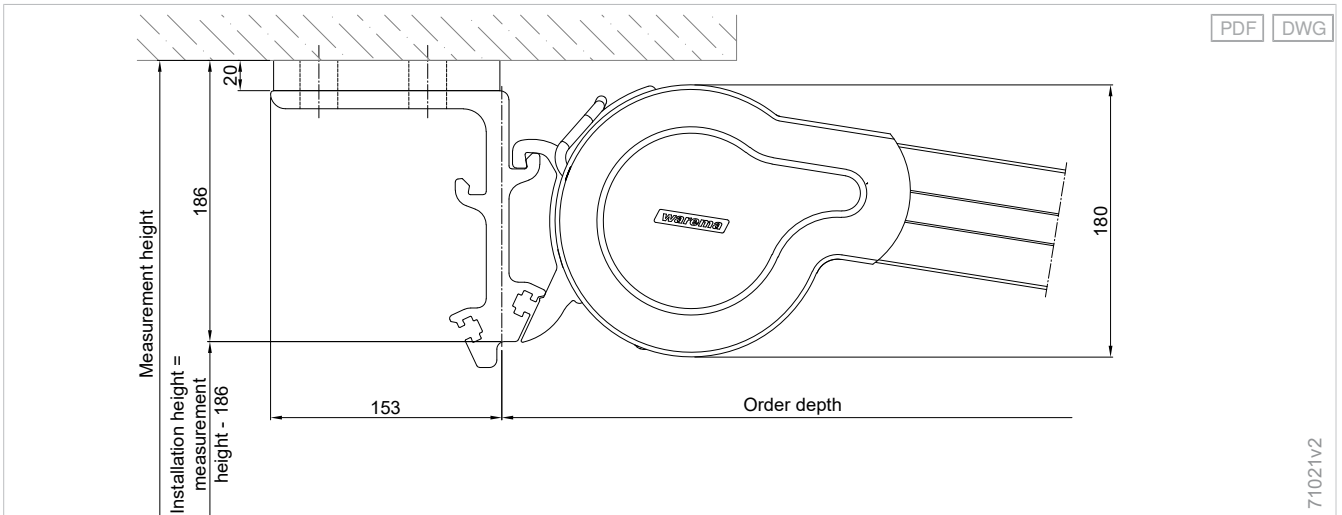
- Ground installation with frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm
- Optional ground installation with on-site Krinner ground screw
- The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery when **threaded rods** are used.

## Mounting examples

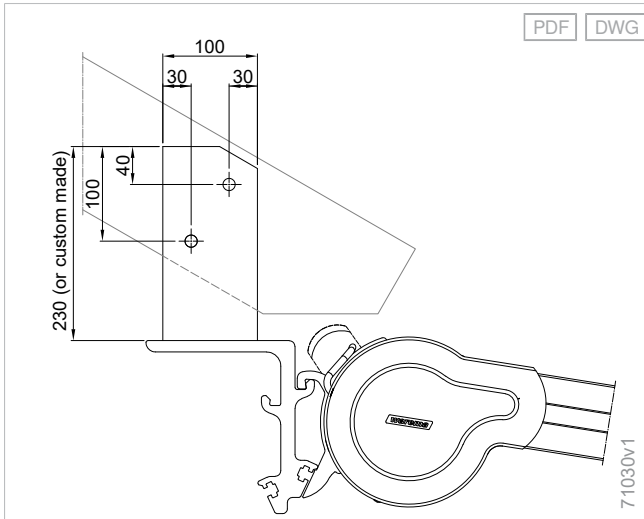
### Determining the installation height for wall installation - P60



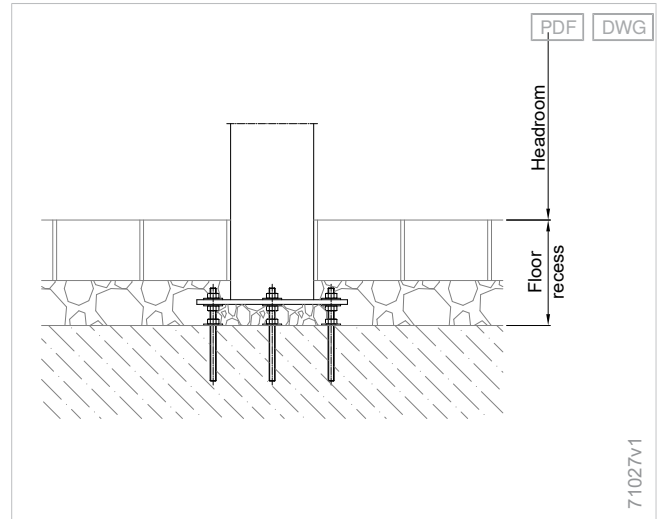
### Determining the installation height for ceiling installation (installation of the ceiling console only possible as shown) - P60



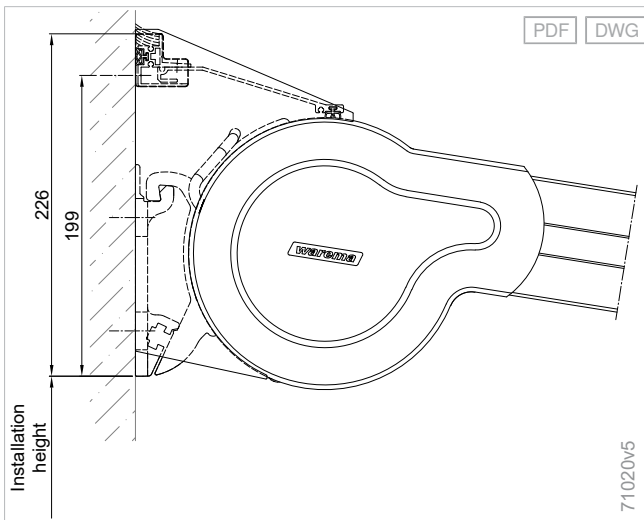
Rafter installation - P60



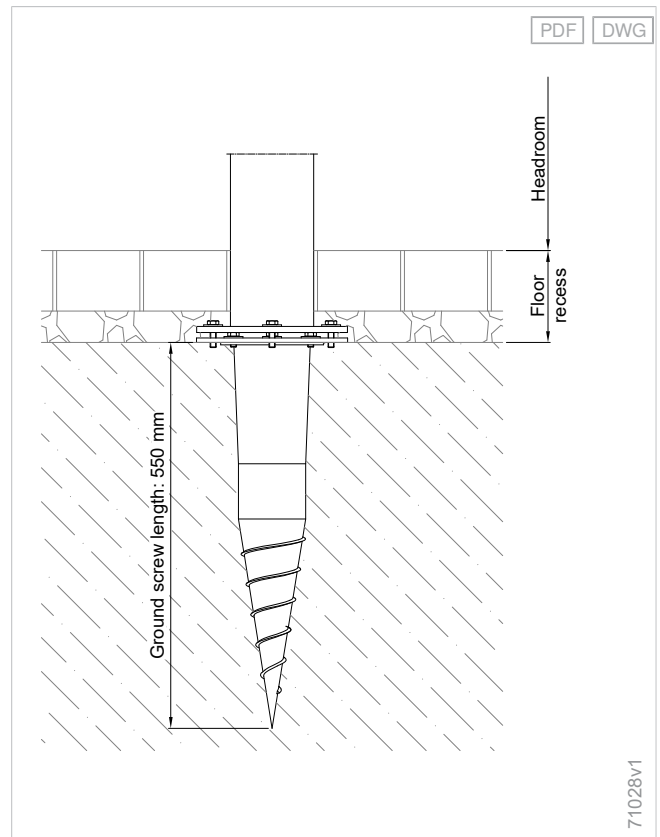
Fixing with clearance on concrete foundation - P60/P70



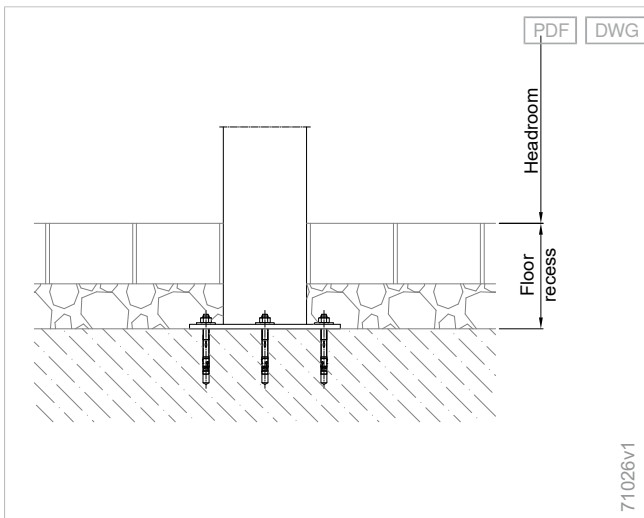
Wall connection profile with large rain hood



Fixing with ground screw - P60/P70



Fixing without clearance on concrete foundation - P60/P70



Krinner ground screws made of zinc-coated steel can be used to install the poles. The adapter plate for Krinner ground screw KSF 89x550 is required. The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery.





## Pergola awnings Perea

### Pergola awning Perea P70

#### Pleated

Extravagant design: The awning fabric folds when retracted, creating a sophisticated appearance.

#### Expansive

For private and commercial spaces: Optimum fabric tension and wind stability thanks to the travelling reinforcing profiles.

#### Weather-resistant

Relax despite rain and wind: Rain-proof, translucent fabrics combined with a defined drainage function allow you to spend more time outdoors, even in poor weather.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6000 mm
Maximum order depth	6000 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036163](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/2022024.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

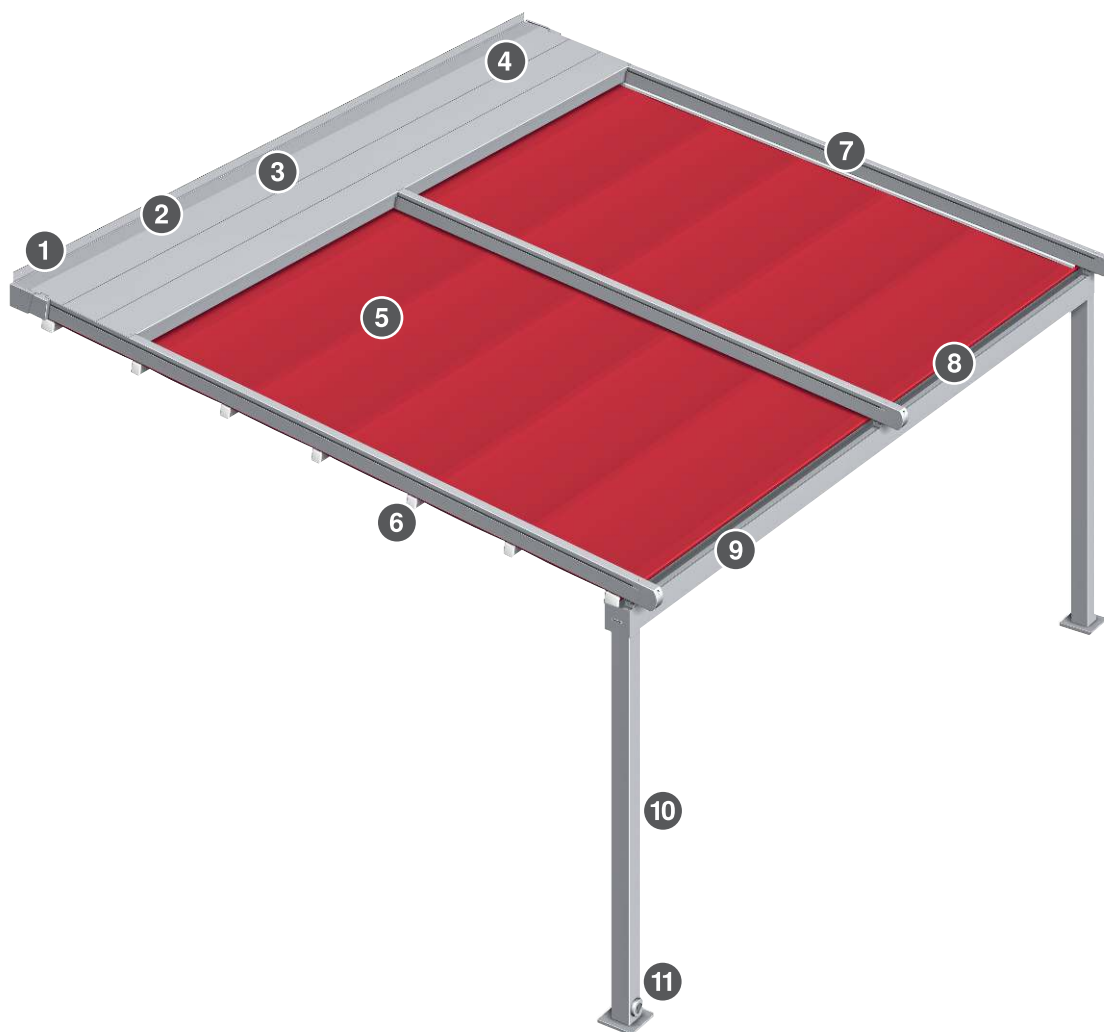
[Collection Assistant](#)

[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

Pergola awning Perea P70



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

- 1 Wall connection profile
- 2 Cover panel
- 3 Shaft
- 4 Console
- 5 Fabric
- 6 Horizontal profile

- 7 Rafters
- 8 Front rail
- 9 Drainage gutter
- 10 Pole
- 11 Drainage in pole

## Cover panel

### Cover panel - P70

Material	Aluminium, folded
Surface	Powder-coated

From a width of 4001 mm, the cover panel is split in the middle.

## Shaft

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

Material	Steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	70 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - P70

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Height	66.5 mm

There are two front rails. The fixed front rail is located at the wall connection and the second is pulled forwards via the toothed belt.

## Reinforcement profile

### Reinforcement profile - P70

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	55 mm
Height	66.5 mm

The reinforcement profiles run across the entire awning width and are guided into the rafters using runners.

## Rafters

### Rafter/guide rail - P70

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	60 mm
Height	123 mm

### + End closure

#### End closure - P70

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

With deflection bearing

## Pole

### Pole - patio frame Perea

Maximum order height	3500 mm
Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	111 mm
Depth	111 mm

## Base plate

### Base plate - Ø 200 mm Perea

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	200 mm

### Niche base plate - P60/P70

Material	Galvanised steel
Width	155,5 mm
Height	6 mm
Diameter	200 mm
Dimensions, notes	Base plate is sloped on one side.

## Base plate, optional

### Base plate - on-site glazing P70

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	350 mm
Height	200 mm

**Downward drainage** through the base plate is only possible in combination with this base plate.

## Base cover, optional

### Base cover - P60/P70

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	210 mm
Height	25 mm
Depth	210 mm

For base plate diameter 200 mm

### Base cover for niche base plate - P60/P70

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	171,5 mm
Height	25 mm
Depth	210 mm

## Drainage

### Large drainage gutter 150x150

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	150 mm
Height	150 mm

If front-mounted awnings/GranTex with easyZIP guidance are to be installed, the large drainage gutter is required.

### Drainage in pole - P60/P70

Drainage via drainage profile in pole.

#### Position of drainage outlet:

- Can be on any side of the pole (front/rear/right/left).
- Height min.: 100 mm
- Max. height: 250 mm below the headroom

## Wall connection profile

### Wall connection profile - P70

Material	Aluminium, folded
Surface	Powder-coated

From a width of 4001 mm, the wall connection profile is split in the middle.

## Console

### Wall console type A - P70

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	160 mm
Height	71 mm
Depth	86 mm

## Guide variants

- Back-pull

## Pulling element

### Toothed belt

Material, notes	With steel insert
-----------------	-------------------

## Drive variants

- Motor

### Motor

- MM30/17

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World, Highlight category, fine texture surface quality
- WAREMA Colour World, Variation category, fine texture surface quality
- WAREMA Colour World, Individual category, fine texture surface quality

Colours, optional:

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Soltis W96

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living connect package
- LED strip light rail
- Radiant heater
- Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance
- PVC viewing field
- GranTex with easyZIP guidance
- Stretcher frame
- Multicube set
- Patio frame

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Notes

### Surface quality:

The fine texture surface quality is the most common and suitable variant for this type of roof system product and ensures a uniform surface appearance. It is more resistant and less sensitive to external influences such as dirt, marks and scratches.

### Planning permission:

Pergola awnings require planning permission, depending on their overall size and the local regulations.

### Fixing of the radiant heater

It is not possible to fix the radiant heaters directly to pergola awnings Perea.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order depth	Maximum order depth	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Fabric qualities</b>							
Soltis W96	1500 mm	6000 mm	2000 mm	6000 mm	36 m <sup>2</sup>	7 °	20 °

**Console offset:** The offset of the consoles is limited to between 90 mm and 100 mm up to an order width of 1600 mm.

**Number of rafters:** For order widths of 4001 mm and greater, an additional rafter is required. This is located in the middle of the unit.

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- The lining up of several pergola awnings is possible with a flush closure.
- Each awning requires two or three single rafters.
- This results in a gap of 62 mm between the units, which is covered by an additional folded cover sheet.
- The installation of two rafters on one pole is possible with an adapter plate.
- The water must be drained via the two outer poles.

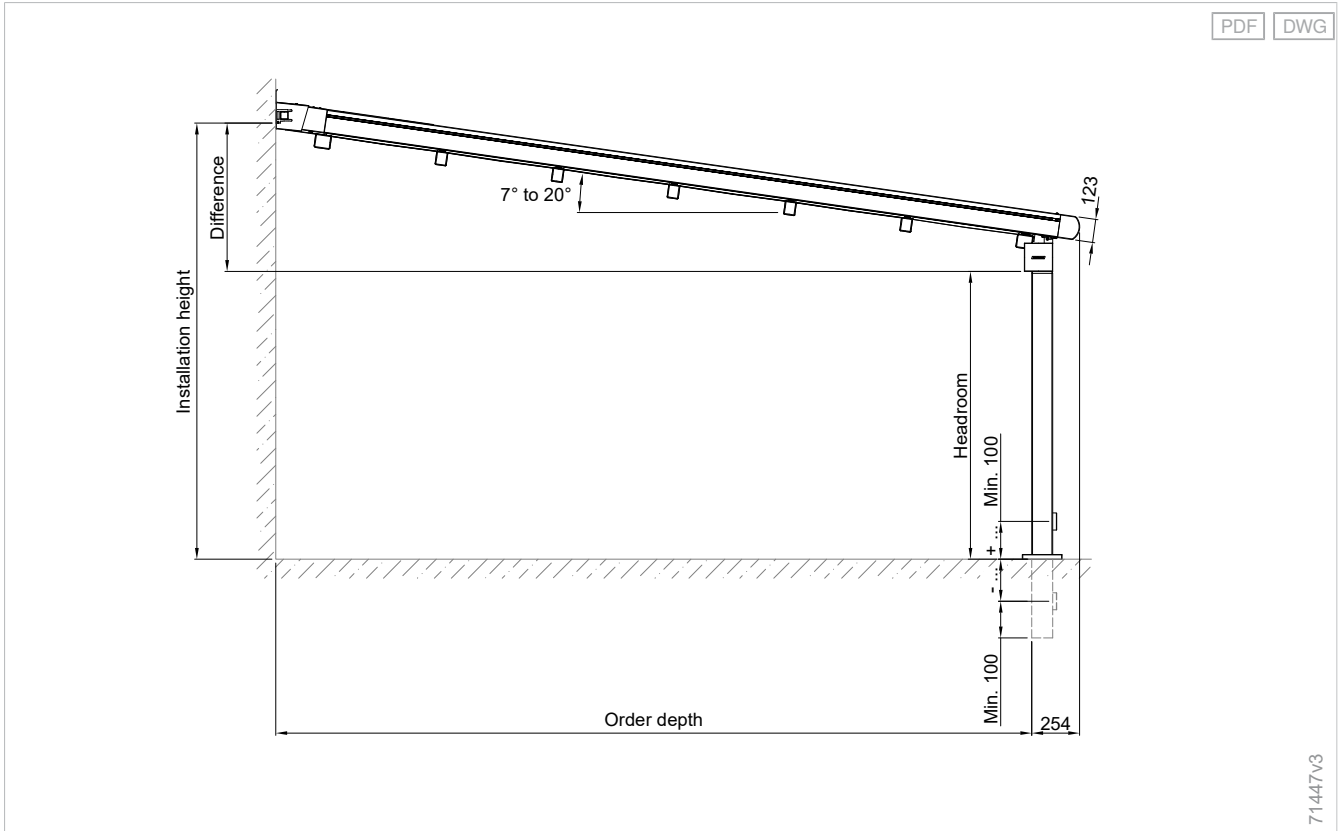
## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 36 kg/lfm

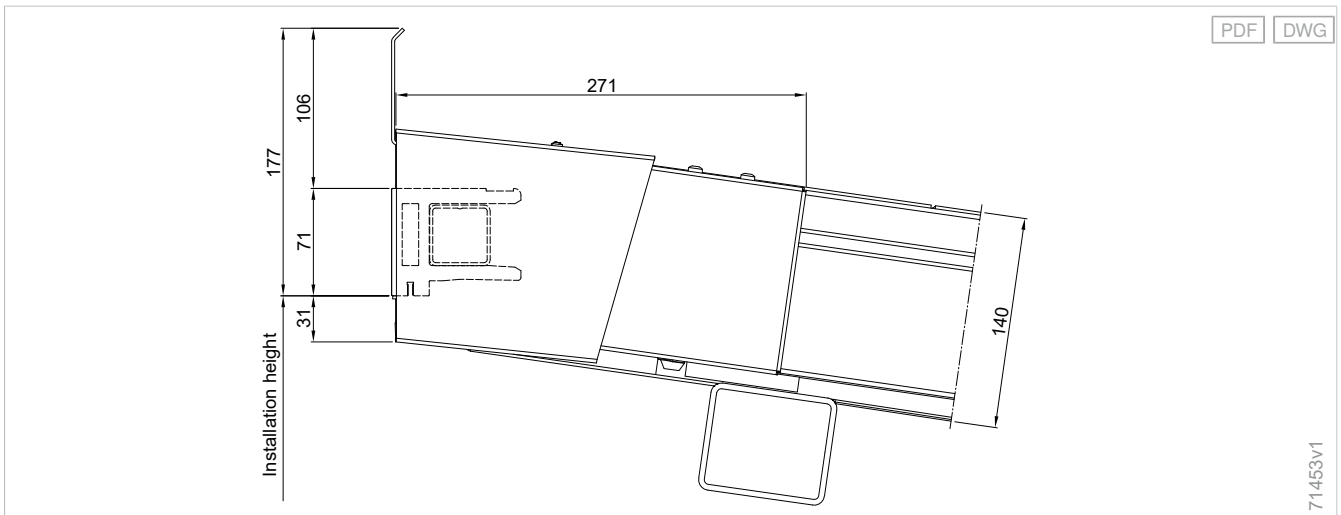
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without consoles, without rafters, drainage gutter and pole.

## Dimension determination

### Individual unit - P70

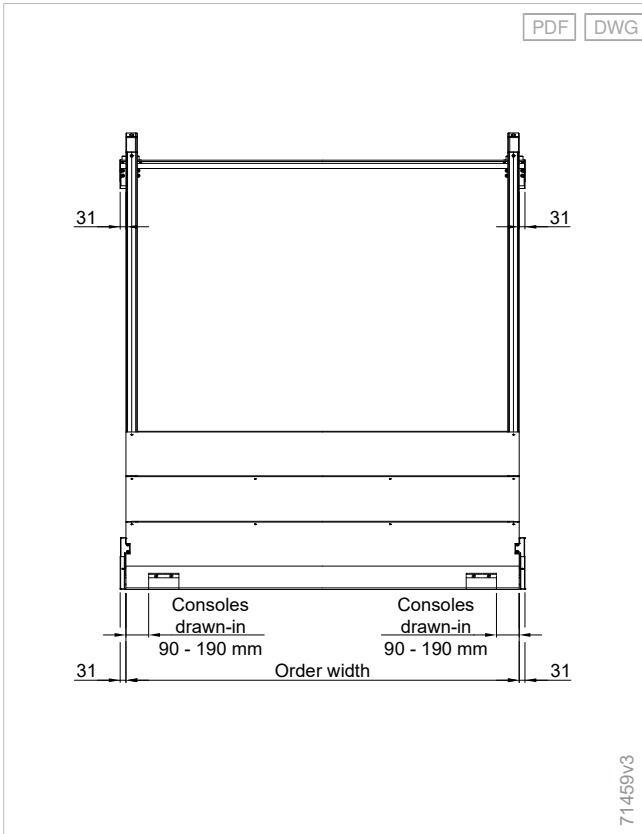


### Determining the installation height for wall installation - P70



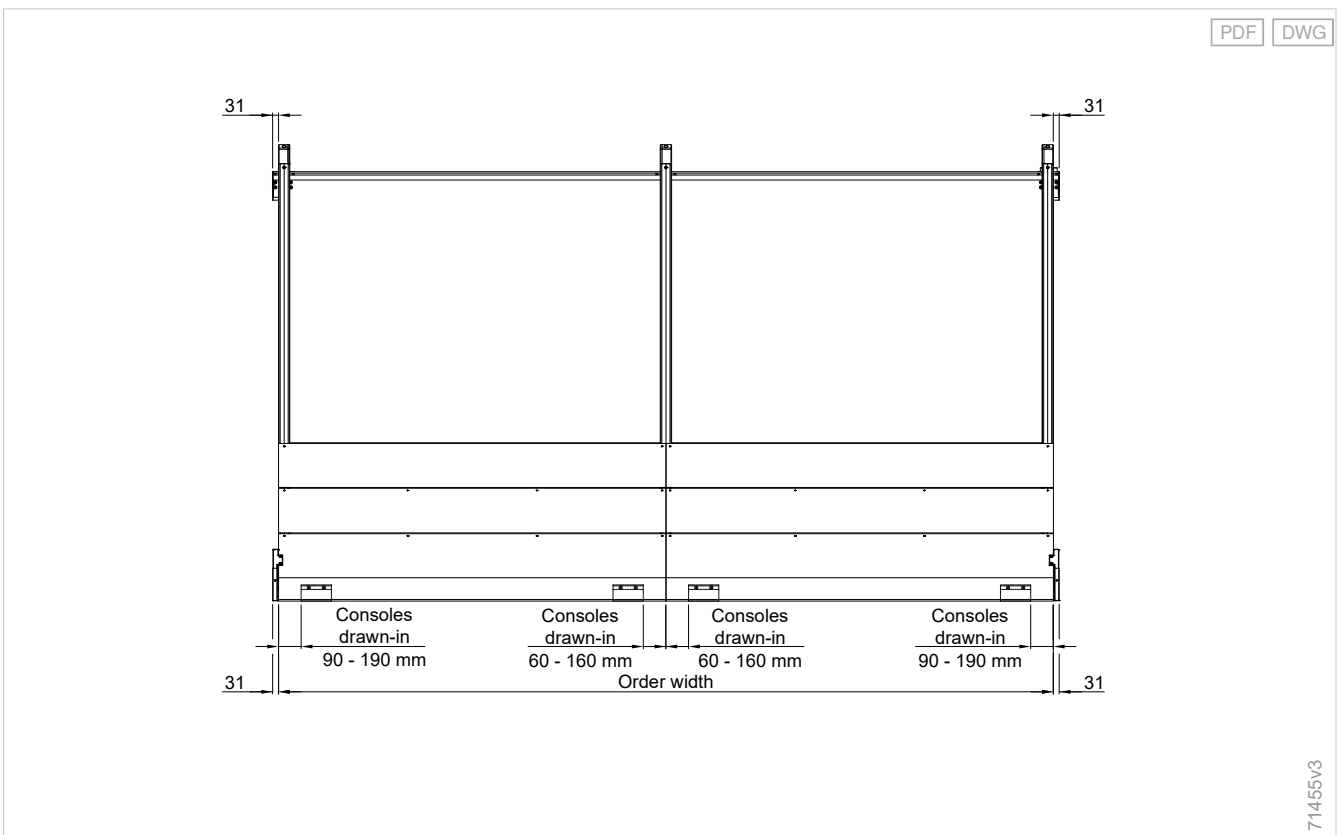


Individual units up to 4000 mm in width (two rafters) - P70

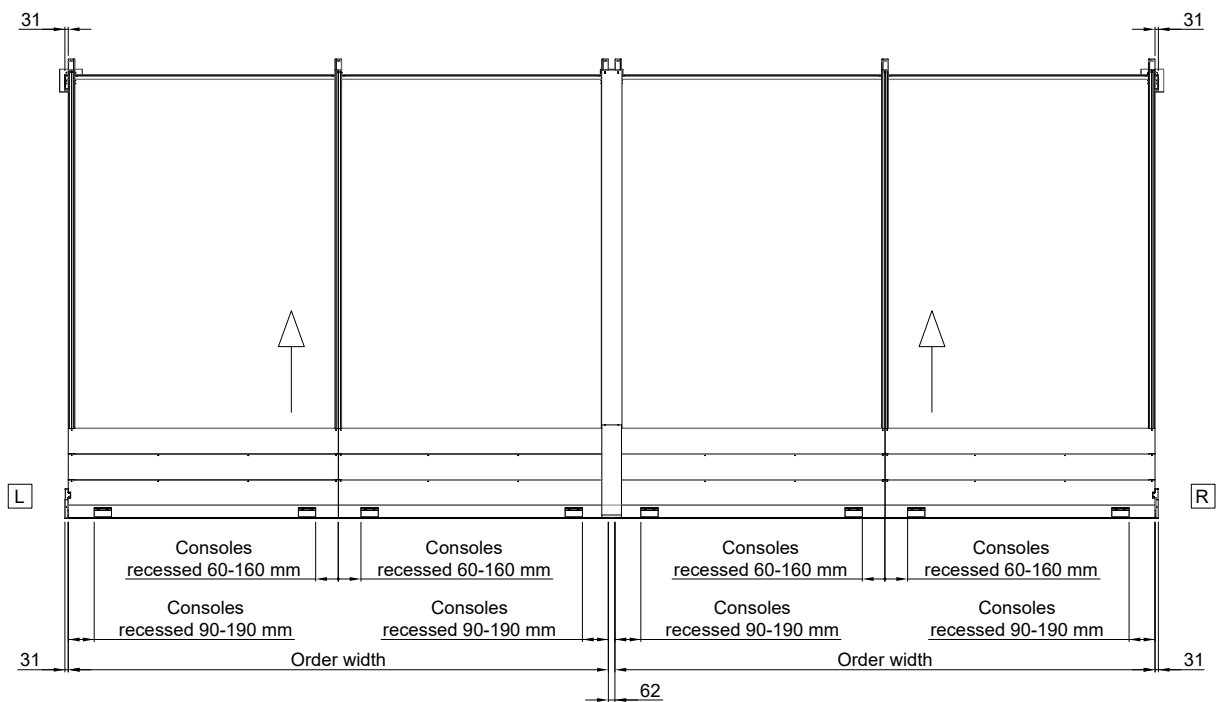
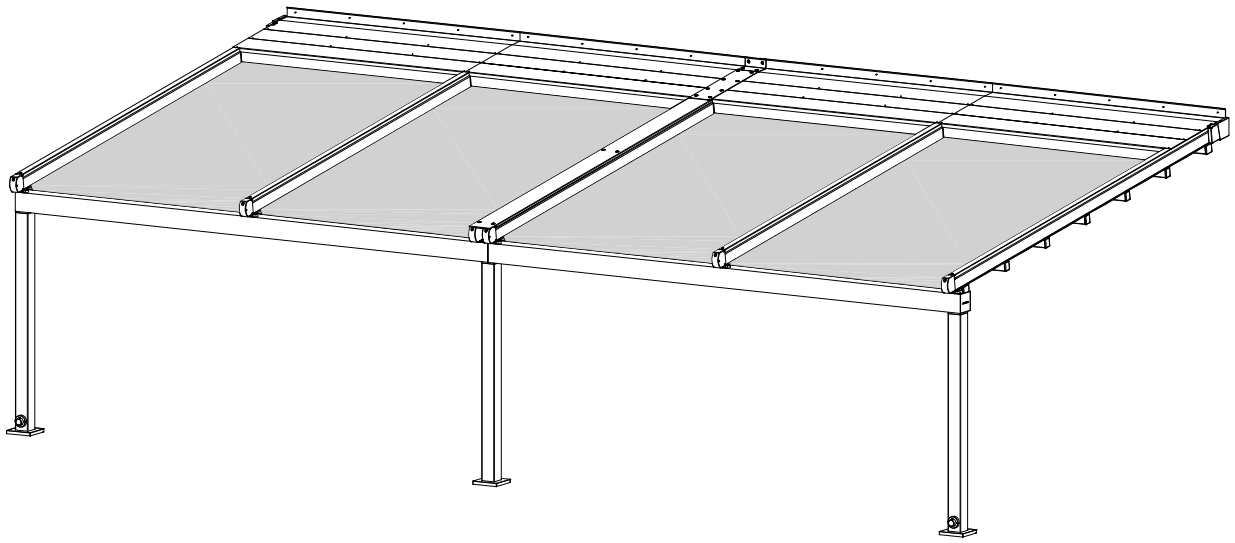


Order width P70 + 62 mm = outer edge of pole

Individual units 4001 mm in width and greater (three rafters) – P70



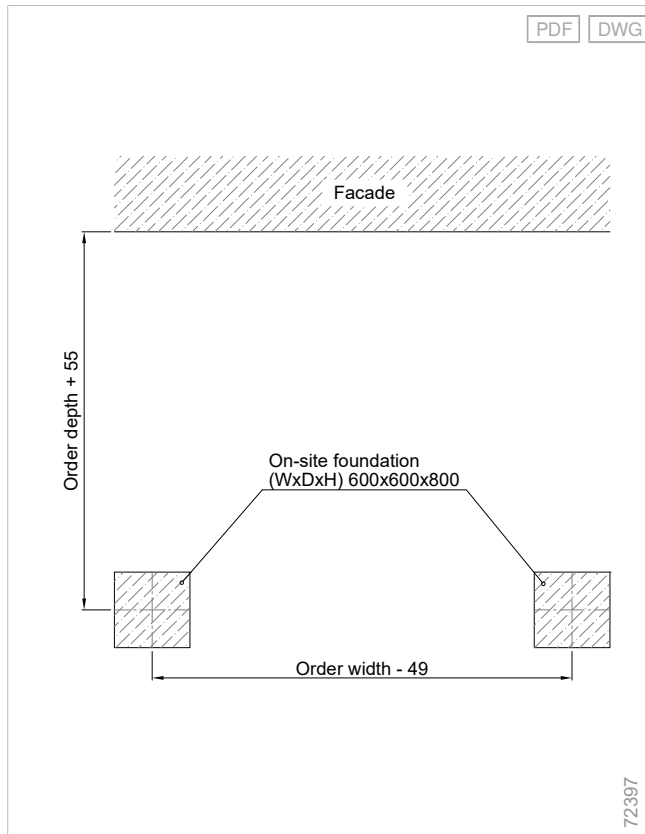
Order width P70 + 62 mm = outer edge of pole



72395v1

Order width P70 + 62 mm = outer edge of pole

## Foundation plan - P70



## Dimension determination

### Minimum difference between installation height and headroom

Configuration variants	Order depth	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm	4500 mm	5000 mm	5500 mm	6000 mm
<b>Fabric qualities</b>										
Soltis W96	Minimum difference	461 mm	522 mm	583 mm	645 mm	706 mm	768 mm	829 mm	890 mm	952 mm

This is the minimum difference between the installation height and the headroom for the **minimum inclination of 7°** required for rainwater drainage.

**Water drainage** in the drainage gutter is only ensured when the awning is **fully extended**.

Water can also run into the loops of the fabric and can drip from the side underneath the guide rail if the awning is retracted while wet. **The area below the extended fabric thus remains dry.**

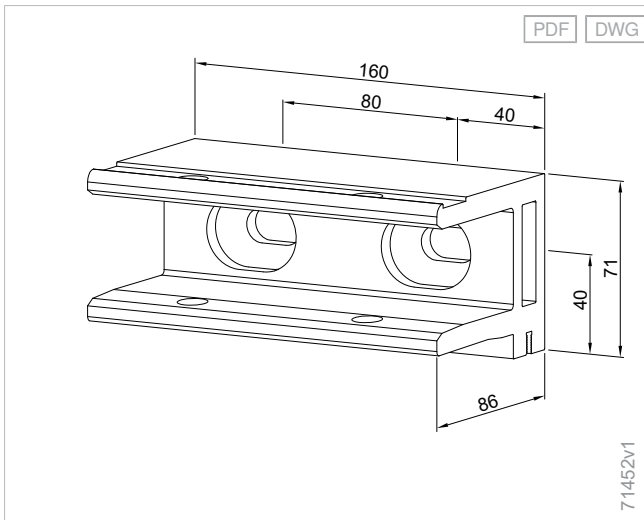
## Quantity determination

### Number of consoles, individual unit

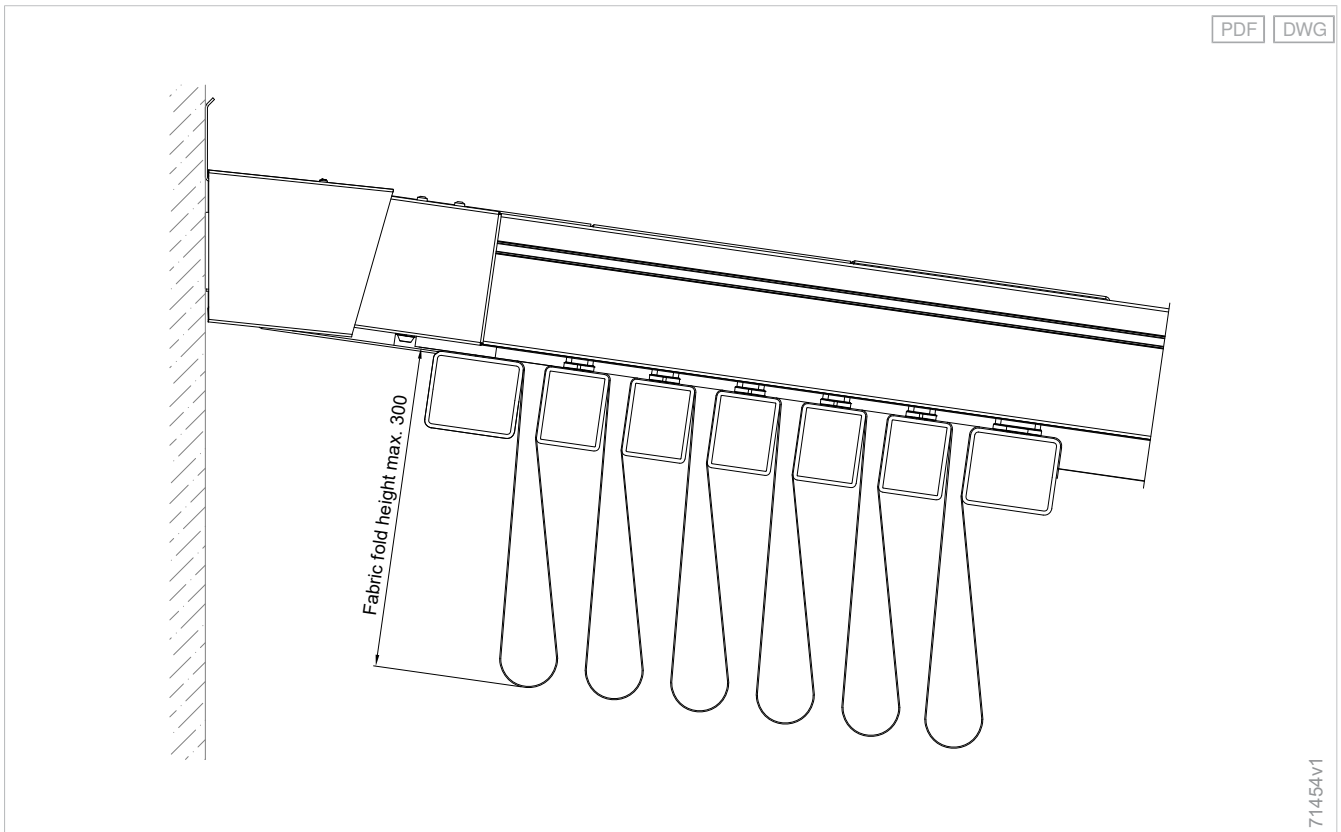
Configuration variants	Order width	Order depth 2000 - 6000 mm
<b>Console/Bracket</b>		
Wall console	1500 - 4000 mm	2
Wall console	4001 - 6000 mm	4

## Details

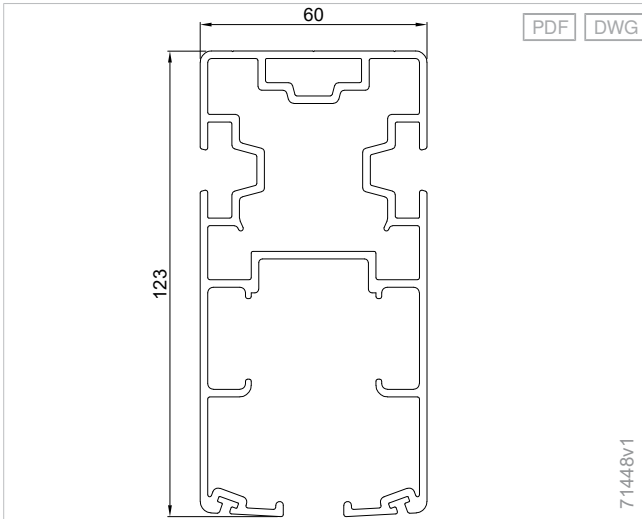
Wall installation (right console – left console laterally reversed)  
- P70



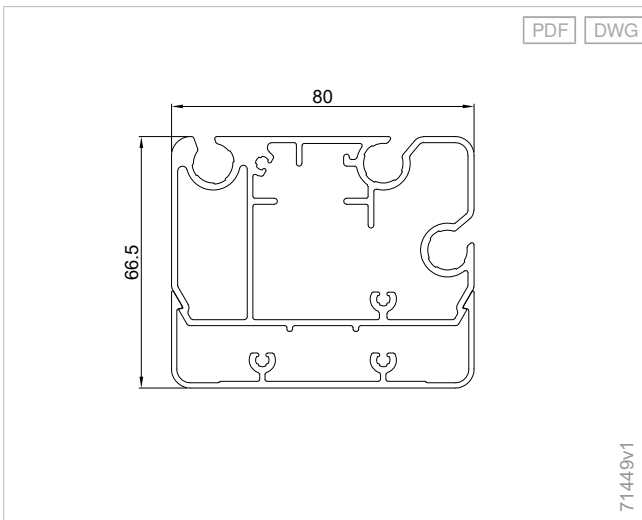
Fabric fold height - P70



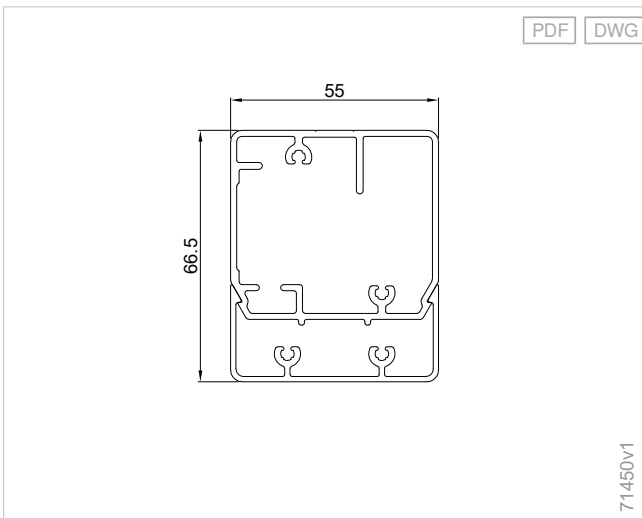
**Rafters - P70**



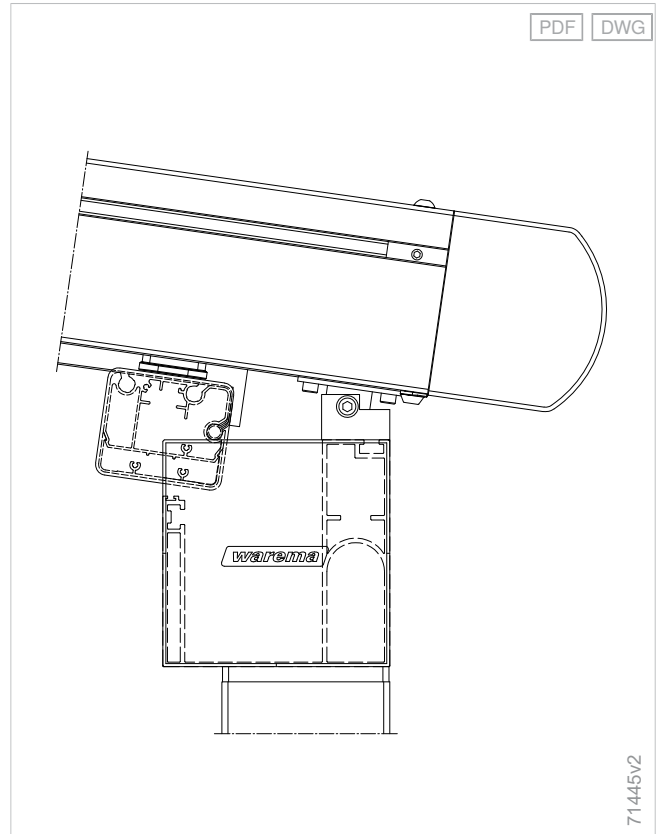
**Projection profile with cover profile - P70**



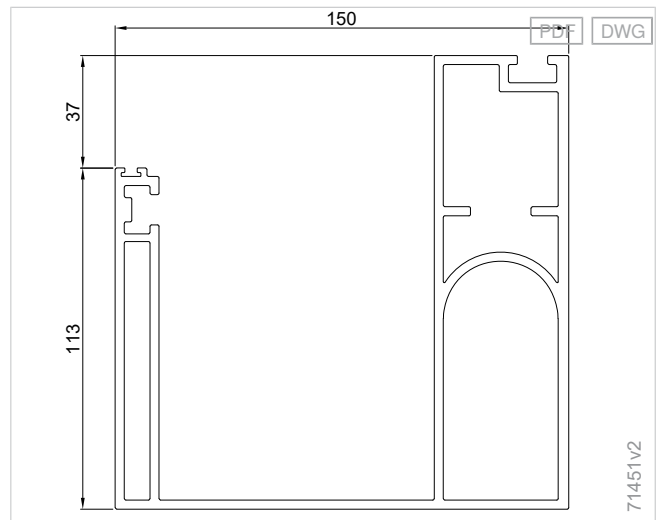
**Travelling reinforcement profile with cover profile - P70**



**Front rail - P70**



**Large drainage gutter - P60/P70**



Planning

Terrea

Perca

Patio side screens

Climara

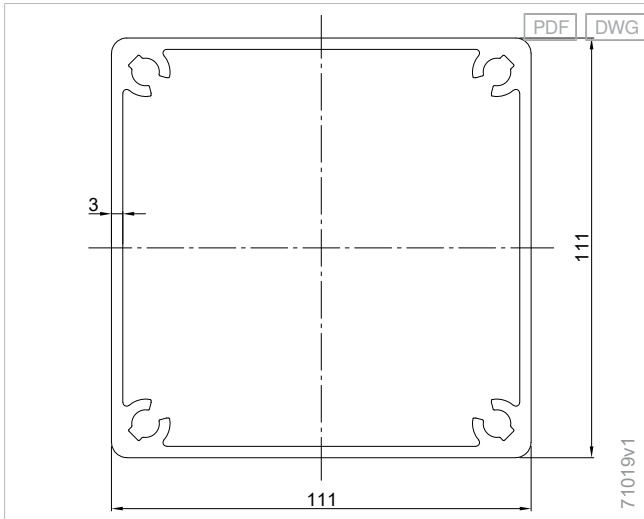
Supplementary accessories

Components

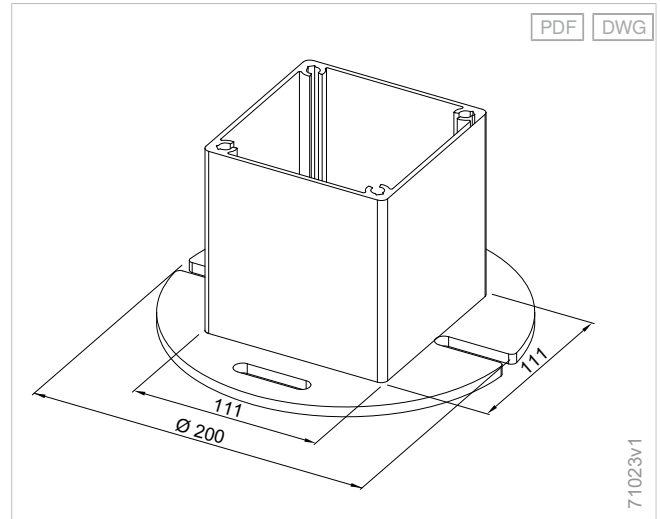
Drive variants

Standards

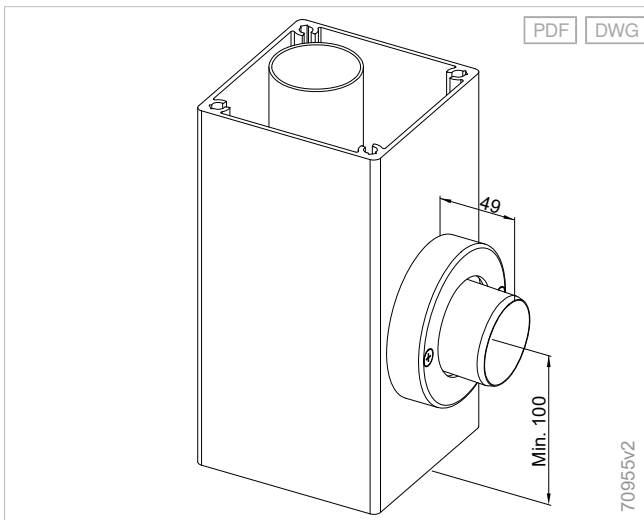
Pole - patio frame Perea



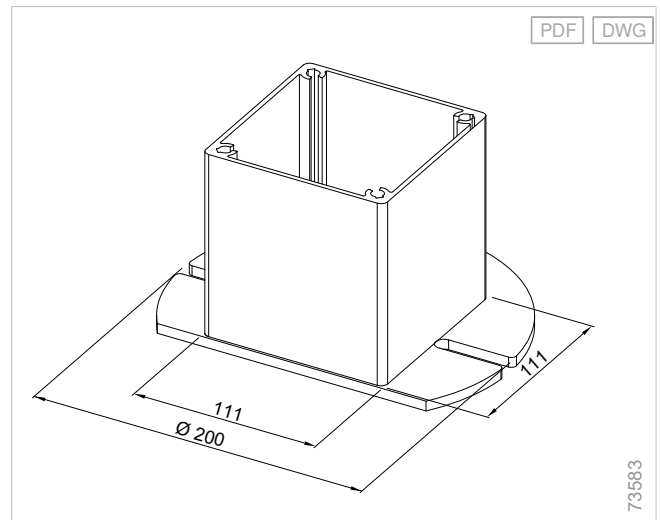
Pole fixing with base plate - P60/P70



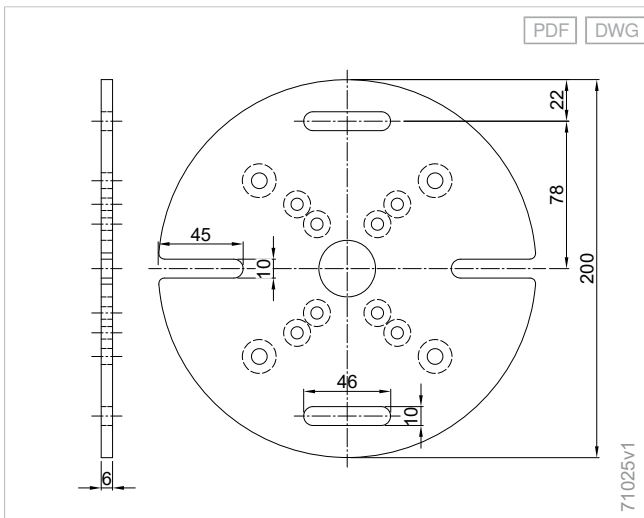
Position of drainage - P60/P70



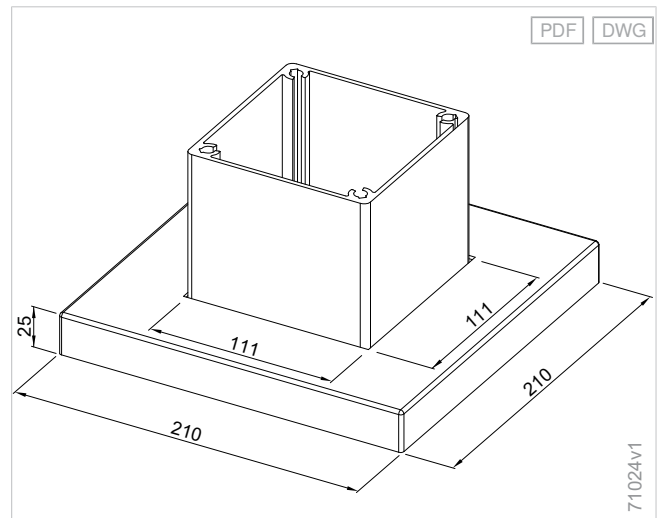
Pole fixing with base plate flush right/left - P60/P70



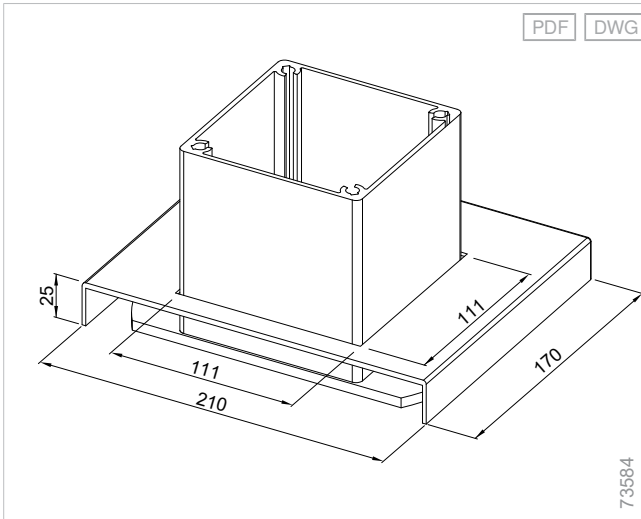
Pole fixing base plate - P20/P40/P40 WE/P60/P70



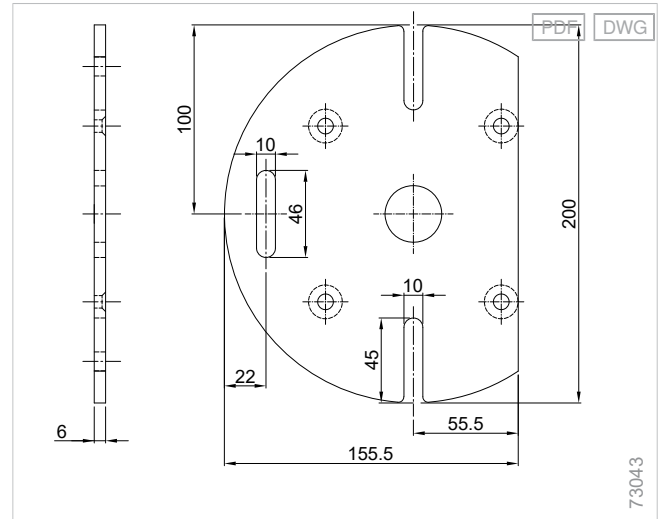
Base cover - P60/P70



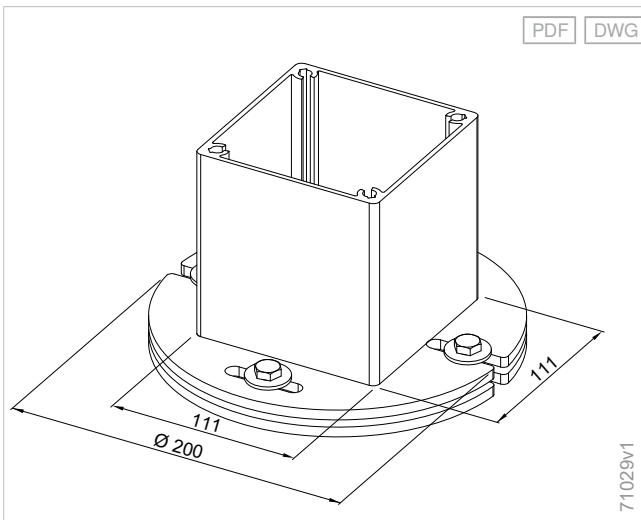
Base cover for recess installation- P60/P70



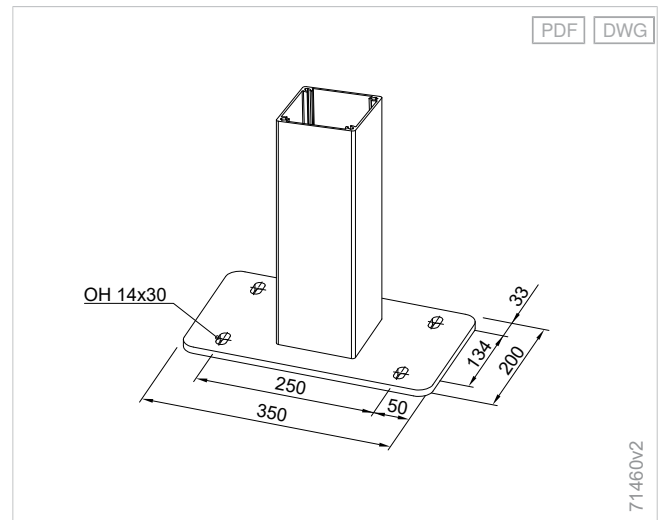
Recess installation base plate - P60/P70



Adapter plate ground screw - P60/P70



Pole fixing for on-site glazing - P70



## Additional product information

### Pole installation options

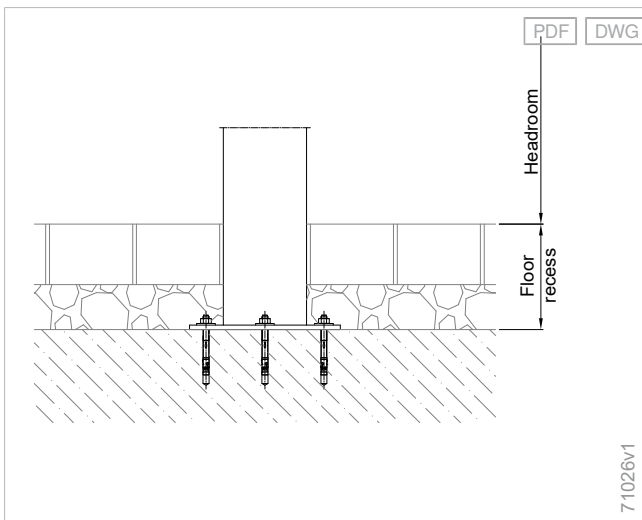
- Ground installation with frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm
- Optional ground installation with on-site Krinner ground screw
- The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery when **threaded rods** are used.

## Number of profiles and length of cover panel

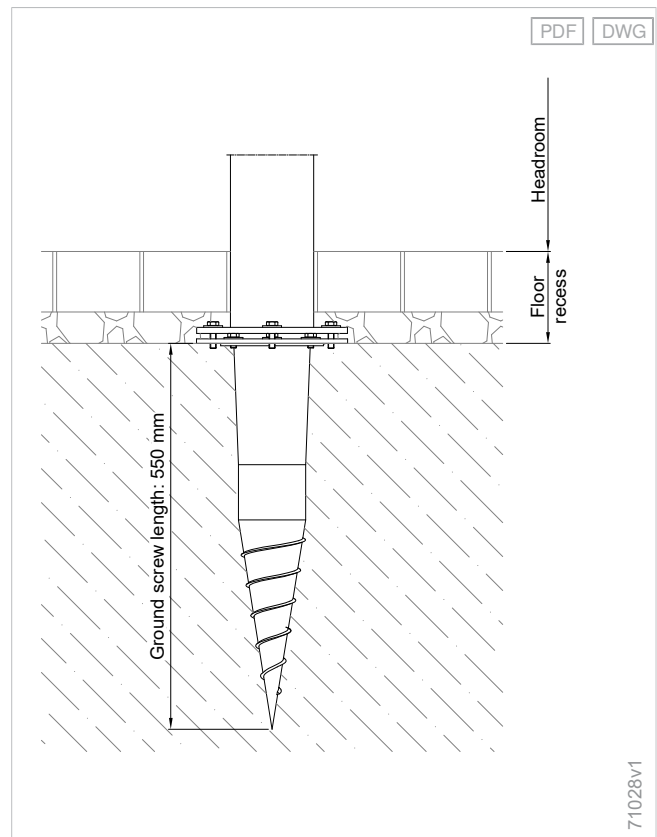
Order depth with 7° inclination	Cover panel length	Number of reinforcement profiles	Max. number of additional reinforcement profiles
2000 mm - 2213 mm	605 mm	2	1
2214 mm - 2863 mm	686 mm	3	2
2864 mm - 3513 mm	766 mm	4	2
3514 mm - 4163 mm	846 mm	5	2
4164 mm - 4813 mm	926 mm	6	2
4814 mm - 5463 mm	1005 mm	7	3
5464 mm - 6000 mm	1086 mm	8	4
	1167 mm	9	
	1245 mm	10	
	1328 mm	11	
	1408 mm	12	

## Mounting examples

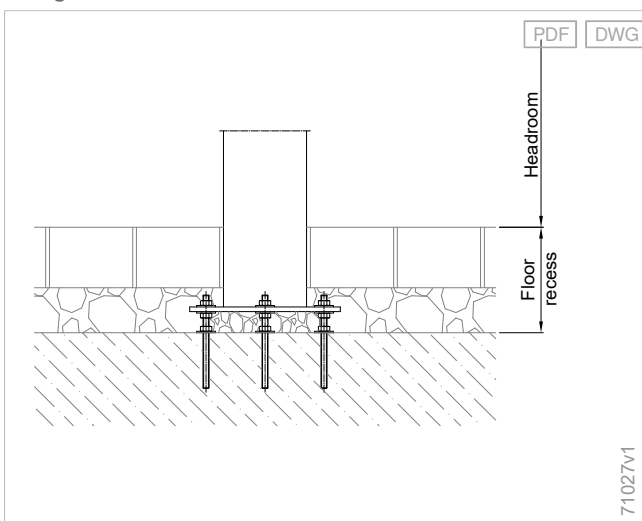
Fixing without clearance on concrete foundation - P60/P70



Fixing with ground screw - P60/P70



Fixing with clearance on concrete foundation - P60/P70



Krinner ground screws made of zinc-coated steel can be used to install the poles. The adapter plate for Krinner ground screw KSF 89x550 is required.

The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery.



# Contents

## Patio side screens

Patio side screen 390..... 202

Planning

Terrea

Perea

**Patio  
side screens**

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Patio side screens

### Patio side screen 390

#### Lateral protection

For more privacy: Practical lateral visual privacy, as well as protection from sun and wind, for enjoying many pleasant hours on the patio.

#### Durable

Protected against dust and soiling: When retracted, the fabric vanishes into the cassette box.

#### Suitable

Harmonious addition to the awning: On request, also match with the slope of the sun shading product with an angled covering of the fabric.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order height	2500 mm
Maximum order area	10 m <sup>2</sup>
Minimum excerpt	1000 mm
Maximum excerpt	5000 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2013438](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/878195.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Collection Assistant](#)

[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

Patio side screen 390



- |   |          |   |              |
|---|----------|---|--------------|
| 1 | Cassette | 4 | Front rail   |
| 2 | Shaft    | 5 | Wall support |
| 3 | Fabric   |   |              |

## Cassette

### Cassette - 390

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	134 mm

Cassette with funnel-shaped fabric intake and seat for projection profile, closed on all sides.

With a **diagonal cut**, an open gap is created by the shortened front rail in the upper region of the cassette.

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 63 mm, black

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Material colour	Black
Profile	Groove tube

## Front rail

### Front rail - 390

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	43 mm
Depth	28 mm

With screw-on handle and adapter for stabilising on the ground.

## Pole

### Support post - 390

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	50 mm
Height	950 mm
Depth	40 mm

## Base plate

### Base plate for support post - 390

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	140 mm

## Bracket

### Wall support - 390

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	50 mm
Height	200 mm
Depth	40 mm

### Wall support adapter - 390

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	180 mm
Depth	30 mm

## Console

### Upper wall console - 390

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	71 mm

### Lower wall console - 390

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	132 mm

## Console, optional

### Fixed wall console - 390

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	93 mm
Height	40 mm

## Drive variants

### Manual operation

- Manual operation for patio side screen 390

### Handle

- Handle - 390

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Screen fabric
- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Notes

### Fixing:

It is not possible to fix the patio side screen 390 directly to a P20 or P40 pole. An additional substructure next to the pergola pole is necessary.

## Construction limit values

For fabric with a sloped shape, a slope of at least 5° is required.

The height of the front rail must be at least 2/3 of the total height but must not be less than 1250 mm.

Configuration variants	Minimum order height	Maximum order height	Minimum excerpt	Maximum excerpt	Maximum order area
<b>Fabric qualities</b>					
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Soltis 92	1250 mm	2500 mm	1000 mm	5000 mm	10 m <sup>2</sup>
Screen fabric / Twilight Pearl	1250 mm	2000 mm	1000 mm	4500 mm	9 m <sup>2</sup>

Fabric with additional stiffening for improved fabric standing strength. With larger excerpts, an increased formation of waves can not be avoided. This occurs especially with acrylic fabrics.

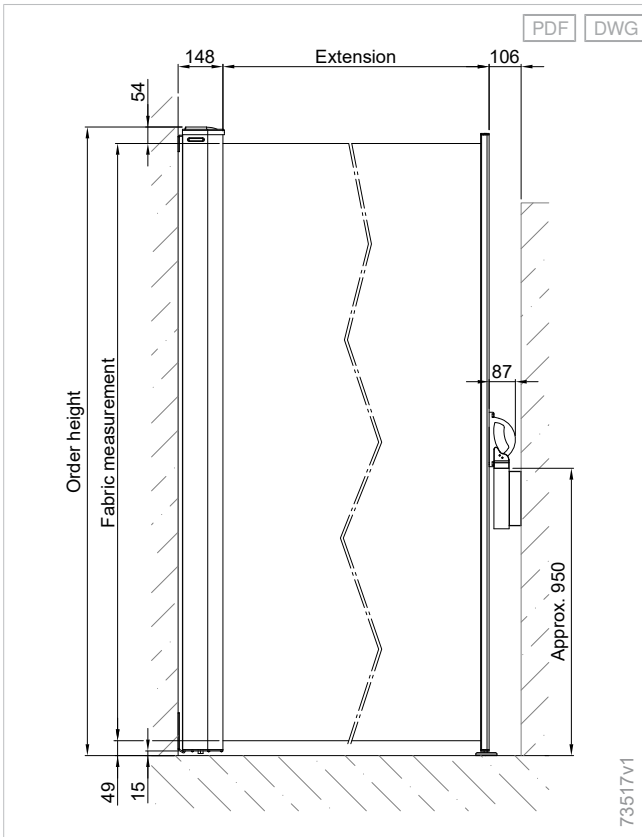
## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 6 kg/lfm

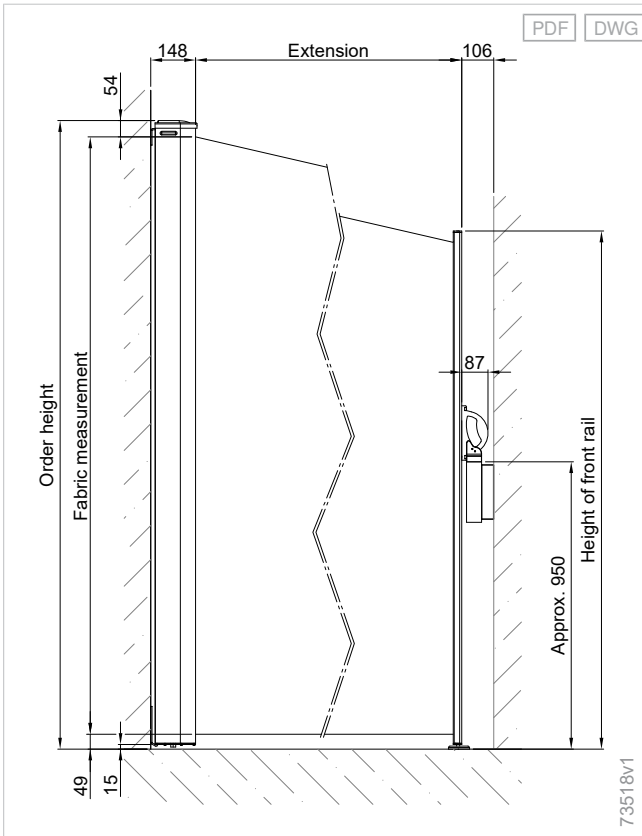
Weight per running metre, notes: Without fabric

# Dimension determination

Side view - 390



Side view of sloped awning fabric - 390



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

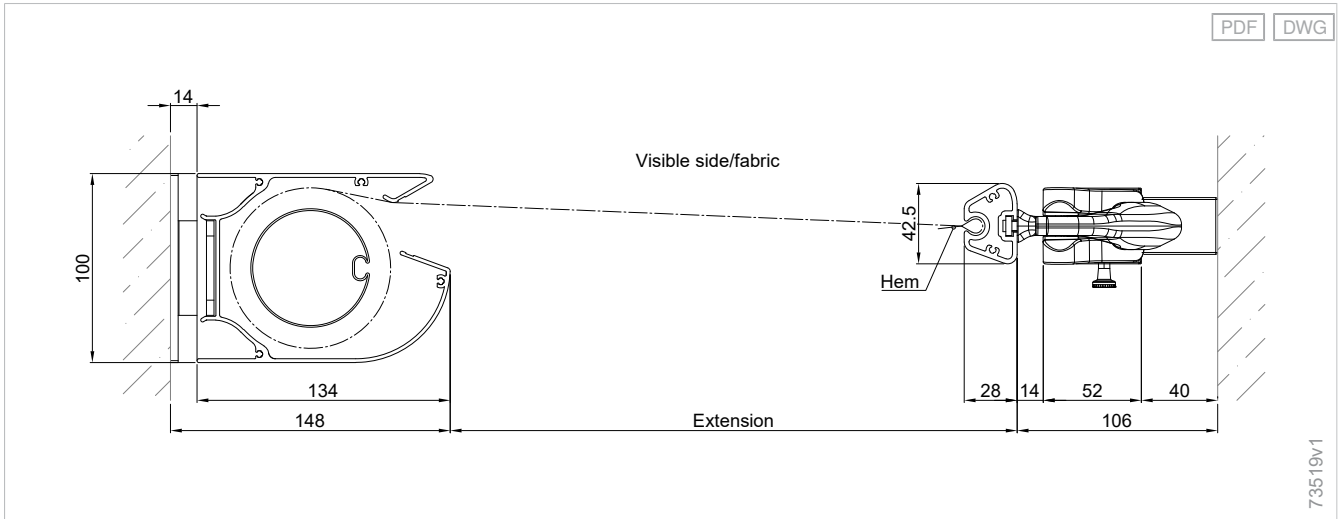
Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

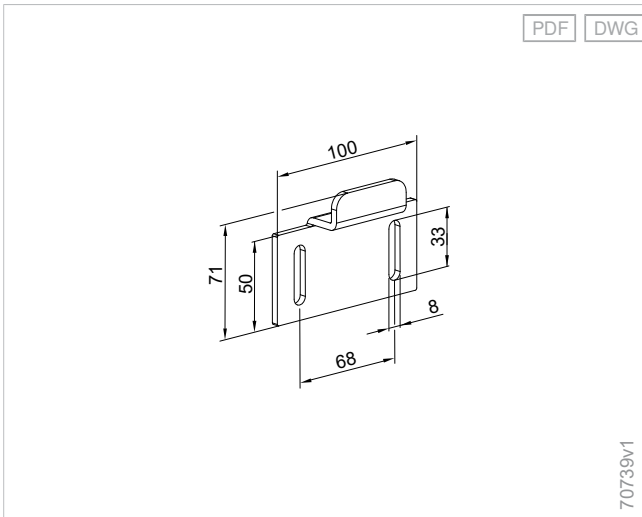
Standards

Top view (operation side left) - 390

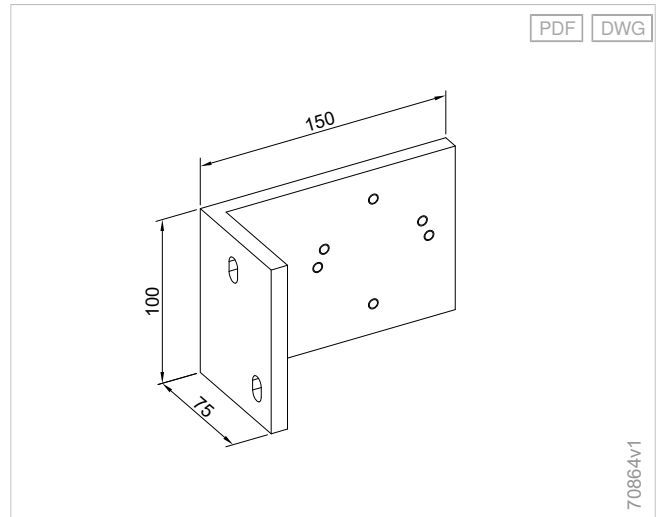


## Details

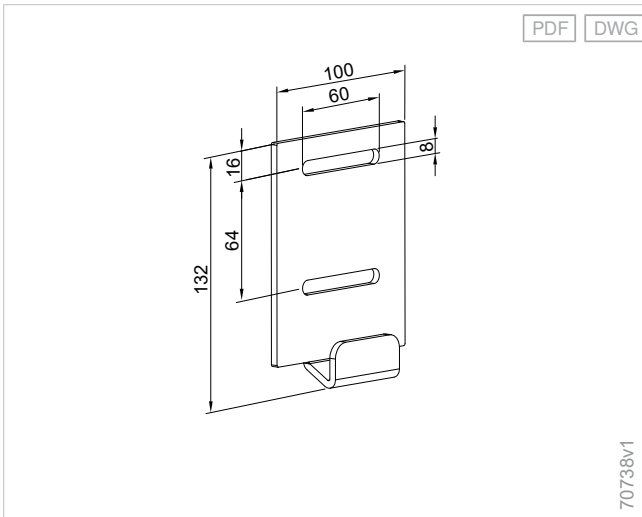
Upper wall console - 390



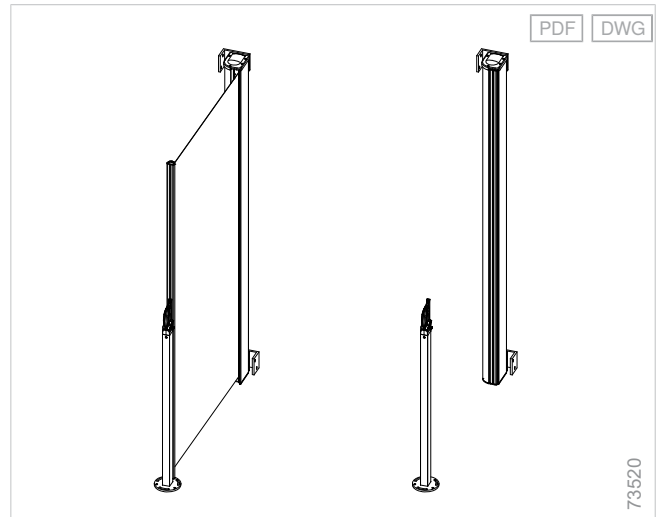
Reveal angle bracket - 390



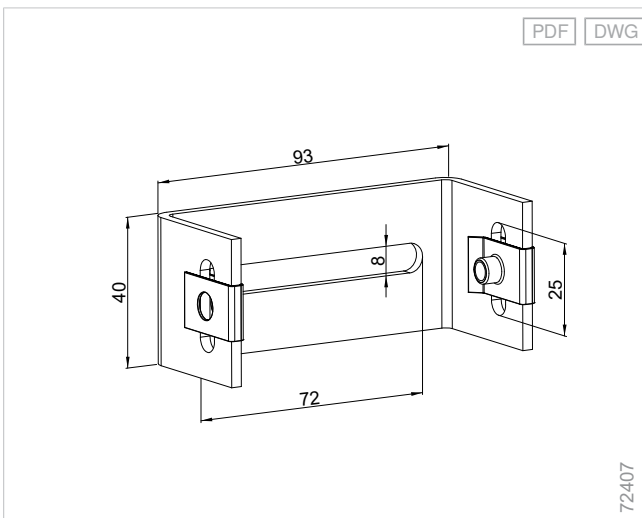
Lower wall console - 390



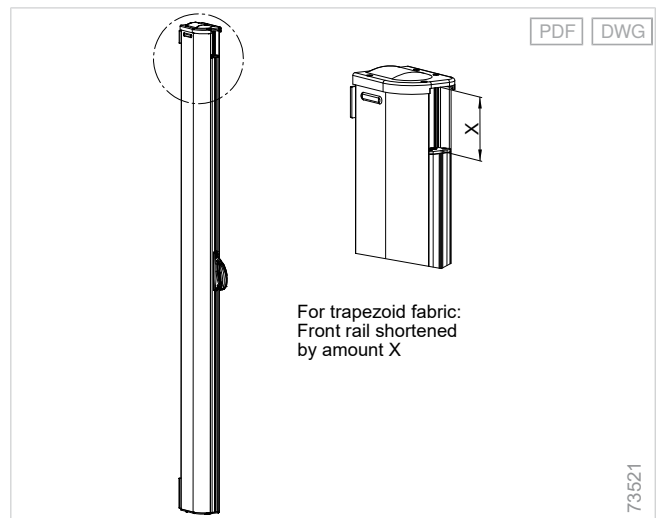
Reveal angle bracket - 390



Fixed wall console - 390



Side view, sloped awning fabric, retracted - 390



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

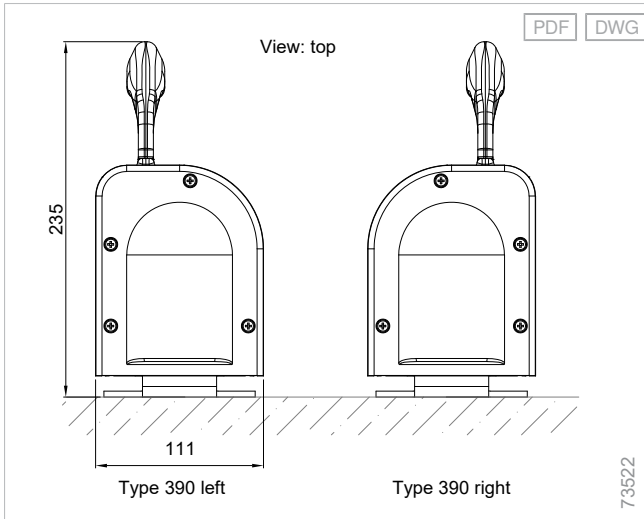
Supplementary  
accessories

Components

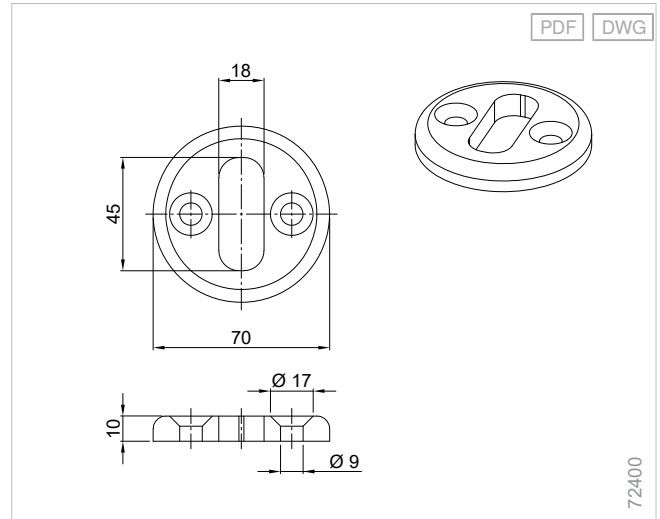
Drive  
variants

Standards

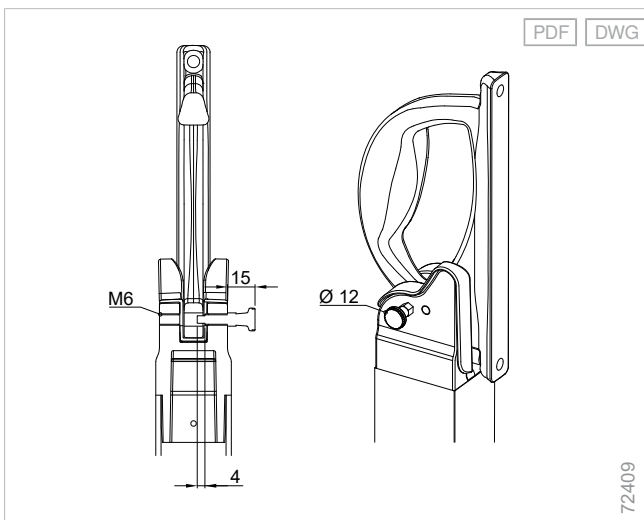
Operation sides - 390



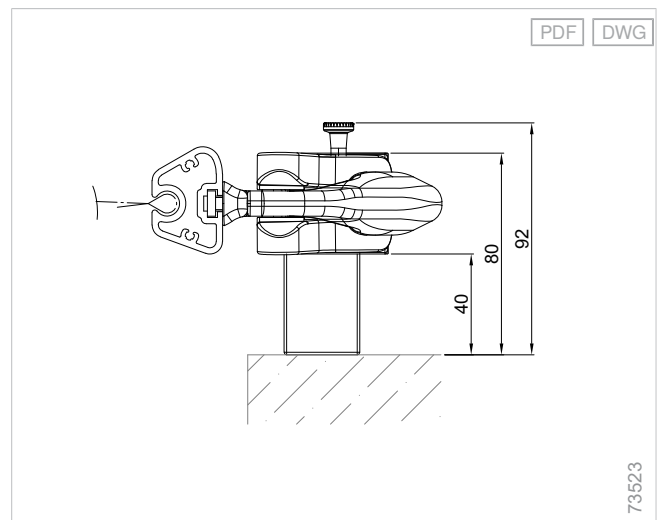
Front rail base support - 390



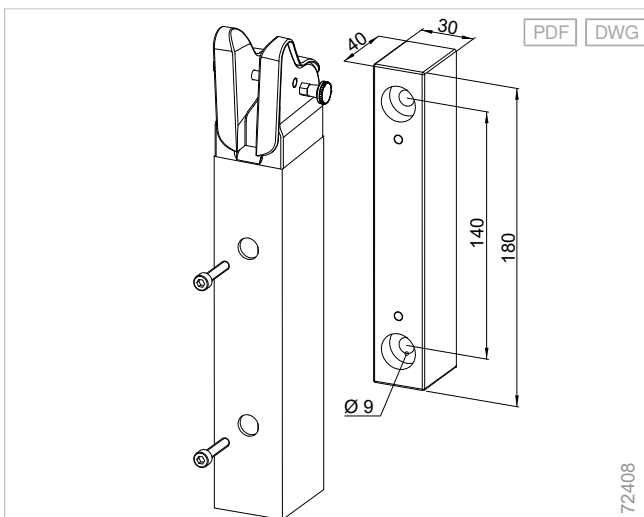
Handle locking mechanism - 390



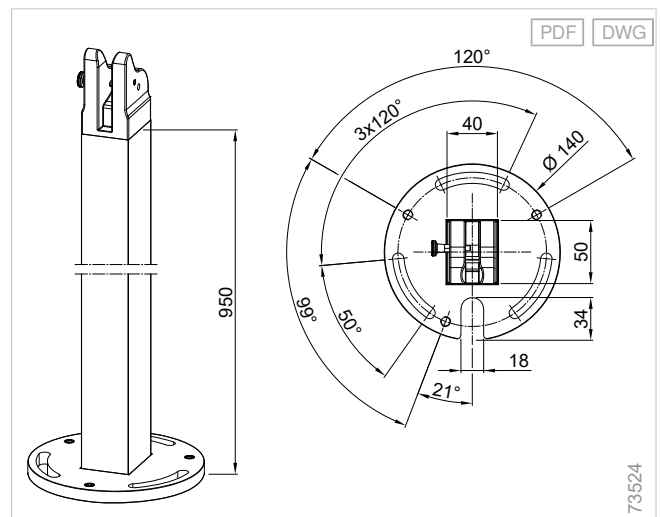
Bracket for reveal installation - 390



Bracket for wall installation - 390

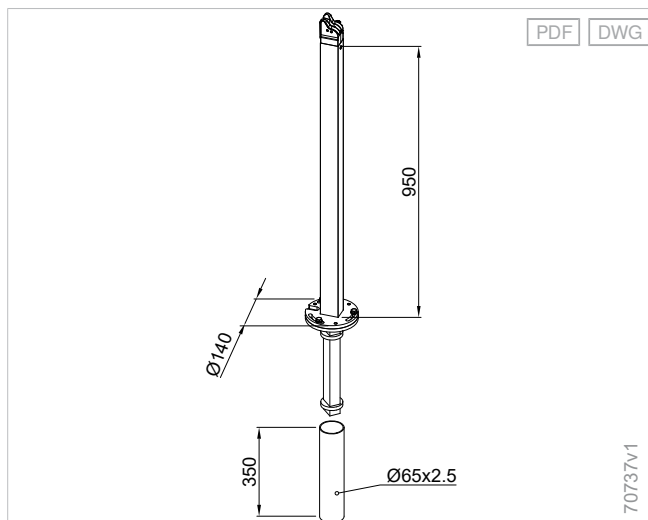


Support post with base plate - 390

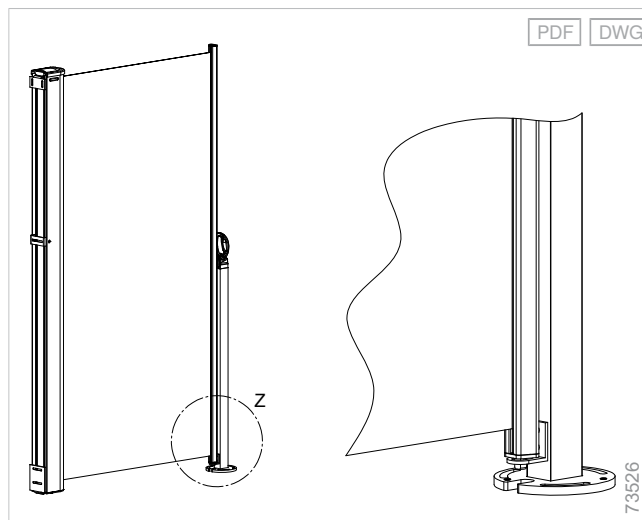




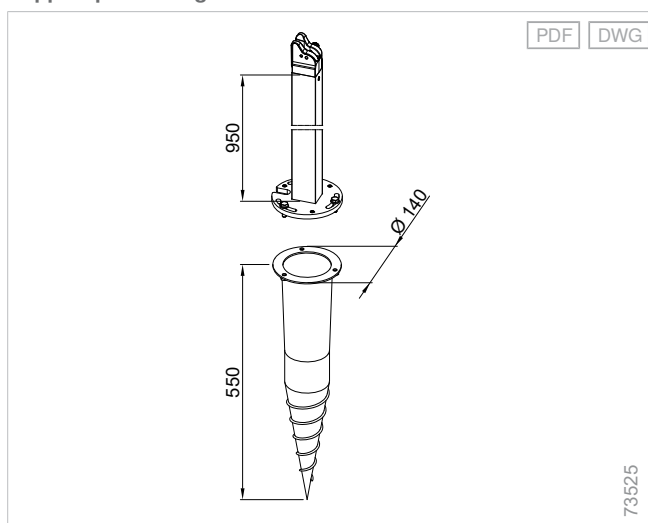
Detachable support post incl. ground sleeve - 390



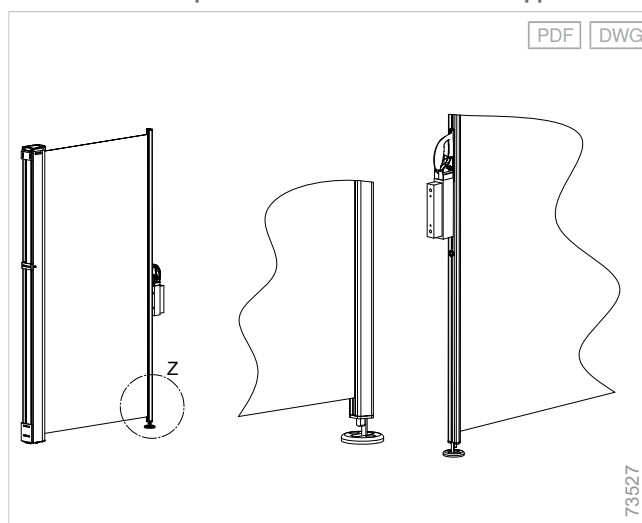
Side view with drop – support post with base plate - 390



Support post with ground screw - 390



Side view with drop – wall installation with base support - 390



## Additional product information

### Colour combinations (optional)

Colour combinations (cassette cover, front rail, handles) are optionally available within the WAREMA Colour World. If no colour combination is specified, we will supply matching shades.

### Pole installation options

- Ground installation with frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm
- Optional ground installation with on-site Krinner ground screw
- The grout for filling the clearance is not included in the scope of delivery when **threaded rods** are used.



# Contents

## Conservatory awnings Climara

Under-glass conservatory awnings Climara.....	213
Conservatory awning Climara W9.....	214
Conservatory awning Climara W10.....	226
Conservatory awning Climara W10 <sup>2</sup> – Model A.....	244
Conservatory awning Climara W10 <sup>2</sup> – Model B.....	260
Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass.....	275
Conservatory awning Climara D3.....	276
Conservatory awning Climara W7.....	292
Conservatory awning Climara W19.....	298
Conservatory awning Climara W20.....	310

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



# Under-glass conservatory awnings Climara

Conservatory awning Climara W9.....	214
Conservatory awning Climara W10.....	226
Conservatory awning Climara W10 <sup>2</sup> – Model A.....	244
Conservatory awning Climara W10 <sup>2</sup> – Model B.....	260

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

**Climara**

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Under-glass conservatory awnings Climara

### Conservatory awning Climara W9

#### Durable

Fully functionally developed and tested counter-pull system.

#### Expanded

Optimal light with privacy: Optional lowerable valance roller blind protects you against low sun and improves your visual privacy.

#### Protected

No weather influences: The glass overhead protects the awning from wind, rain and soiling.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6000 mm
Maximum order length	6000 mm
Maximum order area	30 m <sup>2</sup>

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

🔗 *Art.-Nr. 2036170*

#### Order form

🔗 <https://docs.warema.com/fi/2019599.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

🔗 *Fastener Assistant*

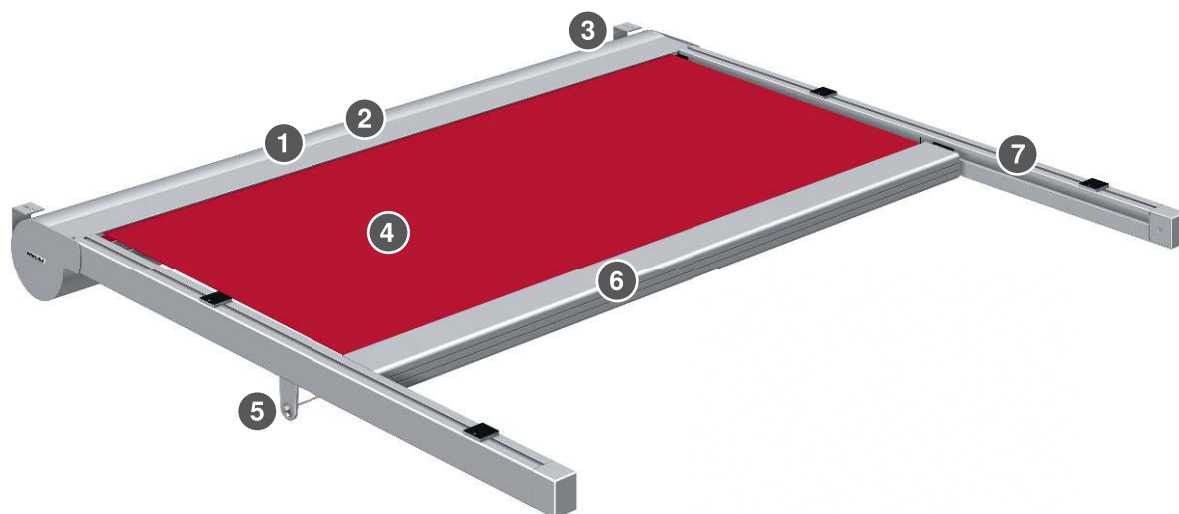
🔗 *Sun Shading Planner*

🔗 *Collection Assistant*

➕ *see "Navigating the document", Page 5*

# Components

Conservatory awning Climara W9



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Bracket
- 4 Fabric

- 5 Tension cable
- 6 Front rail
- 7 Guide rail

## Cover panel

### Round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	199 mm
Height	158 mm

#### + Side cover

### Side cover for round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	227 mm
Height	159 mm

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	85 mm

### Motor shaft Ø 56 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	56 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20/P20/H1

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	94 mm
Height	54 mm

## Front rail, optional

### Front rail - W9/W10 with valance roller blind

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	94 mm
Height	62 mm

## Guy rope

### Guy rope crosswise - W9

Material	Steel
Material colour	Black
Coating	Polyamide

## Bracket

- Ceiling bracket 76 round/rectangular
- Ceiling bracket SL85 round
- Ceiling bracket 130 round
- Wall bracket 130 round

+ see "Bracket", Page 449

## Bracket

- Bracket H48
- Bracket H49
- Bracket H52
- Bracket H81
- Bracket H82
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102
- Bracket SL01
- Bracket SL02
- Bracket SL03
- Bracket SL04
- Bracket SL05
- Bracket SL06
- Bracket SL09
- Bracket SL10
- Bracket SL11
- Bracket SL12
- Bracket SL13

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 418

## Guide variants

- Back-pull

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - D3/W9/W19

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Height	64 mm

## Pulling element

### Toothed belt

Material, notes	With steel insert
-----------------	-------------------

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-WM (WMS)
- W-WM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living connect package
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Wind protection for valance roller blind
- Fabric lettering, painted

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325



## Construction limit values

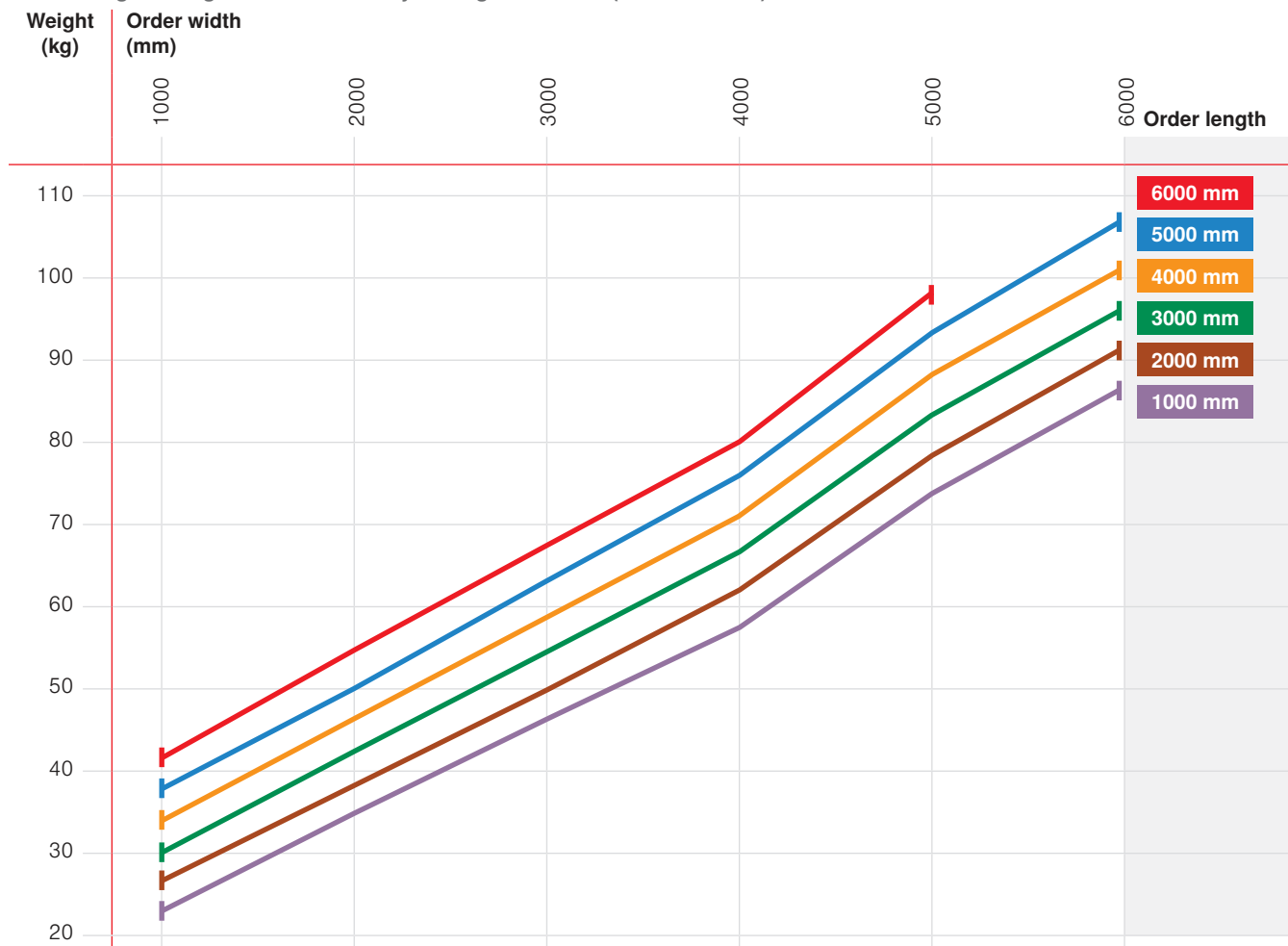
Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order length	Maximum order length	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Fabric qualities</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl	770 mm	6000 mm	750 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Soltis 92	770 mm	3500 mm	750 mm	4500 mm	16 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
<b>Fabric qualities + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + Valance roller blind	770 mm	5000 mm	750 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model	770 mm	6000 mm	750 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	1 °	40 °
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model	770 mm	5000 mm	750 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	41 °	90 °
Soltis 92 + Valance roller blind	770 mm	3500 mm	750 mm	4500 mm	16 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Soltis 92 + VUNO model	770 mm	3500 mm	750 mm	4500 mm	16 m <sup>2</sup>	1 °	90 °

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling or motor bearing situation possible!
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- Two guide rails can be mounted on one bracket.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 12000 mm!

**Guy rope:** For order lengths of 3001 mm and greater, a guy rope is used.

### Determining the weight of a conservatory awning Climara W9 (motorised unit)



## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 15 - 17 kg/lfm

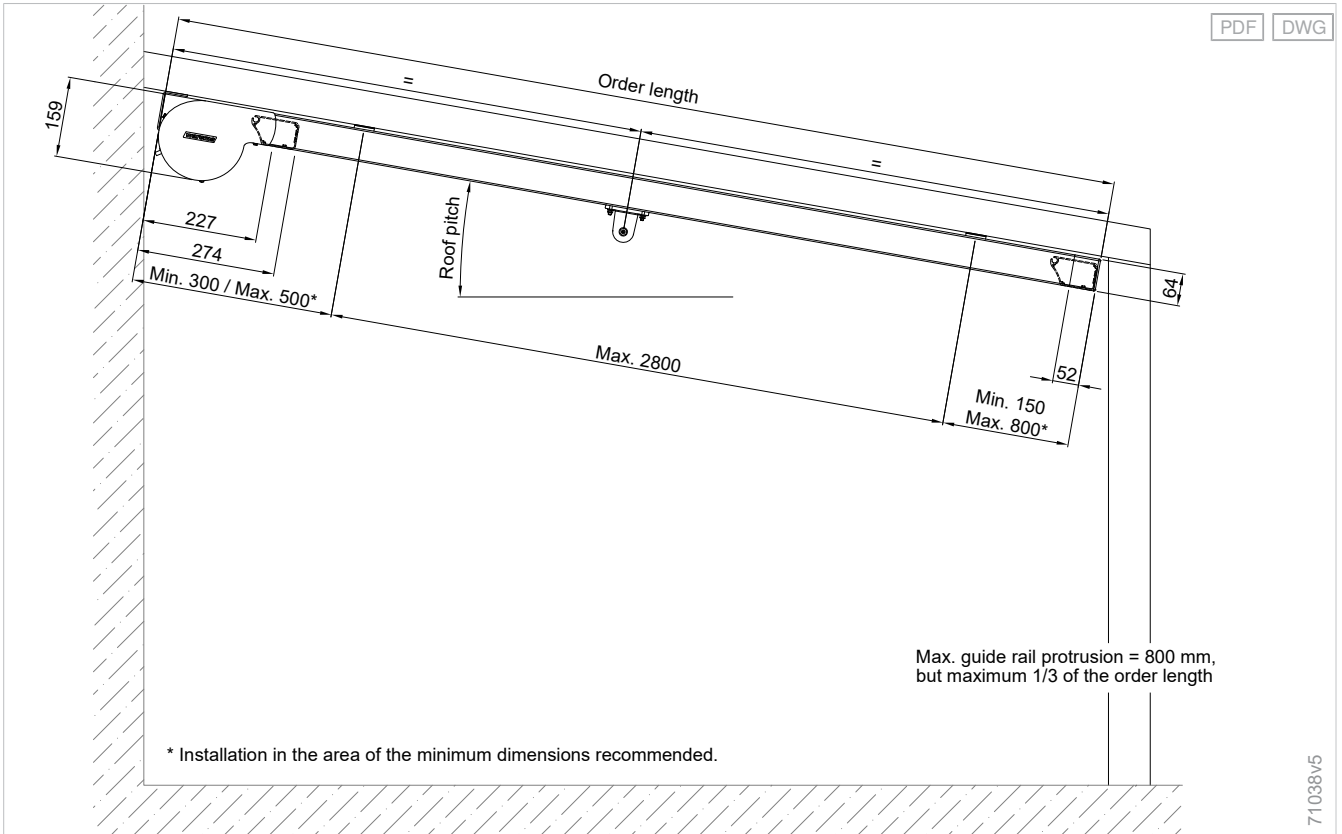
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis.

### Measuring instructions - W9



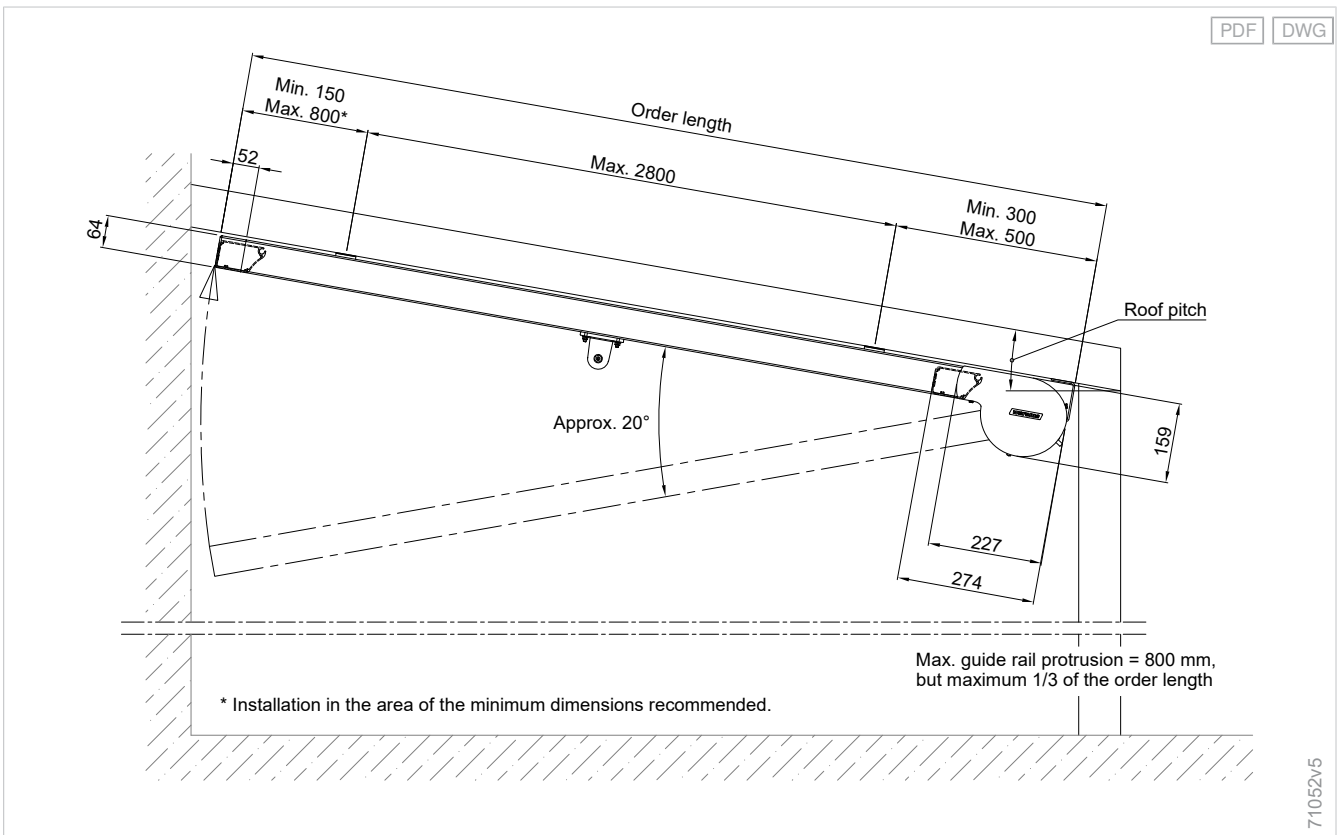
Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

### Direction of movement "from bottom to top" - W9



Climara

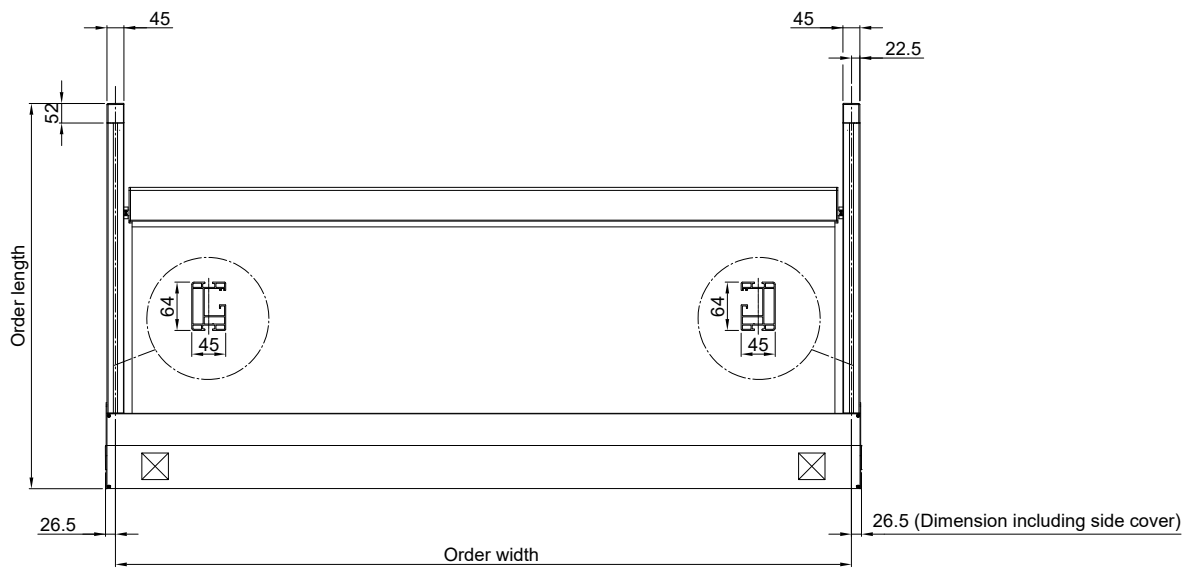
Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Individual unit - W9/W19

PDF DWG

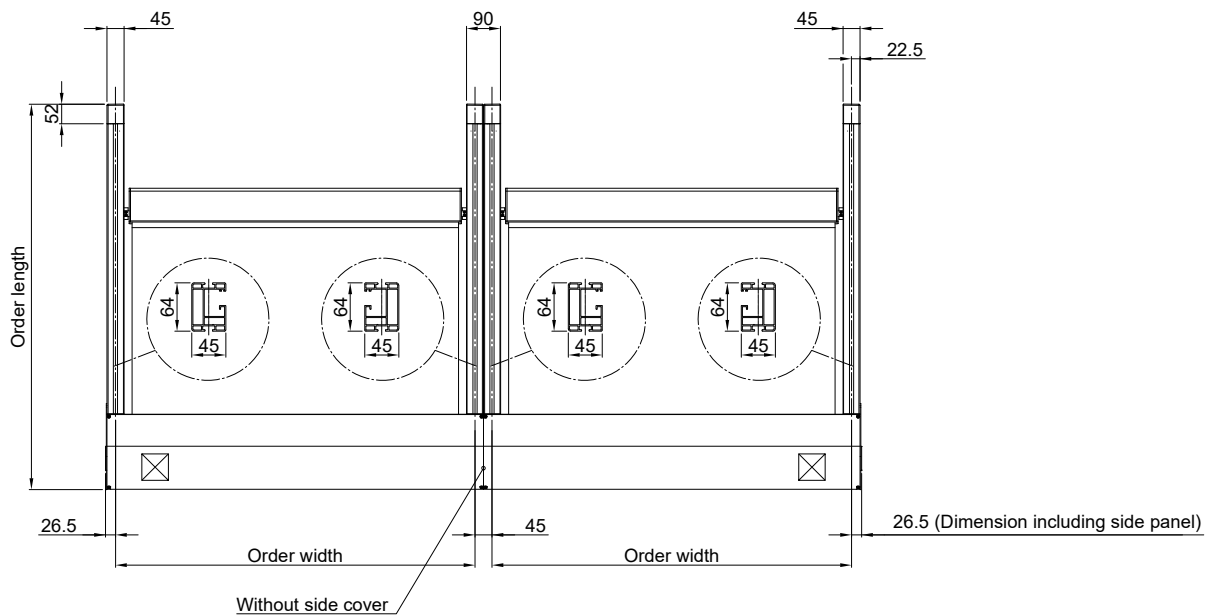


☒ Possible drive position

71040v3

Series-mounted unit - W9

PDF DWG



☒ Possible drive position

71041v4

## Quantity determination

### Number of brackets

Configuration variants	Order width	Number
Components		
Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket	0 - 4000 mm	2
Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket	4001 - 6000 mm	3

### Number of guide rail brackets

Configuration variants	Order length	Number
Components		
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation / Guide rail bracket - direct installation	0 - 3000 mm	2
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation / Guide rail bracket - direct installation	3001 - 6000 mm	3

### Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation:

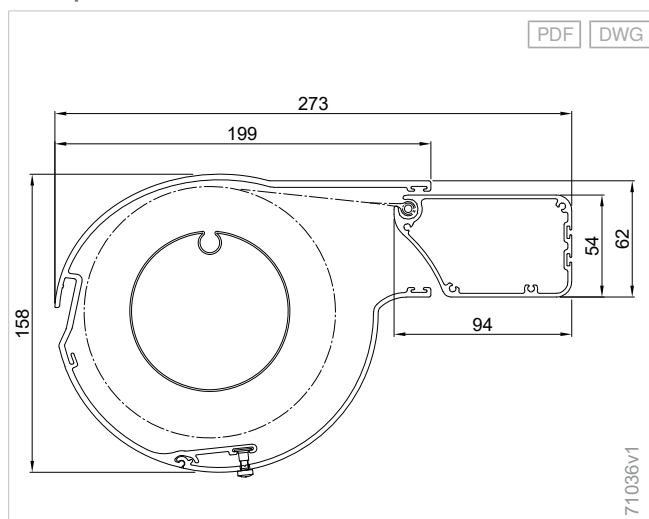
- H49
- H81
- H82
- H101
- H102
- SL06
- SL09
- SL10

### Guide rail bracket - direct installation:

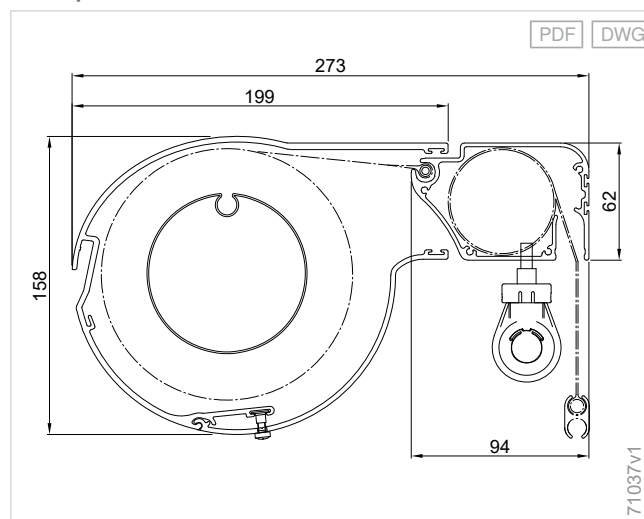
- H48
- H52
- SL01-05
- SL11 - SL13

## Details

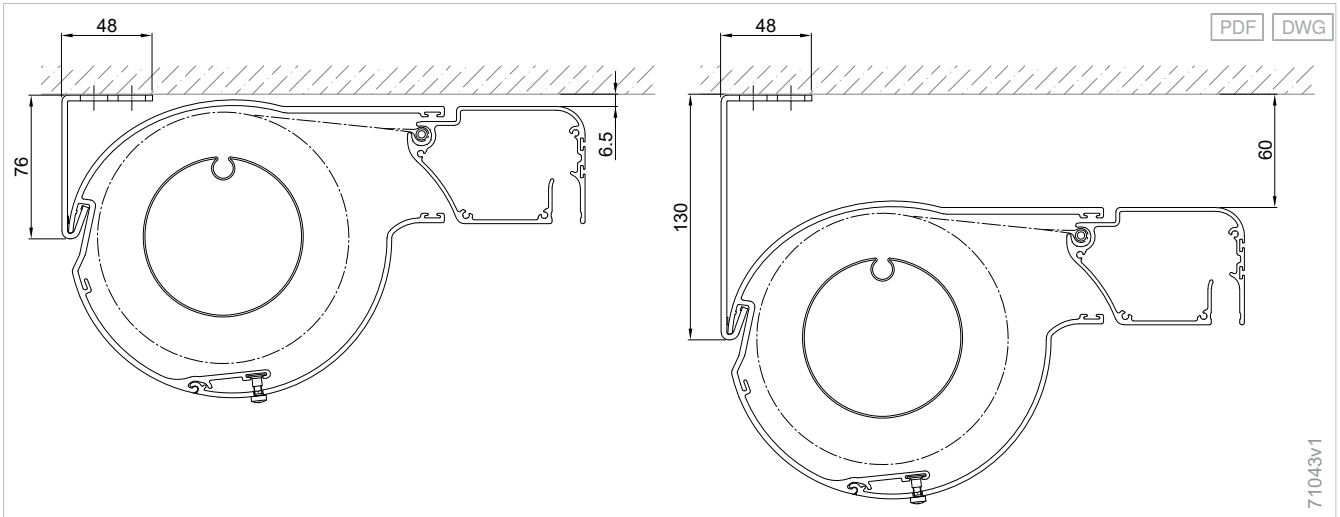
Cover panel with front rail - W9



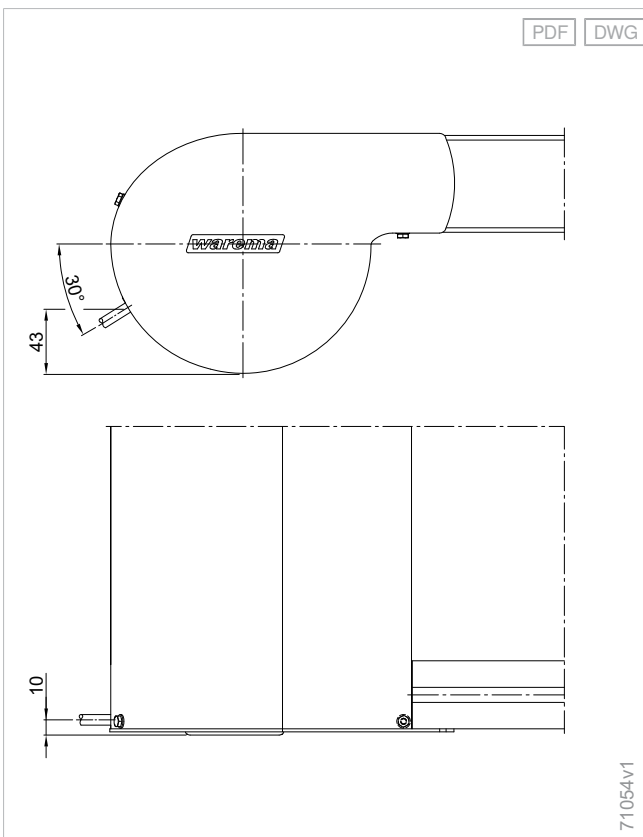
Cover panel with front rail for valance roller blind - W9



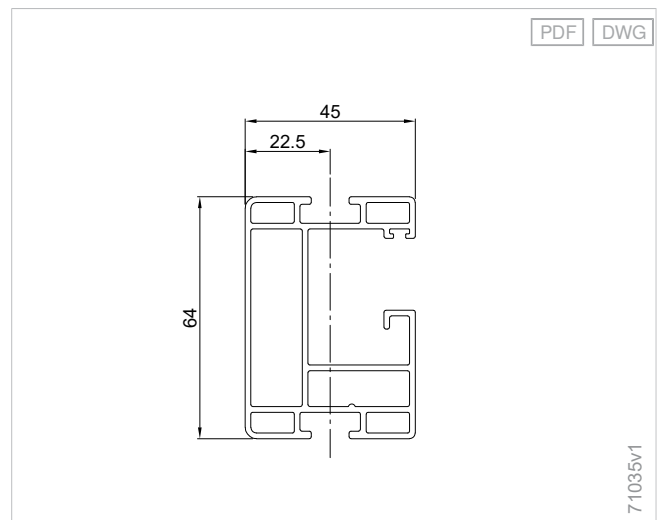
Overview of cover panel fixing - W9



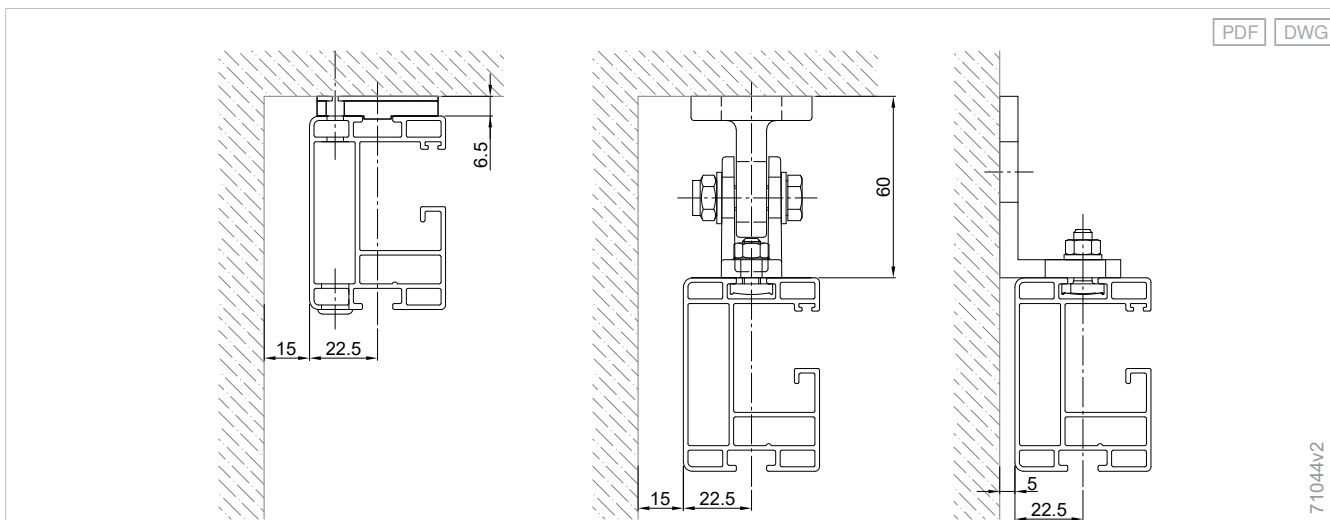
Cable exit - W9/W19



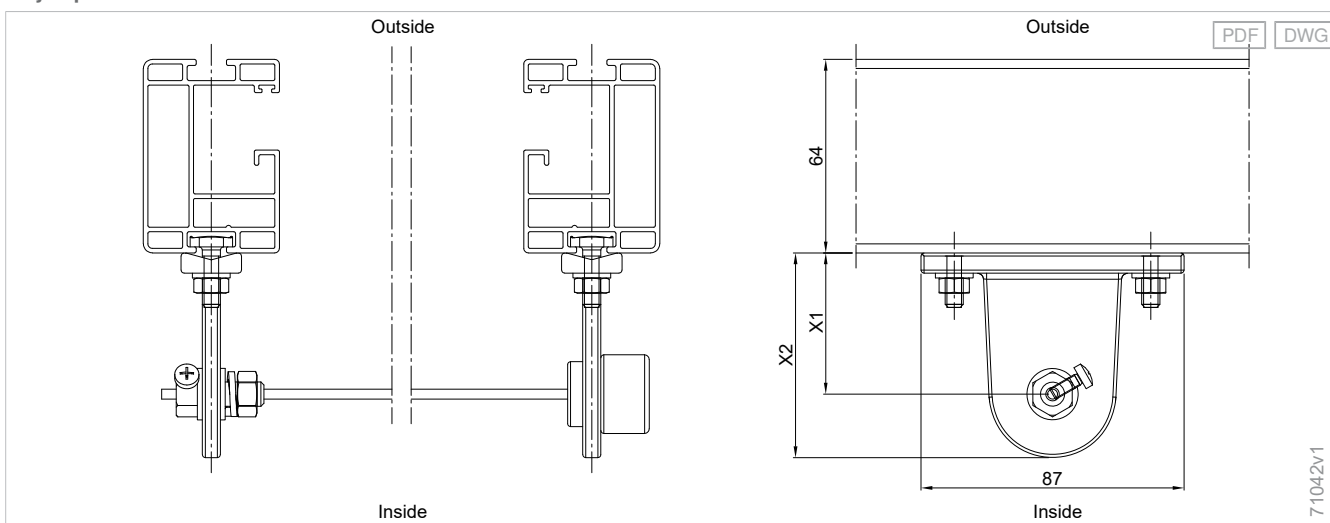
Guide rail - D3/W9/W19



## Overview of guide rail fixation - W9



## Guy rope crosswise - W9



Dimensions without valance roller blind:

- X1: 47 mm
- X2: 68 mm

Dimensions with valance roller blind:

- X1: 66 mm
- X2: 87 mm

## Additional product information

### VUNO model

Conservatory awnings Climara can be used with a "from bottom to top" direction of movement.

#### Notes:

- Each awning section requires two guide rails.
- Because the cover panel opens in the extension direction, there is an increased risk of the fabric becoming soiled.
- State clearly on the order form: Direction of movement "from bottom to top".
- State the roof pitch angle when ordering.

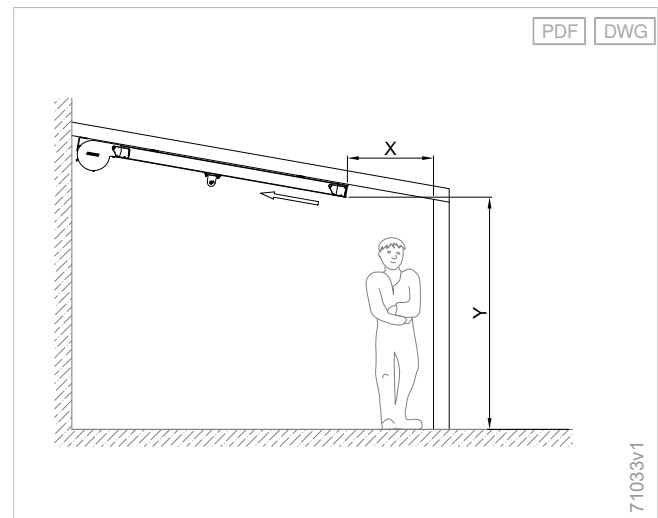
## Safety distances for automatic operation - under-glass conservatory awnings Climara

### Warning!

If the **minimum distance Y** of **2.5 m** from the front rail to the pedestrian area is not maintained, for **automatic, unsupervised operation** of the conservatory awning, special protective measures (mechanical shielding, etc.) must be implemented to prevent risk of crushing and injury. When retracting and extending the awning, do not reach into any movable parts (e.g. between front rail and guide rail or between front rail and housing) or pull on the awning!

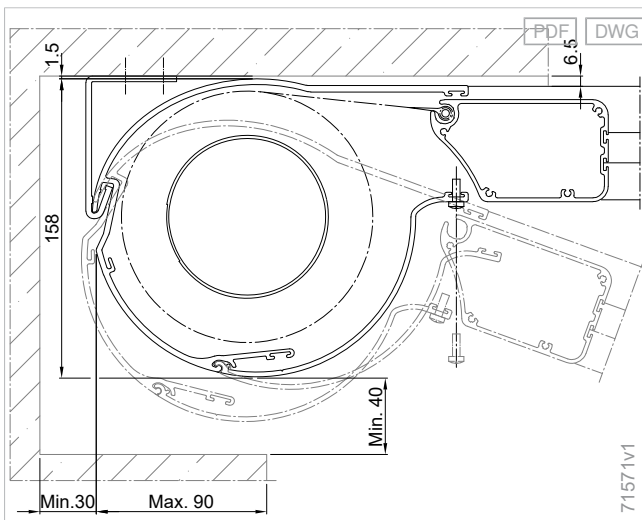
The **minimum distance X** between the extending front rail and any fixed or movable object must be at least **400 mm** if there is an accessible area in between.

Clearance/minimum distances (diagram) for internal units



## Mounting examples

Cover panel installation space - W9









## Under-glass conservatory awnings Climara

### Conservatory awning Climara W10

#### Seamless

No light gap with secudrive® technology: The fabric is attached to a spring steel strip and runs in a rail. This ensures there are no light gaps on the sides.

#### Slender

Light and airy appearance: Thanks to the flat and compact design, the awning has a particularly slender appearance.

#### Expanded

Optimal light with privacy: Optional lowerable valance roller blind protects you against low sun and improves your visual privacy.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6500 mm
Maximum order length	6000 mm
Maximum order area	30 m <sup>2</sup>

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036169](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/878105.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Fastener Assistant](#)

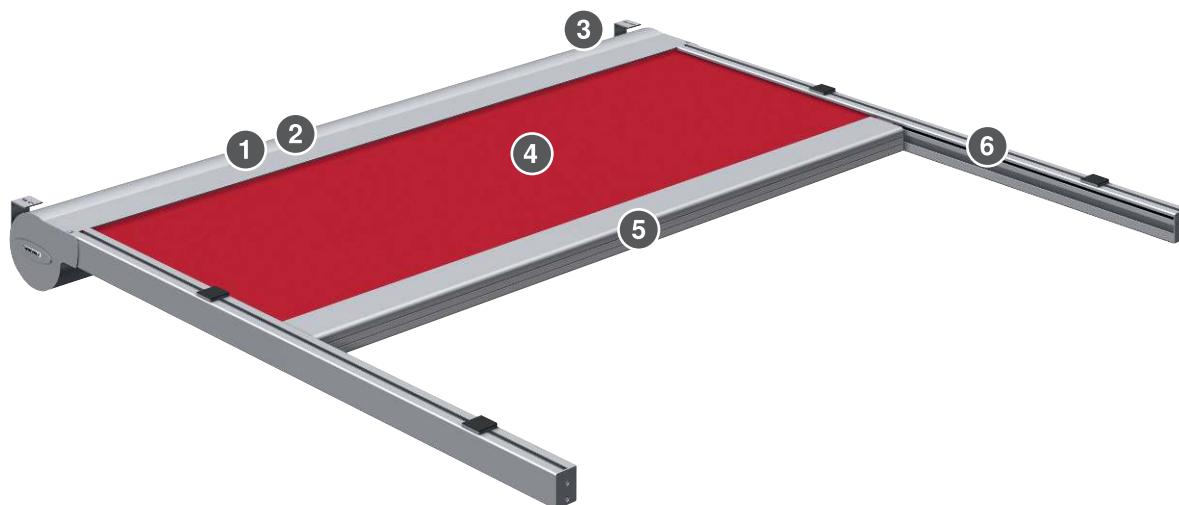
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

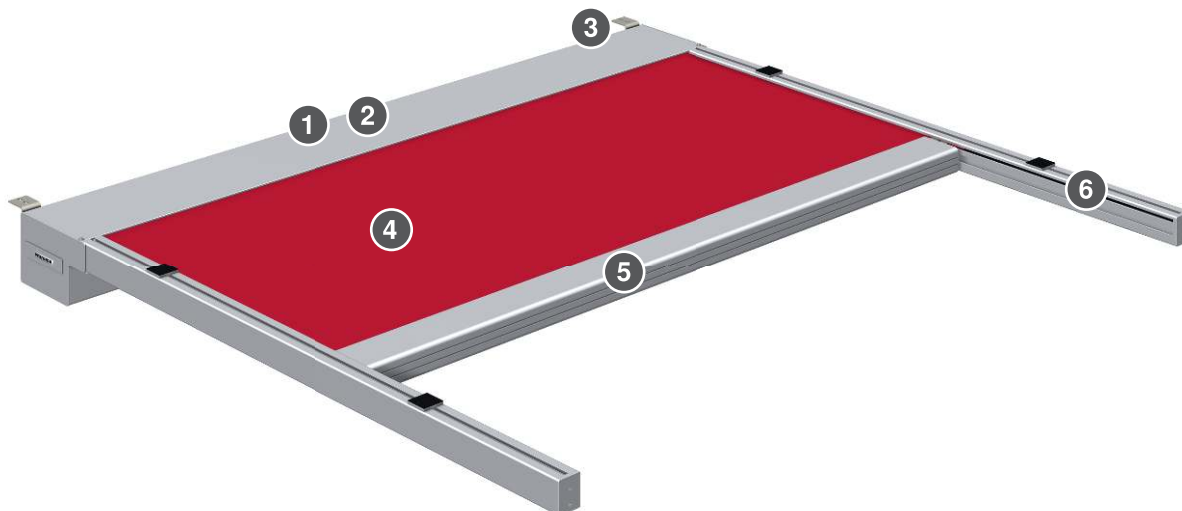
# Components

Conservatory awning Climara W10 with round cover panel



- |   |             |   |            |
|---|-------------|---|------------|
| 1 | Cover panel | 4 | Fabric     |
| 2 | Shaft       | 5 | Front rail |
| 3 | Bracket     | 6 | Guide rail |

Conservatory awning Climara W10 with rectangular cover panel



- |   |             |   |            |
|---|-------------|---|------------|
| 1 | Cover panel | 4 | Fabric     |
| 2 | Shaft       | 5 | Front rail |
| 3 | Bracket     | 6 | Guide rail |

## Cover panel

### Round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	199 mm
Height	158 mm

#### + Side cover

### Side cover for round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	227 mm
Height	159 mm

## Cover panel, optional

### Cover panel rectangular - P20/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	194 mm
Height	144 mm

#### + Side cover

### Side cover, cover panel, rectangular - P20/W10/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	209 mm
Height	146 mm

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	86.2 mm

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	70 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20/P20/H1

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	94 mm
Height	54 mm

## Front rail, optional

### Front rail - W9/W10 with valance roller blind

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	94 mm
Height	62 mm

## Bracket

- Ceiling bracket 42 rectangular
- Ceiling bracket 82 rectangular
- Wall bracket 82 rectangular
- Ceiling bracket 76 round/rectangular
- Ceiling bracket SL85 round
- Ceiling bracket 130 round
- Wall bracket 130 round

+ see "Bracket", Page 449

## Bracket

- Bracket H48
- Bracket H49
- Bracket H52
- Bracket H53
- Bracket H81
- Bracket H82
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102
- Bracket SL01
- Bracket SL02
- Bracket SL03
- Bracket SL04
- Bracket SL05
- Bracket SL06
- Bracket SL09
- Bracket SL10
- Bracket SL11
- Bracket SL12
- Bracket SL13

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 418

## Guide variants

- secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Height	60 mm

## Guide rail, optional

### Guide rail - W10/P20 with integrated LED strips

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Height	61 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-WM (WMS)
- WMS-PM (WMS)
- W-WM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Screen fabric
- Soltis B92
- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order length	Maximum order length	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Fabric qualities</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	28 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Soltis 92 / Screen fabric	650 mm	3500 mm	950 mm	4000 mm	14 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Soltis B92	900 mm	2500 mm	1200 mm	4000 mm	10 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	0 °
<b>Fabric qualities + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue + Valance roller blind	650 mm	5000 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue + VUNO model	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	24 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl + Valance roller blind	650 mm	5000 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	28 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	24 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Soltis 92 / Screen fabric + Valance roller blind	650 mm	3500 mm	950 mm	4000 mm	14 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Soltis 92 / Screen fabric + VUNO model	650 mm	3500 mm	950 mm	4000 mm	14 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °

### Minimum order width:

- From an order length of 5001 mm, a minimum order width of 812 mm is required.
- For versions with SDO switch, a minimum order width of 900 mm is required.

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living connect package
- Integrated lighting
- LED strip light rail
- Valance roller blind with motor and storage battery and WMS control
- Valance roller blind with crank
- Wind protection for valance roller blind
- Fabric lettering, painted

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Notes

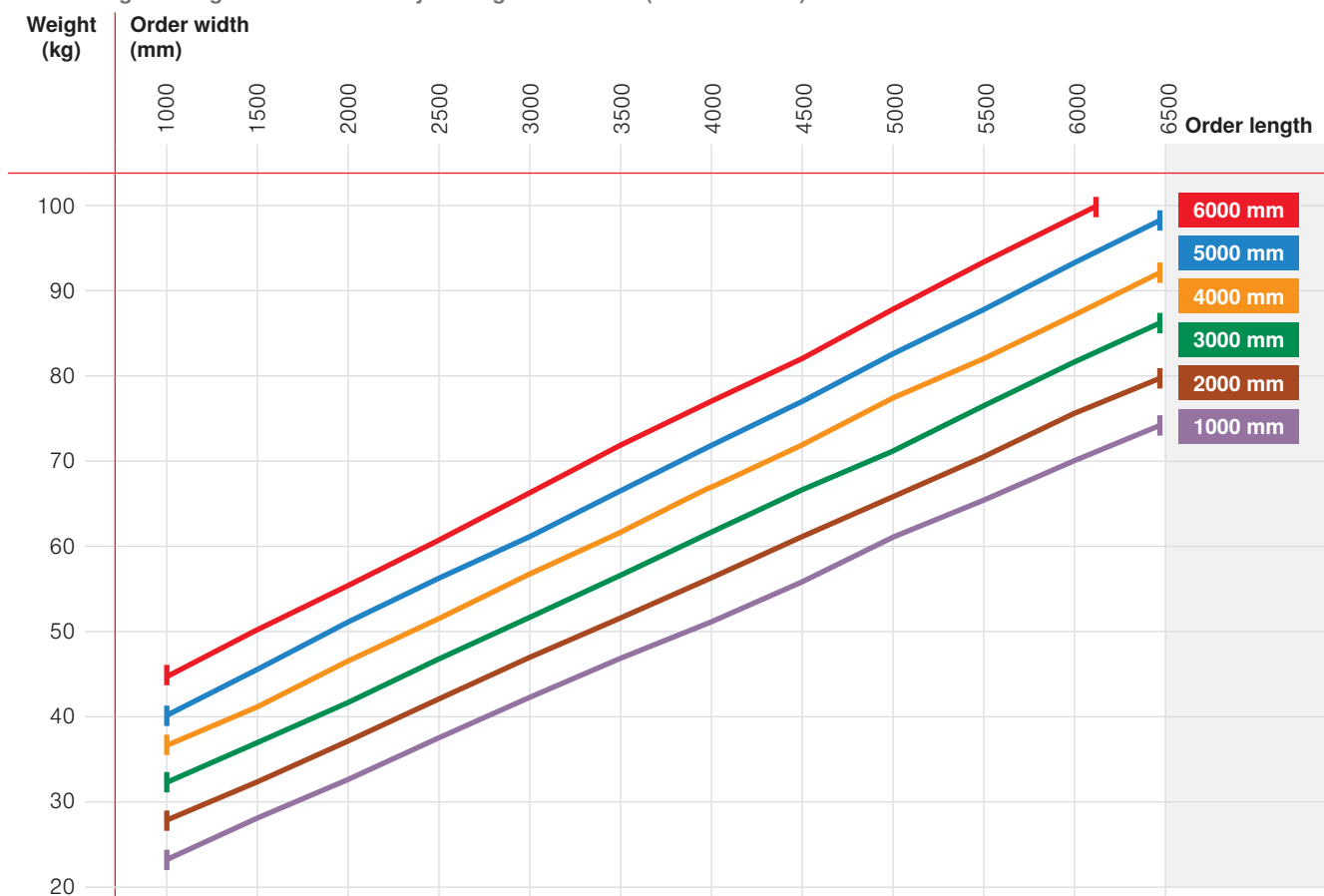
### Twilight Pearl processing:

In awnings with secudrive® guide, the fabric is fastened to the spring steel strip with a fabric strip (light grey) visible at the side.

- Two guide rails can be mounted on one bracket.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 13000 mm!

**VUNO:** Valance roller blinds are not possible for a "from bottom to top" direction of movement.

#### Determining the weight of a conservatory awning Climara W10 (motorised unit)



## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 13,5 - 16 kg/lfm

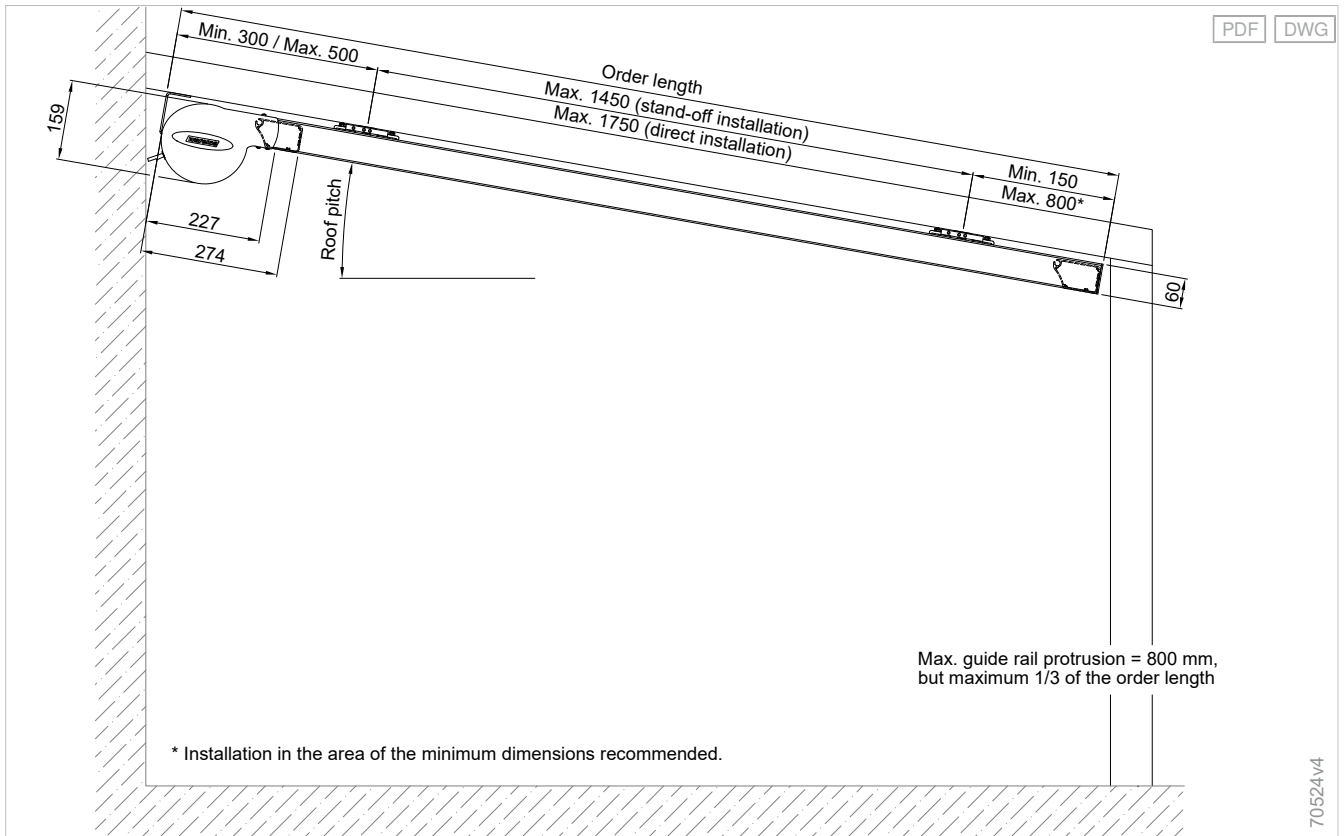
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

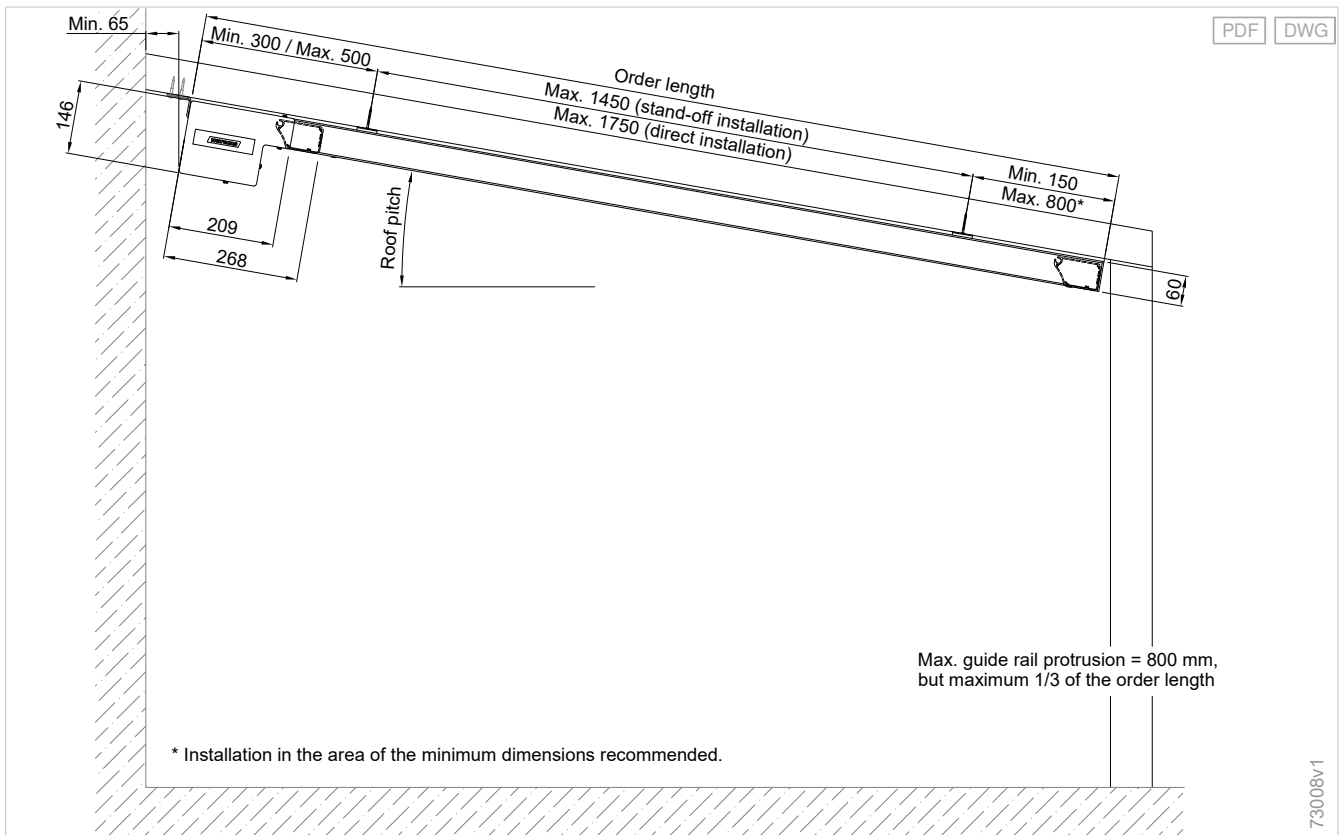
The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis.

### Measuring instructions - W10 round cover panel



### Measuring instructions - W10 rectangular cover panel



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

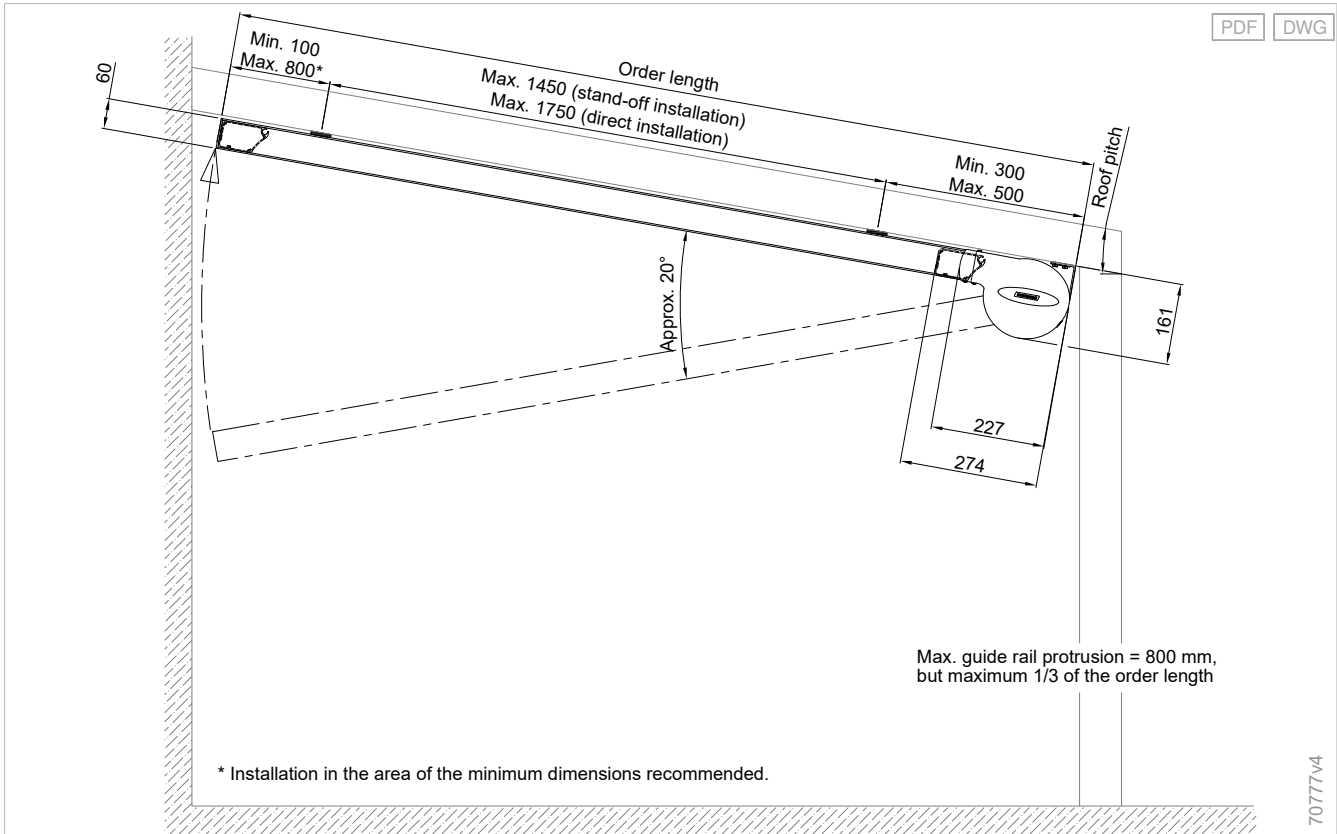
Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

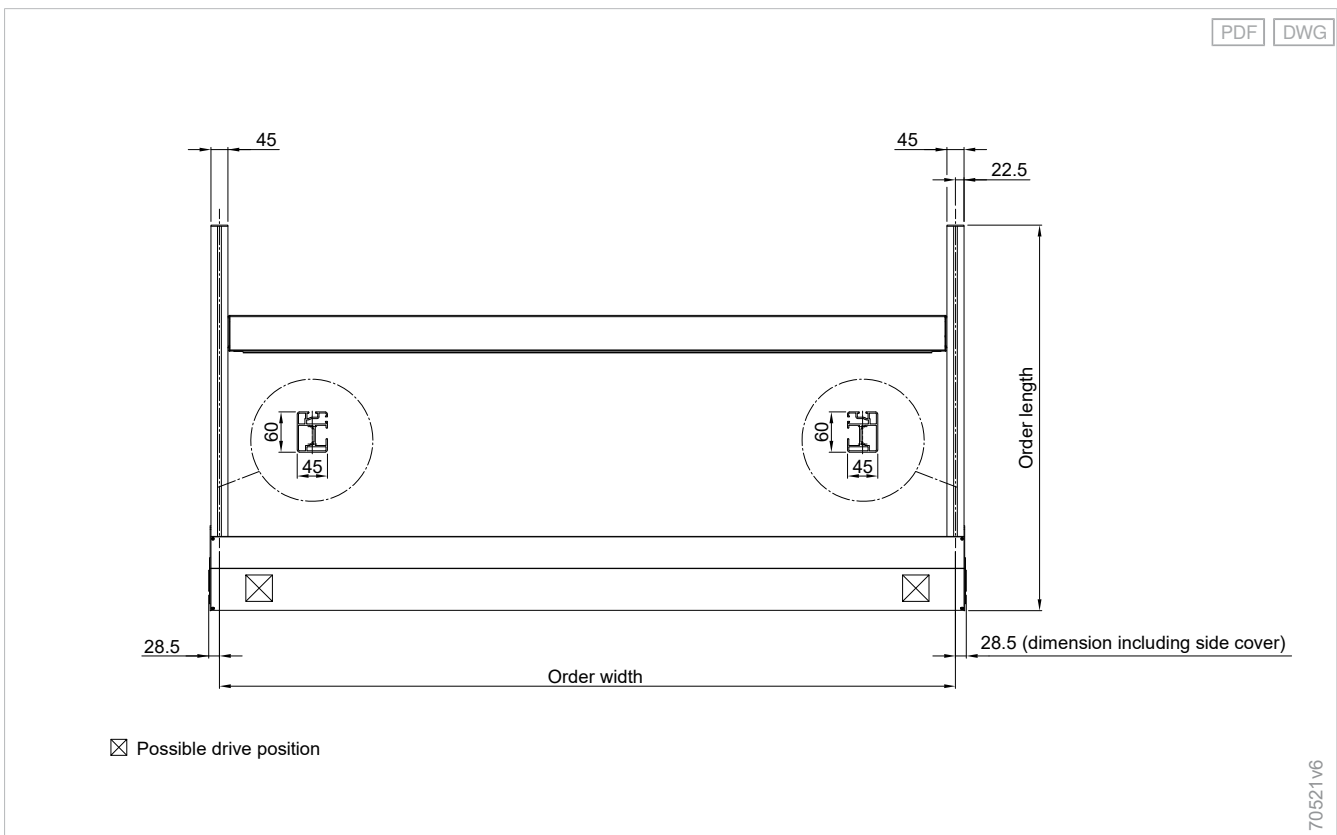
Standards

Direction of movement "from bottom to top" - W10



The VUNO version is also possible for W10 with rectangular cover panel.

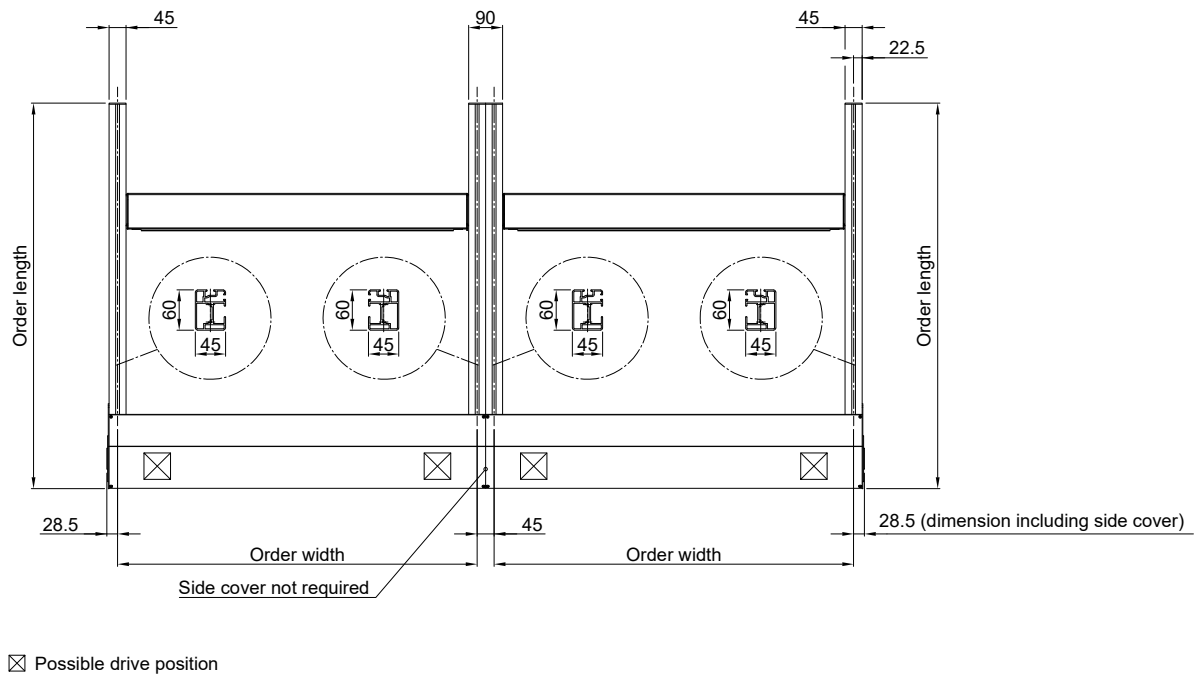
Individual unit - W10





Series-mounted unit - W10

PDF DWG



70522v6

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

## Quantity determination

### Number of brackets

Configuration variants	Order width	Number
Components		
Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket	0 - 4000 mm	2
Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket	4001 - 6500 mm	3

### Number of guide rail brackets

Configuration variants	Order length	Number
Components		
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	0 - 2000 mm	2
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	2001 - 3500 mm	3
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	3501 - 5000 mm	4
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	5001 - 6000 mm	5
Guide rail bracket - direct installation	0 - 2400 mm	2
Guide rail bracket - direct installation	2401 - 4000 mm	3
Guide rail bracket - direct installation	4001 - 6000 mm	4

#### Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation:

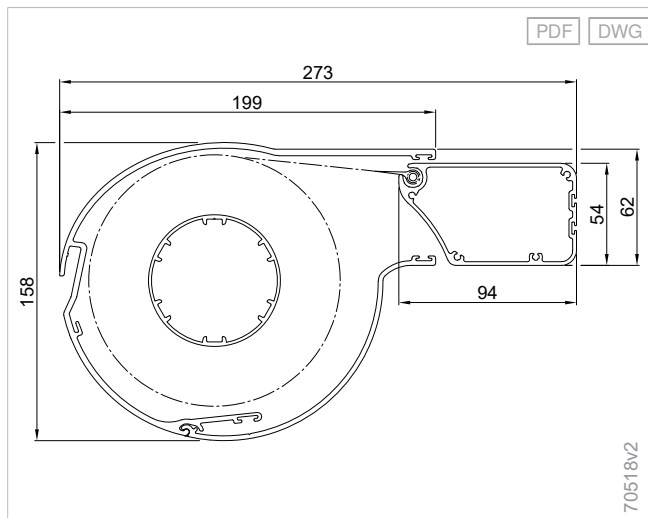
- H49
- H81
- H82
- H101
- H102
- SL06
- SL09
- SL10

#### Guide rail bracket - direct installation:

- H48
- H52
- H53
- SL01 - SL05
- SL11 - SL13

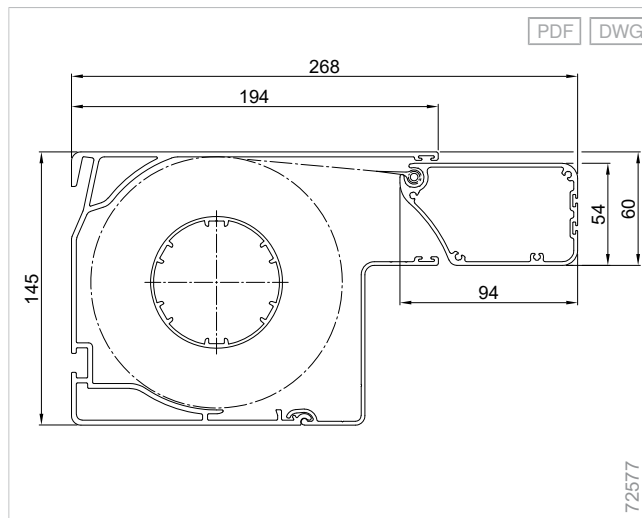
## Details

Cover panel with front rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



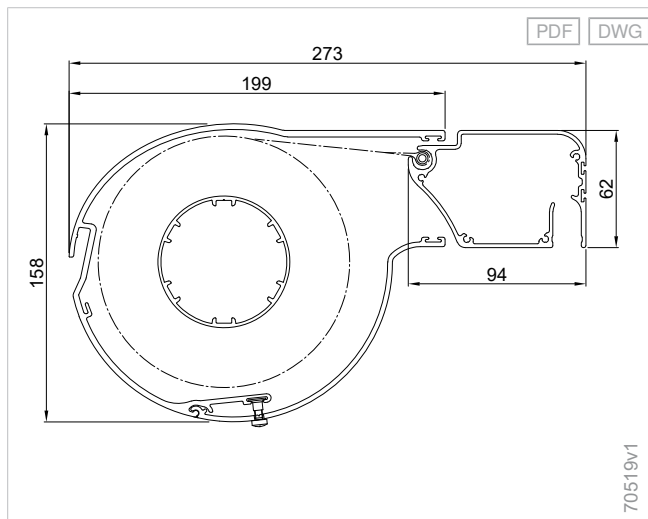
70518v2

Rectangular cover panel and front rail



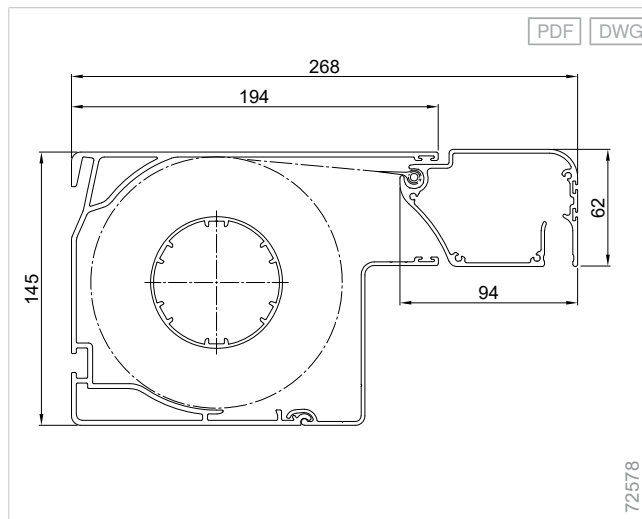
72577

Cover panel with front rail for valance roller blind - W10 round cover panel



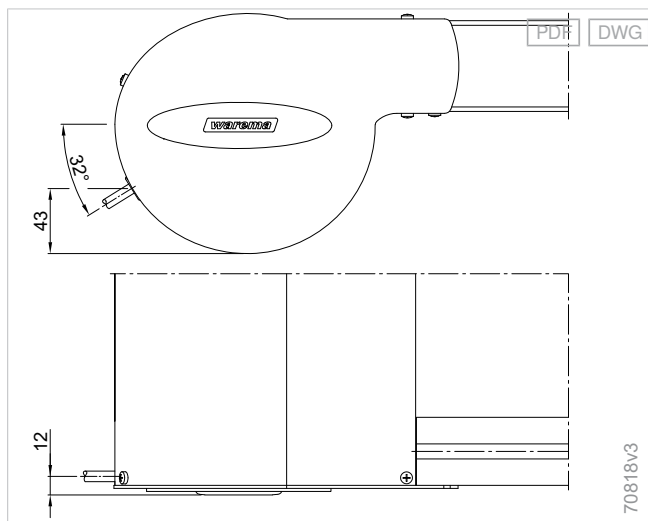
70519v1

Cover panel with front rail for valance roller blind - W10 rectangular cover panel



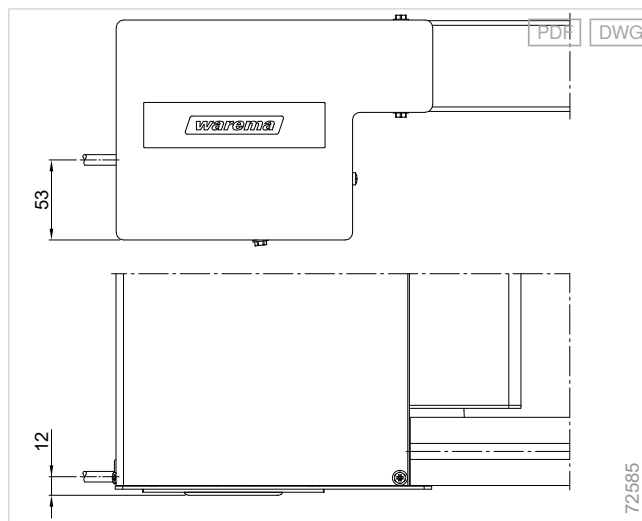
72578

Cable exit - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20 round cover panel



70818v3

Cable exit - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20 rectangular cover panel



72585

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

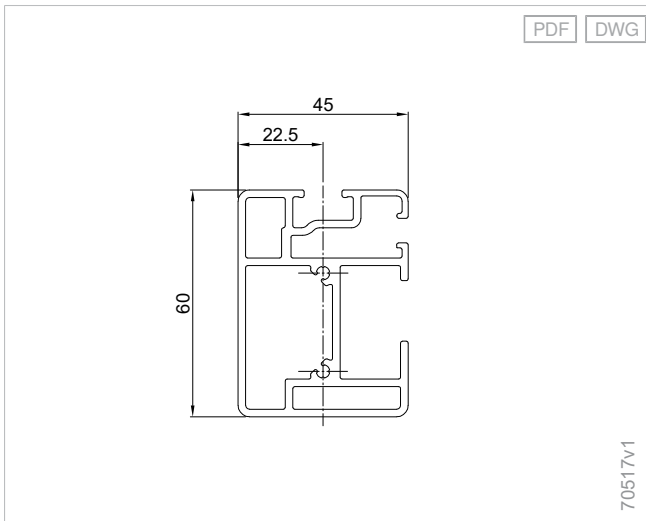
Supplementary accessories

Components

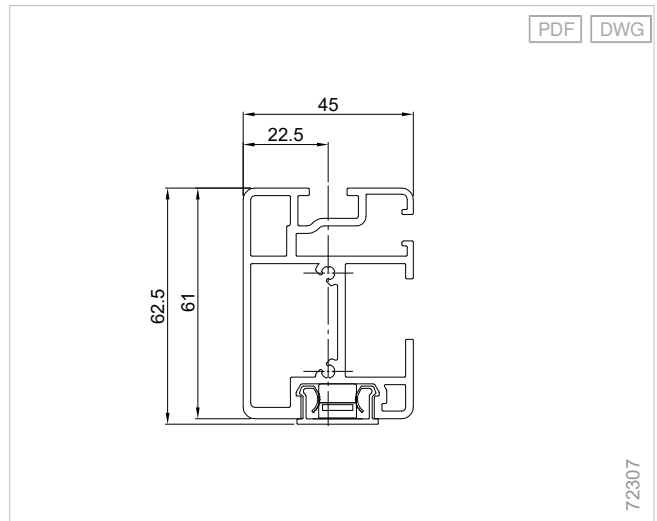
Drive variants

Standards

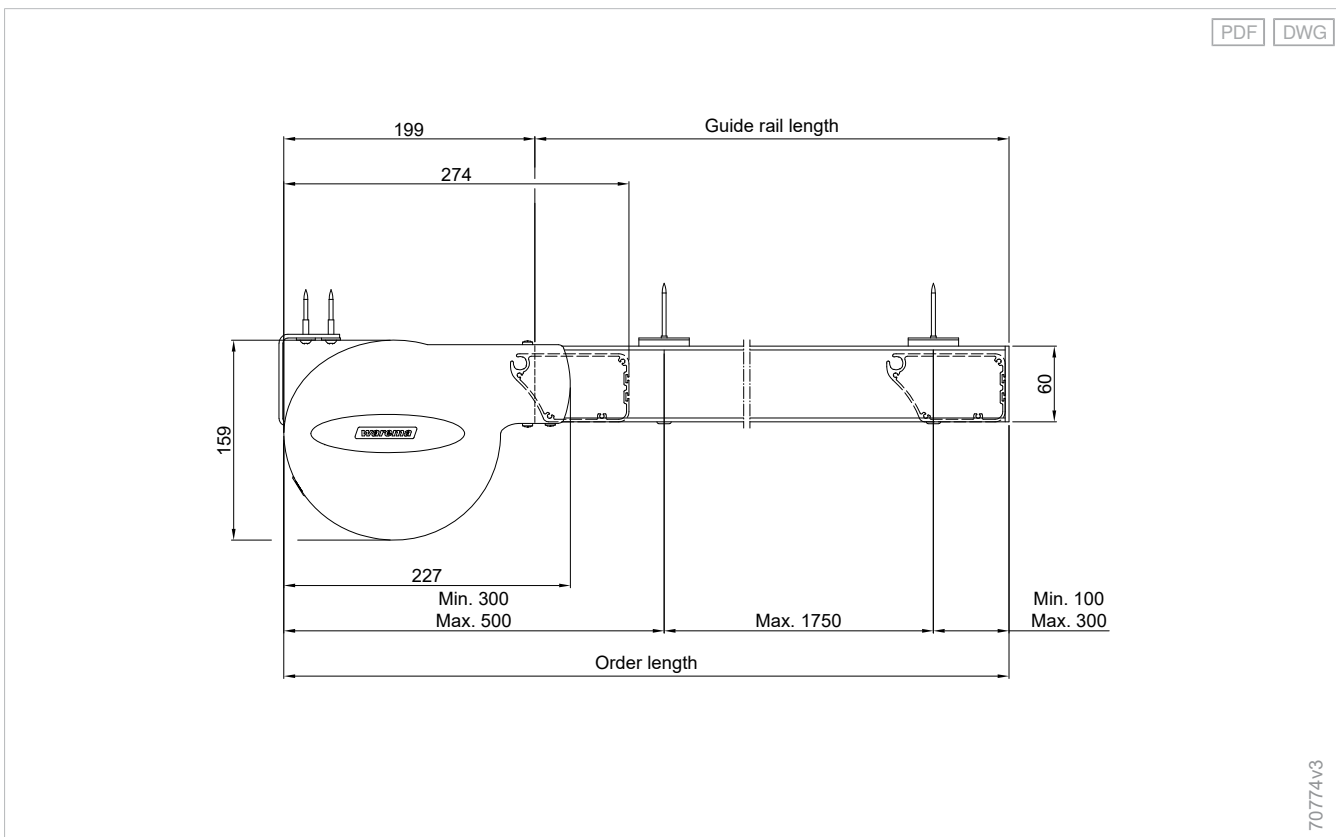
Guide rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



Guide rail with integrated LED lighting - W10

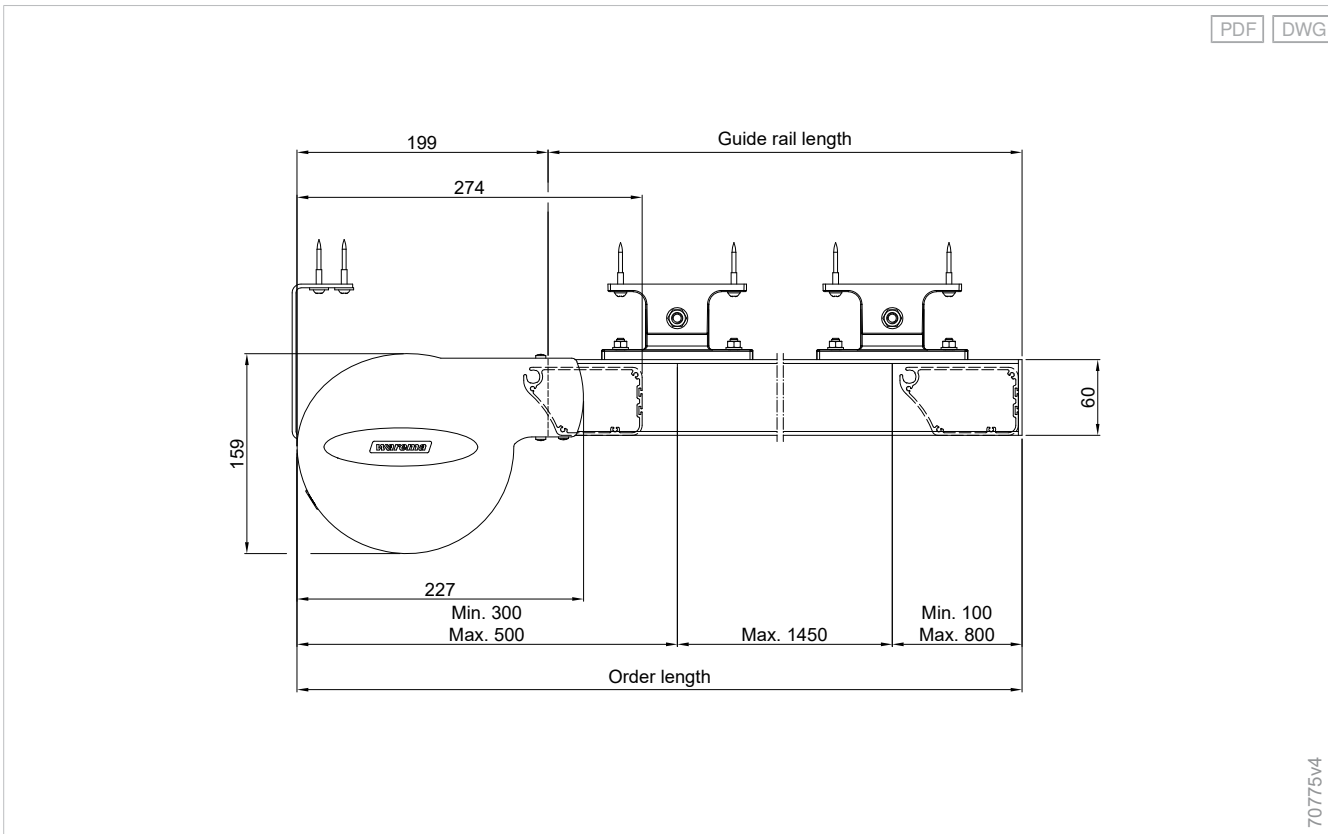


Installation, distance 6.5 mm - W10

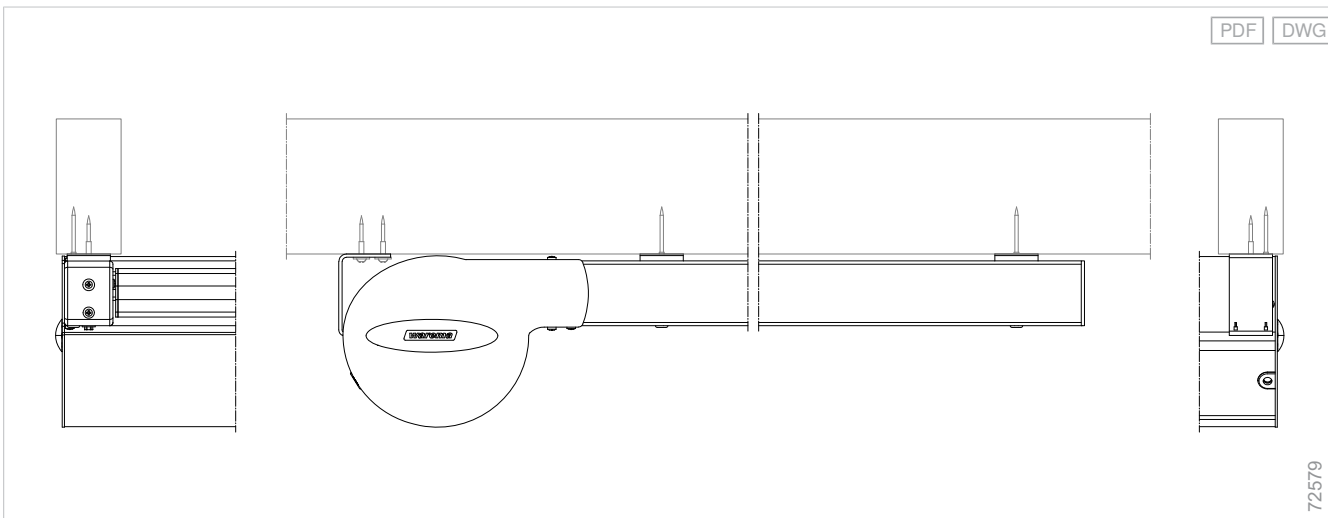


The dimension from the leading edge of the guide rail to the axis of the bracket is always 208 mm when using the H48 bracket.

Installation, distance 60 mm - W10



Installation, distance 6.5 mm, bracket no. 48 with ceiling bracket - W10



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

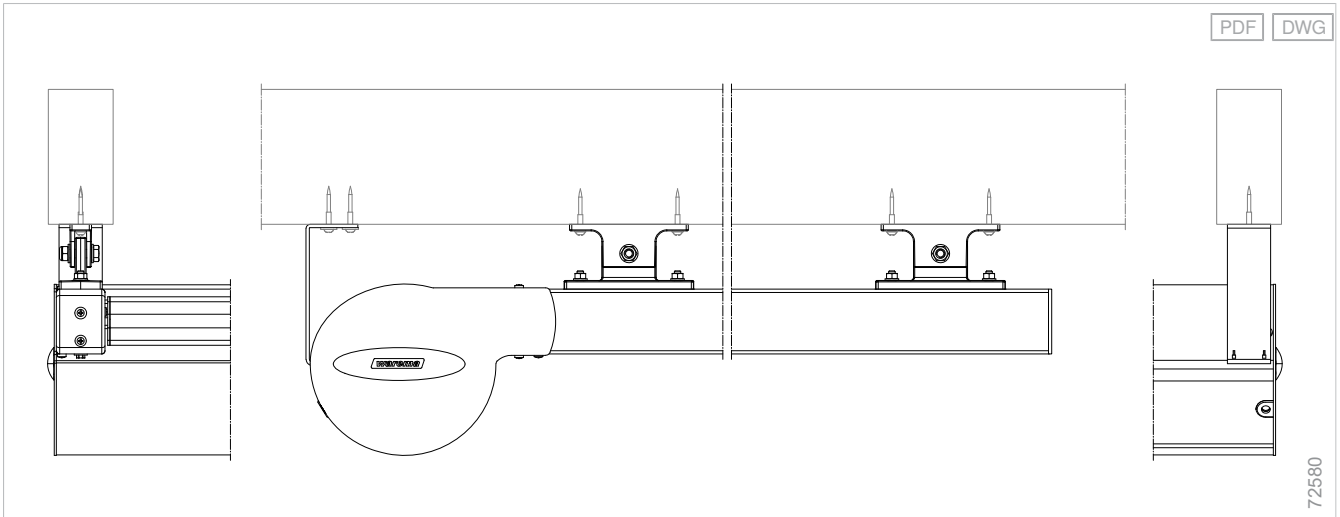
Supplementary accessories

Components

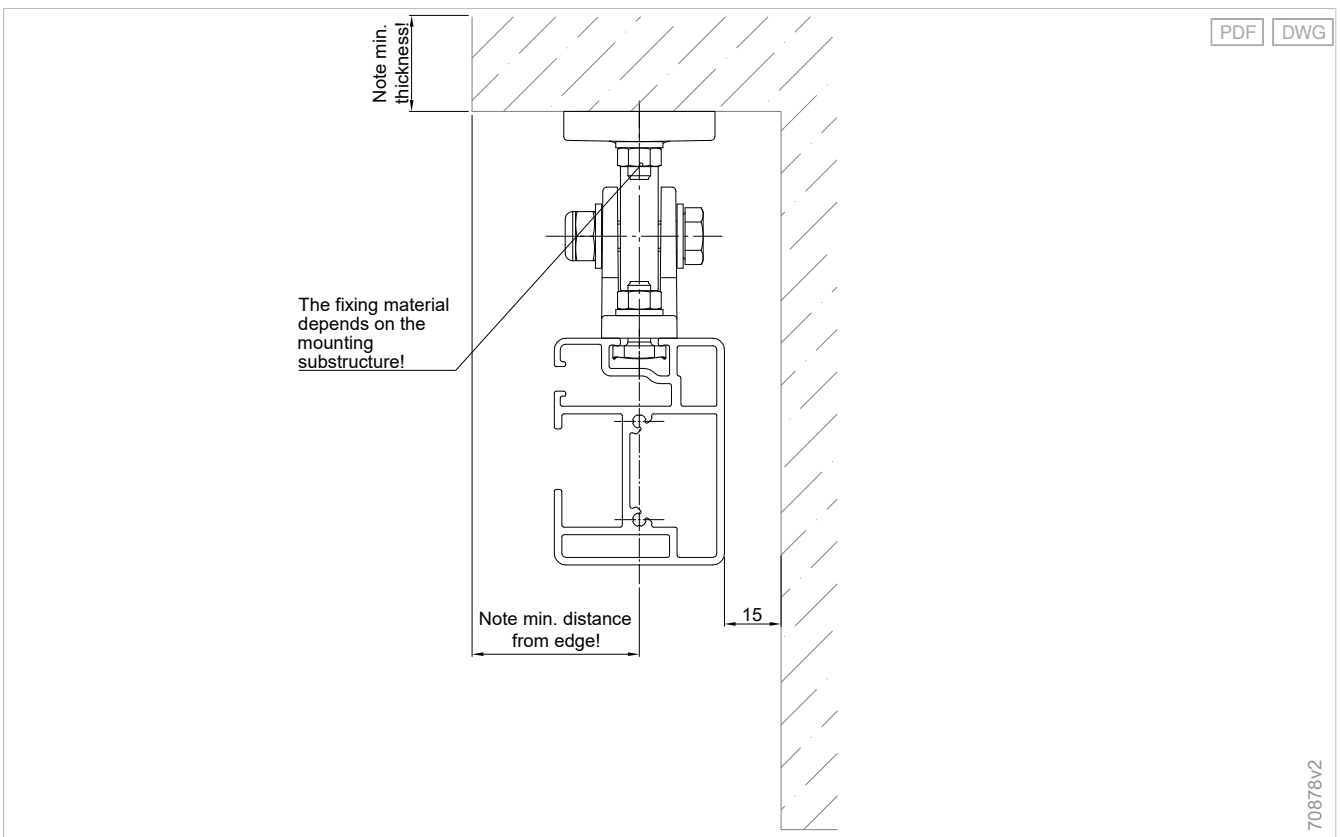
Drive variants

Standards

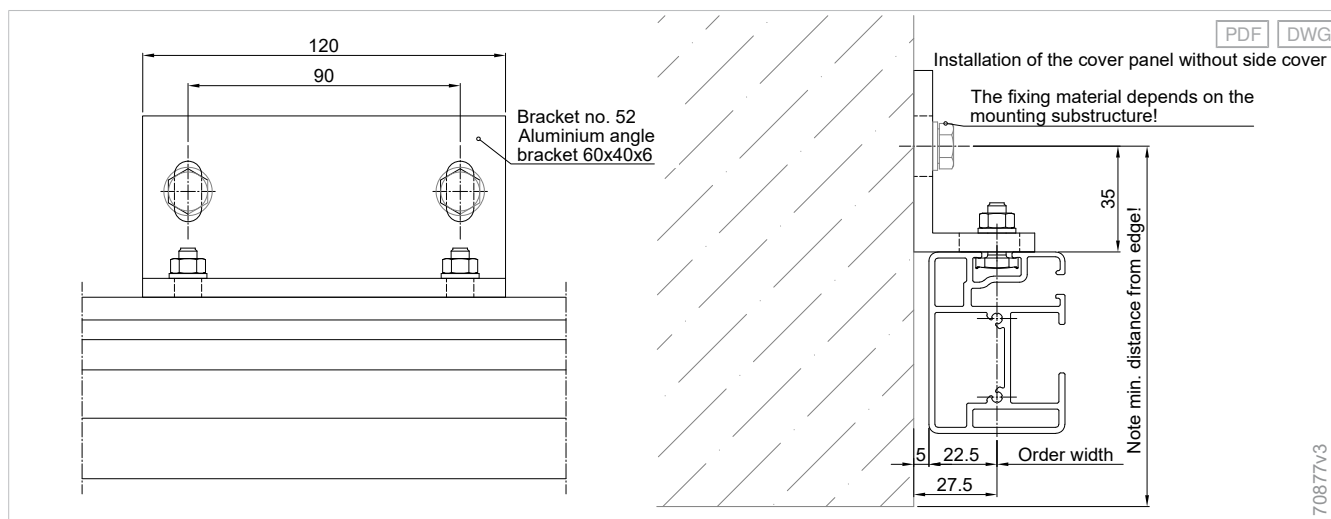
Installation, distance 60 mm, bracket no. 101 with ceiling bracket - W10



Ceiling installation - W10



## Wall installation - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



## Additional product information

### VUNO model

Conservatory awnings Climara can be used with a "from bottom to top" direction of movement.

#### Notes:

- Each awning section requires two guide rails.
- Because the cover panel opens in the extension direction, there is an increased risk of the fabric becoming soiled.
- State clearly on the order form: Direction of movement "from bottom to top".
- State the roof pitch angle when ordering.

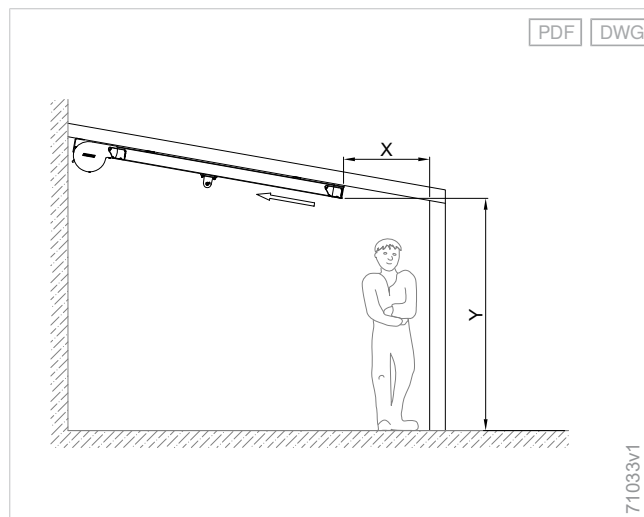
## Safety distances for automatic operation - under-glass conservatory awnings Climara

### Warning!

If the **minimum distance Y** of **2.5 m** from the front rail to the pedestrian area is not maintained, for **automatic, unsupervised operation** of the conservatory awning, special protective measures (mechanical shielding, etc.) must be implemented to prevent risk of crushing and injury. When retracting and extending the awning, do not reach into any movable parts (e.g. between front rail and guide rail or between front rail and housing) or pull on the awning!

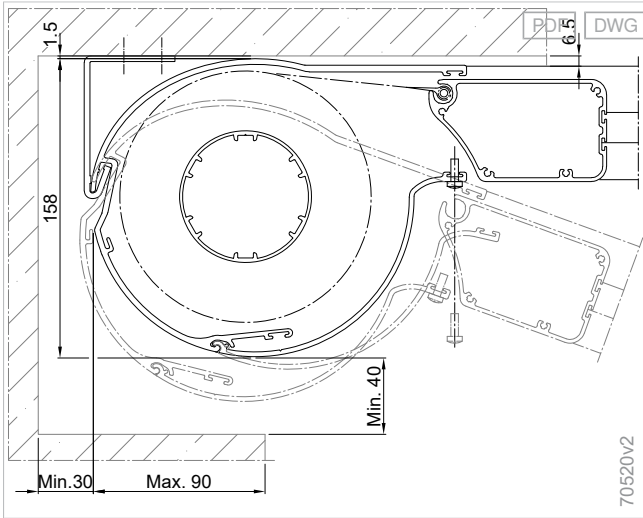
The **minimum distance X** between the extending front rail and any fixed or movable object must be at least **400 mm** if there is an accessible area in between.

### Clearance/minimum distances (diagram) for internal units

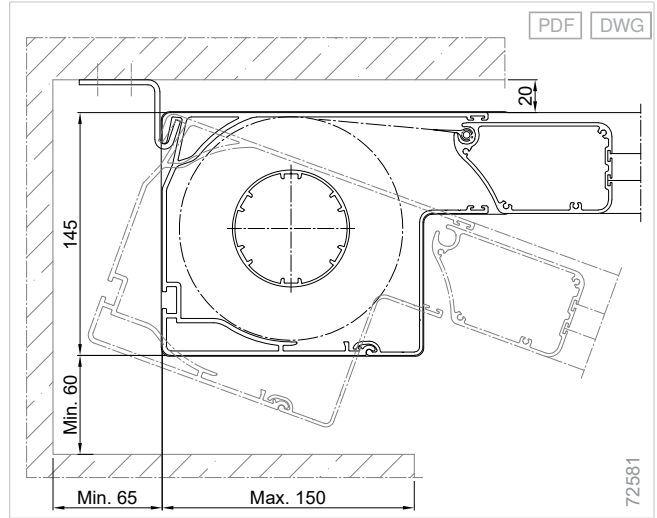


## Mounting examples

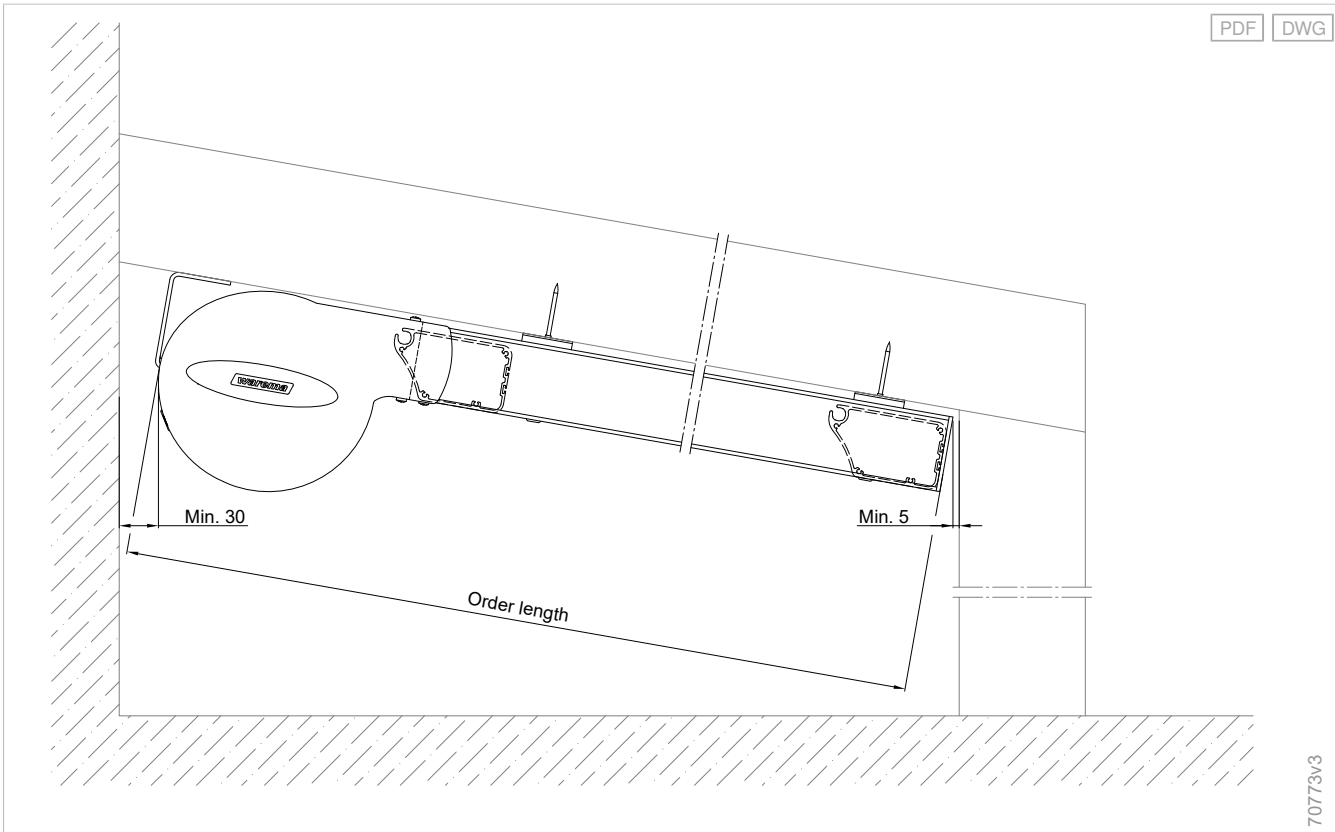
Space for installing cover panels on consoles - W10 round cover panel



Space for installing cover panels on consoles - W10/W10<sup>2</sup> rectangular cover panel

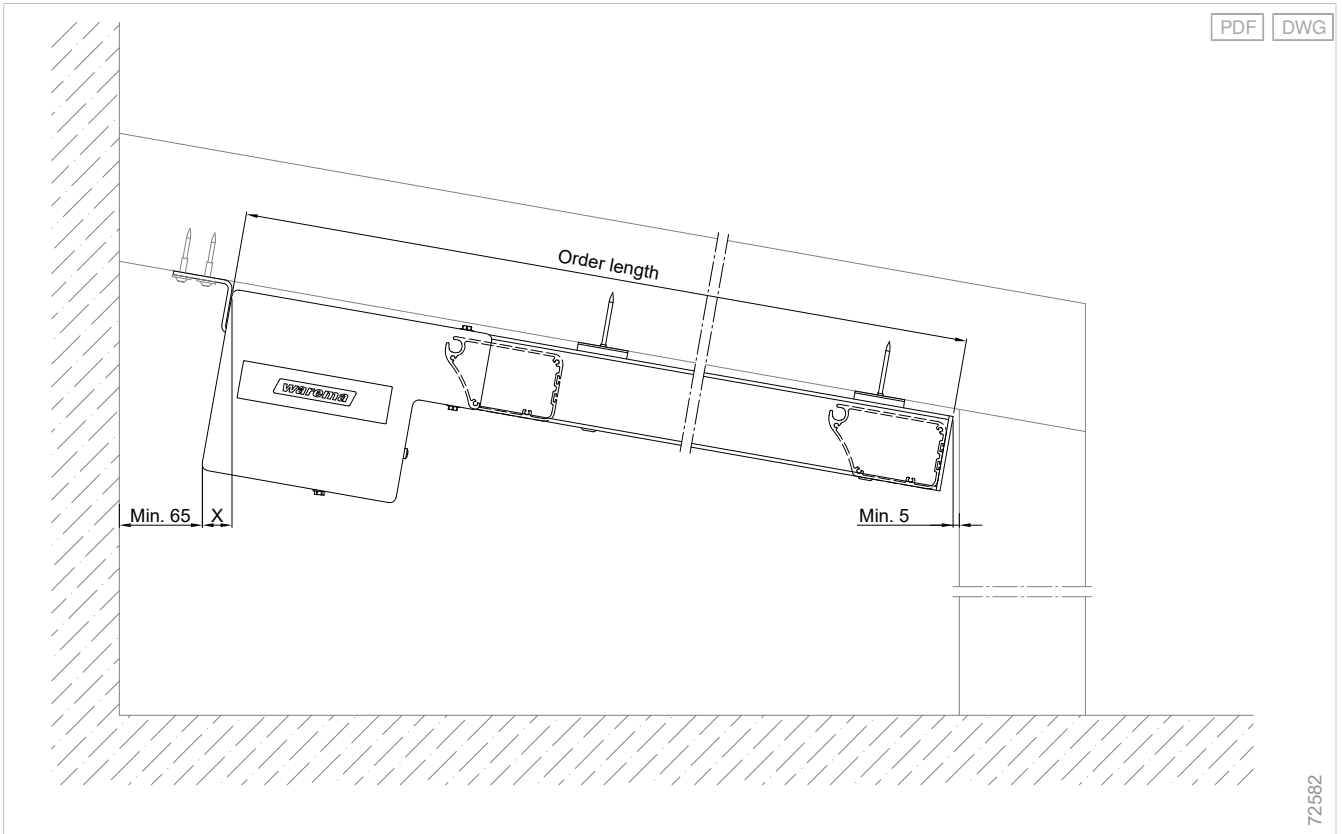


Installation, distance 6.5 mm - W10 round cover panel

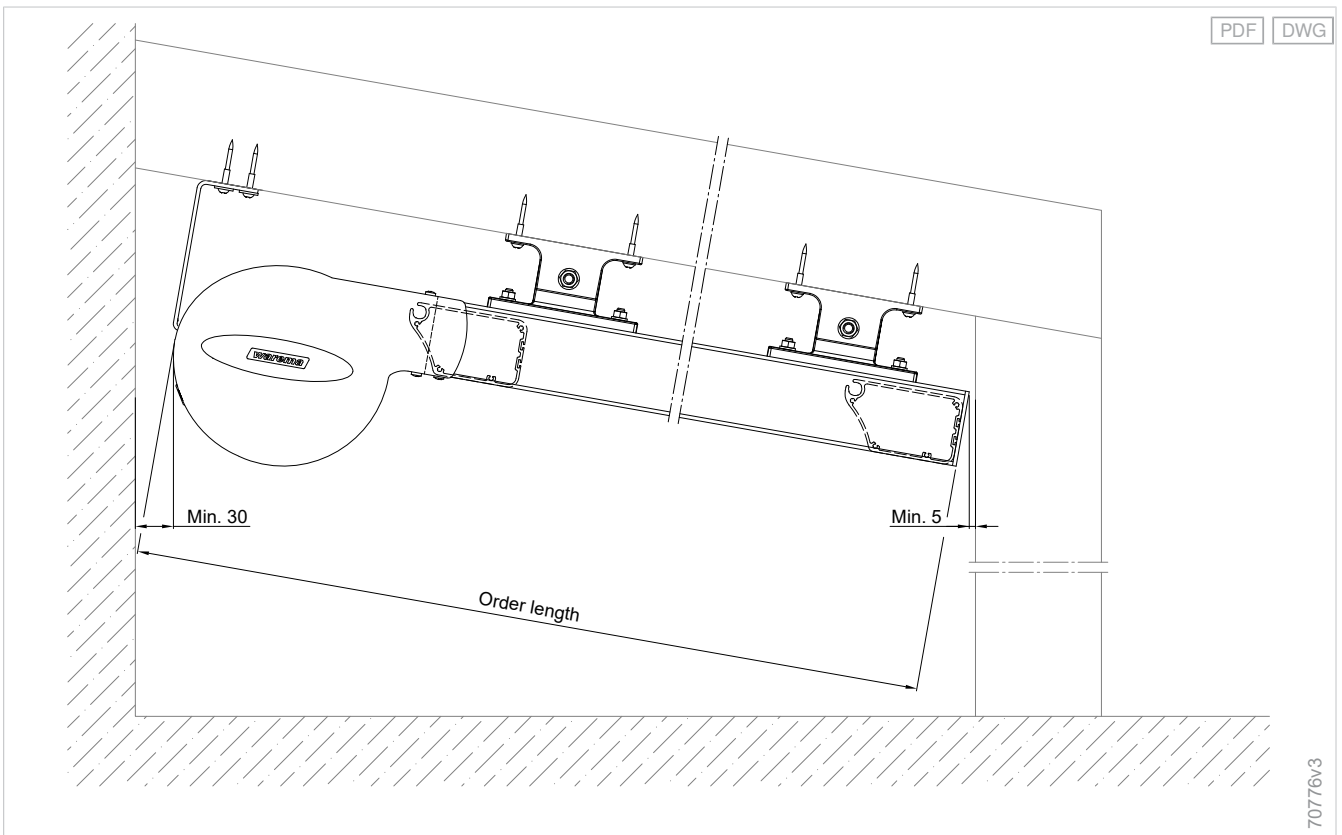




Installation, distance 6.5 mm - W10 rectangular cover panel



Installation, distance 60 mm - W10 round cover panel



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

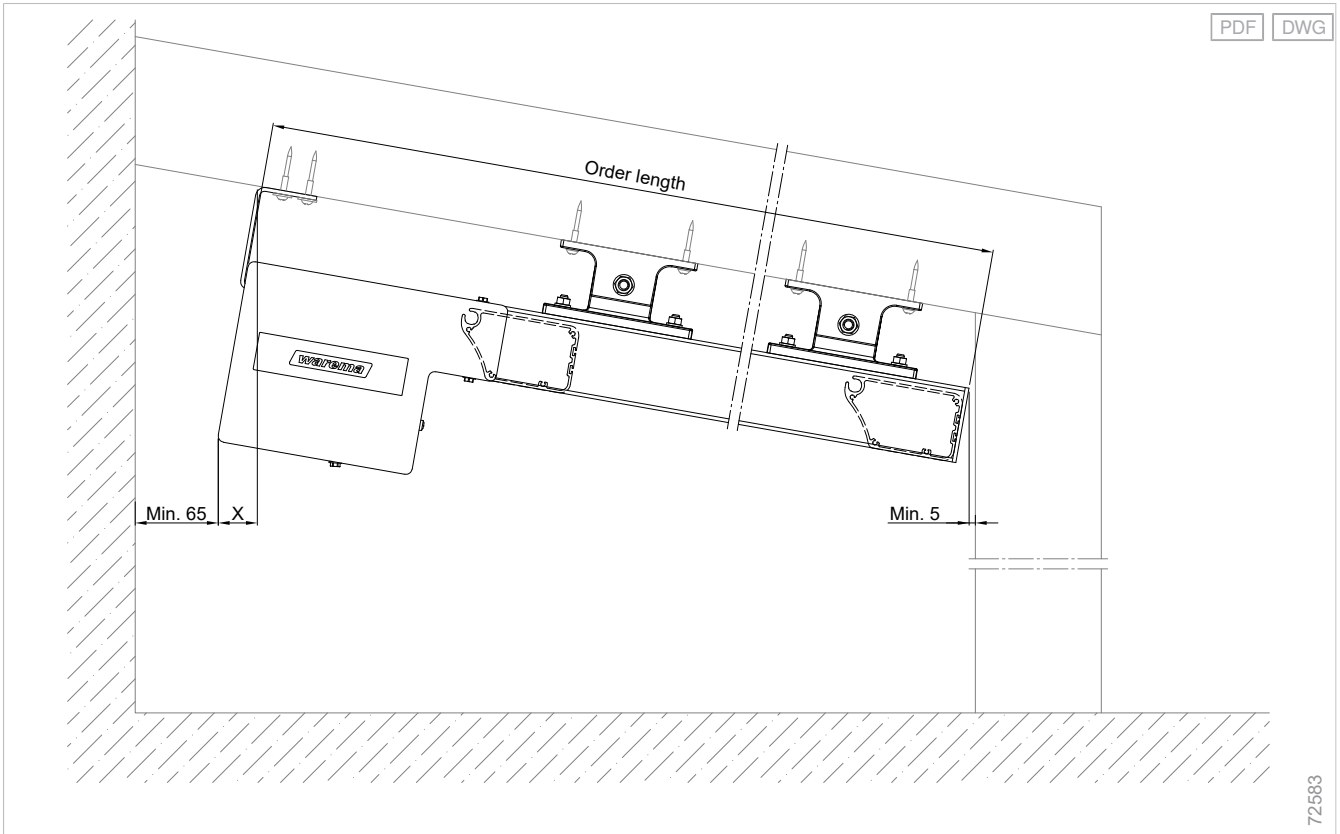
Components

Drive variants

Standards

Installation, distance 60 mm - W10 rectangular cover panel

PDF DWG







## Under-glass conservatory awnings Climara

### Conservatory awning Climara W10<sup>2</sup> – Model A

#### Flexible

2 in 1: The awning can combine 2 different fabrics in one guide rail and alternatively offers dim-out or glare control.

#### Seamless

No light gap with secudrive® technology: The fabric runs in a rail and is attached to a spring steel strip, so that no light enters from the side. Optimal fabric tension across the entire length.

#### Cubic

To meet every requirement to perfection: In addition to the round cover panel, the new flat cover panel with a compact, rectangular design is now also available as an option and blends harmoniously with the overall appearance of modern architecture.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6500 mm
Maximum order length	6000 mm
Maximum order area	30 m <sup>2</sup>

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036168](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/878164.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Fastener Assistant](#)

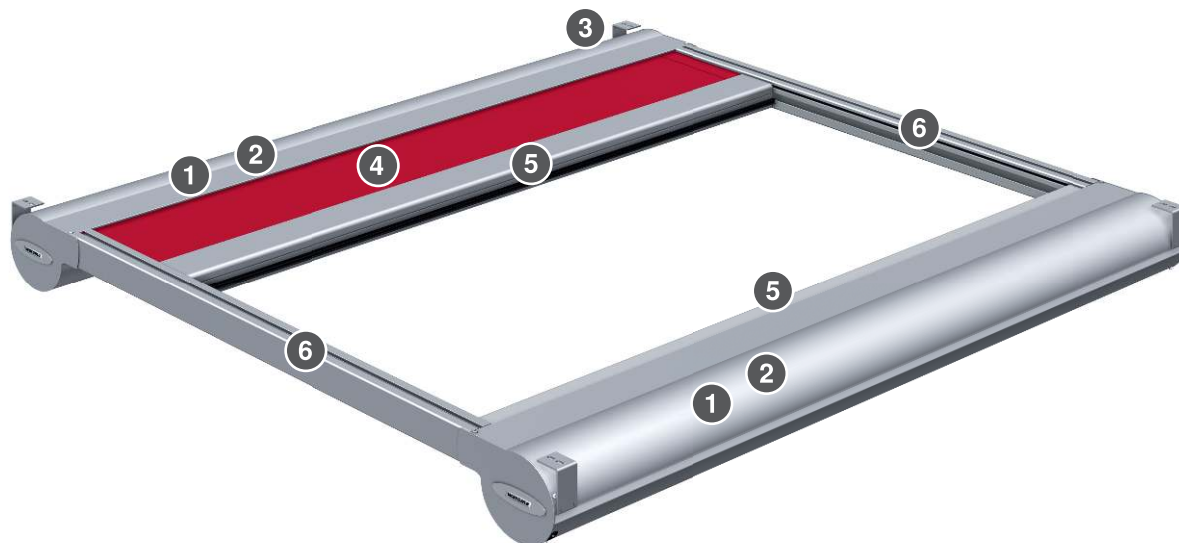
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

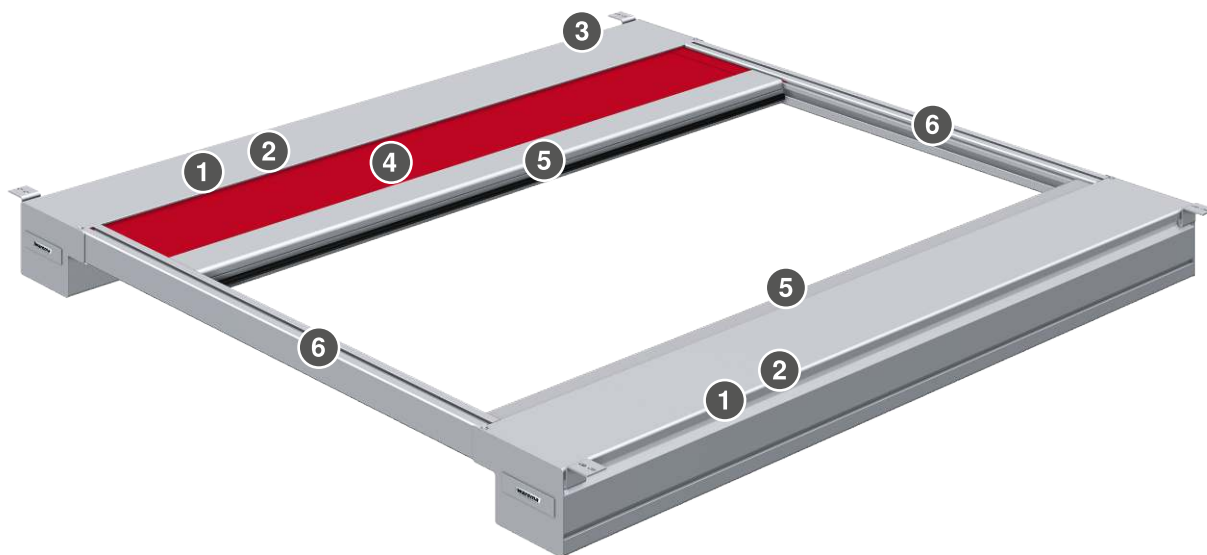
# Components

Conservatory awning Climara W10<sup>2</sup> – Model A with round cover panel



- |   |             |   |            |
|---|-------------|---|------------|
| 1 | Cover panel | 4 | Fabric     |
| 2 | Shaft       | 5 | Front rail |
| 3 | Bracket     | 6 | Guide rail |

Conservatory awning Climara W10<sup>2</sup> – Model A with rectangular cover panel



- |   |             |   |            |
|---|-------------|---|------------|
| 1 | Cover panel | 4 | Fabric     |
| 2 | Shaft       | 5 | Front rail |
| 3 | Bracket     | 6 | Guide rail |

## Cover panel

### Round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	199 mm
Height	158 mm

#### + Side cover

### Side cover for round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	227 mm
Height	159 mm

## Cover panel, optional

### Cover panel rectangular - P20/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	194 mm
Height	144 mm

#### + Side cover

### Side cover, cover panel, rectangular - P20/W10/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	209 mm
Height	146 mm

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	86.2 mm

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	70 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20/P20/H1

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	94 mm
Height	54 mm

## Bracket

- Ceiling bracket 76 round/rectangular
- Ceiling bracket SL85 round
- Ceiling bracket 130 round
- Wall bracket 130 round

+ see "Bracket", Page 449

## Bracket

- Bracket H48
- Bracket H49
- Bracket H52
- Bracket H53
- Bracket H81
- Bracket H82
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102
- Bracket SL01
- Bracket SL02
- Bracket SL03
- Bracket SL04
- Bracket SL05
- Bracket SL06
- Bracket SL09
- Bracket SL10
- Bracket SL11
- Bracket SL12
- Bracket SL13

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 418

## Guide variants

- secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Height	60 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WT

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Soltis B92
- Screen fabric
- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living connect package
- Fabric lettering, painted

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Notes

### Motor position and required connecting lines:

- Two connecting lines are required per motor (an additional connecting line for limit stop detection).
- The motors are usually installed diagonally and always on the right-hand side.

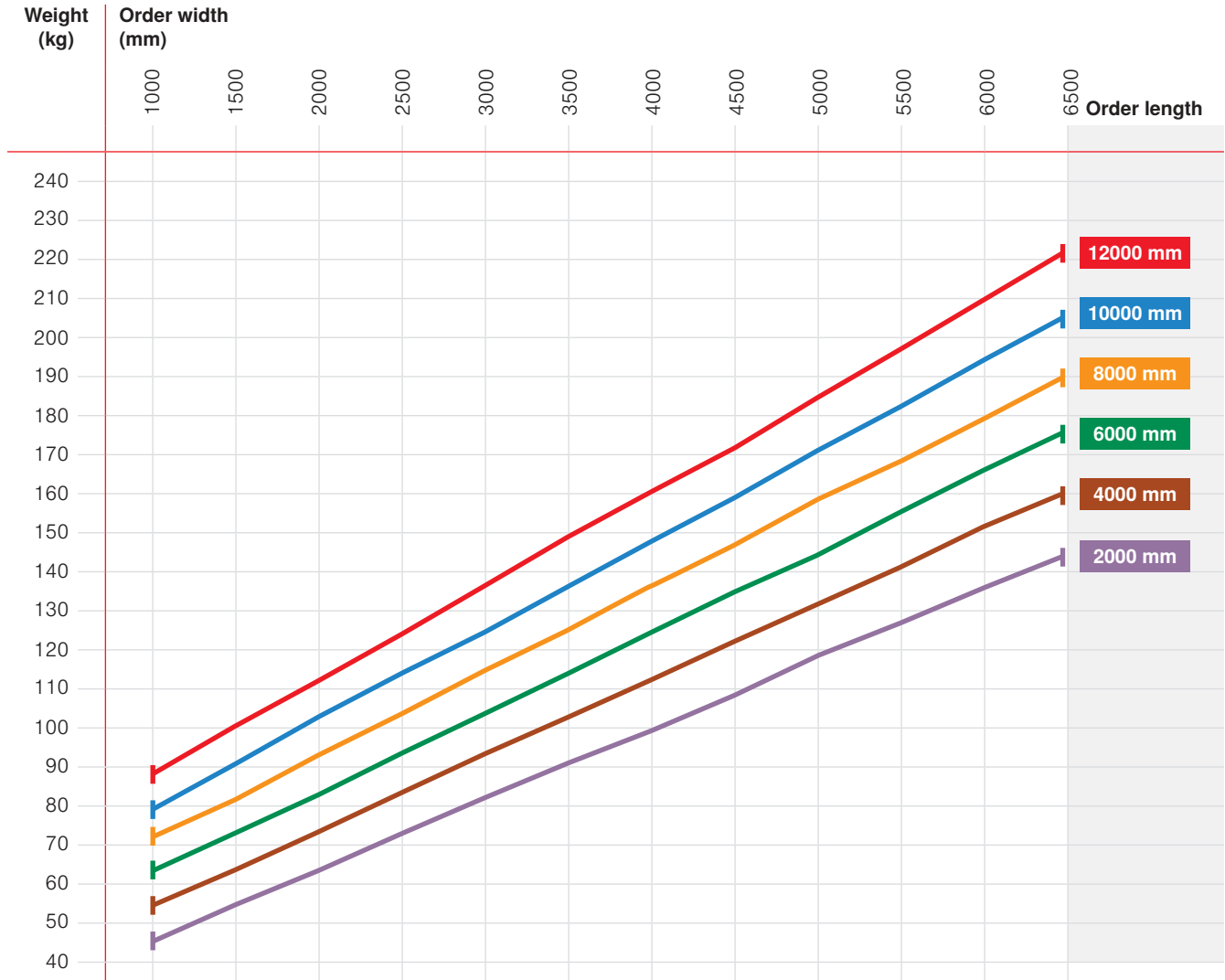
## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order length	Maximum order length	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Fabric qualities</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue	900 mm	6500 mm	1200 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	0 °
All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl	900 mm	6500 mm	1200 mm	6000 mm	28 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	0 °
Soltis 92 / Screen fabric	900 mm	3500 mm	1200 mm	4000 mm	14 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	0 °
Soltis B92	900 mm	2500 mm	1200 mm	4000 mm	10 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	0 °

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- Two guide rails can be mounted on one bracket.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 13000 mm!

Determining the weight of a conservatory awning Climara W10<sup>2</sup> (motorised unit)





## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 14 - 15,5 kg/lfm

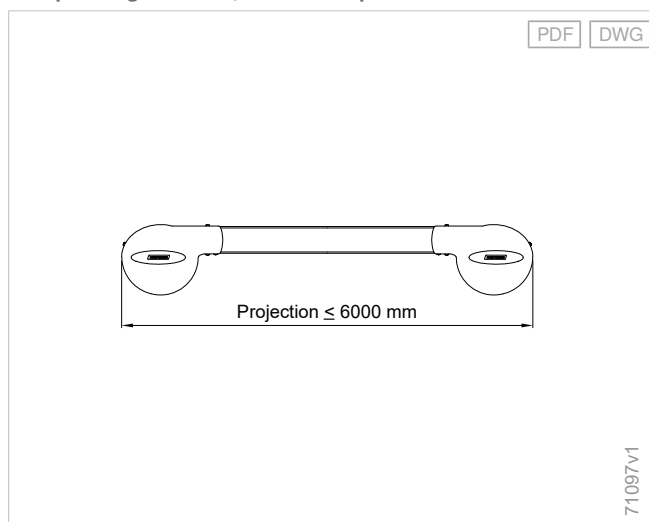
Weight per running metre, notes: Per cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

**Order length** = back edge of cover panel 1 to back edge of cover panel 2

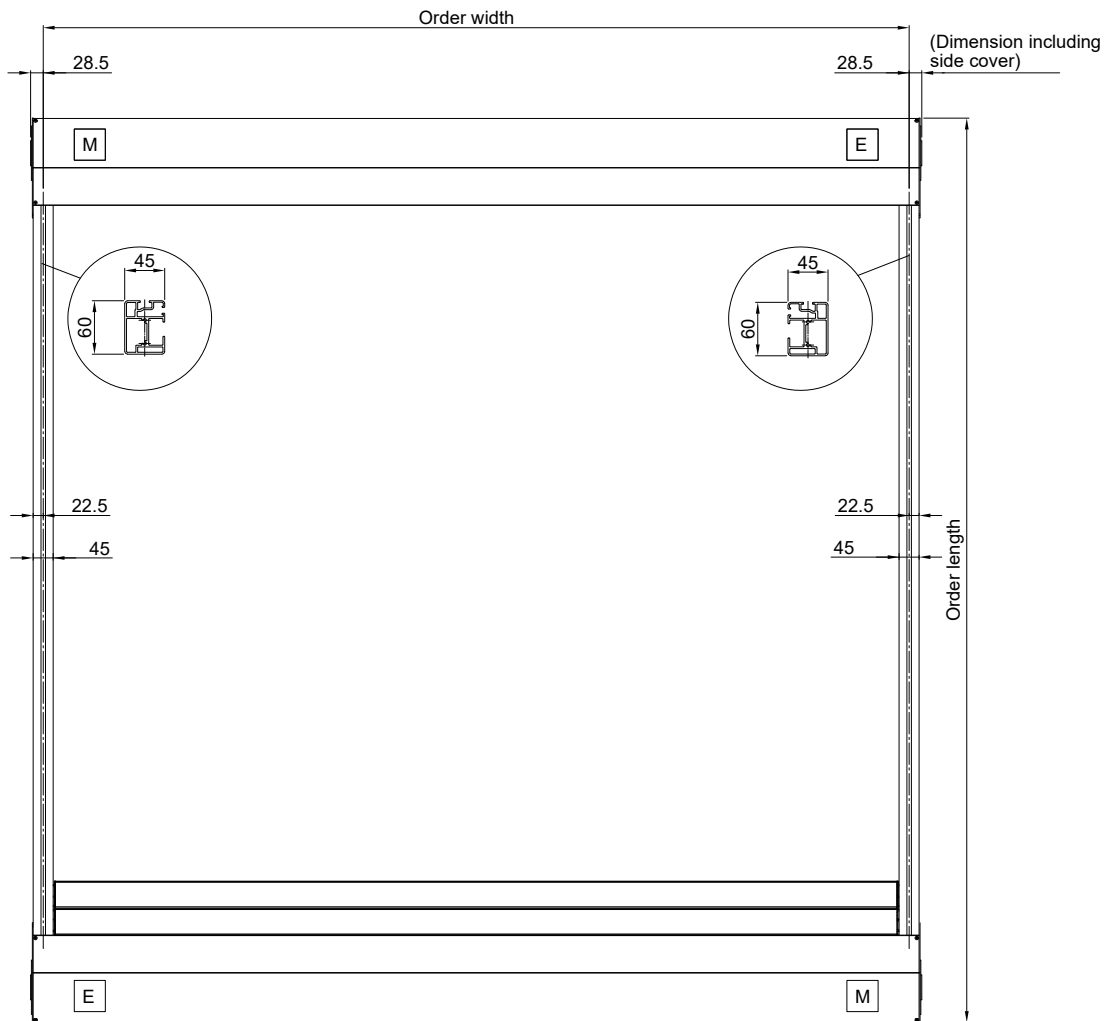
**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis

One pair of guide rails, two fabric qualities - W10<sup>2</sup>



Individual unit - W10<sup>2</sup> model A

PDF DWG



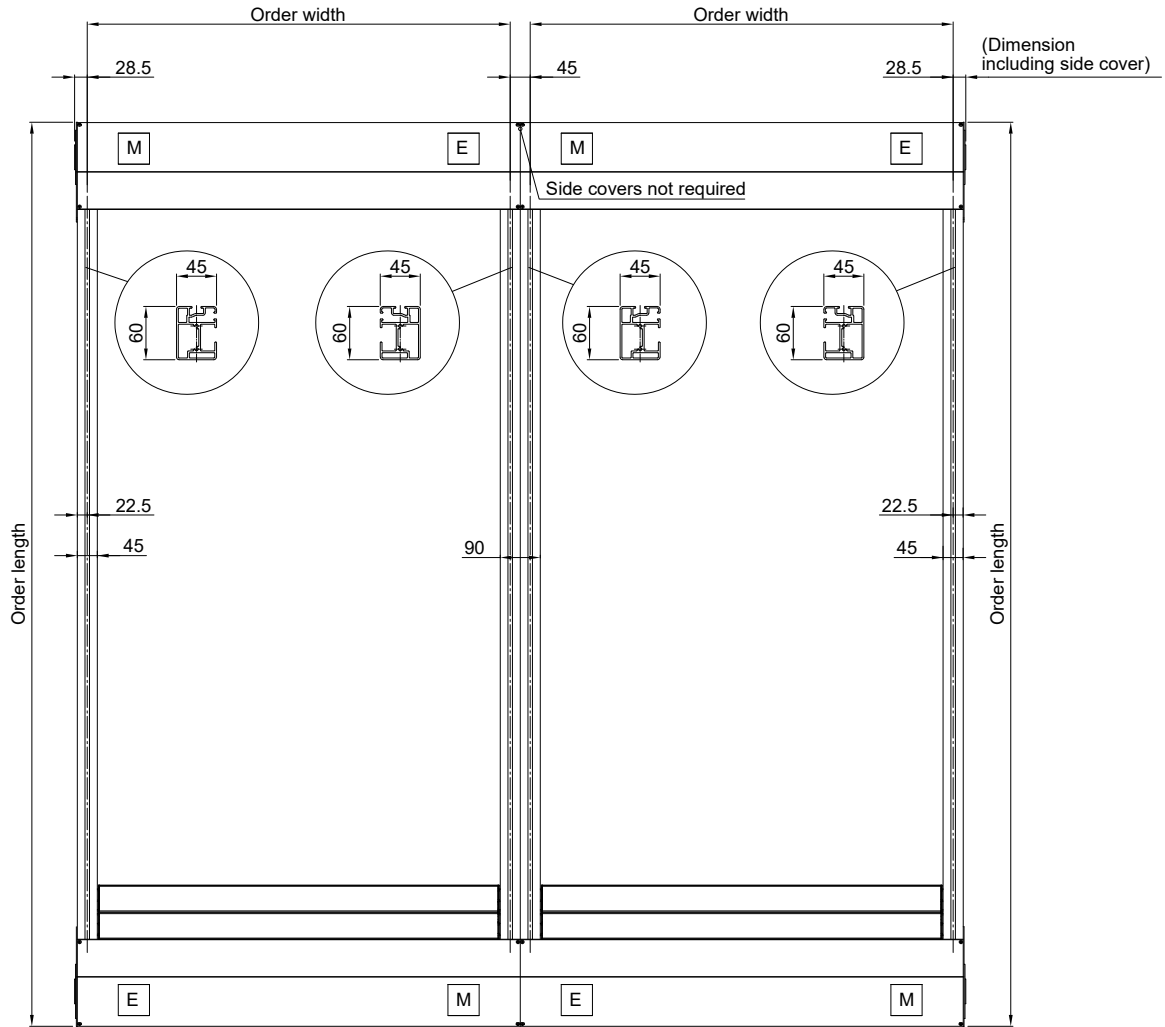
- M Motor
- E Limit position detection

All dimensions in mm

72398

Series-mounted unit - W10<sup>2</sup> model A

PDF DWG



- M Motor
- E Limit position detection

All dimensions in mm

72399

## Quantity determination

### Number of brackets

Configuration variants	Order width	Number
Components		
Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket	0 - 4000 mm	2
Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket	4001 - 6500 mm	3

### Number of guide rail brackets

Configuration variants	Order length	Number
Components		
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	0 - 2000 mm	2
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	2001 - 3500 mm	3
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	3501 - 5000 mm	4
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	5001 - 6000 mm	5
Guide rail bracket - direct installation	0 - 2400 mm	2
Guide rail bracket - direct installation	2401 - 4000 mm	3
Guide rail bracket - direct installation	4001 - 6000 mm	4

### Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation:

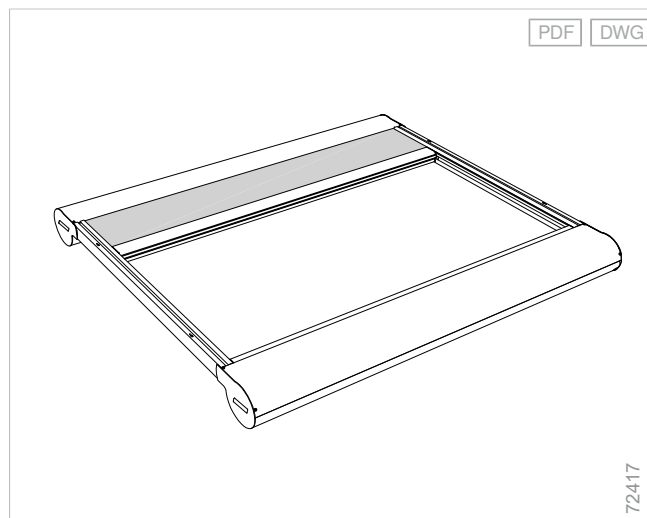
- H49
- H81
- H82
- H101
- H102
- SL06
- SL09
- SL10

### Guide rail bracket - direct installation:

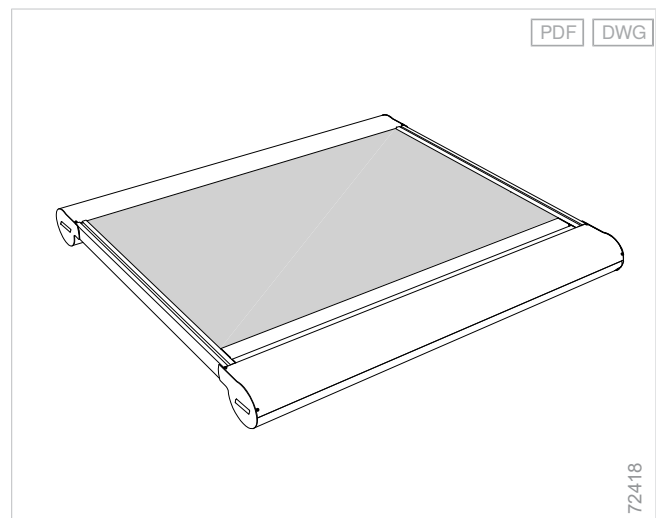
- H48
- H52
- H53
- SL01 - SL05
- SL11 - SL13

## Details

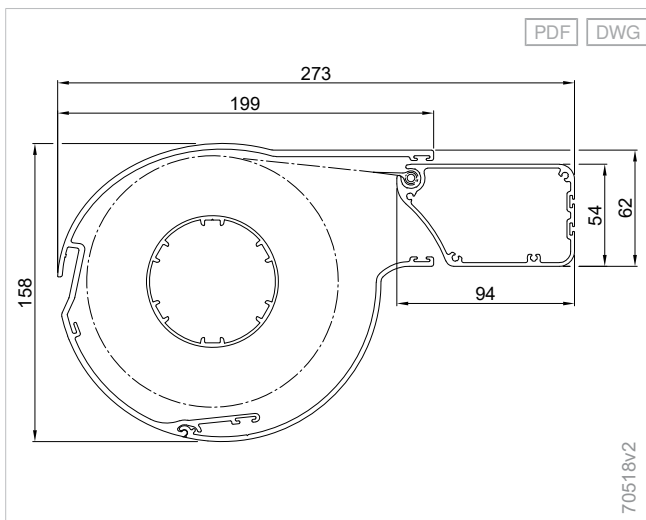
Blind 1 partially extended - W10<sup>2</sup>



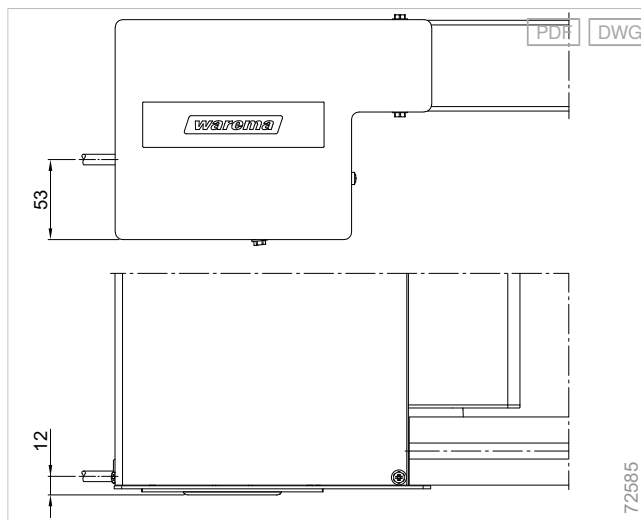
Blind 1 completely extended - W10<sup>2</sup>



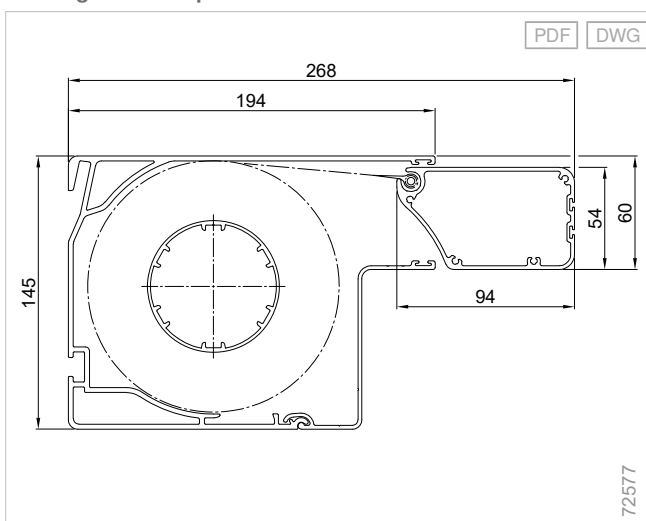
Cover panel with front rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



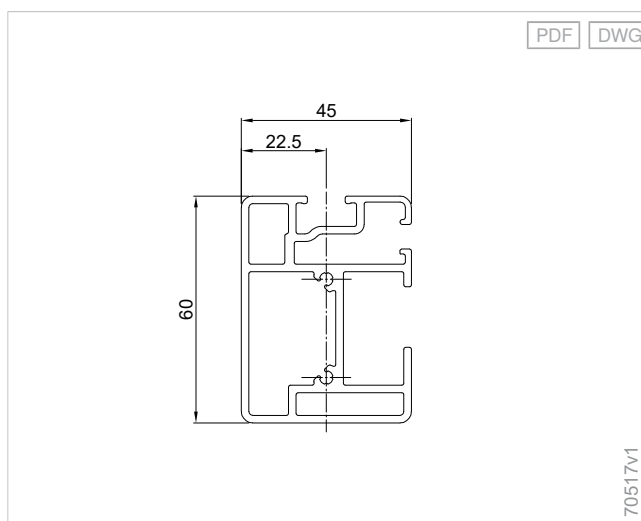
Cable exit - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20 rectangular cover panel



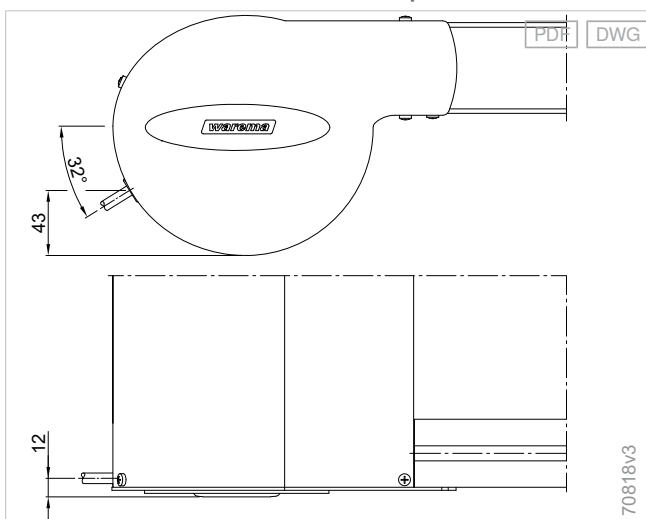
Rectangular cover panel and front rail



Guide rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



Cable exit - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20 round cover panel



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

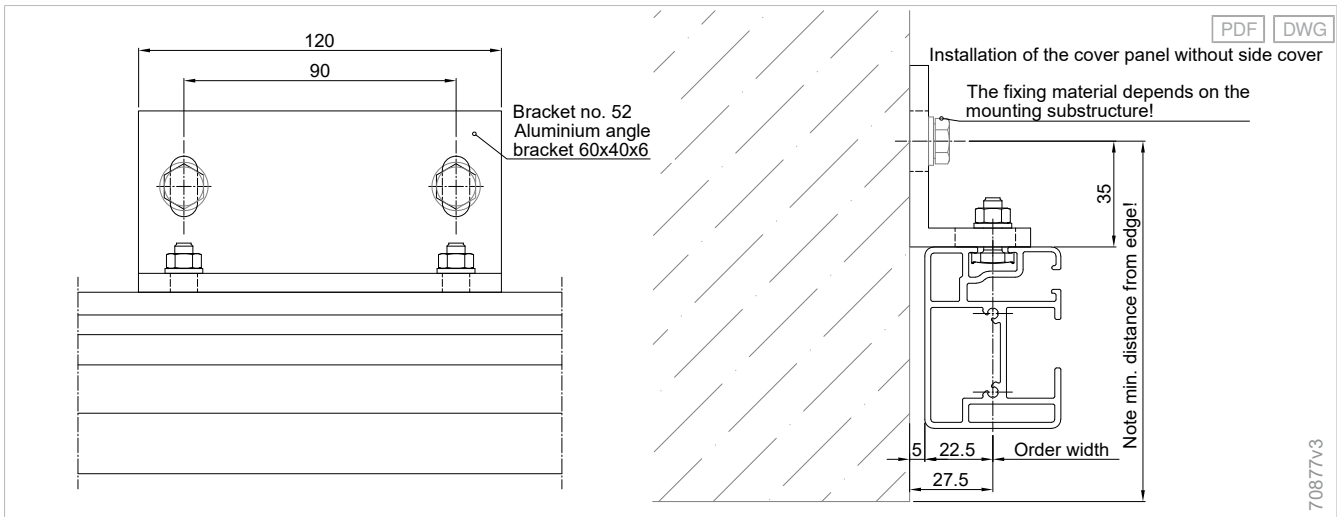
Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

## Wall installation - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



## Additional product information

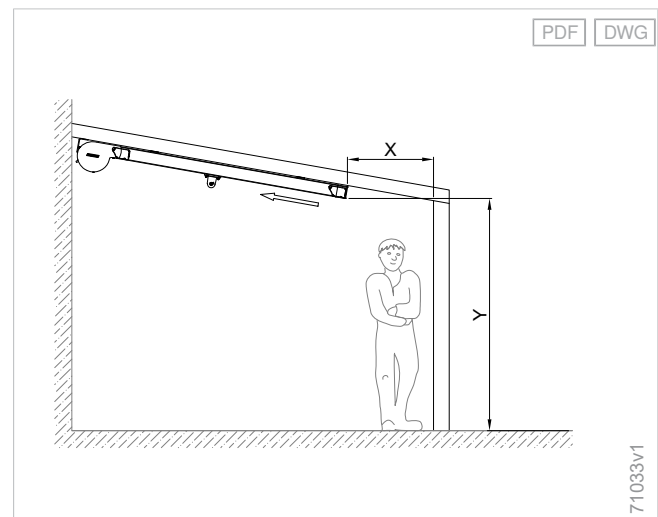
### Safety distances for automatic operation - under-glass conservatory awnings Climara

#### Warning!

If the **minimum distance Y** of **2.5 m** from the front rail to the pedestrian area is not maintained, for **automatic, unsupervised operation** of the conservatory awning, special protective measures (mechanical shielding, etc.) must be implemented to prevent risk of crushing and injury. When retracting and extending the awning, do not reach into any movable parts (e.g. between front rail and guide rail or between front rail and housing) or pull on the awning!

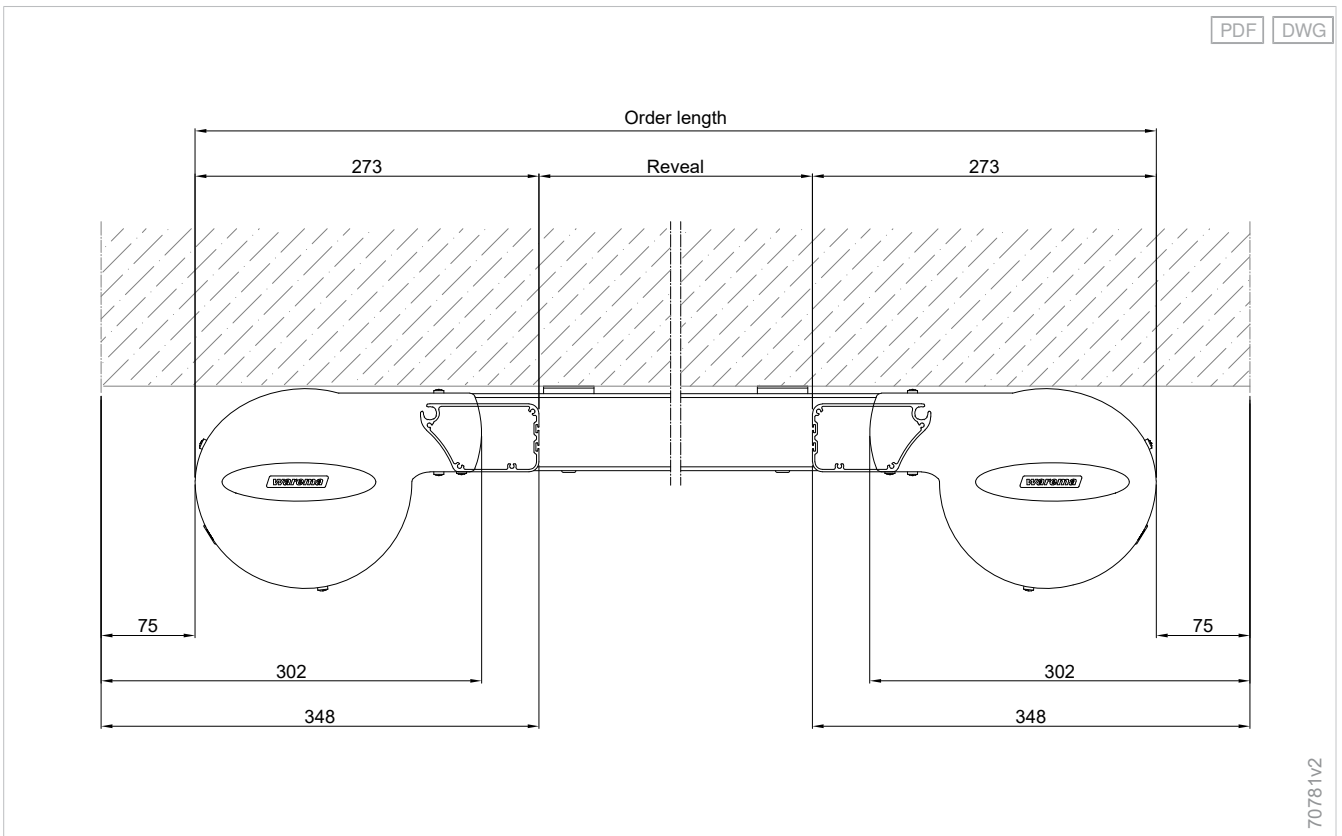
The **minimum distance X** between the extending front rail and any fixed or movable object must be at least **400 mm** if there is an accessible area in between.

#### Clearance/minimum distances (diagram) for internal units

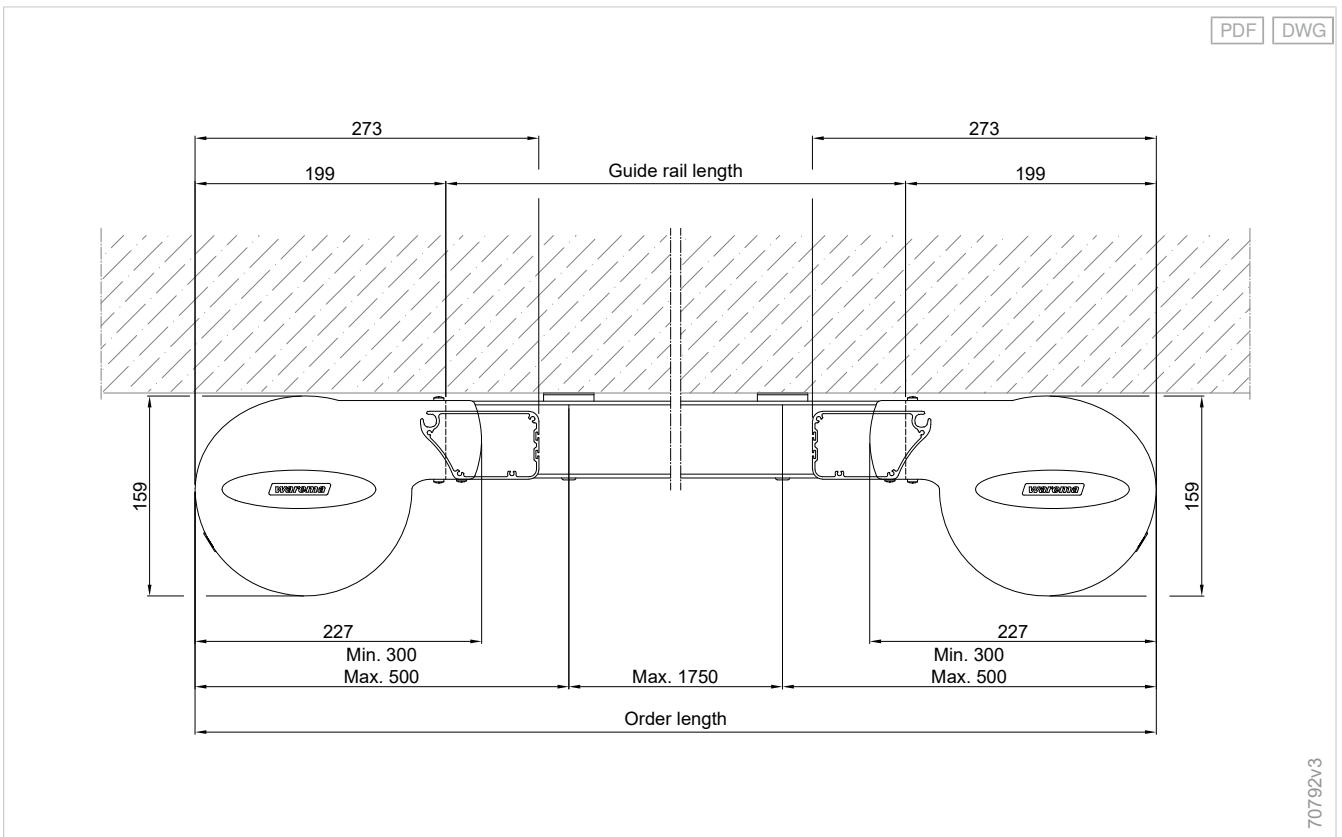


## Mounting examples

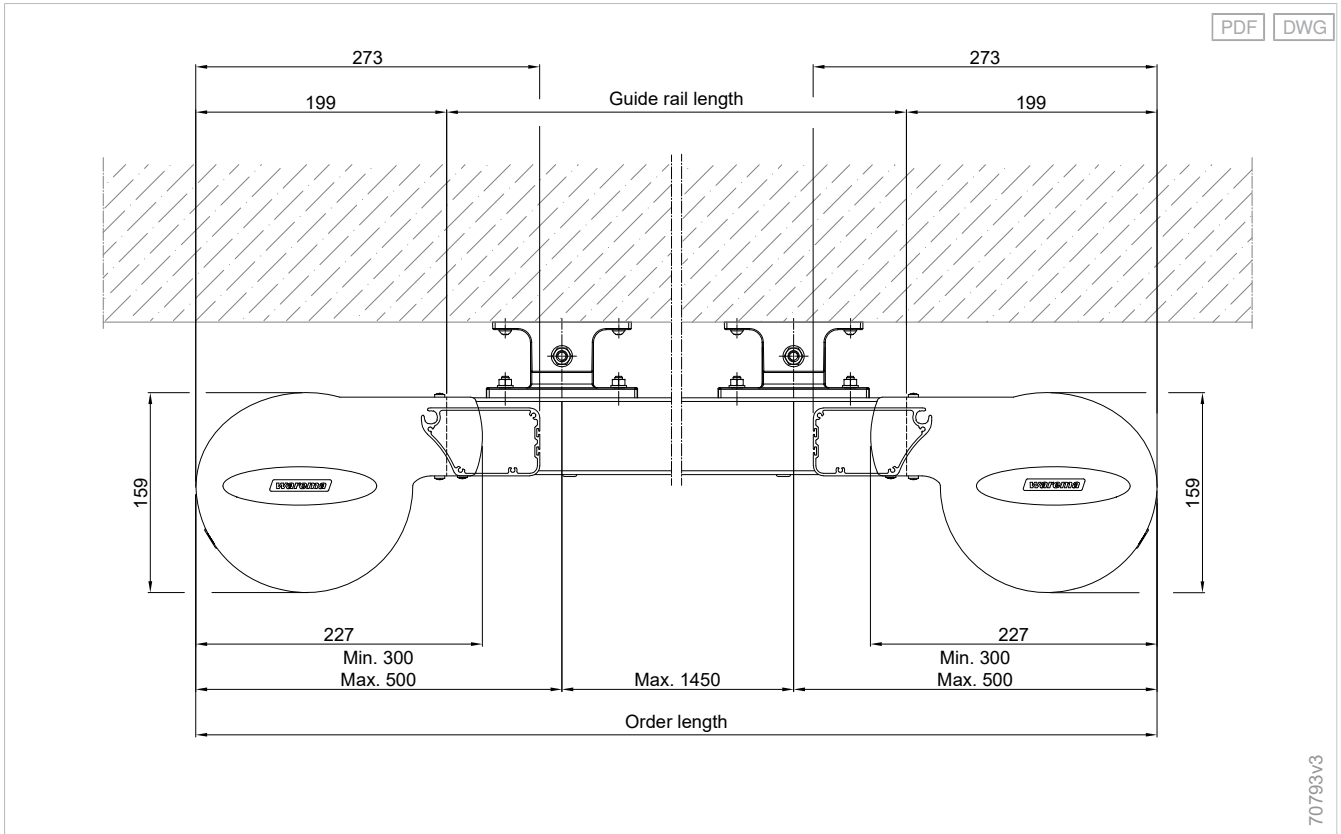
Installation in front of the reveal - W10<sup>2</sup>



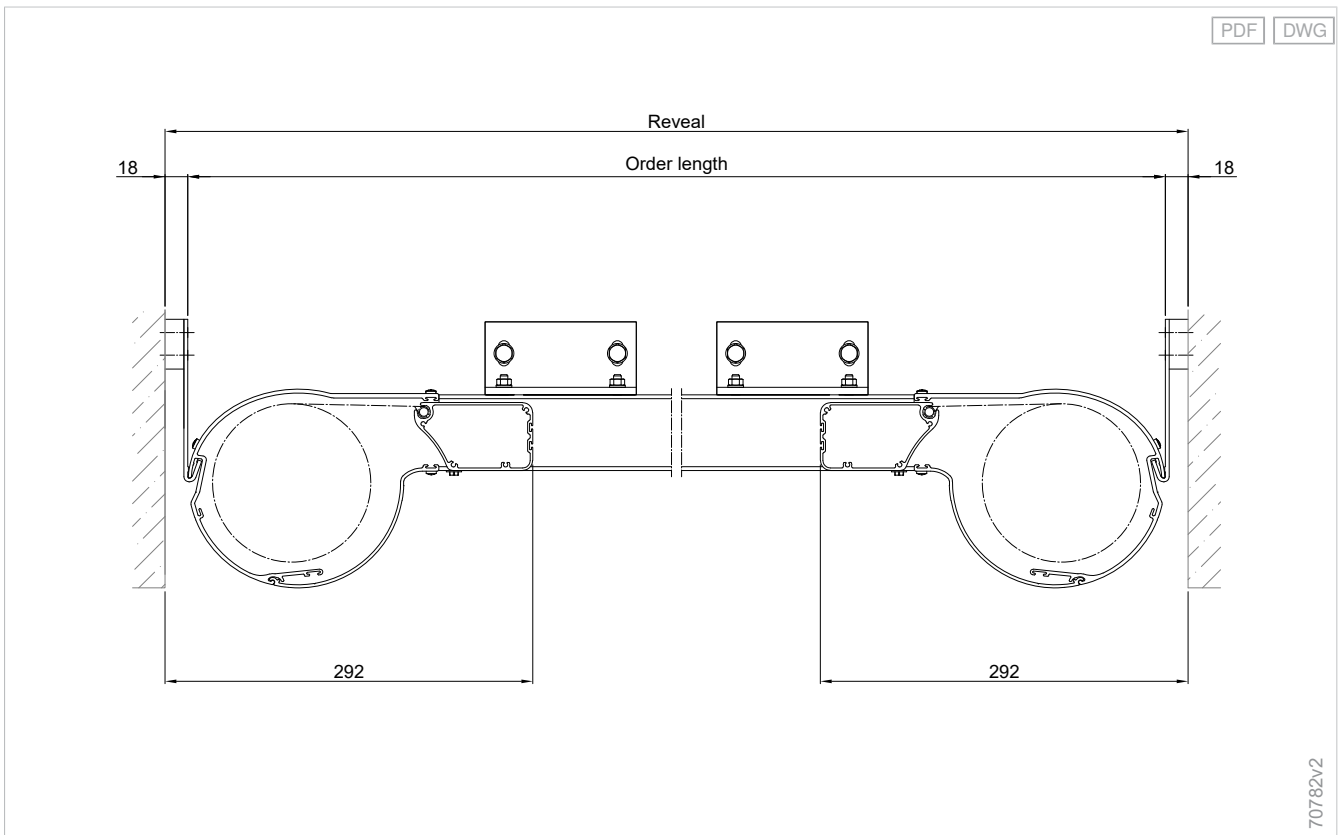
Installation in front of the reveal - W10<sup>2</sup>



Installed in front of the reveal, distance 60 mm - W10<sup>2</sup>

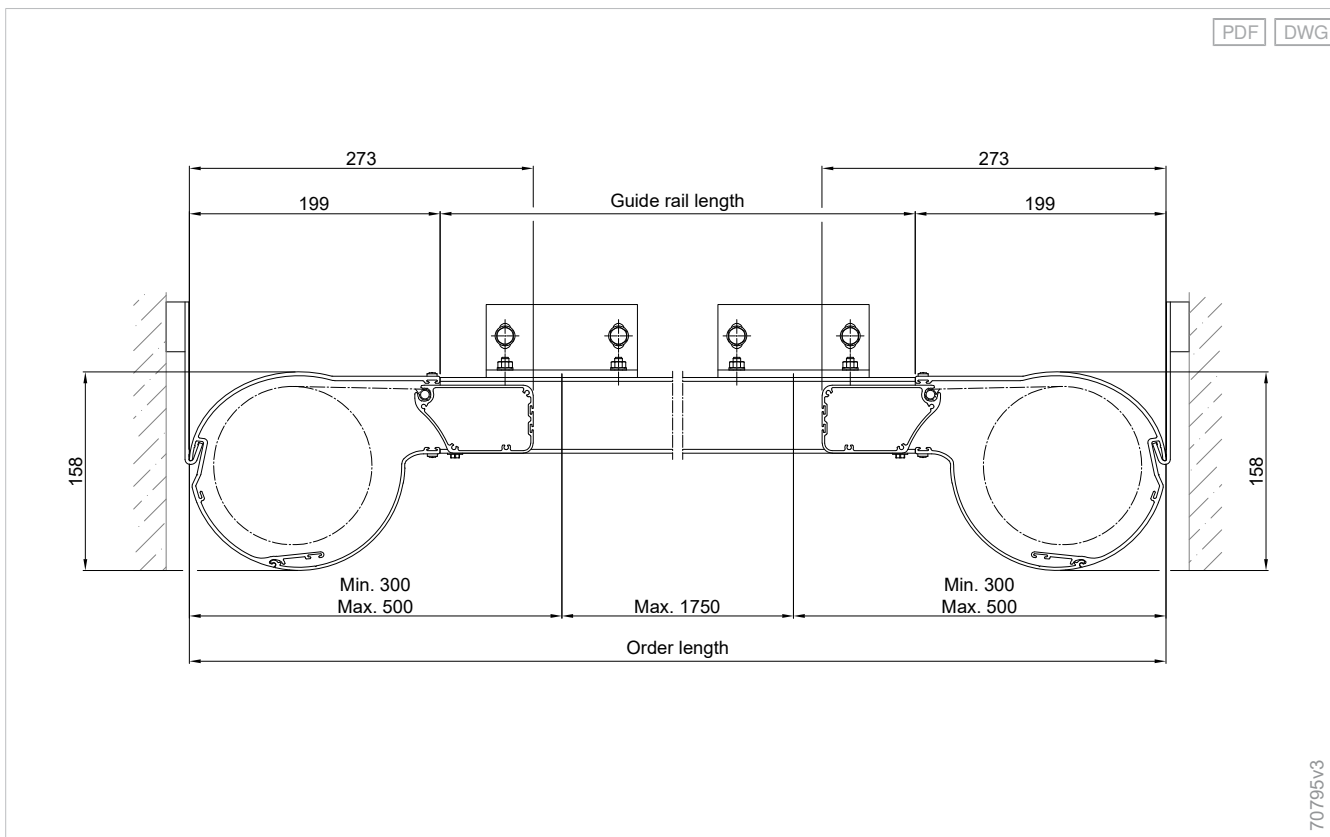


Installation in the reveal - W10<sup>2</sup>

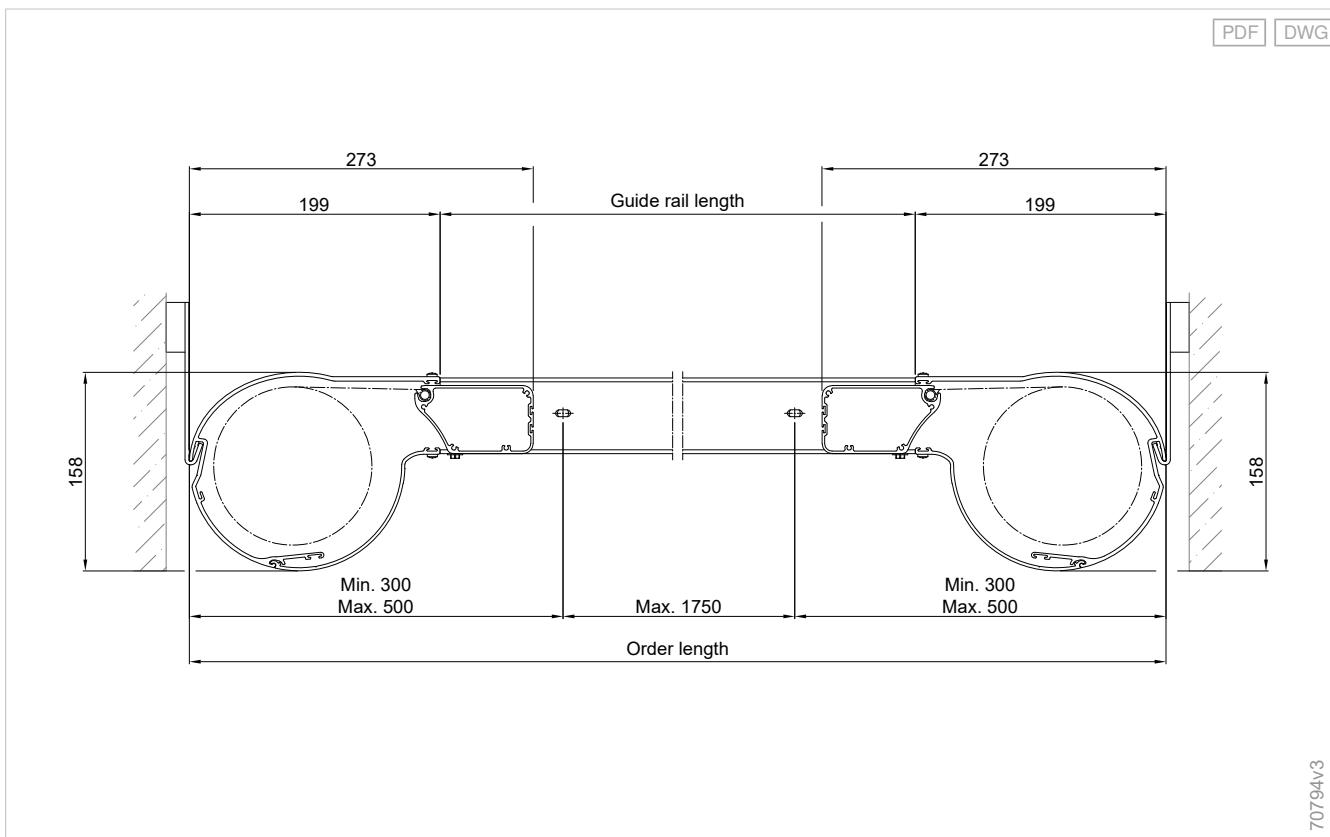




Installation in the reveal, reveal angle bracket - W10<sup>2</sup>



Installation in reveal, direct installation - W10<sup>2</sup>



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

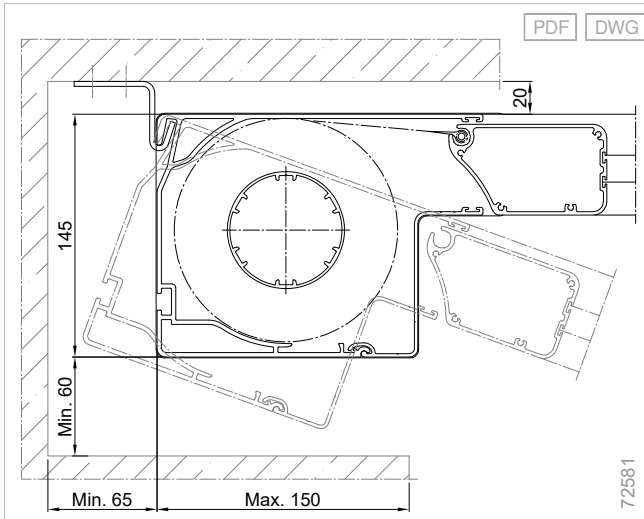
Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

Space for installing cover panels on consoles - W10/W10<sup>2</sup> rectangular cover panel







## Under-glass conservatory awnings Climara

### Conservatory awning Climara W10<sup>2</sup> – Model B

#### Projecting

Joined guide rails allow extremely long projections of up to 12 m with small cover panels.

#### Seamless

No light gap with secudrive® technology: The fabric runs in a rail and is attached to a spring steel strip, so that no light enters from the side. Optimal fabric tension across the entire length.

#### Cubic

To meet every requirement to perfection: In addition to the round cover panel, the new flat cover panel with a compact, rectangular design is now also available as an option and blends harmoniously with the overall appearance of modern architecture.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6500 mm
Maximum order length	12000 mm
Maximum order area	60 m <sup>2</sup>

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036167](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/878164.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Fastener Assistant](#)

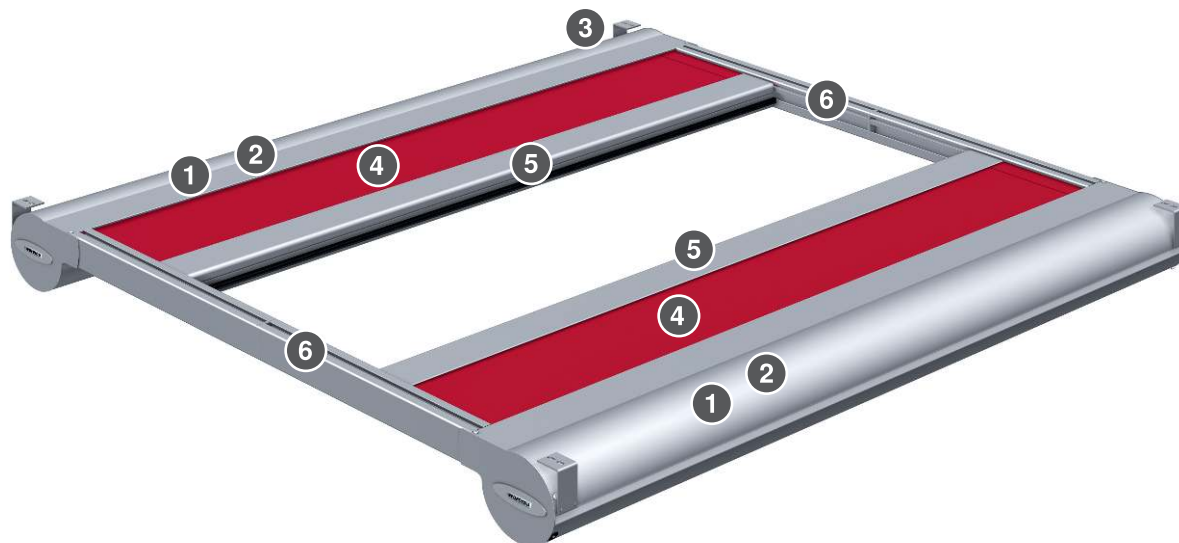
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

## Components

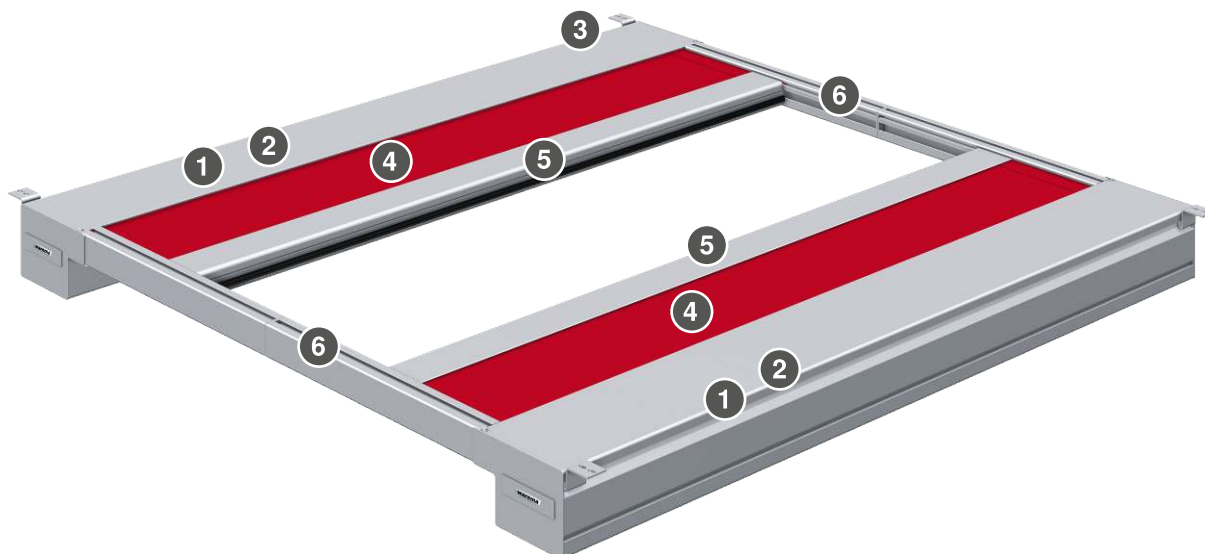
Conservatory awning Climara W10<sup>2</sup> – Model B with round cover panel



- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Bracket

- 4 Fabric
- 5 Front rail
- 6 Guide rail

Conservatory awning Climara W10<sup>2</sup> – Model B with rectangular cover panel



- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Bracket

- 4 Fabric
- 5 Front rail
- 6 Guide rail

## Cover panel

### Round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	199 mm
Height	158 mm

#### + Side cover

### Side cover for round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	227 mm
Height	159 mm

## Cover panel, optional

### Cover panel rectangular - P20/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	194 mm
Height	144 mm

#### + Side cover

### Side cover, cover panel, rectangular - P20/W10/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	209 mm
Height	146 mm

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	86.2 mm

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	70 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20/P20/H1

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	94 mm
Height	54 mm

## Bracket

- Ceiling bracket 76 round/rectangular
- Ceiling bracket SL85 round
- Ceiling bracket 130 round
- Wall bracket 130 round

+ see "Bracket", Page 449

## Bracket

- Bracket H48
- Bracket H49
- Bracket H52
- Bracket H53
- Bracket H81
- Bracket H82
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102
- Bracket SL01
- Bracket SL02
- Bracket SL03
- Bracket SL04
- Bracket SL05
- Bracket SL06
- Bracket SL09
- Bracket SL10
- Bracket SL11
- Bracket SL12
- Bracket SL13

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 418

## Guide variants

- secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Height	60 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WT

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Soltis B92
- Screen fabric
- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living connect package
- Fabric lettering, painted

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

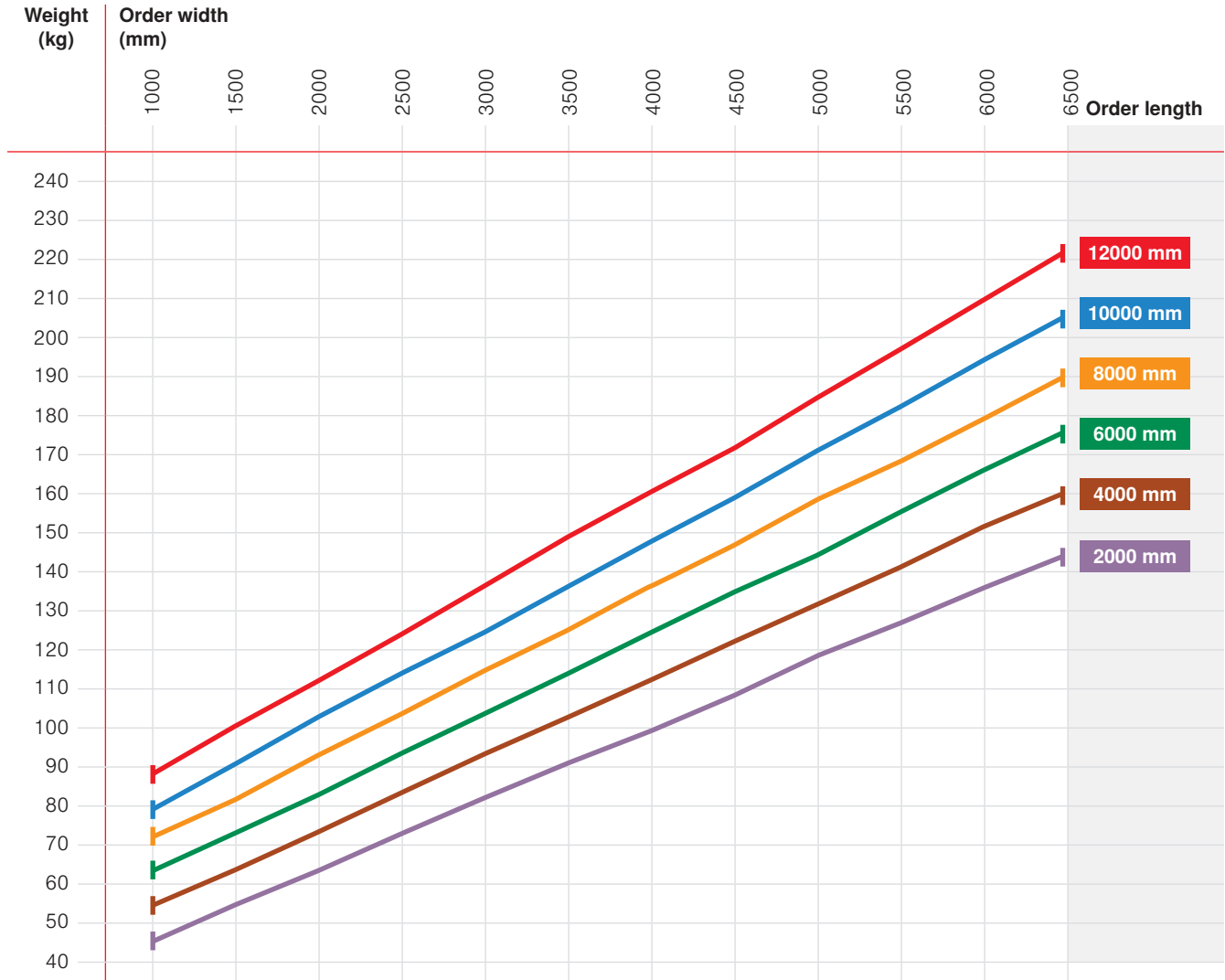
## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order length	Maximum order length	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Fabric qualities</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue	900 mm	6500 mm	1850 mm	12000 mm	60 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	0 °
All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl	900 mm	6500 mm	1850 mm	12000 mm	56 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	0 °
Soltis 92 / Screen fabric	900 mm	3500 mm	1850 mm	8000 mm	28 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	0 °
Soltis B92	900 mm	2500 mm	1850 mm	8000 mm	20 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	0 °

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- Two guide rails can be mounted on one bracket.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 13000 mm!

Determining the weight of a conservatory awning Climara W10<sup>2</sup> (motorised unit)





## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 14 - 15,5 kg/lfm

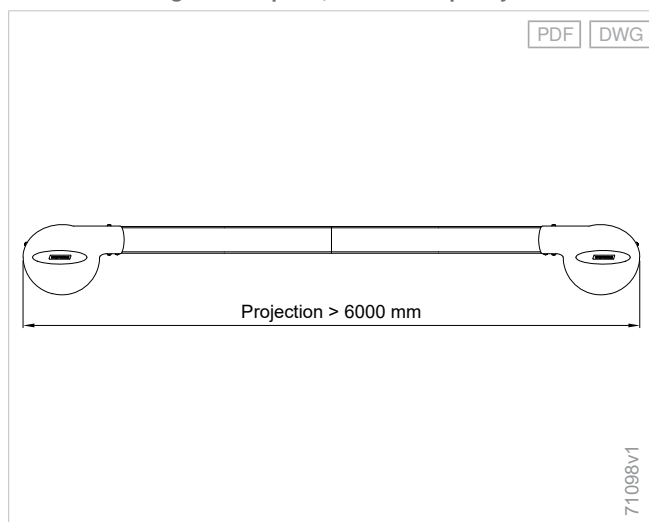
Weight per running metre, notes: Per cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

**Order length** = back edge of cover panel 1 to back edge of cover panel 2

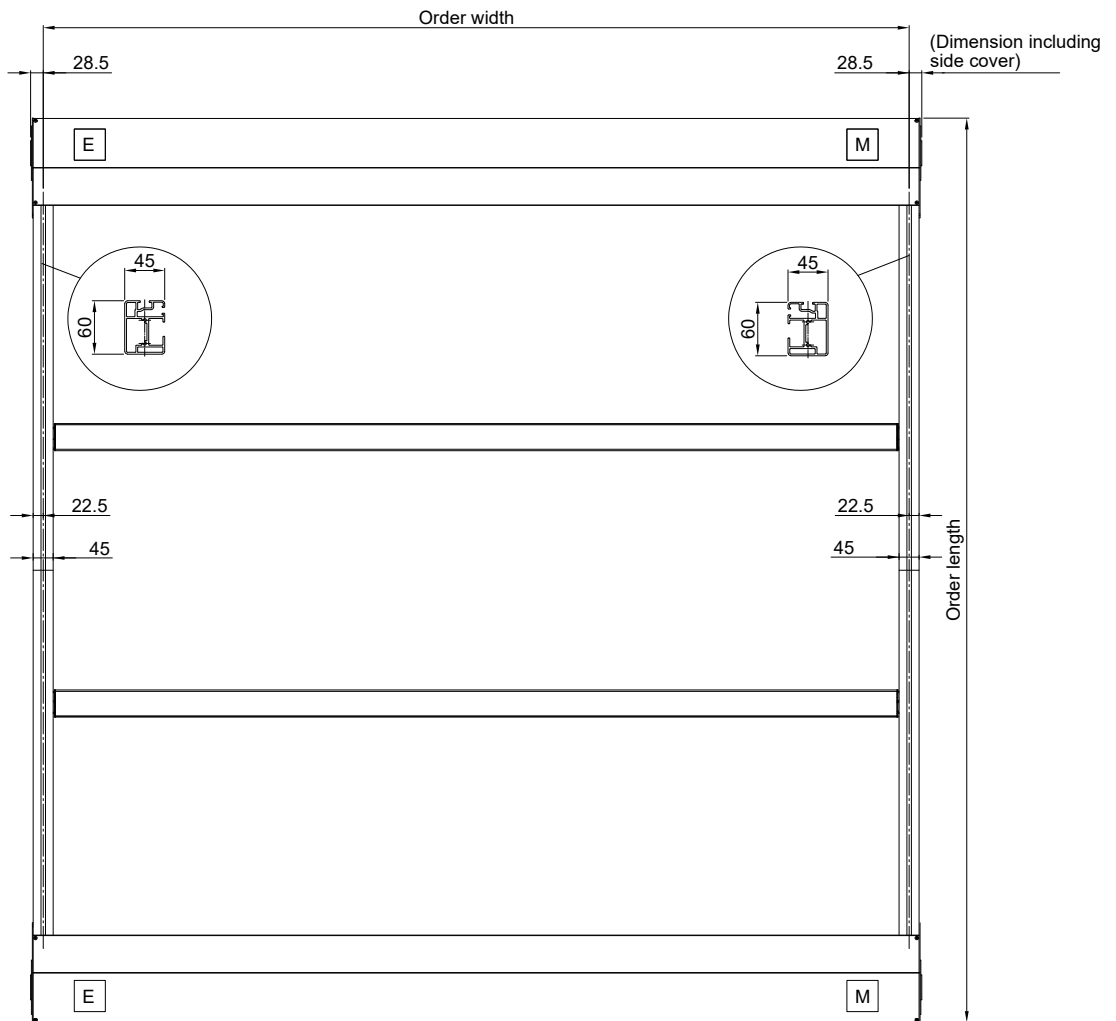
**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis

Two end-to-end guide rail pairs, one fabric quality - W10<sup>2</sup>



Individual unit - W10<sup>2</sup> model B

PDF DWG



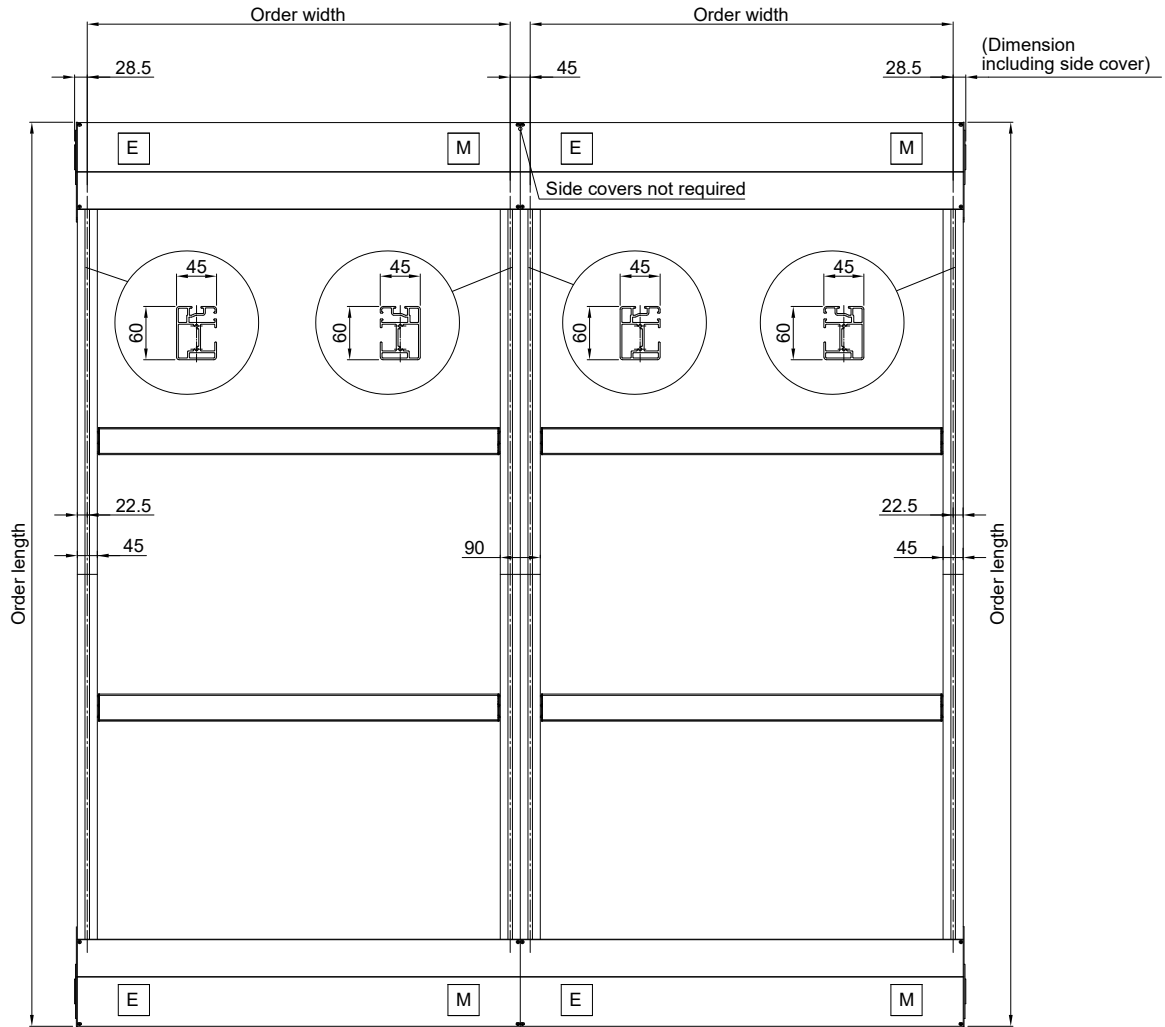
- M Motor
- E Limit position detection

All dimensions in mm

70808v3

Series-mounted unit - W10<sup>2</sup> model B

PDF DWG



- M Motor
- E Limit position detection

All dimensions in mm

70809v2

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

## Quantity determination

### Number of brackets

Configuration variants	Order width	Number
Components		
Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket	0 - 4000 mm	2
Wall bracket / Ceiling bracket	4001 - 6500 mm	3

### Number of guide rail brackets

Configuration variants	Order length	Number
Components		
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	0 - 4000 mm	2
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	4001 - 7000 mm	3
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	7001 - 10000 mm	4
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation	10001 - 12000 mm	5
Guide rail bracket - direct installation	0 - 4800 mm	2
Guide rail bracket - direct installation	4801 - 8000 mm	3
Guide rail bracket - direct installation	8001 - 12000 mm	4

Number of guide rail brackets **per guide rail, per unit.**

#### Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation:

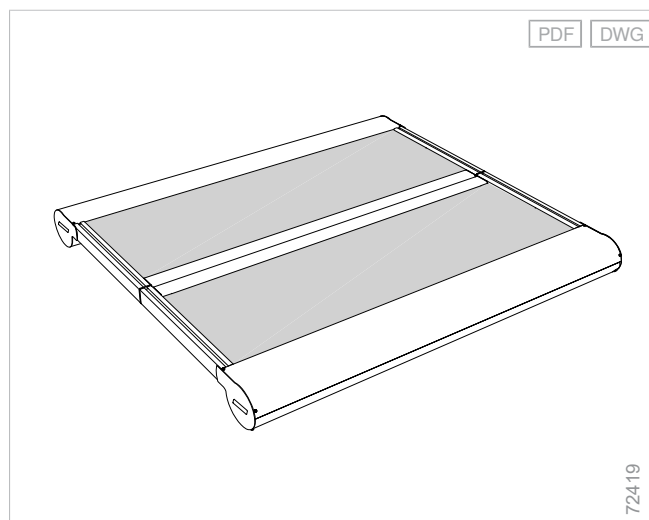
- H49
- H81
- H82
- H101
- H102
- SL06
- SL09
- SL10

#### Guide rail bracket - direct installation:

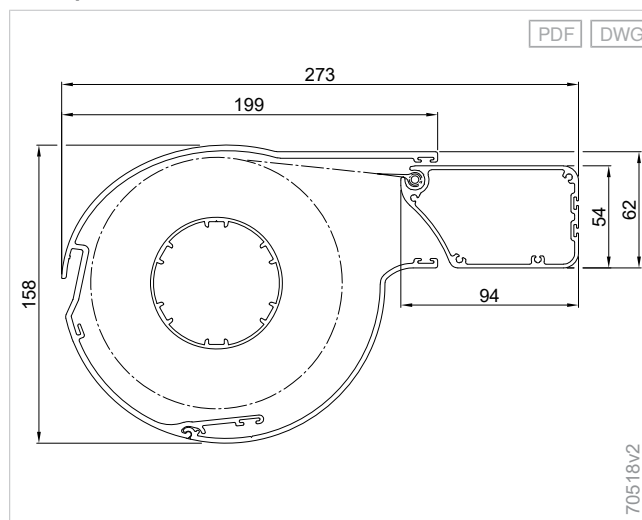
- H48
- H52
- H53
- SL01 - SL05
- SL11 - SL13

## Details

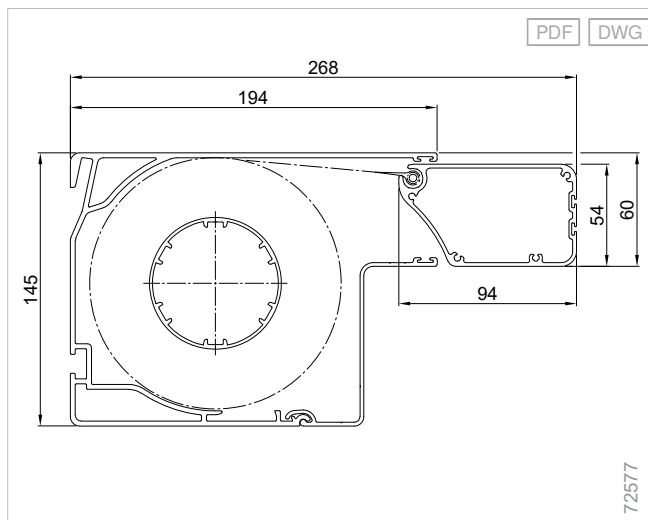
### Model B - W10<sup>2</sup>



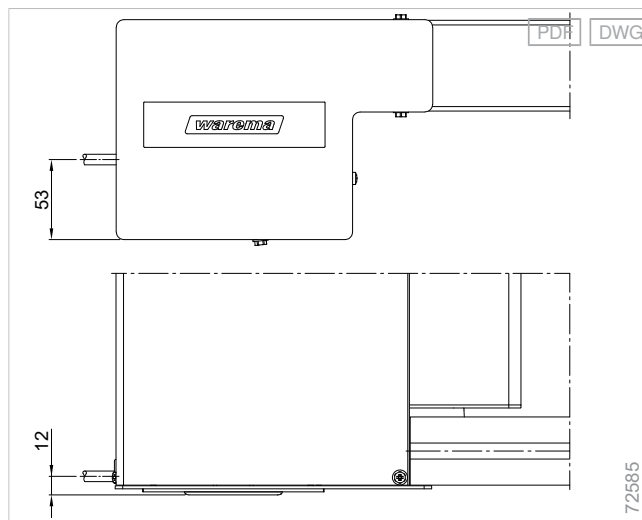
### Cover panel with front rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



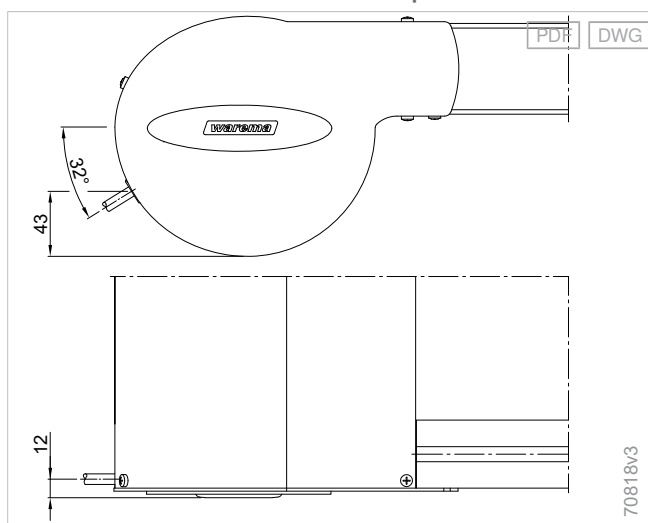
### Rectangular cover panel and front rail



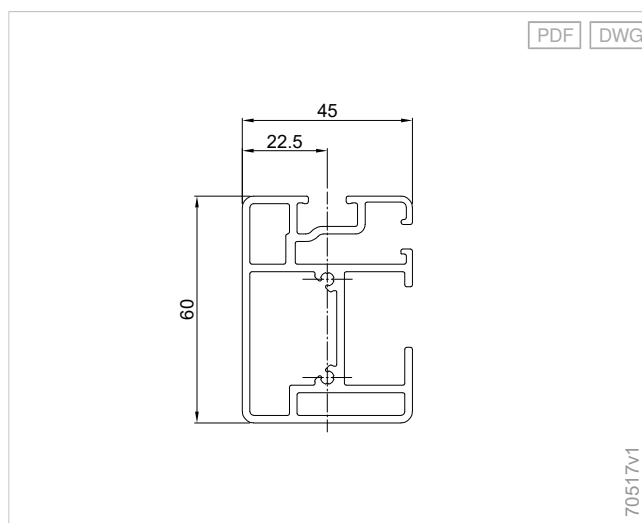
### Cable exit - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20 rectangular cover panel



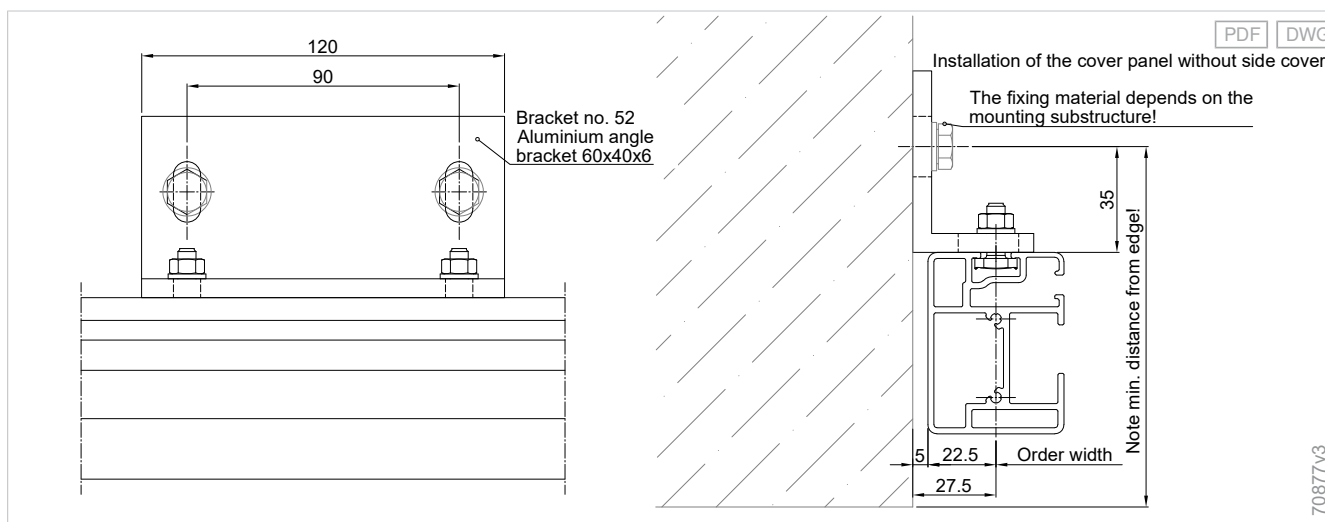
### Cable exit - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20 round cover panel



### Guide rail - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



### Wall installation - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

## Additional product information

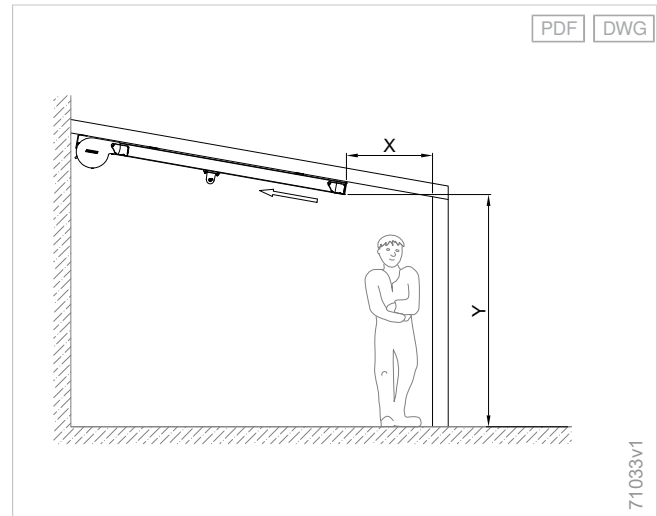
### Safety distances for automatic operation - under-glass conservatory awnings Climara

#### Warning!

If the **minimum distance Y** of **2.5 m** from the front rail to the pedestrian area is not maintained, for **automatic, unsupervised operation** of the conservatory awning, special protective measures (mechanical shielding, etc.) must be implemented to prevent risk of crushing and injury. When retracting and extending the awning, do not reach into any movable parts (e.g. between front rail and guide rail or between front rail and housing) or pull on the awning!

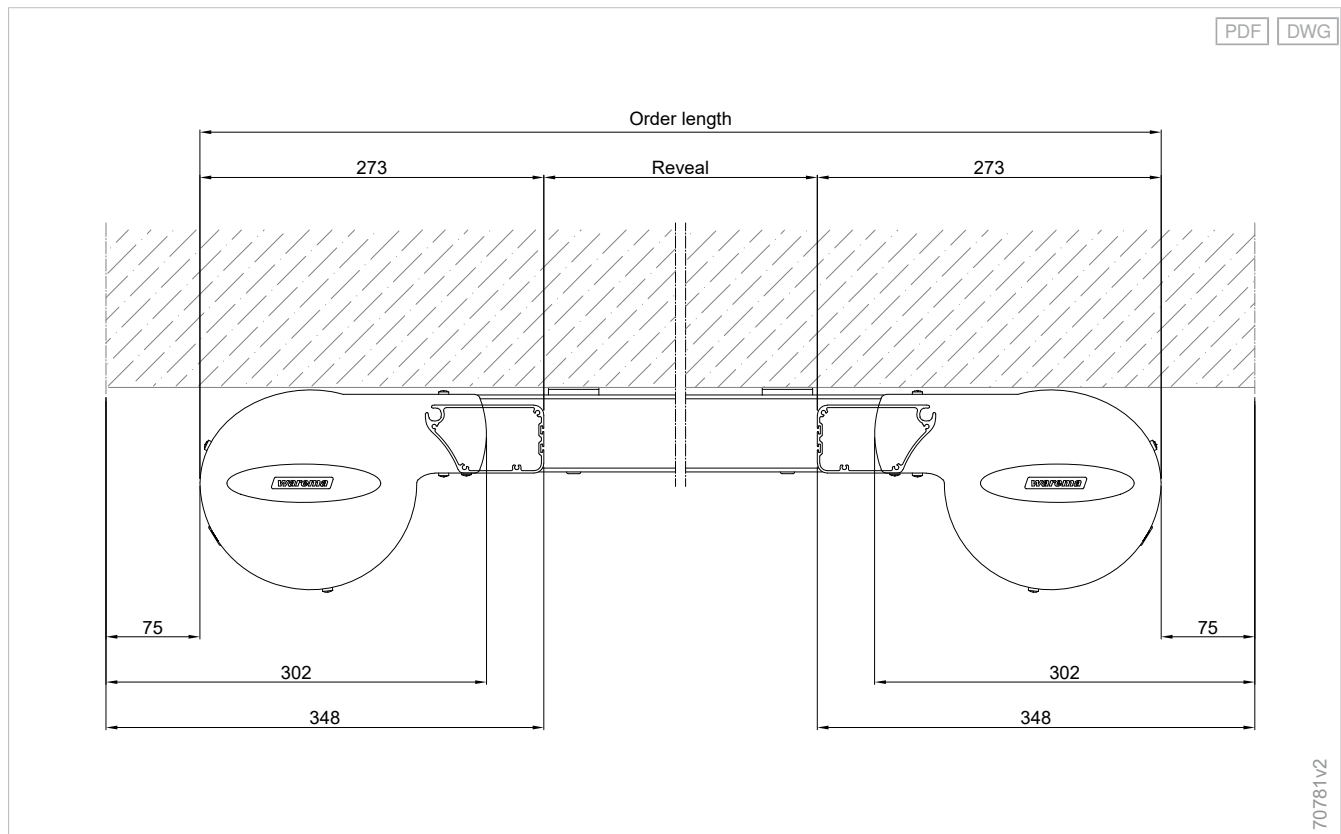
The **minimum distance X** between the extending front rail and any fixed or movable object must be at least **400 mm** if there is an accessible area in between.

Clearance/minimum distances (diagram) for internal units

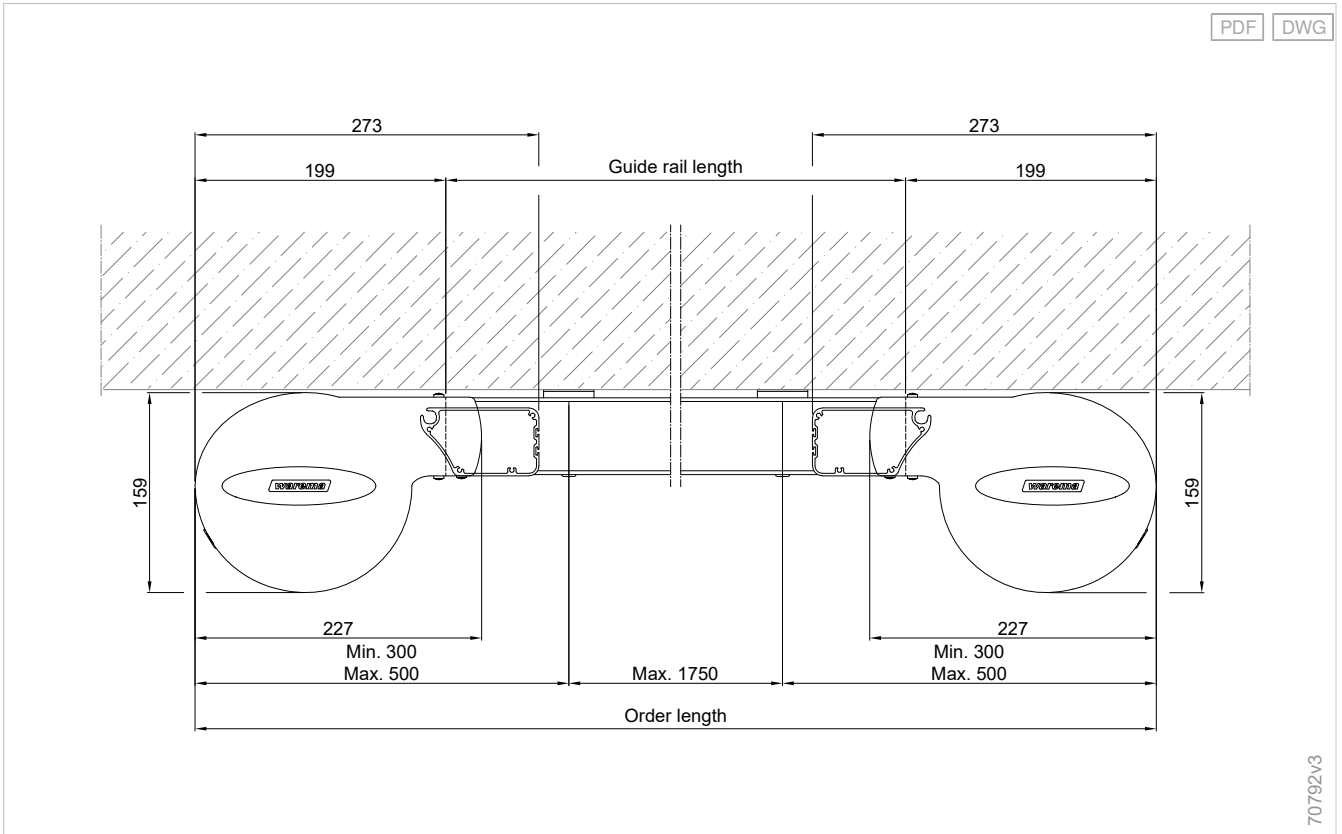


## Mounting examples

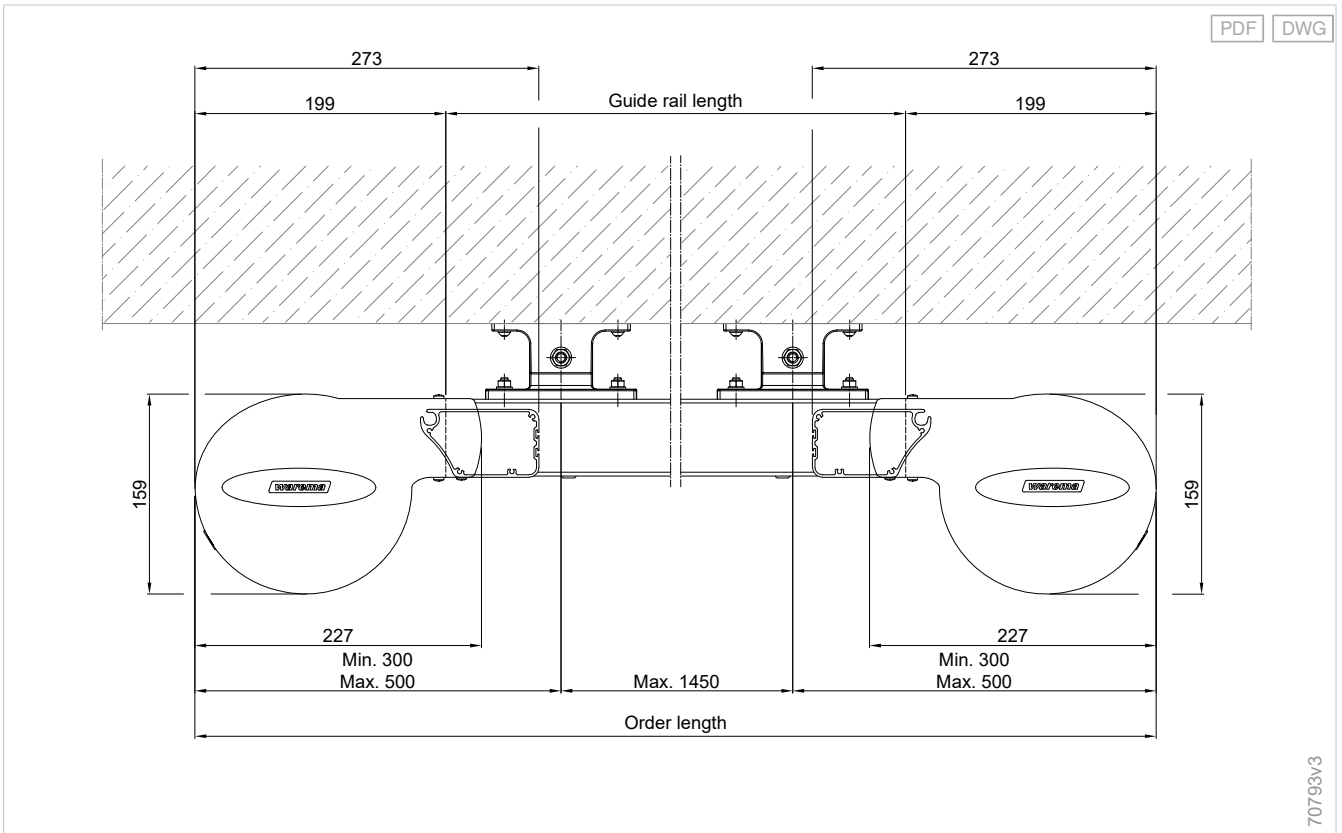
### Installation in front of the reveal - W10<sup>2</sup>



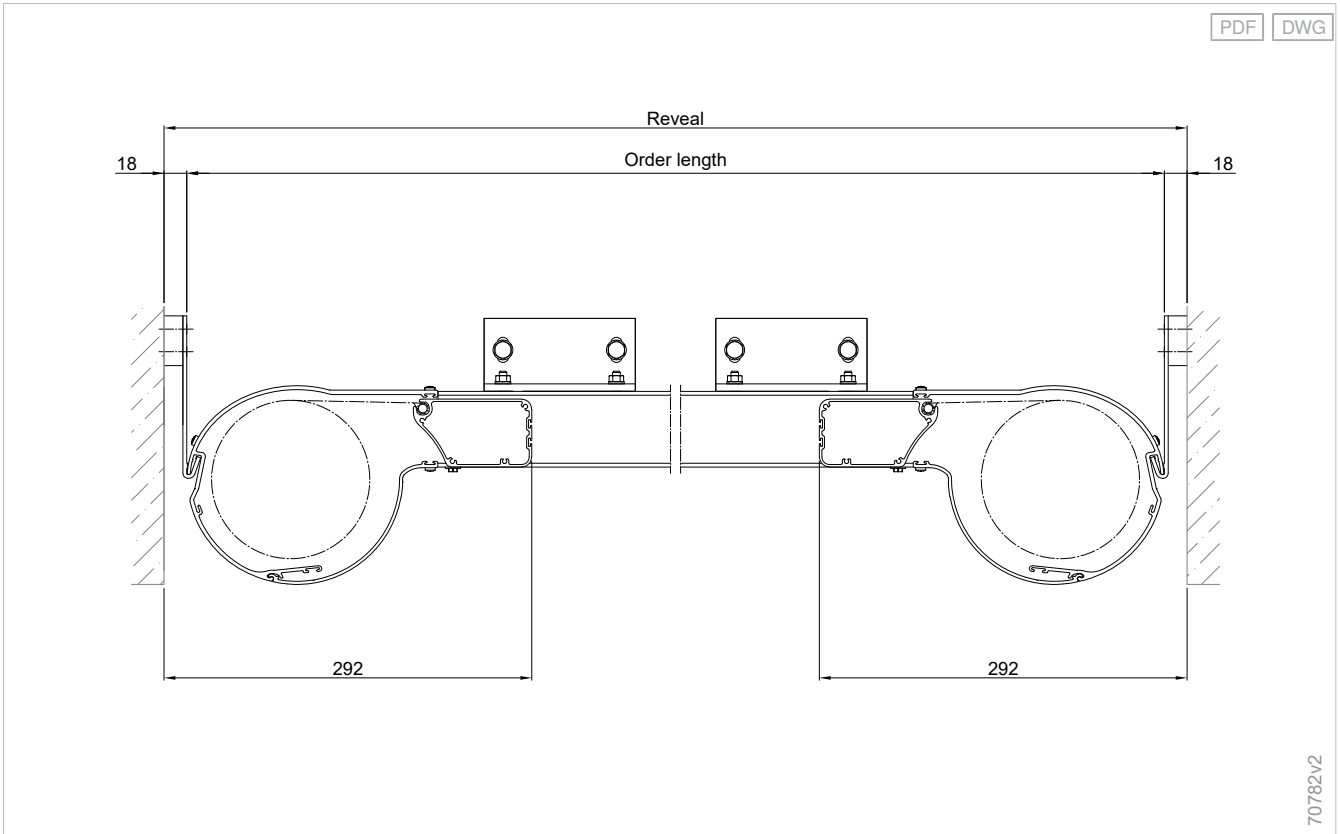
Installation in front of the reveal - W10<sup>2</sup>



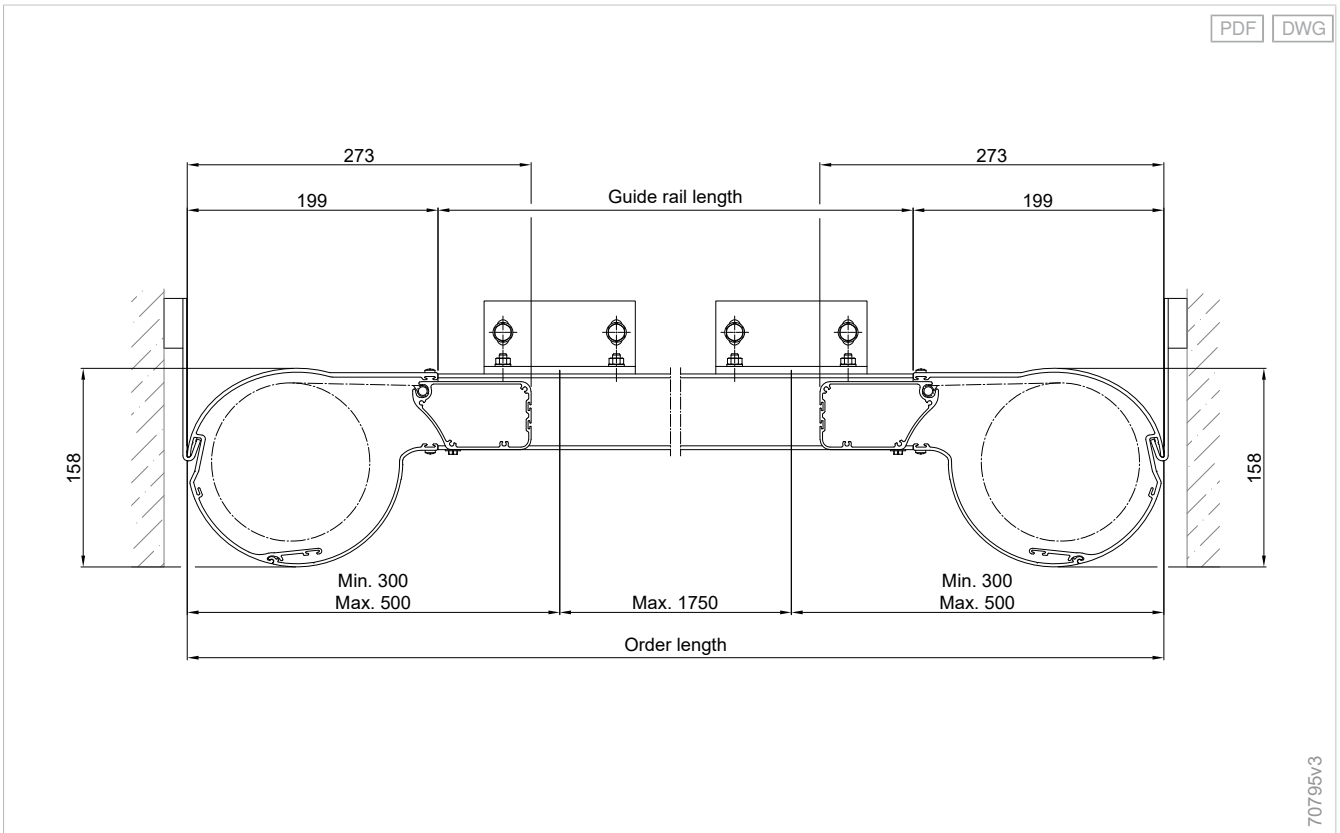
Installed in front of the reveal, distance 60 mm - W10<sup>2</sup>



### Installation in the reveal - W10<sup>2</sup>

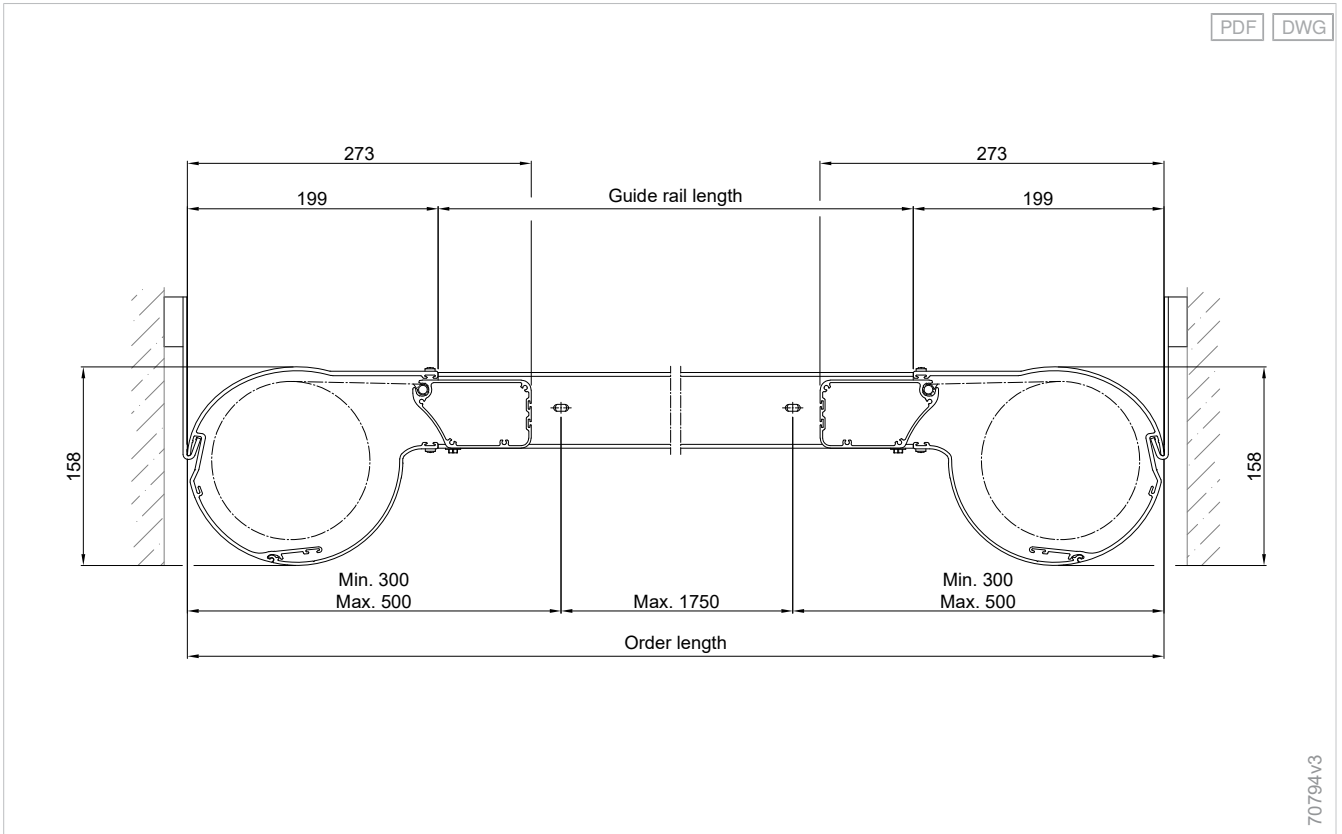


### Installation in the reveal, reveal angle bracket - W10<sup>2</sup>

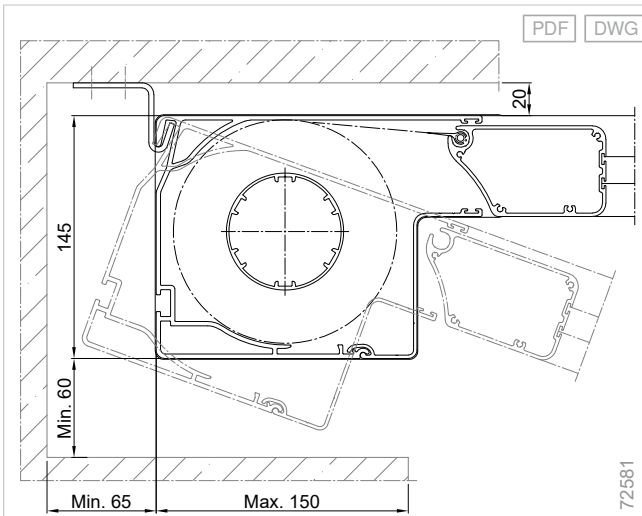




Installation in reveal, direct installation - W10<sup>2</sup>



Space for installing cover panels on consoles - W10/W10<sup>2</sup> rectangular cover panel



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards



# Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass

Conservatory awning Climara D3.....	276
Conservatory awning Climara W7.....	292
Conservatory awning Climara W19.....	298
Conservatory awning Climara W20.....	310

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass

### Conservatory awning Climara D3

#### Exceptional

Adapts to unusual geometries: The awning shades triangular and trapezoid-shaped glass surfaces.

#### Combinable

All-in-one: In combination with the Climara W19 or W20, a uniform appearance is created.

#### Taut

Good fabric tension: Due to the pre-tension of the spring mechanism, the fabric is stretched taut and withstands blowing wind.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	4000 mm
Maximum order length	5000 mm
Maximum order area	10 m <sup>2</sup>

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036174](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/2021515.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Fastener Assistant](#)

[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

## Components

### Conservatory awning Climara D3



- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric

- 4 Guide rail
- 5 Reinforcement profile
- 6 Traction cable

### Cover panel

#### Round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	199 mm
Height	158 mm

#### + Side cover

#### Side cover for round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	227 mm
Height	159 mm

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	85 mm

### Reinforcement profile

#### Reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	40 mm

### Bracket

- Bracket H11
- Bracket H46
- Bracket H34
- Bracket H36
- Bracket H41
- Bracket H60
- Bracket H62
- Bracket H81
- Bracket H82
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 418

## Guide variants

- Back-pull

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - D3/W9/W19

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Height	64 mm

## Pulling element

### Traction cable

Material	Polyester
Material colour	Black
Material, notes	Core made from DYNEEMA® fibre

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- ZM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-MP (WMS)
- W-MP (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Maximum order length	Maximum order area
<b>Fabric qualities</b>				
Acrylic plain coloured / Starlight Blue - Unicoloured / Twilight Pearl	820 mm	4000 mm	5000 mm	10 m <sup>2</sup>
Soltis 92	820 mm	3000 mm	4000 mm	6 m <sup>2</sup>

### Reinforcement profile:

- For order lengths of 2501 mm and greater, a reinforcement profile is used.
- It is located at 1/3 of the order length away from the cover panel.

### Angle A:

- Angle A must be between 19° and 45° in the **trapezoid** model.
- For the **triangle** model, angle A can be max. 45°.
- For **other angles**, please contact our Awnings Applied Engineering department.
- There may be increased wave formation in the limit range of the sizes. This, however, does not impair the functioning of the unit.
- There is always a piece of straight guide rail between the cover panel and angle bracket A. The dimension from the cover panel back edge to the end of the straight guide rail is 300 mm and cannot be changed.

### Calculation of the order area:

- Triangle = (order width x order length)/2
- Trapezoid = (width of the front end + order width)/2 x order length

**Use as an internal sun shading system:** Conservatory awnings D3 can also be used as **internal sun shading systems** on request.

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

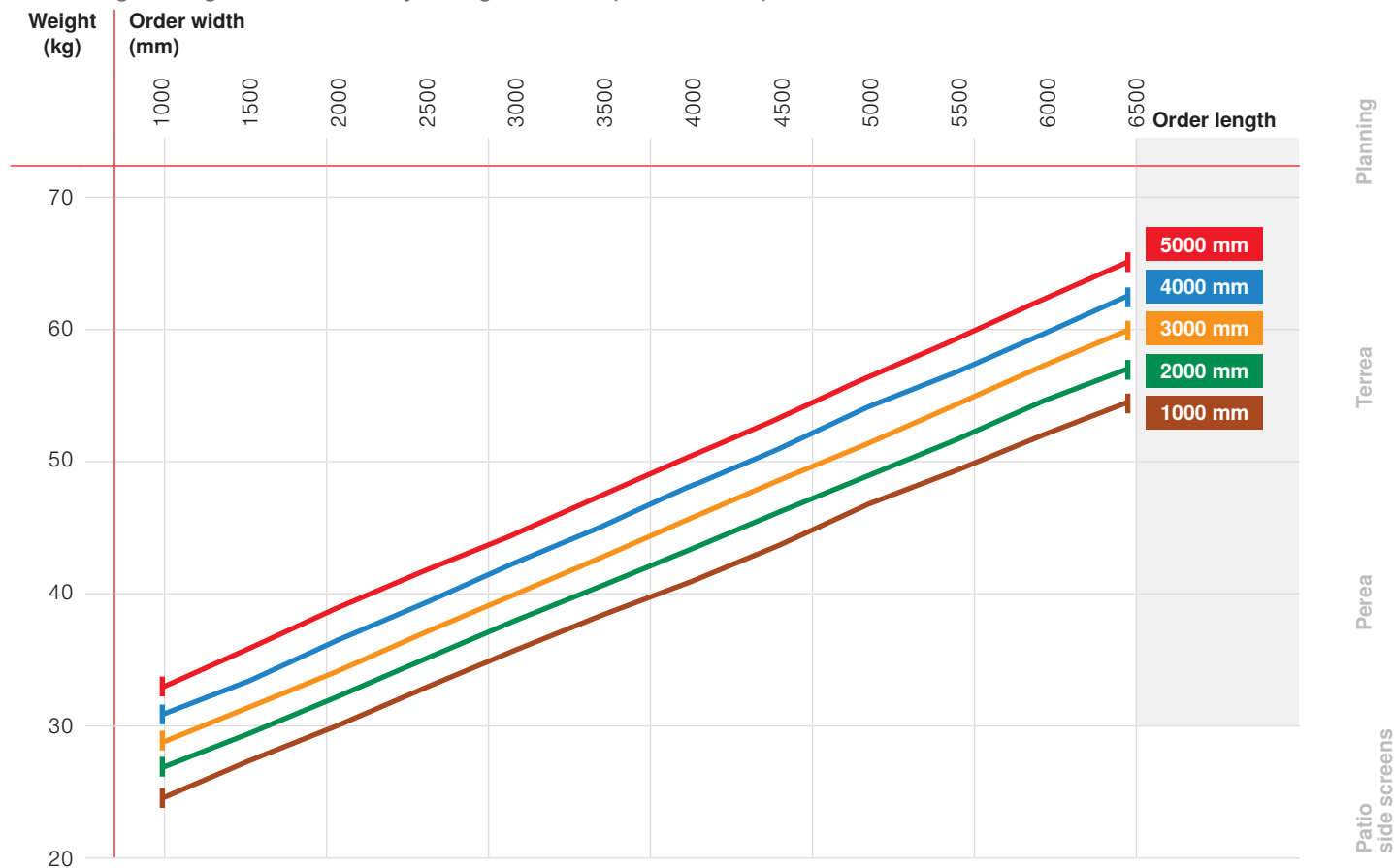
- Acrylic plain coloured

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Starlight Blue - Unicoloured
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

Determining the weight of a conservatory awning Climara D3 (motorised unit)



## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 15 - 17 kg/lfm

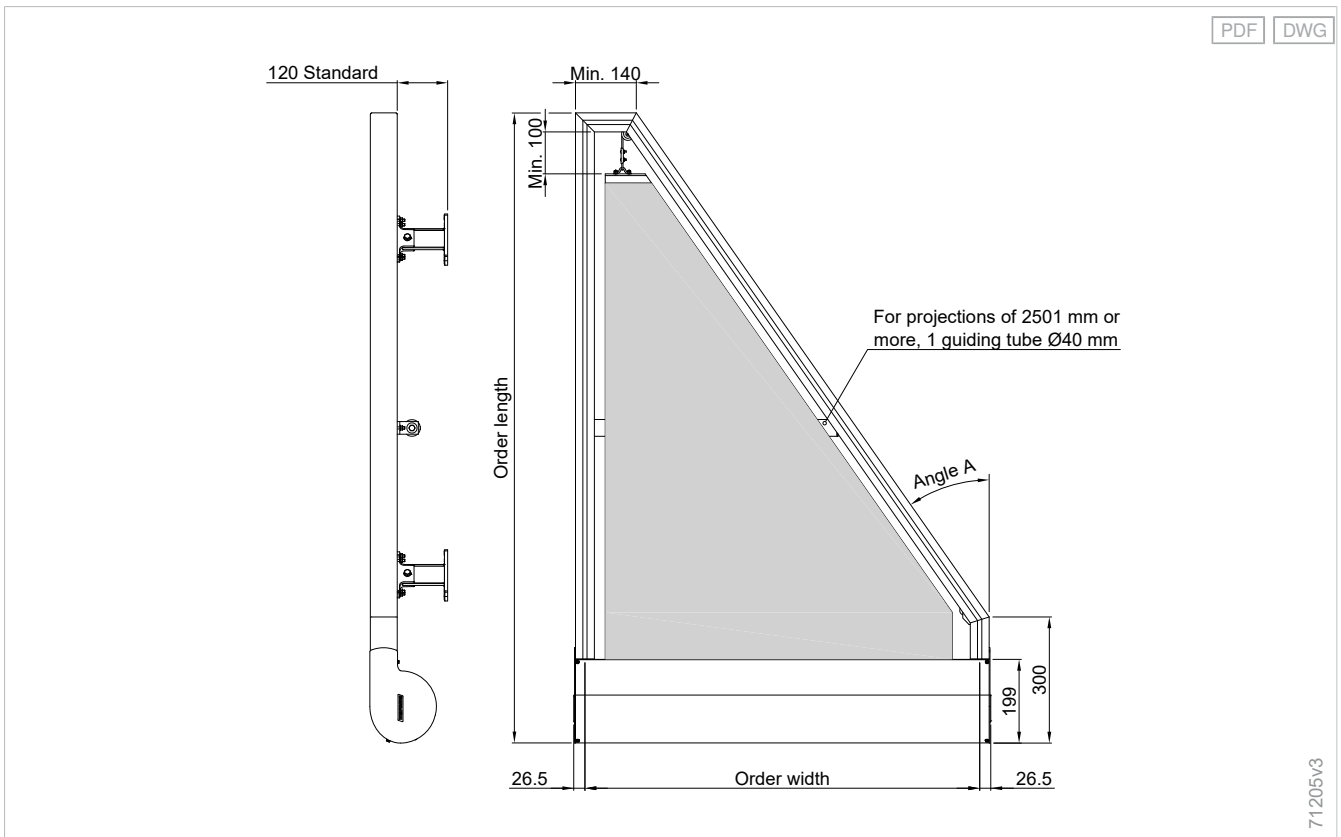
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

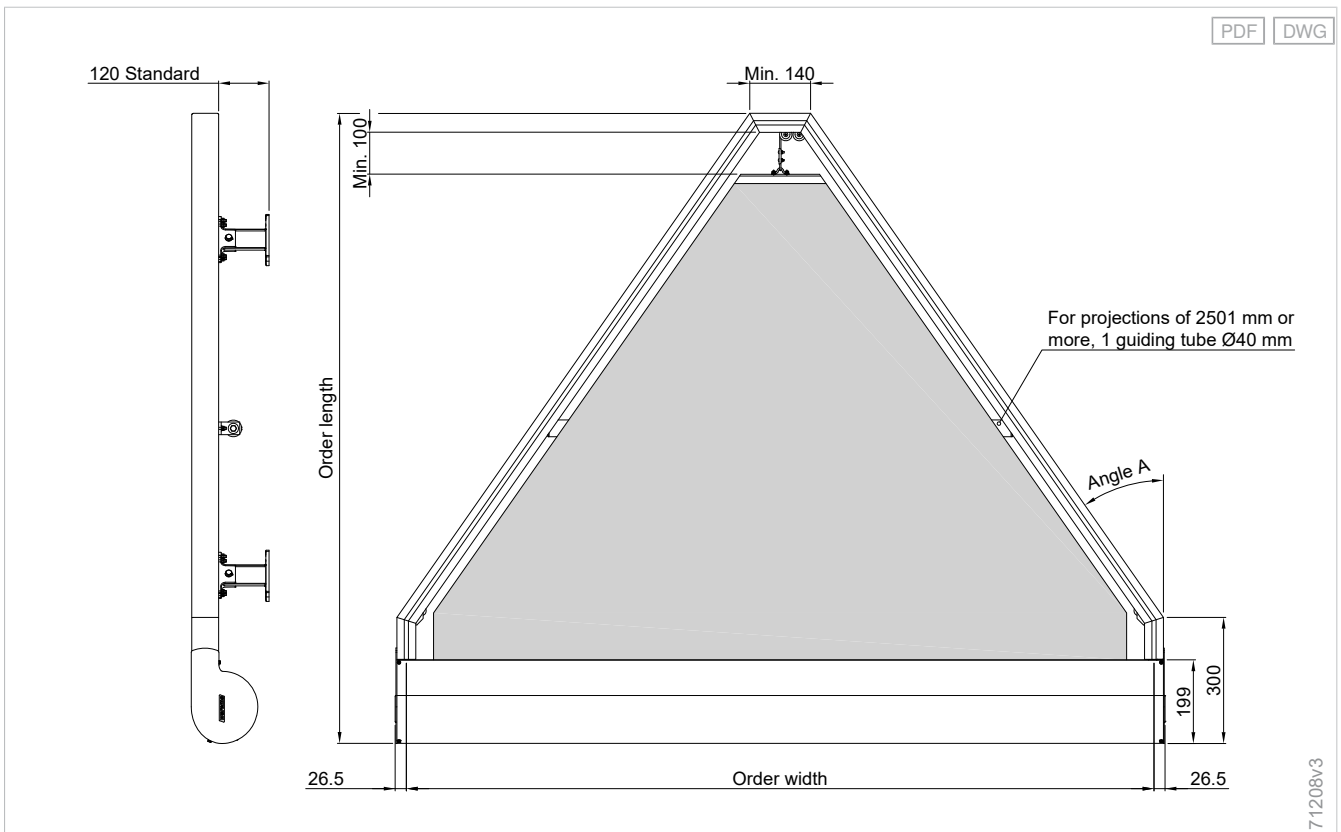
The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis.

### Rectangular unit - D3

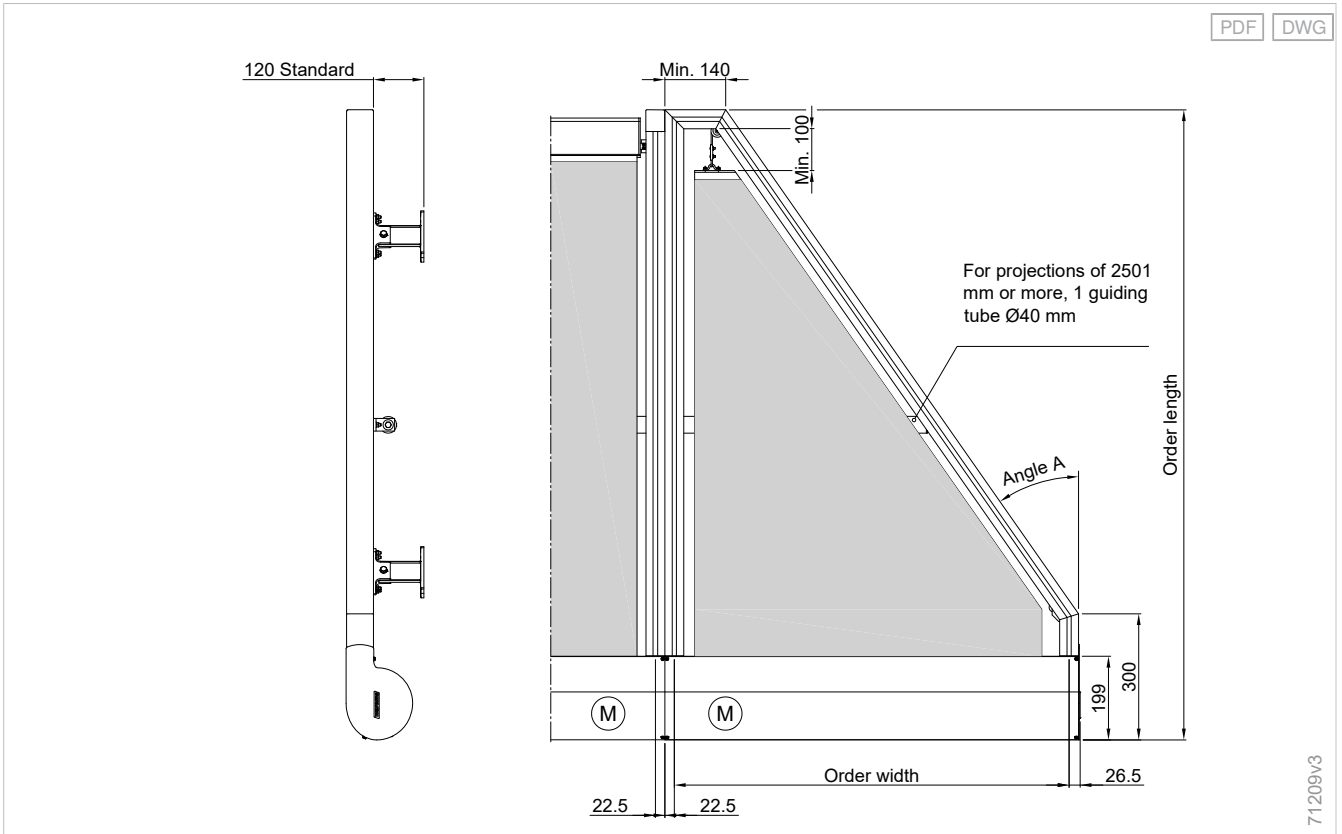


### Isosceles unit - D3

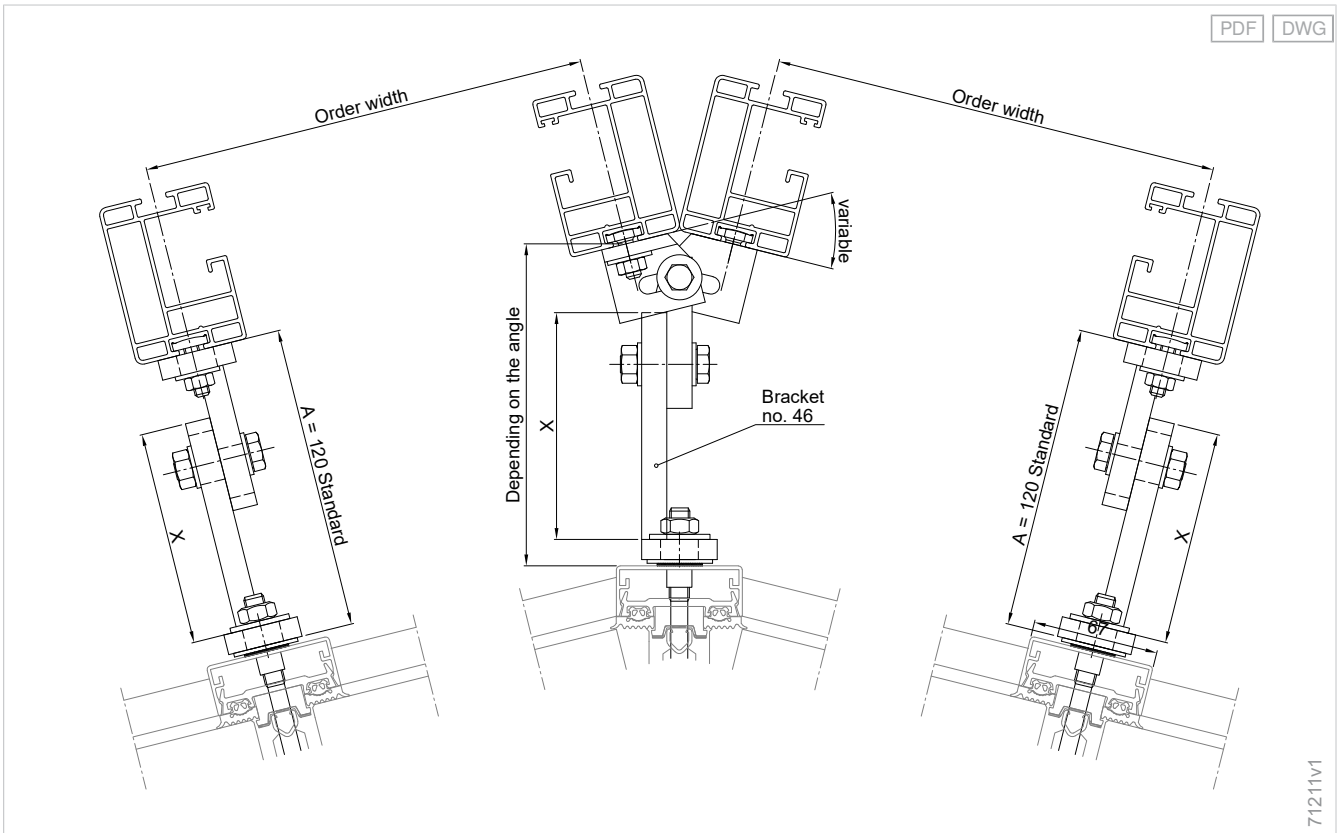




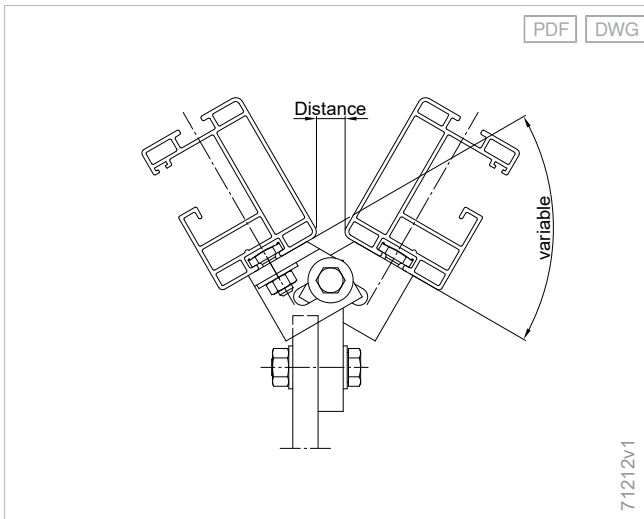
Connection to a conservatory awning W19 - D3



Guide rails with bracket no. 46 on arris profile - D3



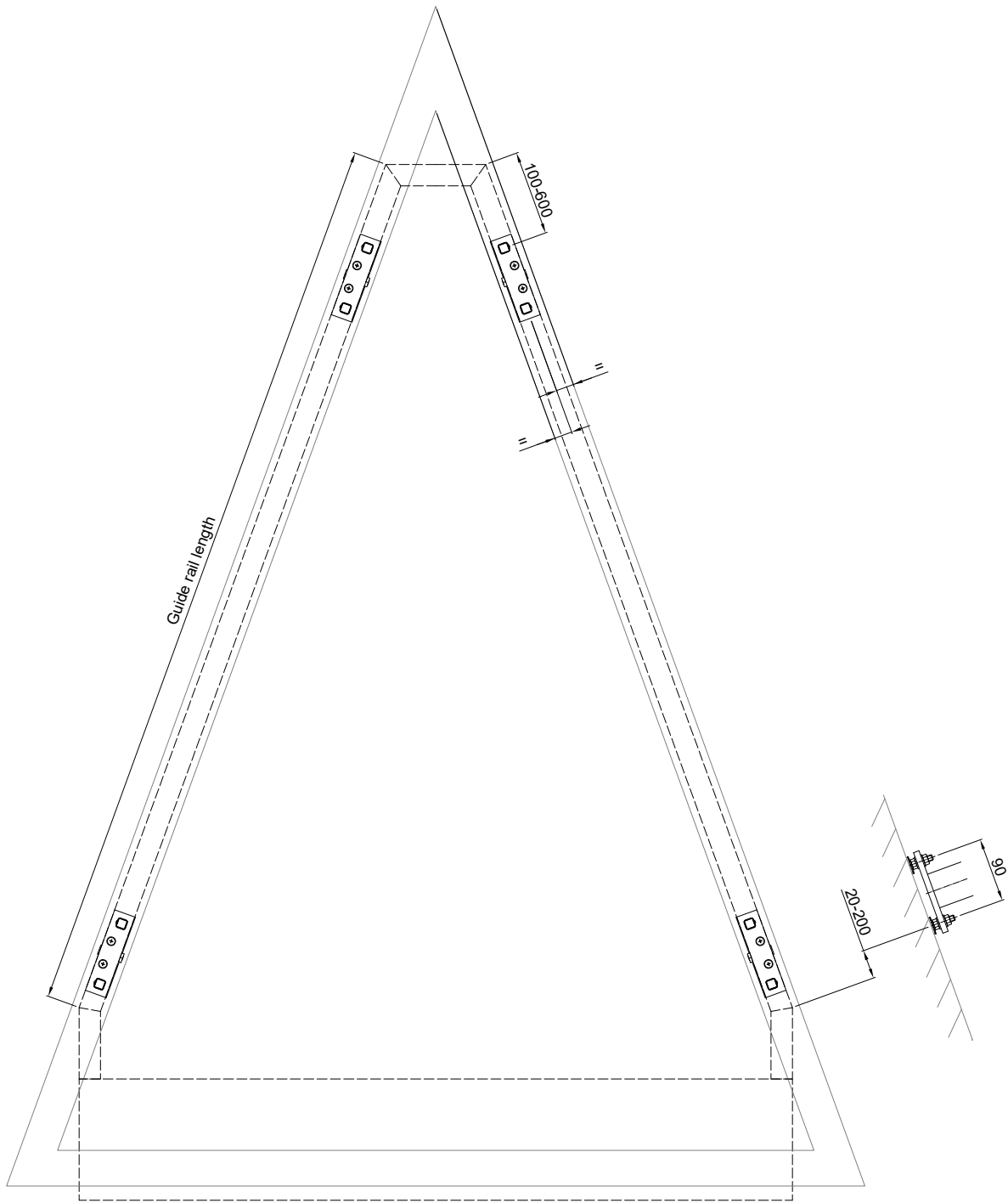
Spacing, bracket no. 46 - D3



The bracket no. 46 is designed for a distance between the guide rails of 5 mm.

Mullion/transom construction - D3

PDF DWG



73528

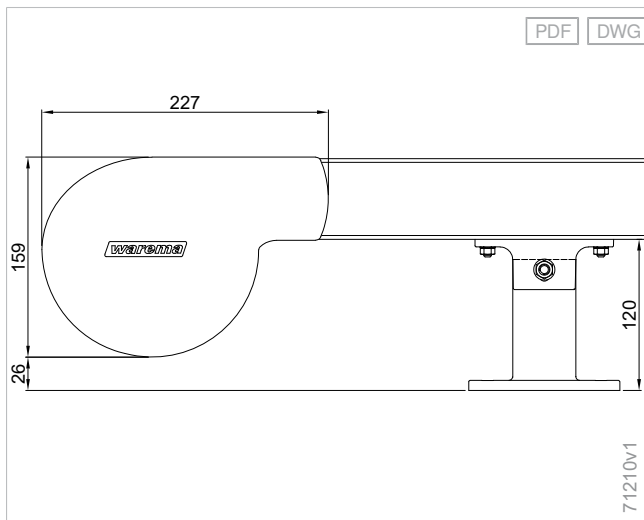
## Quantity determination

### Number of guide rail brackets

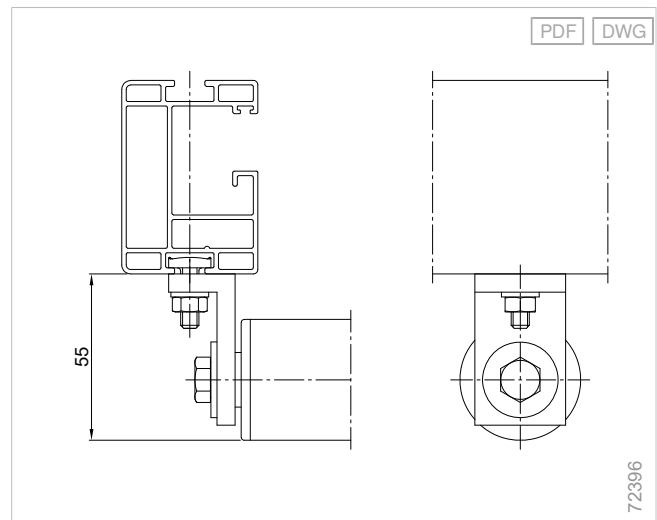
Configuration variants	Guide rail length	Number
Components		
Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara	0 - 2500 mm	2
Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara	2501 - 4500 mm	3
Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara	4501 - 6000 mm	4

## Details

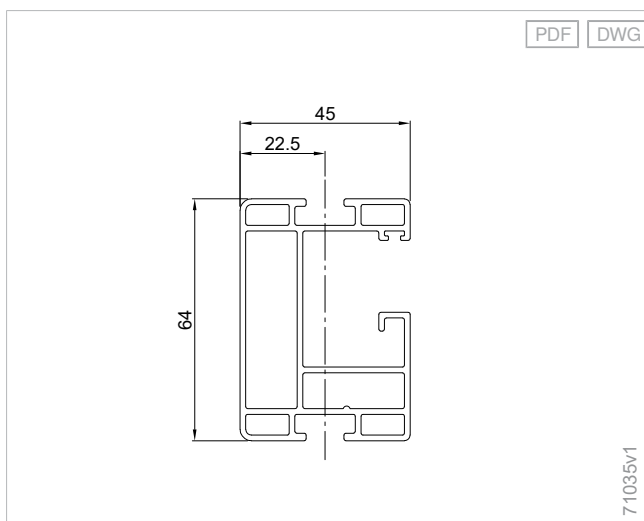
### Cover panel - D3



### Reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm

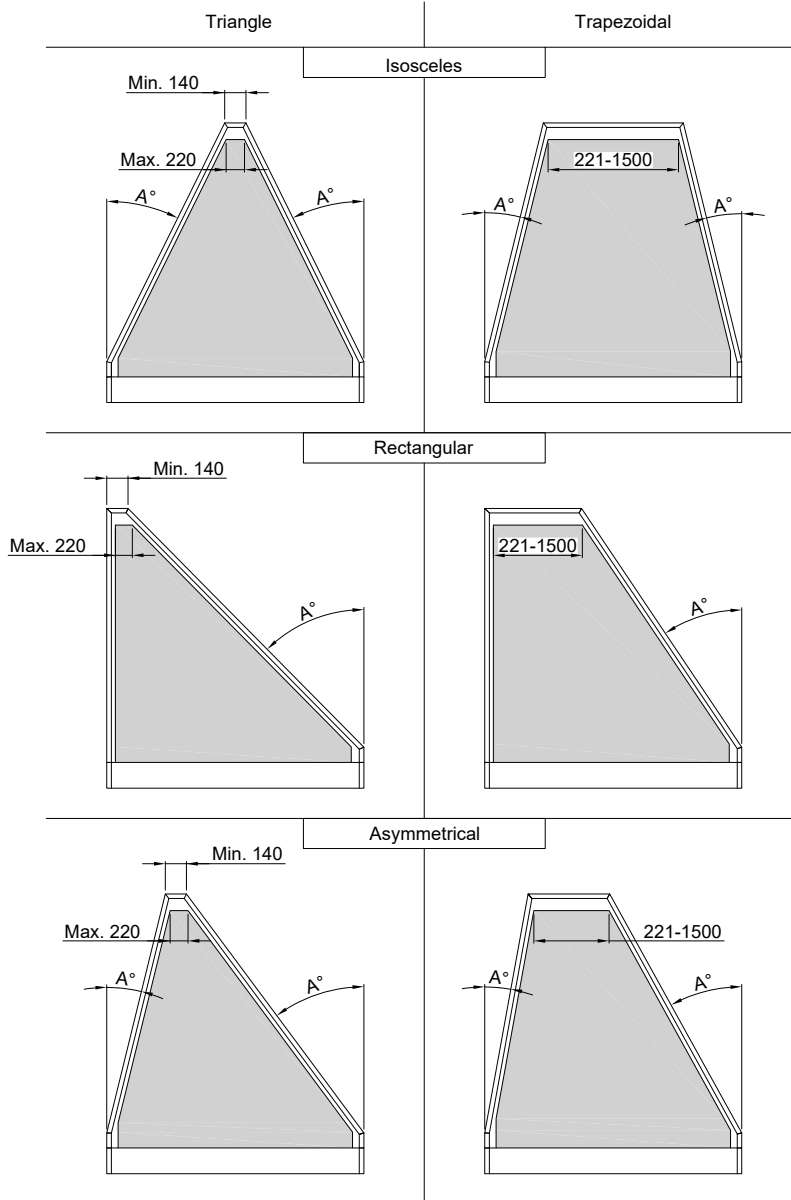


### Guide rail - D3/W9/W19



Triangles and trapezoids - D3

PDF DWG



73529

## Additional product information

### Measurement - Climara D3

#### When measuring, check:

- How is the sun shading system positioned on the building (exposure to wind, courtyard, corner of building, floor level)? Take photos if possible.
- What are the local conditions, such as adjacent components or obstacles (house wall, glass edge, roof overhang, etc.)?
- Are any skylights fitted (lift, type)?
- How is the arris profile structured (cover strip, mounting substructure, dimensions)? Design of the other profiles? (Make sketches)
- Is accessibility for installation purposes ensured?
- Where does the motor have to be positioned?
- What is the roof pitch (angle measured from the horizontals)?
- What are the dimensions of the glass (make sketches)?

#### All measurements are actual lengths!

#### The following information must be included in the order:

- Glass angles, widths and heights, mullion lengths, distance to obstacles, protrusions, adjacent obstacles
- Detailed drawing of the profile joints, last fastening point on the pole
- Detail of roof gutter
- Enlarged illustration of the corner details

#### Specifically for pyramids:

Point **with dome** (make sketches)

- If cone-shaped, measure lateral height and diameter.
- If pyramid-shaped, specify the number of sides, measure the edge length and side length.
- Is it movable (lifting of dome for ventilation)?

Point **without dome** (make sketches)

- Make a sketch of the profile joint (important for fixing)

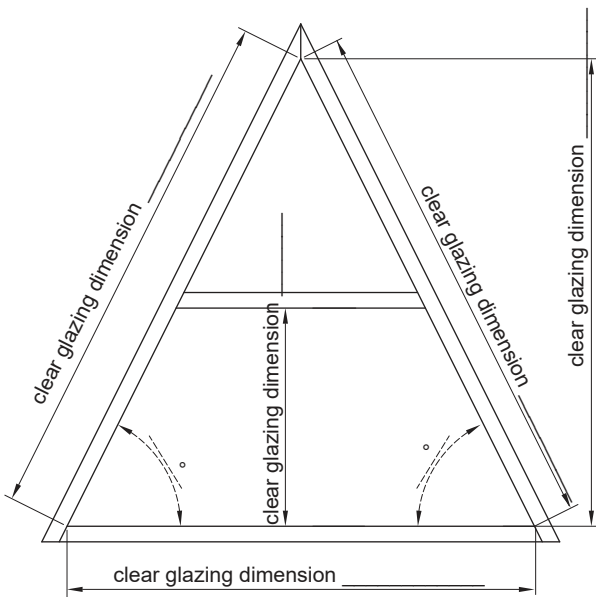
For connecting type W19 or W20, standard guide rail brackets for group units of type W19 and W20 can be used.

Bracket no. 46 allows installation on an arris profile.

**Triangles**

**isosceles/asymmetrical**

Pos. \_\_\_\_\_



Covering shell width: \_\_\_\_\_

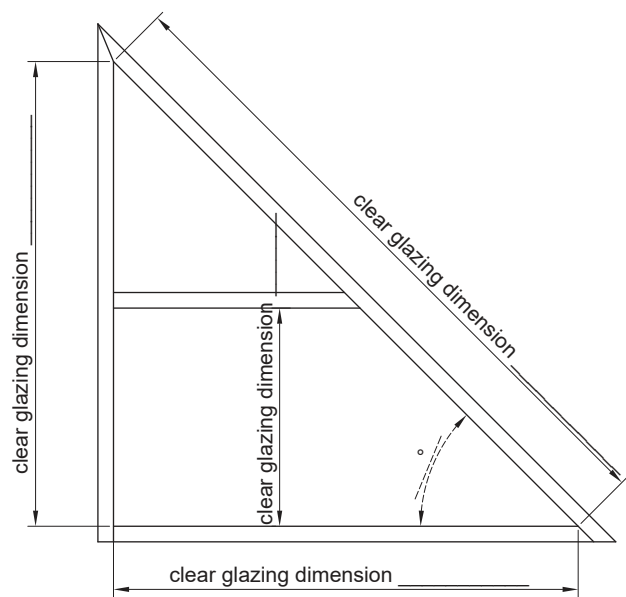
L

State drive end

R

**rectangular**

Pos. \_\_\_\_\_



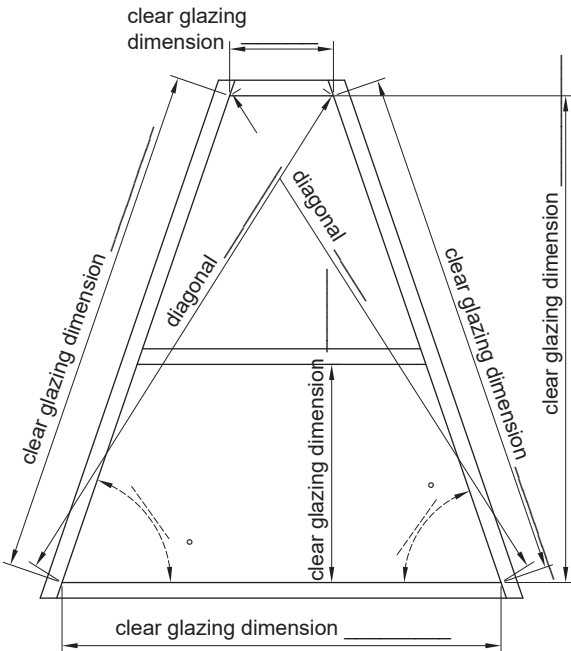
Covering shell width: \_\_\_\_\_

L

**Trapezia**

**isosceles/asymmetrical**

Pos. \_\_\_\_\_



Covering shell width: \_\_\_\_\_

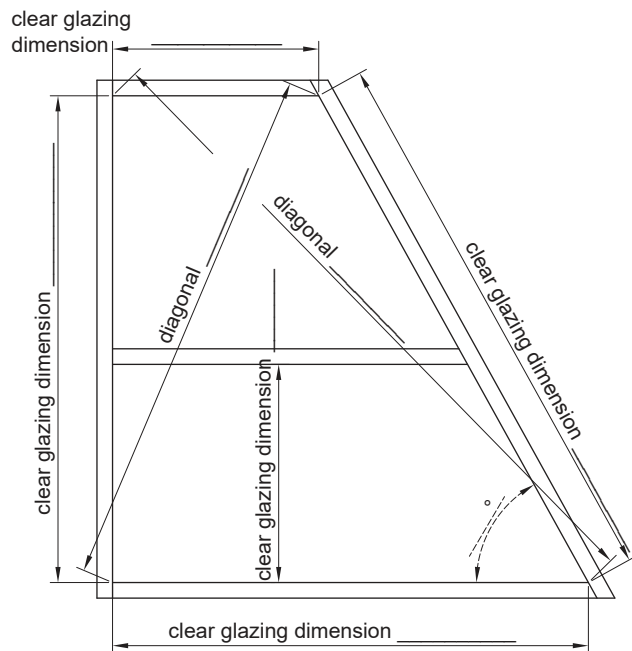
L

State drive end

R

**rectangular**

Pos. \_\_\_\_\_



Covering shell width: \_\_\_\_\_

L

F333102de\_RSv1

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

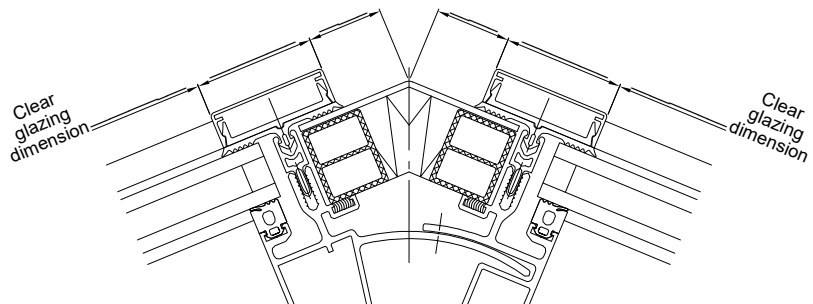
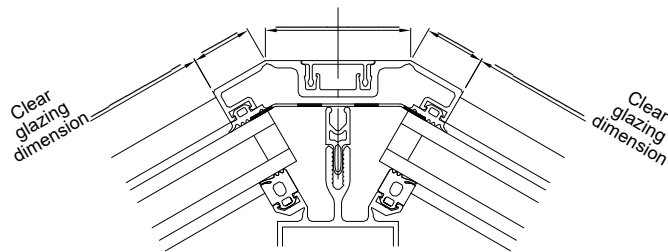
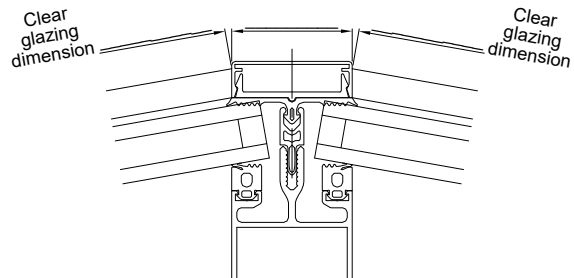
Supplementary accessories

Components

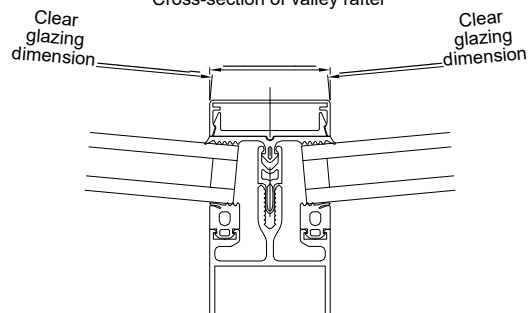
Drive variants

Standards

Cross-section of hip rafter



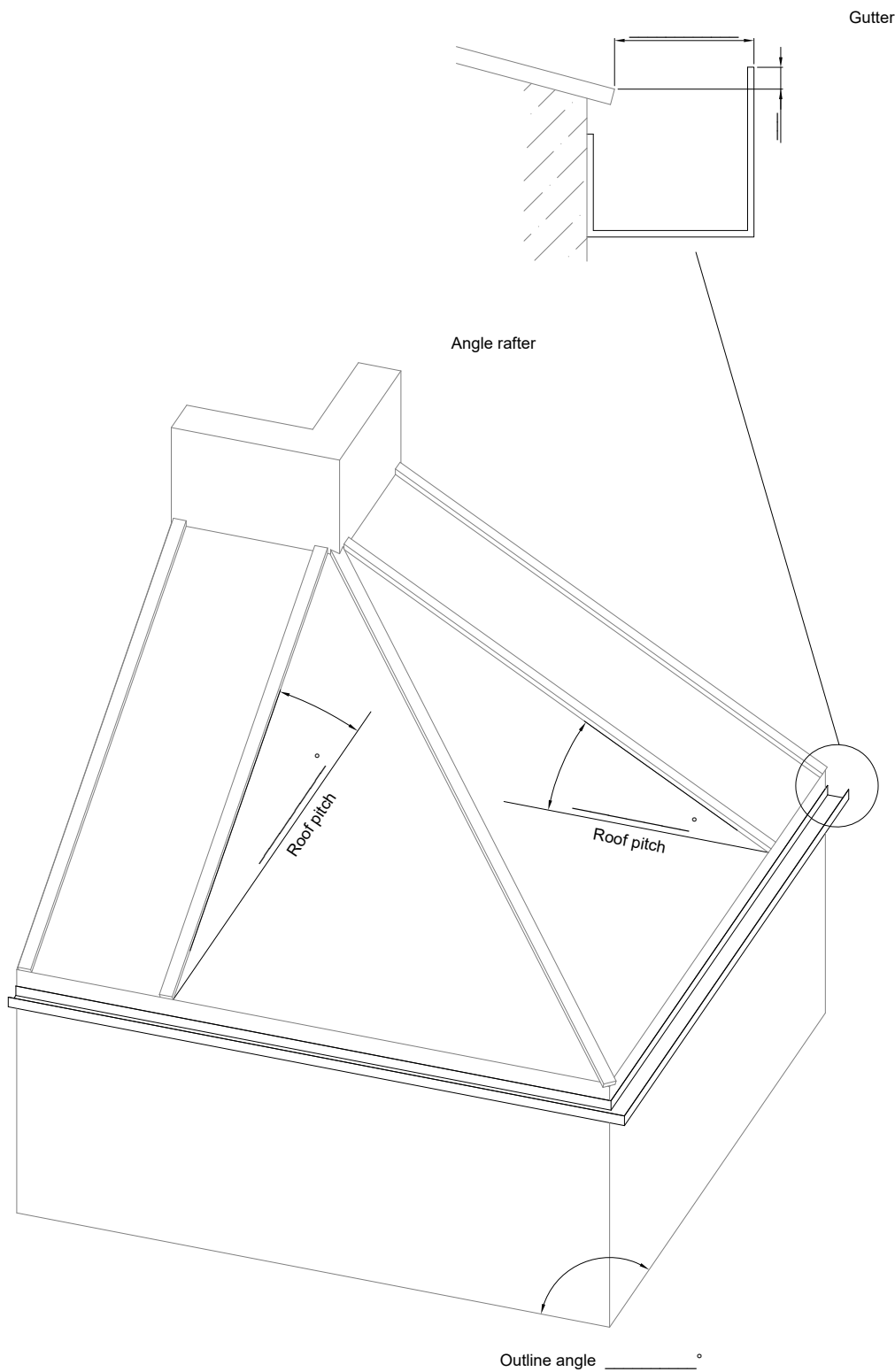
Cross-section of valley rafter





Gutter measurement sheet - D3

PDF DWG

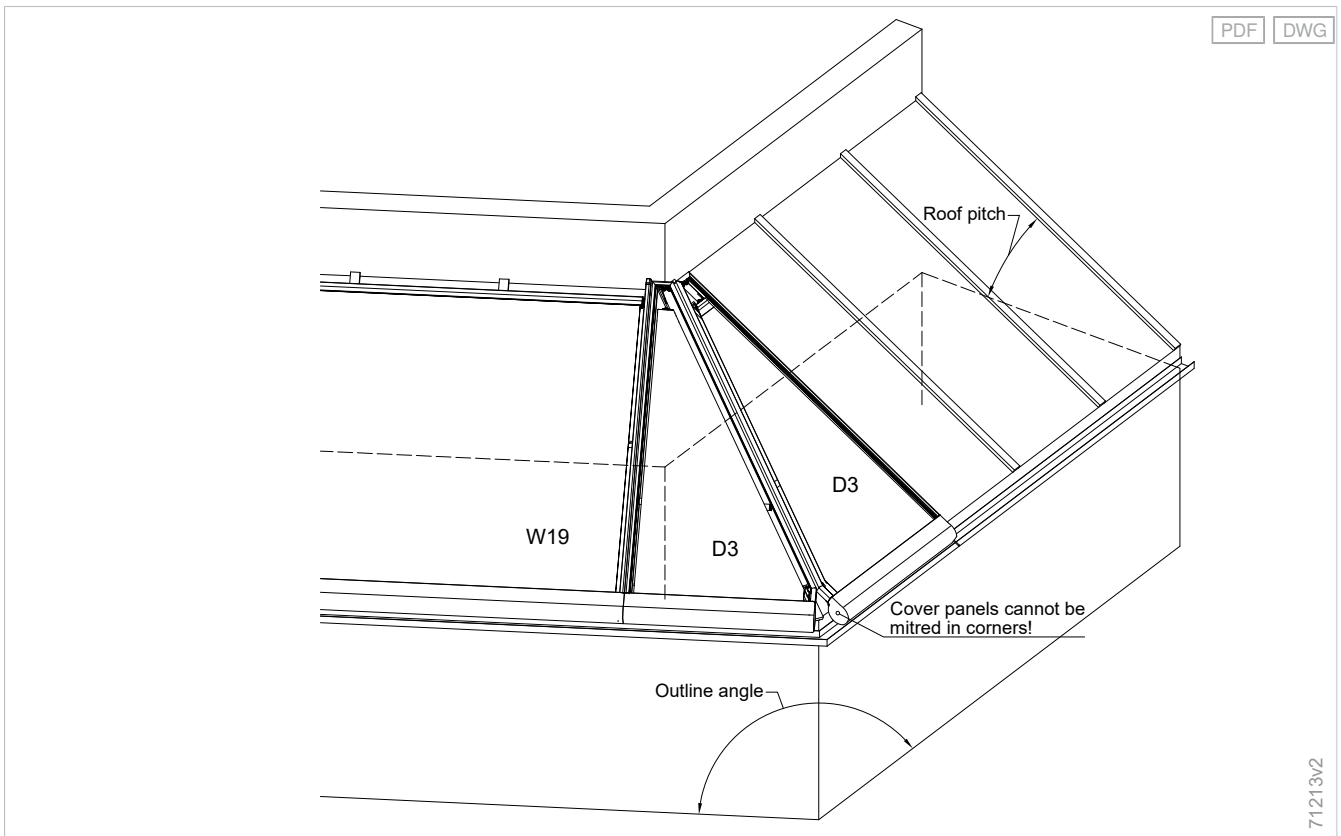


73631

- Planning
- Terrea
- Perea
- Patio side screens
- Climara**
- Supplementary accessories
- Components
- Drive variants
- Standards

# Mounting examples

Corner area - D3







## Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass

### Conservatory awning Climara W7

#### Discreet

Unobtrusive integration: The guide rails sit on the existing conservatory profiles.

#### Outstanding

The fabric extends beyond the guide rails - and reaches even hard-to-shade areas in your pitched or sloped conservatory.

#### Taut

Good fabric tension: Gas pressure springs in the guide rails tension the fabric to withstand blowing wind.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6000 mm
Maximum order length	4500 mm
Maximum order area	24 m <sup>2</sup>

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036173](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/878153.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Fastener Assistant](#)

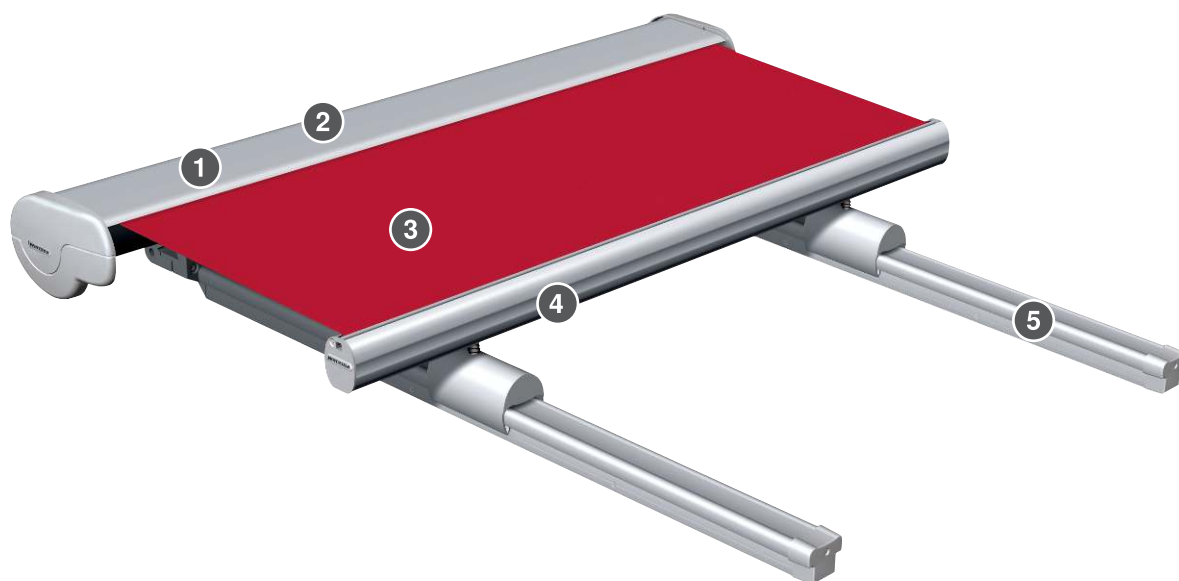
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

Conservatory awning Climara W7



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric

- 4 Front rail
- 5 Guide rail

## Cover panel

### Cover panel - W7

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	214 mm
Height	157 mm

### + Side cover

#### Cover panel side cover - W7

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	85 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - W7

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	84 mm
Height	64 mm

## Bracket

- Bracket H70
- Bracket H72

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 418

## Guide variants

### Guide rail

#### Guide rail - W7

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	75 mm
Height	63 mm

## Drive variants

- Motor

### Motor

- WM IMP

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Notes

### Notes on installation

Bracket no. 72 is supplied as standard.

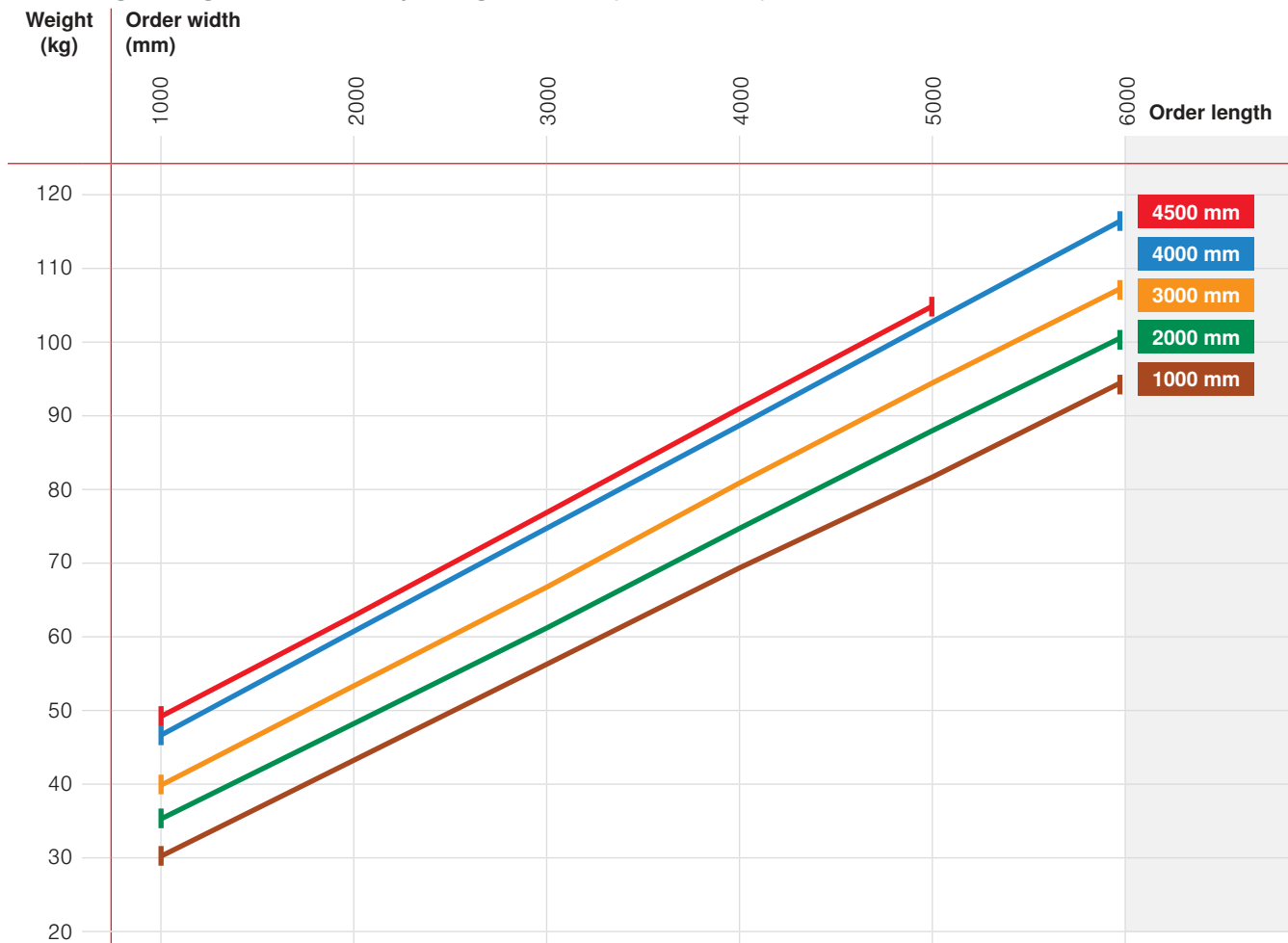
## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order length	Maximum order length	Maximum order area
<b>Fabric qualities</b>					
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue	800 mm	6000 mm	1000 mm	4000 mm	24 m <sup>2</sup>
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue	800 mm	5000 mm	1000 mm	4500 mm	24 m <sup>2</sup>
Soltis 92	800 mm	4000 mm	1000 mm	4000 mm	16 m <sup>2</sup>

### Fabric tension:

- Optimum fabric tension is achieved from a roof pitch of 15°.
- With smaller roof pitches, the awning fabric may rest on top of the guide rail.
- Always extend the awning out to its maximum projection, as when it reaches its end position a motor return pulse is automatically generated to re-stretch the awning fabric.
- **For order lengths of 4000 mm and greater, a roof pitch of at least 15° is required.**

### Determining the weight of a conservatory awning Climara W7 (motorised unit)



## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 14 - 18 kg/lfm

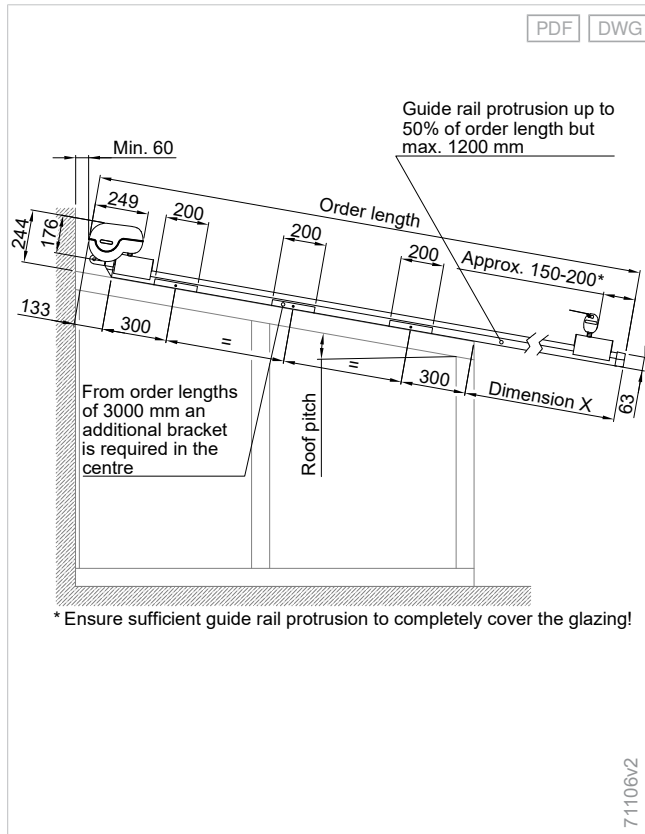
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

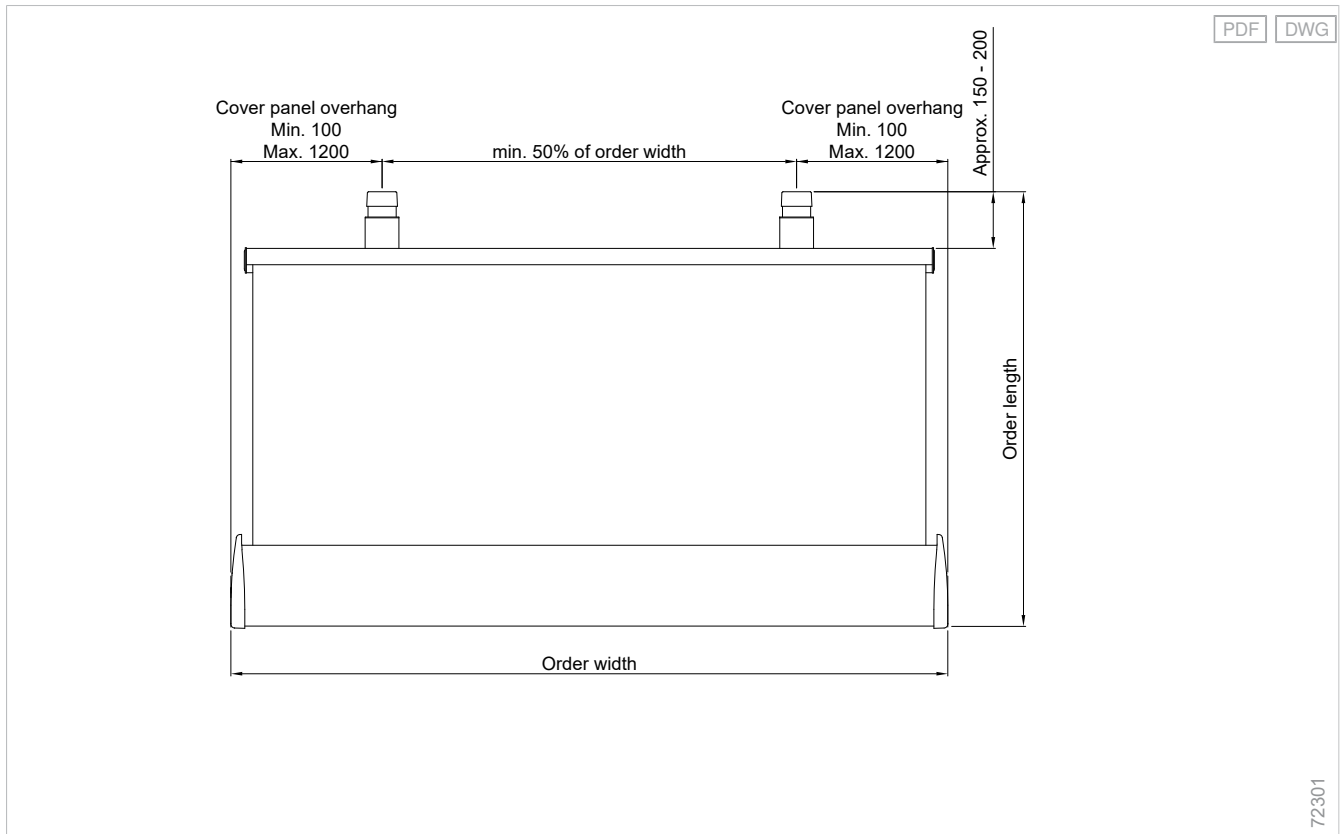
## Dimension determination

The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

**Order width** = from outer edge of side cover to outer edge of side cover.

### Measuring instructions - W7



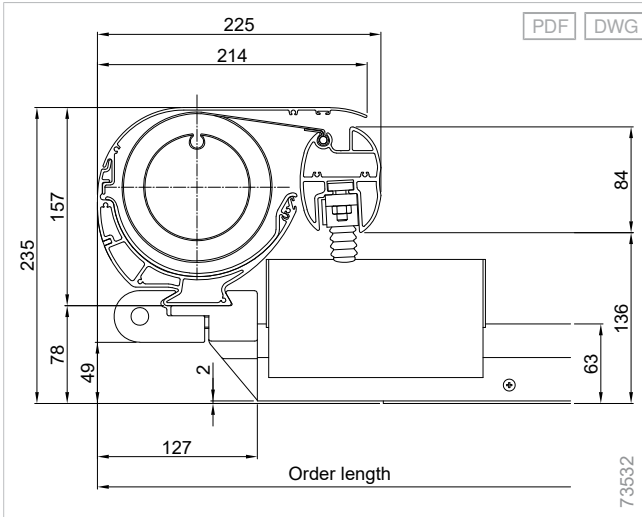
**Cover panel overhang:**

- The cover panel overhang on the left and right should be symmetrical, even for conservatories sloped on one side.
- The maximum permissible deviation from the symmetry for acrylic fabric is 200 mm.
- For Soltis-92, the guide rails must be offset in parallel in order to achieve an even tensioning of the fabric.

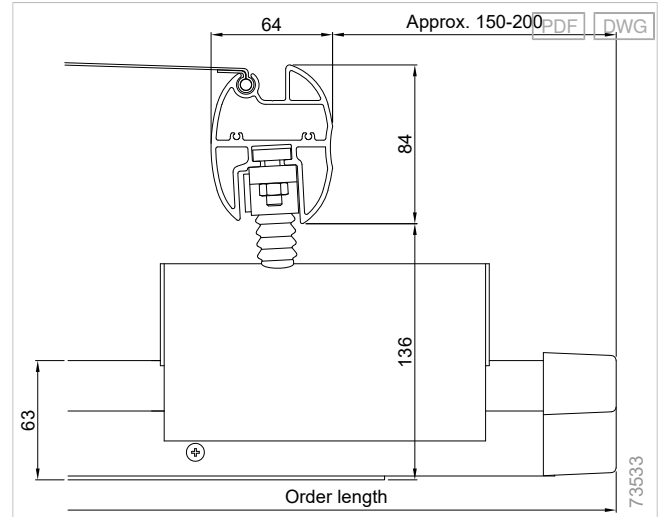


## Details

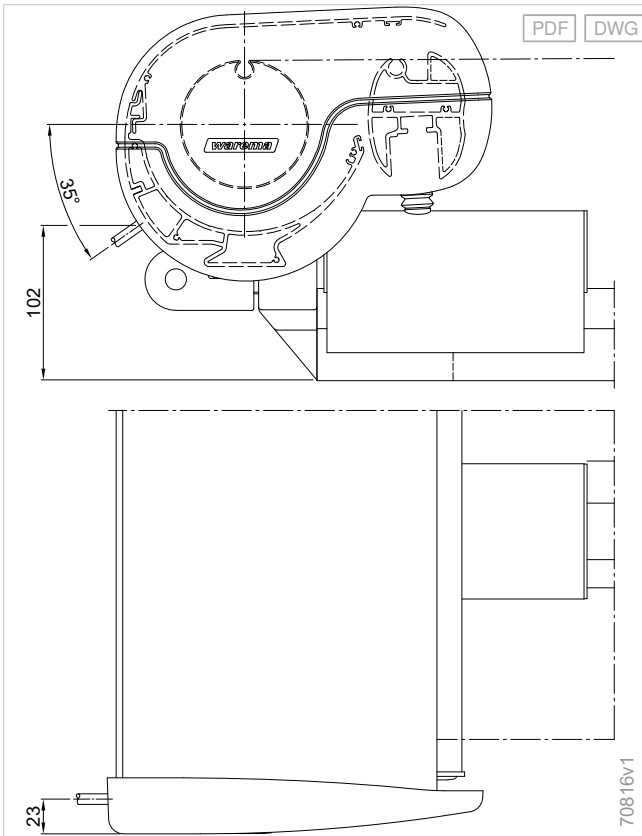
Side view - W7



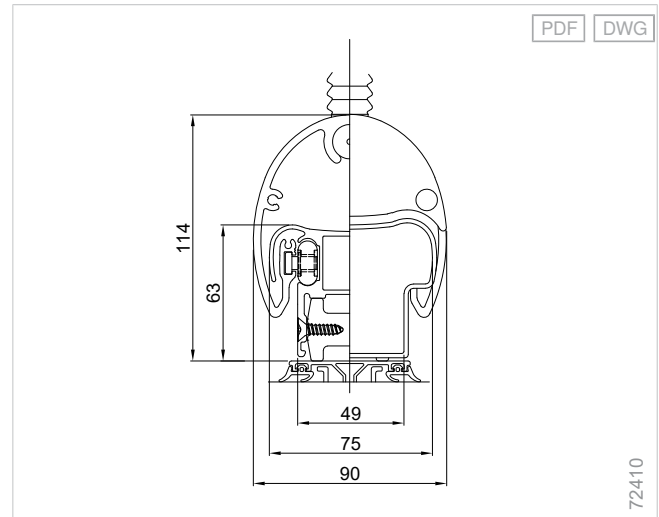
Front rail - W7



Cable exit - W7



Guide block and guide rails - W7



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards



## Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass

### Conservatory awning Climara W19

#### Durable

Tested technology in a new design: The durable counter-pull system is given additional protection against soiling with a brush seal, and work particularly reliably.

#### Combinable

All-in-one: In combination with the Climara D3, a uniform appearance is created - also for architecturally unique conservatories.

#### Expansive

Extensive sun shading system: The awning shades larger areas optimally.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6000 mm
Maximum order length	6000 mm
Maximum order area	30 m <sup>2</sup>
Maximum order width of the group unit	12000 mm

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036172](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/2019603.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Fastener Assistant](#)

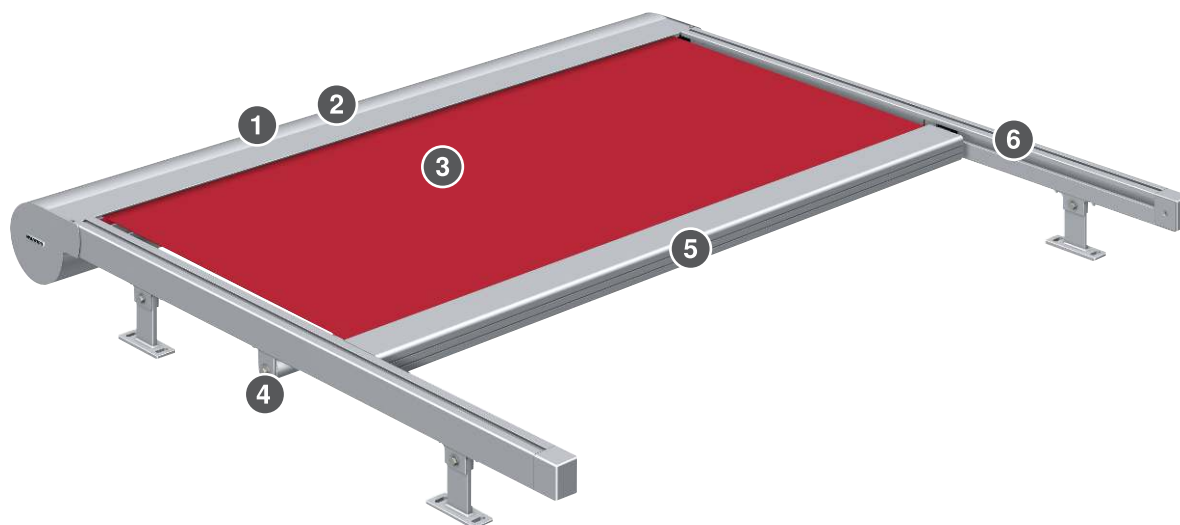
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

# Components

Conservatory awning Climara W19



- 1 Cover panel
- 2 Shaft
- 3 Fabric

- 4 Reinforcement profile
- 5 Front rail
- 6 Guide rail

## Cover panel

### Round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	199 mm
Height	158 mm

### + Side cover

#### Side cover for round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	227 mm
Height	159 mm

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 85 mm

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	85 mm

### Motor shaft Ø 56 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	56 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20/P20/H1

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	94 mm
Height	54 mm

## Reinforcement profile

### Reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	40 mm

### Reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	60 mm

## Bracket

- Bracket H11
- Bracket H34
- Bracket H36
- Bracket H41
- Bracket H60
- Bracket H81
- Bracket H82
- Bracket H62
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 418

## Guide variants

- Back-pull

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - D3/W9/W19

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Height	64 mm

## Pulling element

### Toothed belt

Material, notes	With steel insert
-----------------	-------------------

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-WM (WMS)
- W-WM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order length	Maximum order length	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle	Maximum order width of the group unit	Group unit, maximum order area
<b>Fabric qualities</b>									
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl	770 mm	6000 mm	750 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °	12000 mm	60 m <sup>2</sup>
Soltis 92	770 mm	3500 mm	750 mm	4500 mm	16 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °	7000 mm	32 m <sup>2</sup>
<b>Fabric qualities + Supplementary accessories</b>									
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model	770 mm	6000 mm	750 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	1 °	40 °	10000 mm	50 m <sup>2</sup>
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model	770 mm	5000 mm	750 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	41 °	90 °	5000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>
Soltis 92 + VUNO model	770 mm	3500 mm	750 mm	4500 mm	16 m <sup>2</sup>	1 °	40 °	7000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>
Soltis 92 + VUNO model	770 mm	3500 mm	750 mm	4500 mm	16 m <sup>2</sup>	41 °	90 °	3500 mm	16 m <sup>2</sup>

A maximum of two units can be coupled (driven by one motor).

### Series-mounted units:

- The minimum width for the travelling unit is 290 mm.
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- A maximum of two units can be coupled (driven by one motor).
- Two guide rails can be mounted on one bracket.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 12000 mm!

### Reinforcement profile:

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

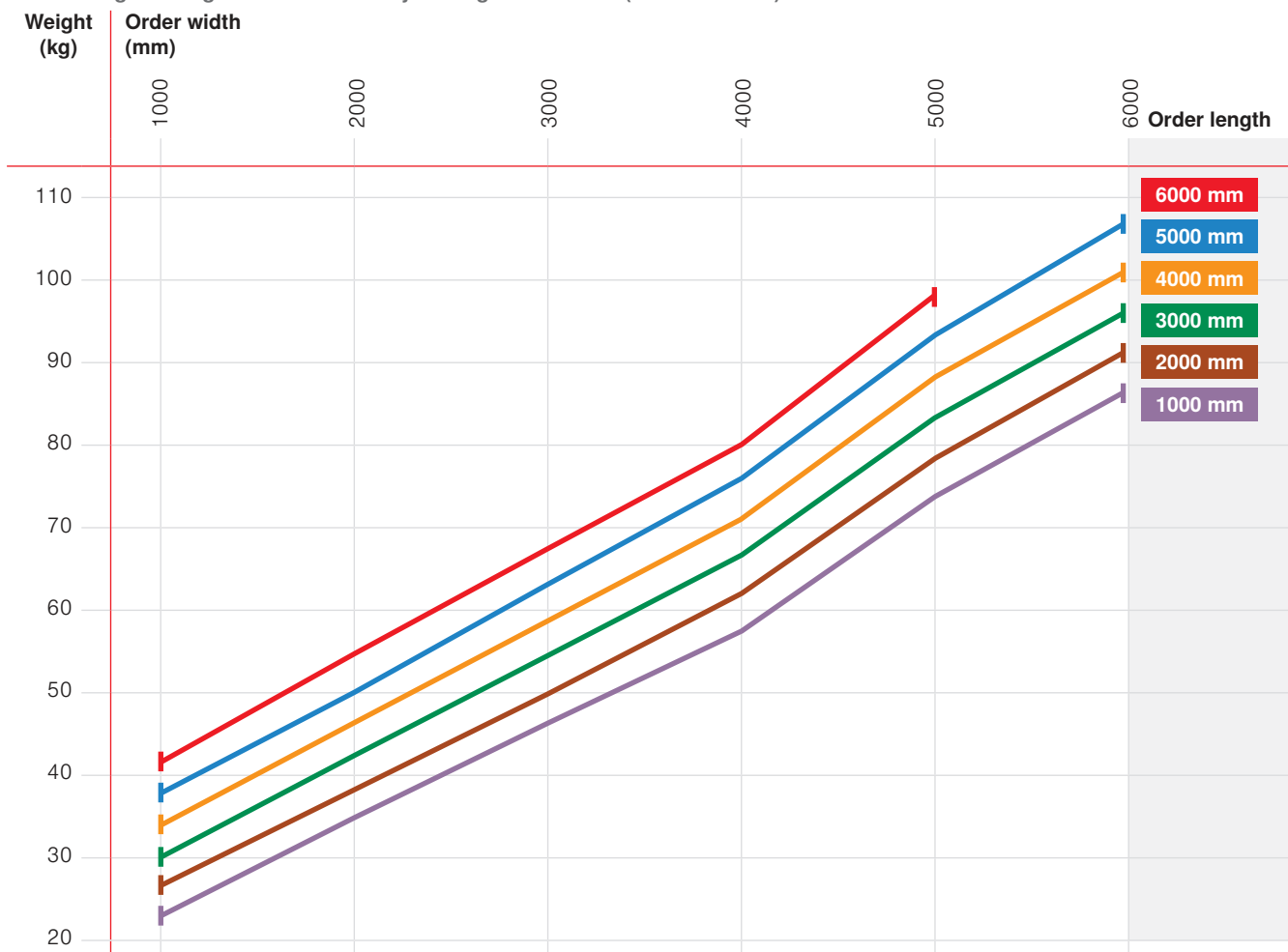
## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living connect package
- Fabric lettering, painted

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

- For order lengths of 3001 mm and greater, a reinforcement profile is used.
- For order widths from 3501 mm or order lengths from 3001 mm, the Ø 40 mm profile is either equipped with a support or a Ø 60 mm profile is used.

Determining the weight of a conservatory awning Climara W19 (motorised unit)



## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 15 - 17 kg/lfm

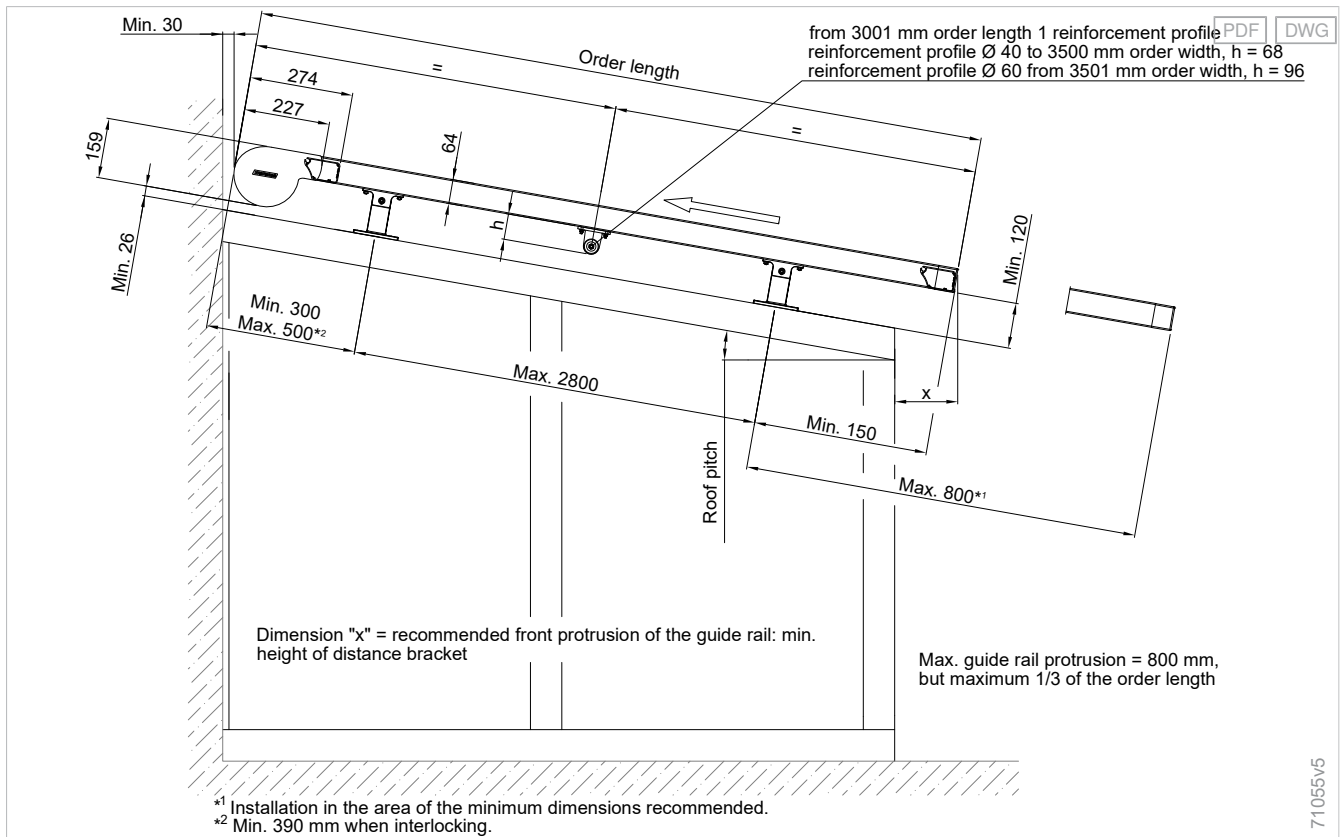
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

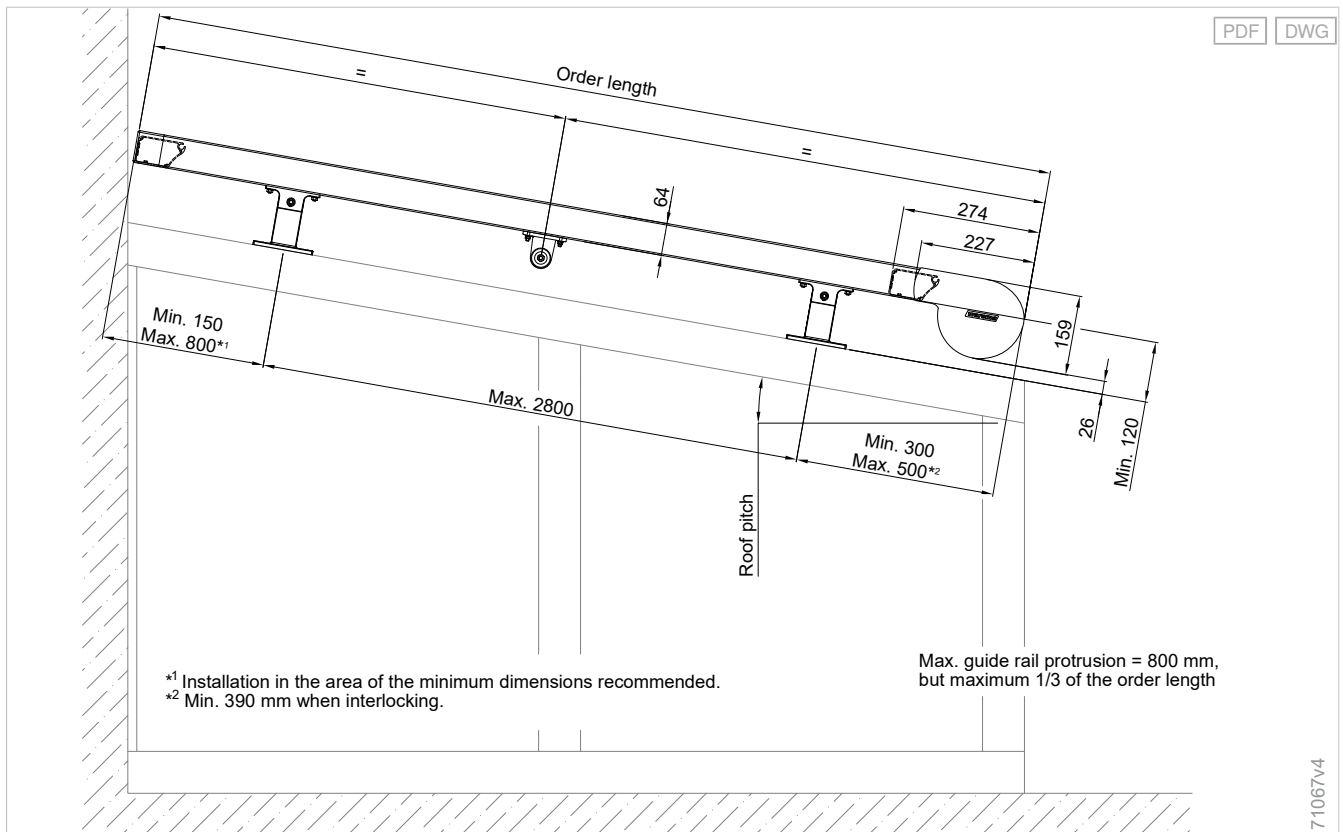
The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis.

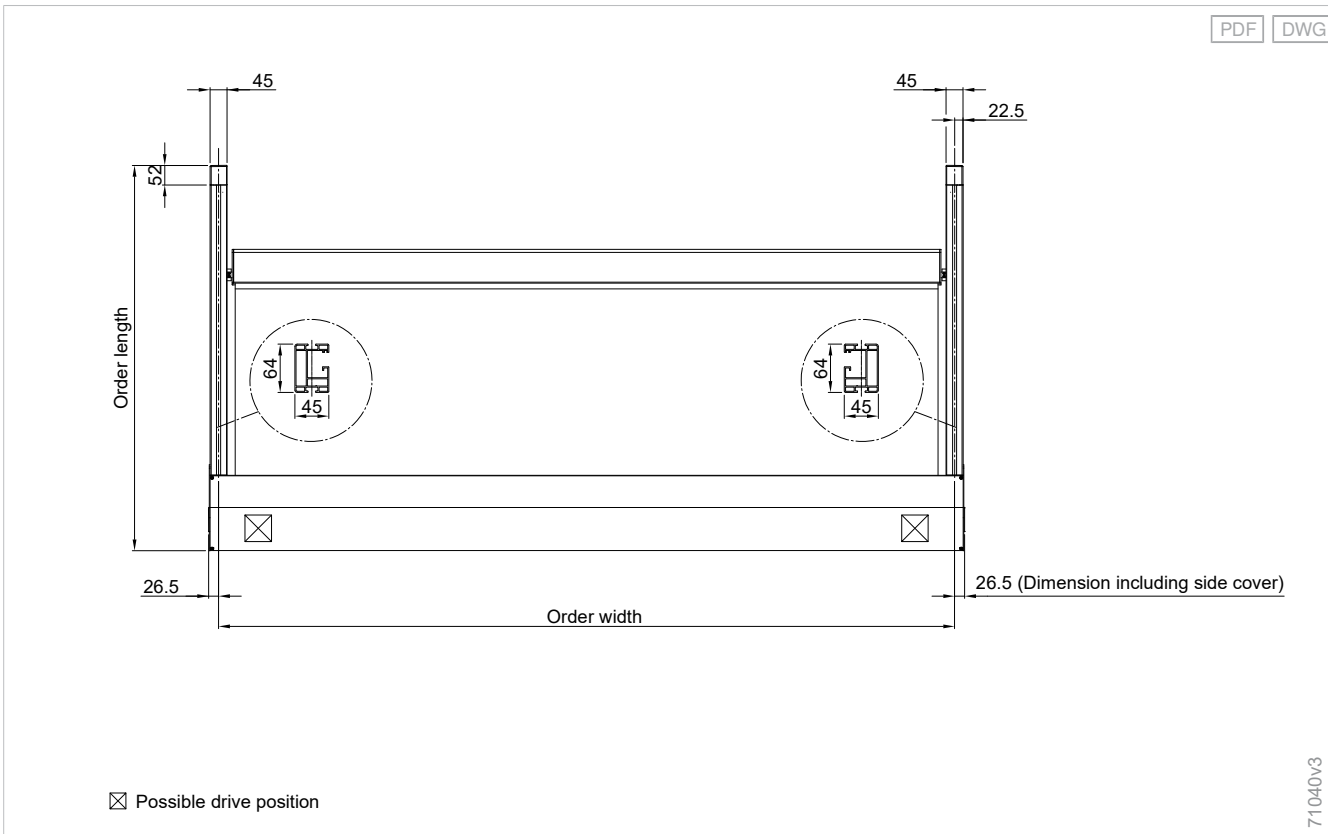
### Measuring instructions - W19



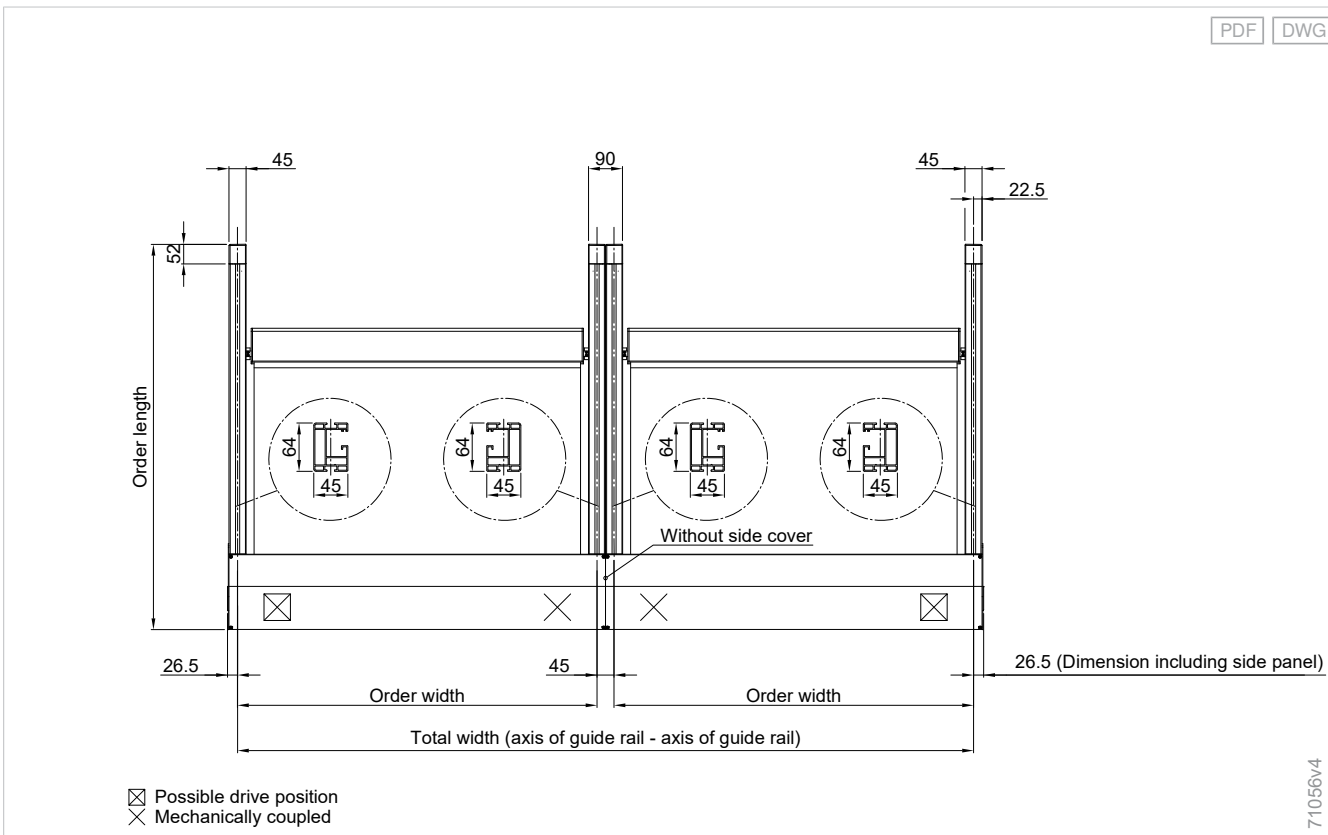
### Direction of movement "from bottom to top" - W19



Individual unit - W9/W19



Group unit - W19



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

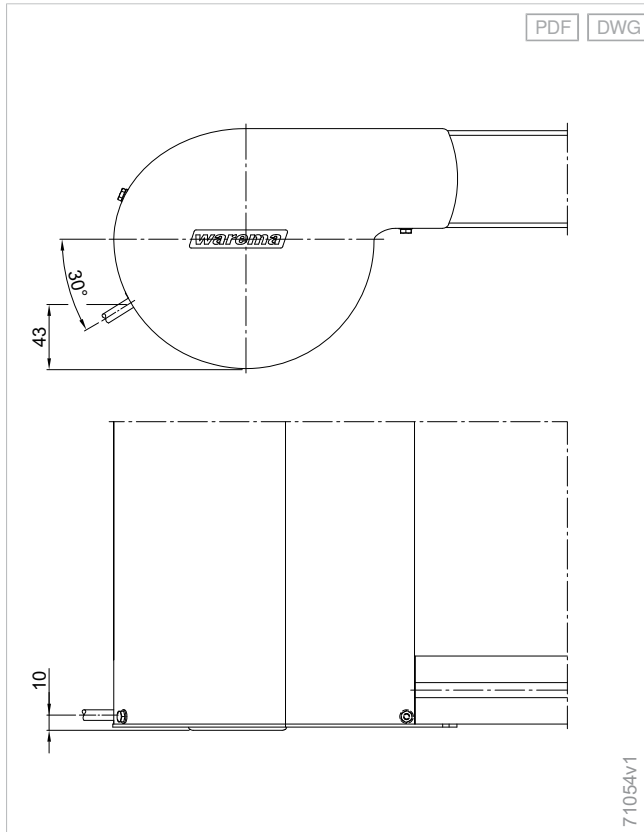
## Quantity determination

### Number of guide rail brackets

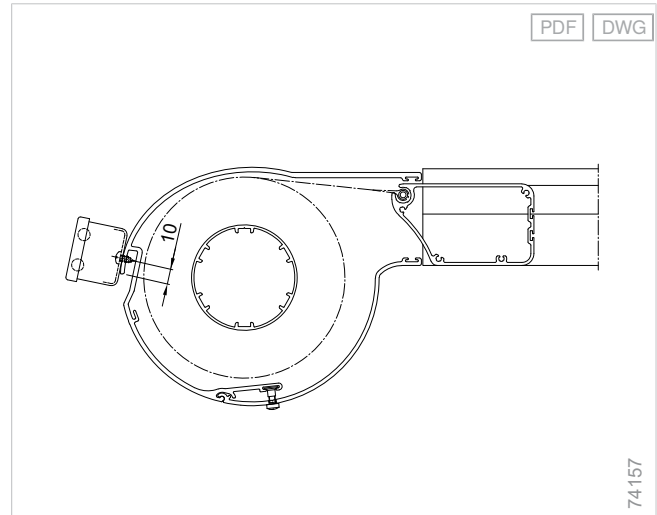
Configuration variants	Order length	Number
Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara	0 - 3000 mm	2
Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara	3001 - 6000 mm	3

## Details

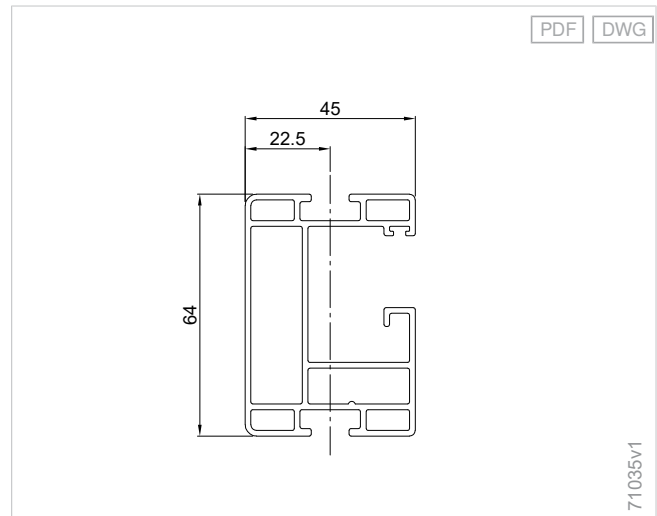
### Cable exit - W9/W19



### Housing for plug-in connector - W19/W20 round

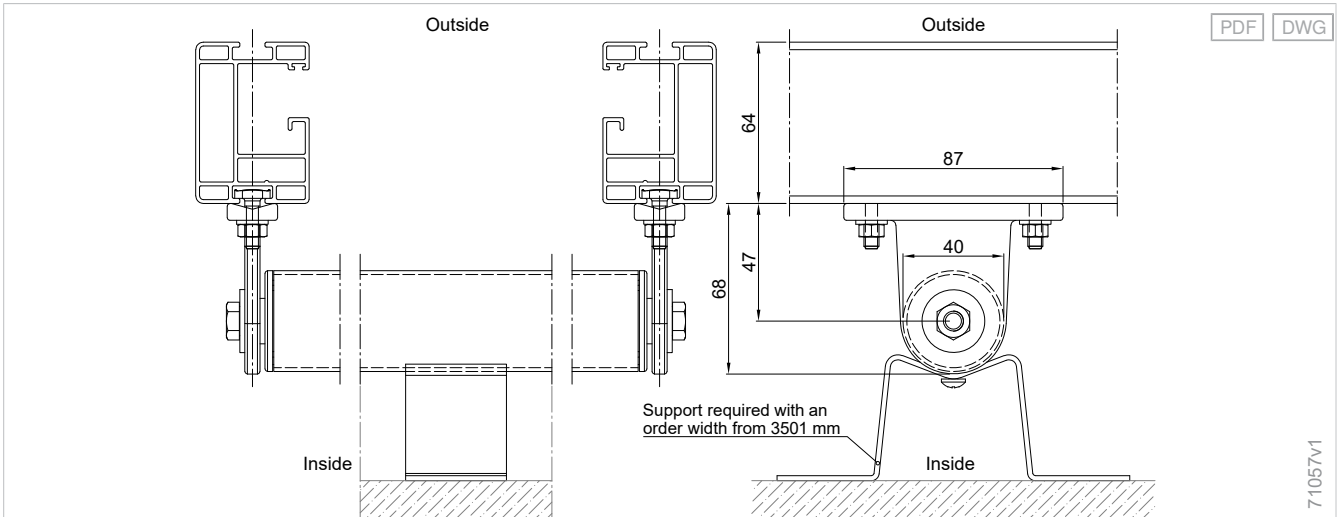


### Guide rail - D3/W9/W19

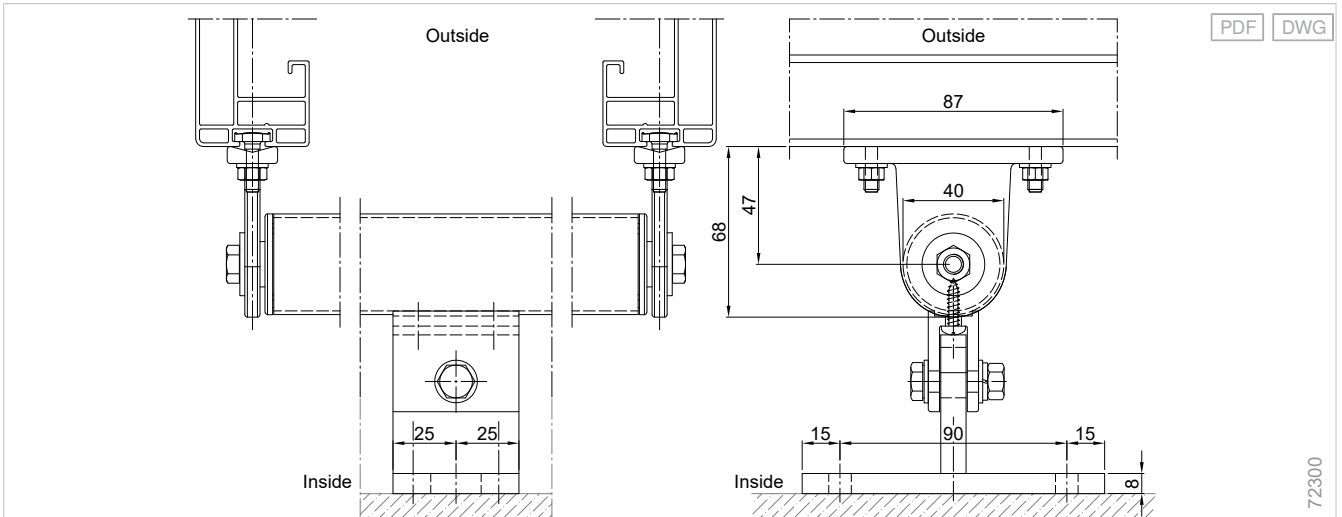




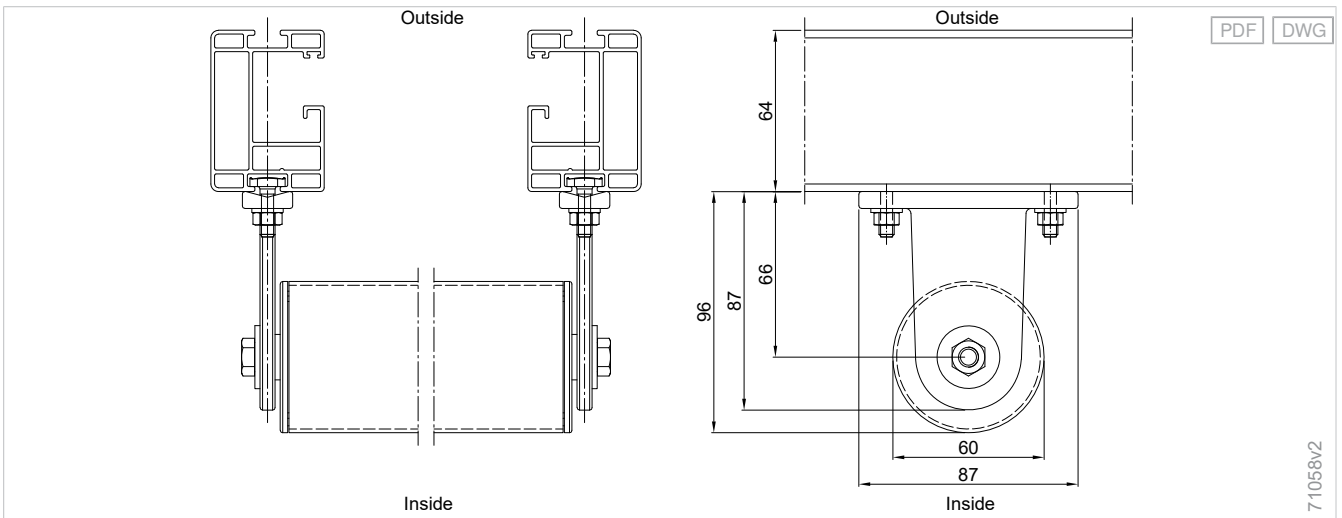
Support for reinforcement profile  $\varnothing$  40 mm up to a bracket height of 170 mm- W19



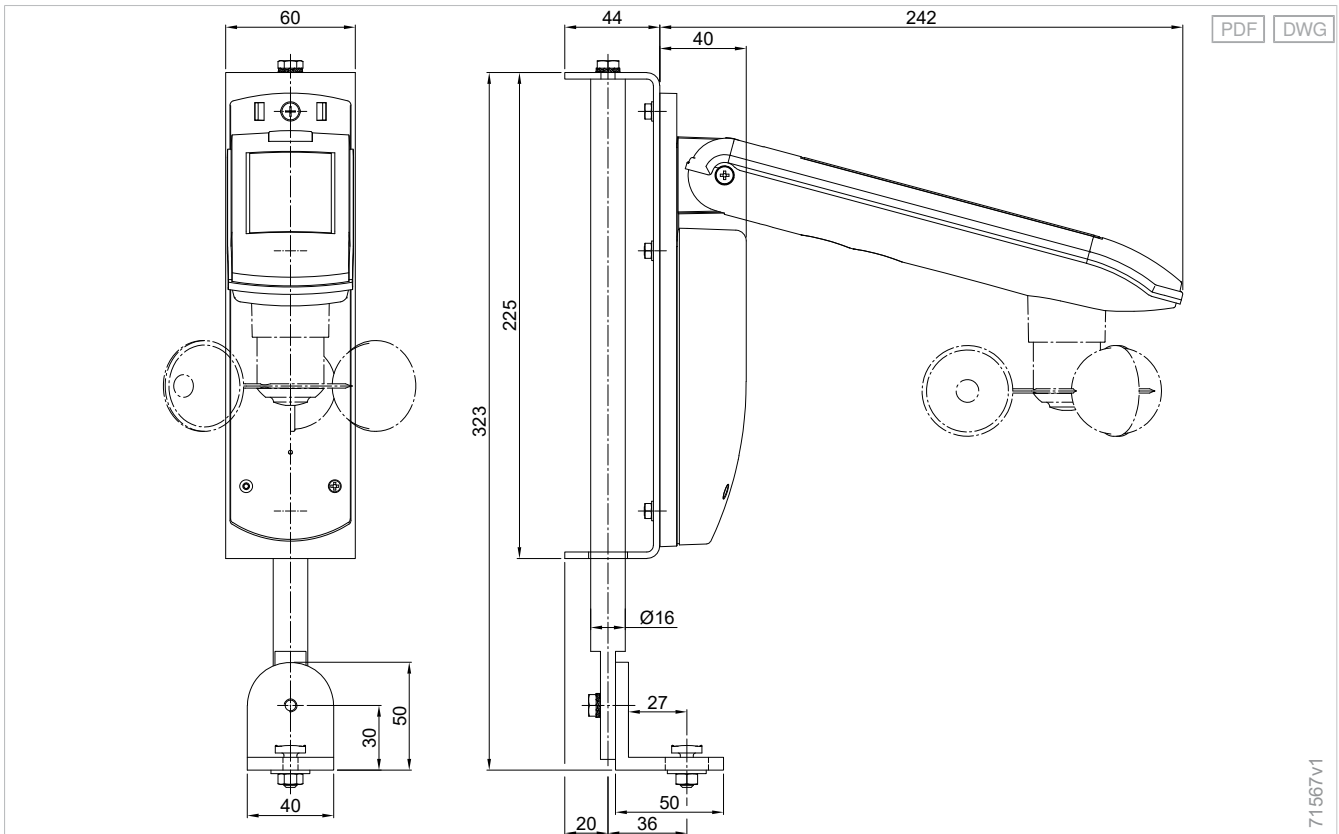
Support for reinforcement profile  $\varnothing$  40 mm with a bracket height greater than 170 mm- W19



Reinforcement profile  $\varnothing$  60 mm - W19



## Bracket for connecting a WMS or EWFS weather station to the guide rail



## Additional product information

### Guide rail bracket height greater than 300 mm

For a **guide rail bracket height of over 300 mm**, two  $\text{\O} 60$  mm reinforcement profiles with lateral supports are attached.

The maximum guide rail bracket height is 500 mm.

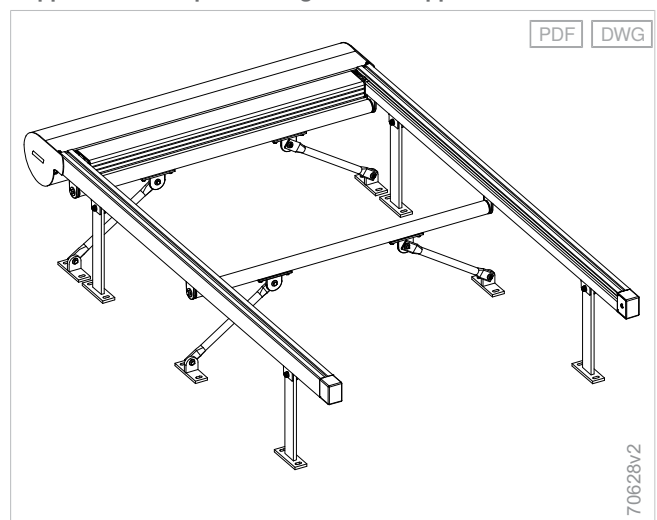
For a guide rail bracket height above 300 mm, the minimum order width is 900 mm.

The following components are used as standard:

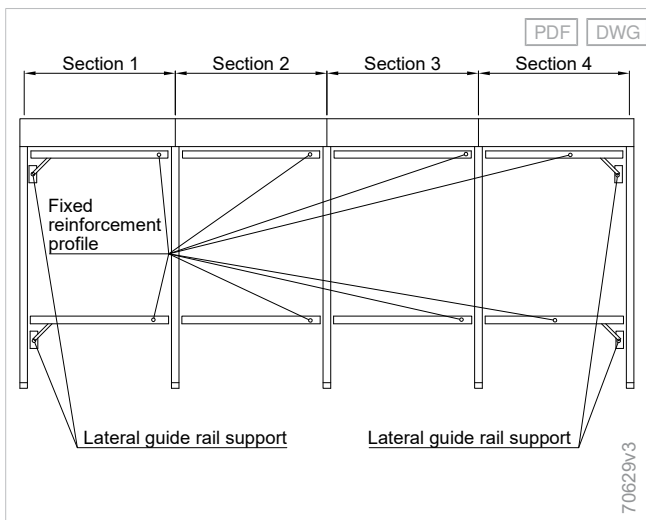
- Bracket for rod
- Fixed  $\text{\O} 60$  mm reinforcement profile
- Welded bracket H101

The two reinforcement profiles are installed for every section of coupled conservatory awnings and series-mounted units. With series-mounted units, the two outer sections accommodate the support.

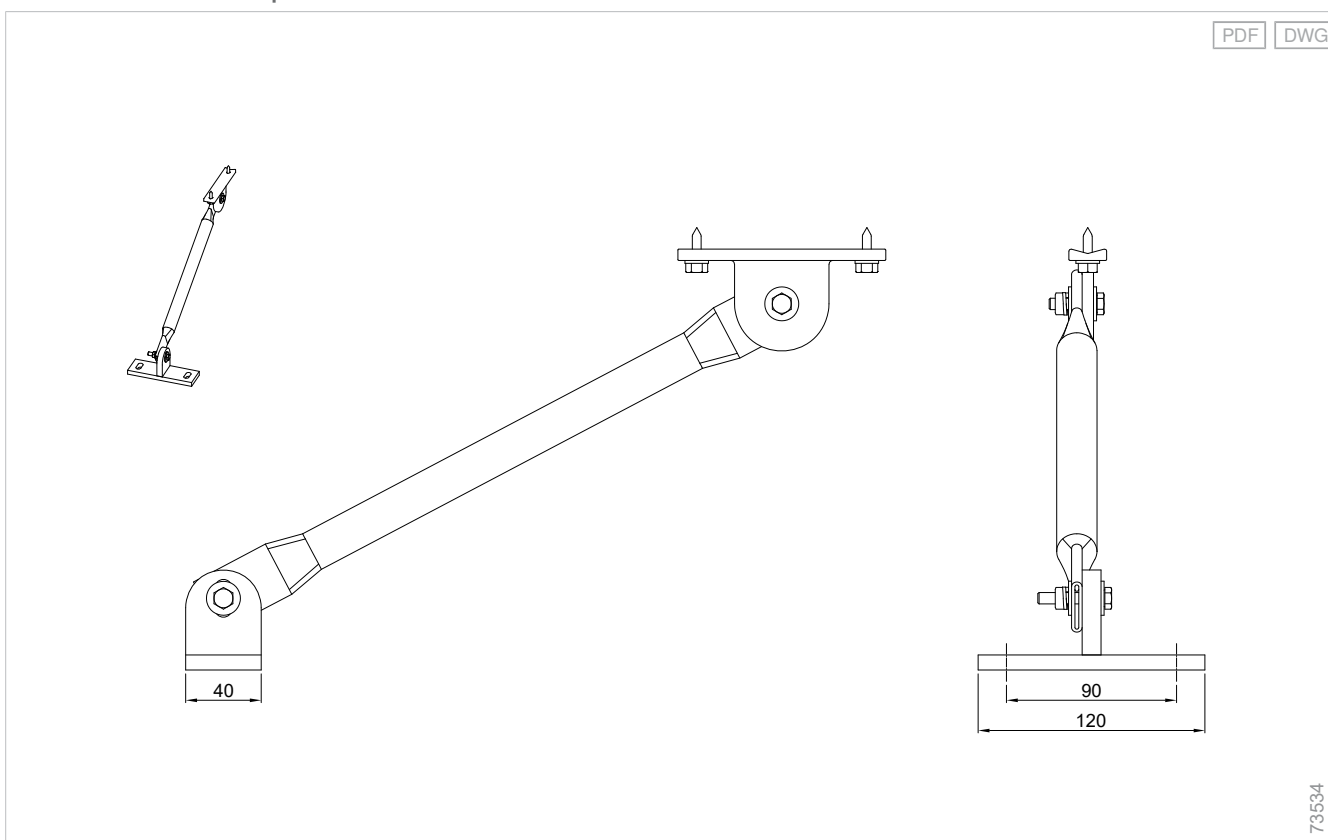
### Support for cover panel and guide rail support - W19



### Support for series-mounted units



### Bracket for reinforcement profile



## Klöckner-Moeller switch

When using a conservatory awning **W19 above a ventilation wing** (no smoke and heat venting system), it is necessary to use a Klöckner-Moeller switch.

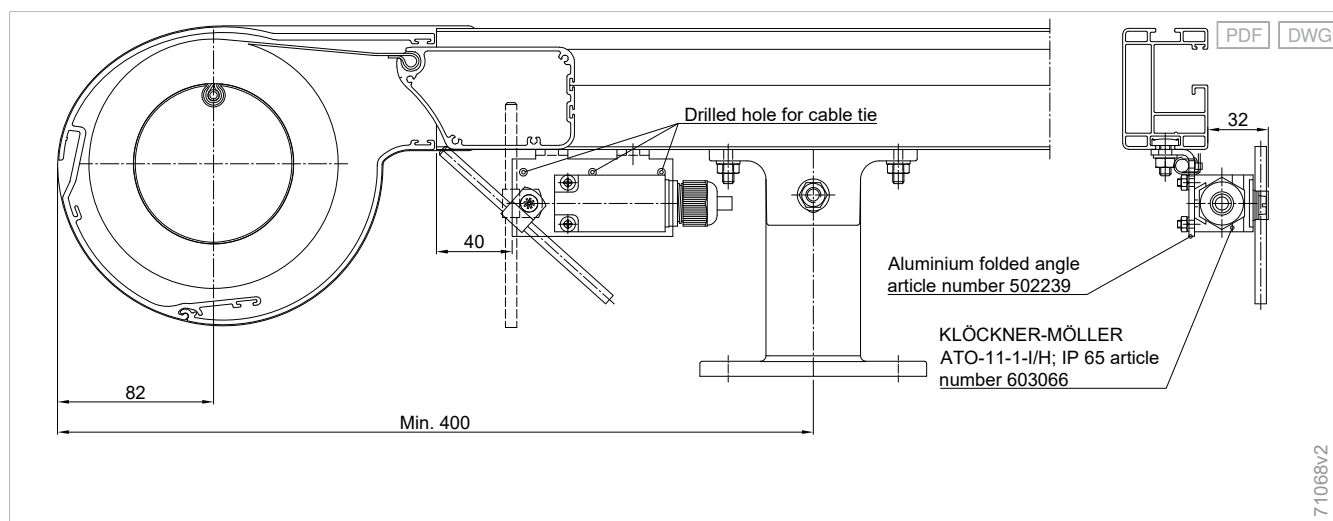
This creates a mutual interlock between the conservatory awning W19 and the wing. That means that the conservatory awning will not extend as soon as the ventilation wing is opened and the wing will not open when the awning is extended.

The Klöckner-Moeller switch should always be mounted and operated in combination with a reed contact switch on the ventilation wing to ensure mutual interlocking.

For versions with Klöckner-Moeller switch, only a hard-wired motor is possible. A plug receiver cannot be used.

More information on request.

### Klöckner-Moeller switch



## VUNO model

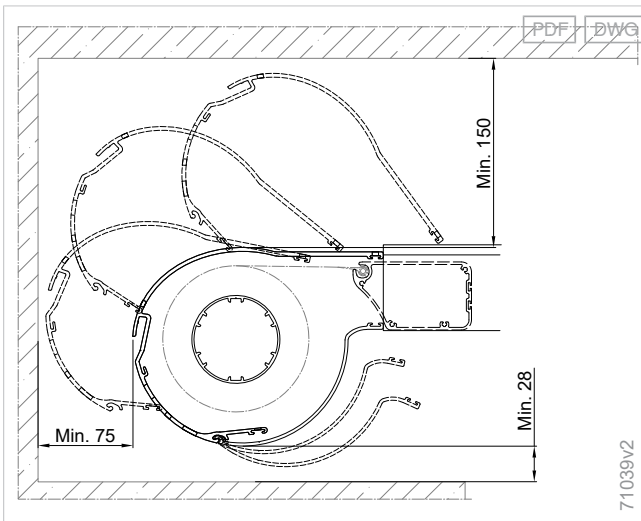
Conservatory awnings Climara can be used with a "from bottom to top" direction of movement.

### Notes:

- Each awning section requires two guide rails.
- Because the cover panel opens in the extension direction, there is an increased risk of the fabric becoming soiled.
- State clearly on the order form: Direction of movement "from bottom to top".
- State the roof pitch angle when ordering.

## Mounting examples

Cover panel installation space - W19



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Conservatory awnings Climara, on glass

### Conservatory awning Climara W20

#### Durable

Wind-stable construction: The fabric is attached to a spring steel strip that runs tautly in the guide rail - a reinforcement profile additionally tensions the fabric.

#### Seamless

No light gap with secudrive® technology: The fabric runs taut in the rail so that no light enters at the sides.

#### Automated

More convenience with integrated sensors: A sensor measures wind, brightness and precipitation so that the awning retracts or extends depending on the weather, all by itself.

#### Construction limit values

Maximum order width	6500 mm
Maximum order length	6000 mm
Maximum order area	30 m <sup>2</sup>

#### Order here

**myWAREMA**

[Art.-Nr. 2036171](#)

#### Order form

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/2008884.pdf>

<https://docs.warema.com/fi/2008884.pdf>

#### WAREMA tools

[Fastener Assistant](#)

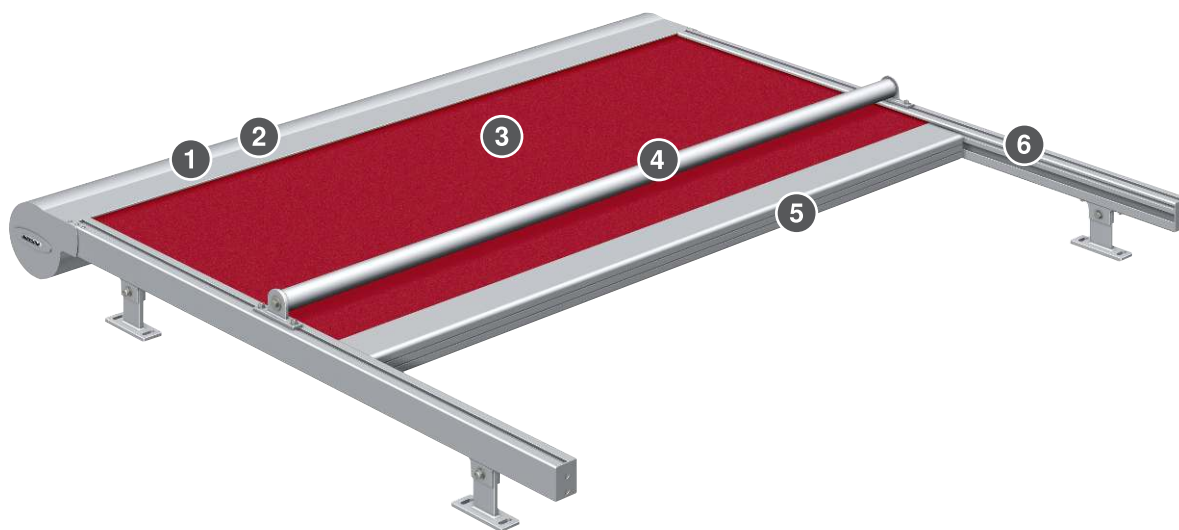
[Sun Shading Planner](#)

[Collection Assistant](#)

[+ see "Navigating the document", Page 5](#)

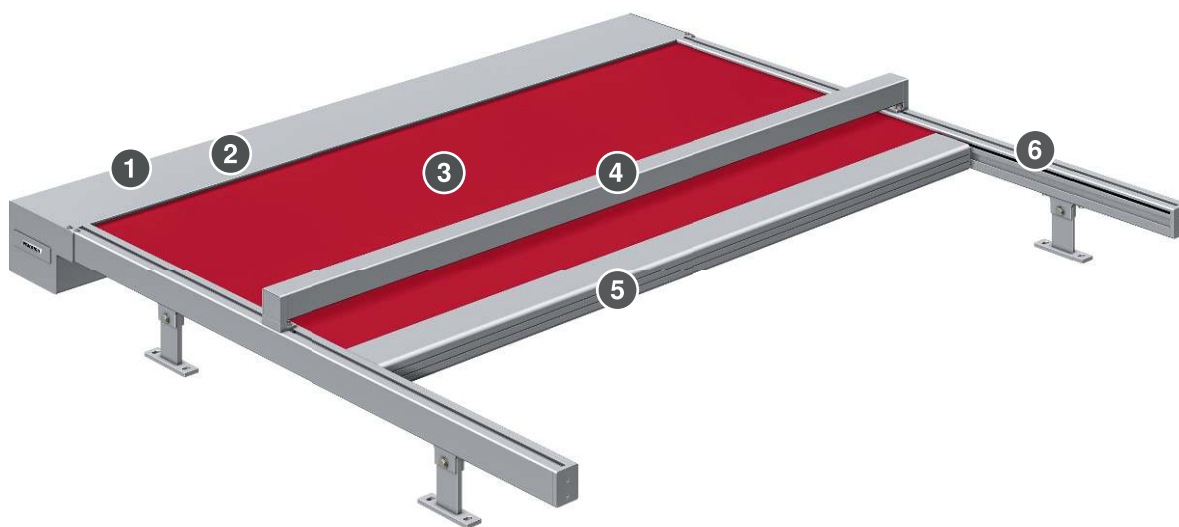
# Components

Conservatory awning Climara W20 with round cover panel



- |   |             |   |                       |
|---|-------------|---|-----------------------|
| 1 | Cover panel | 4 | Reinforcement profile |
| 2 | Shaft       | 5 | Front rail            |
| 3 | Fabric      | 6 | Guide rail            |

Conservatory awning Climara W20 with rectangular cover panel



- |   |             |   |                       |
|---|-------------|---|-----------------------|
| 1 | Cover panel | 4 | Reinforcement profile |
| 2 | Shaft       | 5 | Front rail            |
| 3 | Fabric      | 6 | Guide rail            |

## Cover panel

### Round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	199 mm
Height	158 mm

#### + Side cover

### Side cover for round cover panel - D3/W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	227 mm
Height	159 mm

## Cover panel, optional

### Cover panel rectangular - P20/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	194 mm
Height	144 mm

#### + Side cover

### Side cover, cover panel, rectangular - P20/W10/W20

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	209 mm
Height	146 mm

## Shaft

### Fabric shaft Ø 86.2 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	86.2 mm

### Motor shaft Ø 70 mm

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Plain
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	70 mm

## Front rail

### Front rail - W9/W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W19/W20/P20/H1

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	94 mm
Height	54 mm

## Reinforcement profile

### Reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	40 mm

### Reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	60 mm

## Reinforcement profile, optional

### Reinforcement profile, rectangular - P20/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	50 mm
Height	50 mm

### Travelling reinforcement profile, rectangular - P20/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	50 mm
Height	50 mm

#### Space required for travelling reinforcement profile:

The installation space for the travelling reinforcement profile is 134 mm from the top edge of the guide rail to the eaves, for example.

### Travelling reinforcement profile Ø 60 mm - W20/P40

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Diameter	60 mm

#### Space required for travelling reinforcement profile:

The installation space for the travelling reinforcement profile is 134 mm from the top edge of the guide rail to the eaves, for example. For ceiling installation, this installation space must be manufactured with spacer consoles.

## Bracket

- Bracket H11
- Bracket H34
- Bracket H36
- Bracket H41
- Bracket H60
- Bracket H62
- Bracket H81
- Bracket H82
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102

+ see "Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara", Page 418

## Guide variants

- secudrive®

## Guide rail

### Guide rail - P20/W20

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Height	60 mm



## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- WM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- WMS-WM (WMS)
- WMS-PM (WMS)
- W-WM (EWFS)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Screen fabric
- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- Smart Living connect package
- WMS sensor system
- Fabric lettering, painted

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Notes

### Twilight Pearl processing:

In awnings with secudrive® guide, the fabric is fastened to the spring steel strip with a fabric strip (light grey) visible at the side.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order length	Maximum order length	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Fabric qualities</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	28 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Soltis 92 / Screen fabric	650 mm	3500 mm	950 mm	4000 mm	14 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
<b>Fabric qualities + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue + Drainage cutouts	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	3 °	16 °
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue + VUNO model	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	24 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl + Drainage cutouts	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	28 m <sup>2</sup>	3 °	16 °
All Weather acrylic / Twilight Pearl + VUNO model	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	24 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °
Soltis 92 / Screen fabric + VUNO model	650 mm	3500 mm	950 mm	4000 mm	14 m <sup>2</sup>	0 °	45 °

### Minimum order width:

- From an order length of 5001 mm, a minimum order width of 812 mm is required.
- For versions with SDO switch, a minimum order width of 900 mm is required.

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- Each awning section requires two single guide rails.
- Two guide rails can be mounted on one bracket.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 13000 mm!

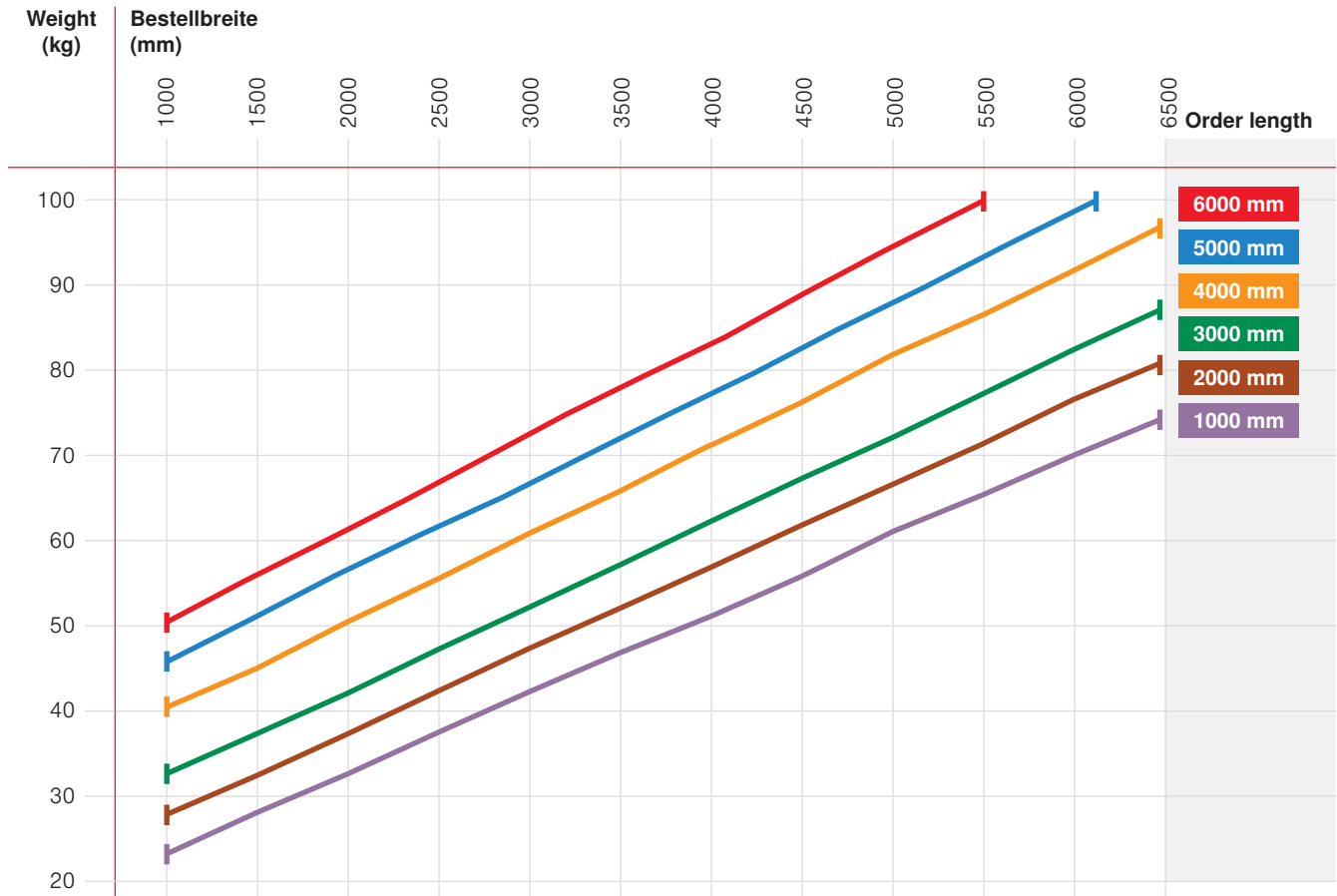
### Reinforcement profile, round:

- For order lengths of 2501 mm and greater, a Ø 40 mm reinforcement profile is used.
- For order widths from 3501 mm, a Ø 60 mm profile is used.

### Reinforcement profile, rectangular:

- From order lengths of 2501 mm, a rectangular reinforcement profile (50x50 mm) is used.

### Determining the weight of a conservatory awning Climara W20 (motorised unit)



## Dimensions

Weight per running metre: 13,5 - 16 kg/lfm

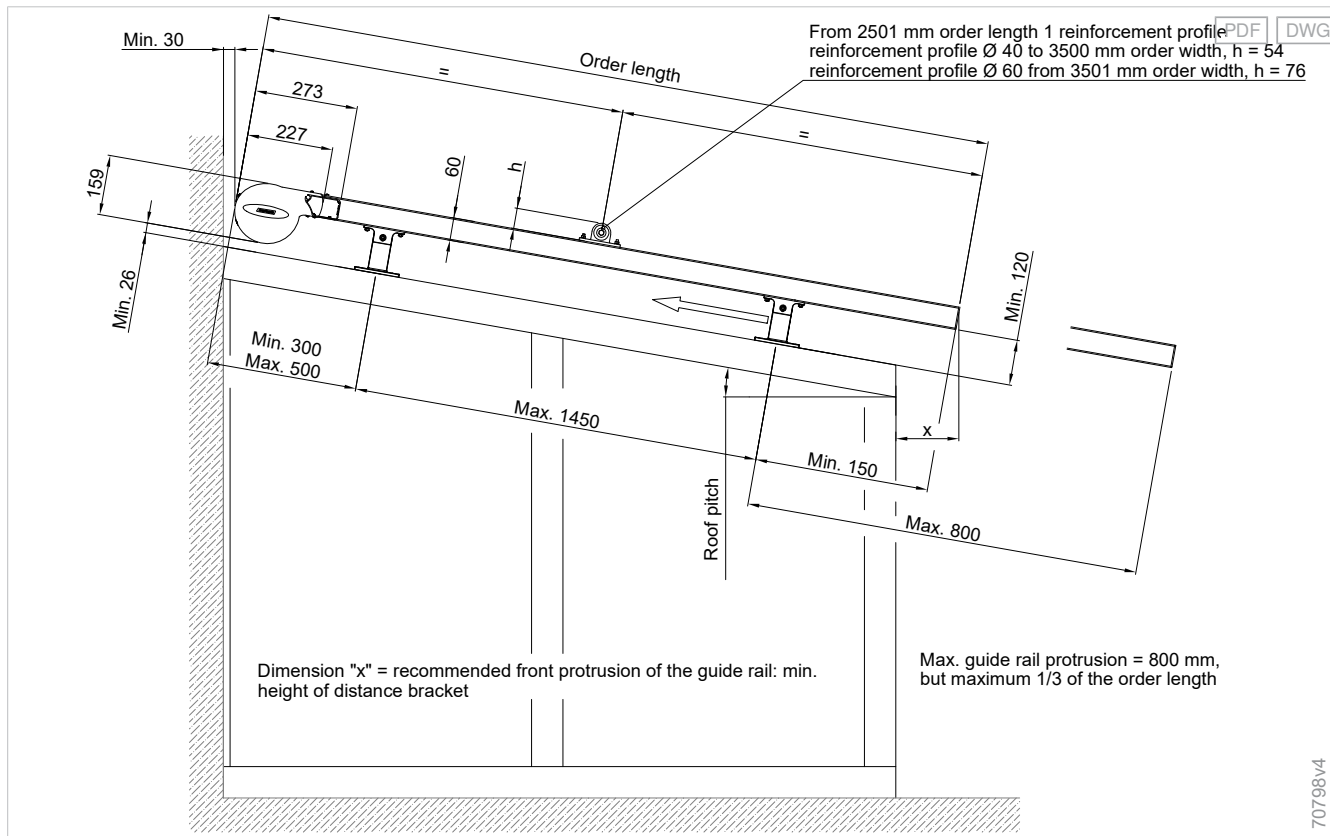
Weight per running metre, notes: Cover panel without guide rail and bracket

## Dimension determination

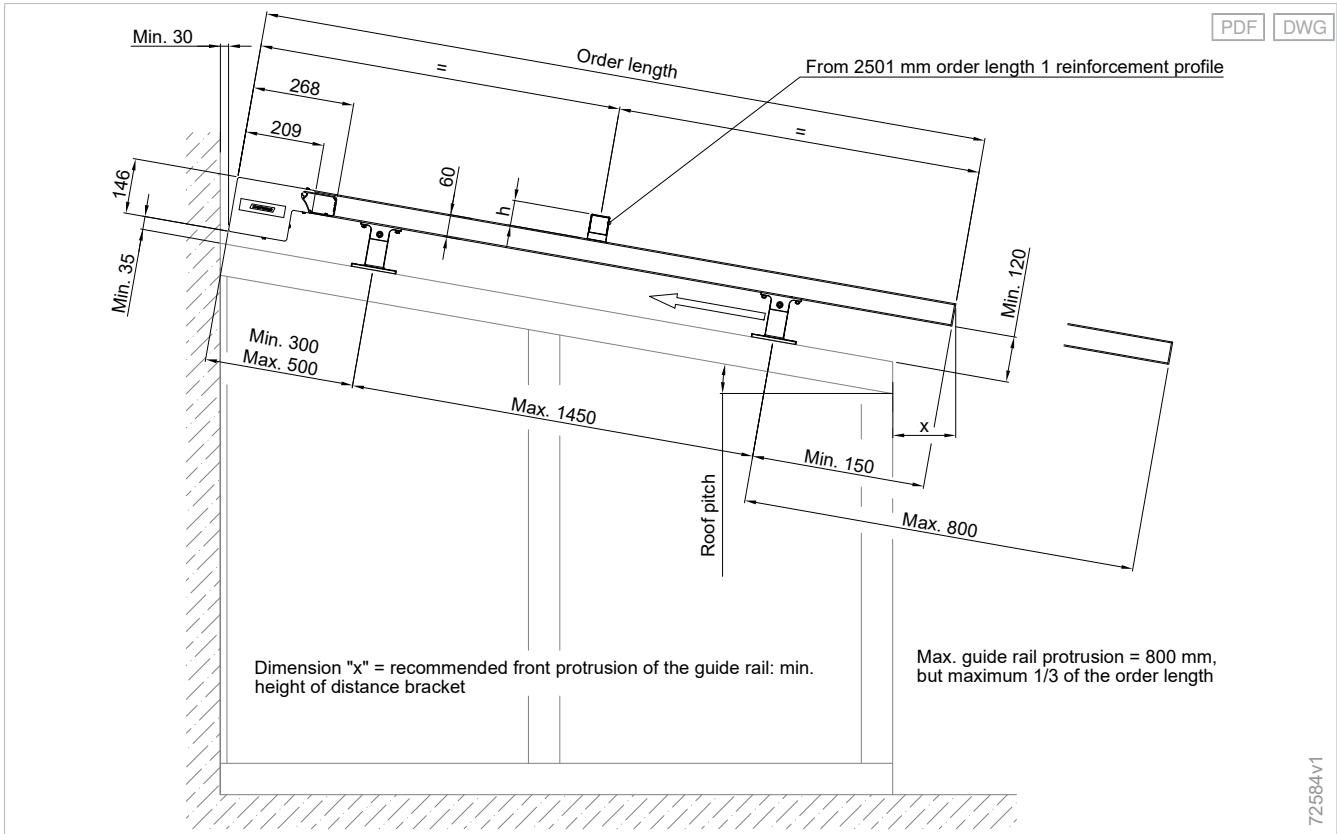
The **drive end or operation side** is always seen from the cover panel in extension direction.

**Order width** = guide rail axis to guide rail axis.

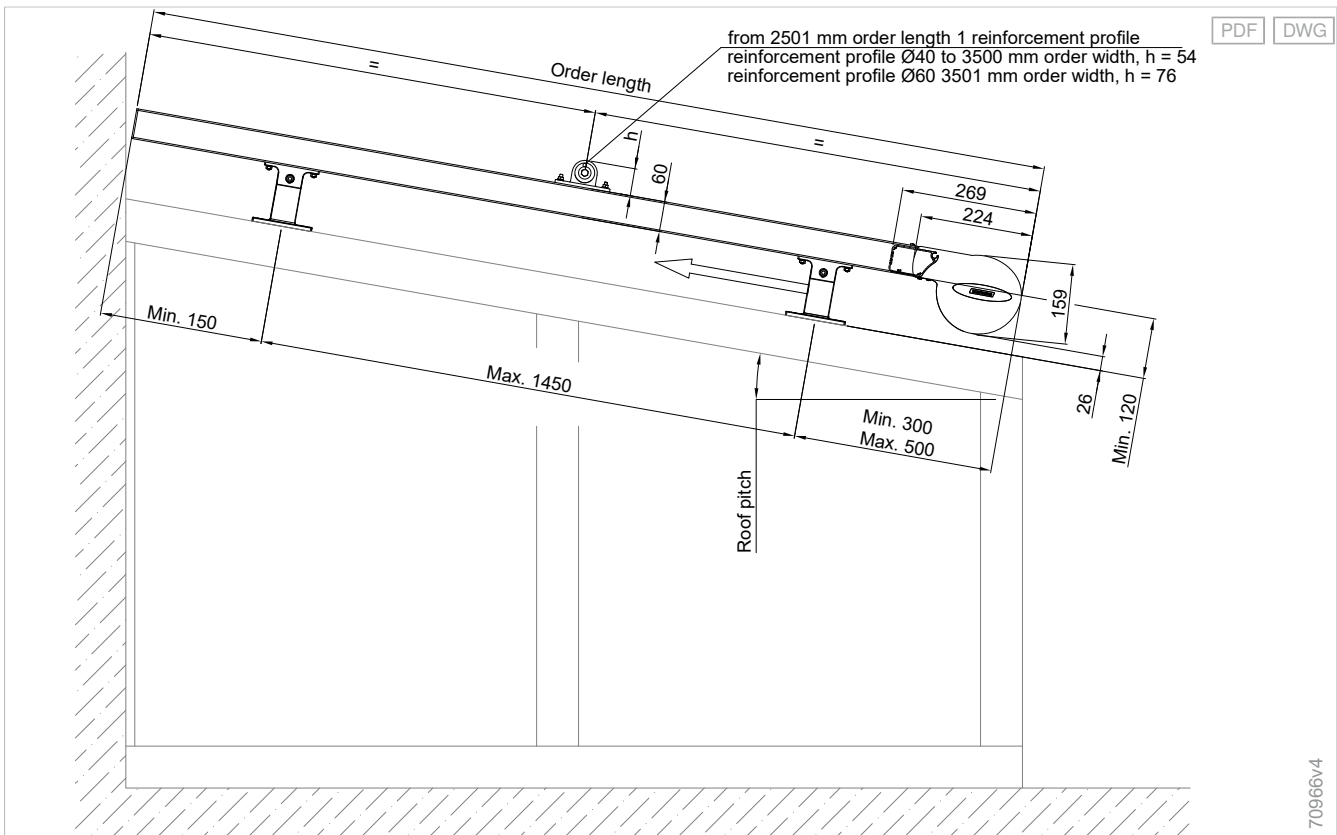
### Measuring instructions - W20 round cover panel



### Measuring instructions - W20 rectangular cover panel

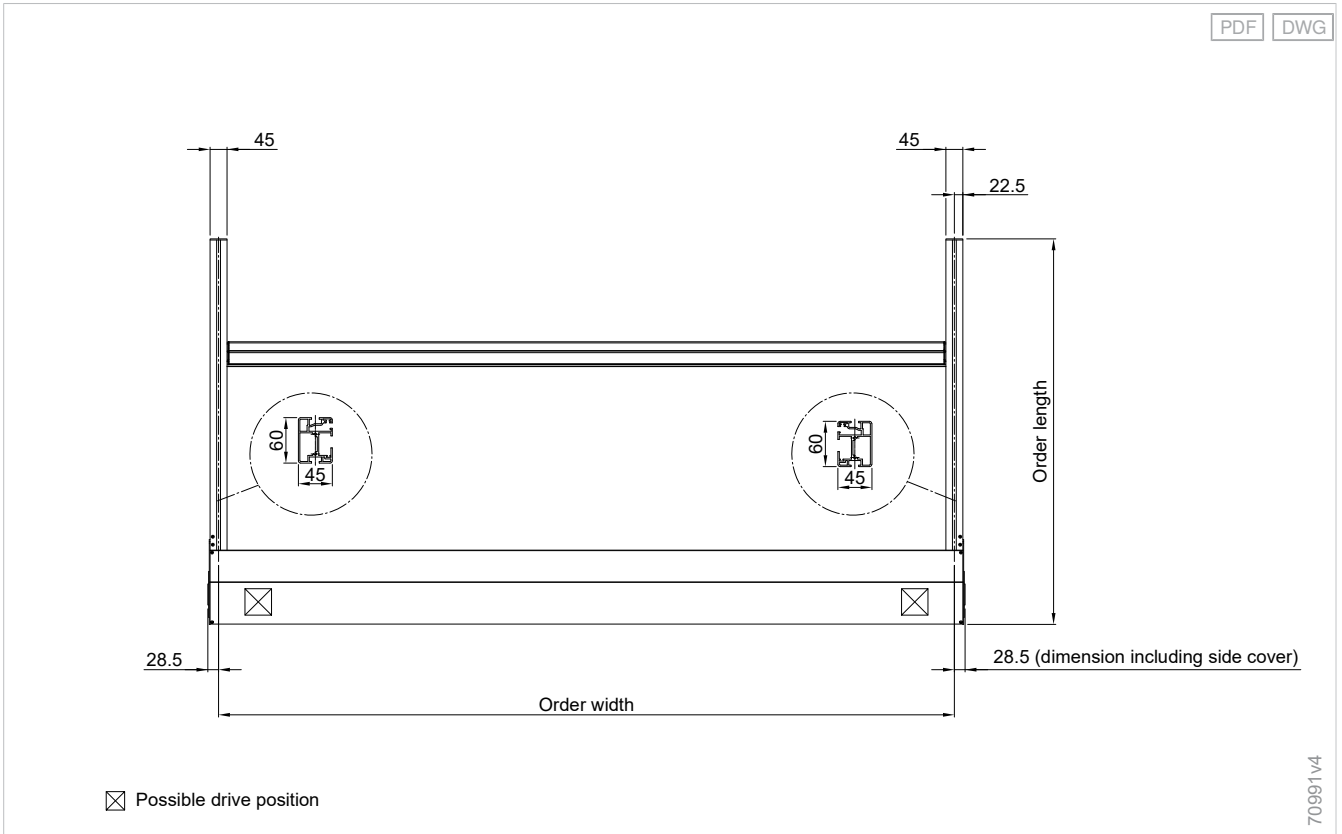


### Direction of movement "from bottom to top" - W20

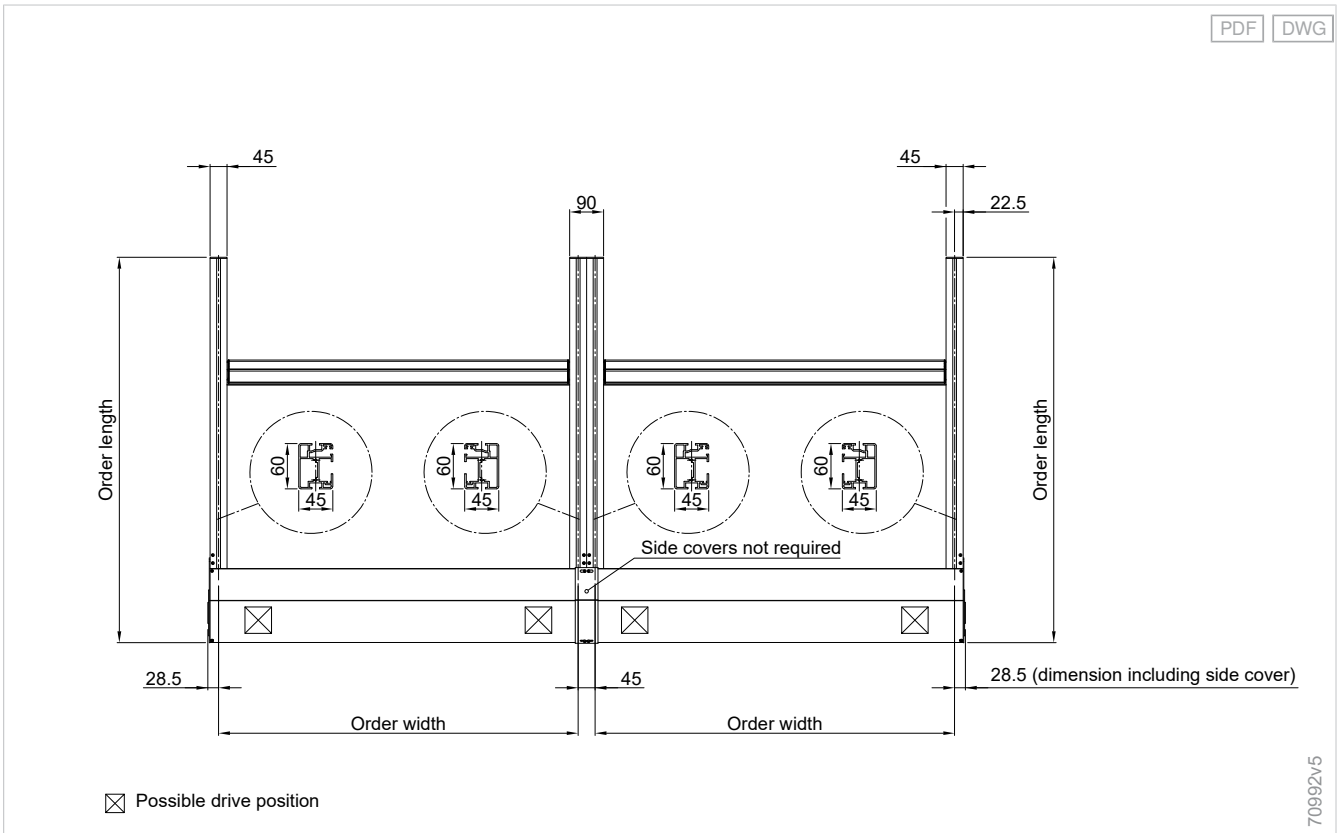


The VUNO version is also possible for W20 with rectangular cover panel. A travelling reinforcement profile is not possible with this direction of movement.

Individual unit - W20



Series-mounted unit - W20



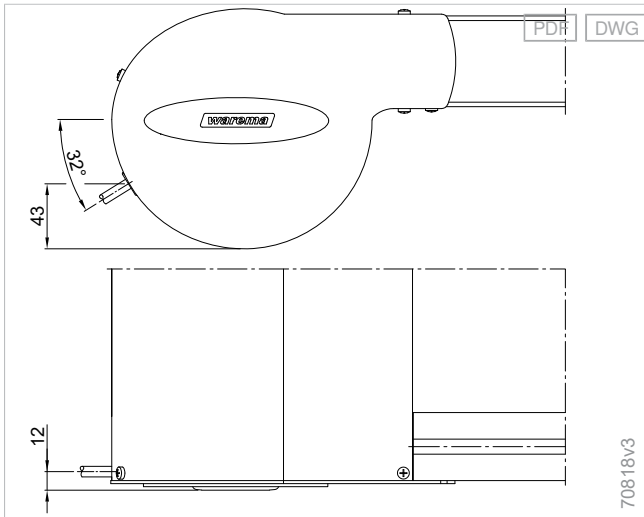
## Quantity determination

### Number of guide rail brackets

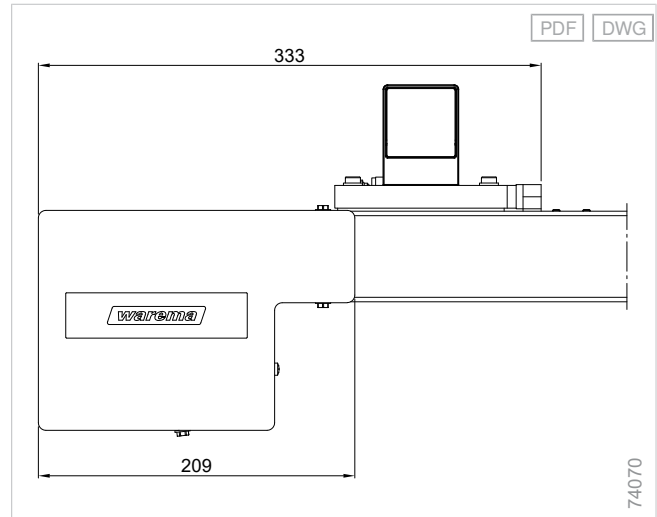
Configuration variants	Order length	Number
<b>Components</b>		
Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara	0 - 2000 mm	2
Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara	2001 - 3500 mm	3
Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara	3501 - 5000 mm	4
Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara	5001 - 6000 mm	5

## Details

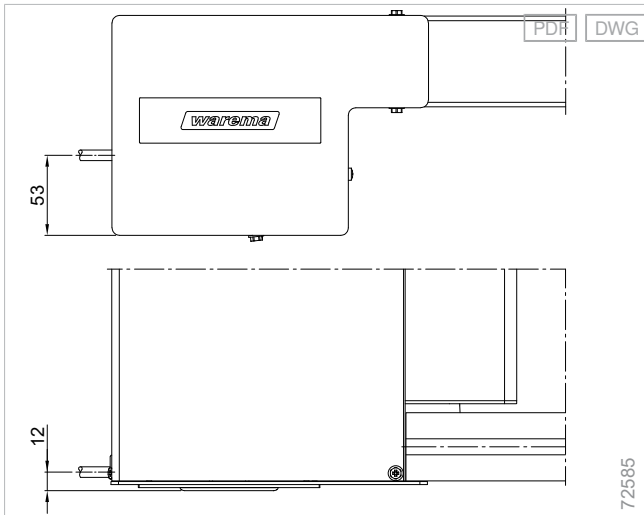
Cable exit - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20 round cover panel



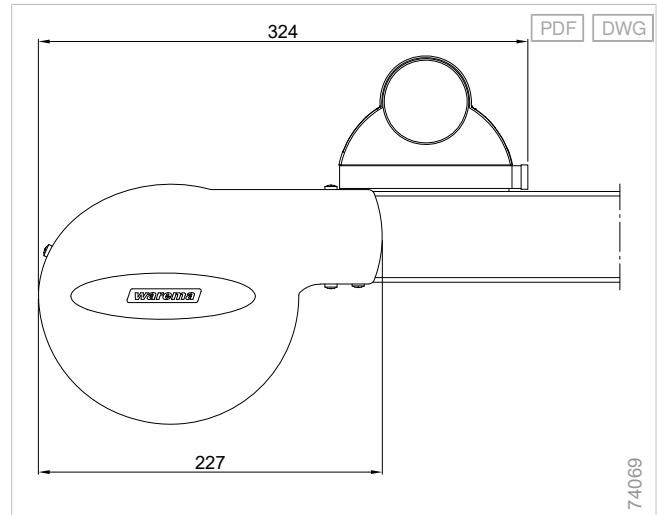
Rectangular cover panel - W20



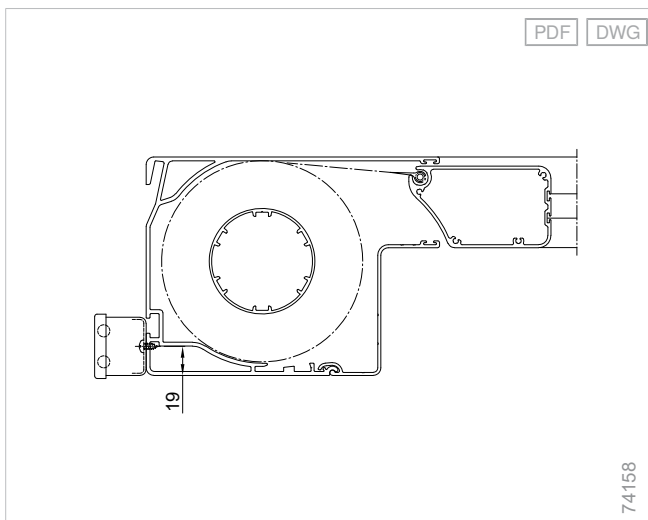
Cable exit - W10/W10<sup>2</sup>/W20 rectangular cover panel



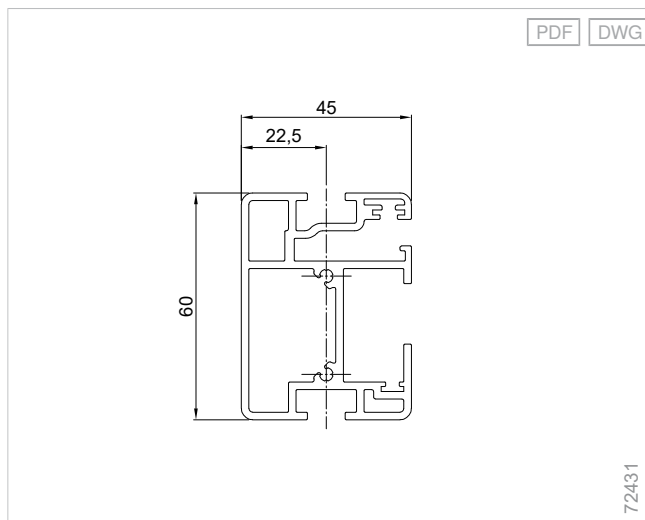
Round cover panel - W20



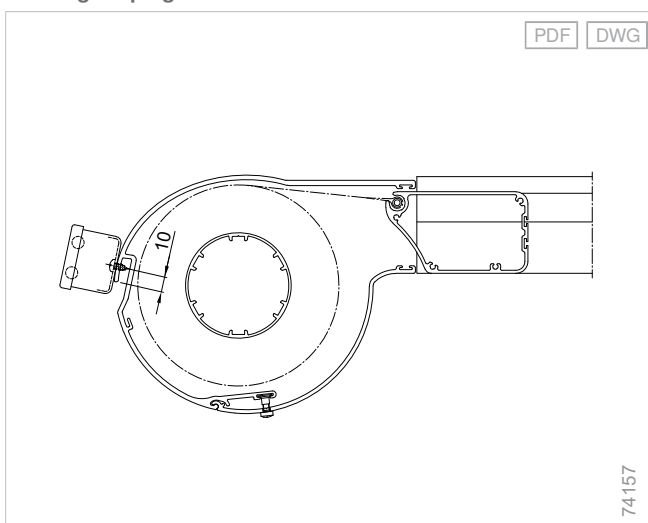
Housing for plug-in connector - W20 rectangular



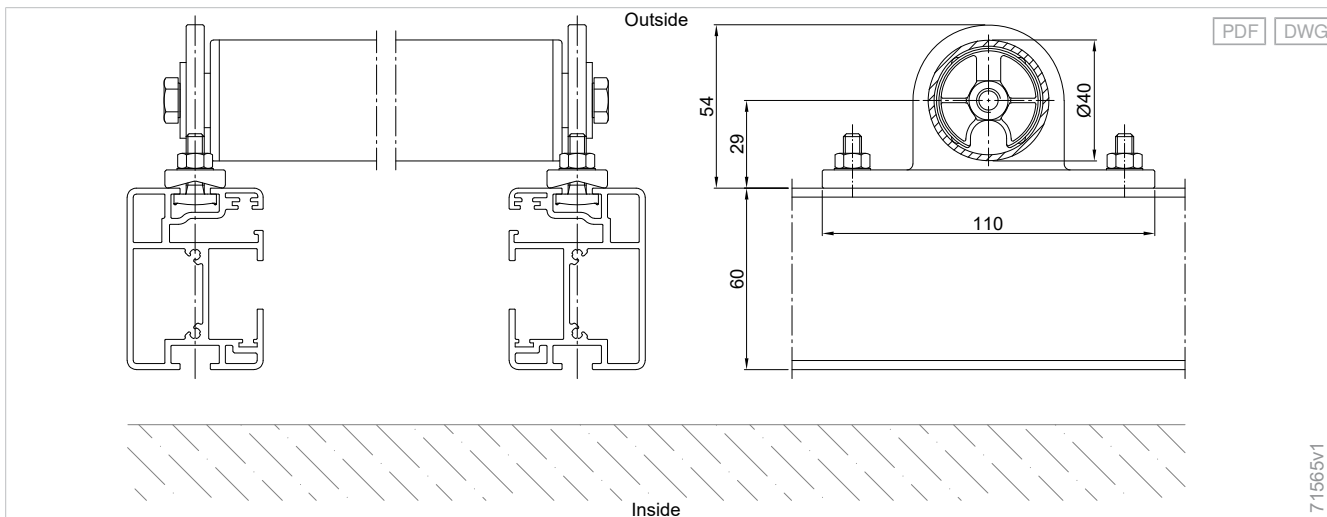
Guide rail - W20



Housing for plug-in connector - W19/W20 round



Reinforcement profile Ø 40 mm - W20



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

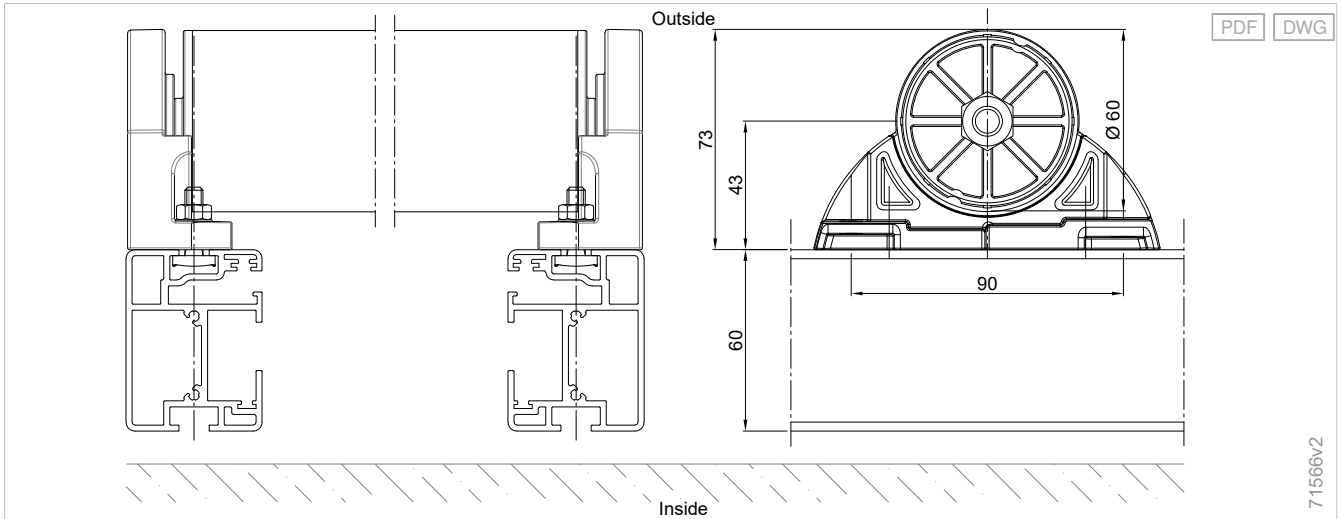
Supplementary  
accessories

Components

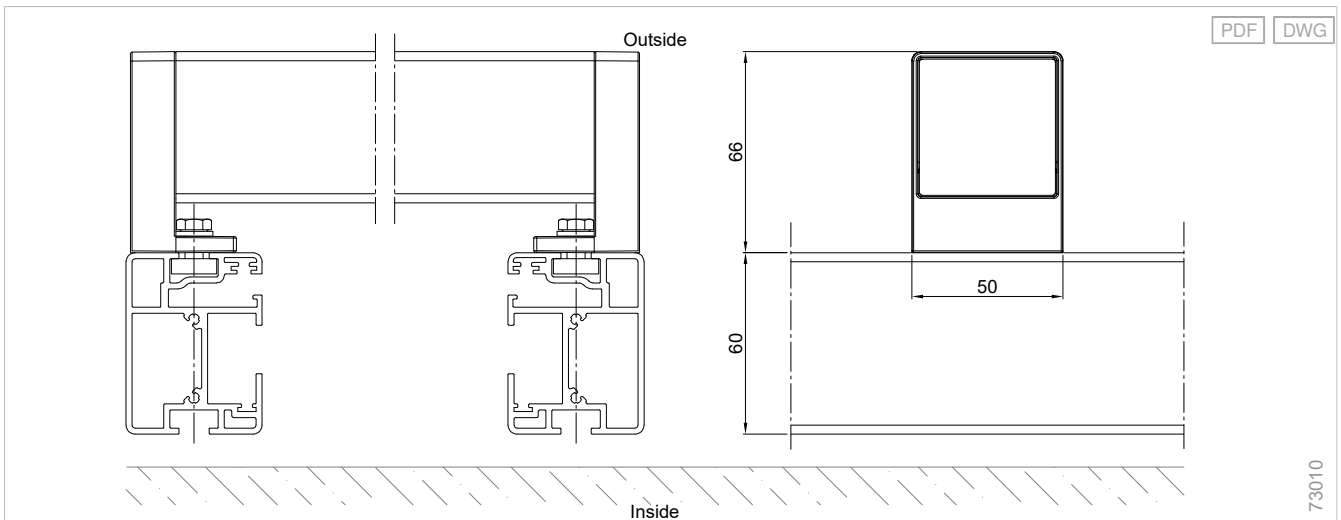
Drive  
variants

Standards

Reinforcement profile  $\varnothing$  60 mm - W20

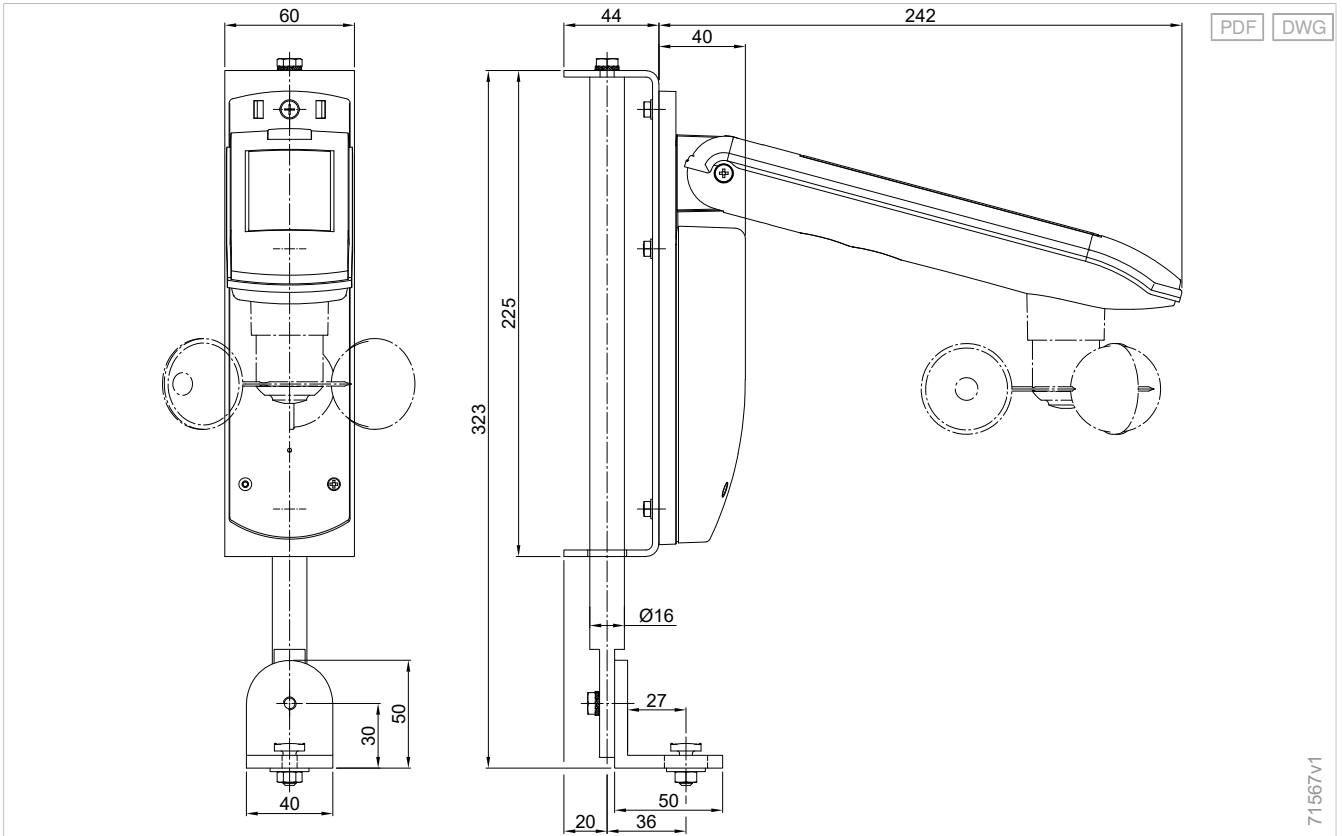


Reinforcement profile, rectangular - W20





Bracket for connecting a WMS or EWFS weather station to the guide rail



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Additional product information

### Protects the unit from damage caused by rain

The conservatory awning W20 is intended to be used as a **sun shading system**, not as rain protection.

To prevent **destruction of/damage to** the awning due to sudden rain, one of the following pre-conditions must be fulfilled:

- Control including precipitation sensor
- Drainage cutouts in the fabric

If none of these pre-conditions is fulfilled, the **user is responsible** for retracting the awning before it starts to rain.

Small amounts of residual water can lead to **smudges** at the edges of awnings.

#### Number of drainage cutouts

Order area	Number
15 m <sup>2</sup>	6
20 m <sup>2</sup>	8
24 m <sup>2</sup>	10
30 m <sup>2</sup>	12

### SDO switch - Mutual interlock

When using a conservatory awning **W20 above a ventilation wing** (no smoke and heat extraction system), it is necessary to use an SDO switch, which is integrated into the awning.

This creates a mutual interlock between the conservatory awning and the wing. That means that the conservatory awning will not extend as soon as the ventilation wing is opened and the wing will not open when the awning is extended.

The minimum order width is increased to 900 mm.

For versions with SDO switch, only a hard-wired motor is possible. A plug receiver cannot be used.

More information on request.

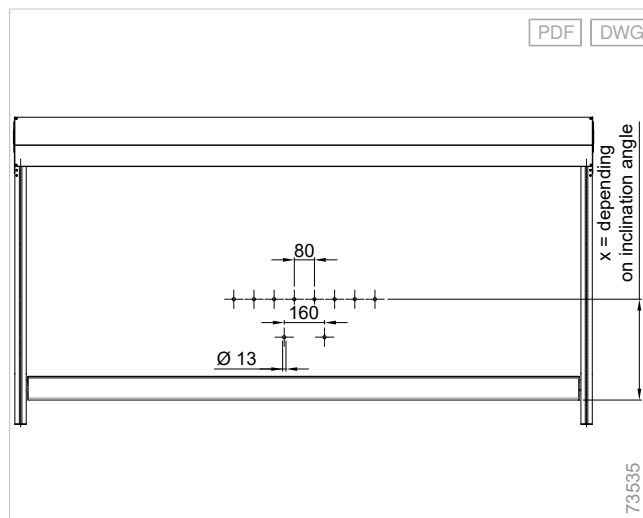
### VUNO model

Conservatory awnings Climara can be used with a "from bottom to top" direction of movement.

#### Notes:

- Each awning section requires two guide rails.
- Because the cover panel opens in the extension direction, there is an increased risk of the fabric becoming soiled.
- State clearly on the order form: Direction of movement "from bottom to top".
- State the roof pitch angle when ordering.

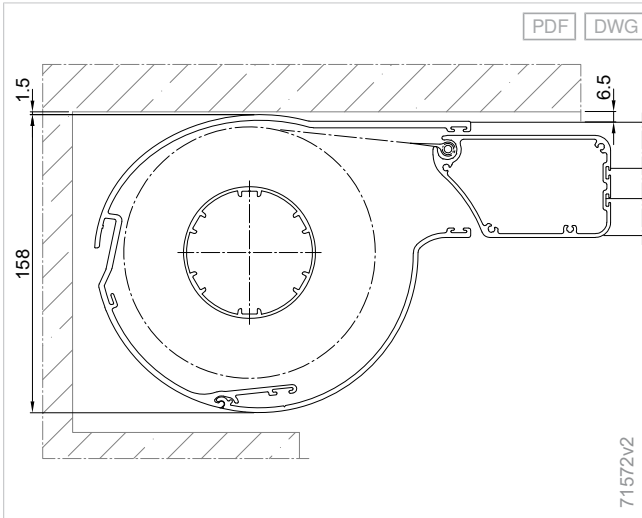
#### Drainage cutouts



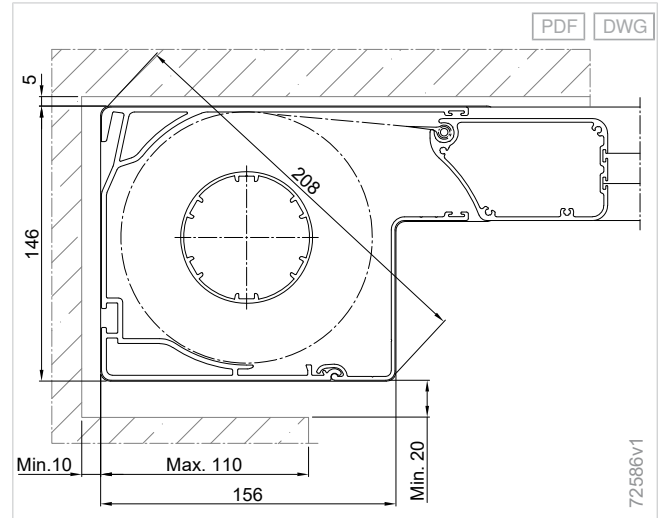
Dimension x depends on inclination angle of the unit between 200 mm (16°) and 1115 mm (3°).

## Mounting examples

Installation space - W20 round cover panel

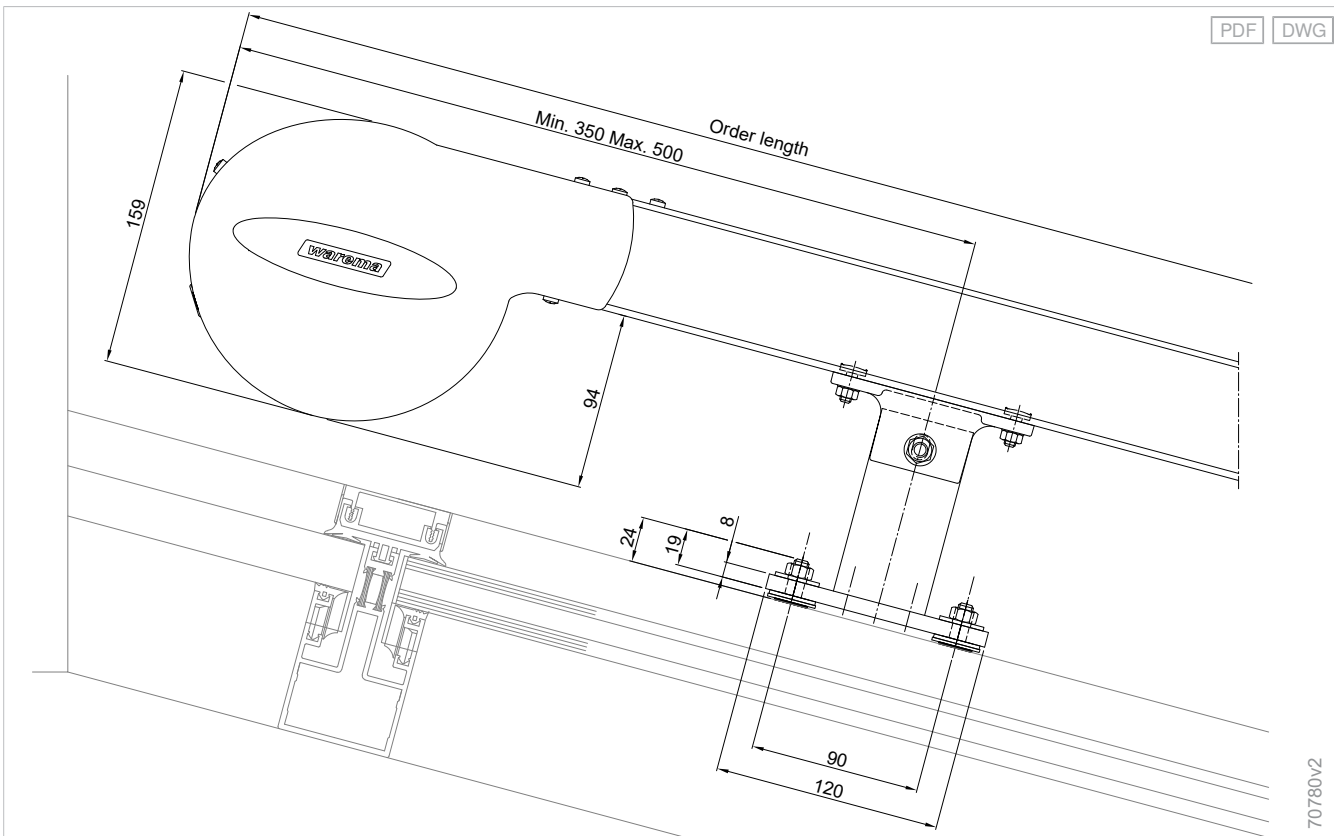


Installation space - W20 rectangular cover panel



**Attention:** Installation or inspection of the cover panel only possible outside the shaft.

Guide rail fixation - W20





# Contents

## Supplementary accessories

WMS Wind sensor and WMS sensor system.....	326
WMS Wind sensor.....	327
WMS sensor system.....	328
Smart Living packages.....	330
Smart Living connect package.....	331
Smart Living control package.....	331
Valance roller blind.....	332
Valance roller blind with crank.....	333
Valance roller blind with motor and basic model.....	335
Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control.....	336
Valance roller blind with motor and storage battery and WMS control.....	337
Wind protection for valance roller blind.....	339
Details.....	340
Lighting.....	342
Integrated lighting.....	343
LED strip light rail.....	346
Radiant heater.....	350
Basic radiant heater.....	351
Designer radiant heater.....	352
Multicube set.....	354
Protection against light rain - Perea P20 and P40.....	356
Pole, lowered vertically.....	357
Drainage cutouts.....	362
Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance.....	366
PVC viewing field.....	374
GranTex with easyZIP guidance.....	382
Patio frame.....	390
Patio frame Terrea.....	391
Patio frame Perea.....	397
Turning gear.....	402
Printed fabrics.....	404
Fabric lettering, painted.....	405
Stretcher frame.....	406
Protective fabric cover.....	412
Balcony fabrics.....	413

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Supplementary accessories

### WMS Wind sensor and WMS sensor system

#### Protective

Protection from damage due to stormy weather: The wind and precipitation monitoring protects the awning from damage due to the effects of extreme weather.

#### Comfortable

No overheated conservatories: Using the transmitted brightness values, the sun control extends awnings in good time, even if no one is at home.

#### Unobtrusive

The compact WMS Wind sensor is barely visible when mounted on the awning front rail. The WMS sensor system is unobtrusive when mounted on the guide rail.

#### Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Conservatory awnings Climara



#### ☑ Product characteristics

- WMS Wind sensor on the front rail of the articulated arm and cassette awning Terrea for fully automatic control according to wind.
- WMS sensor system for conservatory awnings Climara W20 and pergola awning Perea P20 and P40 for control according to wind, photo and precipitation.

# WMS Wind sensor

## Can be used for:

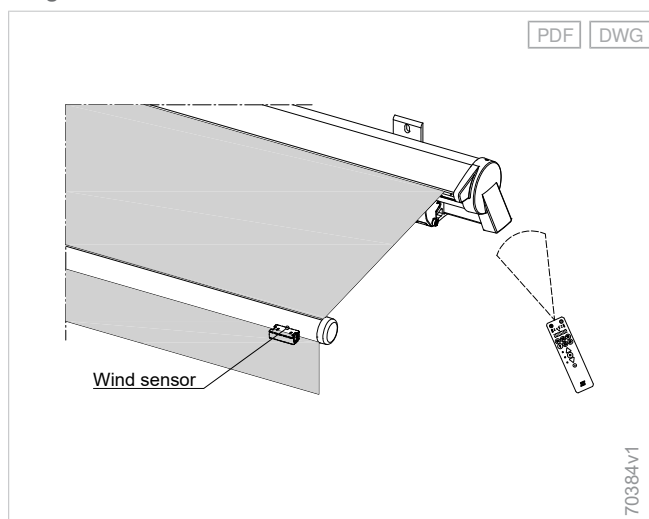
- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea

## Product characteristics

Transmission frequency	2,4 GHz
Degree of protection	IP 54
Safety class	III
Width	71 mm
Height	40 mm
Depth	26 mm

## Mounting examples

### Integrated wind sensor



## Product characteristics

- Operation of the awning via a WMS transmitter
- Fully automatic control according to wind
- Power supplied by batteries
- Wind monitoring to protect the awning
- Sensitivity of the wind sensor adjusted to the projection of the awning
- Suitable for retrofitting
- Compact dimensions

## Notes

- No separate mounting required
- Additional switch operation only possible via WMS Transmitter UP

# WMS sensor system

## Can be used for:

- Perea P20
- Perea P40
- Climara W20

## Product characteristics

Width	265 mm
Height	19 mm
Depth	40 mm

## Product characteristics

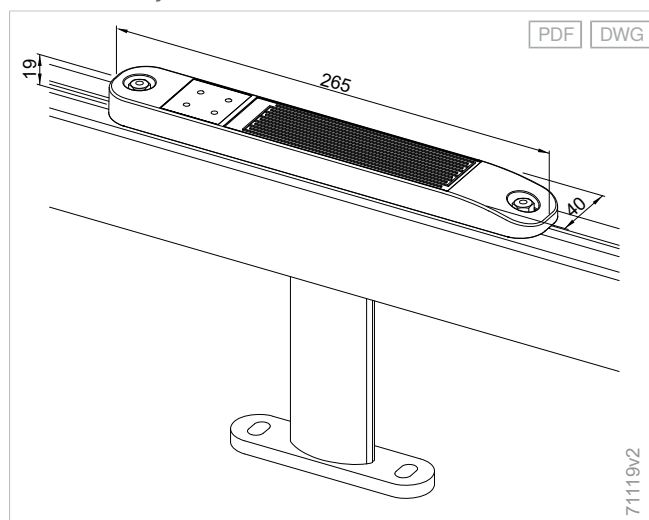
- The awning is operated via a WMS transmitter.
- Fully automatic control according to wind, light and precipitation.
- The WMS Sensor is positioned at the front on the guide rail on the connection side, fastening directly via the pole (type P20 and P40) or the guide rail bracket (type W20).
- The WMS Sensor detects wind movements through vibrations directly on the guide rail.
- In combination with the WMS Radio motor, the signals are evaluated and the awning is retracted if the wind is too strong.
- In addition, the sensor provides the measuring values for light and precipitation.
- The measuring values are transmitted by radio to the receiver in the awning and cause the awning to retract or extent, depending on the situation.
- With integrated control, the motor is installed in the fabric shaft on the opposite side. The control is located on the operation side, the cable outputs from the cover panel are on the operation side.

## Notes

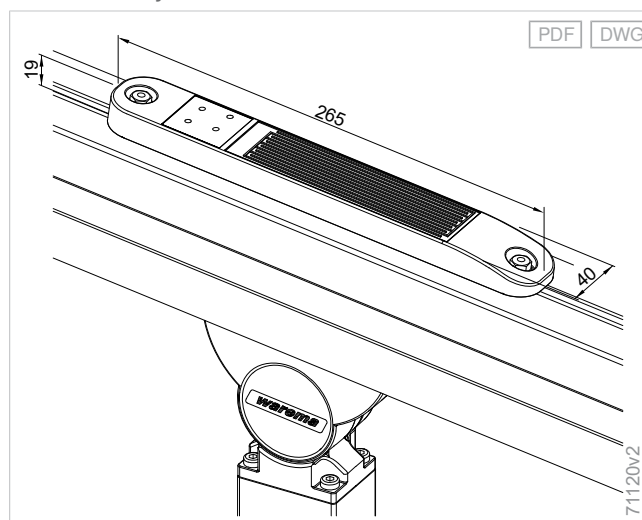
- Additional switch operation only possible via WMS Transmitter UP.
- When mounting both guide rails with reveal angle brackets to the side of the house wall, the WMS sensor system is not possible.
- In series-mounted units and in reveals, the awning must be completely premounted or disassembled for installation and inspection so that the control can be accessed from the outside.
- Maximum of two units in a row. Each unit requires a separate sensor system which must always be attached to the external guide rail.

## Mounting examples

WMS sensor system for W20



WMS sensor system for P40









## Supplementary accessories

### Smart Living packages

#### Comfortable

Relaxed enjoyment: More comfort and safety for sun shading products with the pre-configured Smart Living packages.

#### Coordinated

Perfect interaction: The sun protection system is automatically controlled by sensors according to brightness and weather or can be easily operated via WMS Hand-held transmitter.

#### Future-capable

Expandable system: WMS expansions can be flexibly added and integrated.



## Smart Living connect package

- Simple operation by hand-held transmitter, app or Alexa voice control - even while on the go.
- Wind and precipitation monitoring ensure the safety of the Outdoor Living product, even when no one is at home.
- Sun control lets awnings and the like extend when the sun is shining.

## Smart Living connect package - Terrea

### Product characteristics

Package includes:

- WMS Hand-held transmitter plus
- WMS WebControl pro
- WMS Radio motor
- WMS Wind sensor

## Smart Living connect package - Perea

### Product characteristics

Package includes:

- WMS Hand-held transmitter plus
- WMS WebControl pro
- WMS Radio motor
- WMS sensor system

## Smart Living control package

- Simple operation by hand-held transmitter.
- Wind and precipitation monitoring ensure the safety of the Outdoor Living product, even when no one is at home.
- Sun control lets awnings and the like extend when the sun is shining.

## Smart Living control package - Terrea

### Product characteristics

Package includes:

- WMS Hand-held transmitter plus
- WMS Radio motor
- WMS Wind sensor

## Smart Living control package - Perea

### Product characteristics

Package includes:

- WMS Hand-held transmitter plus
- WMS Radio motor
- WMS sensor system



## Supplementary accessories

### Valance roller blind

#### Glare-free

Less glare from low-lying sun: This means even patios and balconies facing south west can become a sheltered retreat.

#### Protected

More privacy: The additional visual privacy protects you from prying eyes from outside.

#### Comfortable

A drive for your individual requirements: Manual or electric operation is possible, optionally with a battery-operated motor and WMS Comfort control.

#### Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Conservatory awnings Climara



#### Product characteristics

- Additional vertical visual privacy and sun shading
- Fabric qualities like Twilight Pearl offer a view to the outside at the same time.

# Valance roller blind with crank

## Can be used for:

- Terrea 580
- Terrea K50
- Terrea K60
- Terrea K70
- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60
- Perea P40
- Climara W9
- Climara W10

## Components

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 35 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	35 mm

### Drive variants

- Crank

### Crank

- Crank with ball hook

### Gear

- Screw gear with spindle lock

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Starlight Blue
- Screen fabric
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Notes

- A web width of 2000 mm is generally used.
- For coupled units, the valance roller blind is supplied as a two-piece unit and can always be operated separately.
- Valance roller blind 580, G60, H60 available with or without additional valance.

**Operating note:** Valance roller blinds with crank operation must be retracted before closing the awning as otherwise there may be a danger of damage to the fabric and front rail. This applies especially when using the combination of a wind control and a valance roller blind with crank.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Products	580, K50	K60, K70	G60, H60	P40	W9, W10
<b>Fabric qualities</b>						
Acrylic plain coloured / Starlight Blue - Unicoloured	Maximum order height	1800 mm	2200 mm	2000 mm	2500 mm	2200 mm
Screen fabric	Maximum order height	1400 mm	2200 mm	1500 mm	1800 mm	1400 mm
Twilight Pearl	Maximum order height	2000 mm	2500 mm	2300 mm	2500 mm	2200 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Fabric processing</b>						
Acrylic fabric - strips / Starlight Blue - Stripes + Sewing / Gluing (overlapping)	Maximum order height	1000 mm	1600 mm	1400 mm	1900 mm	1200 mm
Acrylic fabric - strips / Starlight Blue - Stripes + UltraSeam™	Maximum order height	1800 mm	2200 mm	2000 mm		

### Maximum projection:

- 580, K50: 2500 mm
- G60, H60, K60, K70: 3500 mm
- Group units K60, K70: 3000 mm

### Maximum order width:

- W9, W10: 5000 mm

For the **turning gear** model with valance roller blind, the construction limit values for the turning gear apply.

# Valance roller blind with motor and basic model

## Can be used for:

- Terrea K60
- Terrea K70
- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60

## Components

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 42 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	42 mm

### Drive variants

- Motor

### Motor

- MM9/16 (valance roller blind)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Starlight Blue
- Screen fabric
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Product characteristics

Operation of awning and valance roller blind via separate switches.

## Notes

- A web width of 2000 mm is generally used.
- Motor without additional motor control unit.
- No safety function when retracting the awning.
- No additional control options.
- For coupled units, the valance roller blind is supplied as a two-piece unit and can always be operated together.
- Valance roller blind G60, H60 available with or without additional valance.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Products	K60, K70	G60, H60
<b>Fabric qualities</b>			
Acrylic plain coloured / Starlight Blue - Unicoloured	Maximum order height	1800 mm	1600 mm
Screen fabric	Maximum order height	1600 mm	1000 mm
Twilight Pearl	Maximum order height	2000 mm	1800 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Fabric processing</b>			
Acrylic fabric - strips / Starlight Blue - Stripes + Sewing / Gluing (overlapping)	Maximum order height	1200 mm	1000 mm
Acrylic fabric - strips / Starlight Blue - Stripes + UltraSeam™	Maximum order height	1800 mm	1600 mm

Maximum projection:

- G60, H60, K60, K70: 3500 mm
- Group units K60, K70: 3000 mm

A combination with **turning gear** is not possible.

# Valance roller blind with motor and integrated WMS comfort control

## Can be used for:

- Terrea K60
- Terrea K70
- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60

## Components

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 42 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	42 mm

### Drive variants

- Motor

### Motor

- MM9/16 (valance roller blind)

⊕ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Starlight Blue
- Screen fabric
- Twilight Pearl

⊕ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Product characteristics

- WMS control integrated into the awning
- Fully automatic control according to wind
- Operation of awning and valance roller blind via WMS transmitter on one channel

## Notes

- A web width of 2000 mm is generally used.
- For coupled units, the valance roller blind is supplied as a two-piece unit and can always be operated together.
- Valance roller blind G60, H60 available with or without additional valance.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Products	K60, K70	G60, H60
<b>Fabric qualities</b>			
Acrylic plain coloured / Starlight Blue - Unicoloured	Maximum order height	1800 mm	1600 mm
Screen fabric	Maximum order height	1600 mm	1000 mm
Twilight Pearl	Maximum order height	2000 mm	1800 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Fabric processing</b>			
Acrylic fabric - strips / Starlight Blue - Stripes + Sewing / Gluing (overlapping)	Maximum order height	1200 mm	1000 mm
Acrylic fabric - strips / Starlight Blue - Stripes + UltraSeam™	Maximum order height	1800 mm	1600 mm

### Maximum projection:

- G60, H60, K60, K70: 3500 mm
- Group units K60, K70: 3000 mm

A combination with **turning gear (G60/H60)** is not possible.

## Additional product information

### Connection when supplied with WMS

#### Dimmer

#### Connecting line:

- No external power distributor required
- Only one visible connecting line
- Depending on the equipment/model, it can be positioned on the drive end or the non-drive end.

The precise installation of the control and drive is indicated by labels on the bearing tube or in the side cover of the cassette/cover panel.



# Valance roller blind with motor and storage battery and WMS control

## Can be used for:

- Perea P40
- Climara W10

## Components

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 42 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	42 mm

### Drive variants

- Motor

### Motor

- P6/20M (valance roller blind)

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- Starlight Blue
- Screen fabric
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Product characteristics

- Motor with upstream WMS receiver incl. battery charge control.
- Operation of awning and valance roller blind via WMS transmitter
- A control housing is attached below the drop profile in the peripheral area.

## Notes

A web width of 2000 mm is generally used.

Additional control option via WMS sensor system, including fully automatic control according to wind.

**Installation/dismantling of series-mounted units and units in the reveal, W10/P40:** In series-mounted units and in reveals, the awning must be completely premounted or disassembled for installation and inspection.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Products	P40	W10
<b>Fabric qualities</b>			
Acrylic plain coloured / Starlight Blue - Unicoloured	Maximum order height	2500 mm	1400 mm
Screen fabric	Maximum order height	1800 mm	1200 mm
Twilight Pearl	Maximum order height	2500 mm	1500 mm
<b>Fabric qualities + Fabric processing</b>			
Acrylic fabric - strips / Starlight Blue - Stripes + Sewing / Gluing (overlapping)	Maximum order height	1200 mm	500 mm

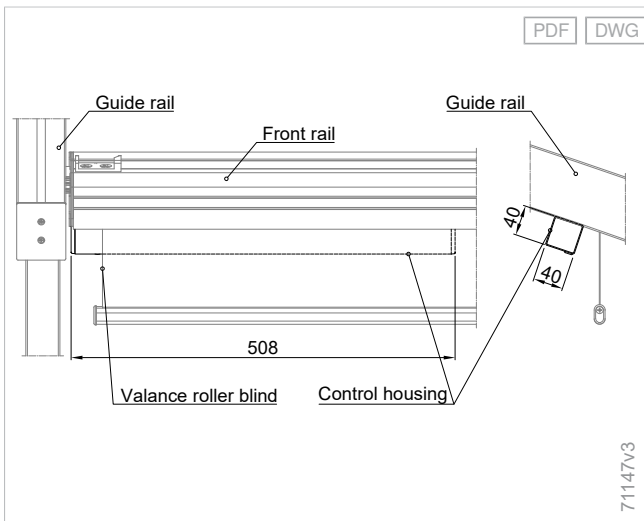
### Maximum order width:

- W10: 5000 mm

## Dimension determination

### Details

Control housing for valance roller blind with motor and WMS control - P40



## Wind protection for valance roller blind

### Can be used for:

- Perea P40
- Climara W9
- Climara W10

### Product characteristics

Optional wind protection for the valance roller blind to prevent it from swinging in light wind.

The rubber cords can be hung, for example, from a hook on-site, thus reducing the fabric's movements in light wind.

### Notes

The wind protection must only be used under supervision and not in combination with wind monitoring.

## Details

### Fabric recommendation

The use of Twilight Pearl fabric quality is recommended, as it offers good view out. Especially for use with valance roller blinds, a bale width of 2600 mm is used for this quality. With crosswise processing and seamless design (depending on the type up to a valance roller blind height of 2500 mm), the Twilight Pearl fabric will win you over with very good optical results.

Alternatively, the use of unicoloured acrylic fabrics with transverse seam is recommended, as they offer much significantly improved winding behaviour in comparison with longitudinal processing.

For multi-strips with longitudinal seam, it is recommended to use UltraSeam™ in the seam area.

The height is defined from the centre of the front rail to the bottom edge of the drop profile. Using the maximum possible height minimises the sagging of the fabric shaft.

### Patio awnings with valance roller blind and motor

The lines specified in the wiring diagrams are minimum diameters intended for copper, regardless of the length and the resulting voltage drops. The specified lines are recommendations.

According to VDE 0022, only the installer of electrical units is responsible for compliance with power supply company and VDE requirements.

Valance roller blinds with basic model must be retracted before closing the patio awning as the fabric and front rail might otherwise be damaged.

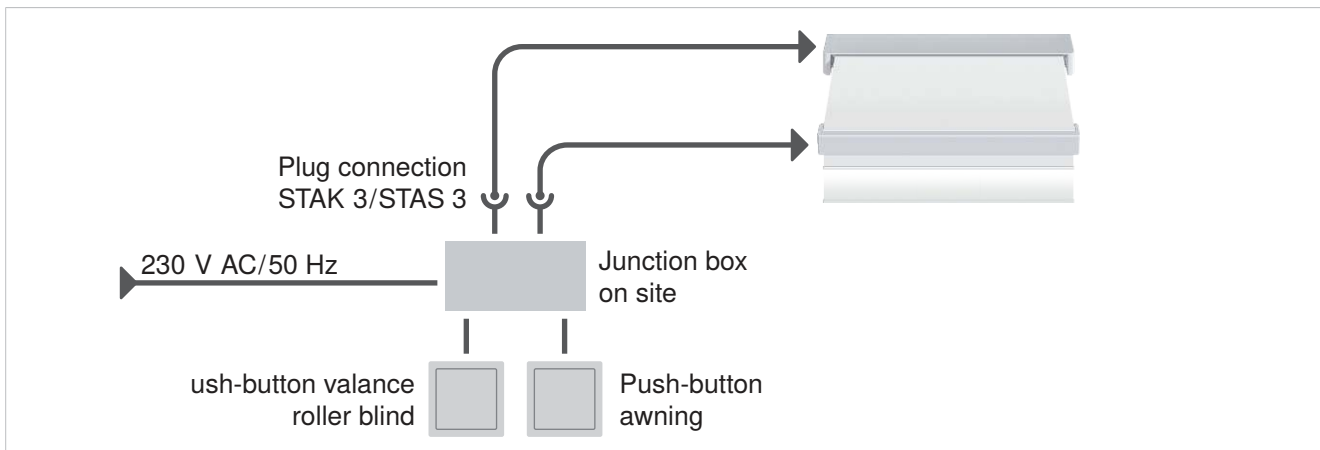
For patio awnings with WMS Comfort control, the awning and valance roller blind are operated via a WMS transmitter.

With individual units, the valance roller blind retracts first and then the awning in the event of a wind alarm.

For types W10 and P40 with valance roller blind as well as a motor and WMS control, the awning and valance roller blind are operated via a WMS transmitter. The battery charge is ensured and monitored by the receiver. When the charging level is critical, the valance roller blind is automatically retracted (subsequent manual operation may result in a time delay in the operation of the awning).

Where patio awnings have WMS sensors, the valance roller blind retracts first and then the awning in the event of a wind alarm.

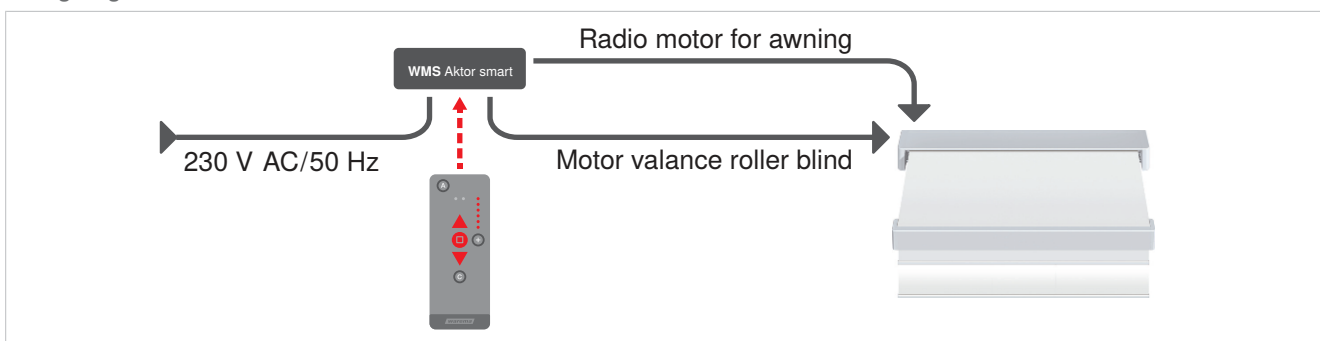
Wiring diagram for valance roller blind with motor and basic model



Planning

Terrea

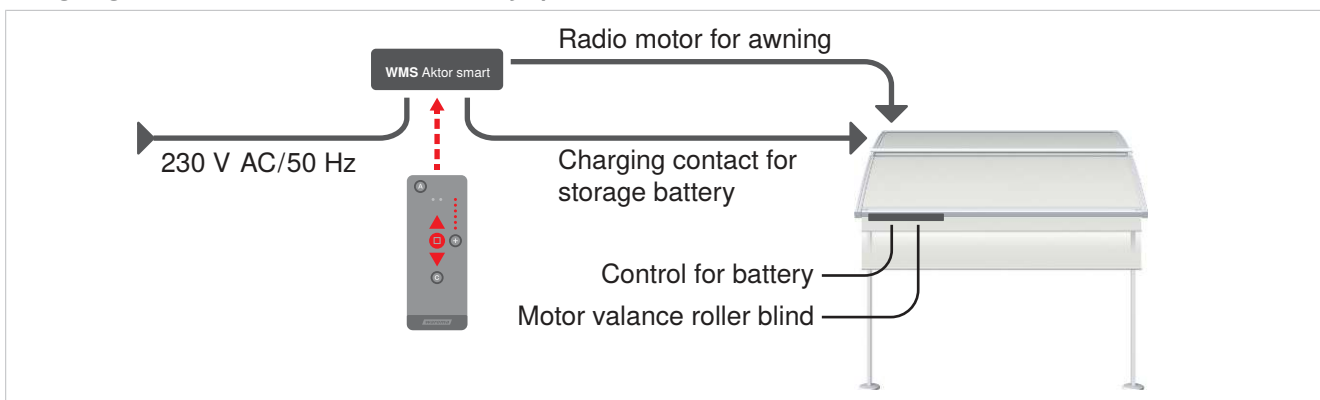
Wiring diagram for valance roller blind with motor and WMS comfort control



Perea

Patio side screens

Wiring diagram for valance roller blind with battery-operated motor and WMS comfort control



Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards



## Supplementary accessories

### Lighting

#### Dimmable

For individual lighting moods: The WMS dimmer sets the LED strips to one of the ten brightness levels as required, ranging from soft ambient lighting to bright reading lighting.

#### Smart

Wireless operation plus automation: The lighting can be switched on and off and dimmed using a hand-held transmitter or app and a preferred brightness level can be conveniently saved.

#### Continuous

A sensational atmosphere: LEDs provide seamless, warm white light without annoying spots of light.

#### Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Conservatory awnings Climara
- Slat roofs Lamaxa



#### Product characteristics

- Lighting integrated into the front rail, the cassette or the guide rails
- Separate light rail with a round or rectangular profile offers additional lighting options

# Integrated lighting

## Can be used for:

- Terrea 580
- Terrea K50
- Terrea K60
- Terrea K70
- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60
- Perea P20
- Perea P40/P40 WE
- Perea P60
- Climara W10

## Set

### Lens - LED strips

#### LED strip

Operating voltage	24 V DC
Total power of light	400 running metre per metre, 4.8 W/m
Degree of protection	IP 67
Durability	Approx. 10000 operating hours
Colour temperature	3000 K

#### Power supply unit - LED strips

Degree of protection	IP 54
----------------------	-------

## Product characteristics

Operation	Optionally with switch (external power supply unit) or WMS transmitter with WMS dimmer (integrated)
Attachment	<b>G60/H60/K60:</b> Front rail <b>580/K50:</b> Cassette <b>K70:</b> Cassette and/or front rail <b>P20/P40/P40 WE/P60/W10:</b> Guide rails (left and right)

## Notes

**Connection type:** In the case of delivery without radio control on-site, in the case of delivery with WMS Dimmer already connected.

**Unlit area:** The LED strips are assembled in increments of 50 mm. This can lead to an unlit area:

- **Articulated arm and cassette awnings:** Max. 25 mm per side
- **W10/P20/P40/P40 WE:** Max. 50 mm on front end of guide rails
- **P60:** Max. 100 mm up to drainage gutter. In the P60, the LED strips end at the drainage gutter, i.e. there is an additional unlit area from the drainage gutter to the front rail. Offset: Order depth -500 mm = length of LED strip

**Installation/dismantling of series-mounted units and units in the reveal, W10/P20/P40/P40 WE/P60:** In series-mounted units and in reveals, the awning must be completely premounted or disassembled for installation and inspection.

Integrated lighting not possible in combination with awning **crank operation.**

## Additional product information

### Connection when supplied with WMS Dimmer

#### Connecting line:

- No external power distributor required
- Only one visible connecting line
- Depending on the equipment/model, it can be positioned on the drive end or the non-drive end.

The precise installation of the control and drive is indicated by labels on the bearing tube or in the side cover of the cassette/cover panel.

## Position of integrated LED strips

Integrated lighting - Terrea K70



Integrated lighting - Terrea H60



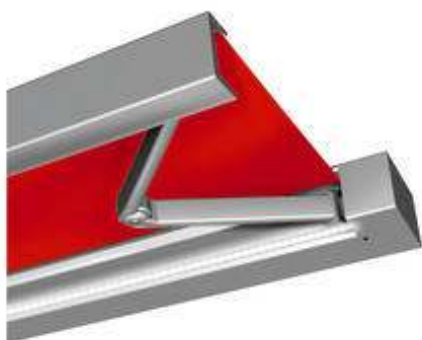
Integrated lighting - Terrea 580



Integrated lighting - Perea P20



Integrated lighting - Terrea K50



Integrated lighting - Perea P40



LED strip light rail and integrated lighting - Terrea K60



Integrated lighting - Perea P40 WeatherEdition

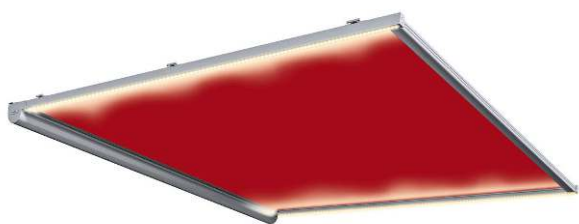




Integrated lighting - Perea P60



Integrated lighting - Climara W10



# LED strip light rail

## Can be used for:

LED strip light rail with round profile:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Conservatory awnings Climara W10
- Pergola awnings Perea P20, P40, P40 WE, P60 and P70
- Retrofitting solution with external control for all other situations

LED strip light rail with rectangular profile:

- Conservatory awning Climara W10 with rectangular cover panel
- Pergola awning Perea P20
- Cassette awnings Terrea K50 and K70

## Set

### Round profile for LED strip light rails

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Profile	Round profile
Diameter	20 mm

### Rectangular profile for LED strip light rails

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	33 mm
Height	13 mm

The LED strip light rail is closed laterally.

### Lens - LED strip light rail

#### LED strip

Operating voltage	24 V DC
Total power of light	400 running metre per metre, 4.8 W/m
Degree of protection	IP 67
Durability	Approx. 10000 operating hours
Colour temperature	3000 K

### Power supply unit - LED strips

Degree of protection	IP 54
----------------------	-------

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

⊕ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Product characteristics

Operation	Optionally with switch, WMS Plug receiver or WMS Dimmer (LED)
Attachment	LED strip light rail with round profile: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- <b>Articulated arm awnings Terrea:</b> With bracket made from folded aluminium on the bearing tube</li><li>- <b>Cassette awnings Terrea, pergola awnings Perea P40, P40 WE and P60 and conservatory awning Climara W10:</b> Directly on the cassette or cover panel via clip holder</li><li>- <b>Pergola awning Perea P70:</b> Directly on the travelling reinforcement profiles via clip holder, max. 6 light rails per unit</li></ul> LED strip light rail with rectangular profile: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- <b>Cassette awning K50, K70, pergola awning Perea P20 and conservatory awning Climara W10 with rectangular cover panel:</b> Directly on the cassette or cover panel</li></ul>
Lighting angle	90 °

## Notes

**Connection type:** On-site, without plug-in connector, included with orders of awnings with WMS radio motor control integrated into the awning (in connection with WMS Dimmer).

**Installation/dismantling of series-mounted units and units in the reveal, W10/P20/P40/P40 WE/P60 with integrated control:** In series-mounted units and in reveals, the awning must be completely pre-mounted or disassembled for installation and inspection.

### Retrofitting:

- Generally only possible with external accommodation of the control
- Not possible for the pergola awning Perea P70

## Dimension determination

Connection side generally seen from outside.

### Offset

Products	Configuration variants	Offset
<b>Drive variants</b>		
530 / G60 / H60	Motor	20 mm
530 / G60 / H60	Crank	20 mm
550	Motor	120 mm
550	Crank	250 mm
580	Motor	150 mm
580	Crank	230 mm
K50	Motor	20 mm
K50	Crank	350 mm
K60	Motor	140 mm
K60	Crank	350 mm
K70	Motor	120 mm
P20	Motor	45 mm
P40 / P40 WeatherEdition / P60	Motor	65 mm
P70	Motor	144 mm
W10	Motor	0 mm
<b>Supplementary accessories</b>		
G60 / H60	Turning gear	200 mm

The LED strip light rail is always shorter than the order width of the awning by the width of the offset specified in the table.

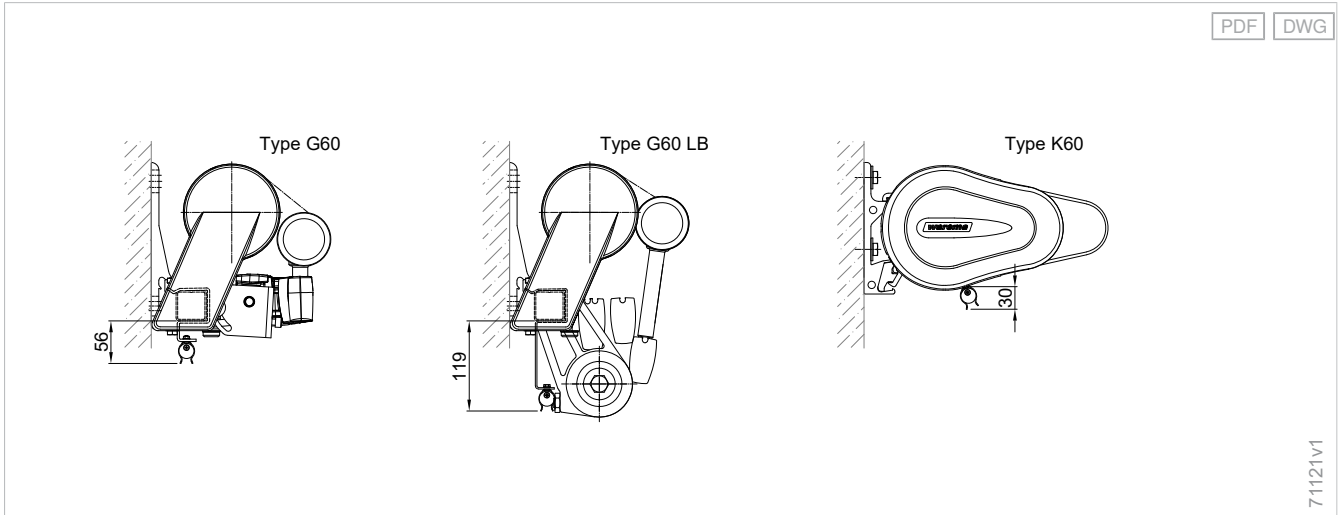
## Quantity determination

### Number of fixing points

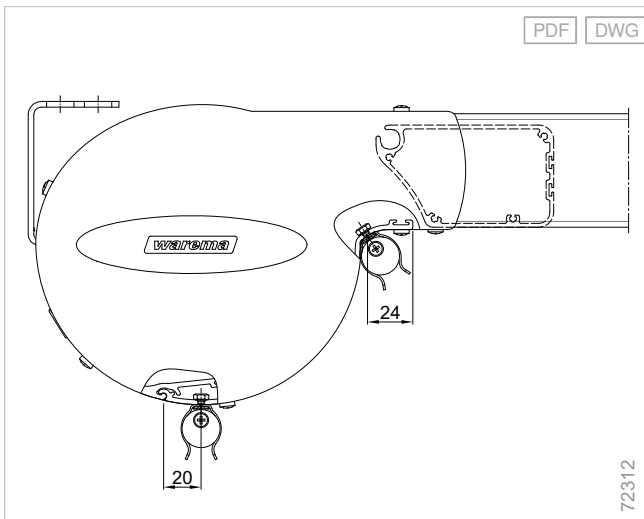
Configuration variants	Order width	Number
<b>Supplementary accessories</b>		
LED strip light rail	2000 mm	2
LED strip light rail	2001 - 3000 mm	3
LED strip light rail	3001 - 4000 mm	4
LED strip light rail	4001 - 5000 mm	5
LED strip light rail	5001 - 6000 mm	6
LED strip light rail	6001 - 7001 mm	7

## Details

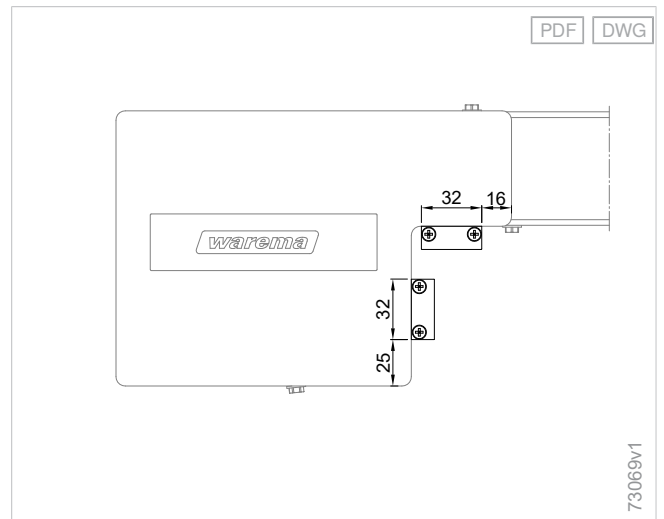
### Example brackets for LED strip light rail



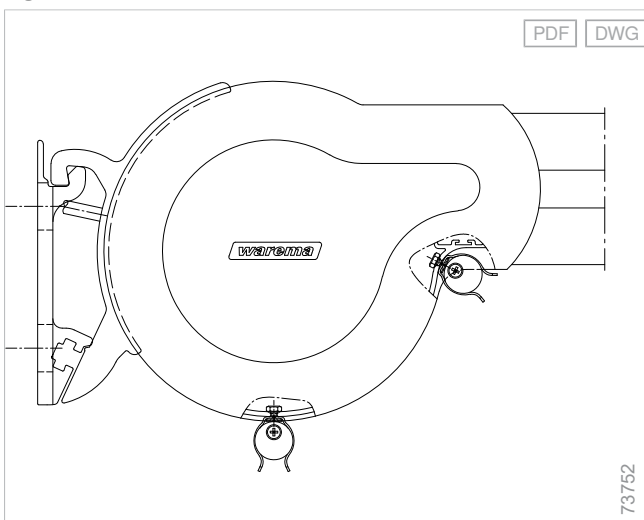
### Light rail connection - W10 round cover panel



### Light rail connection - rectangular cover panel



### Light rail connection - P40/P40 WE/P60



## Additional product information

### Position of LED strip light rail - Examples

LED strip light rail and integrated lighting - Terrea K60



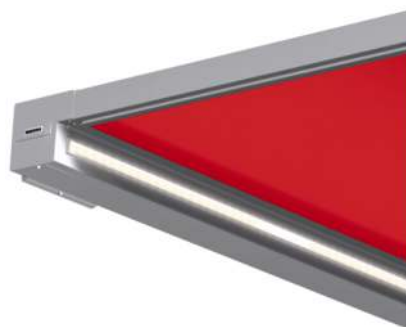
LED strip light rail - Climara W10



LED strip light rail - Terrea H60



LED strip light rail, rectangular profile - Perea P20



LED strip light rail - Perea P40/P40 WE



LED strip light rail - Perea P70



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Supplementary accessories

### Radiant heater

#### Warming

A feel-good atmosphere: The radiant heater extends the time you can spend outside by efficiently warming the patio, even on cool days.

#### Universal

Numerous applications: The radiant heater can be installed on an awning as well as on a slat roof or house wall. It can be used with all types of awning.

#### Comfortable

Easy operation: The radiant heater can be operated very easily via a switch or even more conveniently via hand-held transmitter.

#### Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Conservatory awnings Climara
- Lamaxa slat roofs



#### Product characteristics

- Cosy warmth
- 2 models to choose from
- Operation via hand-held transmitter or switch

## Basic radiant heater



### Colours

- RAL 9006 white aluminium, satin finish
- RAL 9016 traffic white, satin finish
- RAL 9005 jet black, satin finish

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

### Product characteristics

Power	1500 W
Operation	Optionally with switch or EWFS or WMS radio remote control
Attachment	Possible on the awning or the building wall with a bracket
Operating voltage	230 V AC
Connection type	Safety plug
Degree of protection	IP X4
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	390 mm
Height	100 mm

### Product characteristics

Infrared quartz technology with Philips gold tube

### Notes

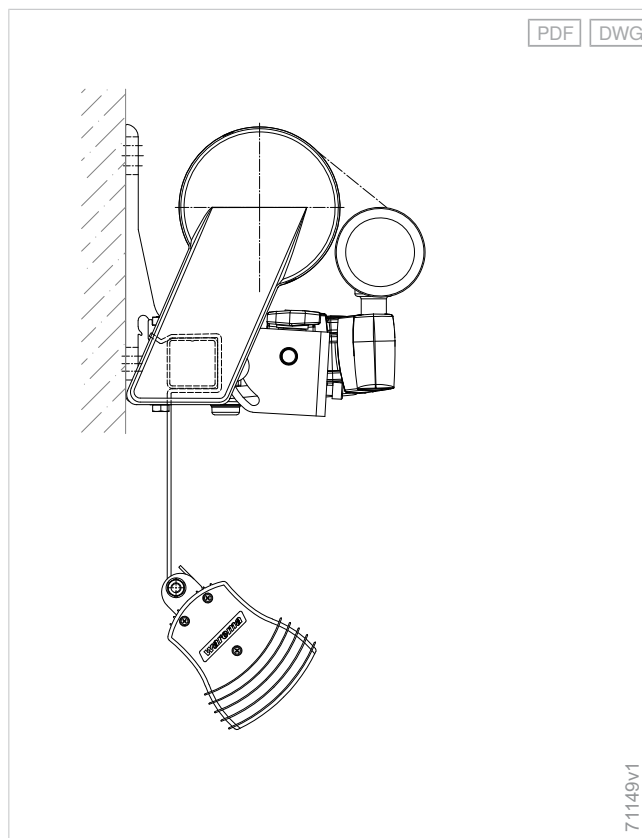
#### Minimum distance:

- In the lighting area, the minimum distance to flammable materials must be at least 1000 mm.
- For awnings with valance or valance roller blind, the radiant heater must only be operated when the awning is extended.
- The use of a radiant heater with awnings with a superordinate electronic control and a manual valance roller blind, for example, is not recommended.
- The radiant heater is only suitable for outdoor use.
- Please observe the safety instructions in the installation and operating instructions.

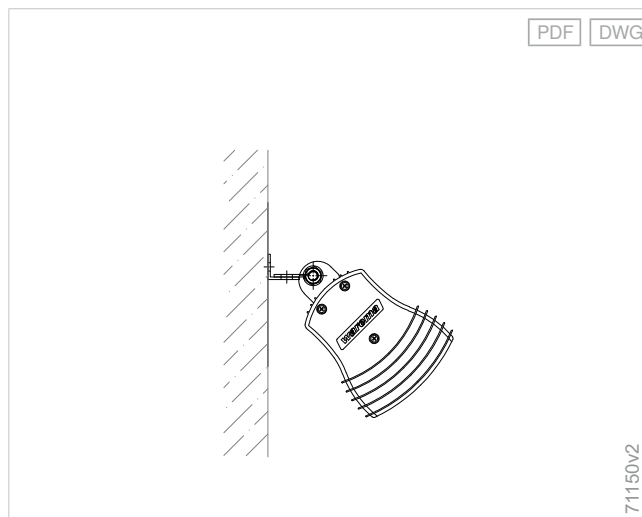
**Fuse required:** Please note when planning that a separate fuse C16A is required for radiant heaters.

## Mounting examples

Bracket for radiant heater for G60



Bracket for radiant heater for wall installation



# Designer radiant heater



## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "WAREMA colour world", Page 10

## Product characteristics

Power	2200 W
Operation	Optionally with switch or WMS radio remote control.
Attachment	Possible on the slat roof or the building wall.
Operating voltage	230 V AC
Degree of protection	IP 65
Width	974 mm
Height	176 mm
Weight	8 kg
Inclination angle	30 - 40 °

## Product characteristics

- Infrared short wave radiant heater
- Reduced red light radiation thanks to black glass ceramic cover
- Powder-coated housing
- Can optionally be dimmed via WMS dimmer

## Notes

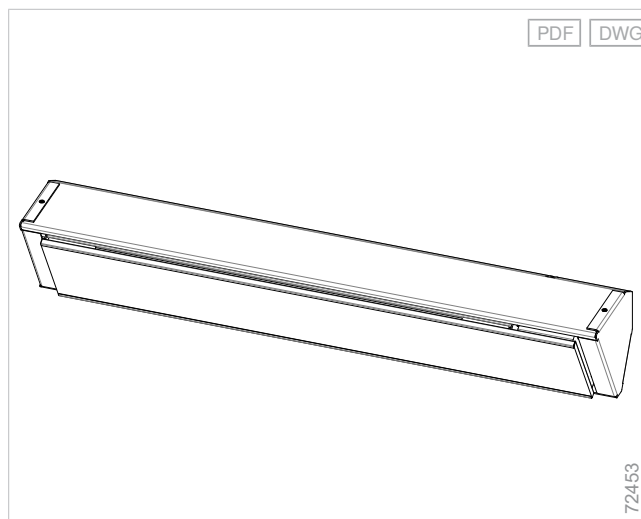
### Minimum distance:

- In the lighting area, the minimum distance to flammable materials must be at least 1000 mm.
- For awnings with valance or valance roller blind, the radiant heater must only be operated when the awning is extended.
- The use of a radiant heater with awnings with a superordinate electronic control and a manual valance roller blind, for example, is not recommended.
- The radiant heater is only suitable for outdoor use and must be mounted horizontally.
- Please observe the safety instructions in the installation and operating instructions.

**Fuse required:** Please note when planning that a separate fuse C16 is required for radiant heaters.

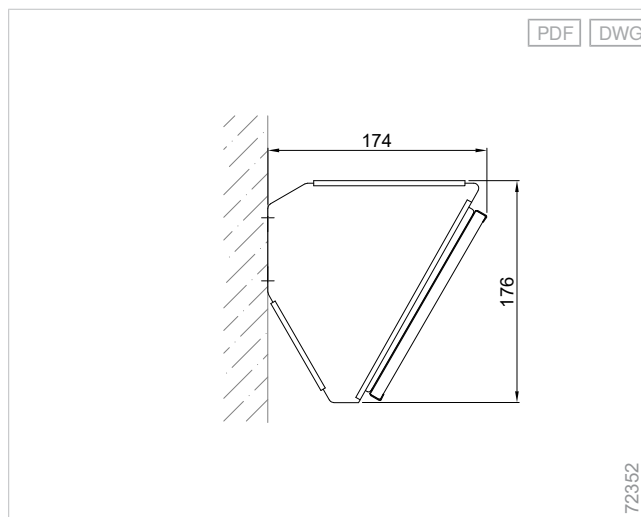
## Details

### Design radiant heater



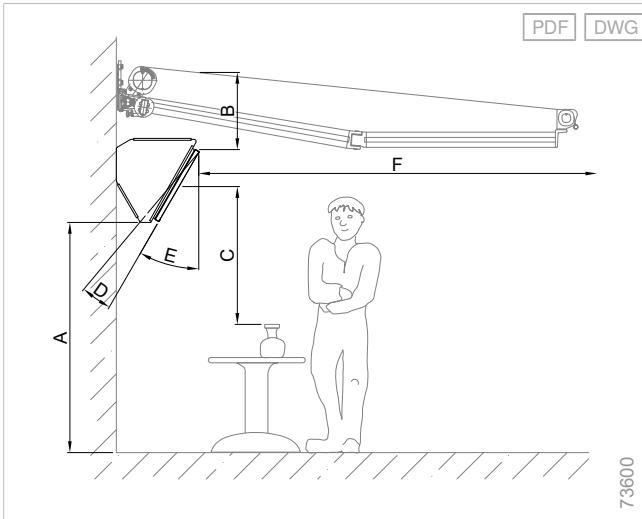
## Mounting examples

### Wall installation - design radiant heater





### Design radiant heater mounting position



- |   |  |   |                                |
|---|--|---|--------------------------------|
| A | Minimum distance from the floor is 2100 mm                           | D | Continuously adjustable to 40° |
| B | Minimum distance toward the top is 240 mm and to the sides is 600 mm | E | Standard inclination 30°       |
| C | Minimum distance downward to flammable material is 1000 mm           | F | Distance forward is 1500 mm    |



## Supplementary accessories

### Multicube set

#### Easy to install

No screw connections: Robust gabions secure the poles and replace a concrete foundation. The substructure does not have to be drilled.

#### Versatile

Weight with added value: With wood coverings, the Multicube set also offers attractive seating options.

#### Customisable

You can choose any filling and colour for the steel basket for an individual look. Baskets are always filled on site.

#### Can be used for:

- Pergola awnings Perea



#### Product characteristics

- Pole fixing without screw connection in the substructure
- Weight from on-site filling material

## Components

### Steel cage

#### Multicube 40 steel cage

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Width	340 mm
Height	400 mm
Depth	340 mm

Steel cage made of double-bar mesh mats, in galvanised quality with floor.

### Pad for wooden seat

#### Multicube pad for wooden seat

Material	Wood
Surface	Triple sealed
Material colour	Natural colour, Light brown, Anthracite
Width	550 mm
Height	40 mm
Depth	550 mm

### Sheet base

#### Sheet base - Dublin 8Z

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Plain
Width	1000 mm
Height	100 mm
Depth	1000 mm

Incl. adapter plate for pole fixing.

## Notes

### Example weight

When filling with granite (bulk approx. 1.5 t/m<sup>3</sup>), the Multicube set has a total weight of approx. 315 kg.

**Attention:** Filling material is not included in the scope of delivery!

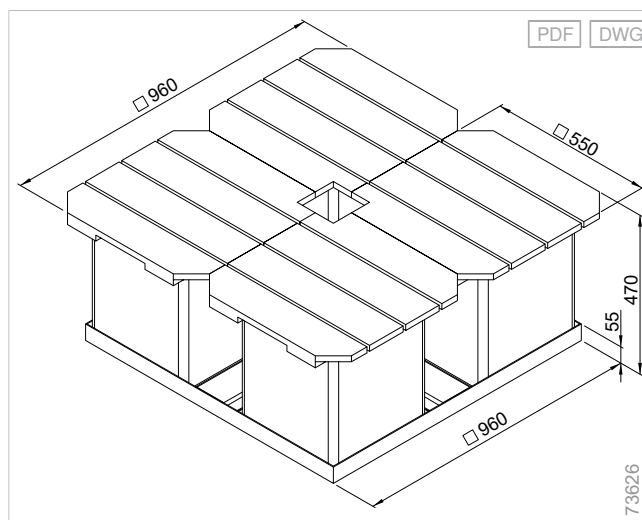
## Dimensions

Width	1100 mm
Height	470 mm
Depth	1100 mm

Dimensions, notes Total dimensions of the Multicube set

## Dimension determination

### Multicube set



## Additional product information

### Required total weight of the Multicube set

Minimum total weight of the Multicube set:

- Per pole
- Use of the pergola awning up to Beaufort number 5
- Applies to maximum unit dimensions

**Perea P20:** 120 kg

**Perea P40/P40 WE:** 120 kg

**Perea P60:** 90 kg

**Perea P70:** 130 kg



## Supplementary accessories

### Protection against light rain - Perea P20 and P40

#### All-weather

Take your time despite the light rain: The rain protection extends your time outdoors, even in bad weather.

#### Protective

Protected despite the rain: In light rain, the drainage cutouts prevent water collecting on the extended fabric and prevent damage.

#### Defined

Controlled drainage: The lowerable pole directs the draining to one side in a defined manner. The drainage cutouts ensure that rainwater drains off close to the front rail.



#### Can be used for:

- Perea P20 (drainage cutouts)
- Perea P40 (lowerable pole or drainage cutouts)



#### Product characteristics

- Supplementary drainage cutouts (P20 and P40) or the lowerable poles (P40) enable it to occasionally be used as rain protection.
- The lowerable poles are certain to drain the water to one side.

# Pole, lowered vertically

## Components

### Pole, top

#### Pole - Perea

Maximum order height	2500 mm
Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	45 mm
Depth	60 mm

Notes on construction limit values:

Offset:

Max. 1/3 of order depth;

Max. 1200 mm; min. 105 mm

### Pole, bottom

#### Pole - P40 lowerable, bottom

Minimum order height	1350 mm
Maximum order height	1625 mm
Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	65 mm
Height	80 mm

## Drive variants

- Crank

### Crank

- Collapsible crank

### Gear

- Spindle drive

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Product characteristics

By lowering the pole, the front rail is sloped. This means that the water will drain to this side.

The lowerable pole is operated via a crank.

## Notes

### Notes on operation

**Water drainage** only functions when the pole is **completely lowered** and the awning is **completely extended**, otherwise there will be no rain protection and the awning can be damaged!

### Notes on product configuration

The lowerable pole serves to protect the unit from rain damage. At the same time, this measure allows the pergola to be used for occasional protection against light rain.

Small amounts of residual water can lead to **smudges** at the edges of awnings.

Even if the model is used for rain protection, it may be that **water droplets** penetrate e.g. the puncture sites of the seams at certain points.

A combination of lowerable pole and travelling reinforcement profile as well as lowerable pole and an automatic control is not possible.

The unit cannot be operated with lowered poles.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order depth	Maximum order depth	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Fabric qualities + Guide rail + Supplementary accessories</b>							
Acrylic fabric + Guide rail - Perea curved + Pole, lowered vertically	3000 mm	6500 mm	3220 mm	5000 mm	32,5 m <sup>2</sup>	10 °	20 °
Acrylic fabric + Guide rail - Perea straight + Pole, lowered vertically	3000 mm	6500 mm	3220 mm	5000 mm	32,5 m <sup>2</sup>	8 °	20 °
Acrylic fabric + Guide rail - Perea straight + Pole, lowered vertically	3000 mm	5000 mm	3220 mm	7000 mm	35 m <sup>2</sup>	8 °	20 °

The **minimum offset** for a lowerable pole is 220 mm (max. 1/3 of the order depth or 1200 mm).

Please note the sloped front rail for headroom planning.

### Inclination:

- The maximum order depth refers to an inclination of 14°.
- The cover panel must be mounted at least horizontally.

### Reinforcement profile:

- For order depths of 1401 mm or greater and curved guide rails, a (fixed) reinforcement profile is used.
- For order depths of 4001 mm or greater and straight guide rails, a (fixed) reinforcement profile is used.
- A combination of a lowerable pole and a travelling reinforcement profile as well as a lowerable pole and an automatic control is not possible.

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally only individual units possible, i.e. no coupled curtains possible.
- Lining up of two pergola awnings is possible with a flush closure.
- Each awning requires 2 single guide rails.
- The installation of two guide rails on one pole is possible with an adapter plate.
- Series mounting of the awnings is only possible for up to 2 units. The lowerable poles are each located outside.

## Dimension determination

### Minimum difference between installation height and headroom

Configuration variants	Order depth	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm	4500 mm	5000 mm	5500 mm	6000 mm	6500 mm	7000 mm
<b>Supplementary accessories + Guide rail</b>										
Pole, lowered vertically + Guide rail - Perea curved	Minimum inclination angle	10 °	10 °	10 °	10 °	10 °				
	Minimum difference	415 mm	500 mm	650 mm	860 mm	1110 mm				
Pole, lowered vertically + Guide rail - Perea straight	Minimum inclination angle	8 °	8 °	8 °	8 °	8 °	8 °	8 °	8 °	8 °
	Minimum difference	330 mm	400 mm	470 mm	540 mm	610 mm	680 mm	750 mm	830 mm	900 mm

Clearance necessary to allow for rain protection.

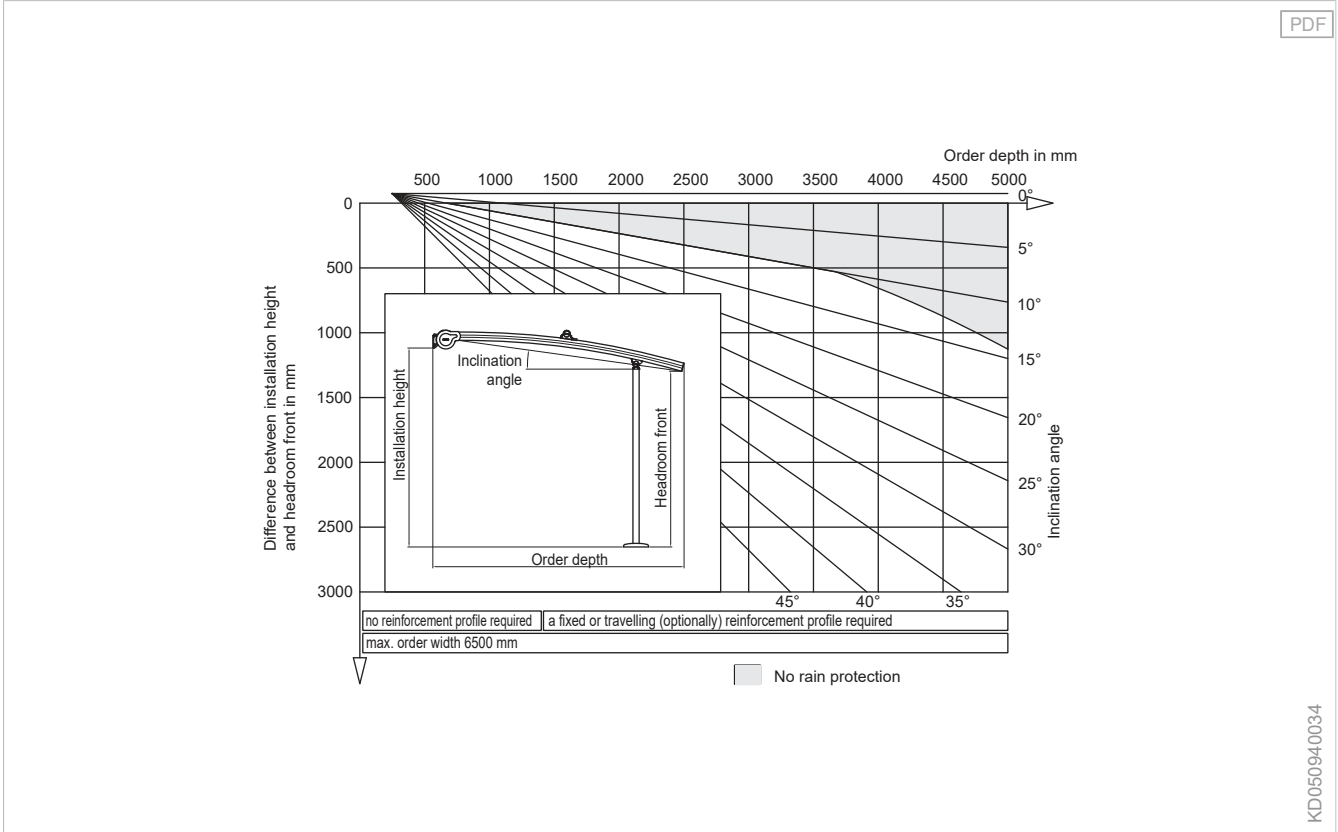
### Height difference

Order width	Height difference
3000 mm	200 mm
3500 mm	235 mm
4000 mm	270 mm
4500 mm	305 mm
5000 mm	340 mm
5500 mm	375 mm
6000 mm	410 mm
6500 mm	445 mm

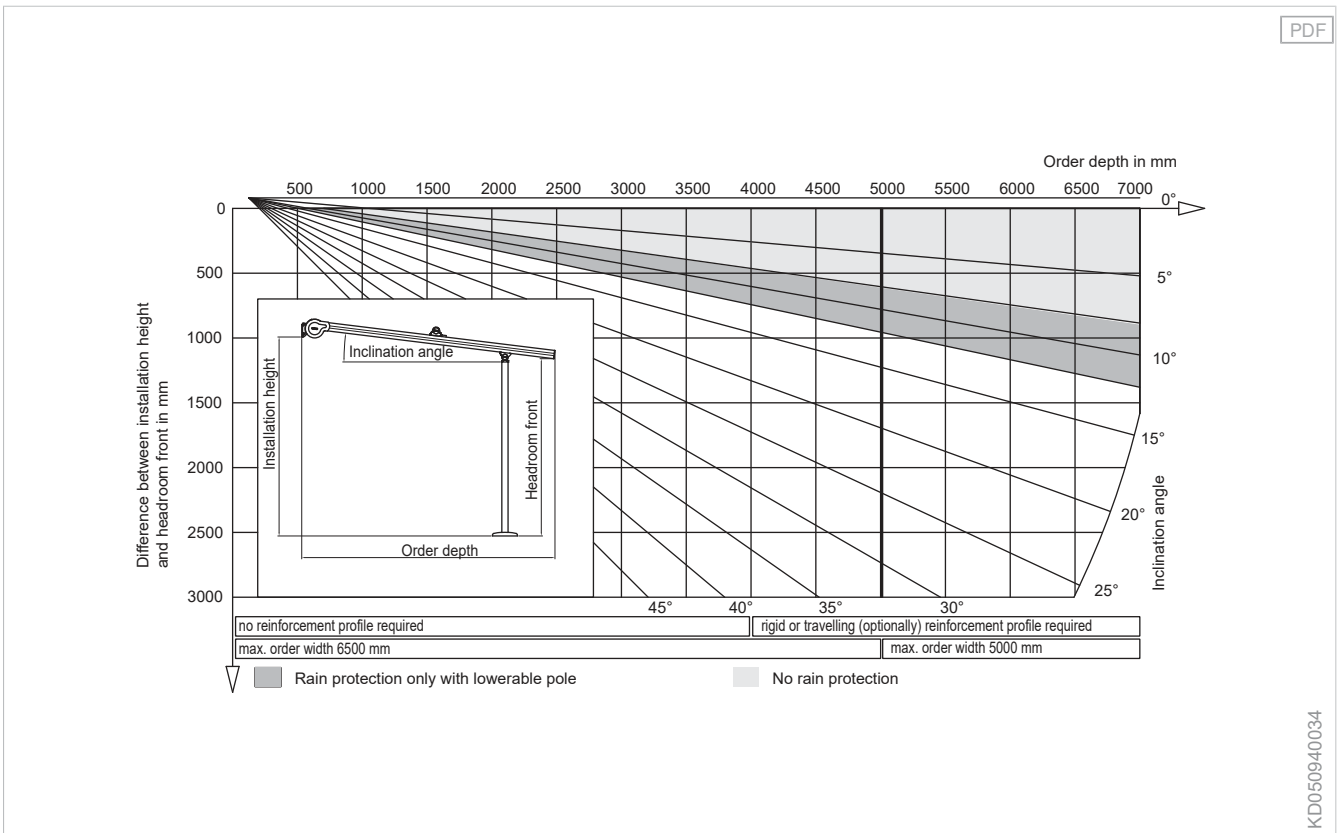
Height difference of the front rail left to right with completely lowered pole (4° inclination of the drop profile).

# Details

## Maximum order depth, curved guide rails - P40



## Maximum order depth - P40 straight

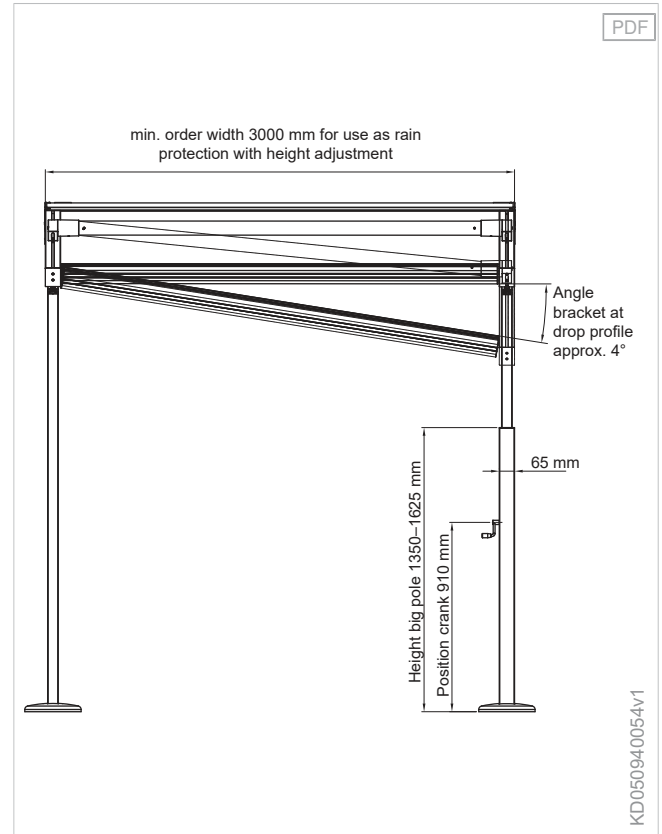




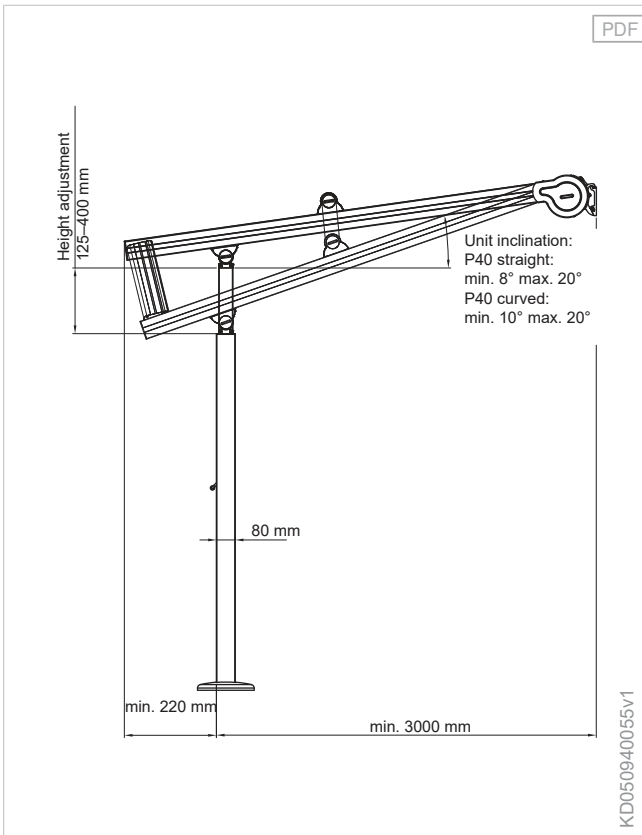
### Drainage via lowerable poles - P40



### Drainage via lowerable poles - front - P40



### Drainage via lowerable poles - side view - P40



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

# Drainage cutouts

## Product characteristics

The cutouts have a diameter of 13 mm and are thermally sealed around their edges.

## Notes

The drainage cutout serves to protect the unit from rain damage. At the same time, this measure allows the pergola to be used for occasional protection against light rain. According to the German Weather Service, light rain means a precipitation height in 60 minutes < 2.5 mm per m<sup>2</sup>. This corresponds to 2.5 litres per m<sup>2</sup>.

**Water drainage** only functions when the awning is completely extended, otherwise there will be no rain protection and the awning may be damaged!

Small amounts of residual water can lead to **smudges** at the edges of awnings.

Even if the model is used for rain protection, it may be that **water droplets** penetrate e.g. the puncture sites of the seams at certain points.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order depth	Maximum order depth	Maximum order area	Minimum inclination angle	Maximum inclination angle
<b>Conservatory awnings Climara + Fabric qualities + Guide rail</b>							
Conservatory awning Climara W20 + Acrylic fabric + Guide rail - P20/W20	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	3 °	16 °
<b>Pergola awnings Perea + Fabric qualities + Guide rail</b>							
Pergola awning Perea P40 + Acrylic fabric + Guide rail - Perea curved	950 mm	6500 mm	800 mm	5000 mm	32,5 m <sup>2</sup>	10 °	45 °
Pergola awning Perea P40 + Acrylic fabric + Guide rail - Perea straight	950 mm	6500 mm	800 mm	5000 mm	32,5 m <sup>2</sup>	12 °	45 °
Pergola awning Perea P40 + Acrylic fabric + Guide rail - Perea straight	950 mm	5000 mm	800 mm	7000 mm	35 m <sup>2</sup>	12 °	45 °
Pergola awning Perea P20 + Acrylic fabric + Guide rail - P20/W20	650 mm	6500 mm	950 mm	6000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>	12 °	15 °

### Inclination:

- The maximum order depth is an inclination of 14° (only for Type P40).
- The cover panel must at least be mounted horizontally.

### Reinforcement profile P20:

- For order depths of 2501 mm or greater, a reinforcement profile (fixed or travelling) is used.

### Reinforcement profile P40:

- For order depths of 1401 mm or greater and curved guide rails, a reinforcement profile (fixed or travelling) is used.
- For order depths of 4001 mm or greater and straight guide rails, a reinforcement profile (fixed or travelling) is used.

### Series-mounted units:

- Generally, only individual units are possible, i.e. no unit coupling!
- The lining up of several pergola awnings is possible with a flush closure.
- Each awning requires two single guide rails.
- The installation of two guide rails on one pole is possible with an adapter plate.
- In the case of a series-mounted unit, an expansion joint of 20 mm is required after 13000 mm!

## Dimension determination

### Minimum difference between installation height and headroom

Configuration variants	Order depth	2000 mm	2500 mm	3000 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm	4500 mm	5000 mm	5500 mm	6000 mm	6500 mm	7000 mm
<b>Supplementary accessories + Guide rail</b>												
Drainage cutouts + Guide rail - Perea curved	Minimum inclination angle	10 °	10 °	10 °	10 °	10 °	10 °	10 °				
	Minimum difference	250 mm	330 mm	415 mm	500 mm	650 mm	860 mm	1110 mm				
Drainage cutouts + Guide rail - Perea straight	Minimum inclination angle	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °
	Minimum difference	330 mm	430 mm	540 mm	640 mm	750 mm	860 mm	960 mm	1070 mm	1180 mm	1280 mm	1385 mm
Drainage cutouts + Guide rail - P20/W20	Minimum inclination angle	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °	12 °		
	Minimum difference	330 mm	430 mm	540 mm	640 mm	750 mm	860 mm	960 mm	1070 mm	1180 mm		

Clearance necessary to allow for rain protection.

## Quantity determination

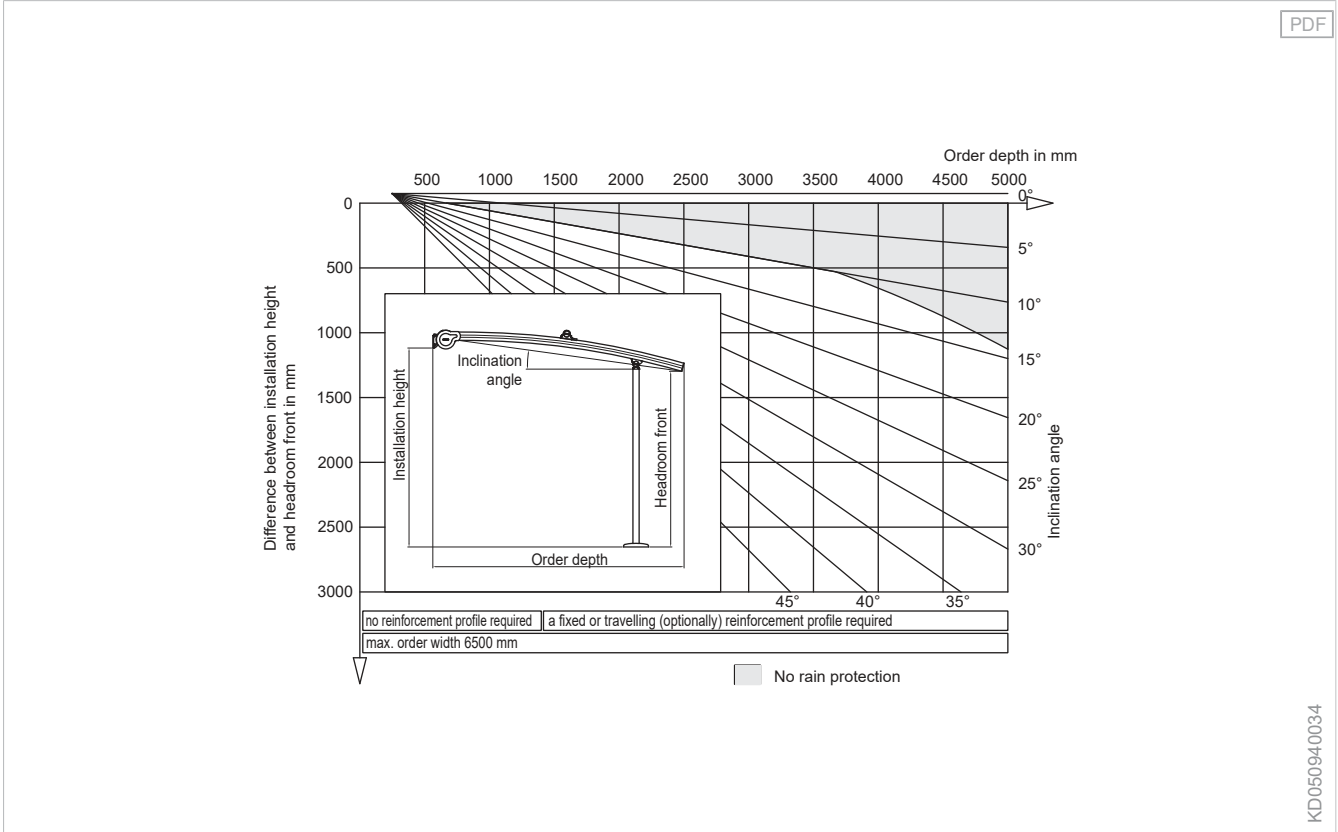
### Number of drainage cutouts

Order area	Number
5 m <sup>2</sup>	4
7,5 m <sup>2</sup>	5
10 m <sup>2</sup>	6
12,5 m <sup>2</sup>	7
15 m <sup>2</sup>	8
17,5 m <sup>2</sup>	9
20 m <sup>2</sup>	10
22,5 m <sup>2</sup>	11
25 m <sup>2</sup>	12
27,5 m <sup>2</sup>	13
30 m <sup>2</sup>	14
32,5 m <sup>2</sup>	15
35 m <sup>2</sup>	16

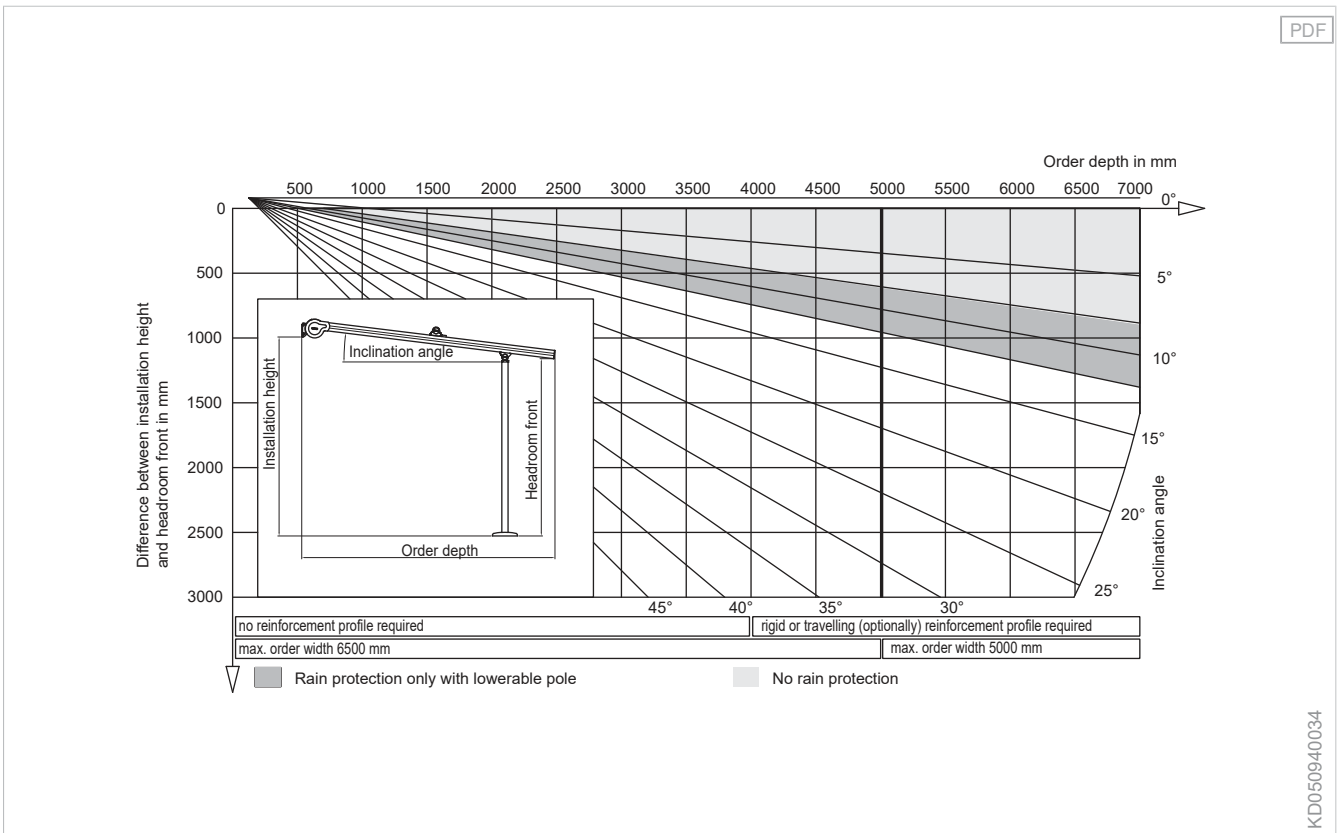
In order to ensure a symmetrical arrangement, an additional cutout may be necessary depending on the number of lengths of fabric. The two cutouts at 150 mm are included in the number.

# Details

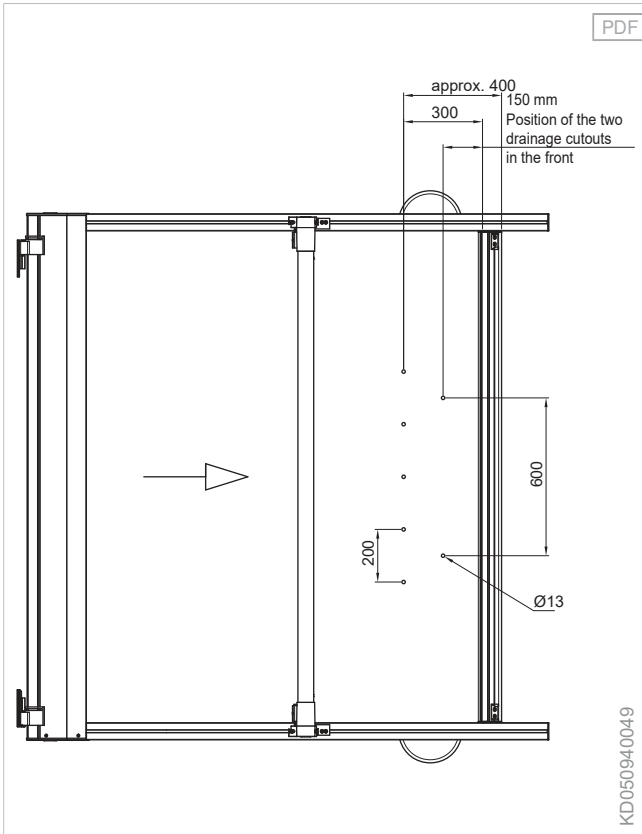
## Maximum order depth, curved guide rails - P40



## Maximum order depth - P40 straight



Position of drainage cutouts - P40



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards



## Supplementary accessories

### Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance

#### Lateral protection

More privacy: Practical lateral visual privacy, sun shading and wind protection for pleasant hours on the patio. For a completely shielded time outdoors, your pergola awnings can be equipped with front-mounted awnings all the way around.

#### Durable

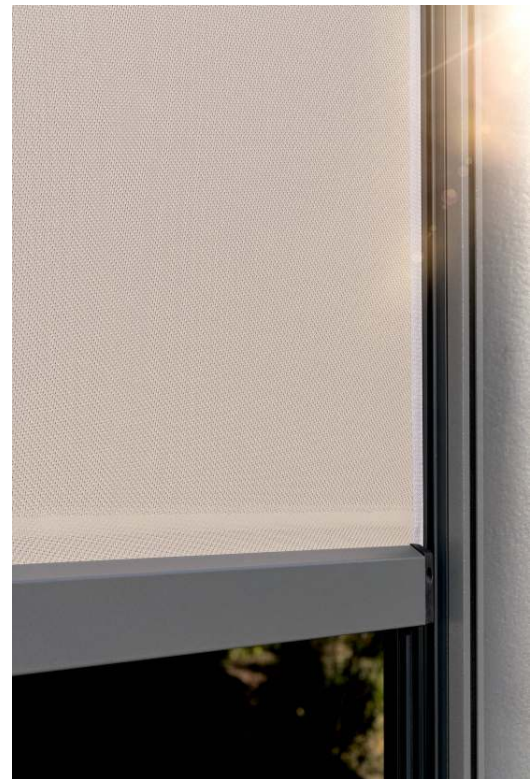
High-grade technology: The easyZIP guidance ensures that the awning is taut, with high wind stability and no lateral light gaps.

#### Uniform

Collection with over 300 designs: When combined with the awning, the same choice of colour creates a uniform look for the building.

#### Can be used for:

- Pergola awnings Perea P60
- Pergola awnings Perea P70

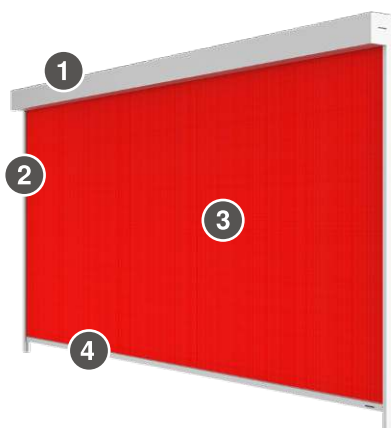


#### Product characteristics

- Vertical visual privacy, sun shading and wind protection
- Fixing of front-mounted awnings between the poles or between the wall and pole

## Components

### Front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance



- |   |                  |   |          |
|---|------------------|---|----------|
| 1 | Box (150x150)    | 3 | Fabric   |
| 2 | Lateral guidance | 4 | End rail |

### Box

#### Size 150

Box sizes	150
Unwinding direction	Left-rolling blind, Right-rolling blind
Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised
Height	150 mm
Depth	150 mm

#### Restrictions:

- For size 90 and for right-rolling blinds with stand-off installation, an inspection of the fabric shaft is only possible by dismantling.
- For box size 90, a version with EWFS Radio motor is not possible; for WMS, the WMS-ZP motor is used (position switch-off instead of torque overload protection in the upper limit position).
- For box size 150 in combination with an EWFS Radio motor, the maximum area is restricted to 14.0 m<sup>2</sup> (because the maximum torque of 20 Nm is exceeded). Alternatively, a version with EWFS Plug receiver is possible.

#### + Side cover

#### Side covers for front-mounted awnings, rectangular

Material	Diecast aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Material, notes	If an anodised finish is selected, powder coating will be done in a similar colour.

#### + Inspection cover

#### Inspection cover for front-mounted awnings, size 150, rectangular

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised

#### Inspection cover for front-mounted awning, rectangular

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised

#### + Inspection cover, optional

#### High inspection cover

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised
Height	25 mm
Dimensions, notes	- Housing for plug-in connector available. - Reduced viewing height of the end rail.

### End rail

#### End rail, rectangular

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated, Anodised natural colour
Optional surface	Anodised coloured
Height	47 mm
Depth	25 mm
Dimensions, notes	The end rail is generally visible.

### Guide variants

- easyZIP guidance

### Guide rail

- Guide rail 26x46-C

Guide rail, optional:

- Deep guide rails

### Clip profile

- Clip profile for easyZIP guidance

## Drive variants

- Motor

## Motor

- Basic motor type ZM REA

## Radio motor, optional

- EWFS Radio motor type W-ZM
- WMS Radio motor type WMS-ZP
- WMS Radio motor type WMS-ZM

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

Colours, optional:

- Eloxal

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Screen fabric
- Soltis 92
- Soltis B92
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Supplementary accessories

- PVC viewing field

+ see "Supplementary accessories", Page 325

## Notes

### Measurement:

- We recommend ordering front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance on the left and right side only **once the main unit has been installed**. Inaccuracies when measuring can lead to deviations.
- When using the size 15 cover panel, laterally mounted front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance project out beyond the poles **inwards in the P60** and **outwards with the P70**.
- The front cover panel of the front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance is set **frontwards (like the drainage gutter) in the P60** and **backwards (towards the inside) in the P70**.
- The **water drain** must be installed on the front of or laterally on the pole.
- When using the base plate with **base cover**, the front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance does not travel to the ground, but instead leaves a 25 mm gap.

### Cable exit:

- Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance on the left and right side, for example, are intended for installation using a cable exit from the facade.
- If front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance are installed at the front, the cable exit is provided from the drainage gutter. The cable is laid on the side where the mains connection to the house wall is located (connection side).

### Drainage gutter:

- The wiring is already present in the drainage gutter.
- In order to be connected, the drainage gutter must be accessible from the side. If this is not the case, please consult the Applied Engineering department.
- If window awnings with easyZIP guidance are to be connected laterally or to the front with the **pergola awning Perea P60**, the large drainage gutter 150x150 mm must be planned.

### Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance at the front:

- Viewed in extension direction
- Fixed between the poles
- Large drainage gutter required
- The preparation for the mains connection of front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance at the front must be specified when ordering

Only one line for the front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance at the front is laid through the main unit. The line is laid on the connection side of the Perea P60. In series-mounted units, the line is laid on the outside through the guide rail to the front.

### Shading of upper triangle:

If the sides are completely closed, we recommend using either a stretcher frame or a closure with an aluminium sheet.

For more detailed information on the front mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance, see the technical documentation for window awnings.



## Dimension determination

### Quantity determination

Order width	Number
1900 mm	2
1901 - 2900 mm	3
2901 - 3900 mm	4
3901 - 4900 mm	5
4901 - 5850 mm	6

This refers to the number of guide rail brackets for stand-off installation.

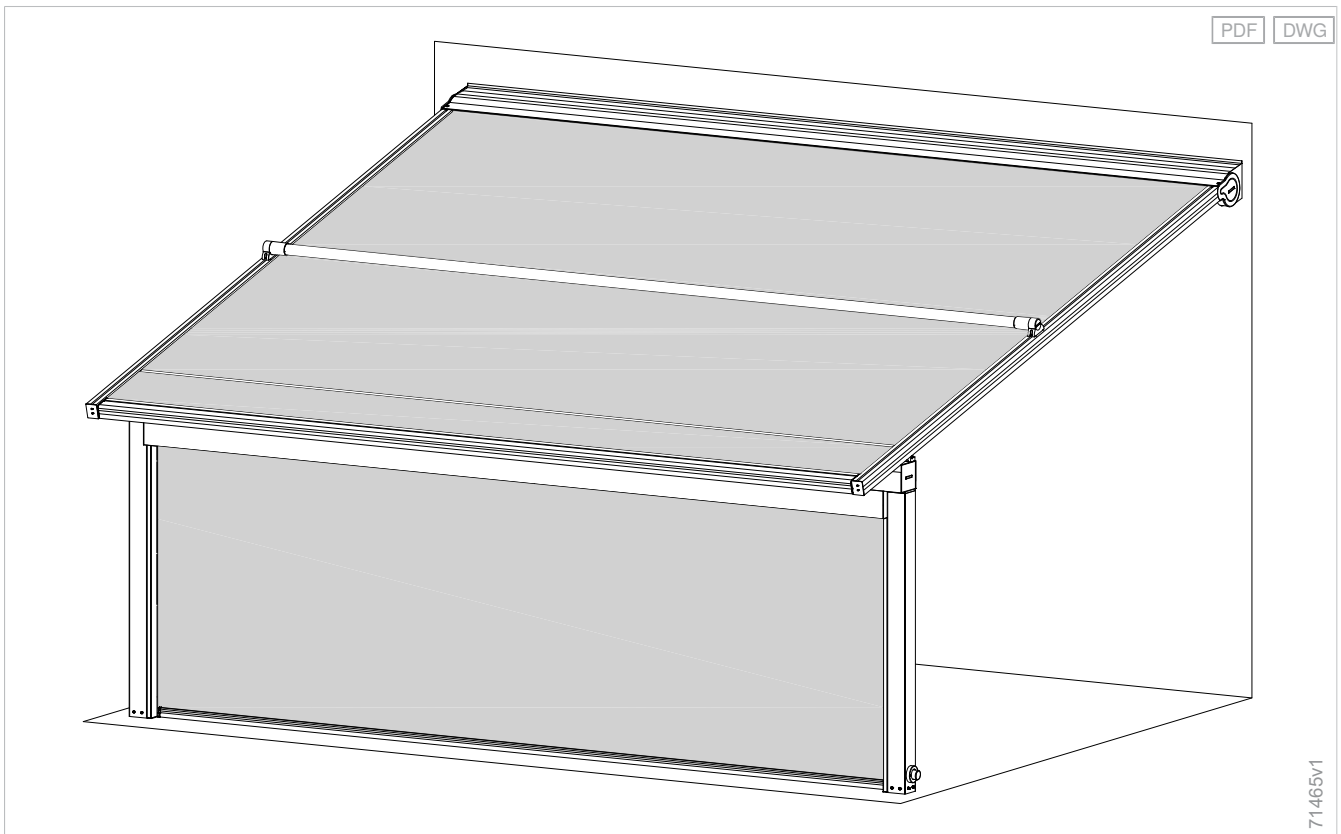
### Weight assessment

Order height	Order width					
	750 - 1000 mm	1001 - 2000 mm	2001 - 3000 mm	3001 - 4000 mm	4001 - 5000 mm	5001 - 6000 mm
600 - 1000 mm	28 kg					
1001 - 2000 mm	31 kg	44 kg	56 kg	69 kg	80 kg	90 kg
2001 - 3000 mm	34 kg	47 kg	60 kg	73 kg	84 kg	95 kg
3001 - 4000 mm	37 kg	51 kg	64 kg	77 kg	89 kg	100 kg
4001 - 5000 mm	40 kg	54 kg	67 kg	81 kg	93 kg	104 kg
5001 - 6000 mm	43 kg	58 kg	71 kg	83 kg	98 kg	109 kg
650 - 1000 mm		41 kg	52 kg	65 kg	75 kg	85 kg

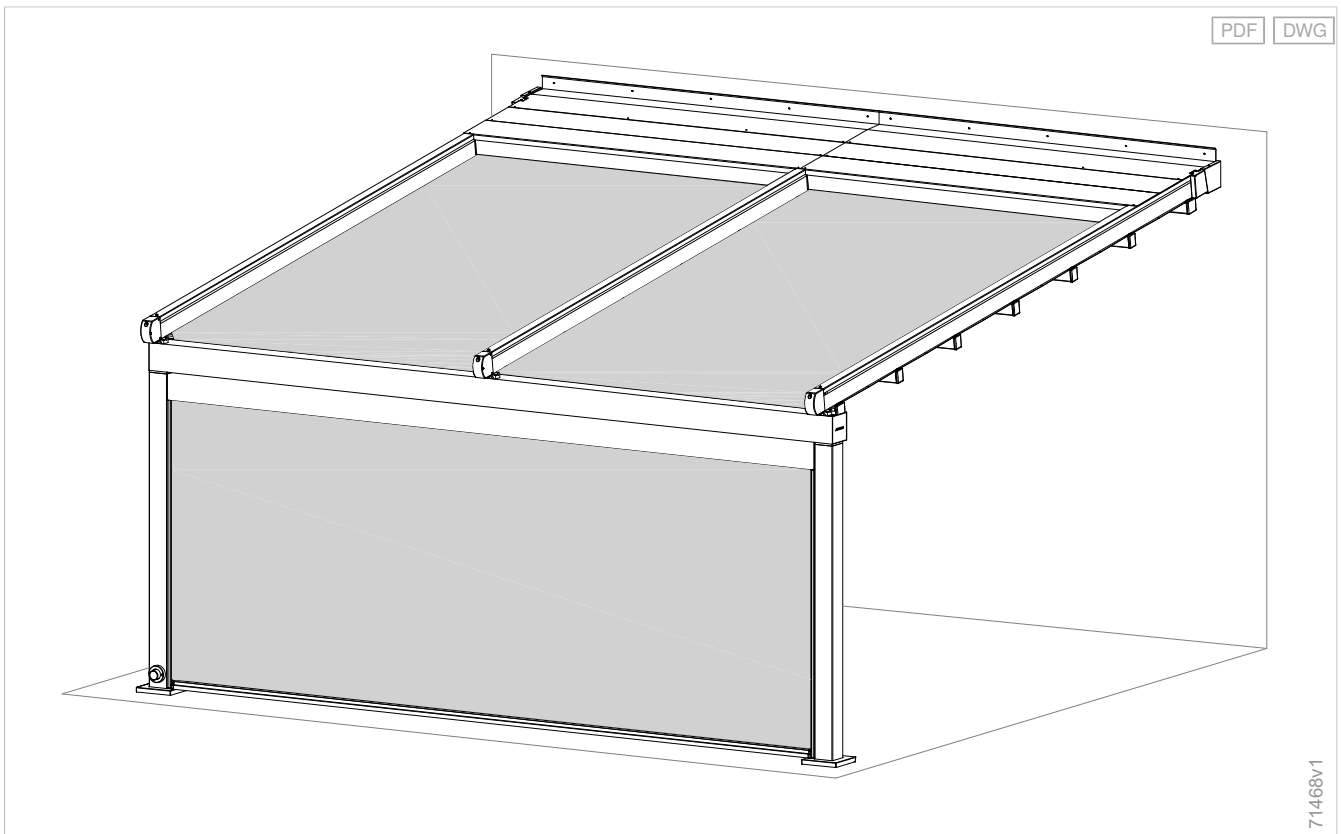
The weights depend on the product version. More exact data is available on request.

## Mounting examples

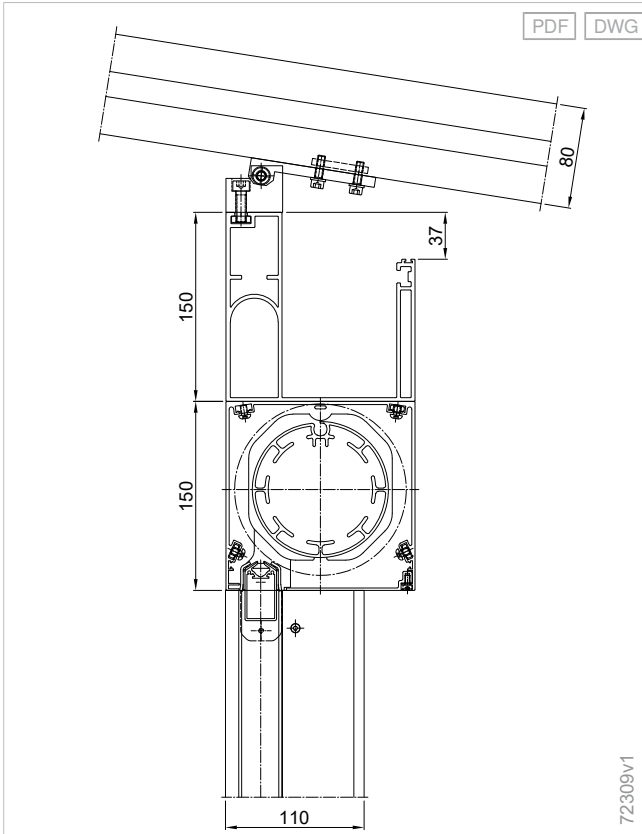
Front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance - P60



Front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance - P70

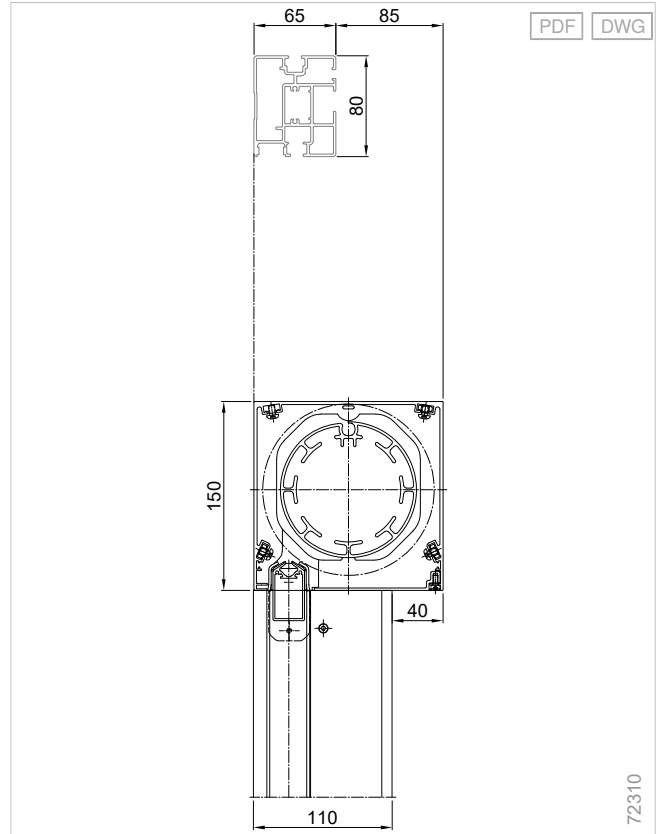


Installation between poles for Perea P60 - size 15 cover panel for front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance



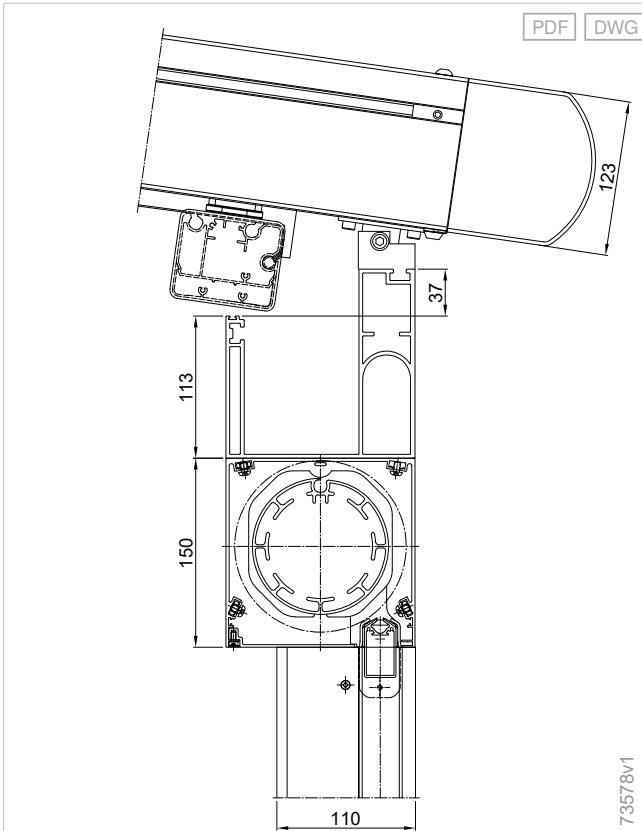
72309v1

Installation between poles for Perea P60 and wall - size 15 cover panel for front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance



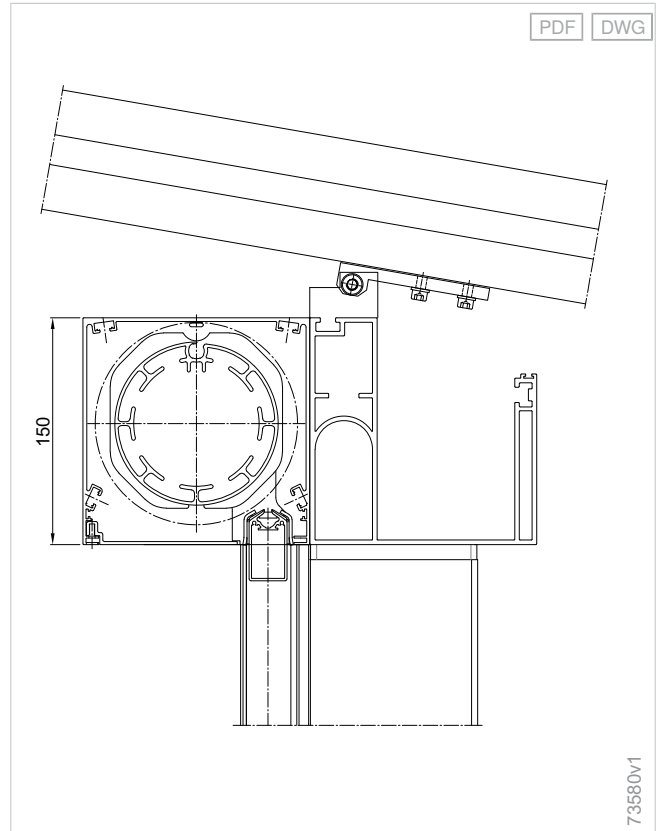
72310

Installation between poles for Perea P70 - size 15 cover panel for front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance



73578v1

Installation behind the purlin Perea P60 - size 15 cover panel for front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance



73580v1

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

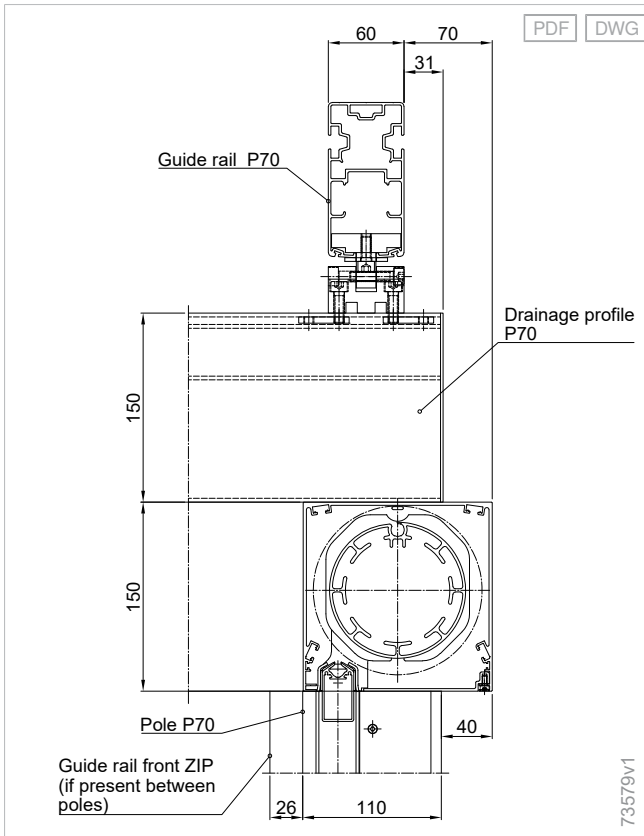
Supplementary accessories

Components

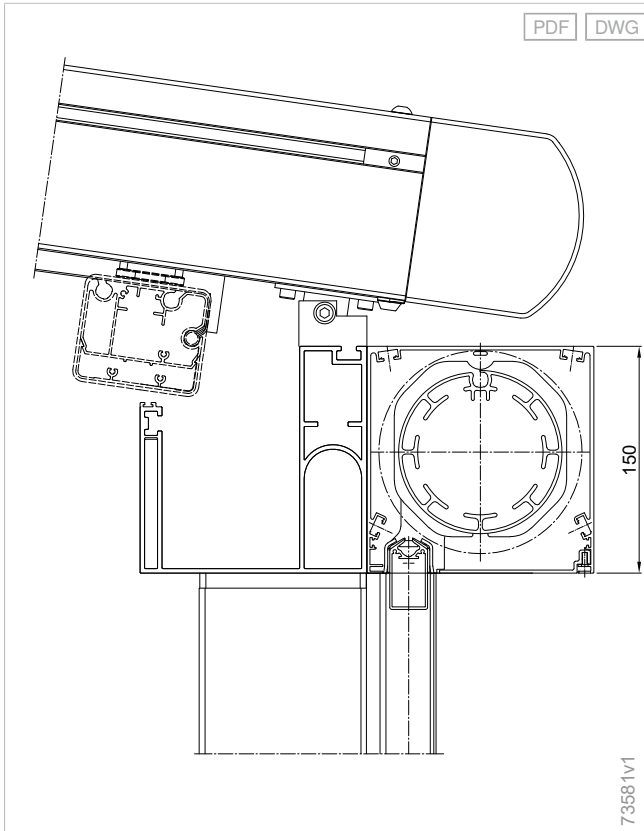
Drive variants

Standards

**Installation between poles for Perea P70 and wall - size 15 cover panel for front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance**

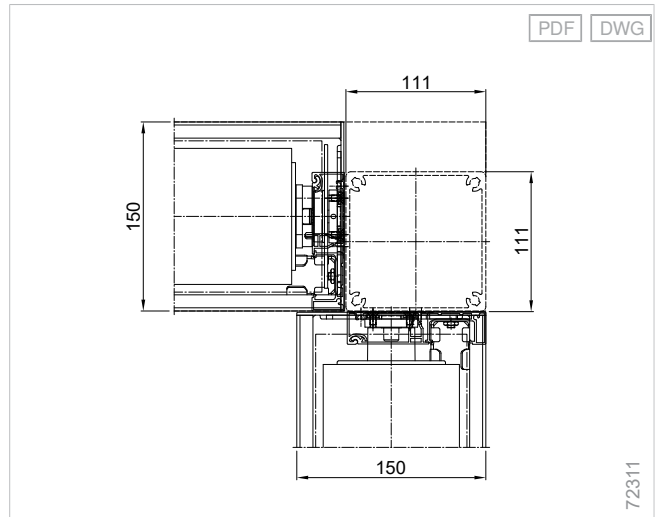


**Installation in front of the purlin Perea P70 - size 15 cover panel for front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance**

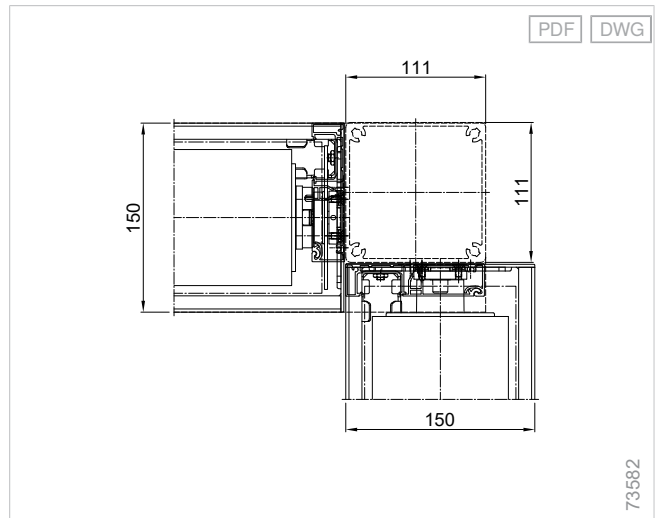


P70 unit inclination possible up to max. 15°.

**Protrusion over pole for Perea P60 - size 15 cover panel for front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance**



**Overhang over pole for Perea P70 - size 15 cover panel for front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance**







## Supplementary accessories

### PVC viewing field

#### Transparent

Good view out and more natural light under the awning: The PVC film can be placed centrally between the Screen fabric quality or selected as a variable length with a textile section.

#### Lateral protection

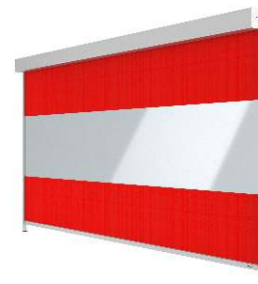
Practical lateral visual privacy, sun and wind protection for pleasant hours on the patio: For both privacy and a view out, pergola awnings can be equipped with front-mounted awnings and integrated PVC viewing field.

#### Durable

High-grade technology: The easyZIP guidance makes for a taut awning fabric with high wind stability and no lateral light gaps.

#### Can be used for:

- Pergola awnings Perea P60
- Pergola awnings Perea P70



#### Construction limit values

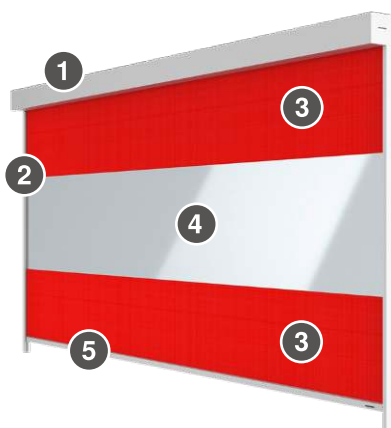
Maximum order width	6000 mm
Maximum order height	3000 mm
Maximum order area	18 m <sup>2</sup>

#### Product characteristics

- Very good view out
- In perfect combination with the Screen fabric quality

## Components

### Front-mounted awning with PVC viewing field



- |   |                  |   |                    |
|---|------------------|---|--------------------|
| 1 | Box (150x150)    | 4 | Cristal Trio (PVC) |
| 2 | Lateral guidance | 5 | End rail           |
| 3 | Screen fabric    |   |                    |

### Box

#### Size 150

Box sizes	150
Unwinding direction	Left-rolling blind, Right-rolling blind
Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised
Height	150 mm
Depth	150 mm

#### Restrictions:

- For size 90 and for right-rolling blinds with stand-off installation, an inspection of the fabric shaft is only possible by dismantling.
- For box size 90, a version with EWFS Radio motor is not possible; for WMS, the WMS-ZP motor is used (position switch-off instead of torque overload protection in the upper limit position).
- For box size 150 in combination with an EWFS Radio motor, the maximum area is restricted to 14.0 m<sup>2</sup> (because the maximum torque of 20 Nm is exceeded). Alternatively, a version with EWFS Plug receiver is possible.

#### + Side cover

#### Side covers for front-mounted awnings, rectangular

Material	Diecast aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Material, notes	If an anodised finish is selected, powder coating will be done in a similar colour.

#### + Inspection cover

#### Inspection cover for front-mounted awnings, size 150, rectangular

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised

#### Inspection cover for front-mounted awning, rectangular

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised

#### + Inspection cover, optional

#### High inspection cover

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised
Height	25 mm
Dimensions, notes	- Housing for plug-in connector available. - Reduced viewing height of the end rail.

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 108 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	108 mm

### End rail

#### End rail, rectangular

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated, Anodised natural colour
Optional surface	Anodised coloured
Height	47 mm
Depth	25 mm
Dimensions, notes	The end rail is generally visible.

### Guide variants

- easyZIP guidance

### Guide rail

- Guide rail 26x46-C
- Guide rail 26x46-G
- Deep guide rails

## Clip profile

### Clip profile for easyZIP guidance

Material	Plastic, extruded
Material colour	Black
Material colour, optional	Grey

## Drive variants

- Motor

### Motor

- Basic motor type ZM REA

### Radio motor, optional

- EWFS Radio motor type W-ZM
- WMS Radio motor type WMS-ZP
- WMS Radio motor type WMS-ZM

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Minimum order height	Maximum order height	Maximum order area
<b>Box + Fabric qualities</b>					
Size 150 + Cristal Trio (PVC)	750 mm	6000 mm	600 mm	3000 mm	18 m <sup>2</sup>

**Fabric quality:** The Cristal Trio fabric quality is always processed crosswise.

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

Colours, optional:

- Eloxal

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

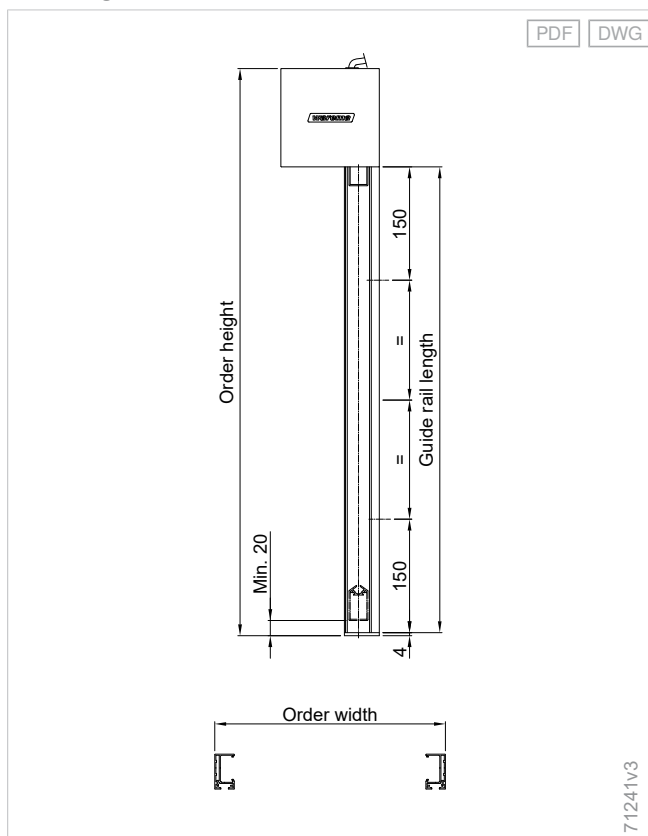
- Cristal Trio (PVC)
- Screen fabric

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

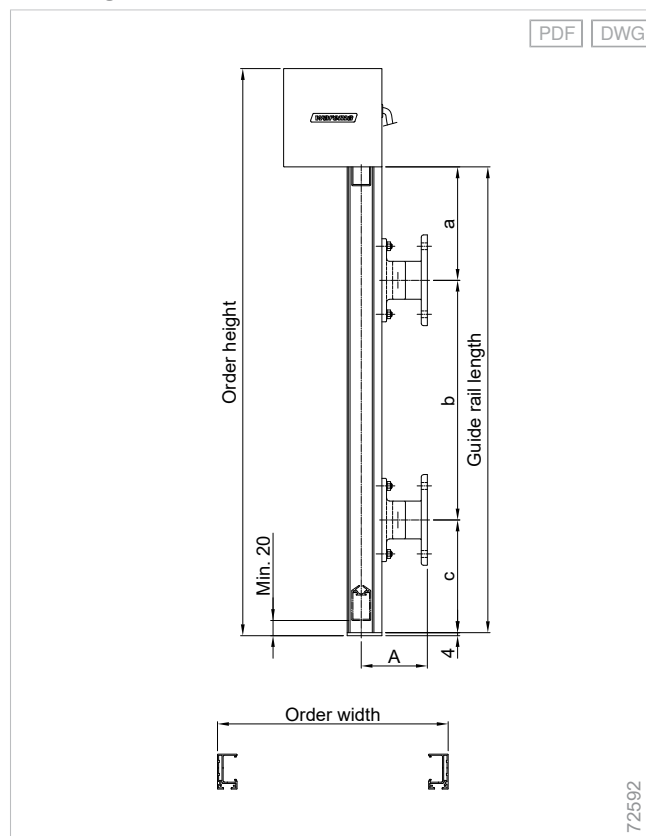


## Dimension determination

### Measuring instructions, direct installation



### Measuring instructions for stand-off installation

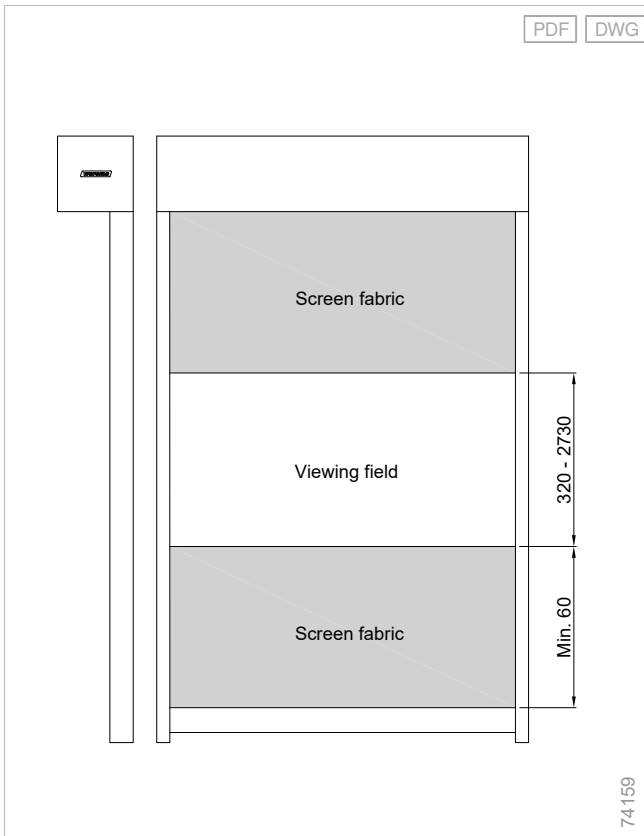


#### Distances of brackets

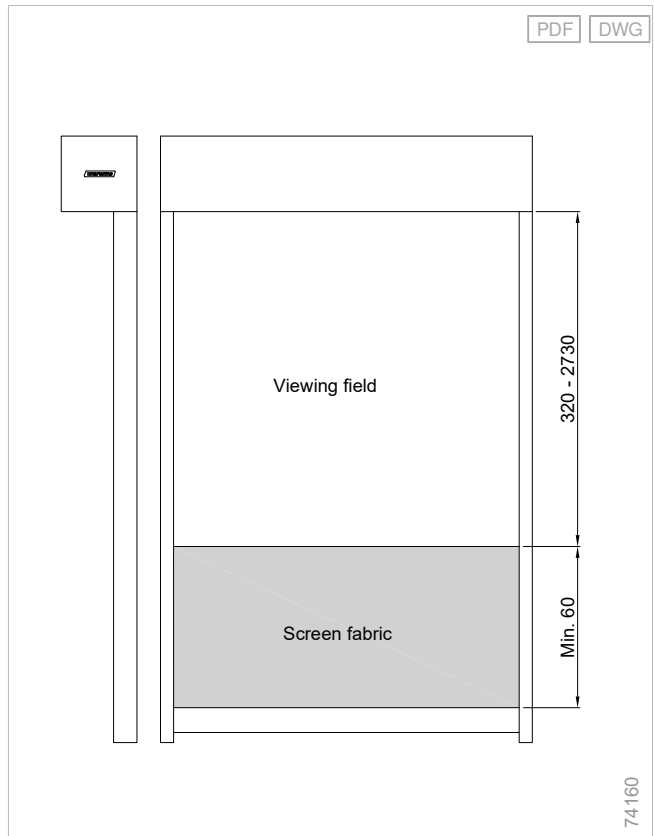
- Dimension a: 100-200 mm
- Dimension b: maximum 2000 mm\*
- Dimension c: 70-300 mm

\* Regarding the quantity, the table "Number of guide rail brackets" must be observed. If asymmetrical division of the brackets is necessary on-site, the value of 2000 mm must not be exceeded.

Box size 150 with screen fabric/PVC viewing field/screen fabric



Box size 150 with PVC viewing field/screen fabric



## Quantity determination

### Number of guide rail brackets

Guide rail length	Number
1900 mm	2
1901 - 2900 mm	3
2901 - 3900 mm	4
3901 - 4900 mm	5
4901 - 5850 mm	6

This refers to the number of guide rail brackets for stand-off installation.

### Number of fixing points

Guide rail length	Number
1000 mm	2
1001 - 1700 mm	3
1701 - 2400 mm	4
2401 - 3100 mm	5
3101 - 3800 mm	6
3801 - 4500 mm	7
4501 - 5200 mm	8
5201 - 5850 mm	9

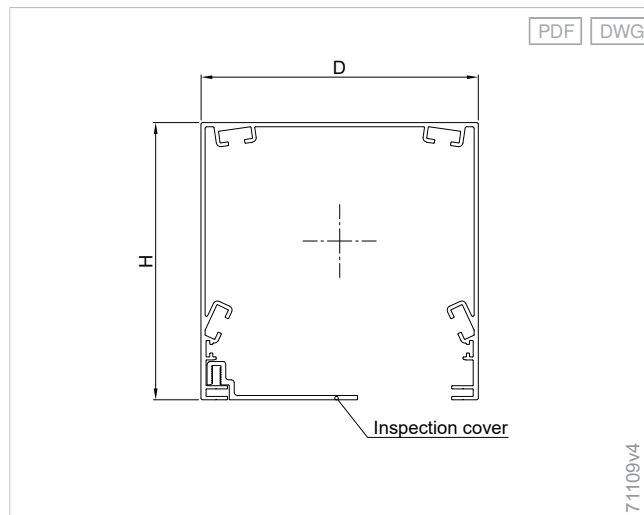
The number of drilled holes is specified for WAREMA fixing materials. For customer-specific fixing materials, the size, distance and material to be fixed must be checked by the customer.

## Rectangular box shape

### Rectangular box shape

Box size	Height H	Depth D
150	150	150

### Rectangular box shape



## Additional product information

### Cable exit

**Standard cable exit:** Rear, side or top

**Cable exit sealing:** With cable grommet

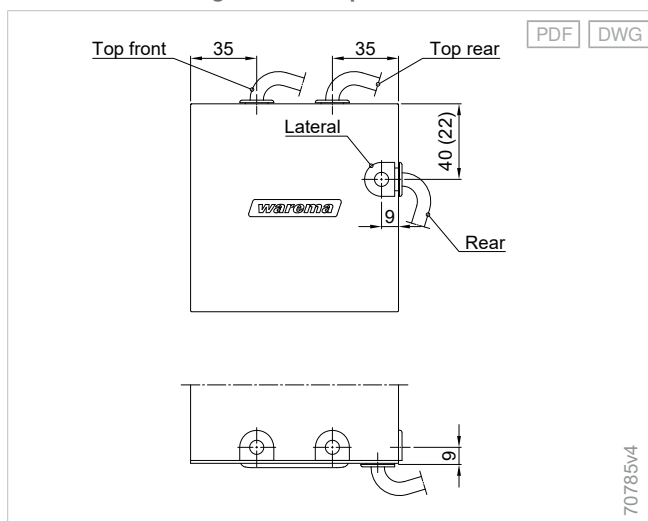
Motor line:

- Motor, incl. 0.5 m motor line with plug-in connector (approx. 0.2 m from box end)
- Optional: Motor incl. 2.7 m motor line without plug-in connector with open end and ferrule (approx. 2.4 m from box end)
- Longer motor lines available at a surcharge.

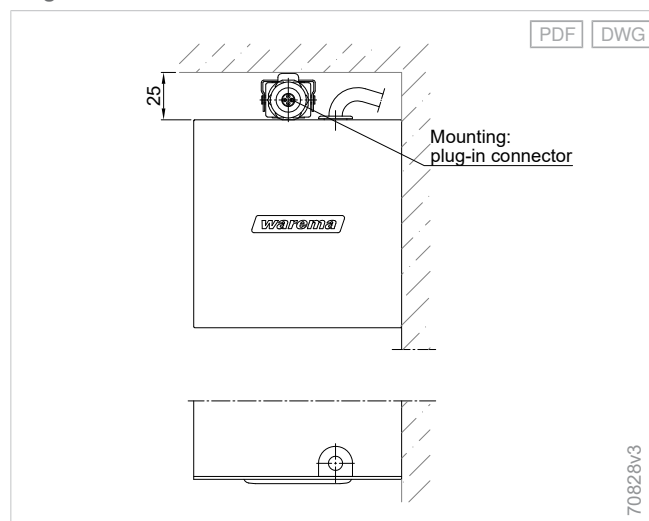
Edge profile for plug-in connector (optional):

- Size 150: Edge profile with tabs not premounted at the factory

### Cable exit for rectangular box shape

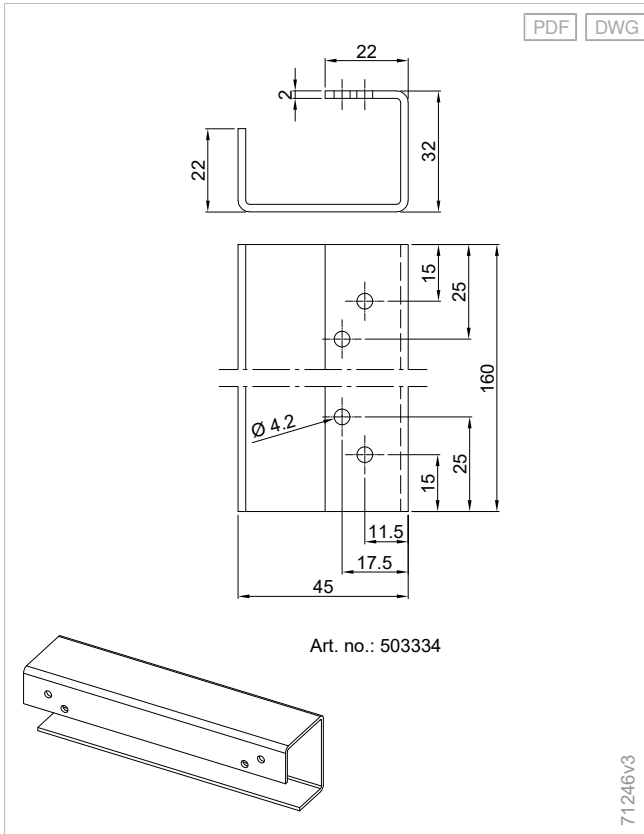


### Plug-in connector installation

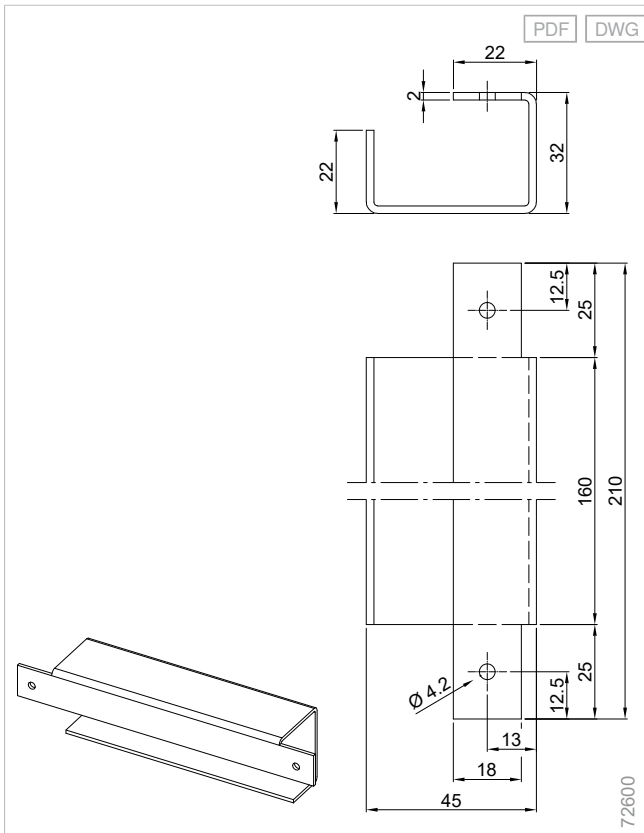


Note: the value in parentheses "22" applies exclusively to box size 90 in conjunction with a lateral cable exit, provided that this box size can be supplied in accordance with the product description.

Edge profile for plug-in connector



Edge profile for plug-in connector with tabs



The edge profile is not premounted on the box at the factory.





## Supplementary accessories

### GranTex with easyZIP guidance

#### Seamless

Continuous fabric: With a small cover panel and wide units (> 3 m to 6 m) there is no guide rail or fabric gap to disturb the uniform look.

#### Wind-stable

Doubly stable: Stable thanks to the fabric shaft support and very wind-stable thanks to easyZIP guidance.



#### Can be used for:

- Front-mounted awnings with easyZIP guidance: Box size 110, rectangular

#### Combinable with:

- Pergola awnings Perea P60
- Pergola awnings Perea P70
- Slat roofs Lamaxa L50

#### Construction limit values

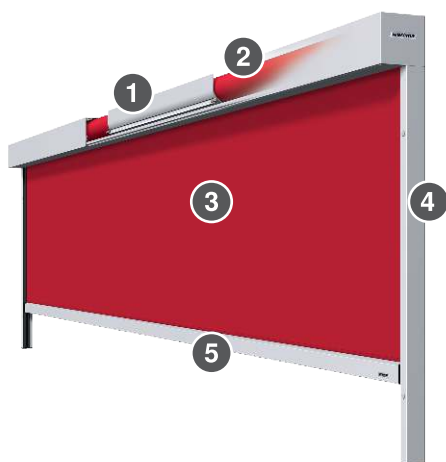
Maximum order width	6000 mm
Maximum order height	3000 mm
Maximum order area	18 m <sup>2</sup>

#### Product characteristics

- Wind-stable easyZIP guidance
- Fabric shaft support for added stability
- Fabric shaft easy to maintain

## Components

GranTex with easyZIP guidance



- |   |                               |   |                  |
|---|-------------------------------|---|------------------|
| 1 | Box with fabric shaft support | 4 | Lateral guidance |
| 2 | Fabric shaft                  | 5 | End rail         |
| 3 | Fabric                        |   |                  |

### Box

#### Size 110

Box sizes	110
Unwinding direction	Left-rolling blind, Right-rolling blind
Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised

Due to the large overall width, a box support is necessary. The box support can either be made by means of a wall console or by screwing the box. If the box is supported by means of a console, only a left-rolling blind is possible.

#### + Side cover

##### Side covers for front-mounted awnings, rectangular

Material	Diecast aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Material, notes	If an anodised finish is selected, powder coating will be done in a similar colour.

#### + Inspection cover

##### Inspection cover for front-mounted awning, rectangular

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised

#### + Inspection cover, optional

##### High inspection cover

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised
Height	25 mm
Dimensions, notes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Housing for plug-in connector available.</li> <li>- Reduced viewing height of the end rail.</li> </ul>

### Shaft

#### Fabric shaft Ø 62.2 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Plain
Profile	Groove tube
Diameter	62.2 mm

### End rail

#### End rail, rectangular

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated, Anodised natural colour
Optional surface	Anodised coloured
Height	47 mm
Depth	25 mm
Dimensions, notes	The end rail is generally visible.

### Guide variants

- easyZIP guidance

#### Guide rail

- Guide rail 26x46-C
- Guide rail 26x46-G
- Guide rail 26x56-C
- Guide rail T-26x110-G
- Guide rail T-26x110-R

+ see "Guide rails for window awnings", Page 456

## Clip profile

### Clip profile for easyZIP guidance

Material	Plastic, extruded
Material colour	Black
Material colour, optional	Grey

## Drive variants

### Motor

- Basic motor type ZM REA

### Radio motor, optional

- EWFS Radio motor type W-ZM
- WMS Radio motor type WMS-ZM

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Screen fabric
- Soltis 92

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Minimum order width	Maximum order width	Maximum order height	Minimum order height	Maximum order area
<b>Box + Fabric qualities</b>					
Size 110 + Screen fabric	3001 mm	6000 mm	3000 mm	600 mm	18 m <sup>2</sup>
Size 110 + Soltis 92	3001 mm	6000 mm	3000 mm	600 mm	18 m <sup>2</sup>

If the order width exceeds the available bale width, the fabric is used crosswise.

In this case, we recommend using all fabrics on a facade crosswise so that a uniform appearance is achieved on the whole building.

## Notes

### Perea P60/P70 measurement:

- The water drain must be installed on the front of or laterally on the pole.
- When using the base plate with base cover, the GranTex with easyZIP guidance does not travel completely to the ground, but instead leaves a 25 mm gap.

### Perea P60/P70 drainage gutter:

- The wiring is already present in the drainage gutter.
- In order to be connected, the drainage gutter must be accessible from the side. If this is not the case, please consult the Applied Engineering department.
- If the pergola awning Perea P60 is to be connected to a GranTex with easyZIP guidance at the front, fastened between or to the poles, the large drainage gutter 150x150 mm must always be planned. The use of the GranTex with easyZIP guidance on the sides of the Perea P60 and P70 is not possible due to the required box support.

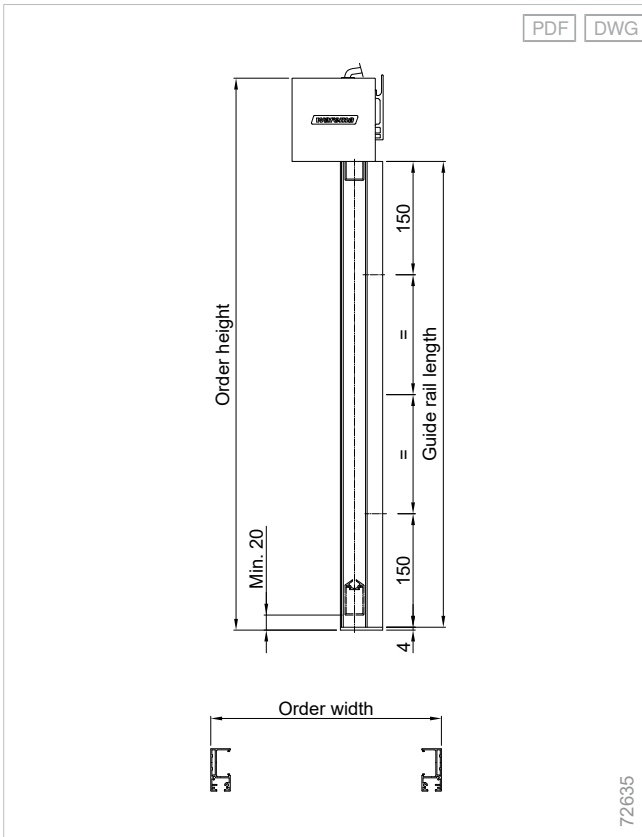
### Fabric appearance:

- Due to the fabric bale supports, certain climatic conditions can cause pressure marks on the fabric (temperature, moisture). This does not limit the function/durability in any way.

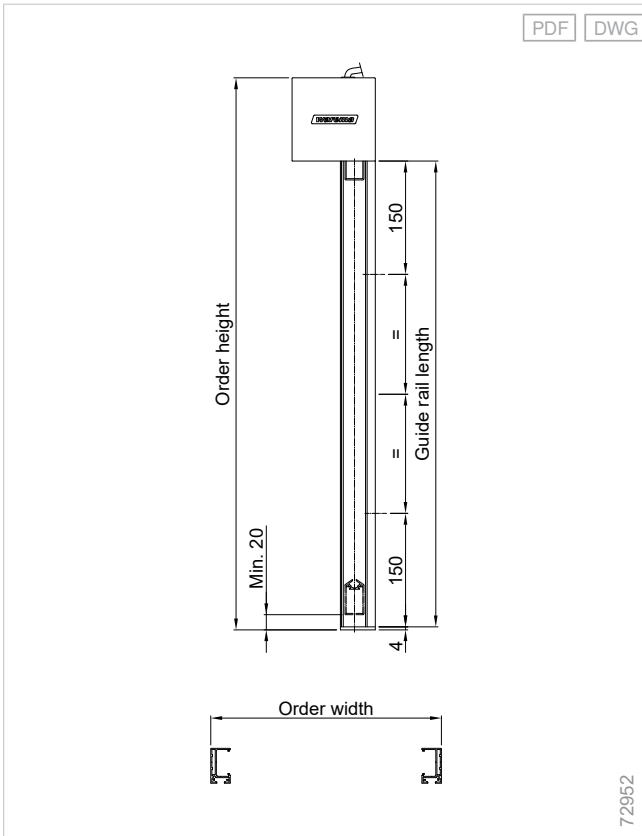


# Dimension determination

## Measuring instructions, box with wall console



## Measuring instructions, box without wall console



## Weight assessment

Order height	Order width						
	3001 mm	3500 mm	4000 mm	4500 mm	5000 mm	5500 mm	6000 mm
600 mm	27 kg	30 kg	33 kg	36 kg	39 kg	42 kg	45 kg
1000 mm	30 kg	32 kg	35 kg	39 kg	42 kg	45 kg	48 kg
1500 mm	31 kg	34 kg	38 kg	41 kg	44 kg	47 kg	51 kg
2000 mm	33 kg	36 kg	40 kg	43 kg	46 kg	50 kg	53 kg
2500 mm	35 kg	38 kg	42 kg	45 kg	49 kg	52 kg	56 kg
3000 mm	37 kg	40 kg	44 kg	48 kg	51 kg	55 kg	59 kg

More exact data is available on request.

## Quantity determination

### Number of fixing points

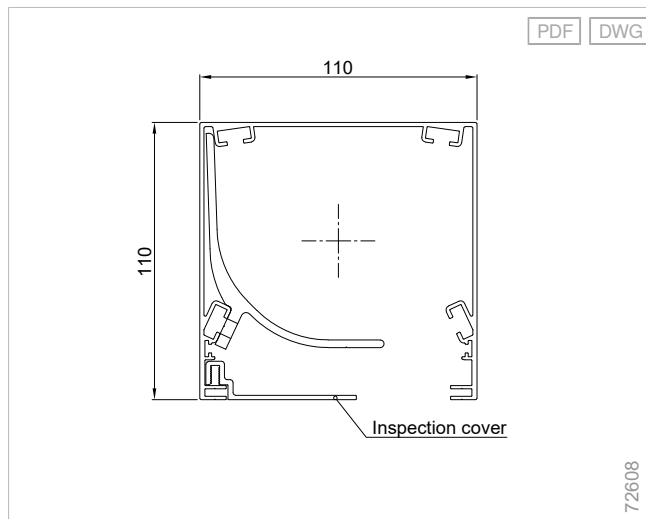
Guide rail length	Number
1000 mm	2
1001 - 1700 mm	3
1701 - 2400 mm	4
2401 - 3000 mm	5

The number of drilled holes is specified for WAREMA fixing materials. For customer-specific fixing materials, the size, distance and material to be fixed must be checked by the customer.

## Box dimensions

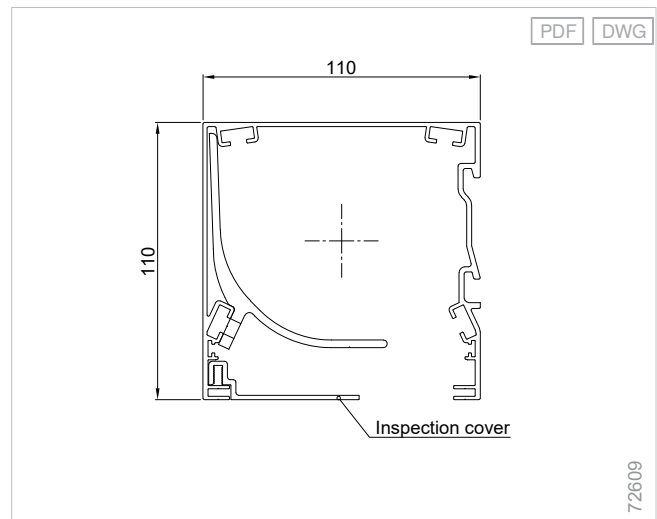
Box size	Box shapes	Height H	Depth D
110	Rectangular	110 mm	110 mm

Box size 110



Box with fabric shaft support for direct screw connection

Box size 110



Box with fabric shaft support for wall console

## Viewing height of the end rail GranTex

### Minimum viewing height from lower edge of box

Box size	End rail, rectangular
110	25 mm
110 with high inspection cover	0 mm

## Guide rail selection

### Guide rail selection according to the installation situation

Installation situation	Drilled hole 2 (wall)	Drilled hole 1 (reveal)
Left-rolling blind, standard, with wall console	FS 26x56-C	-
Left-rolling blind, standard, with direct screw connection	FS 26x46-C	FS 26x46-G
Right-rolling blind, standard, with direct screw connection	-	FS 26x46-G
Left-rolling blind, deep guide rail, with direct screw connection	FS T-26x110	FS T-26x110-G
Right-rolling blind, deep guide rail, with direct screw connection	FS T-26x110-R	FS T-26x110-G

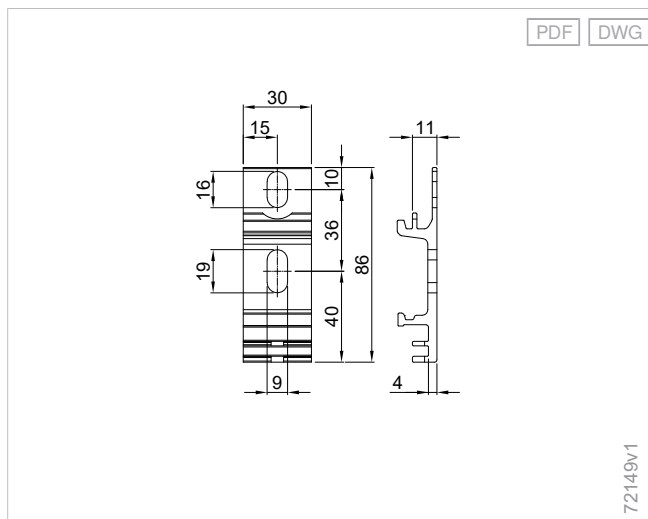
Reveal installation drilled hole 1, not watertight against driving rain.

#### Legend:

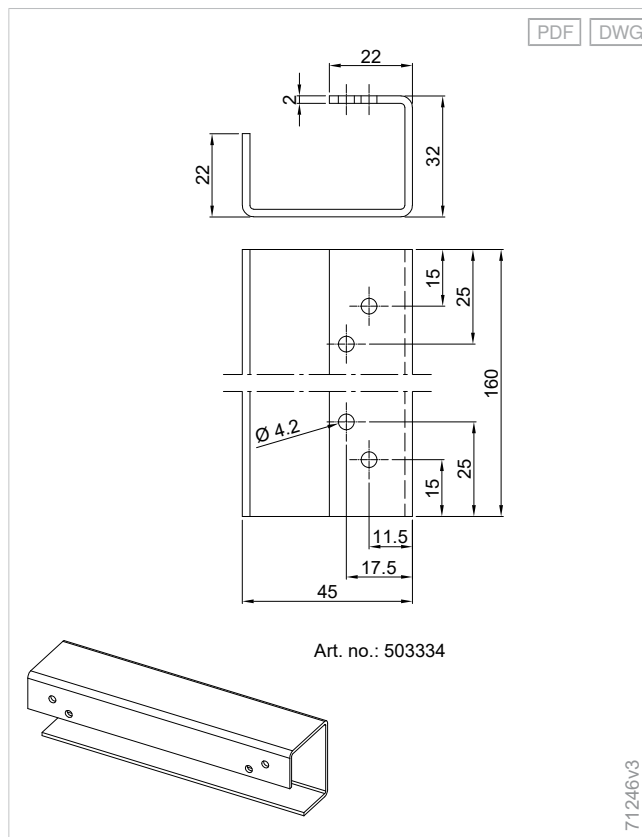
- FS = guide rail
- T = deep guide rail
- G = closed
- C = C groove
- R = right-rolling blind

## Details

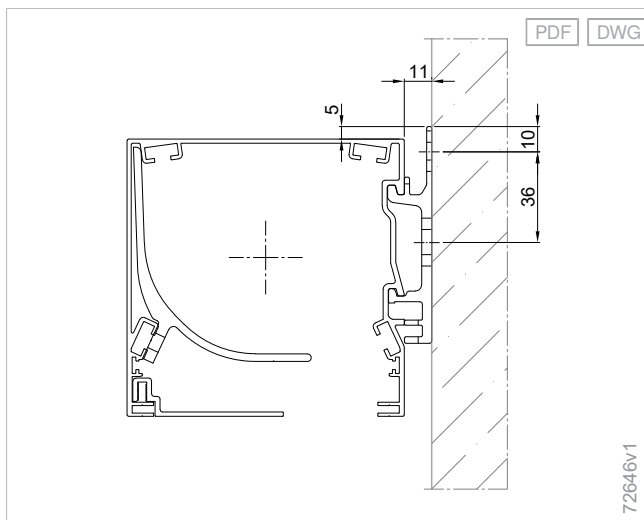
Wall console 30 mm wide, distance 11 mm



Edge profile for plug-in connector

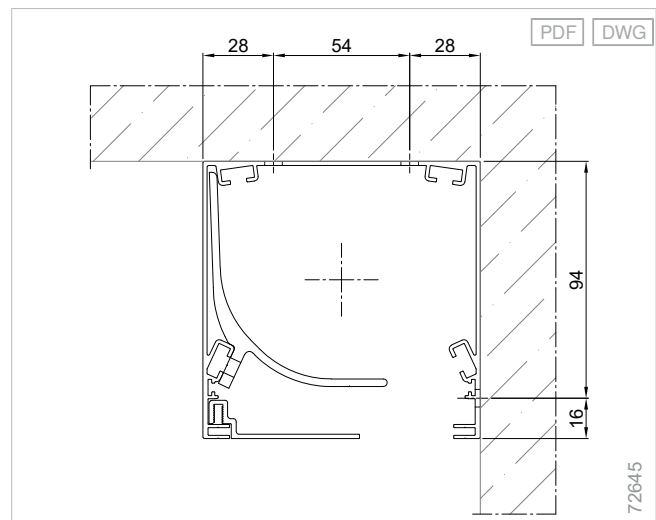


### Box support through wall console



A box support is obligatory.

### Box support through screw connection



#### Potential fixing holes in the box:

- Fixing at the back: underneath on rear side of box, regardless of unwinding direction
- Fixing at the top:
  - for left-rolling blind with drilled hole at the top/back
  - for right-rolling blind with drilled hole at the top/front

On request, the box can also be manufactured with both fixing holes at the top. However, the bearing shell must be removed to gain access to these drilled holes.

## Additional product information

### Cable exit

**Standard cable exit:** Rear, side or top

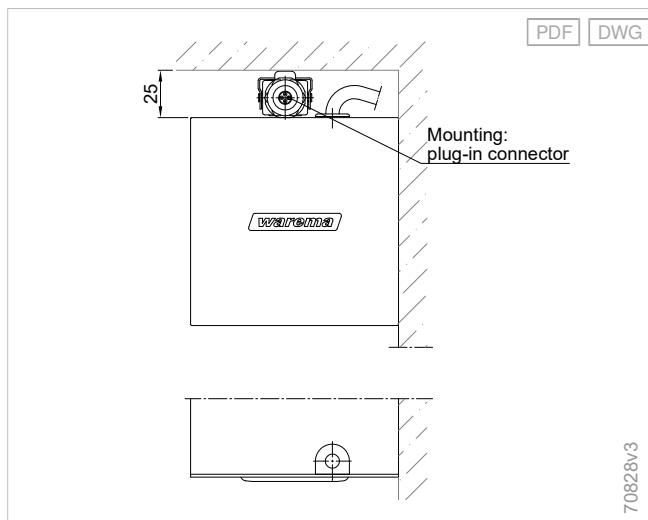
**Cable exit sealing:** With cable grommet

### Motor line:

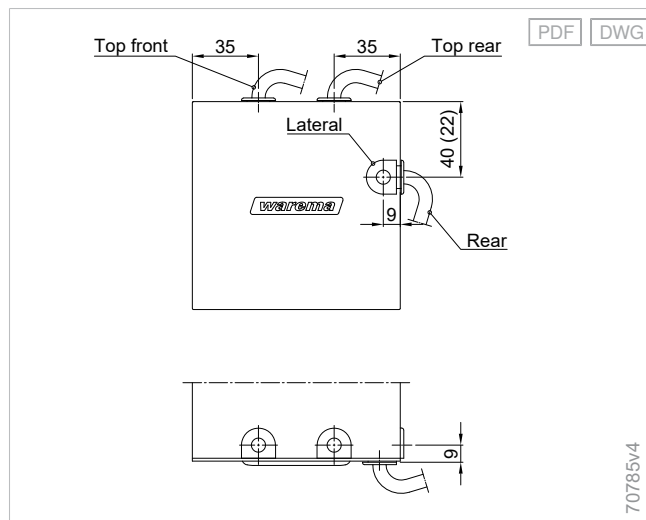
Motor, incl. 0.5 m motor line with plug-in connector (approx. 0.2 m from box end)

If GranTex with easyZIP guidance are installed at the front, the cable exit is provided from the drainage gutter. The cable is laid on the side where the mains connection to the house wall is located (connection side).

### Plug-in connector installation



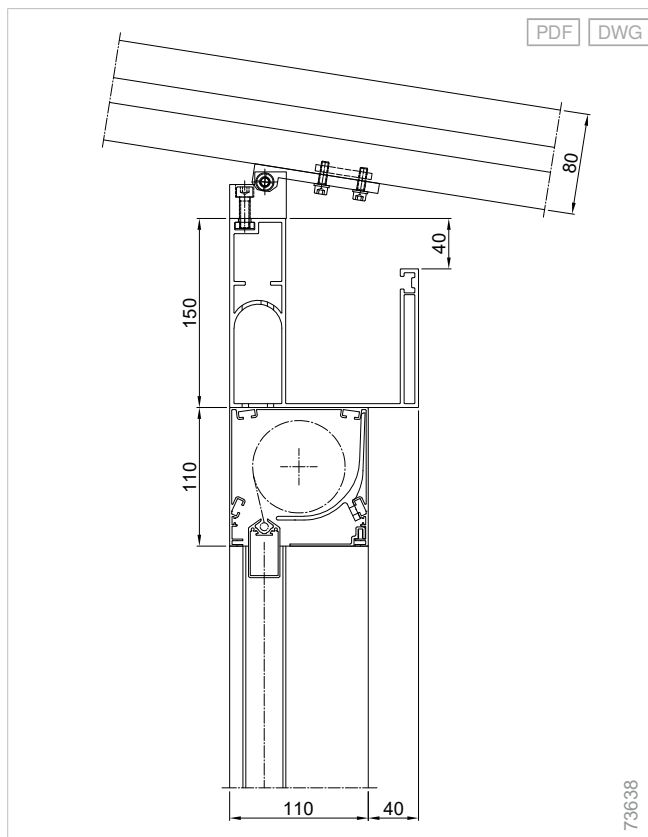
### Cable exit for rectangular box shape



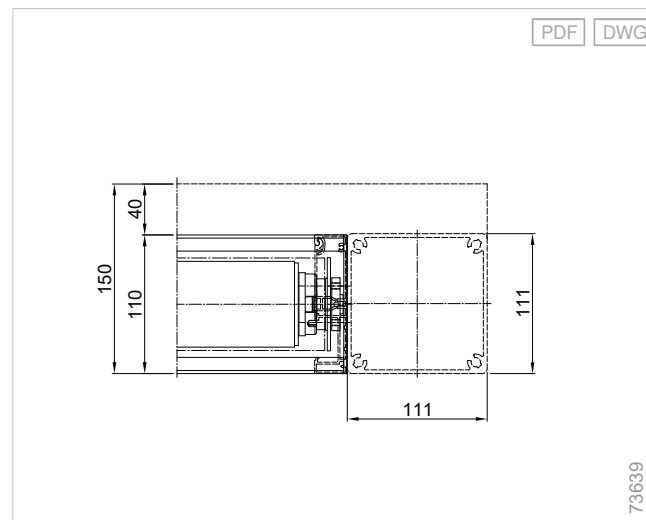
Note: the value in parentheses "22" applies exclusively to box size 90 in conjunction with a lateral cable exit, provided that this box size can be supplied in accordance with the product description.

## Mounting examples

Installation between the poles P60 - size 11 cover panel for GranTex with easyZIP guidance



Overhang over pole for Perea P60 - size 11 cover panel for GranTex with easyZIP guidance





## Supplementary accessories

### Patio frame

#### Free-standing

A free choice of location: The frame consisting of a horizontal profile and supports keeps the awning(s) secure and can be installed regardless of the location, next to or away from the building facade.

#### Expansive

With a two-sided awning connection, particularly large areas can be shaded.

#### Seamless

With the optional intermediate cover, even the area between the two awnings remains dry.

#### Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea



#### Product characteristics

- Patio frame consisting of horizontal profile and supports
- Free-standing steel frame for one or two articulated arm or cassette awnings Terrea
- Aluminium frame attached to a wall or free-standing for pergola awnings Perea

# Patio frame Terrea

## Can be used for:

- Terrea 550
- Terrea 580
- Terrea K50
- Terrea K60
- Terrea K70
- Terrea 530
- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60

## Components

### Terrea patio frame



- 1 Horizontal profile
- 2 Intermediate cover
- 3 Pole

## Pole

### Pole 80x80 mm - Patio frame Terrea

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Height	80 mm

### Line routing:

- Drilled holes for cable routing are included when using radio motor or WMS/EWFS radio plug receiver for drive.
- Drilled holes for switch operation are not included.

### Pole 100x100 mm - Patio frame Terrea

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	100 mm
Height	100 mm

### Line routing:

- Drilled holes for cable routing are included when using radio motor or WMS/EWFS radio plug receiver for drive.
- Drilled holes for switch operation are not included.

## Base plate

### Base plate - Patio frame Terrea

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	400 mm
Height	250 mm

Stable substructure is required.

## Horizontal profile

### Horizontal profile 60x60 mm - Patio frame Terrea

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	60 mm
Height	60 mm

### Field of application:

- 550
- 580
- K50

### Horizontal profile 80x200 mm - Patio frame Terrea

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Height	200 mm

### Field of application:

- K60
- K70
- 530
- G60
- H60

## Intermediate cover, optional

### Intermediate cover - Patio frame Terrea

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Depth	400 mm
Dimensions, notes	The intermediate cover is 50 mm wider than the awning width.

### + Side cover, optional

### Intermediate cover side cover - Patio frame Terrea

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	400 mm
Height	250 mm

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World, Individual category, fine texture surface quality
- WAREMA Colour World, Highlight category, fine texture surface quality
- WAREMA Colour World, Variation category, fine texture surface quality

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Notes

### Series-mounted units:

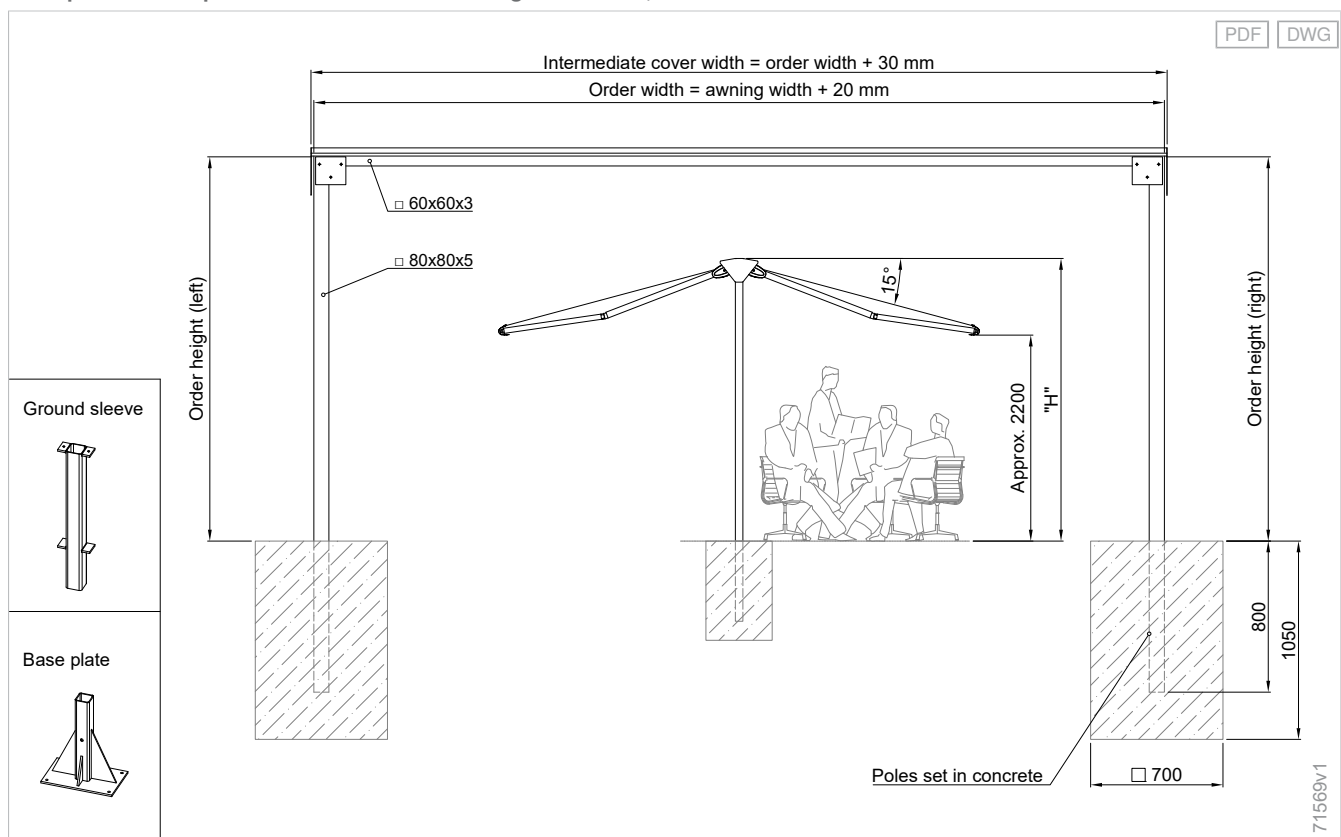
There is also a suitable patio frame for series-mounted units.

### Surface quality:

The fine texture surface quality is the most suitable variant and ensures a more uniform surface appearance than other surface qualities. It is more resistant and less sensitive to external influences such as dirt, marks and scratches. A highly weather-resistant surface in fine texture is characterised by an improved weathering behaviour with regard to gloss retention, weathering, chalking and colour stability.

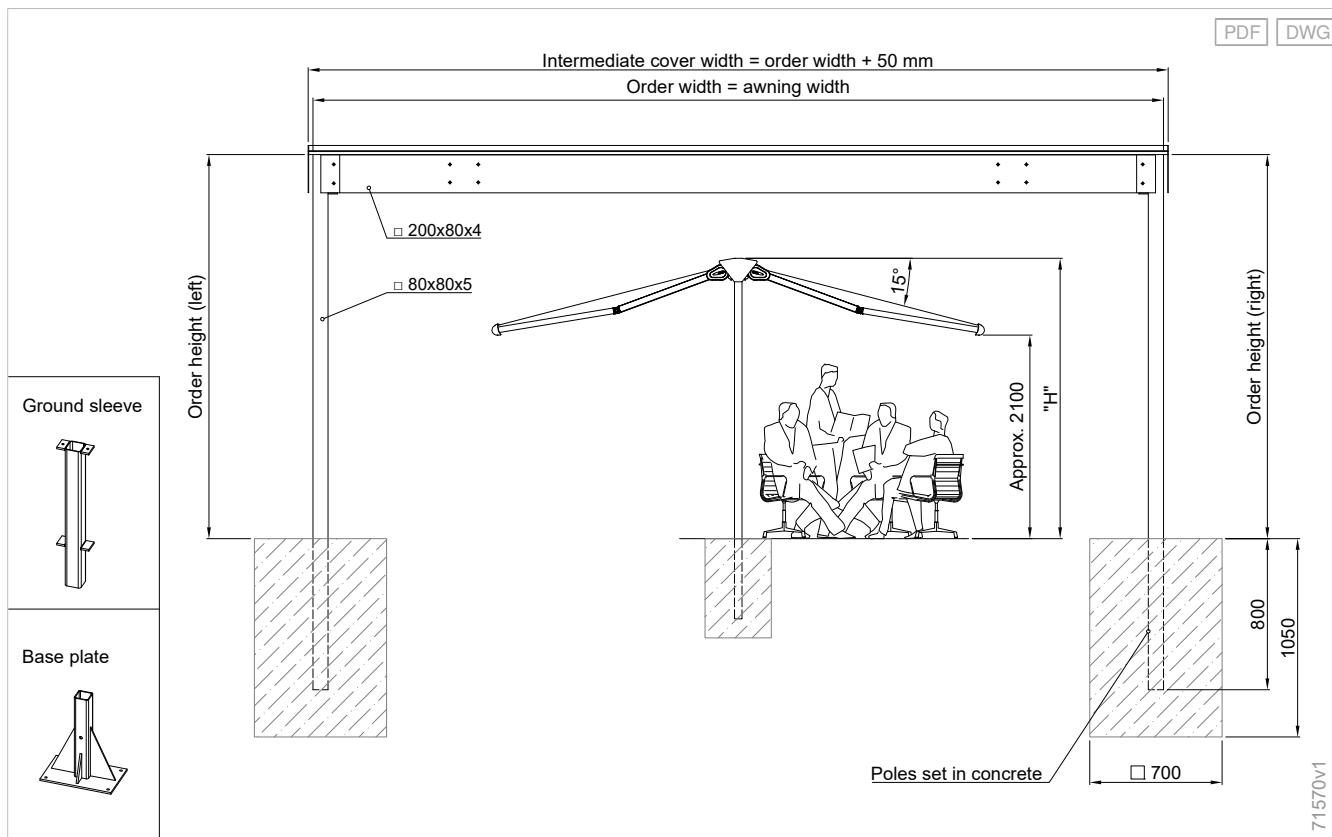
## Dimension determination

Principle sketch of patio frame for cassette awnings Terrea 550, 580 and K50





Principle sketch of patio frame for all articulated arm awnings and cassette awnings Terrea K60 and K70



For Terrea 530, G60/H60, K60 and K70 in combination with the patio frame, the minimum width of the awning increases by 300 mm.

**Pole height**

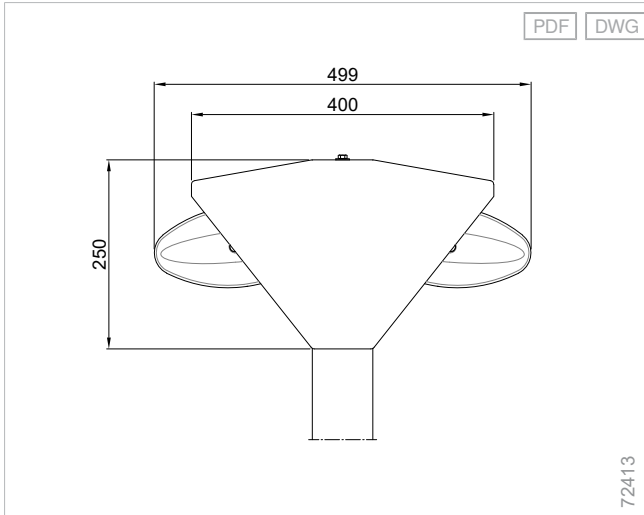
Projection	Height
1500 mm	2800 mm
2000 mm	2950 mm
2500 mm	3100 mm
3000 mm	3250 mm
3500 mm	3400 mm
4000 mm	3550 mm

**Size and number of poles:**

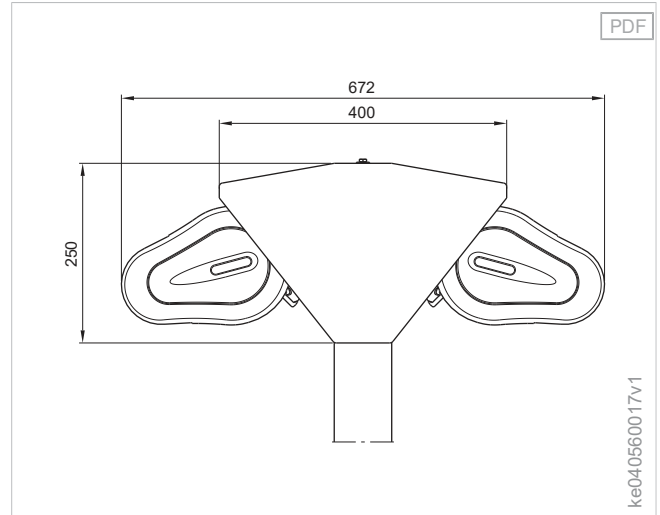
- From 6501 mm order width with 3 poles
- Up to a 3500 mm projection of poles 80x80 mm
- Up to a 4000 mm projection of poles 100x100 mm

## Details

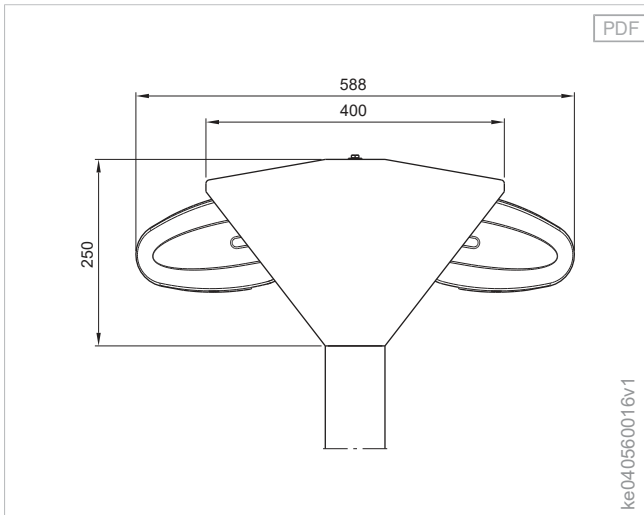
Side view - Terrea 550



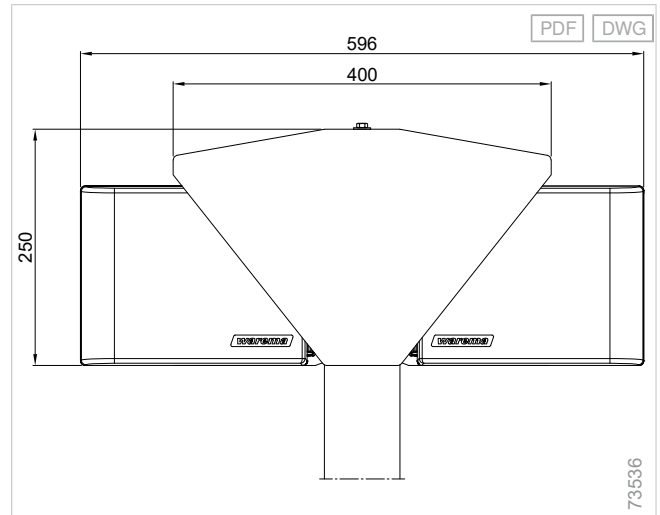
Side view - Terrea K60



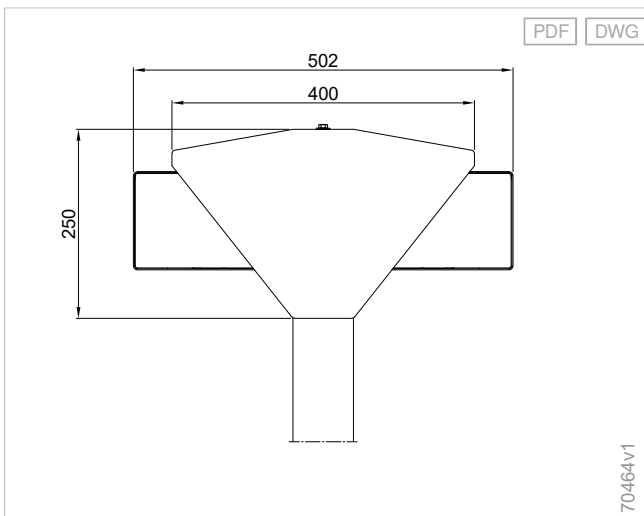
Side view - Terrea 580



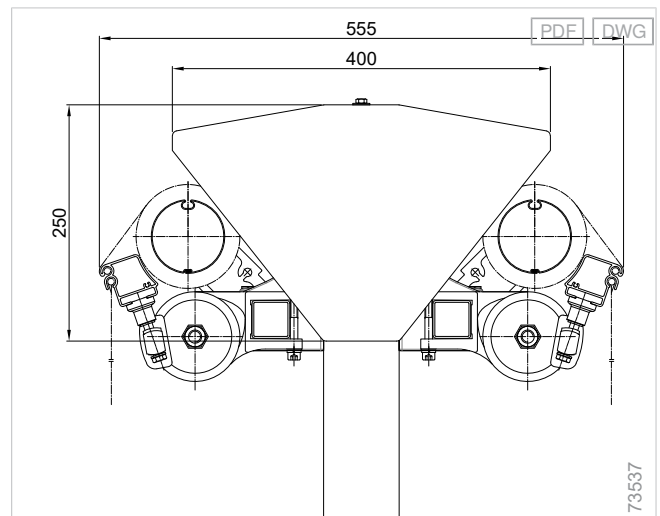
Side view - Terrea K70



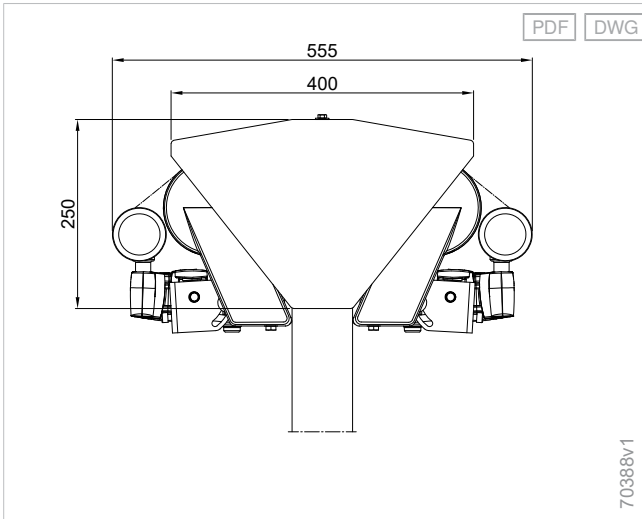
Side view - Terrea K50



Side view - Terrea 530

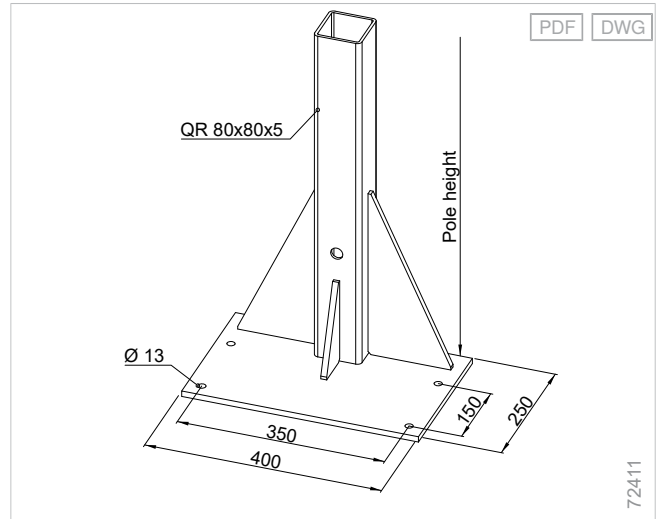


Side view - Terrea G60



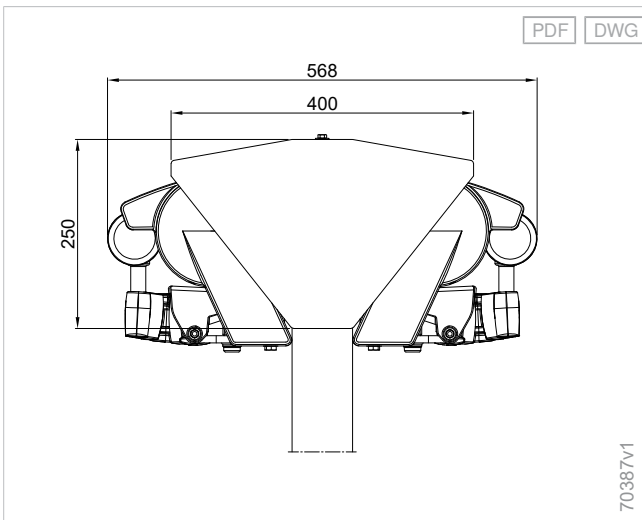
70388V1

Flush base plate - Terrea patio frame



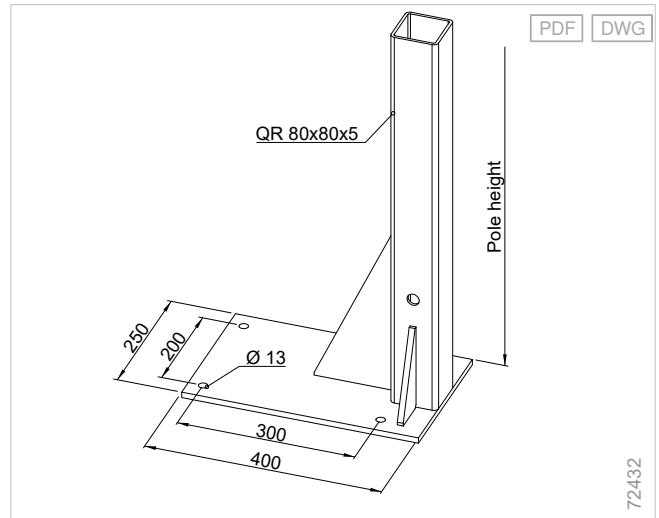
72411

Side view - Terrea H60



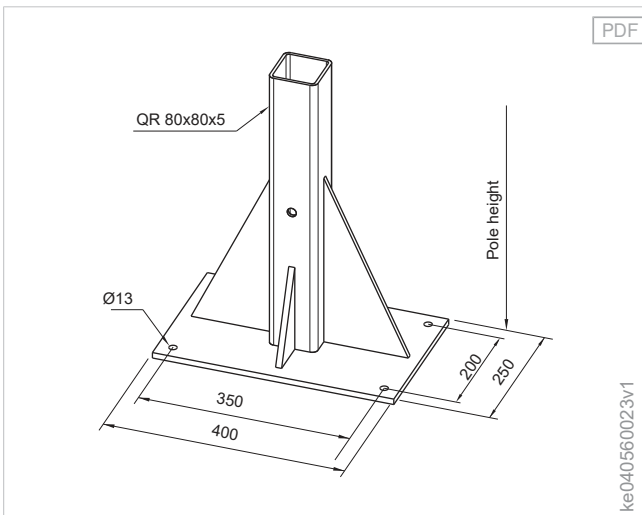
70387V1

Base plate flush/house connection - unilateral Terrea patio frame



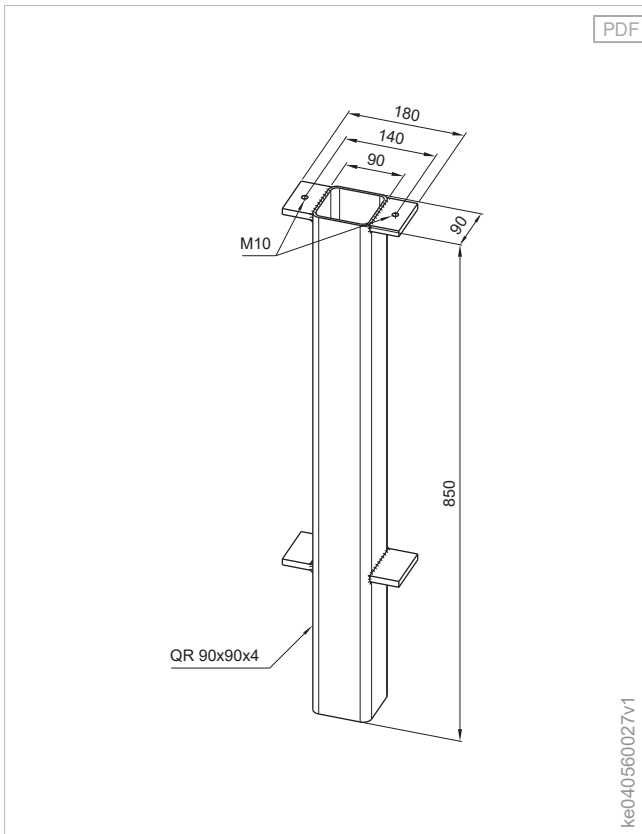
72432

Central base plate - Terrea patio frame

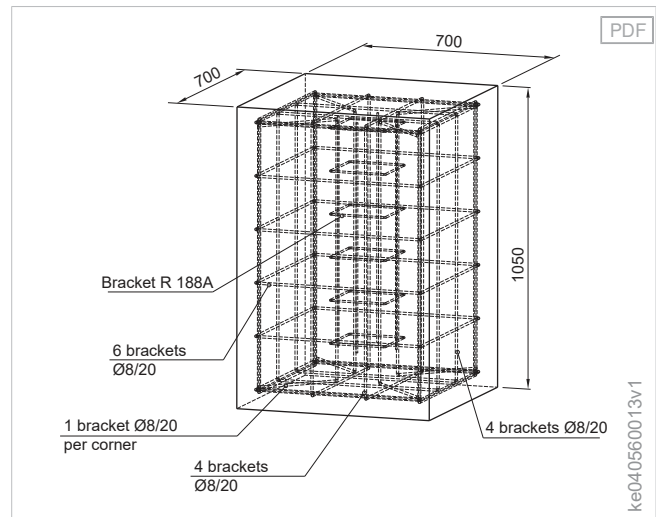


ke040560023V1

## Ground sleeve for pole installation - Terrea patio frame



## Concrete foundation set in concrete for pole installation (to be performed on site) - Terrea patio frame



## Additional product information

### Installation options - Terrea patio frames

#### Poles set in concrete

- Concrete foundation C 20/25 with reinforcement
- Concreted-in pole section must be protected from corrosion on-site

#### Pole with ground sleeve

- Only possible for poles 80x80 mm
- Dimensions (WxH): 90x90 mm

#### Pole with base plate

- Dimensions (WxH): 400x250 mm
- On frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600x600x800 mm

### Note on colour selection

The fine texture surface quality is the most common and suitable variant for this type of products and ensures a uniform surface appearance. It is more resistant and less sensitive to external influences such as dirt, marks and scratches. A highly weather-resistant surface in fine texture is characterised by an improved weathering behaviour with regard to gloss retention, weathering, chalking and colour stability.

# Patio frame Perea

## Can be used for:

- All pergola awnings Perea

## Components

### Perea patio frame



1 Horizontal profile      2 Pole

## Pole

### Pole - patio frame Perea

Maximum order height	3500 mm
Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	111 mm
Depth	111 mm

## Base plate

### Base plate - Patio frame Perea

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	200 mm
Height	230 mm

## Horizontal profile

### Horizontal profile 60x150 mm - Patio frame Perea

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	60 mm
Height	150 mm

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

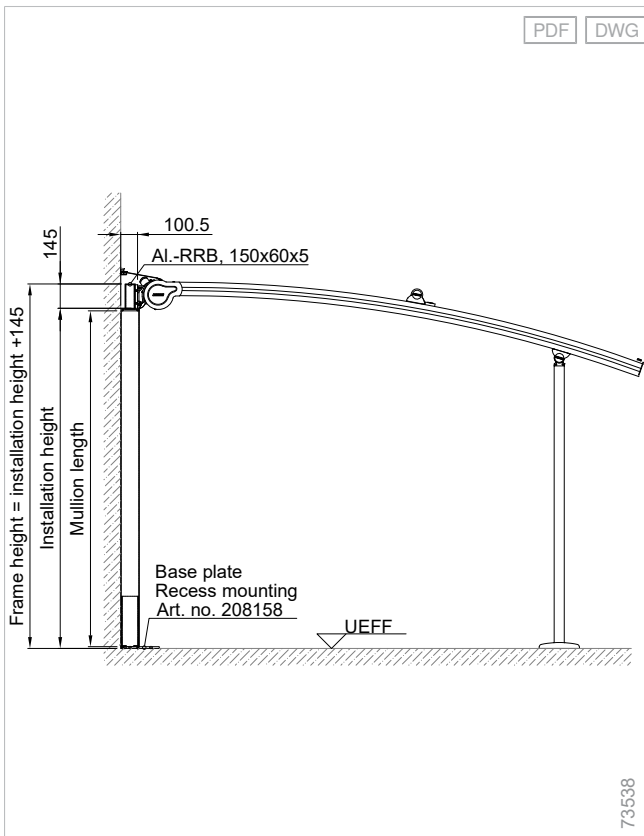
+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Notes

- For a free-standing patio frame embedded in plaster, a pergola awning Perea can be connected on each side.
- There is also a suitable patio frame for series-mounted units.

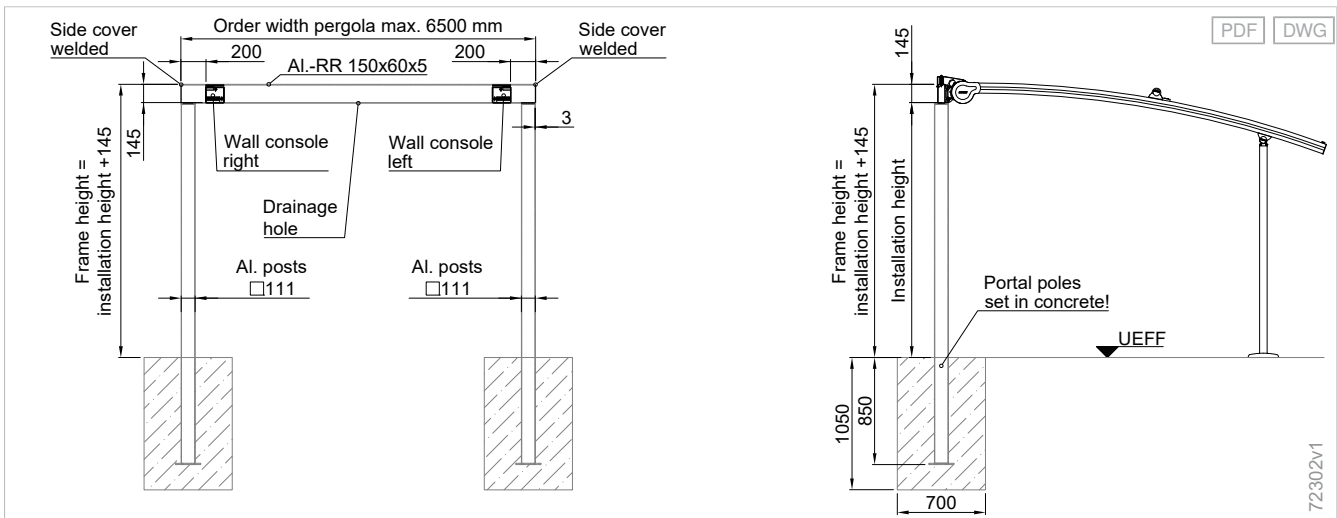
## Dimension determination

Example, patio frame at Perea P40 - pole with flush base plate



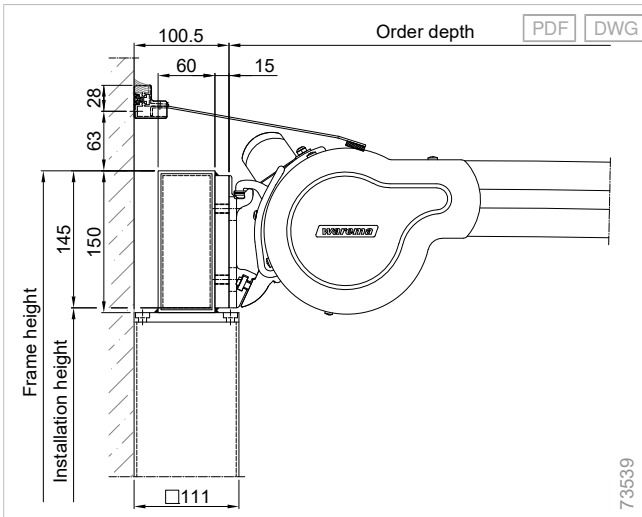
The left and right posts must be fixed to the wall and thus secured to prevent them from tipping over. Fixing holes are created on-site. The fixing material must be selected according to the substructure.

Example, patio frame at Perea P40 - poles, set in concrete

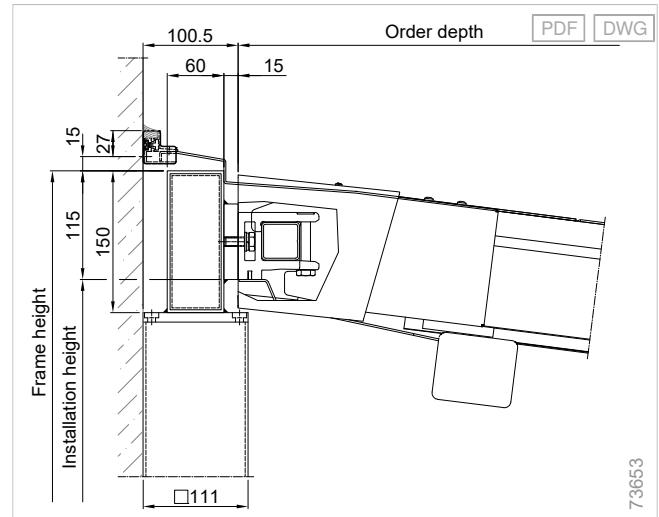


## Details

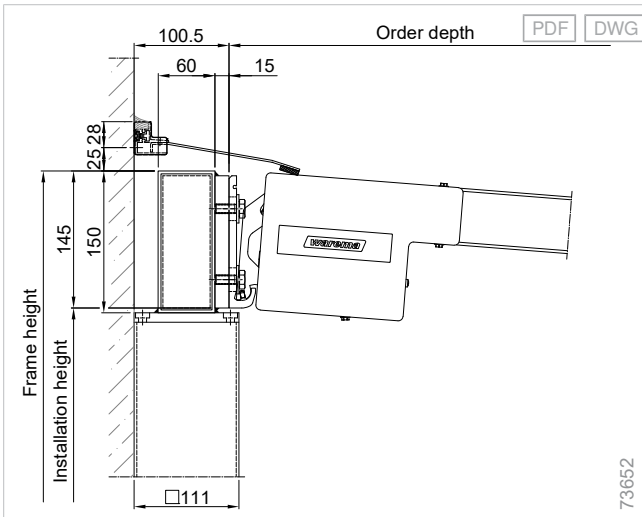
Wall connection - patio frame Perea P40/P40 WE/P60



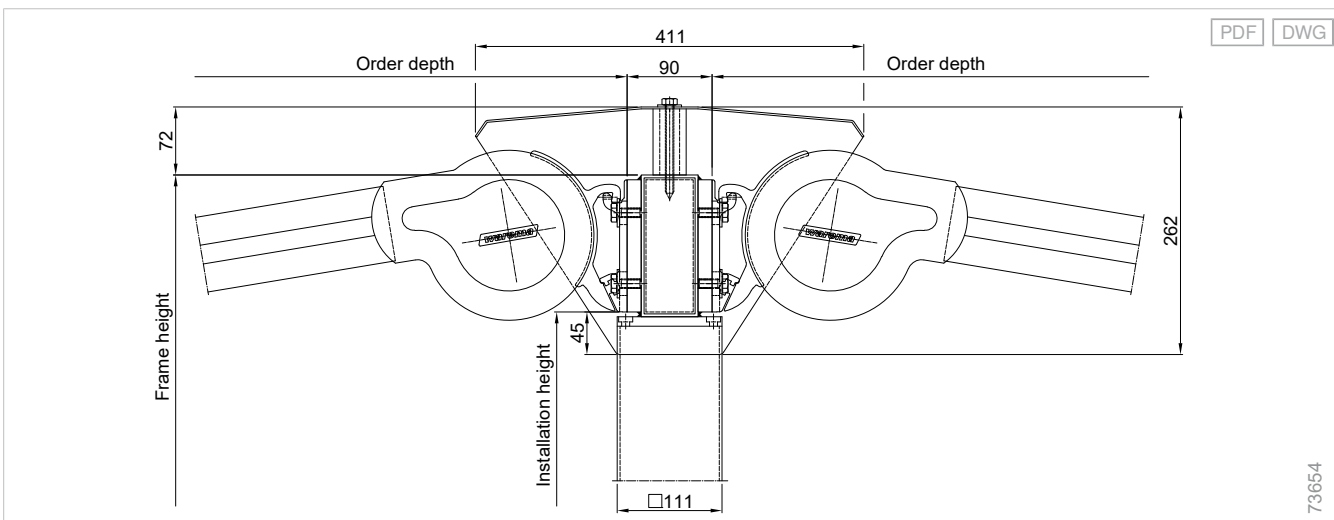
Wall connection - patio frame Perea P70



Wall connection - patio frame Perea P20



Patio frame Perea P40/P40 WE/P60



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

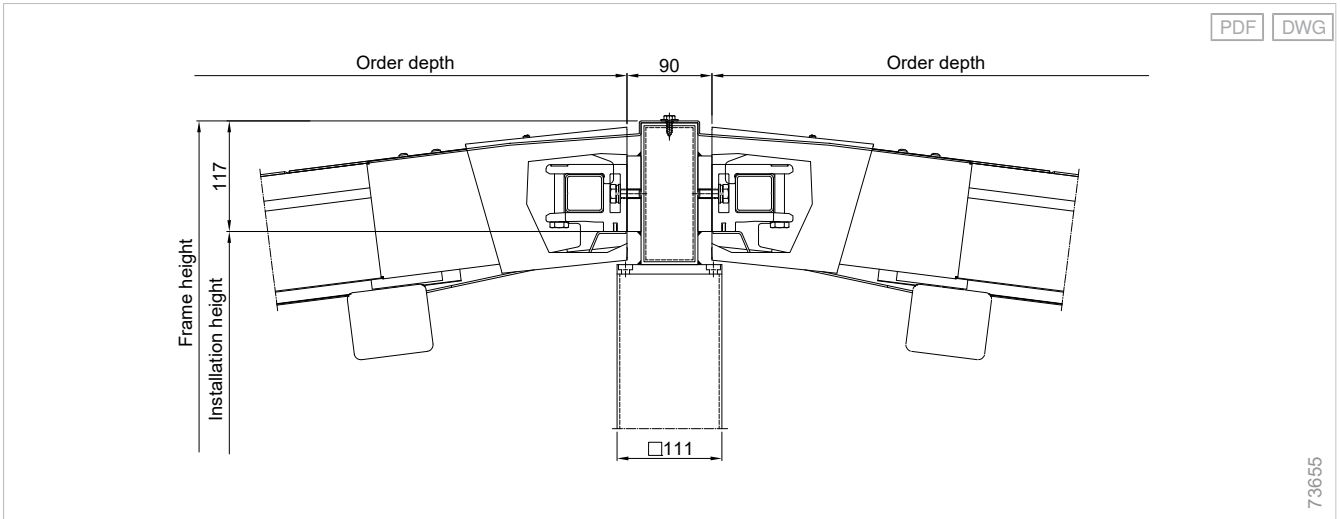
Supplementary accessories

Components

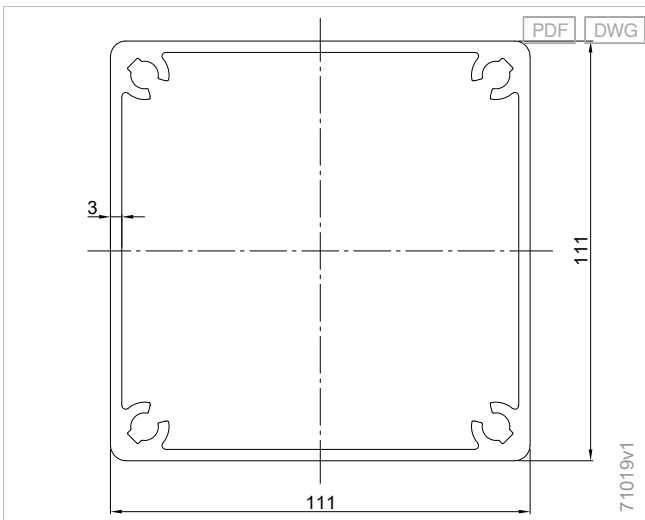
Drive variants

Standards

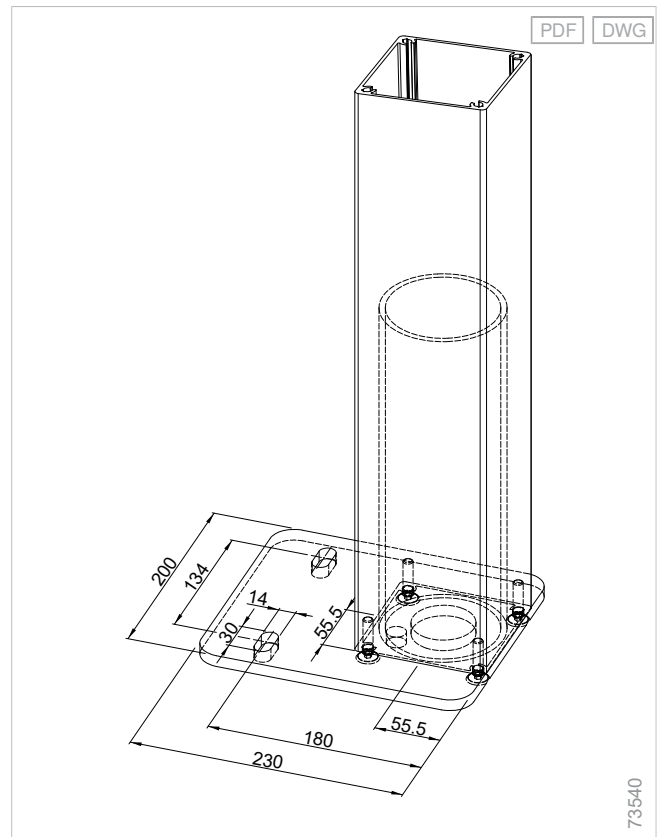
Patio frame Perea P70



Pole - patio frame Perea



Base plate - Patio frame Perea





## Additional product information

### Installation options - Perea patio frames

#### Poles set in concrete

- Concrete foundation C 20/25 with reinforcement
- Concreted-in pole section must be protected from corrosion on-site

#### Pole flush with base plate

- In connection with an additional connection of the patio frame, for example to the building wall
- On frost-proof, on-site foundation, dimensions (WxDxH) 600×600×800 mm

# Turning gear

## Can be used for:

- Terrea G60
- Terrea H60

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Product characteristics

Maximum order width 6500 mm

Maximum projection 3500 mm

Adjustment range 5 - 45 °

Adjustment range, notes **Turning gear operation:**

- When the turning gear is in operation, the awning may only be extended by a maximum of 1 m.
- Before retracting the awning, the inclination angle must be adjusted to 5°-30°.

## Drive variants

- Crank

## Crank

- Crank with ball hook

## Gear

- Angle gear

+ see "Drive variants", Page 471

## Construction limit values

Equipment with **turning gear is not possible** with:

- Group units
- LB model
- Integrated WMS Wind sensor
- Electrical valance roller blind

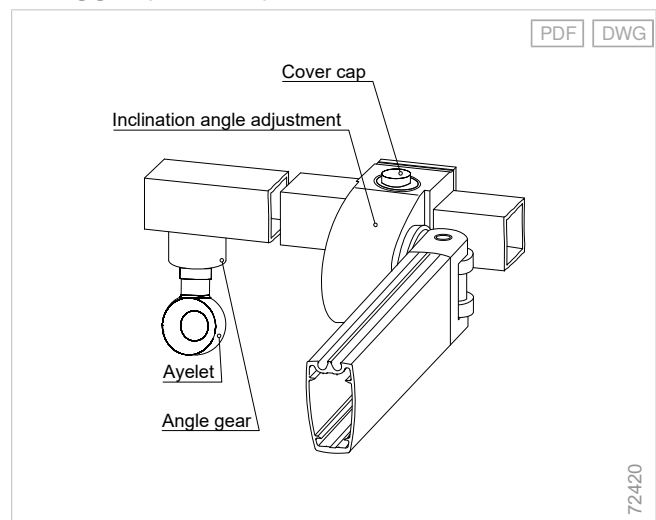
## Maximum width combined with valance roller blind (crank):

- For 3500 mm projection: 4500 mm
- For 3000 mm projection: 5500 mm

## Dimension determination

### Details

#### Turning gear (Terrea G60)







## Supplementary accessories

### Printed fabrics

#### Individual

Printed sun shading systems makes your facade individual.

#### Enhancing

When lowered, the sun shading system not only provides shade, but also acts as an advertising space for companies.

#### Colourfast

The printed colours are particularly UV and light-resistant.

#### Can be used for:

- Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea
- Pergola awnings Perea
- Conservatory awnings Climara (except W7 and D3)



#### Product characteristics

- Printing of the awning fabric or valance
- Use of the awning as advertising space

## Fabric lettering, painted

Awning fabrics and valances can feature weather-proof inscriptions in almost any RAL CLASSIC Colour, with various font styles and individual logos using a screen printing process.

The font suggestions shown are only a selection of the many lettering alternatives available.

Ideal samples would be files in eps-, CorelDRAW® or Adobe Illustrator® format.

Inscription only available on acrylic fabric or lacquered fabric!

The price includes a one-off layout suggestion, additional corrections subject to surcharge.

### Font type examples



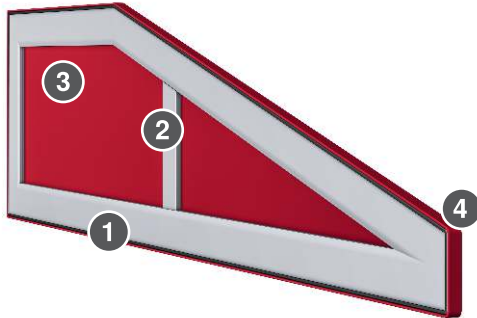
# Stretcher frame

## Can be used for:

- Conservatory awnings Climara
- Pergola awnings Perea

## Components

### Stretcher frame



- |   |                  |   |                      |
|---|------------------|---|----------------------|
| 1 | Frame profile    | 3 | Fabric               |
| 2 | Sash bar profile | 4 | Bead with cover tape |

## Profile

### Frame profile 14x58 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	58 mm
Height	14 mm

### Sash bar profile 13x48 mm

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	48 mm
Height	13 mm

## Fabric protection plate

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	35 mm

## Colours

- WAREMA Colour World

+ see "Colours and finishes", Page 10

## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric

Fabric qualities, optional:

- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Screen fabric
- Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302
- Soltis W96
- Sunworker Top
- Sunvas Perla FR

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Notes

**Intended use:** For structural reasons, the WAREMA stretcher frames cannot bear snow loads and are therefore only to be used for sun shading.

## Construction limit values

Configuration variants	Maximum order width	Maximum order height	Maximum order area
<b>Fabric qualities</b>			
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue / Soltis 92 / Screen fabric / Lacquered fabric Preconstraint 302 / Soltis W96 / Sunworker Top / Sunvas Perla FR / Acrylic fabric	5000 mm	1500 mm	4 m <sup>2</sup>

**Number of sash bar profiles:** The number of the sash bar profiles corresponds to the construction size. For an order width or height of 1000 mm or greater, at least one sash bar profile is required.

### Inside angle X:

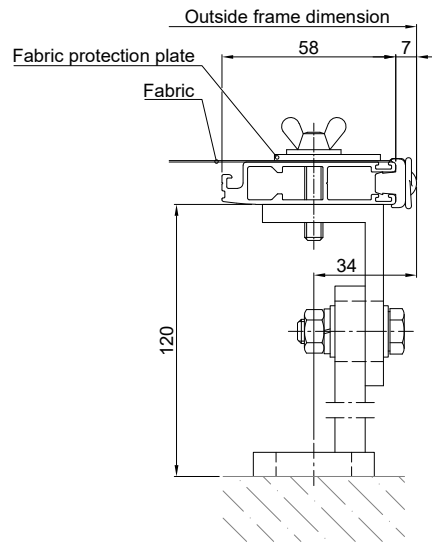
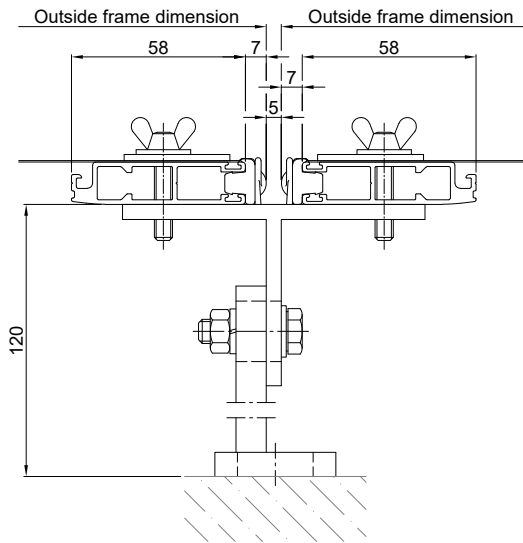
- Type 1 and 2 at least 21°
- Type 4 and 5: Between 5° and 20°

## Dimension determination

### Fixing with brackets - fixed frame

- Fixing option C:  
Fixing with guide rail bracket

PDF DWG



1 fabric protection plate incl. 2 blind rivets and one wing screw M6x30 incl. washer are supplied for each guide rail bracket. Fixing screws of choice will be supplied for fixing.

- 2 wood screws DIN 571 6x60 incl. washers  
 2 tapping screws DIN 7976 6.3x60 incl. washers  
 4 nuts, 4 washers (for fixing on on-site dowel pins M8)  
 (Doubled quantity for double brackets)

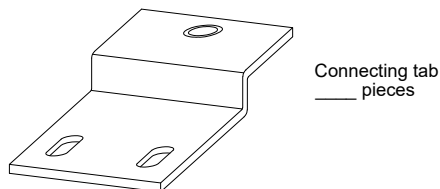
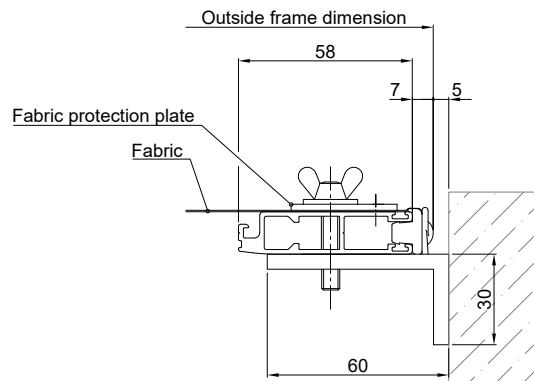
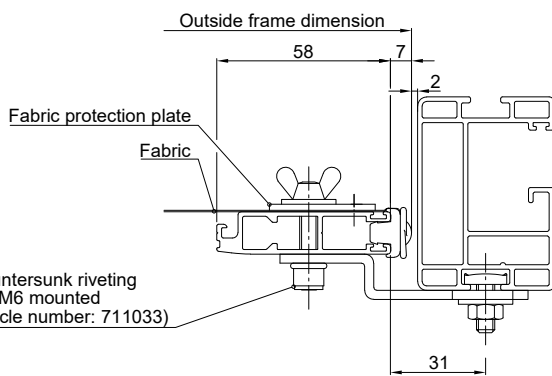
71655v2

### Fixing on W19/W20 or on window frame - fixed frame

- Fixing option A:  
Fixing on on-site guide rails, type W19 or W20

- Fixing option B:  
Fixing on the window frame

PDF DWG



1 fabric protection plate incl. 2 blind rivets, 1 mounting plate incl. screws and locking ring and one wing screw M6x30 incl. washer are supplied for each connecting tab.

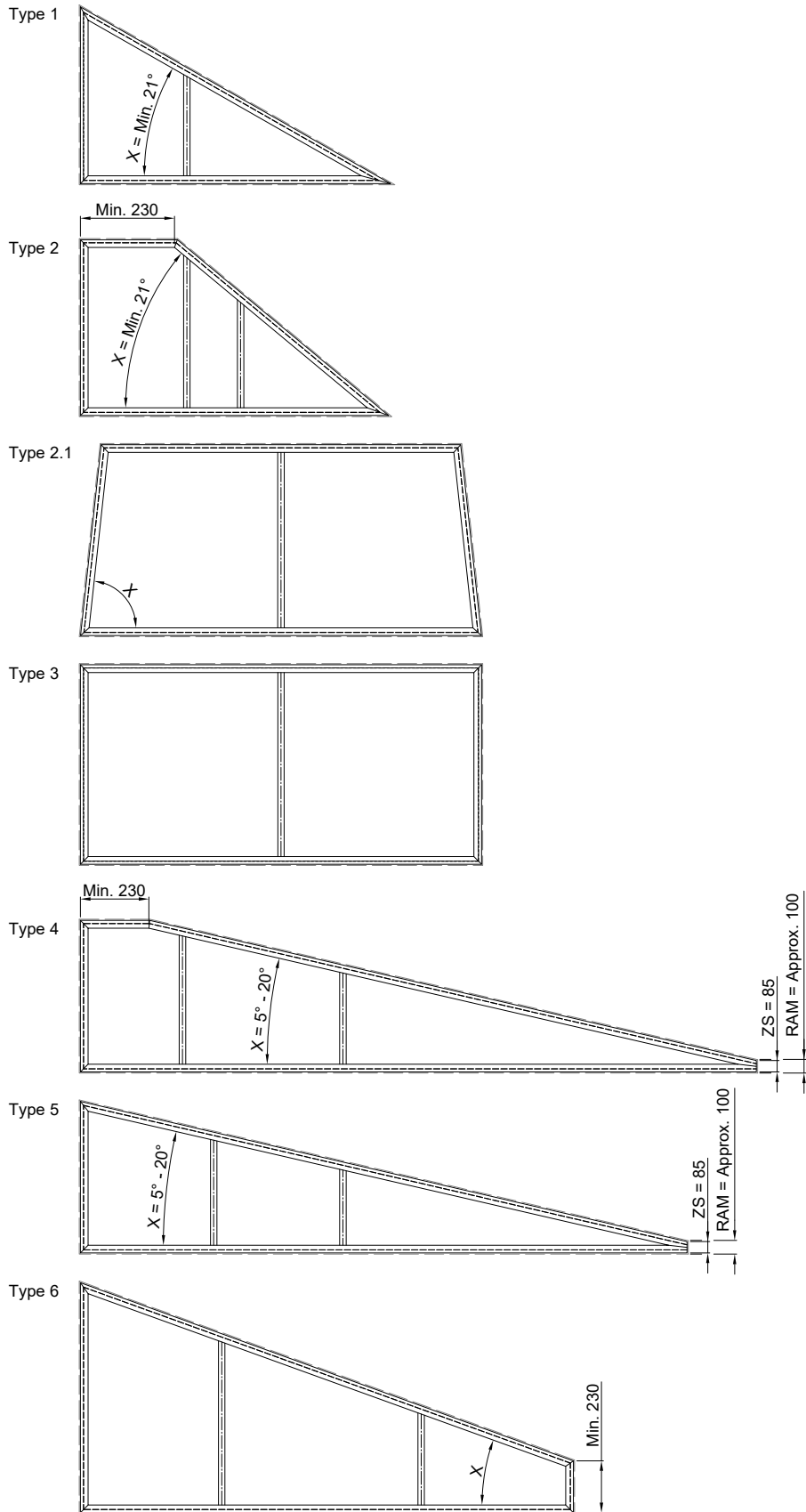
- 1 fabric protection plate incl. 2 blind rivets and one wing screw M6x30 incl. washer are supplied for each fixing bracket. Fixing screws of choice are supplied for fixing.
- 2 wood screws DIN 571 6x25 incl. washers  
 2 tapping screws 7976 6.3x22 incl. washers

71145v5

# Details

## Type overview - fixed frame

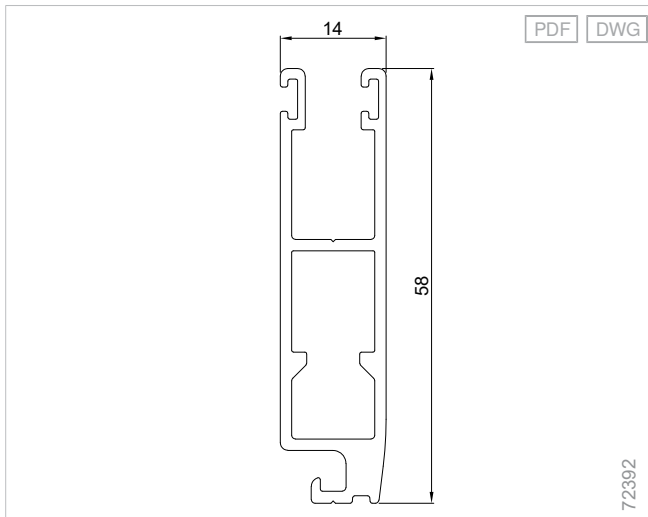
PDF DWG



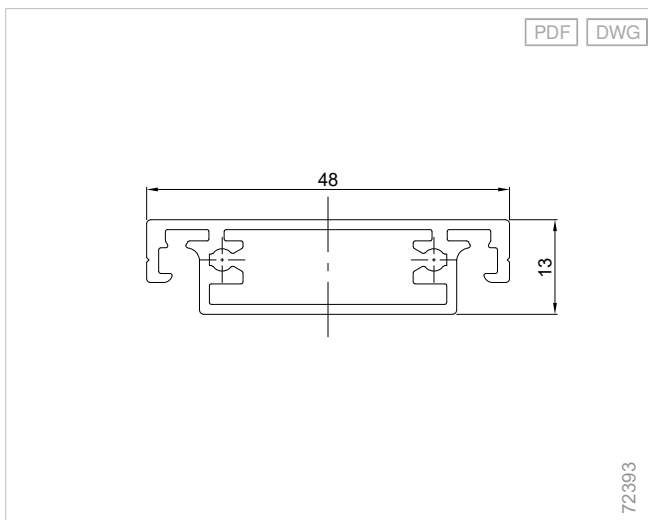
72299v3



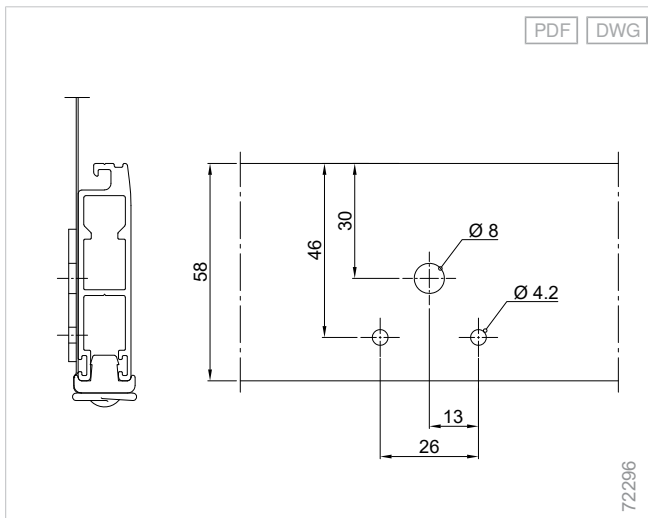
Frame profile 14 x 58 mm



Sash bar profile 13x48 mm



Fabric protection plate fixing template - fixed frame



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

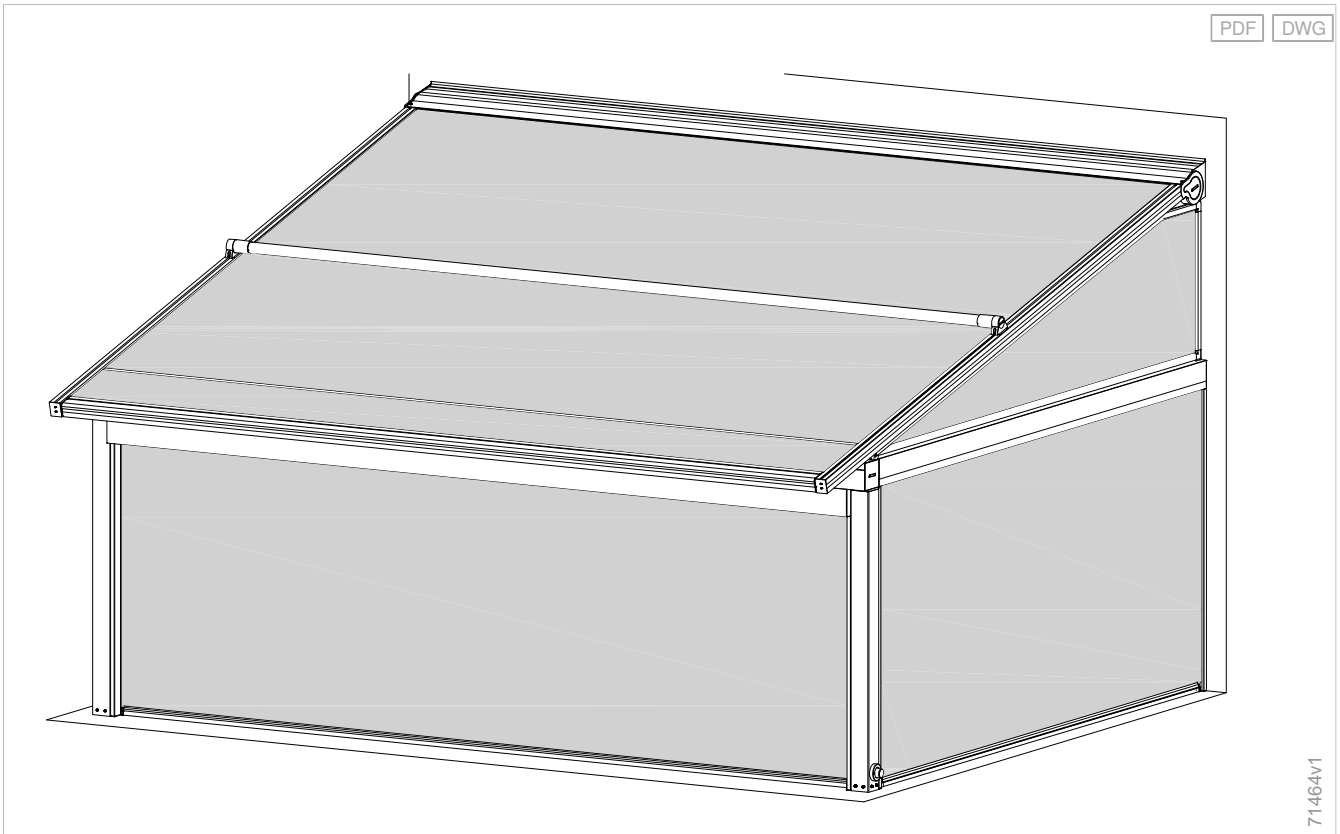
Components

Drive variants

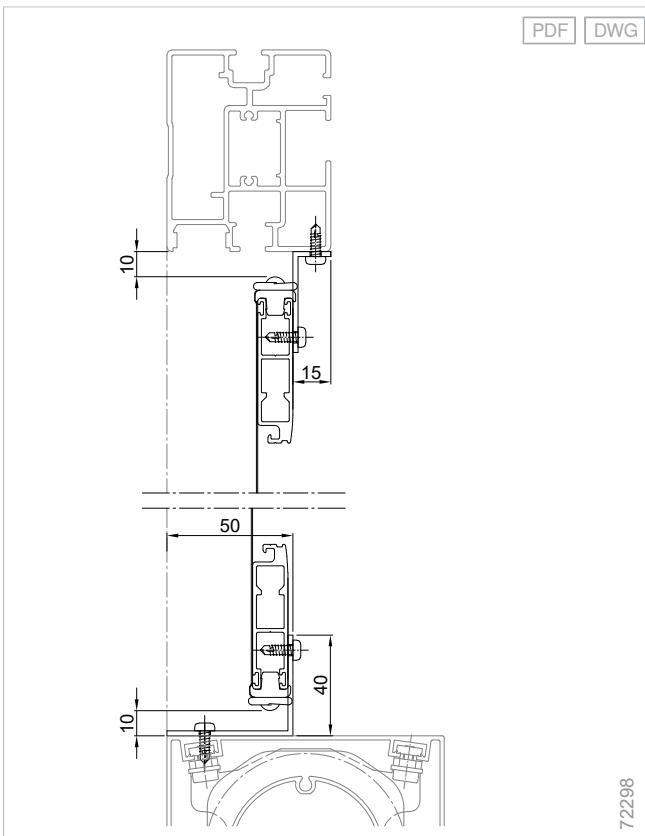
Standards

# Mounting examples

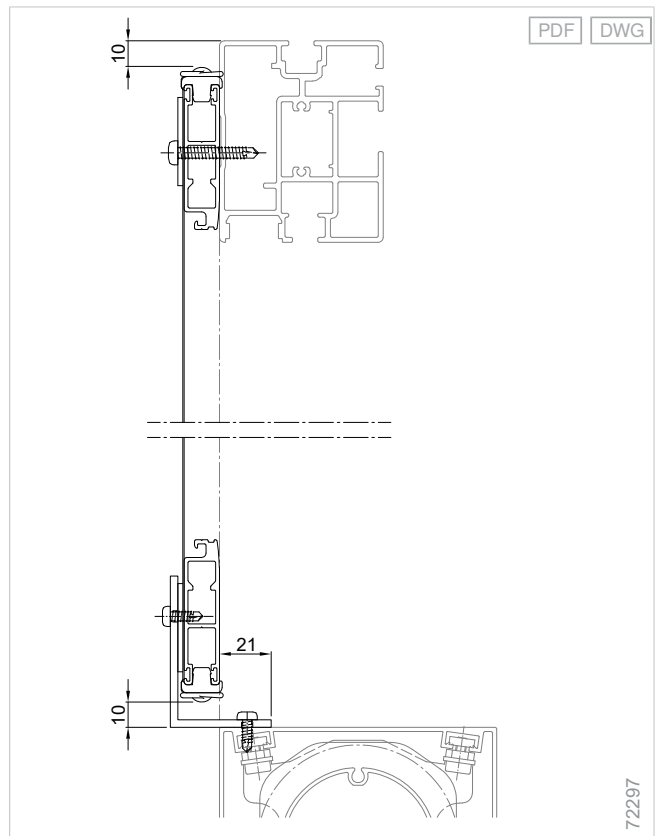
Front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance and fixed frame- P60



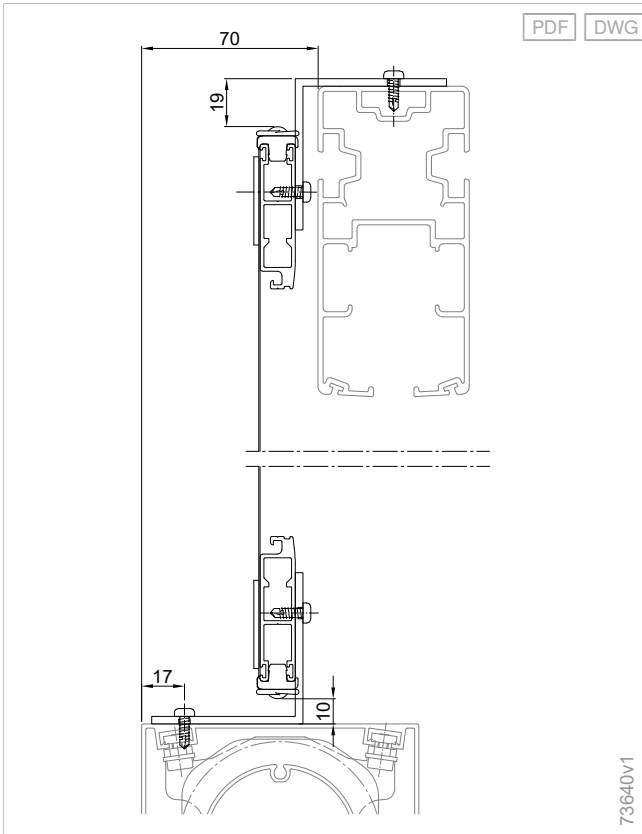
Connection to Perea P60 with front-mounted awning fixed frame



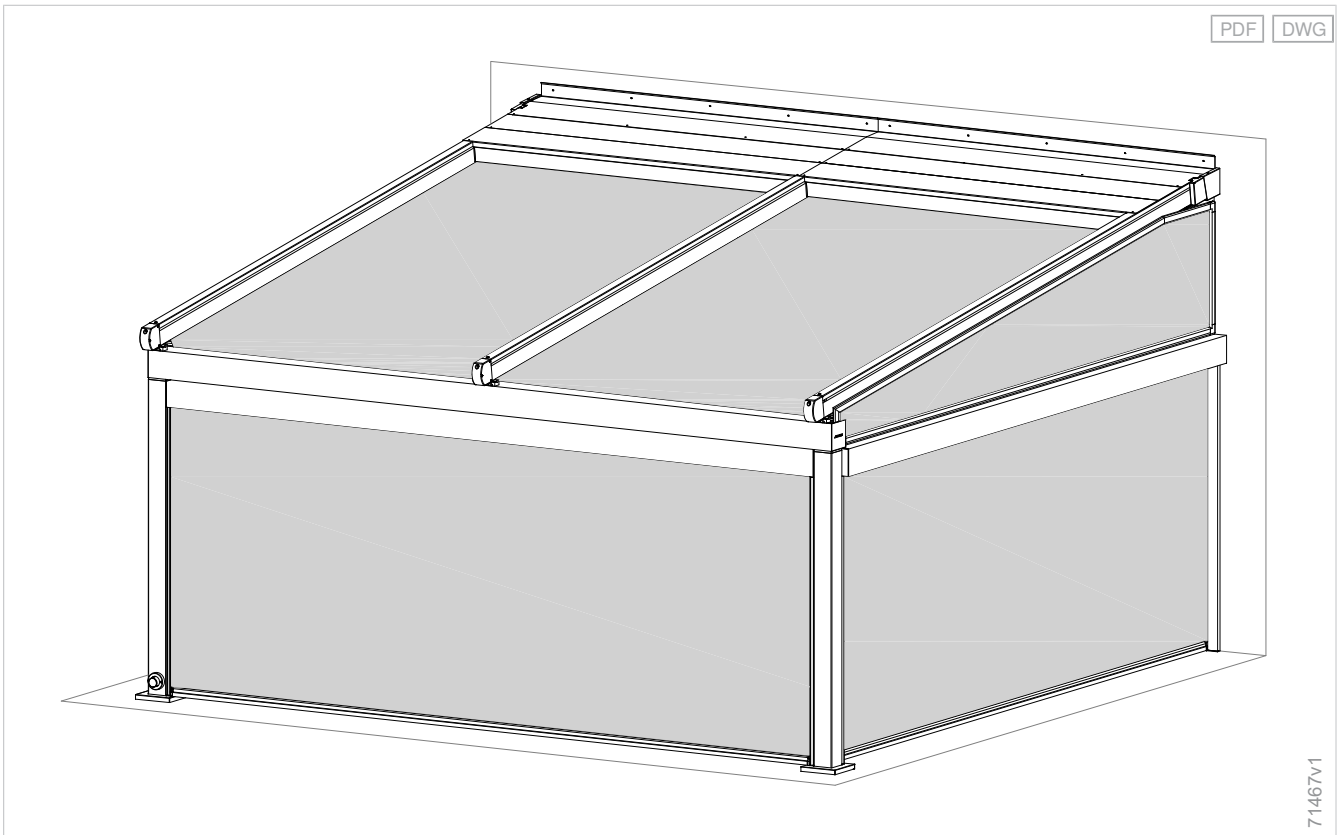
Connection to Perea P60 with integrated lighting and front-mounted awning fixed frame



Connection to Perea P70 - stretcher frame



Front-mounted awning with easyZIP guidance and fixed frame- P70



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

# Protective fabric cover

## Can be used for:

- Terrea 530
- Terrea G60

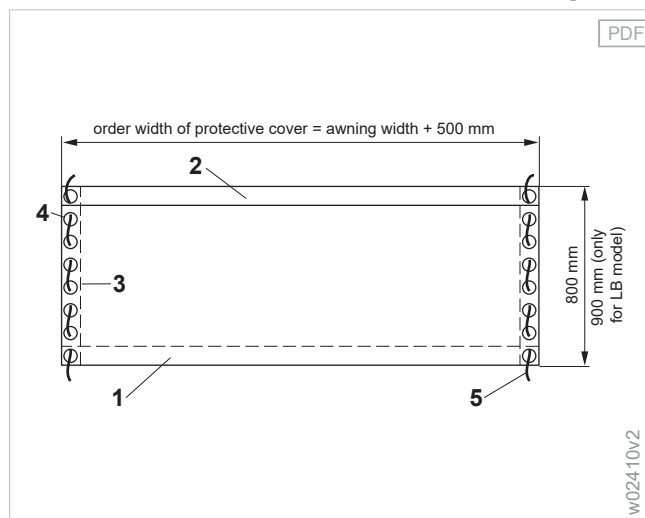
## Product characteristics

### Order data:

- Awning type
- Awning width
- Design no. or design of our choice

**LB model** awnings are delivered with a cover height of 900 mm

### Protective fabric cover for Terrea articulated arm awnings



- |   |                                       |   |                               |
|---|---------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | Velcro loop tape, sewn-on on the back | 4 | Brass eyelets Ø 8 mm, punched |
| 2 | Velcro hook tape, sewn-on             | 5 | PVC cord                      |
| 3 | Lateral hem seam, 50 mm measured flat |   |                               |

# Balcony fabrics

## Can be used for:

- Balcony railings

## Product characteristics

### Standard model:

- Balcony fabric: Acrylic fabric, sewing completed
- Hem: 50 mm, surrounding, measured flat
- Brass eyelets (Ø): Inside 8.0 mm, outside 15 mm, punched into the hem
- Special shapes: On request – Please provide detailed sketch

## Notes

### Order data:

- Width
- Height
- Design no.
- No. of eyelets or distance between eyelets
- Stripe direction (vertical/crosswise)
- Accessories such as PVC cord or rope

The length of the PVC cord or rope needed for fixing is calculated using the rule of thumb: fabric perimeter x 1.5.

## Construction limit values

### Maximum production dimensions

Configuration variants	Web width	Maximum order width	Maximum order height	Maximum order area
<b>Fabric qualities + Fabric processing</b>				
Acrylic fabric / Starlight Blue + Sewing / Gluing (overlapping) / UltraSeam™	1200 mm	8000 mm	8000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>
All Weather acrylic + Sewing / UltraSeam™	1200 mm	8000 mm	8000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>
Soltis 92 + Welding	1770 mm	8000 mm	8000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>
Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302 + Welding	1800 mm	8000 mm	8000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>
Twilight Pearl + Sewing	2600 mm	8000 mm	8000 mm	30 m <sup>2</sup>

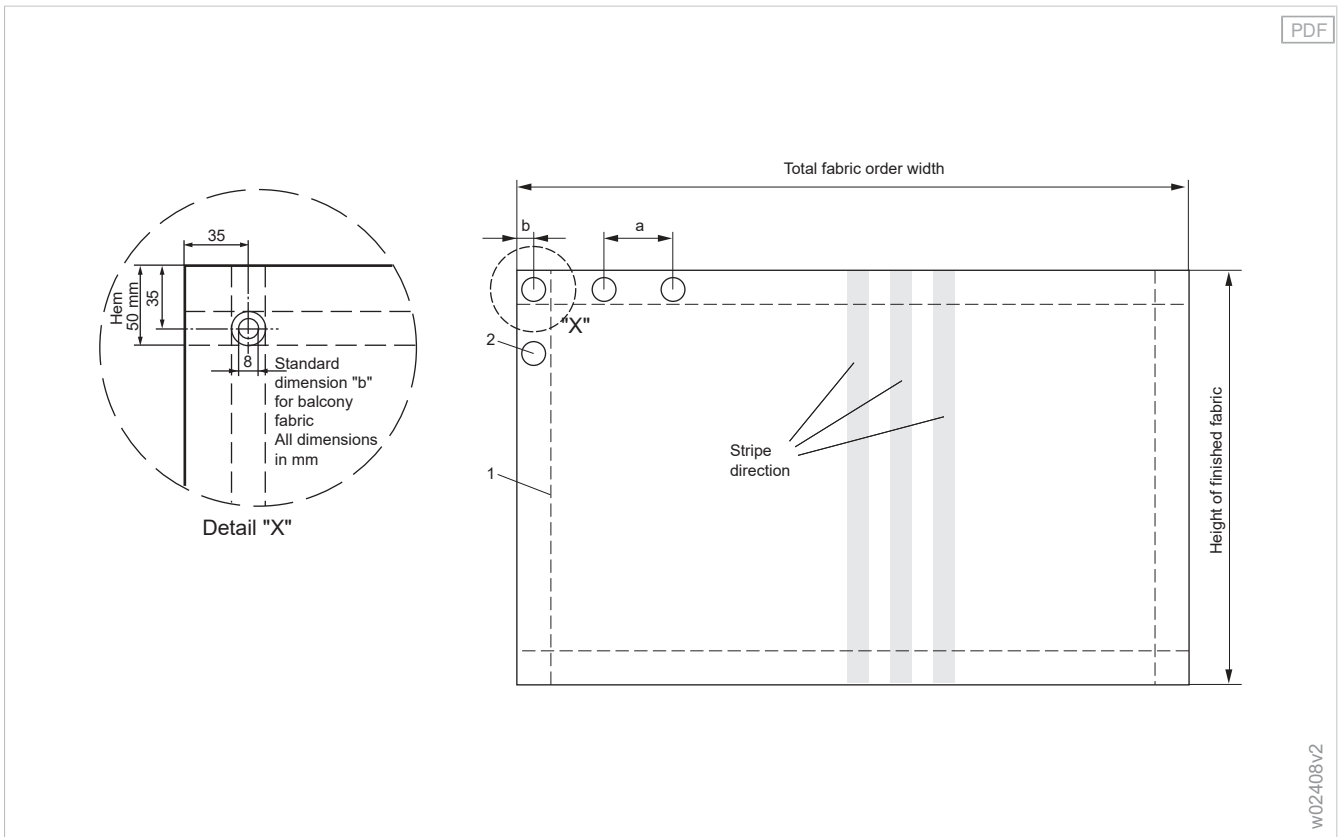
With the **crosswise stripe direction**, the order height is limited to max. 1100 mm.

**Eyelets** have to be punched at a max. distance of 100 mm from the outer edge.

## Dimension determination

The length of the PVC cord or rope needed for fixing is calculated using the rule of thumb: fabric perimeter x 1.5.

### Balcony fabric



- 1 Hem seam
- 2 Brass eyelet

- a Distance between the eyelets in the various sections (evenly spaced)
- b Eyelet spacing from outer edge of fabric (35 mm)

## Additional product information

### Possible accessories - Balcony fabrics

- 5.2 mm PVC fully round cord, Art. No. 301 001
- 3.0 mm cord, white, Art. No. 408 010
- Cable ties, Art. No. 802 220
- Hook-and-loop strip, hooks, Art. No. 403 046
- Hook-and-loop strip, hooks, self-adhesive, Art. No. 403 039
- Hook-and-loop strip, adhesive, Art. No. 403 047
- Push button, top, Art. No. 747 007
- Push button, bottom of fabric screw, Art. No. 747 003
- Push button, bottom of tapping screw, Art. No. 747 004
- Push button, screw-on bottom, Art. No. 747 041
- Push button, diameter 8 mm

Push button, bottom of tapping screw (Art. No. 747 004)



Push button, top (Art. No. 747 007)



Push button, bottom of fabric screw (Art. No. 747 003)



Push button, screw-on bottom (Art. No. 747 041)







# Contents

## Components

Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara.....	418
Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation.....	419
Guide rail bracket - direct installation.....	437
Bracket.....	449
Adapter.....	453
Guide rails for window awnings.....	456
Guide rail with plastic clip profile.....	457
Wall connection profiles.....	459
Awning collection.....	460
Awning collection.....	461
Fabric processing.....	462
Fabrics.....	464
Valance.....	469

Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards



## Components

### Guide rail bracket - Conservatory awnings Climara

#### Flexible

The guide rail bracket for conservatory awnings Climara ensures they can be installed in almost any installation situation.

#### Simple

Planning is made easy with the use of universal brackets.

#### Coordinated

Special SL brackets make installation on Solarlux patio roofs easy.



#### Product characteristics

- Guide rail bracket for direct installation or installation with distance
- Adapted for installation underneath or on a patio roof

# Guide rail bracket - stand-off installation

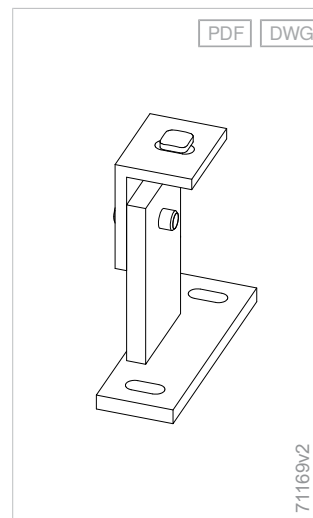
## Bracket H11

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	30 mm
Height	120 mm
Depth	120 mm

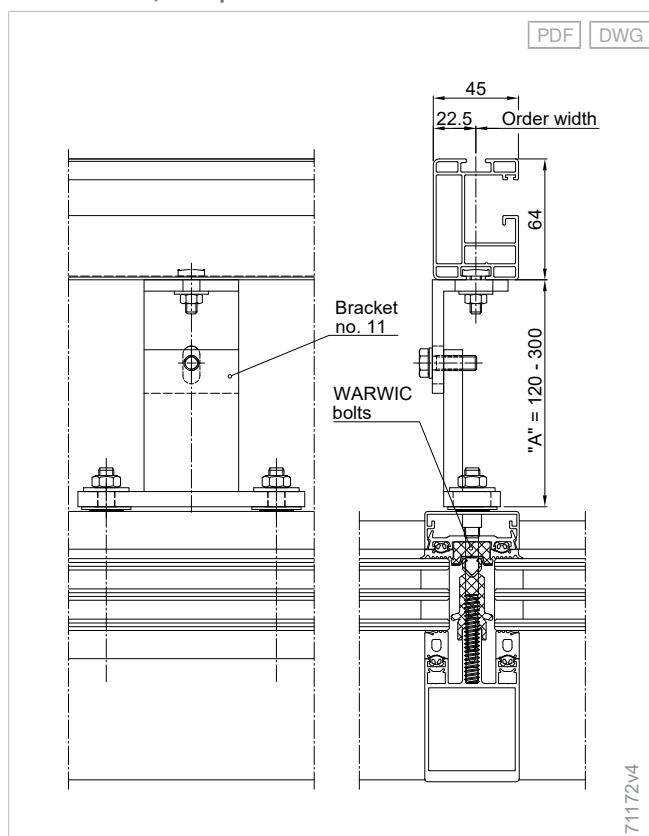
Field of application:

- D3
- W19
- W20

## Bracket no. 11



## Bracket no. 11, example D3



### Bracket H34

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	30 mm
Depth	120 mm

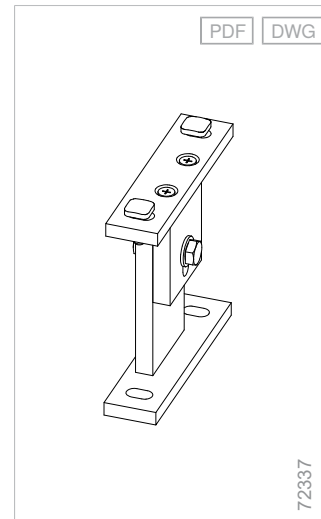
Field of application:

- W19
- W20
- D3

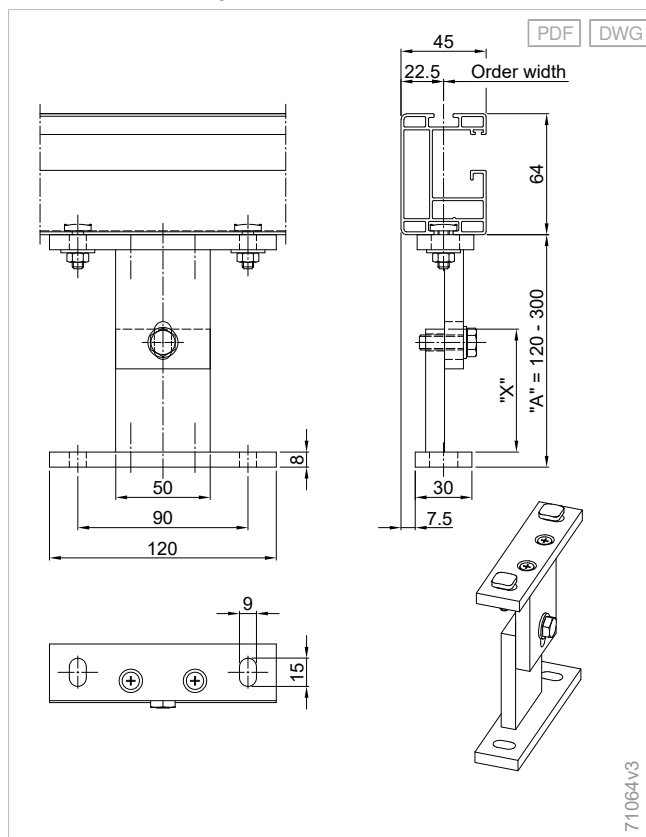
Suitable double bracket:

- H60
- H62

### Bracket no. 34



### Bracket no. 34, example W19



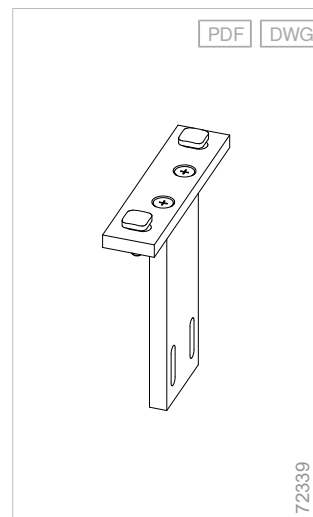
### Bracket H36

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	30 mm
Depth	120 mm

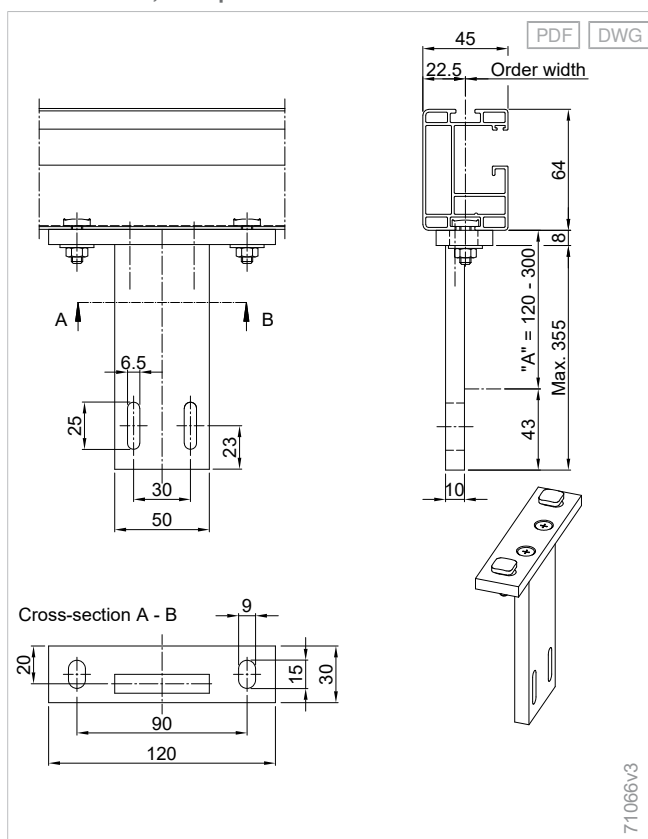
Field of application:

- W19
- W20
- D3

### Bracket no. 36



### Bracket no. 36, example W19



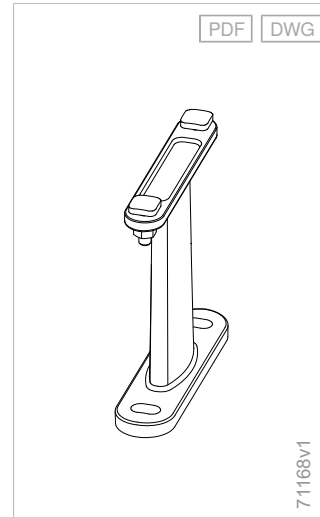
### Bracket H41

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	30 mm
Height	120 mm
Depth	120 mm

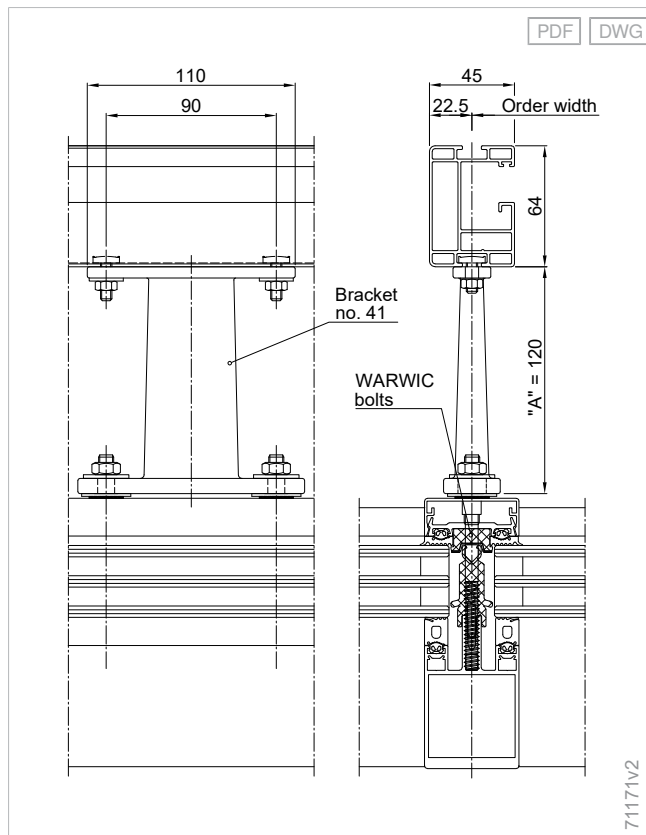
Field of application:

- W19
- W20
- D3

### Bracket no. 41



### Bracket no. 41, example W19



### Bracket H46

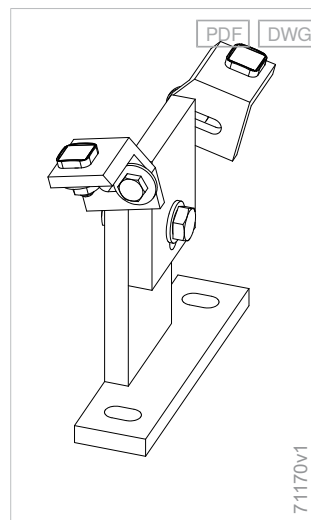
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	30 mm
Depth	120 mm

Field of application:

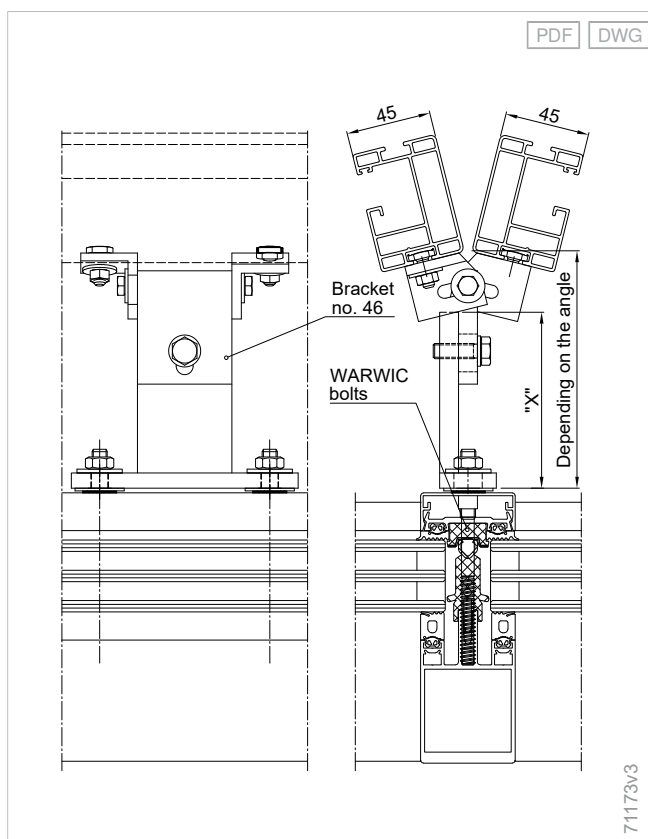
- D3

The usability of bracket H46 is tested depending on the roof pitch and the outside angle by the Applied Engineering department.

### Bracket no. 46



### Bracket no. 46 - D3



### Bracket H49

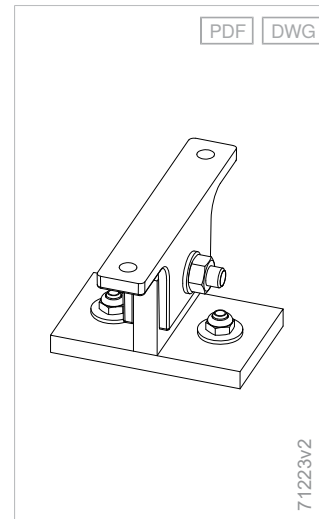
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Height	60 mm
Depth	110 mm

Field of application:

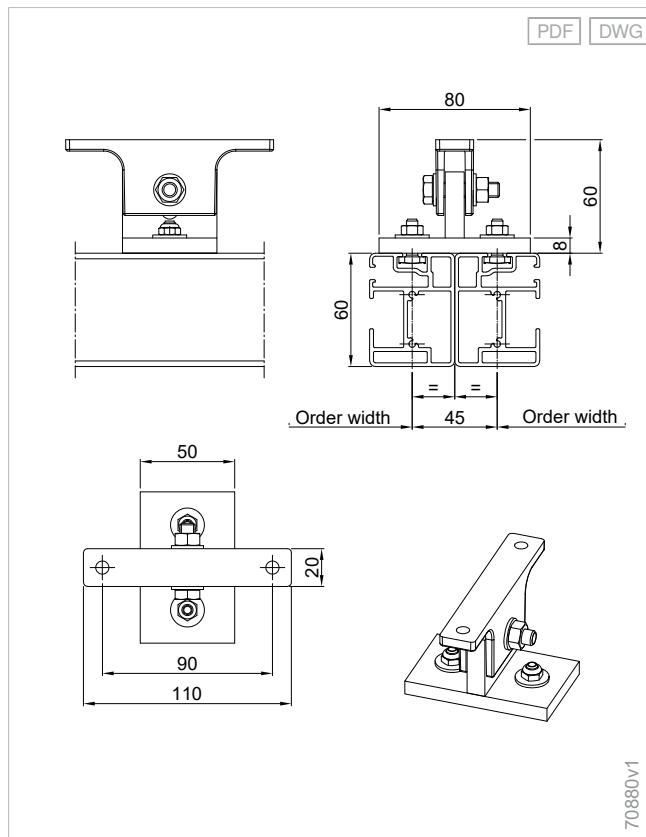
- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

Suitable single bracket: H101

### Bracket no. 49



**Bracket no. 49, guide rail bracket for series-mounted units, distance 60 mm, example W10**





### Bracket H60

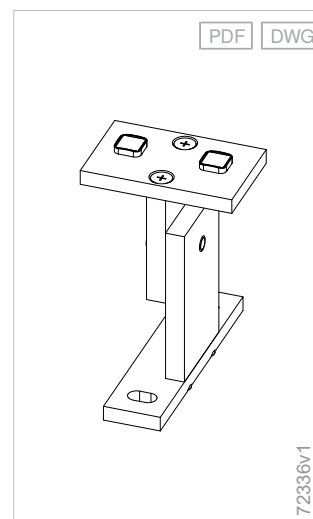
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Depth	120 mm

Field of application:

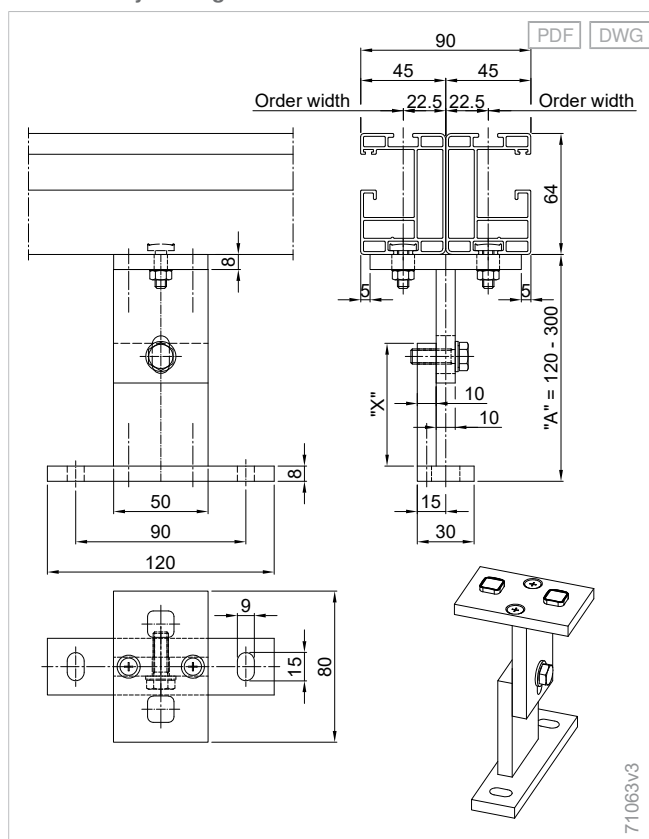
- W19
- W20
- D3

Suitable single bracket: H34

### Bracket no. 60



### Conservatory awning bracket 60 W19



### Bracket H62

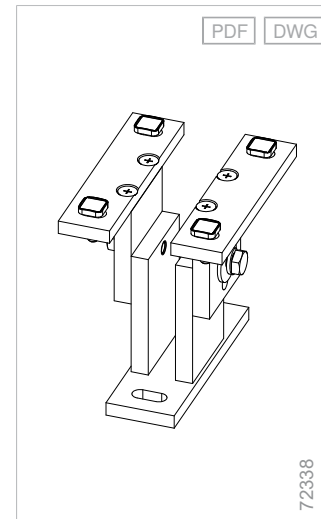
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	95 mm
Depth	120 mm

Field of application:

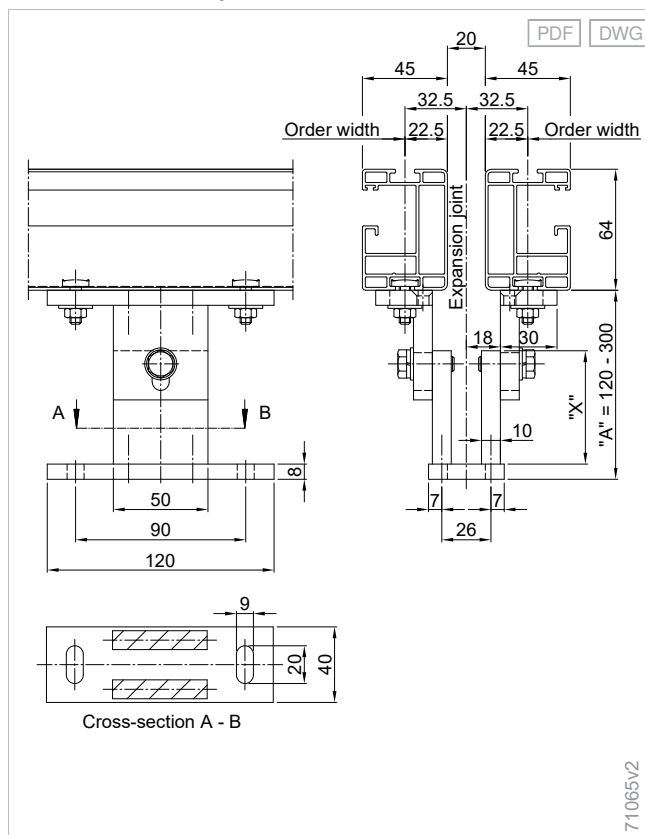
- W19
- W20
- D3

Suitable single bracket: H34

### Bracket no. 62



### Bracket no. 62, example W19



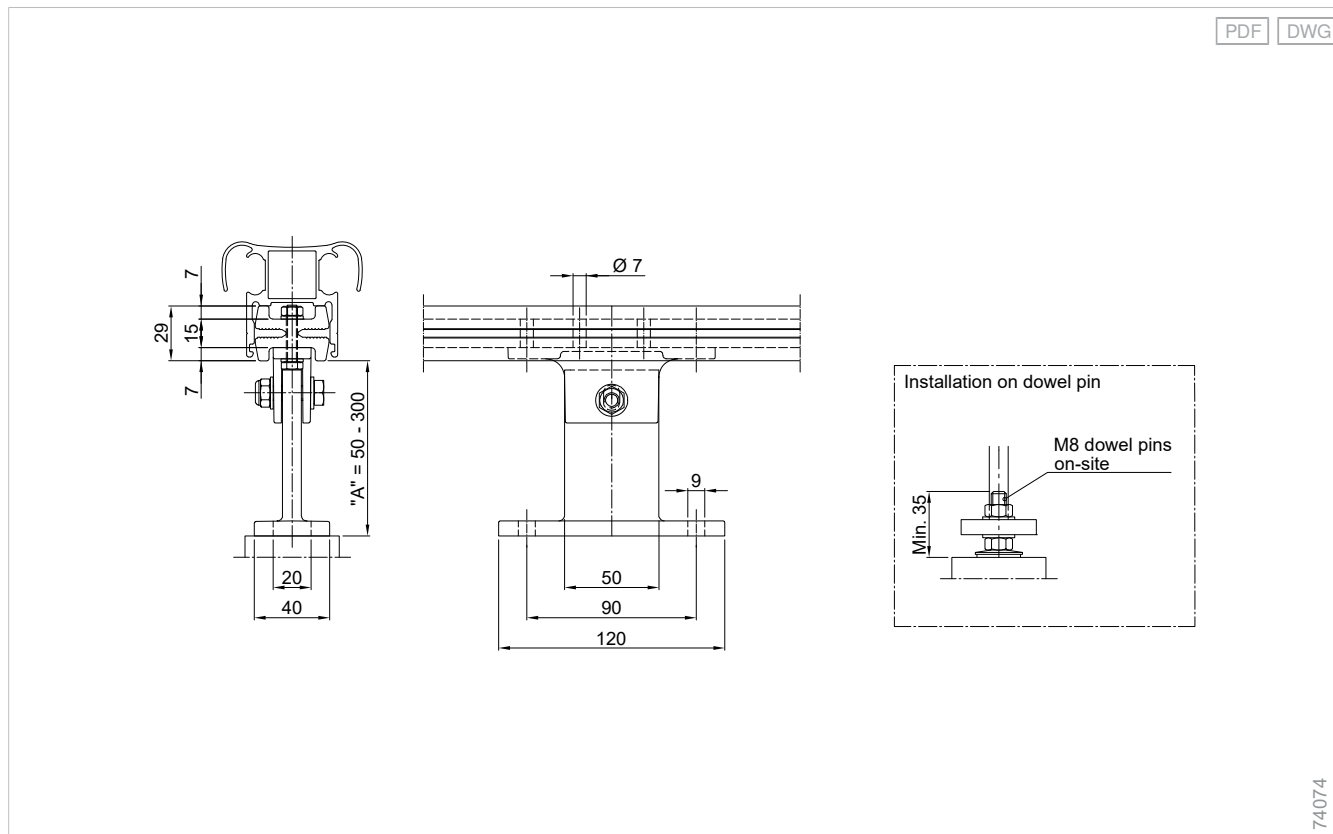
### Bracket H70

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Depth	120 mm

Field of application:

- W7

Elevation adjustable with bracket H70 - W7



### Bracket H81

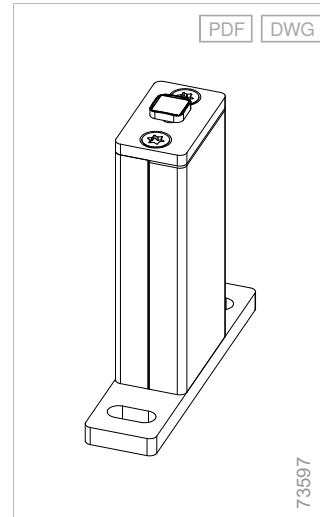
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	30 mm
Depth	120 mm

Field of application:

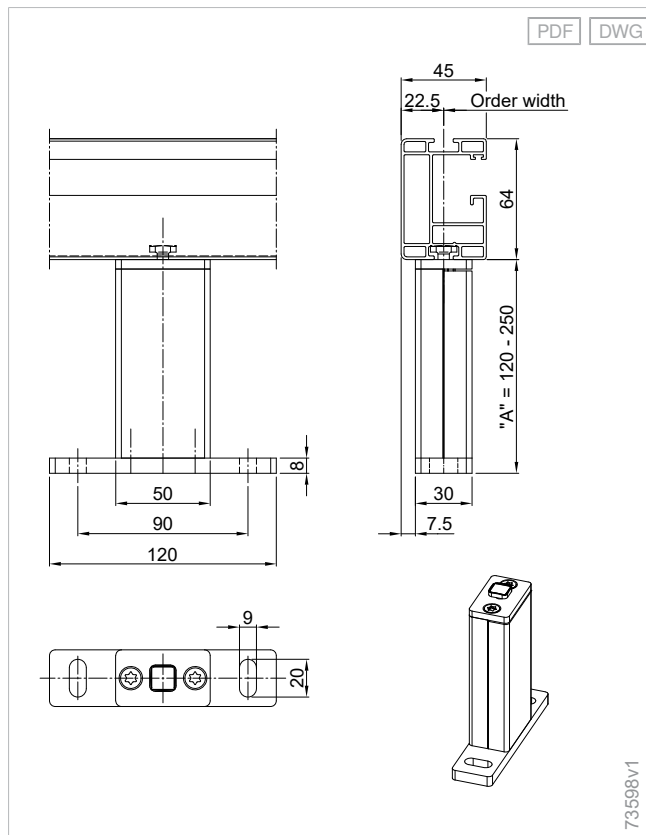
- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>
- W19
- W20
- D3

Suitable double bracket: H82

### Bracket no. 81



### Bracket no. 81, example W19



### Bracket H82

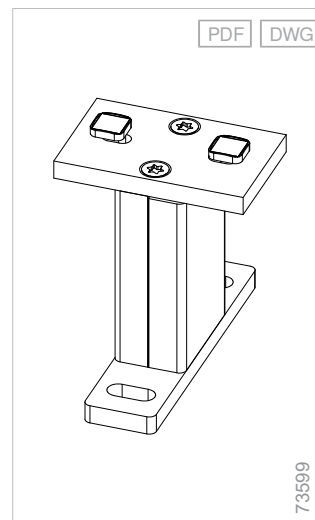
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Depth	120 mm

Field of application:

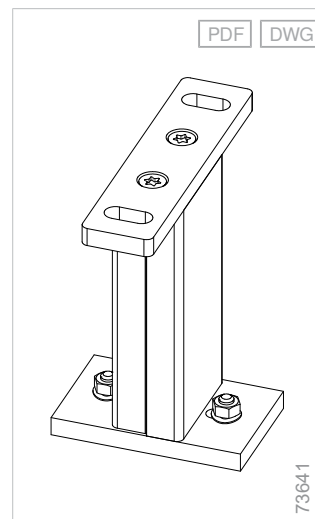
- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>
- W19
- W20

Suitable single bracket: H81

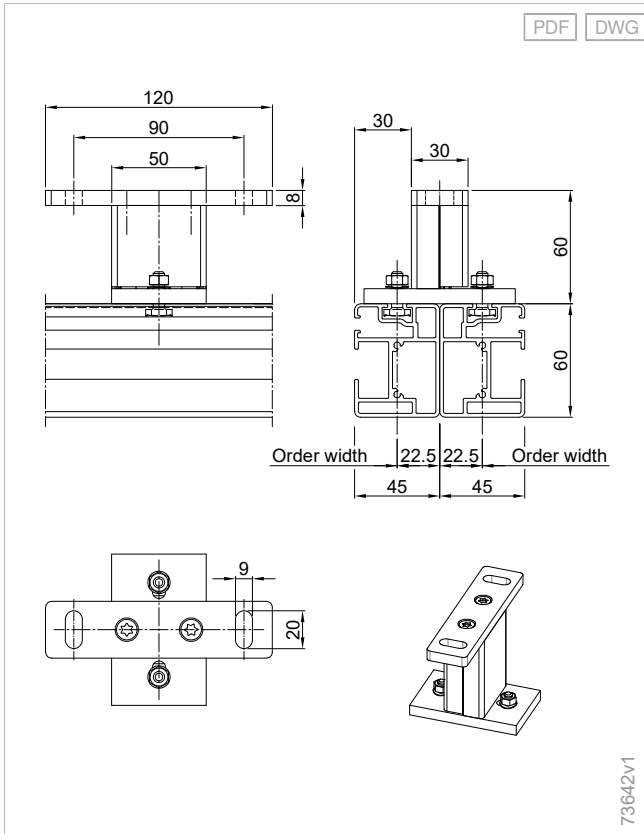
### Bracket no. 82



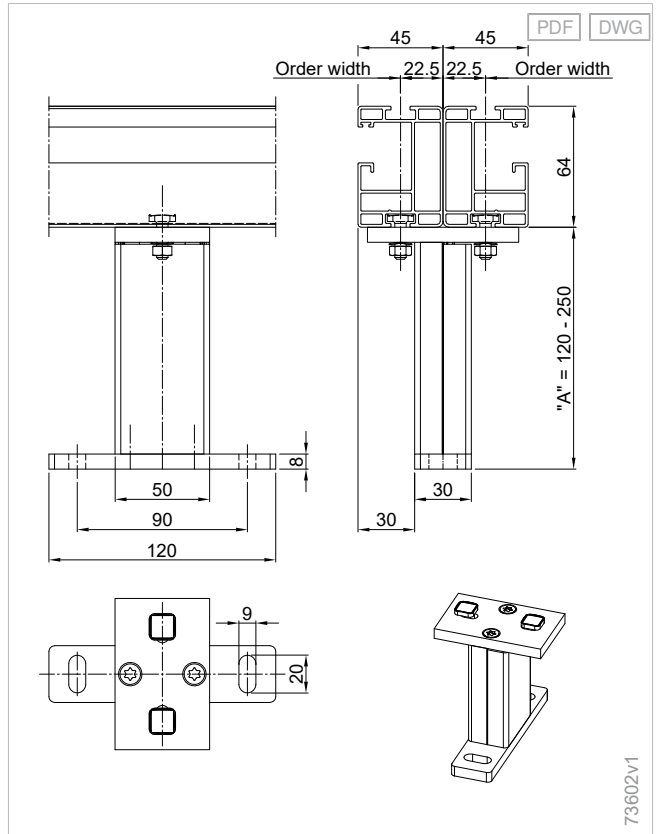
### Bracket no. 82: Connection to Solarlux patio roof with light rail; double bracket



Bracket no. 82, example W10



Bracket no. 82, example W19



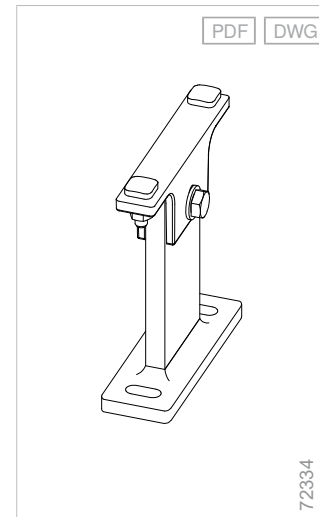
### Bracket H101

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Depth	120 mm

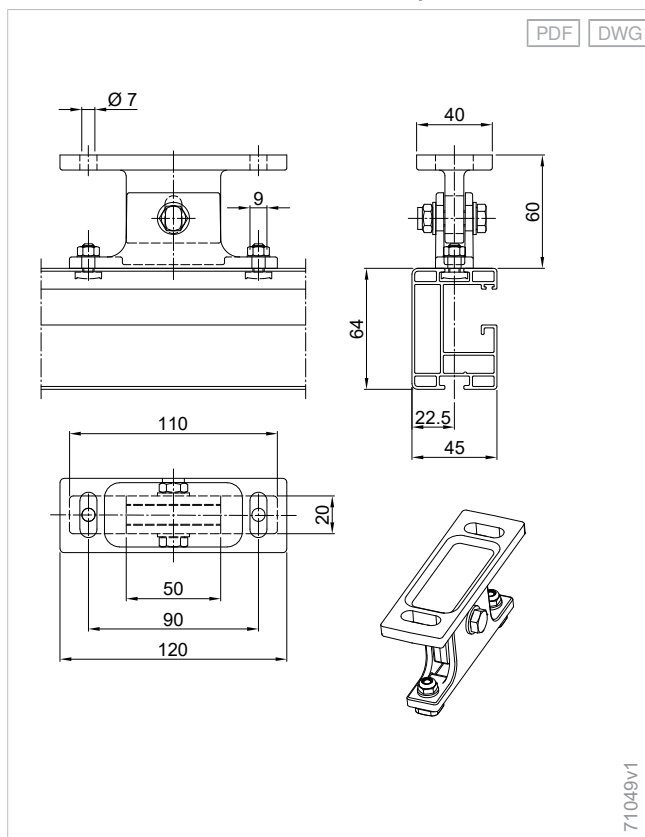
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>
- W19
- W20
- D3

### Bracket no. H101

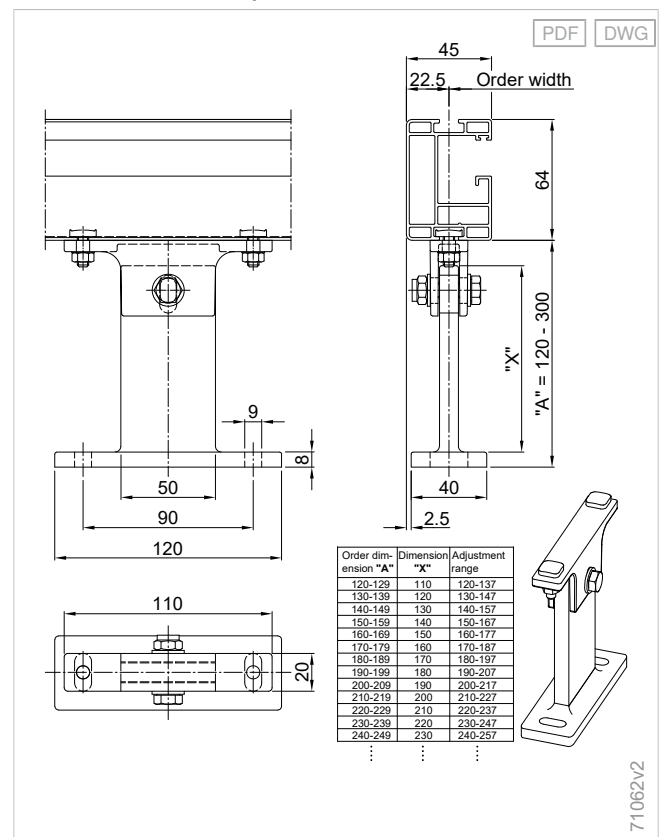


### Bracket no. H101, distance 60 mm, example W9



71049v1

### Bracket no. H101, example W19



71062v2

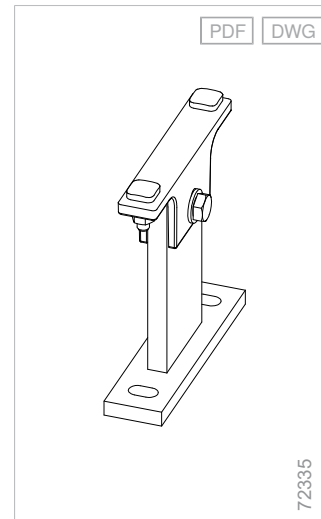
## Bracket H102

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	30 mm
Depth	110 mm

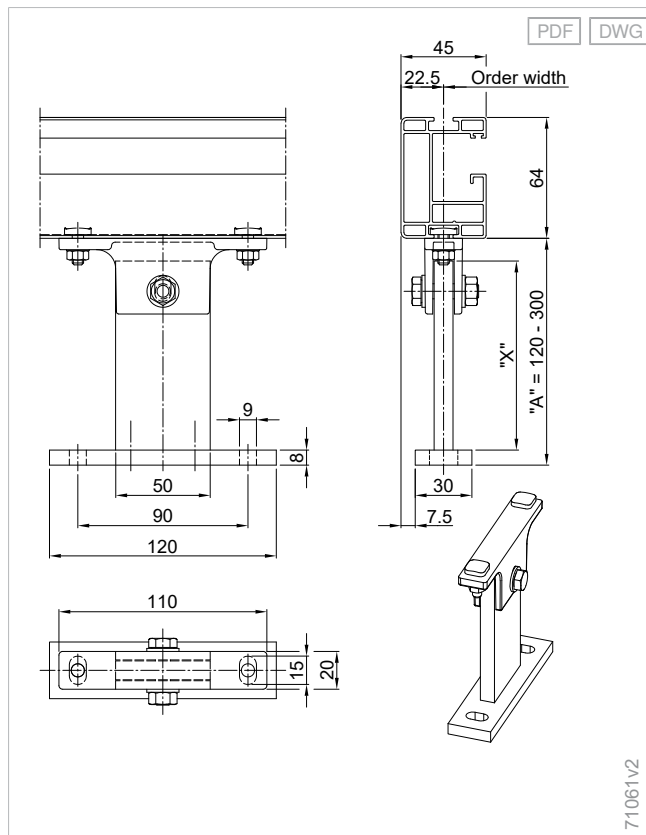
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>
- W19
- W20
- D3

## Bracket no. H102

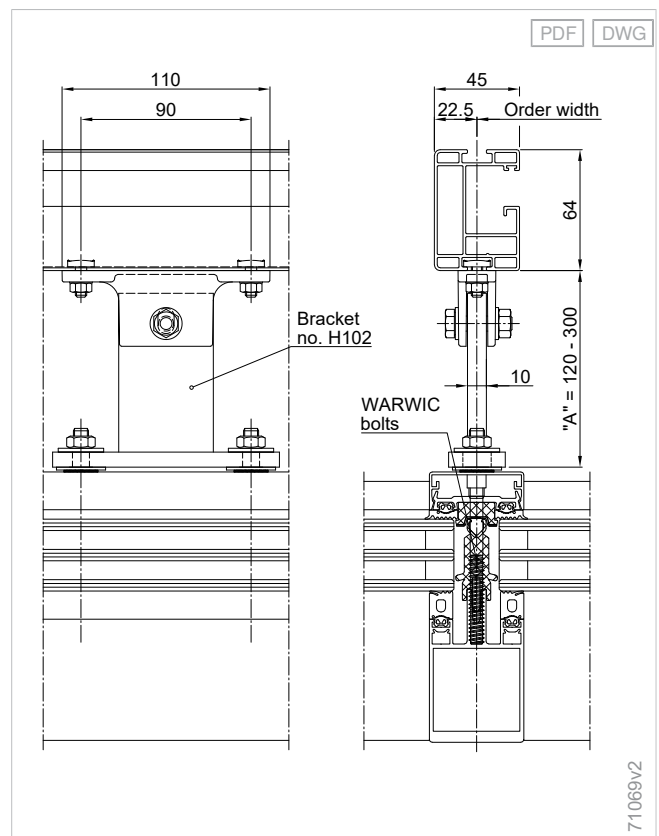


## Bracket no. H102, example W19



71061v2

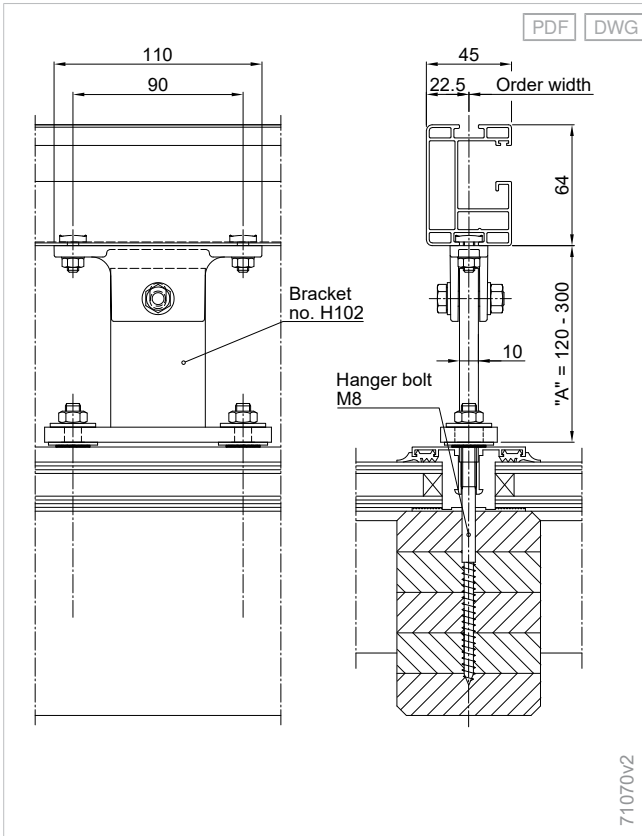
## Guide rail fixation with WARWIC bolts for transom and mullion facade - D3



71069v2



Guide rail fixation with hanger bolt



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

### Bracket SL06

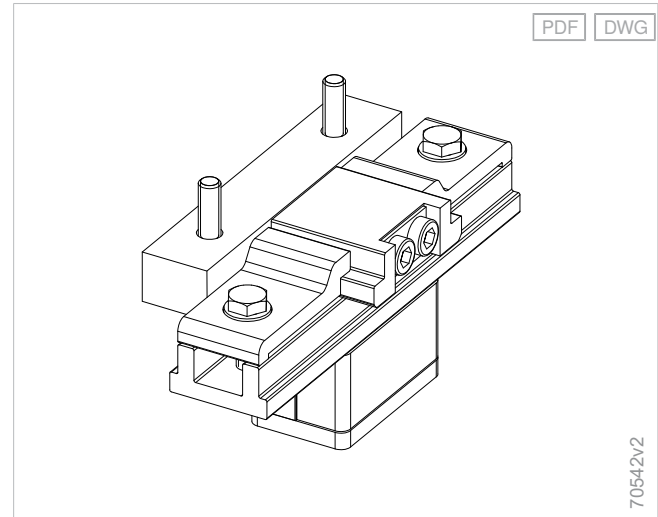
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	55 mm
Height	59 mm
Depth	130 mm

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium without lateral glazing; with light rail on patio roof

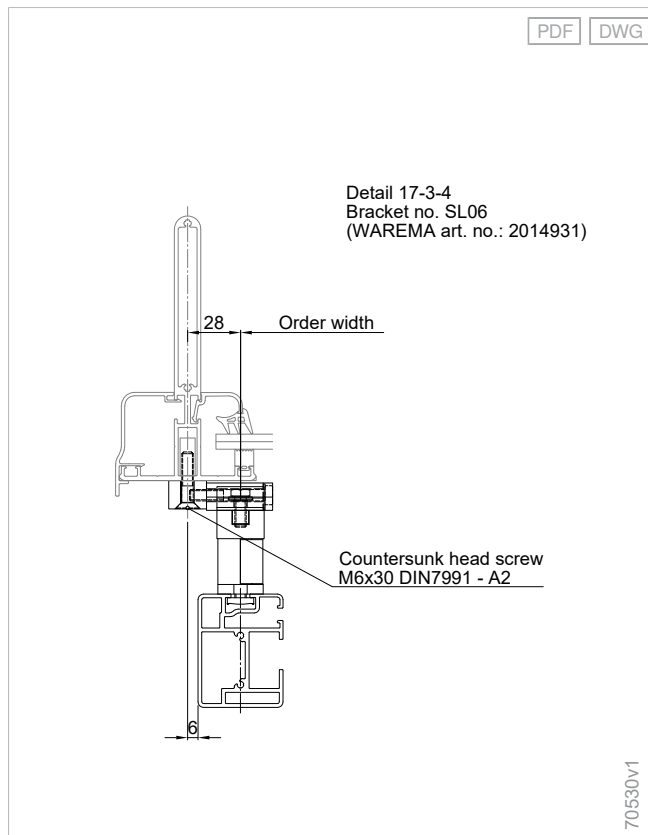
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket SL06



### Bracket SL06, example W10



### Bracket SL09

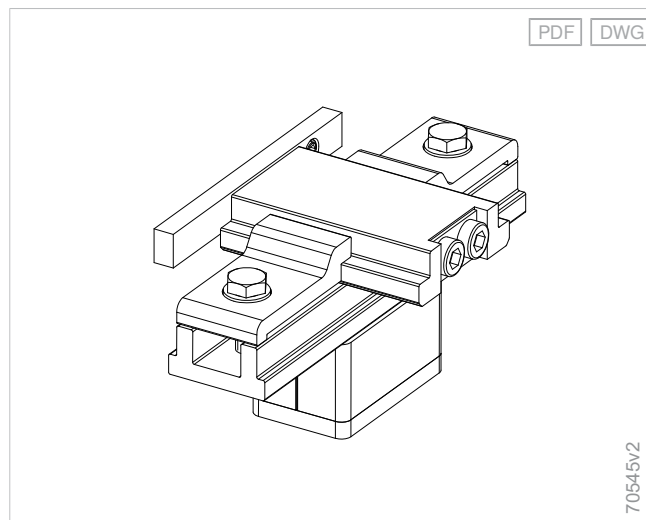
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	74 mm
Height	59 mm
Depth	130 mm

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing and light rail

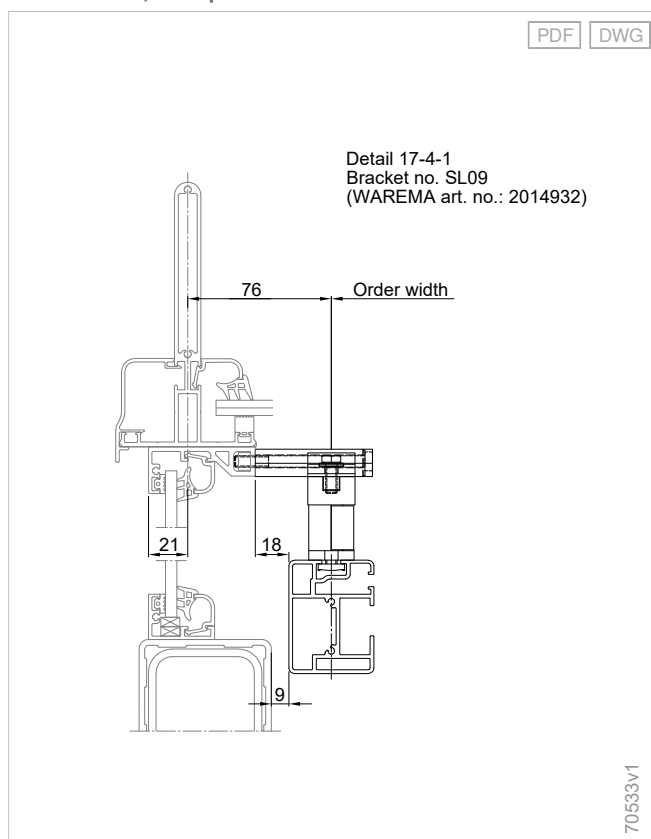
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket SL09



### Bracket SL09, example W10



### Bracket SL10

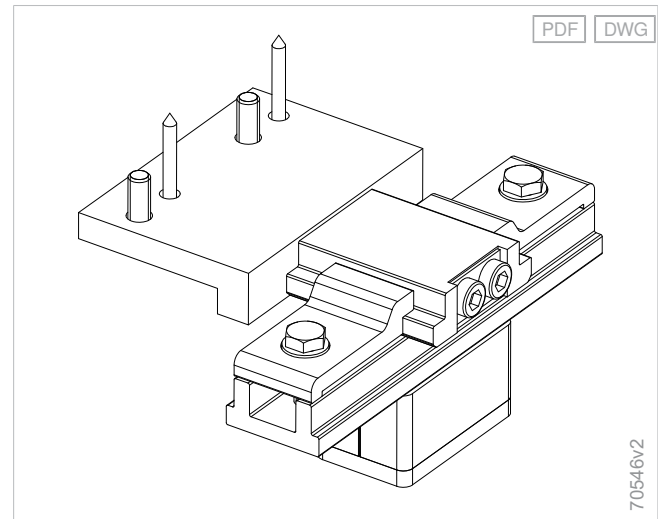
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	105 mm
Height	60 mm
Depth	130 mm

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing and light rail

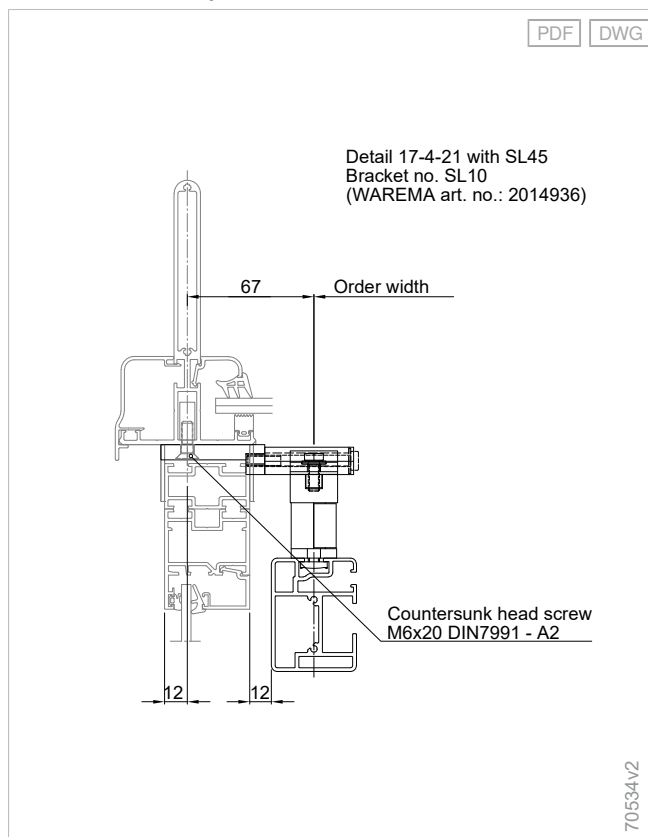
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket SL10



### Bracket SL10, example W10



# Guide rail bracket - direct installation

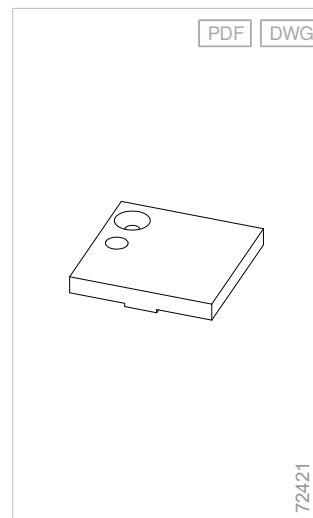
## Bracket H48

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	6.5 mm
Depth	40 mm

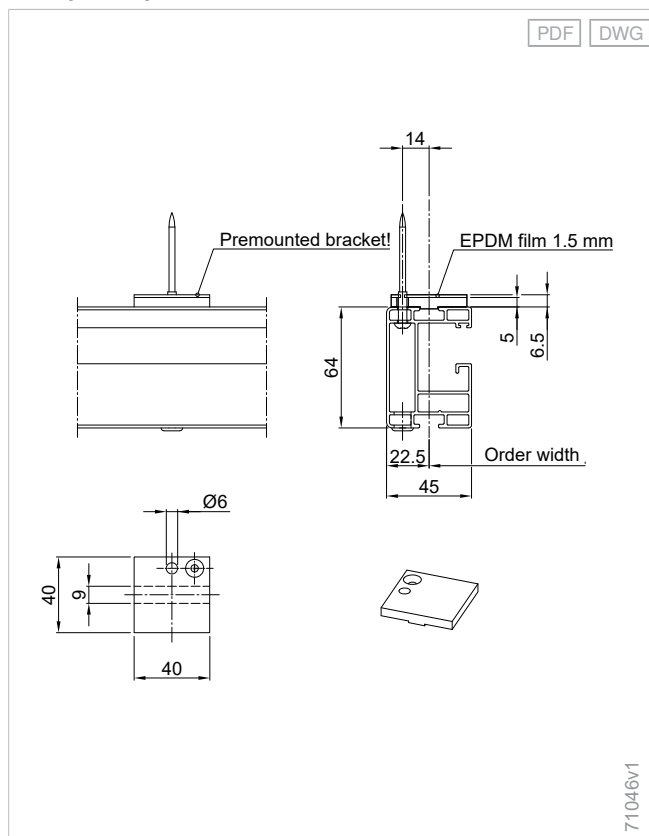
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

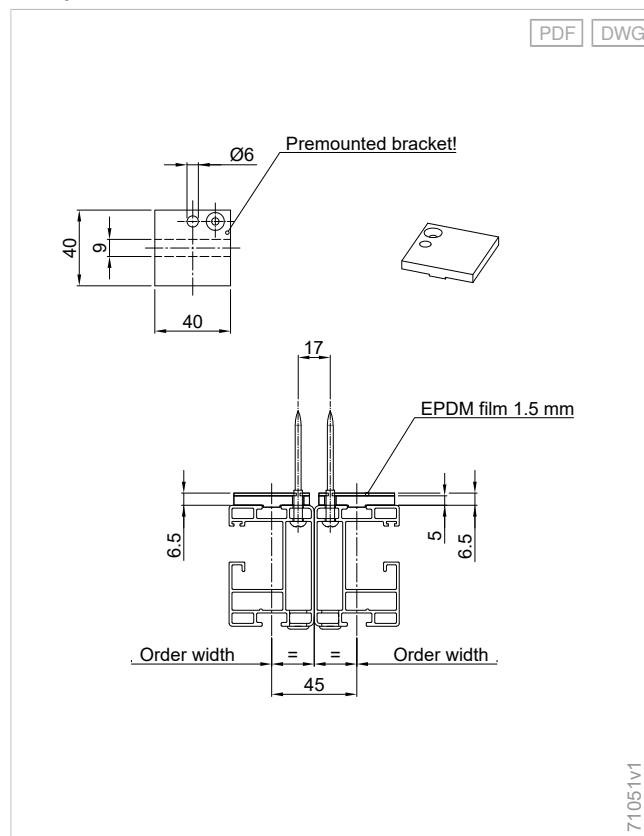
## Bracket no. 48



Bracket no. 48, distance 6.5 mm, installed on guide rail at the factory, example W9



Bracket no. 48, series-mounted units, distance 6.5 mm, example W9



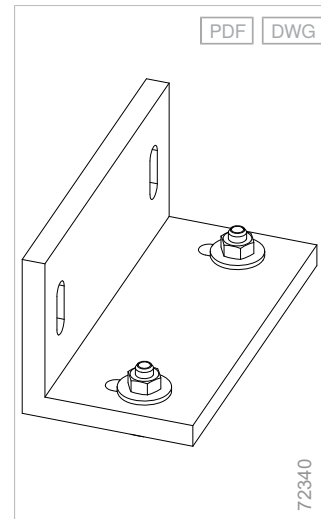
### Bracket H52

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	60 mm
Depth	120 mm

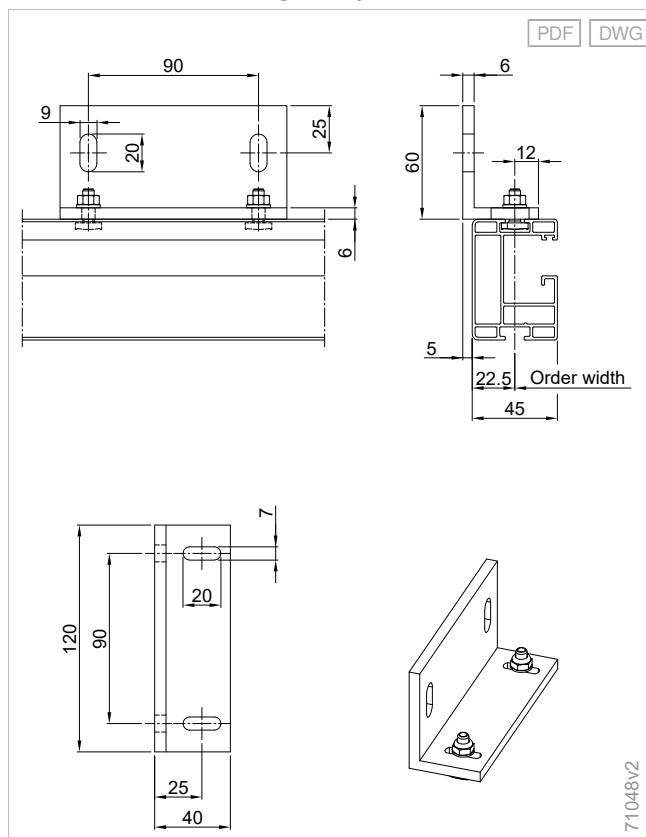
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket no. 52



### Bracket no. 52, lateral fixing, example W9



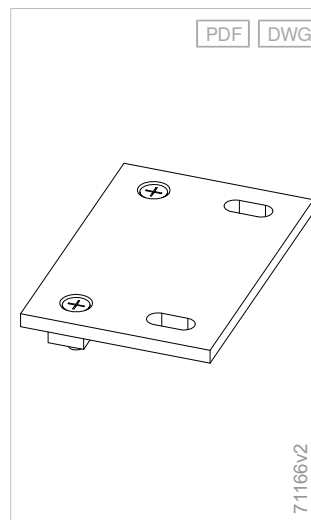
### Bracket H53

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	80 mm
Height	6 mm
Depth	120 mm

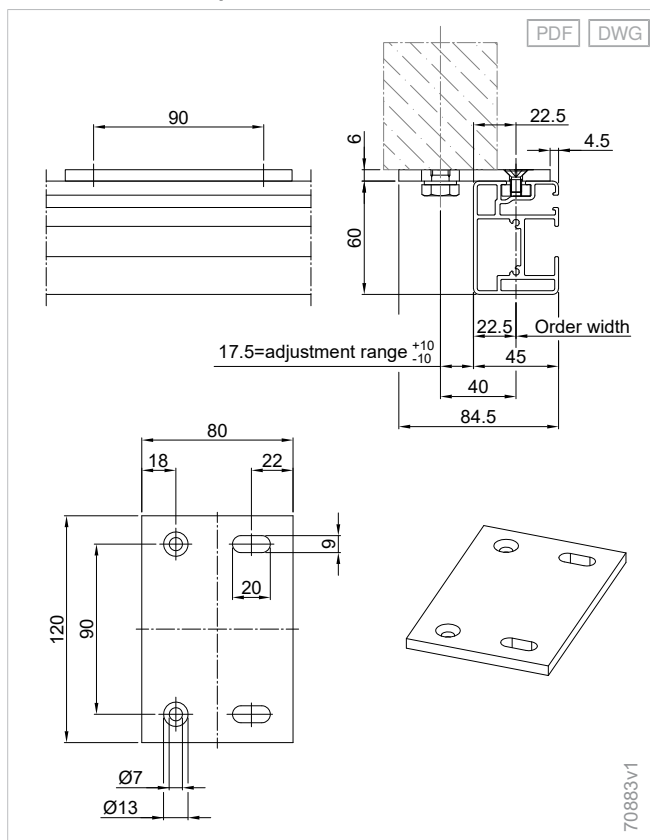
Field of application:

- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket no. 53



### Bracket no. 53, example W10, W10<sup>2</sup>



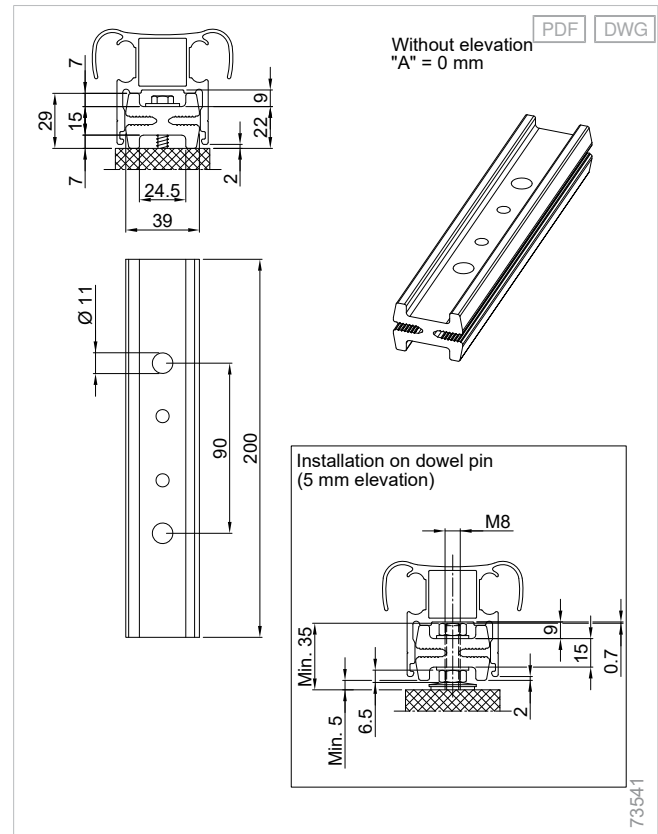
## Bracket H72

Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	39 mm
Height	29 mm
Depth	200 mm

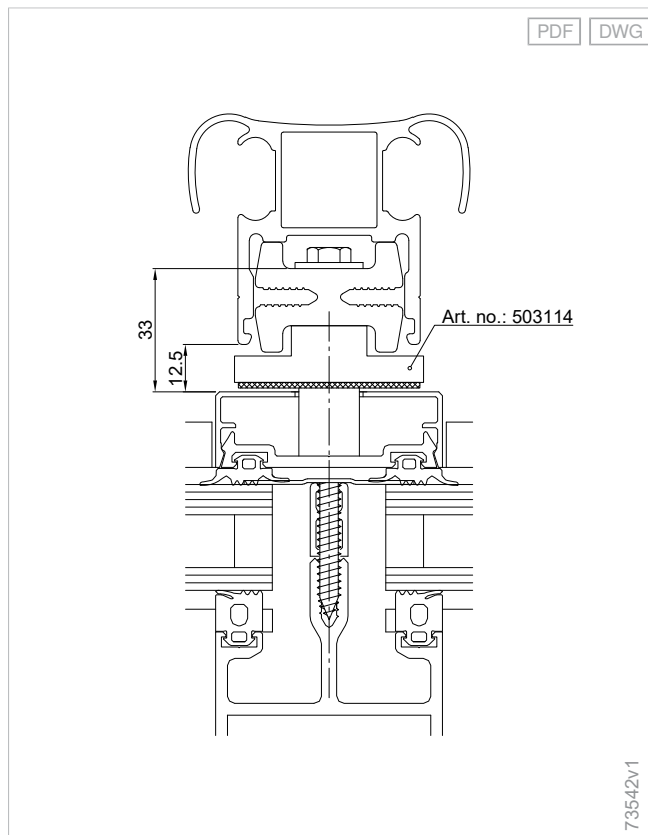
Field of application:

- W7

## Bracket no. 72



## Bracket no. 72; application example





### Bracket SL01

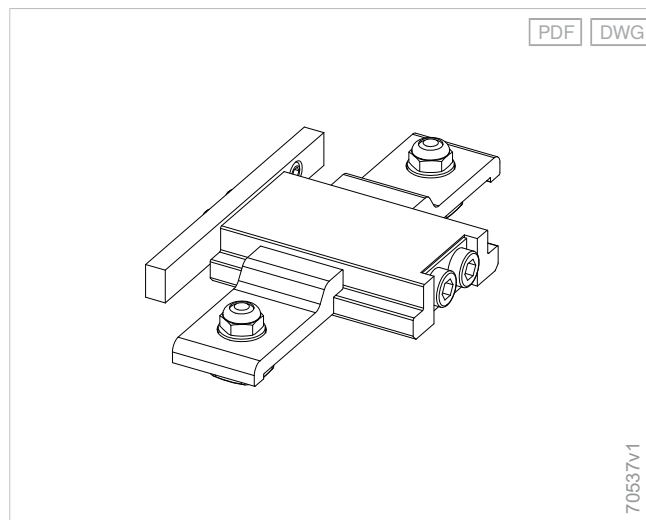
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	74 mm
Height	21 mm
Depth	130 mm

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing

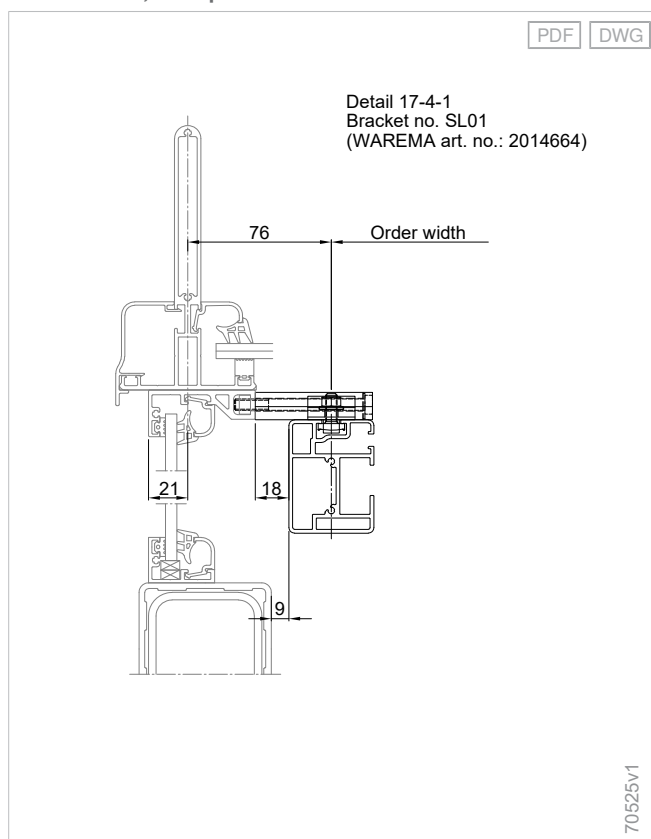
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket SL01



### Bracket SL01, example W10



### Bracket SL02

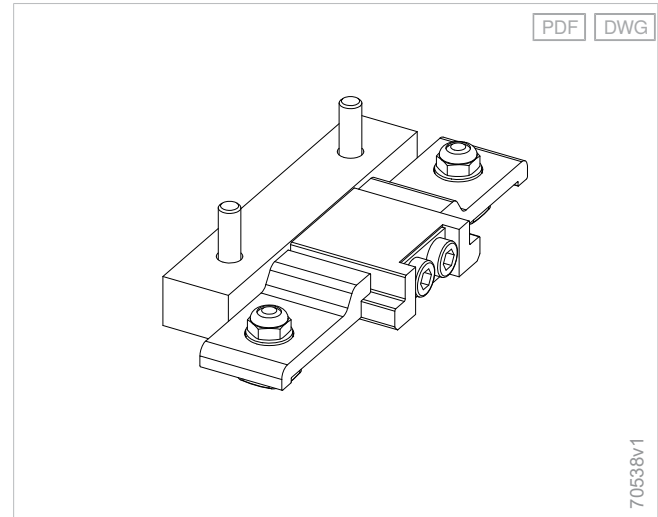
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	55 mm
Height	21 mm
Depth	130 mm

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium without lateral glazing

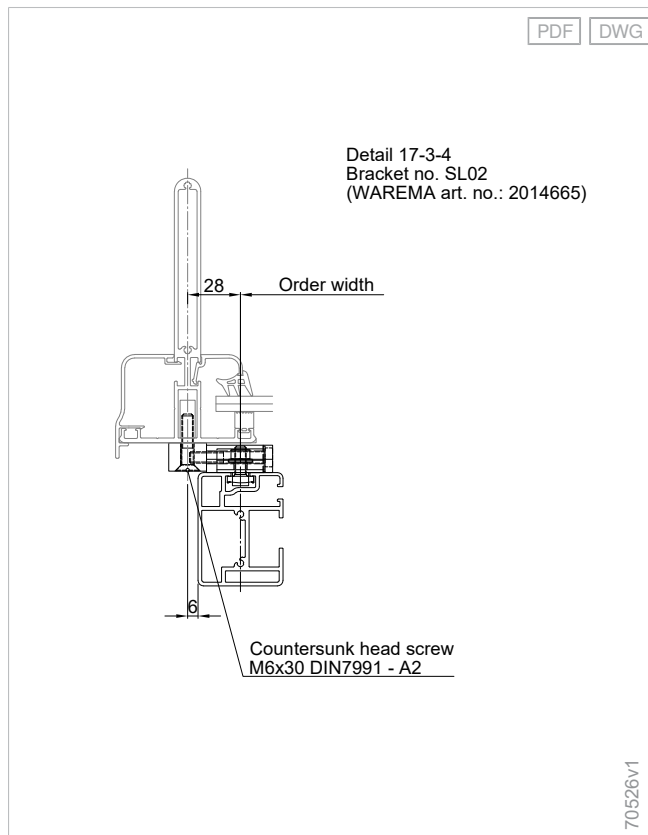
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket SL02



### Bracket SL02, example W10



### Bracket SL03

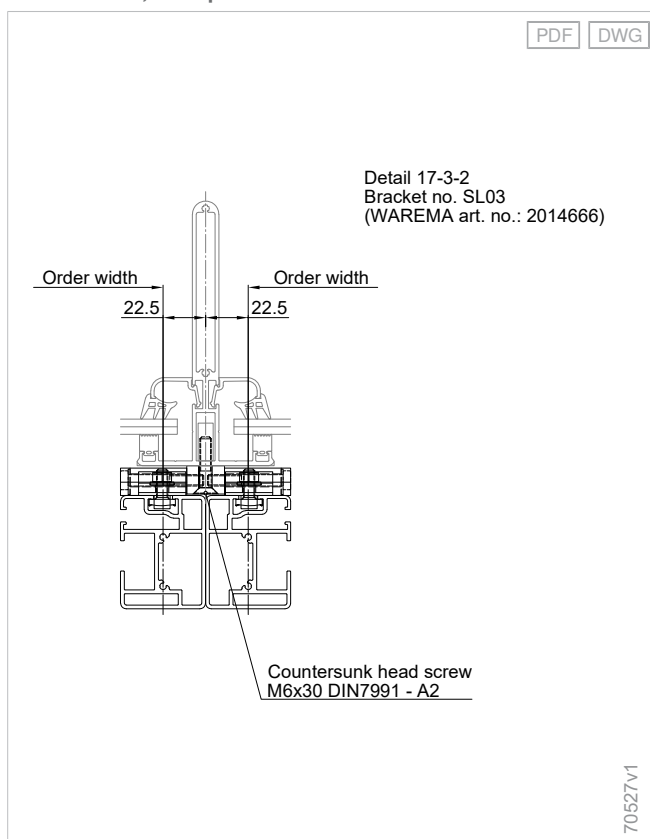
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	90 mm
Height	21 mm
Depth	130 mm

- Attachment to Solarlux patio roof atrium without lateral glazing
- Attachment to Solarlux patio roof Alerio/Ameo for series-mounted units with large middle rafter

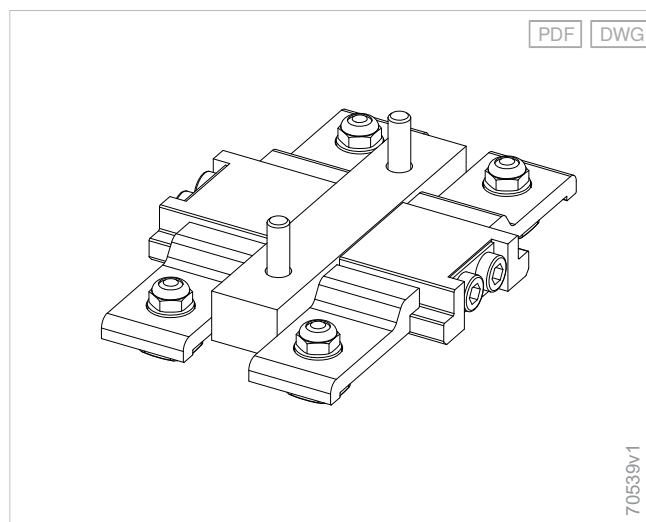
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket SL03, example W10



### Bracket SL03



### Bracket SL04

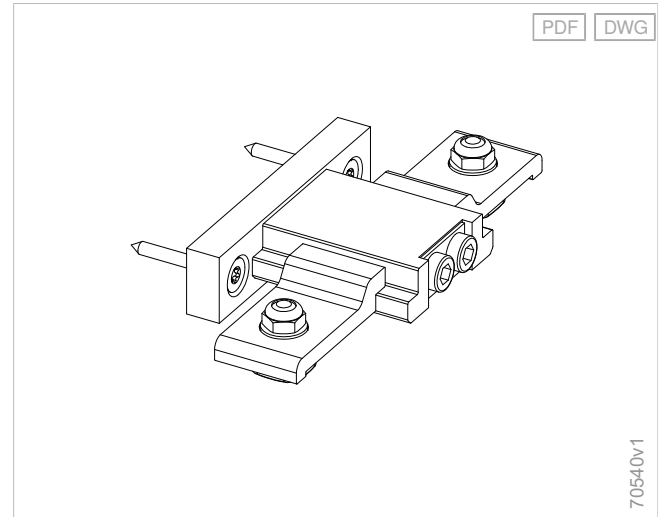
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	60 mm
Height	22 mm
Depth	130 mm

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing SL22

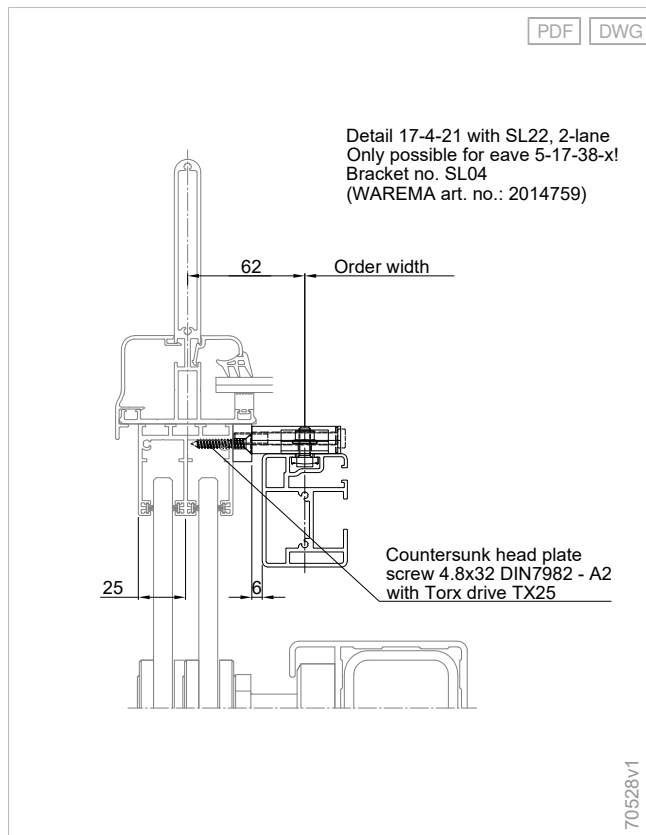
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket SL04



### Bracket SL04, example W10



### Bracket SL05

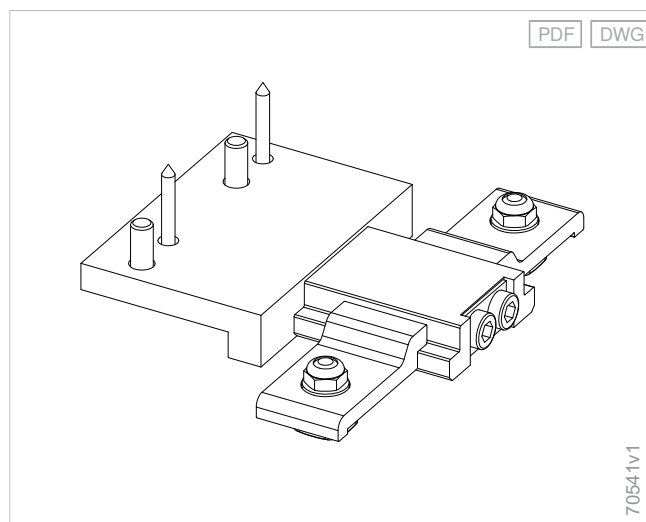
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	105 mm
Height	22 mm
Depth	130 mm

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing SL45

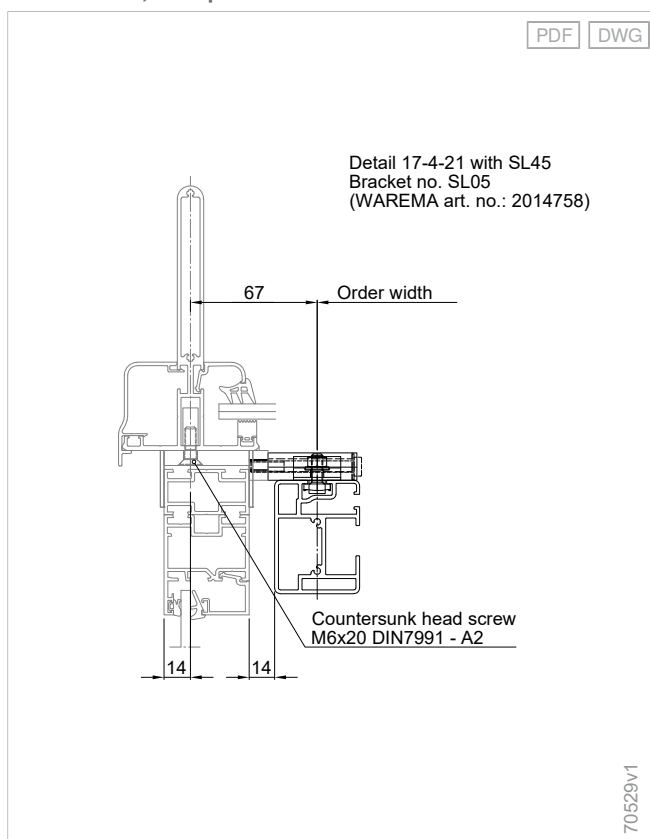
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket SL05



### Bracket SL05, example W10



### Bracket SL11

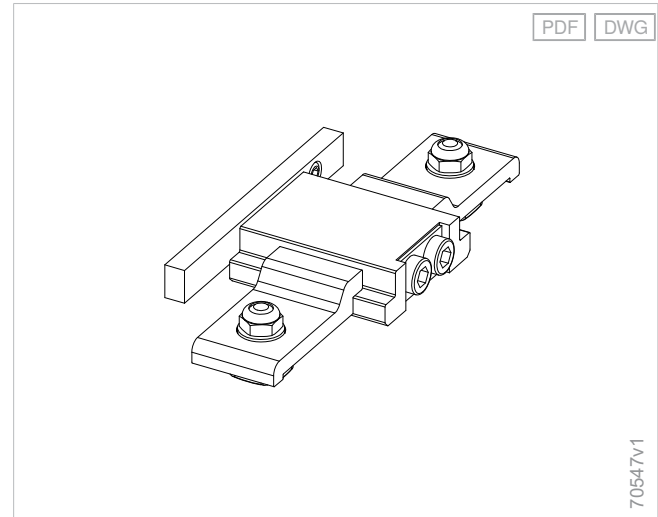
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	60 mm
Height	21 mm
Depth	130 mm

Connection to Solarlux patio roof atrium with lateral glazing on lower rafter or in case of surrounding cover panel

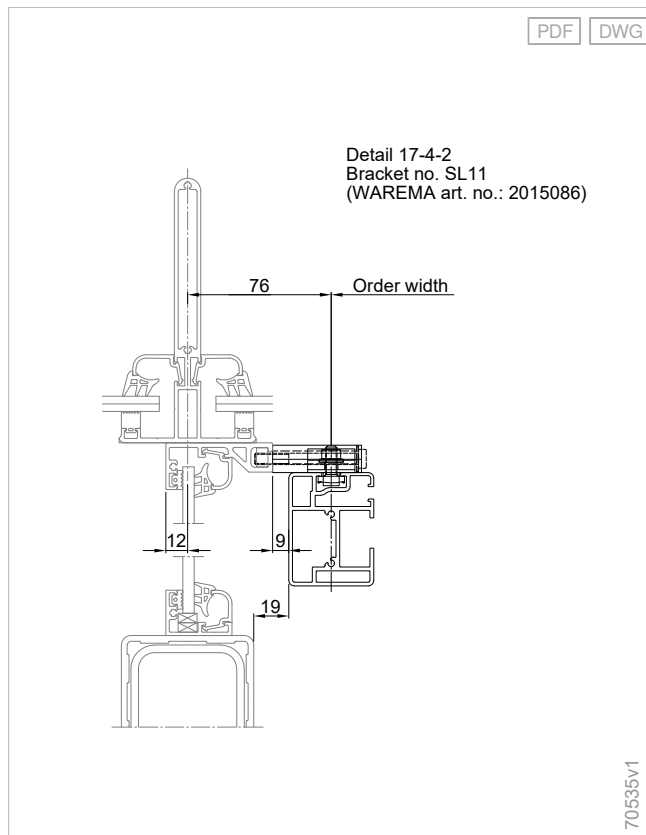
Field of application:

- W9
- W10
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket SL11



### Bracket SL11, example W10



### Bracket SL12

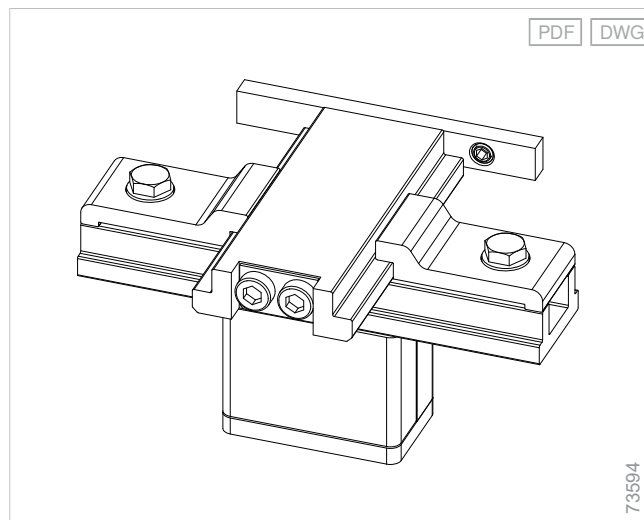
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	94 mm
Height	69 mm
Depth	130 mm

Attachment to Solarlux patio roof Alerio/Ameo independent of the size of the middle rafter

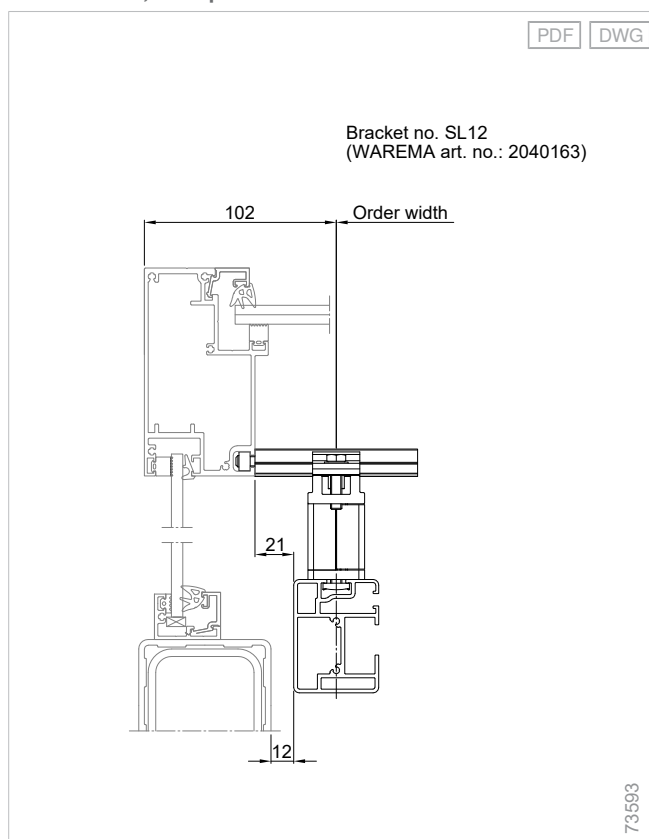
Field of application:

- W9
- W10 (round and rectangular cover panel)
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket SL12



### Bracket SL12, example W10



### Bracket SL13

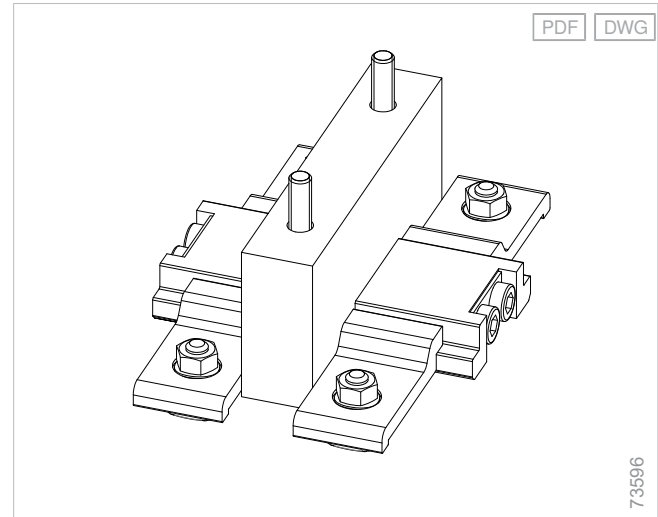
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	90 mm
Height	51.5 mm
Depth	130 mm

Attachment to Solarlux patio roof Alerio/Ameo for series-mounted units with small middle rafter

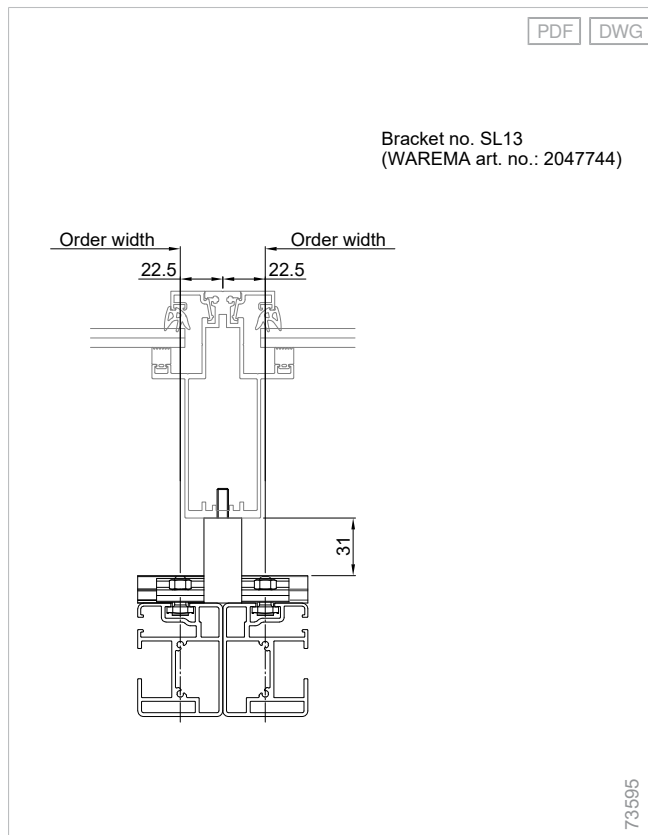
Field of application:

- W9
- W10 (round and rectangular cover panel)
- W10<sup>2</sup>

### Bracket SL13



### Bracket SL13, example W10





# Bracket

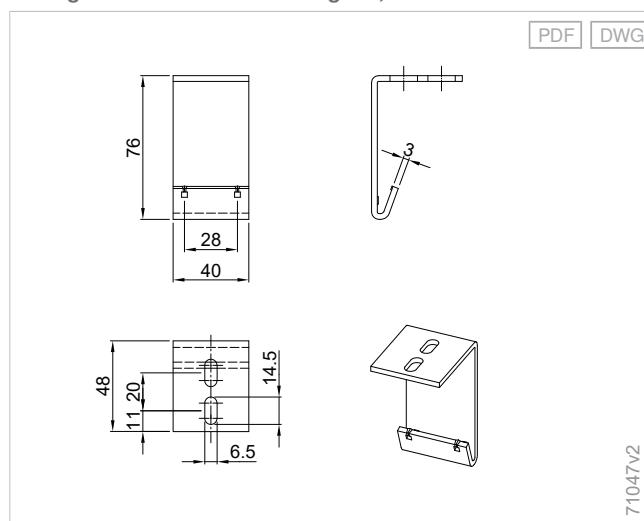
## Ceiling bracket 76 round/rectangular

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	76 mm
Depth	48 mm

Field of application:

- Bracket H48
- Bracket H52
- Bracket H53

## Ceiling bracket 76 round/rectangular, distance 6.5 mm



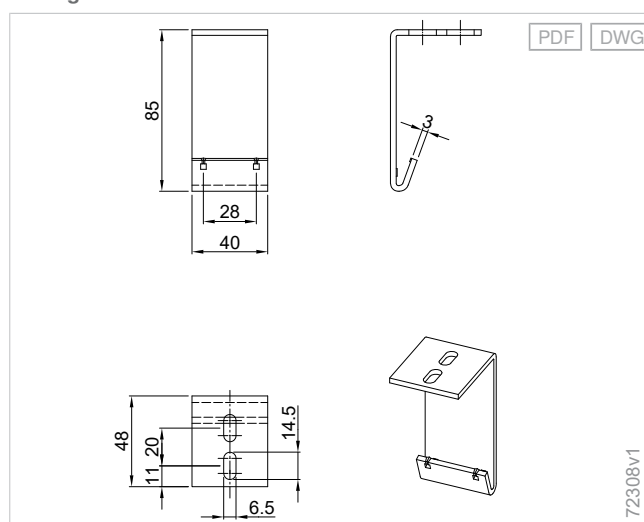
## Ceiling bracket SL85 round

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	85 mm
Depth	48 mm

Field of application:

- Bracket SL01
- Bracket SL02
- Bracket SL03
- Bracket SL04
- Bracket SL05
- Bracket SL11

## Ceiling bracket SL85 round



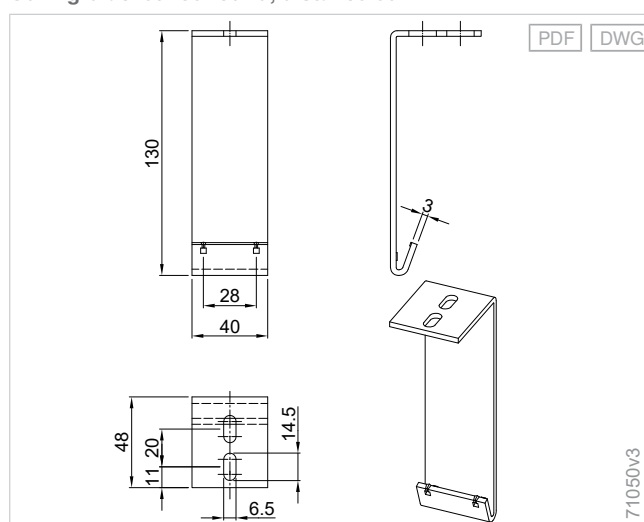
## Ceiling bracket 130 round

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	130 mm
Depth	48 mm

Field of application:

- Bracket H31
- Bracket H49
- Bracket H61
- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102
- Bracket SL06
- Bracket SL09
- Bracket SL10

## Ceiling bracket 130 round, distance 60 mm



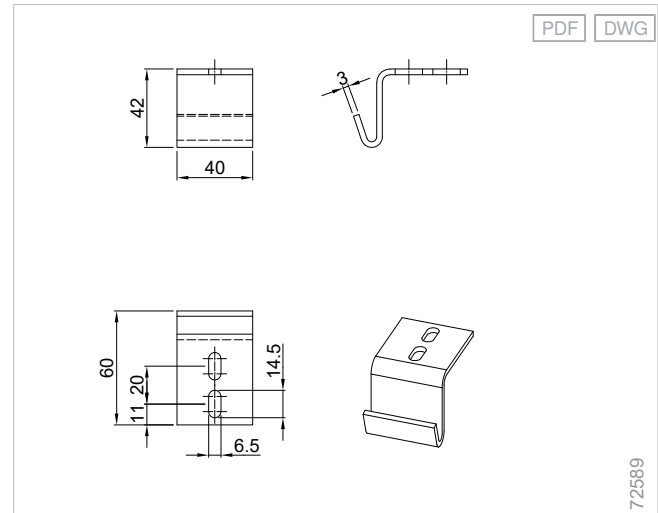
### Ceiling bracket 42 rectangular

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	42 mm
Depth	60 mm

Field of application:

- Bracket H48
- Bracket H52
- Bracket H53

### Ceiling bracket 42 rectangular, distance 6.5 mm - W10 rectangular cover panel



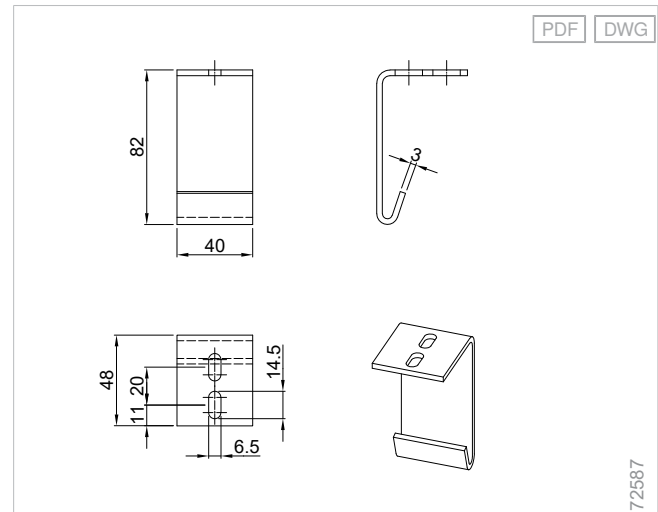
### Ceiling bracket 82 rectangular

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	82 mm
Depth	48 mm

Field of application:

- Bracket H101
- Bracket H102

### Ceiling bracket 82 rectangular, distance 60 mm - W10 rectangular cover panel



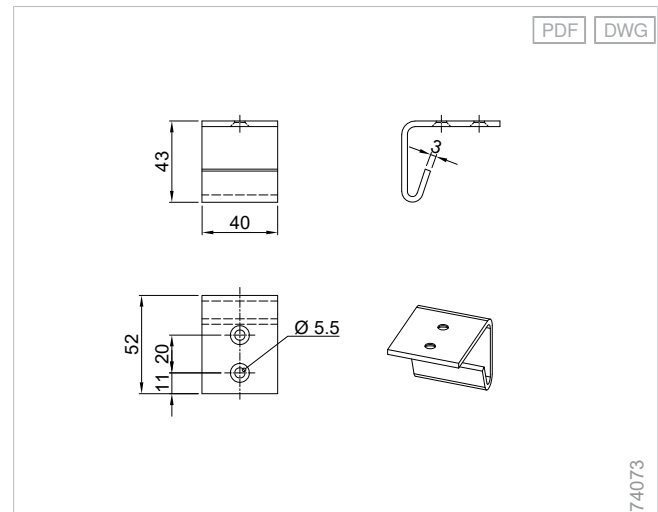
### Ceiling bracket 43 rectangular

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	43 mm
Depth	52 mm

Field of application:

- SL01
- SL02
- SL03
- SL04
- SL05
- SL11

### Ceiling bracket 52x43mm, W10 SL43 rectangular



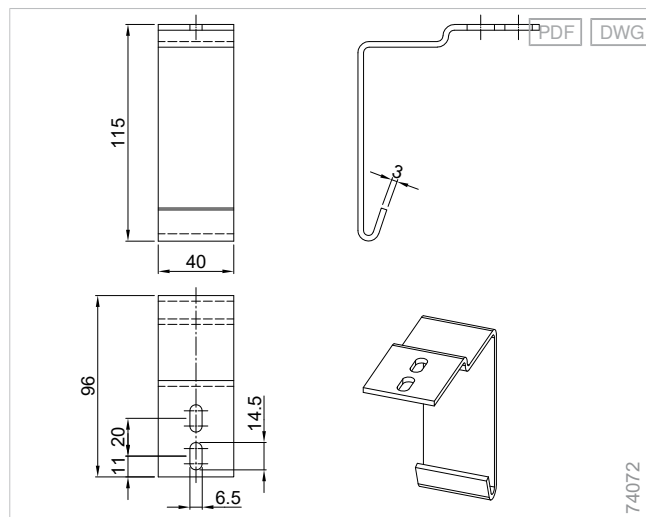
### Ceiling bracket 115 rectangular

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	49 mm
Height	115 mm
Depth	96 mm

Field of application:

- SL06
- SL09
- SL10
- SL12
- SL13

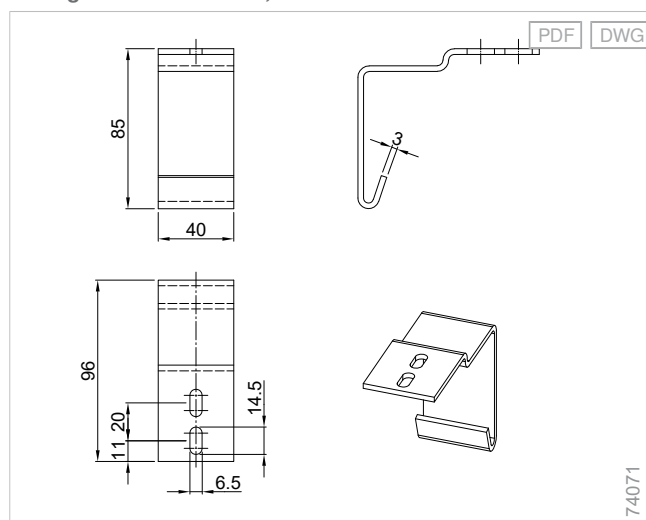
### Ceiling bracket 96x115mm, W10 SL106 round



### Ceiling bracket 85 rectangular

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	85 mm
Depth	96 mm

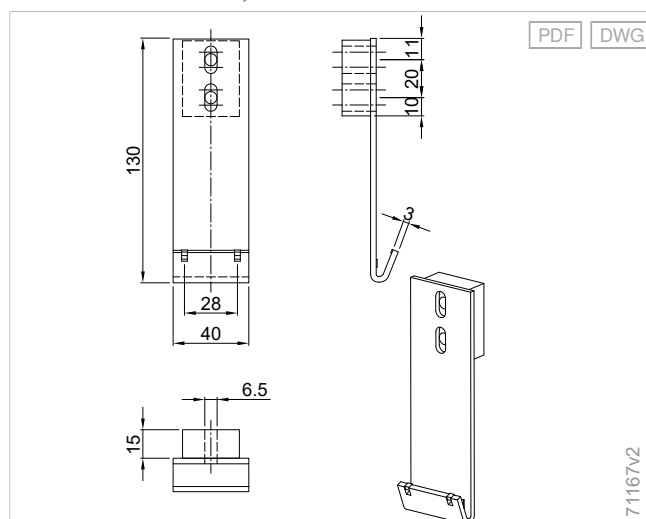
### Ceiling bracket 96x85mm, W10 SL76 round



### Wall bracket 130 round

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	130 mm
Depth	18 mm

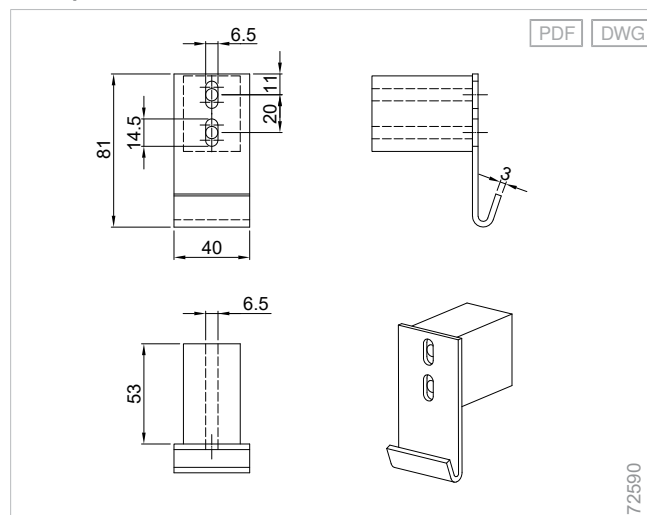
### Wall bracket 130 round, installation in the reveal



### Wall bracket 82 rectangular

Material	Galvanised steel
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	81 mm
Depth	68 mm

### Wall bracket 82 rectangular, distance 60 mm - W10 rectangular cover panel



# Adapter

## Adapter for installation on Solarlux patio roof atrium with large rafters

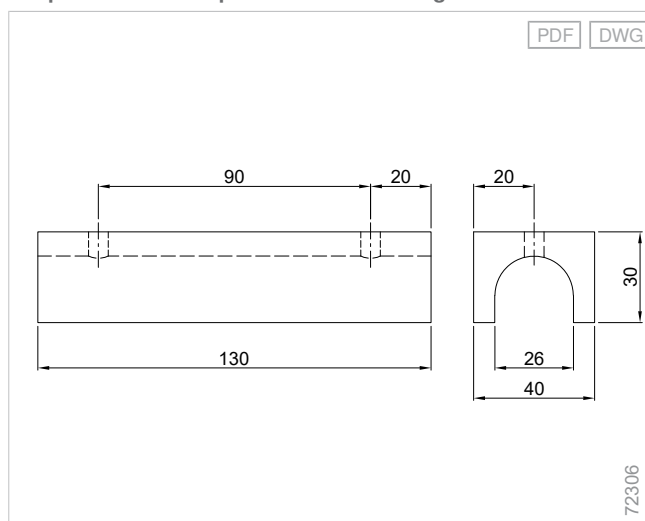
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	30 mm
Depth	130 mm

For installation of guide rail bracket on Solarlux patio roof atrium with large rafters.

Field of application:

- W7
- W19
- W20
- D3

Adapter for Solarlux patio roof atrium - large rafters



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio side screens

Climara

Supplementary accessories

Components

Drive variants

Standards

**Adapter for installation on Solarlux patio roof atrium with small rafters**

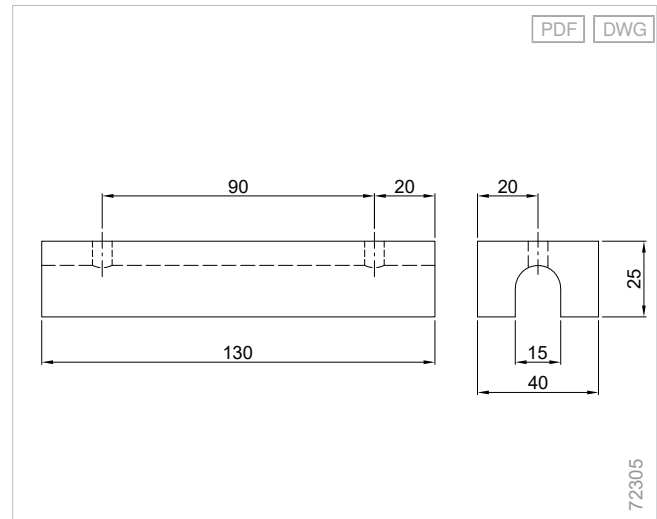
Material	Aluminium
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	40 mm
Height	25 mm
Depth	130 mm

For installation of guide rail bracket on Solarlux patio roof atrium with small rafters.

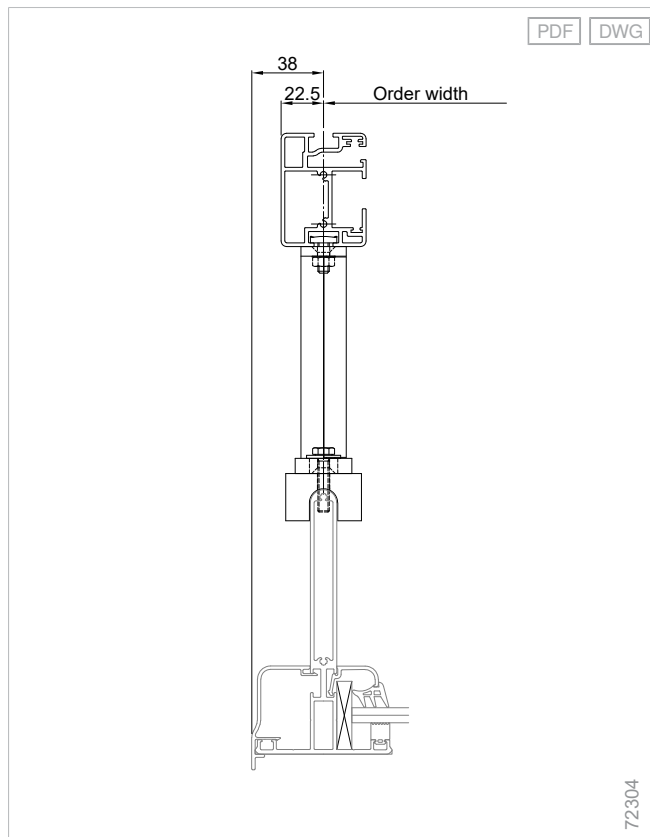
Field of application:

- W7
- W19
- W20
- D3

**Adapter for Solarlux patio roof atrium - small rafters**



**Installation on Solarlux patio roof atrium, small rafters - Example W20**







## Guide variants

### Guide rails for window awnings

Guide rails stand for:

High wind stability

High durability

Low noise emissions

#### Highlight:

With our guide rails with plastic clip profiles, three guide options are possible thanks to the use of the same guide profiles combined with two different clip profiles:

- easyZIP guidance
- Rail guidance
- Markisolette

This means we also reduce your assembly time and make refurbishment of the fabric shaft easy.



#### Product characteristics

- **Shapes:** The most diverse profiles can be integrated into any facade
- **Colours:** All colours in the WAREMA Colour World, and other colours on request
- **Installation:** the right fixing variant for every facade type

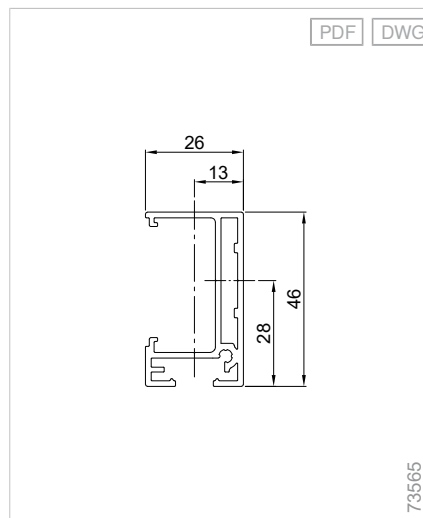


# Guide rail with plastic clip profile

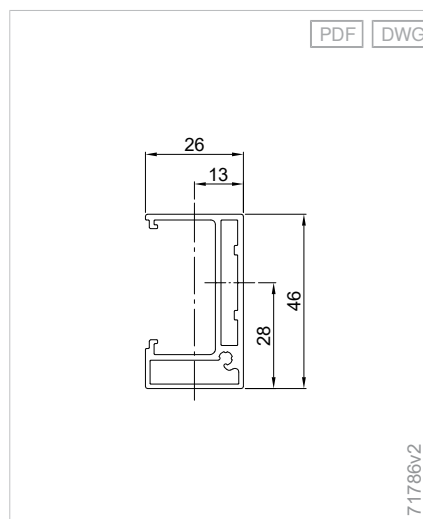
## Guide rail 26x46

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised
Width	26 mm
Depth	46 mm

## Guide rail 26x46-C



## Guide rail 26x46-G



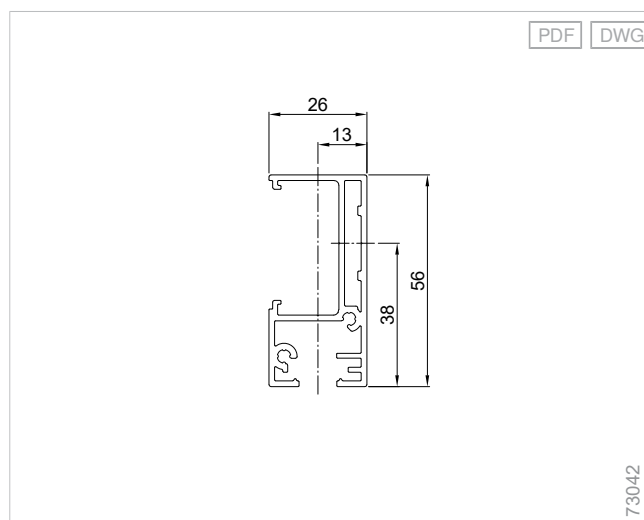
## Guide rail 26x56-C

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised
Width	26 mm
Depth	56 mm

End closure:

- Aluminium end closures for guide rails

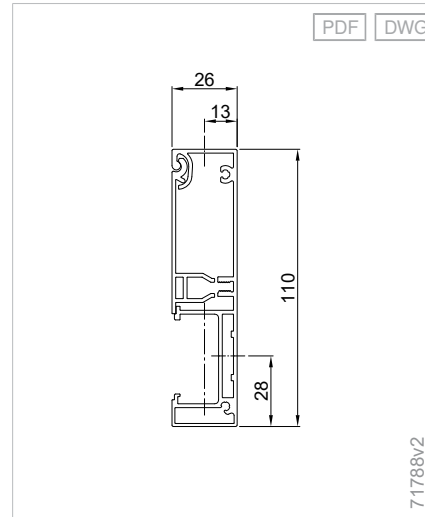
## Guide rail 26x56-C



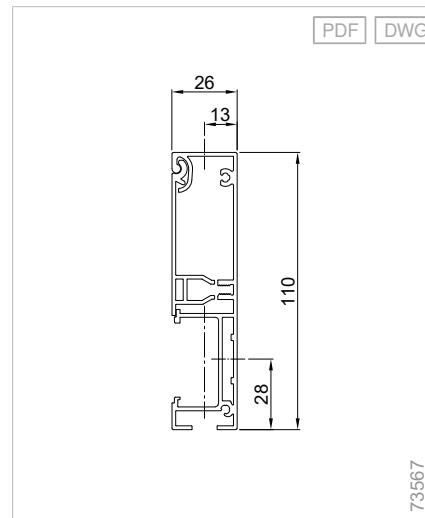
### Guide rail T-26x110-G

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised
Width	26 mm
Depth	110 mm

### Guide rail T-26x110-G



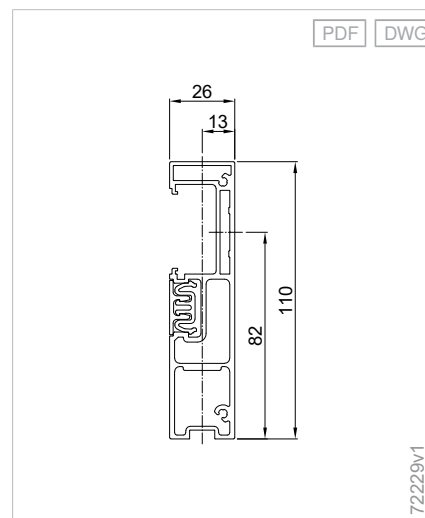
### Guide rail T-26x110



### Guide rail T-26x110-R

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Optional surface	Anodised
Width	26 mm
Depth	110 mm

### Guide rail T-26x110-R



# Wall connection profiles

## Wall connection profile with small rain hood

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	54 - 65 mm
Height	48 mm
Dimensions, notes	The adjustment range in the depth between rain hood and wall connection profile is up to 11 mm.

The on-site sealing is the responsibility of the specialist partner; if necessary, the commissioning of a plumbing company is recommended.

Field of application:

- Terrea K50
- Terrea K70
- Perea P20 (up to an angle of 10°)
- Lamaxa L50/L60/L70

Colours:

- WAREMA Colour World

## Wall connection profile with large rain hood

Material	Aluminium, extruded
Surface	Powder-coated
Width	128 - 139 mm
Height	52 mm
Dimensions, notes	The adjustment range in the depth between rain hood and wall connection profile is up to 11 mm.

The on-site sealing is the responsibility of the specialist partner; if necessary, the commissioning of a plumbing company is recommended.

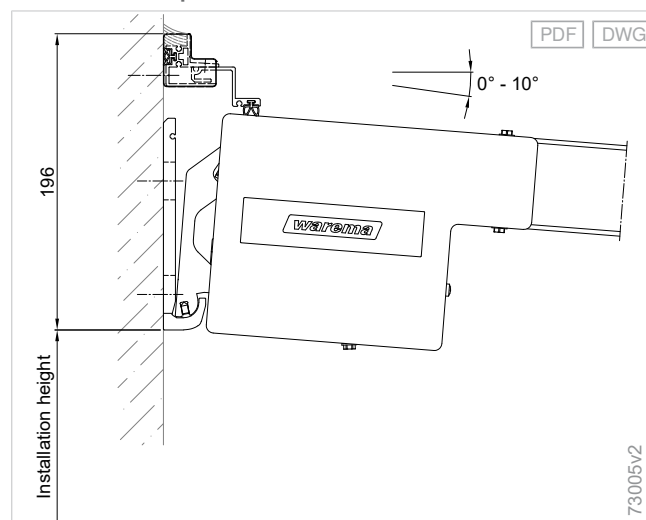
Field of application:

- Terrea 550
- Terrea 580
- Terrea K50
- Terrea K60 (only rigid console)
- Terrea K70
- Terrea H60
- Perea P20
- Perea P40/P40 WE
- Perea P60

Colours:

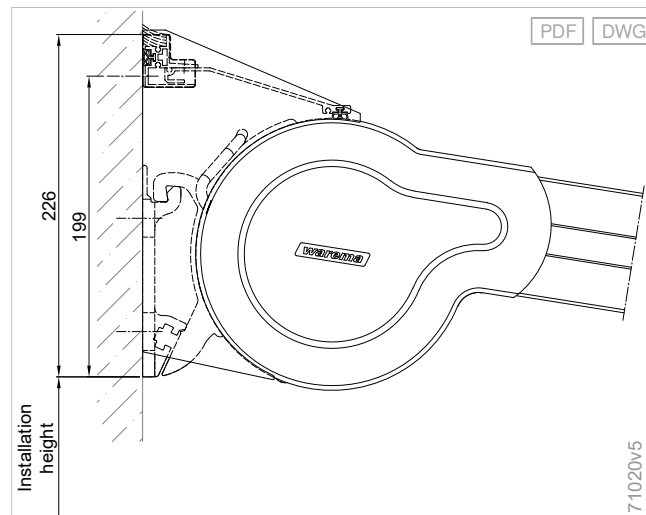
- WAREMA Colour World

## Wall connection profile with small rain hood - P20



The wall connection profile with small rain hood can be used with the P20 up to an inclination angle of 10°.

## Wall connection profile with large rain hood





## Components

### Awning collection

#### Individual

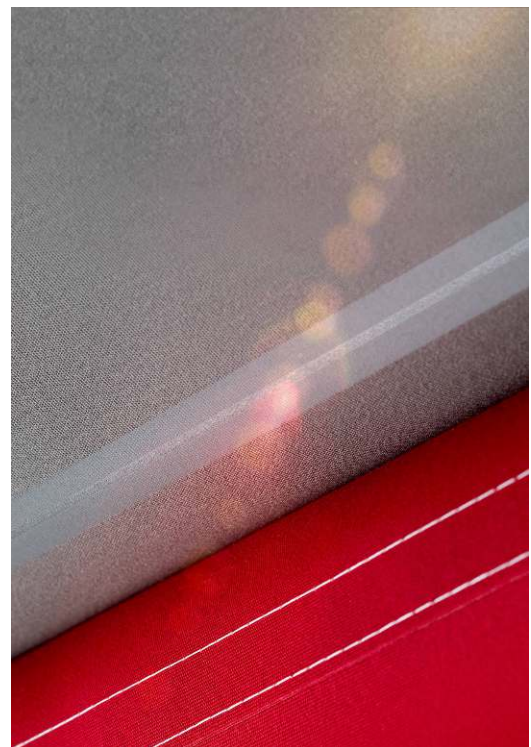
A large selection of different fabric qualities and designs make the awning an individual ornamental feature.

#### Sophisticated

The various fabric qualities are technical, high-performance products and fulfil the highest requirements.

#### Modern

As well as the Classics, the awning collection also offers designs in current trend colours.



#### Product characteristics

- Trendy collection with over 300 designs
- Various fabric qualities suitable to requirements

## Awning collection

Designation	Material, fabrics	Fabric weight	Web width	Building materials class	Price range	Fabric characteristics
Acrylic fabric	100 % brand acrylic fabric	290 g/m <sup>2</sup>	1200 mm	None	1	Light-fast, weather-fast, tear-resistant, dirt-repellent, rot-proof, air permeable, water-repellent
All Weather acrylic	100% brand acrylic fabric with transparent acrylate coating on the outside	340 g/m <sup>2</sup>	1200 mm	None	2	Practically water-proof, weather-proof, tear-resistant, dirt-repellent, with mould-inhibiting finish, offers very good UV protection
Starlight Blue	Recycled polyester mesh	290 g/m <sup>2</sup>	1200 mm	None	3	Water and oil repellent, with mould-inhibiting finish, tear-resistant, particularly sustainable in production
Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302	PVC-coated polyester fabric	480 g/m <sup>2</sup>	1800 mm	B1 (DIN 4102-1)	2	
Screen fabric	PVC-coated glass fibre	520 g/m <sup>2</sup>	3200 mm	B1 (DIN 4102-1)	2	Weatherproof, tear-resistant, dirt-repellent, with mould-inhibiting finish, permeable to air and transparent, good view out especially with dark designs
Soltis 92	Base material made of highly tear-resistant polyester with PVC coating	420 g/m <sup>2</sup>	1770 mm	B1 (DIN 4102-1)	3	Dirt-repellent, highly tear-resistant, high diagonal stability, resistant to UV rays
Soltis B92	Base material made of highly tear-resistant polyester with PVC coating	650 g/m <sup>2</sup>	1700 mm	B1 (DIN 4102-1)	5	Sturdy polyester fabric with PVC coating, blackout
Twilight Pearl	Polyester mesh (PES)	330 g/m <sup>2</sup>	2600 mm	B1 (DIN 4102-1)	4	PVC-free, odourless, good view out, weatherproof, weather-resistant, good colour-fastness and light-fastness, provides protection against overheating, air permeable
Soltis W96	Base material made of highly tear-resistant polyester with PVC coating	620 g/m <sup>2</sup>	2670 mm	B1 (DIN 4102-1)	5	Water-proof, flame retardant, light-fast, tear-resistant, transparent, offers very good UV protection
Sunworker Top	PVC-coated polyester fabric	360 g/m <sup>2</sup>	3000 mm	None	5	Water-proof, transparent, weatherproof, tear-resistant, dirt-repellent, with mould-inhibiting finish, very good UV protection
Sunvas Perla FR	Polyester with transparent FR coating	380 g/m <sup>2</sup>	1200 mm	B-s1,d0 (EN 13501-1)	4	Dirt and water-repellent, tear-resistant, flame retardant

**Designs:** According to current WAREMA awning collection.

**Web widths:**

- Exceptions for Screen fabric designs 3542 and 3543 (web width 2850 mm).
- For Soltis 92, larger web widths are possible on request.

## Fabric processing

### Sewing

All connecting seams and hems are produced with the particularly durable PTFE (Teflon-coated) sewing thread TENARA® in plain white using state-of-the-art sewing machines.



### UltraSeam™

The connecting seams and side hems are glued using the UltraSeam™ procedure. The strips of fabric at the cut edges of the fabric are aligned and joined together with the UltraSeam™ Tape (butt joint tape). Gluing is carried out with the aid of an ultrasonic welding gluing system. The fabric layers are wound smoothly around each other and the winding diameter in the seam and hem area is reduced thanks to the even fabric thickness. The bead hems are sewn with PTFE (Teflon-coated) sewing thread, such as TENARA® in plain white. This procedure can be used in all Terrea articulated arm and cassette awnings, as well as window awnings, in combination with all acrylic fabrics.



### Gluing (overlapping)

Upon request, connections between the strips of acrylic fabrics (except for All Weather acrylic fabric) are also available with overlapping glued seams. Here too, the bead hems are sewn with PTFE (Teflon-coated) sewing thread, such as TENARA® in plain white.

### Welding

The connecting seams as well as the hems are permanently bonded lengthwise or horizontally. This is performed with the aid of a high-frequency or thermal impulse welding device. In patio awnings with lacquered fabric or Soltis-92, the hems are generally sewn with PTFE (Teflon-coated) sewing thread, such as TENARA® in plain white.

## Fabric processing

### Fabric processing according to fabric quality

Fabric quality	Fabric processing
Acrylic fabric	Sewing, UltraSeam™, gluing
All Weather acrylic	Sewing, UltraSeam™
Starlight Blue	Sewing, UltraSeam™, gluing
Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302	Welding
Screen fabric	Welding
Soltis 92	Welding
Soltis B92	Welding
Soltis W96	Welding
Twilight Pearl	Sewing
Sunworker Top	Welding
Sunvas Perla FR	Bonding

**Processing of Twilight Pearl:** In awnings with secudrive® guide, the fabric is fastened to the spring steel strip with a fabric strip visible at the side (in light grey).



## Components

### Fabrics

#### Flexible

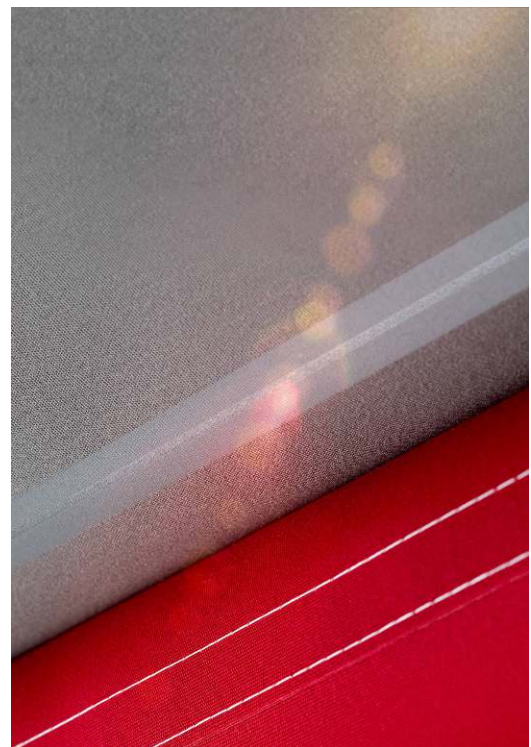
Thanks to special shapes, even difficult situations can be realised.

#### Individual

A personal design is possible thanks to the numerous designs.

#### Functional

The different qualities make different uses possible, ranging from sun shading to rain protection.



#### Product characteristics

- Fabrics in standard and special shapes
- Various fabric qualities and processings



## Fabric qualities

- Acrylic fabric
- All Weather acrylic
- Starlight Blue
- Soltis 92
- Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302
- Twilight Pearl

+ see "Awning collection", Page 460

## Construction limit values

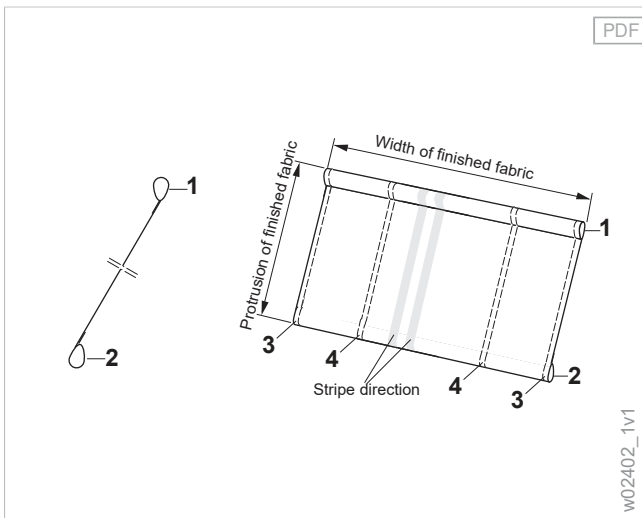
### Maximum production dimensions

Configuration variants	Web width	Maximum order width	Maximum projection	Maximum order area
<b>Fabric qualities</b>				
Acrylic fabric / All Weather acrylic	1200 mm	12500 mm	4300 mm	53,75 m <sup>2</sup>
Starlight Blue	1200 mm	12500 mm	4300 mm	53,75 m <sup>2</sup>
Soltis 92	1770 mm	5500 mm	2800 mm	15,4 m <sup>2</sup>
Lacquered fabric Precontraint 302	1800 mm	5500 mm	2800 mm	15,4 m <sup>2</sup>
Twilight Pearl	2600 mm	7000 mm	4300 mm	30,1 m <sup>2</sup>

# Dimension determination

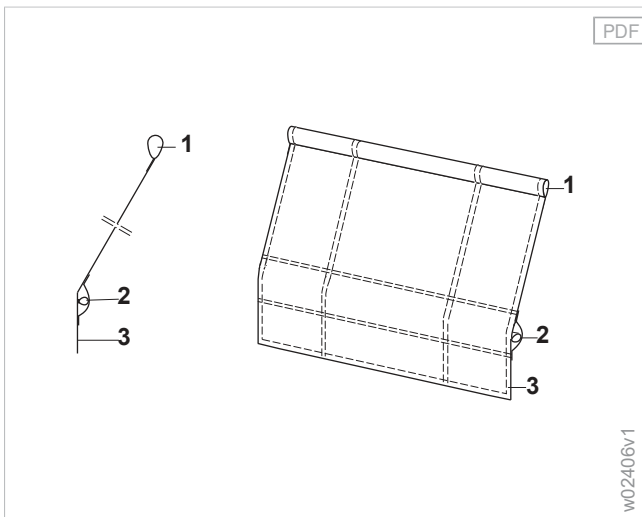
## Details

Awning fabric without valance (model A)



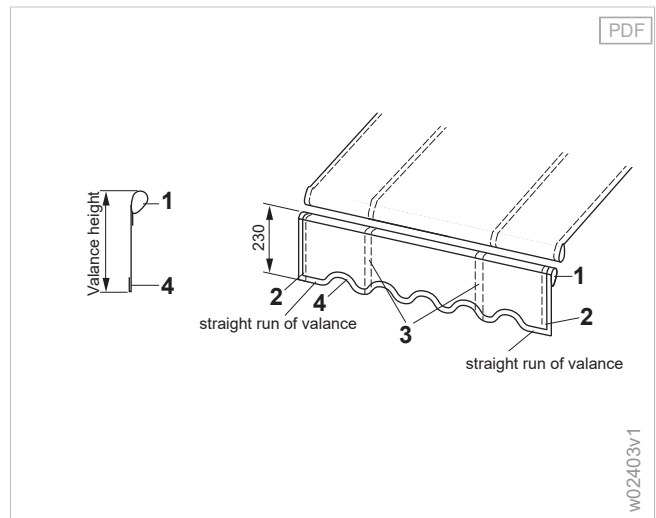
- |   |   |   |                                  |
|---|---|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on the fabric shaft (50 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 42 mm) | 3 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat |
| 2 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on the drop profile (30 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 25 mm) | 4 | Seam, 24 mm overlap              |

Awning fabric with sewn-on fabric strip (model C)



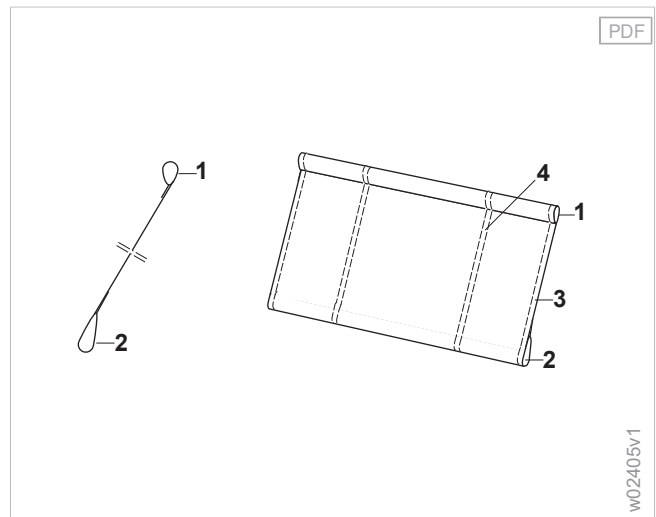
- |   |   |   |  |
|---|---|---|--|
| 1 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on the valance roller blind shaft (30 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 25 mm) | 3 | Valance sewn-on, height depending on awning type |
| 2 | Loop for aluminium tube, 16 mm round  |   |  |

Awning fabric with valance, individually removable (model B)



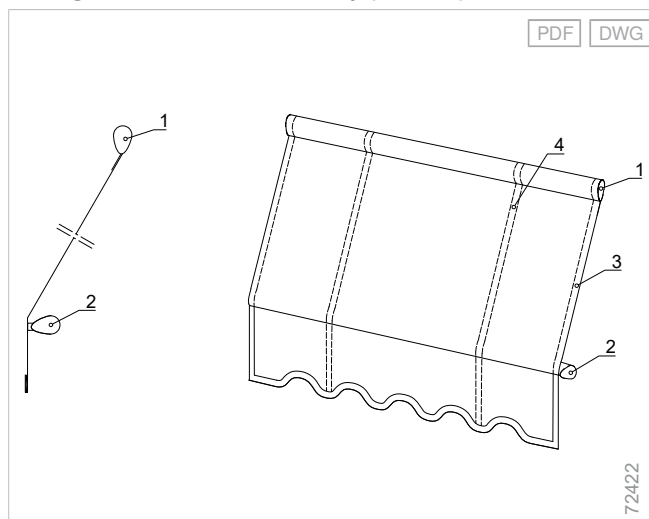
- |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on the fabric shaft (50 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 25 mm) | 3 | Seam, 24 mm overlap on projection profile (30 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 25 mm) |
| 2 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat  | 4 | Edge trimming   |

Awning fabric with fabric-wrapped drop profile (model D)



- |   |   |   |                                  |
|---|---|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on the fabric shaft (50 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 42 mm) | 3 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat |
| 2 | Loop for drop profile (size in accordance with order data)                                    | 4 | Seam, 24 mm overlap              |

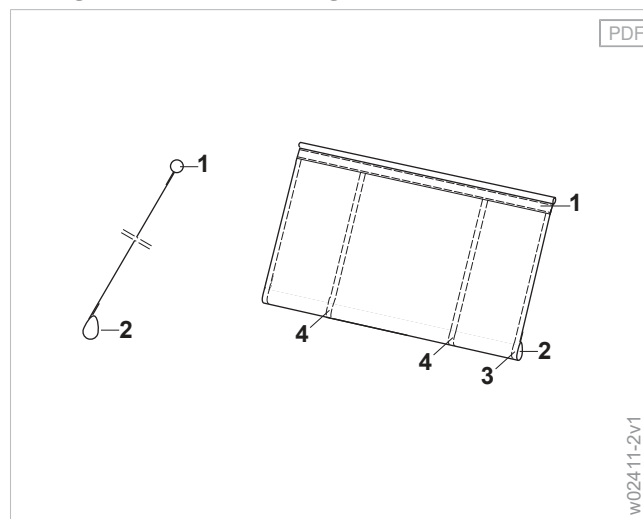
### Awning fabric with sewn bead loop (model E)



- |   |  |   |                                  |
|---|--|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on the fabric shaft (50 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 42 mm)                            | 3 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat |
| 2 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on drop profile (size in accordance with order data), alternatively with sewn-on fabric strips | 4 | Seam, 24 mm overlap              |

72422

### Awning fabric with sewn-on magnetic hook bead



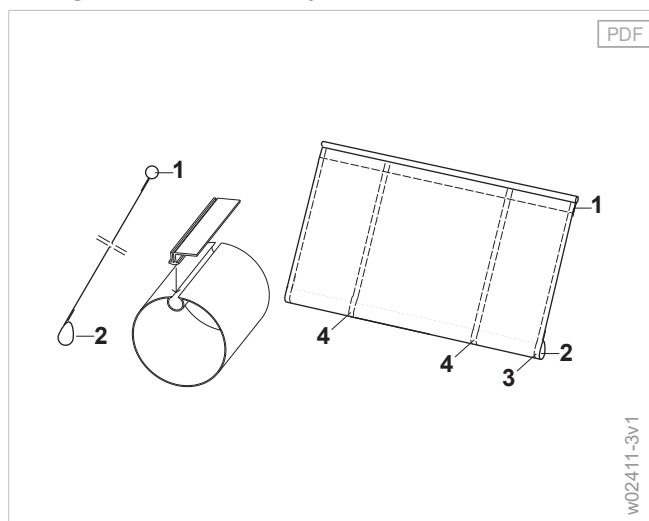
- |   |   |   |                                  |
|---|---|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Magnetic clamp beading, sewn-on   | 3 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat |
| 2 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on projection profile (30 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 25 mm) | 4 | Seam, 24 mm overlap              |

w02411-2v1

Maximum width: 7000 mm

This beading can only be used for attaching to the fabric shaft, since fixing is achieved by the fabric safety winding on the shaft.

### Awning fabric with sewn-in replacement bead



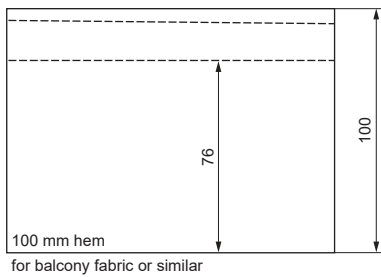
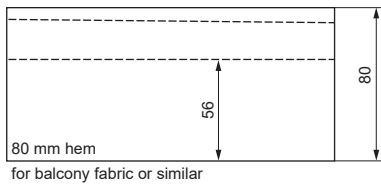
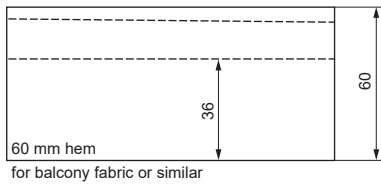
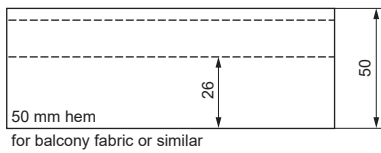
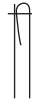
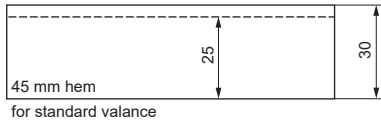
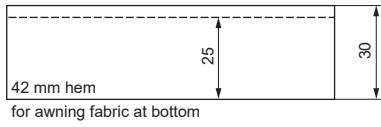
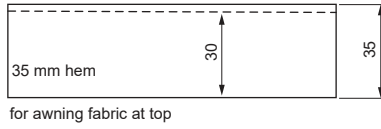
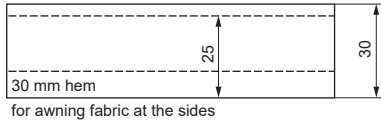
- |   |   |   |                                  |
|---|---|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Replacement bead, sewn-on   | 3 | Lateral hem, 30 mm measured flat |
| 2 | Loop for 6 mm bead fixing on projection profile (30 mm measured flat, feedthrough inside 25 mm) | 4 | Seam, 24 mm overlap              |

w02411-3v1

We recommend the use of the replacement bead only for fixing to the fabric shaft. Depending on the geometry of the drop profile, the replacement bead would be visible on the projection profile.

Standard hems

PDF



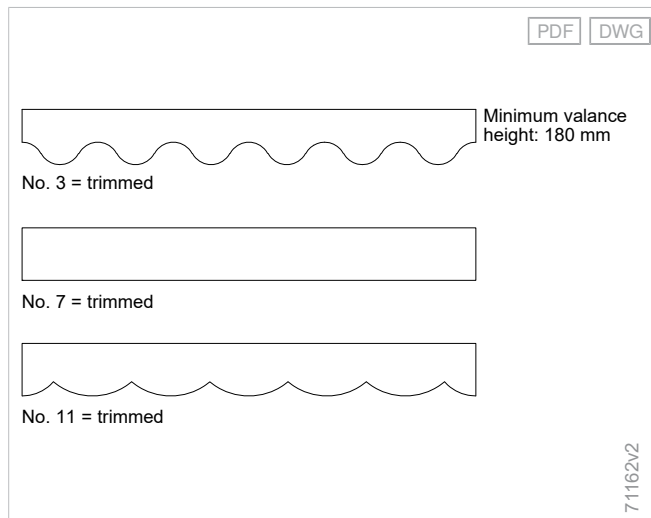
w04381v4

# Valance

The valance has a matching frame, is individually removable and is available in 3 shapes.

If no shape is stated, we will supply valance shape no. 11 (curved).

## Valance shapes



No. 3 Wavy  
No. 7 Straight

No. 11 Curved



# Contents

## Drive variants

Motor.....	472	Planning
Motor.....	473	
Standard motors, wired.....	474	
D339.....	474	
LT50.....	475	
MM9/16 (valance roller blind).....	477	Terrea
MM30/17.....	478	
Orea WT.....	480	
P6/20M (valance roller blind).....	482	
WM IMP.....	483	
WM REA.....	484	
WT.....	485	
ZM REA.....	486	
Standard motors, radio.....	488	Perea
W-MM (EWFS).....	488	
W-MP (EWFS).....	489	
W-WM (EWFS).....	490	
WMS-MM (WMS).....	491	
WMS-MP (WMS).....	492	
WMS-PM (WMS).....	493	
WMS-WM (WMS).....	494	Patio side screens
Additional product information.....	496	
Functions in detail.....	496	
Note on connecting lines.....	496	
Plug-in connector/plug receiver.....	497	
Manual operation.....	500	
Crank.....	501	Climara
Crank gear.....	501	
Crank with ball hook.....	501	
Collapsible crank.....	501	
Manual operation for patio side screen 390.....	502	
		Supplementary accessories
		Components



## Drive variants

### Motor

**Always the perfect motorisation for your sun shading product – with drive systems from WAREMA**

#### Quality

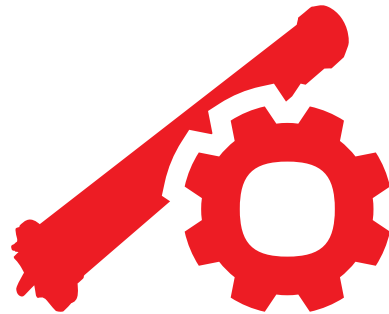
We only use innovative drives from reliable leading quality suppliers. All drive solutions fulfil high quality standards. They are adapted to the corresponding WAREMA sun shading products and control systems.

#### Know-how

WAREMA oversees the development of new drives - from the conception until market launch. Each WAREMA drive goes through a comprehensive series of tests.

#### Perfectly matched

The drive setting instructions enable very comfortable installation and commissioning in the WAREMA sun shading product.





# Motor

Technologies at a glance

## Drives with mechanical limit switch-off

- Proven track record
- Reliable and precise
- Intuitive setting

## Drives with electronic limit switch-off

- Software/function matches the sun shading product specifically
- Comfortable adjustment of the motor limit positions with programming cable

## Electronic special drive WM REA for awnings with secudrive®

- With responsive block detection
- In the case of a blockage, the drive can differentiate between wind load and a fixed obstacle and correspondingly reacts sensitively to the situation.
- Extended awning protection, even with installation situations exposed to wind

## EWFS radio motor

- Based on our unidirectional EWFS radio system with a transmission frequency of 433.92 MHz
- Comprehensive range of functions, e.g. teachable comfort position
- Combinable with comprehensive control components such as hand-held transmitters and weather stations

## WMS Radio motor

- Based on our bidirectional WMS radio system with a transmission frequency of 2.4 GHz
- Maximum safety by means of an encrypted radio network
- Accurate moving to intermediate positions
- Exact position feedback
- Can also be operated via smartphone with WAREMA WebControl
- **Our highlight: On request, we can program your order with WMS radio motors for the delivered hand-held transmitter ex works, our service – your installation advantage!**

## Electronic special drive MM for valance roller blinds in patio awnings

- Drop profile of the valance roller blind always retracts to be flush with the front rail
- With fabric stretching adjustment, readjustment of the motor limit position is omitted!

# Standard motors, wired

## D339

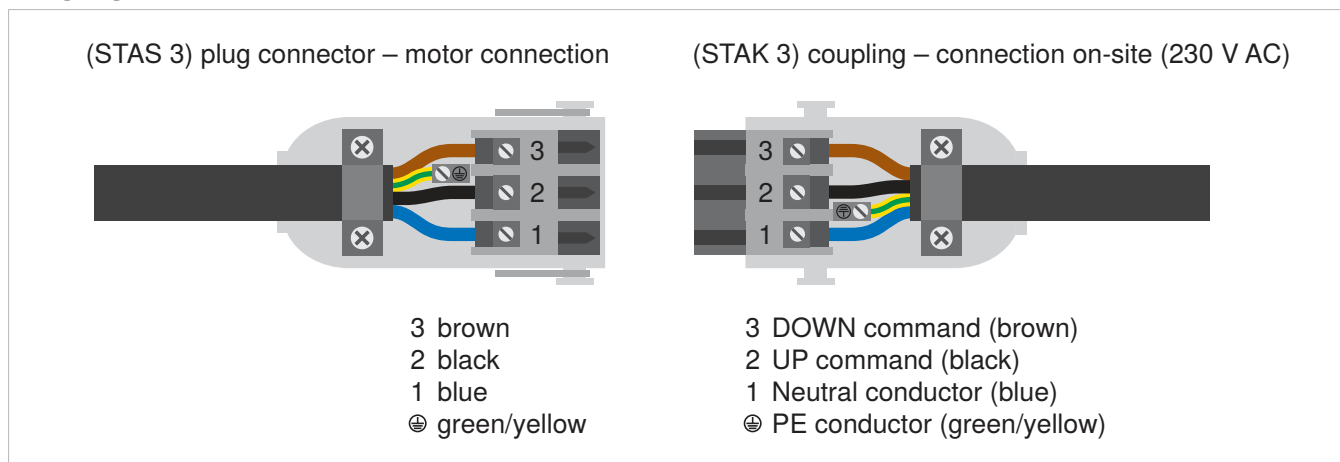
### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Position switch-off top
- Switch-off via contact switch and external switch



Frequency	50 Hz
Degree of protection	IP 54
Motor construction type	Block motor
Motor operating type	Wired
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Mechanical
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	9 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,57 A
Rated power consumption	131 W
Motor line	900 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	No
Operating temperature	-10 - 60 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Standard test cable up/down

### Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



## LT50

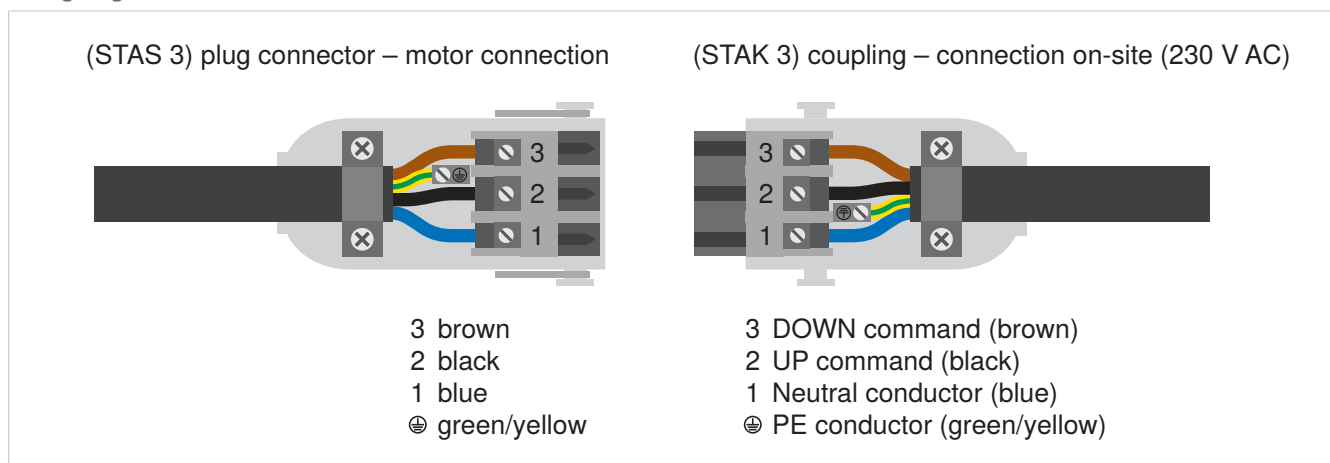
### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Position switch-off top
- Set motor limit position with adjustment buttons on the motor

Frequency	50 Hz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Wired
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Mechanical
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	6 - 120 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,45 - 1,8 A
Rated power consumption	90 - 400 W
Motor line	400 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	No
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-25 - 70 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Standard test cable up/down

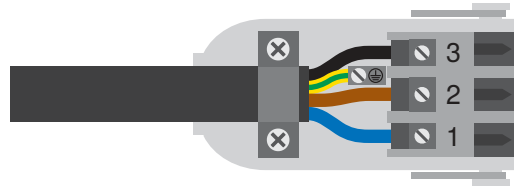


### Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



Wiring diagram STAS 3, motor connection, left-hand motion

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection – left-hand motion



3 black  
2 brown  
1 blue  
⊕ green/yellow

## MM9/16 (valance roller blind)

### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper position switch-off (optional)
- Upper torque overload protection
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)

Frequency	50 Hz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Wired
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	9 Nm
Speed	16 U/min
Nominal current	0,47 A
Rated power consumption	110 W
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	No
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Test/programming cable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- WAREMA Smart programming cable</li> <li>- Standard test cable up/down</li> </ul>



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

# MM30/17

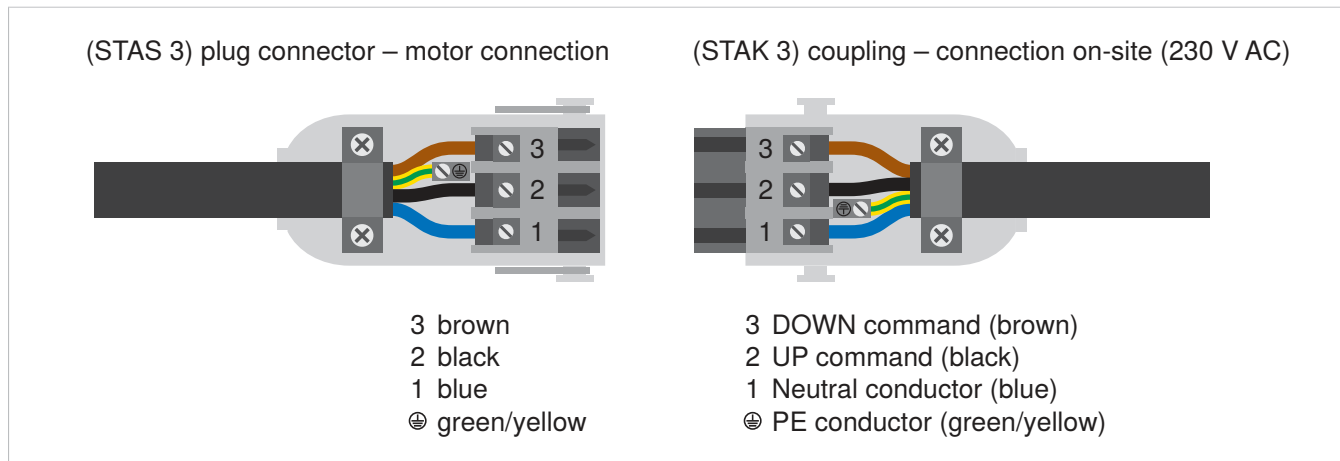
## Description:

- Position switch-off, bottom
- Upper position switch-off (optional)
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimal box closure (only for torque overload protection)
- Block detection (raising, only with P70)
- Fabric stretching adjustment (only for torque overload protection)
- Set motor limit positions with programming cable

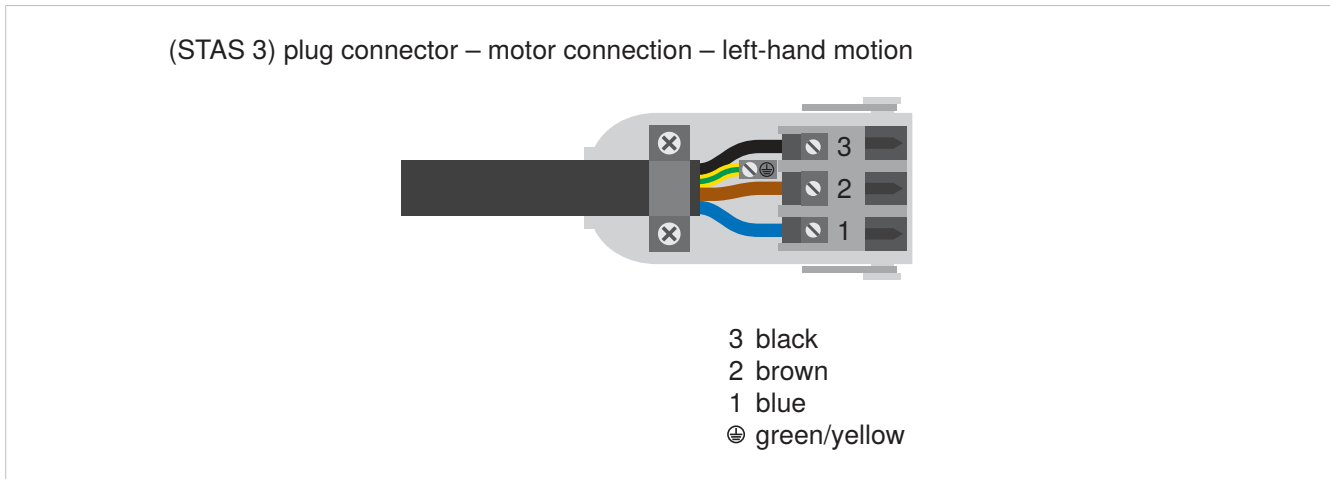


Frequency	50 Hz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Wired
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	30 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,9 A
Rated power consumption	205 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	No information
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Becker programming cable

## Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



Wiring diagram STAS 3, motor connection, left-hand motion



# Orea WT

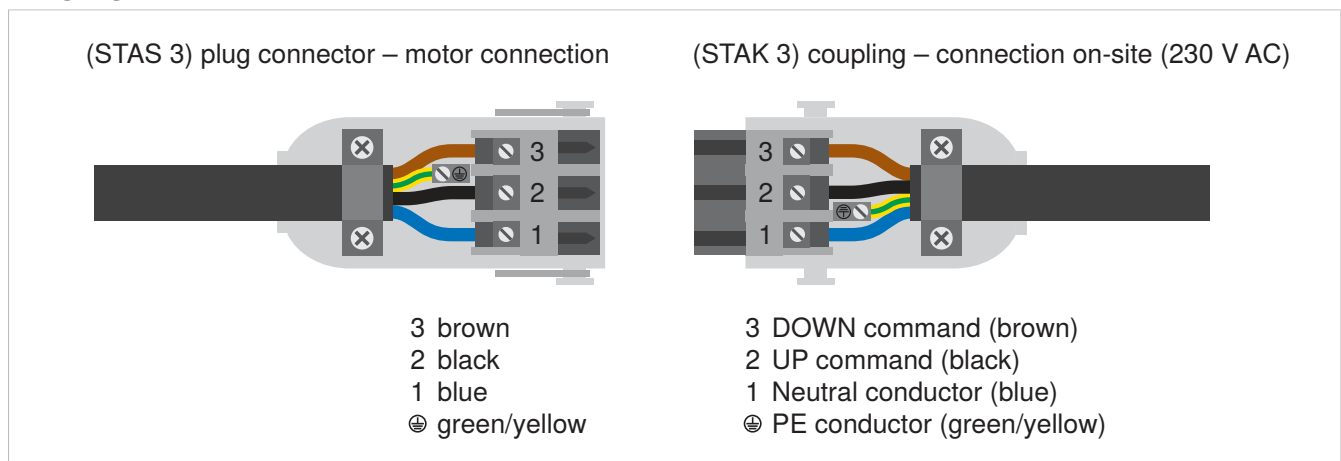
## Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)
- Set motor limit position with programming cable
- Torque detection possible



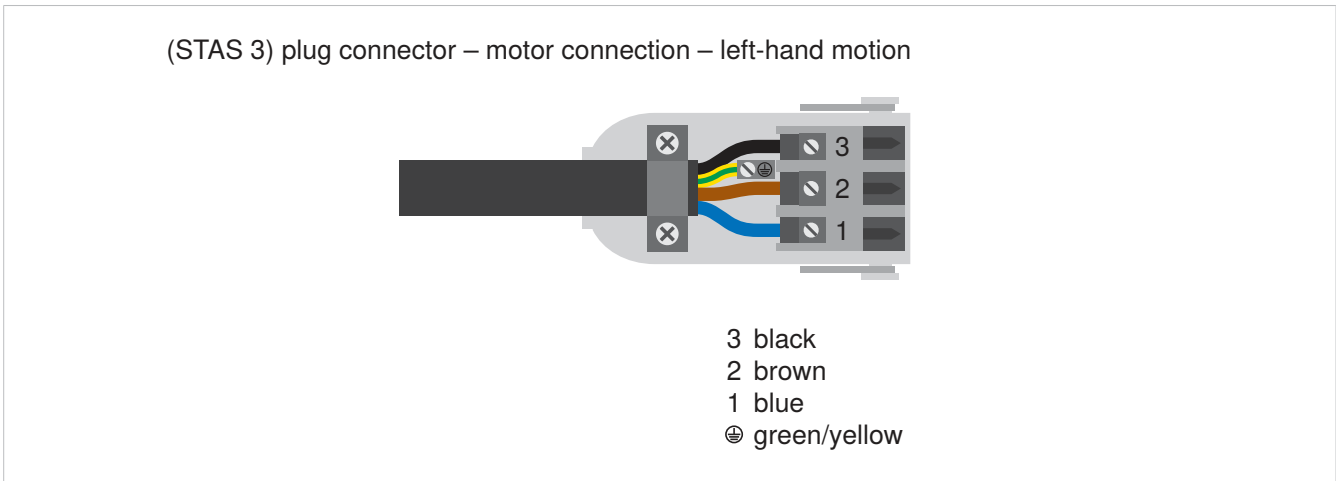
Frequency	50 Hz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Wired
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	25 - 55 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,8 - 1,25 A
Rated power consumption	170 - 290 W
Motor line	400 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	No
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-25 - 70 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Somfy programming cable

## Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3





Wiring diagram STAS 3, motor connection, left-hand motion



## P6/20M (valance roller blind)

### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Position switch-off top
- Set motor limit position with adjustment buttons on the motor

Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Wired
Rated voltage	12 V DC
Type of limit switch-off	Mechanical
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	6 Nm
Speed	20 U/min
Nominal current	1,9 A
Rated power consumption	23 W
Motor line	200 mm
Plug-in connector	Molex 5557
Overheat protection	No
Idle losses in standby	No
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Test cable 12 V



## WM IMP

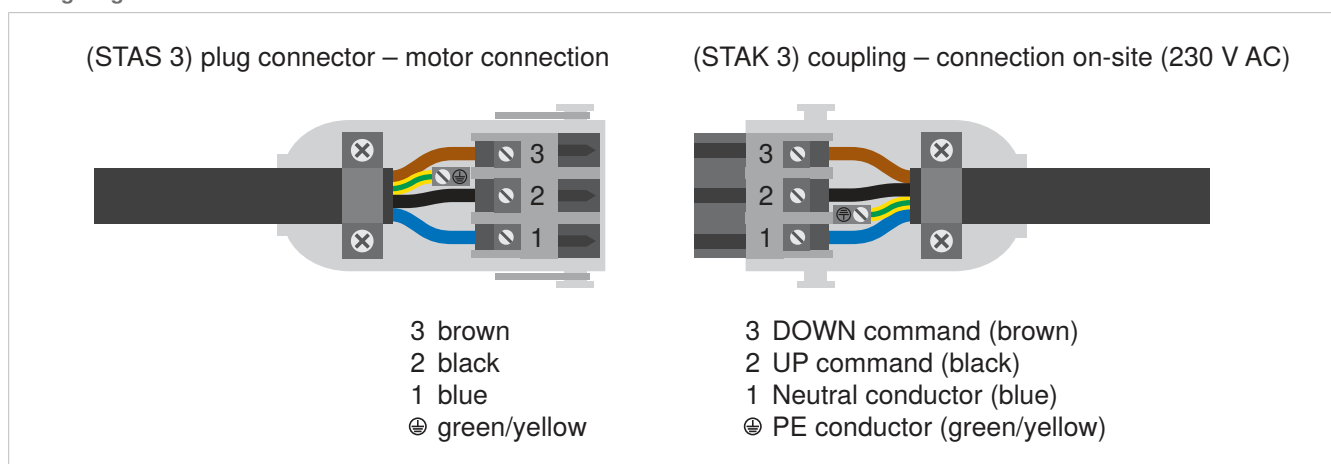
### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Return pulse
- Block detection (retracting)
- Set motor limit positions with programming cable
- Torque detection possible



Frequency	50 Hz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Wired
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	40 - 70 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	1,15 - 1,9 A
Rated power consumption	260 - 430 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	No
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Becker programming cable

### Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



# WM REA

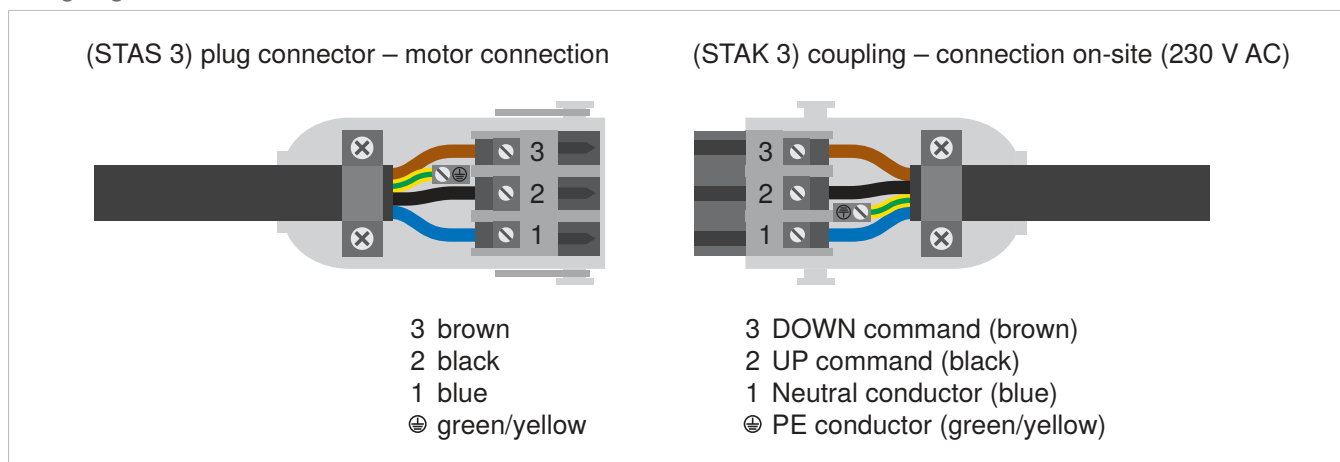
## Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (retracting)
- Block detection (extending)
- Automatic limit position detection
- Responsive block detection
- Set motor limit positions with programming cable
- Torque detection possible



Frequency	50 Hz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Wired
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	30 - 50 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,9 - 1,4 A
Rated power consumption	205 - 315 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	No
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Becker programming cable

## Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



# WT

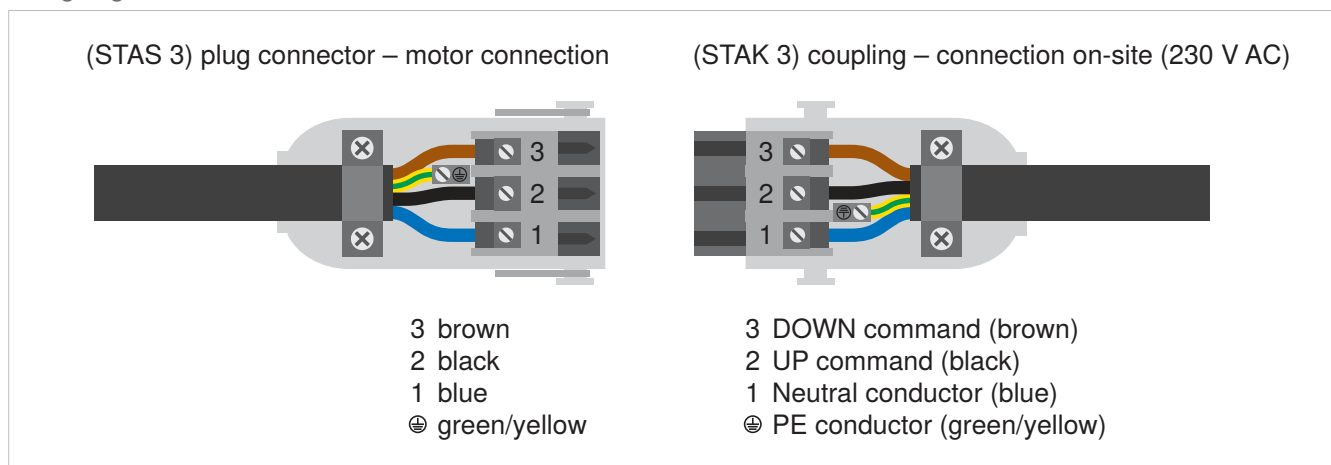
## Description:

- Torque overload protection bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (retracting)
- Block detection (extending)
- Automatic limit position detection
- Set motor limit positions with programming cable
- Torque detection possible



Frequency	50 Hz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Wired
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	20 - 40 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,75 - 1,15 A
Rated power consumption	160 - 260 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	No
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Becker programming cable

### Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



# ZM REA

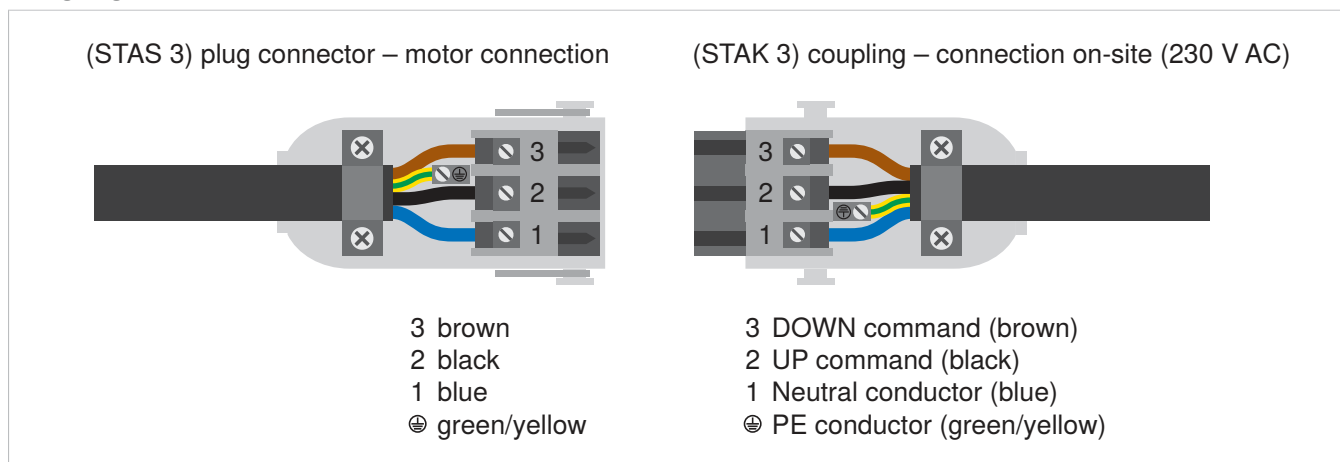
## Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper position switch-off (optional)
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimal box closure (only for torque overload protection)
- Block detection (raising, only with P70)
- Fabric stretching adjustment (only for torque overload protection)
- Set motor limit positions with programming cable



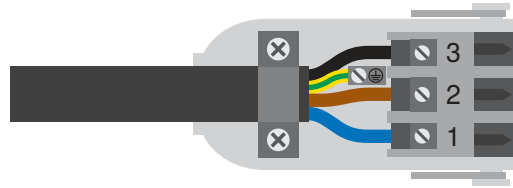
Frequency	50 Hz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Wired
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	8 - 30 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,45 - 0,9 A
Rated power consumption	100 - 205 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	No information
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Becker programming cable

## Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



Wiring diagram STAS 3, motor connection, left-hand motion

(STAS 3) plug connector – motor connection – left-hand motion



- 3 black
- 2 brown
- 1 blue
- ⊕ green/yellow

# Standard motors, radio

## W-MM (EWFS)

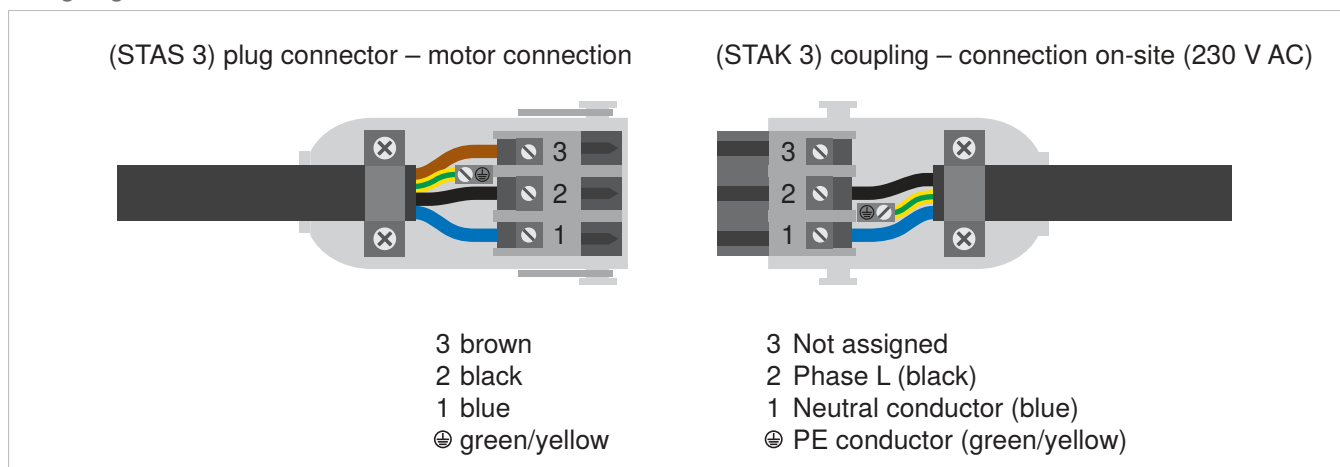
### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Set motor limit positions with EWFS hand-held transmitter



Frequency	50 Hz
Transmission frequency	433,92 MHz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Radio
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	8 - 40 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,45 - 1,15 A
Rated power consumption	100 - 260 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	Yes
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-25 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Test cable latch standard

### Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3





## W-MP (EWFS)

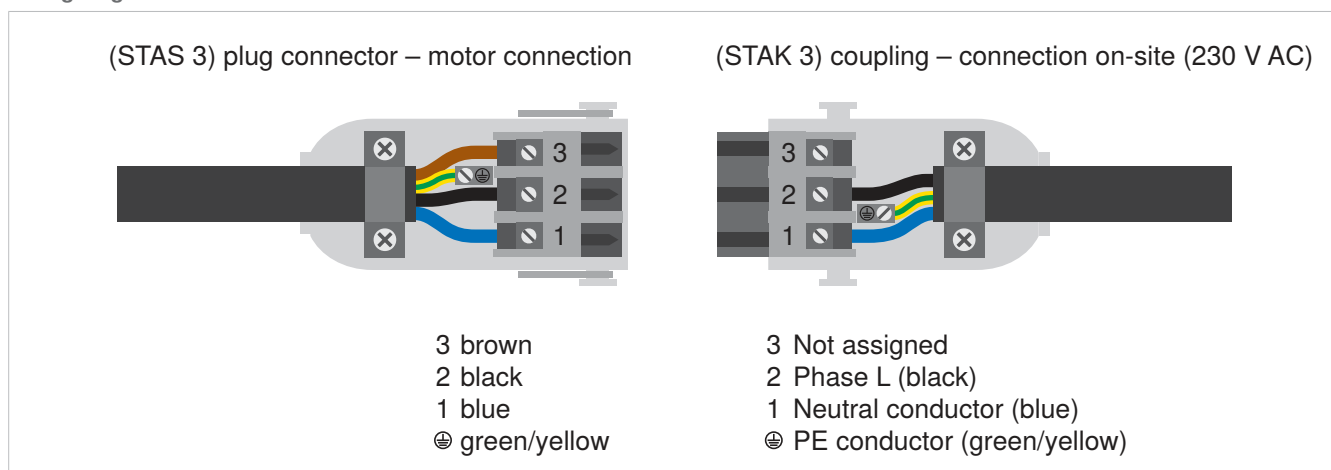
### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Position switch-off top
- Block detection (raising)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Set motor limit positions with EWFS hand-held transmitter



Frequency	50 Hz
Transmission frequency	433,92 MHz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Radio
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	8 - 40 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,45 - 1,15 A
Rated power consumption	100 - 260 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	Yes
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Test cable latch standard

### Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



## W-WM (EWFS)

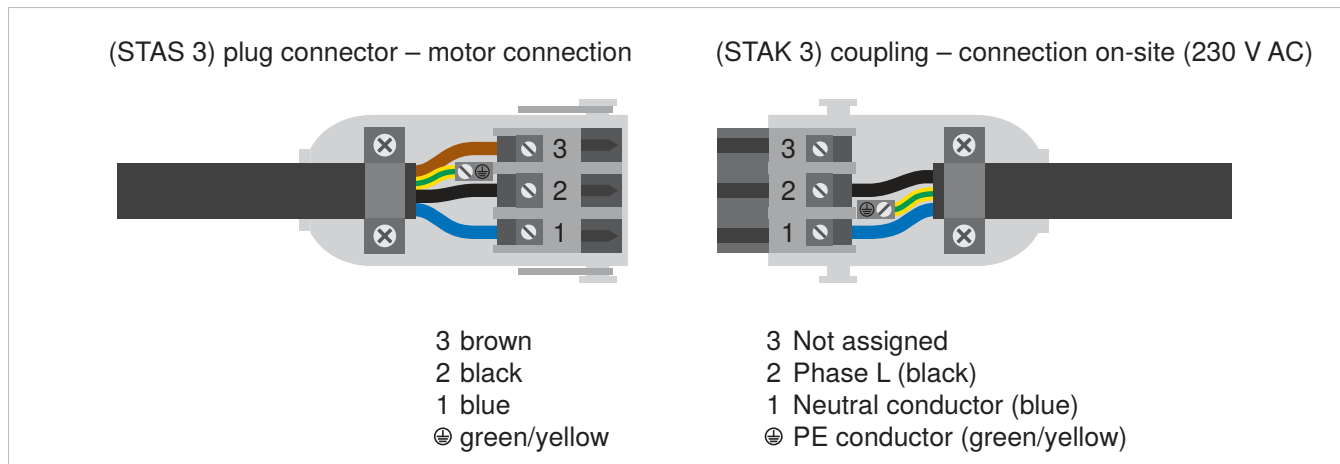
### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)
- Block detection (extending)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Set motor limit positions with EWFS hand-held transmitter



Frequency	50 Hz
Transmission frequency	433,92 MHz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Radio
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	12 - 40 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,5 - 1,15 A
Rated power consumption	110 - 260 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	Yes
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Test cable latch standard

### Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



## WMS-MM (WMS)

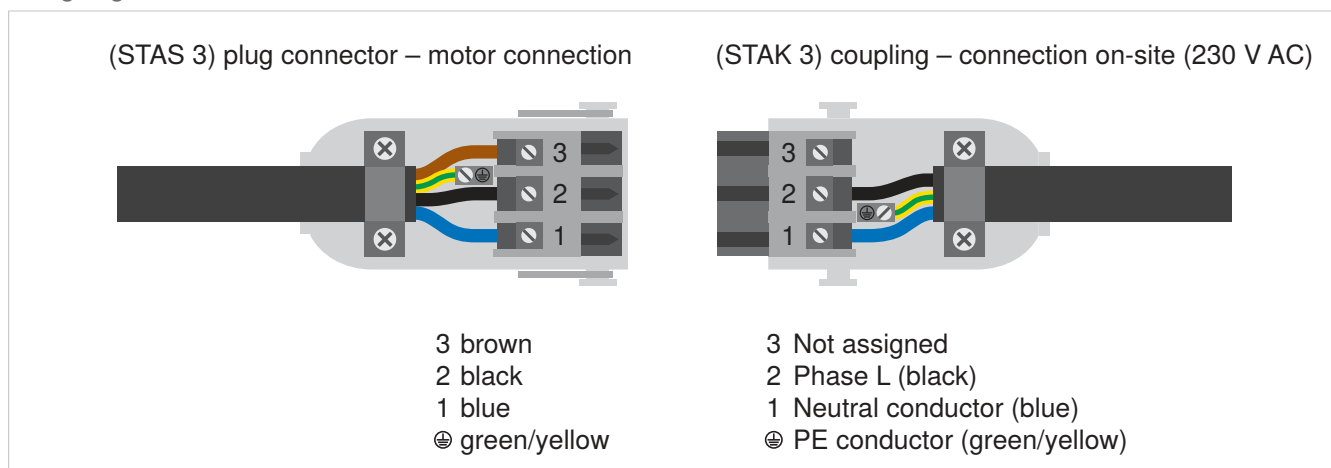
### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Set motor limit positions with WMS Hand-held transmitter, WMS Central transmitter or WMS studio pro
- Bidirectional radio technology
- Position feedback via WMS radio control
- Accurate positioning using WMS radio control
- Intelligent routing function



Frequency	50 Hz
Transmission frequency	2,4 GHz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Radio
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	8 - 50 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,45 - 1,4 A
Rated power consumption	100 - 315 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	Yes
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Test cable latch standard

### Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



## WMS-MP (WMS)

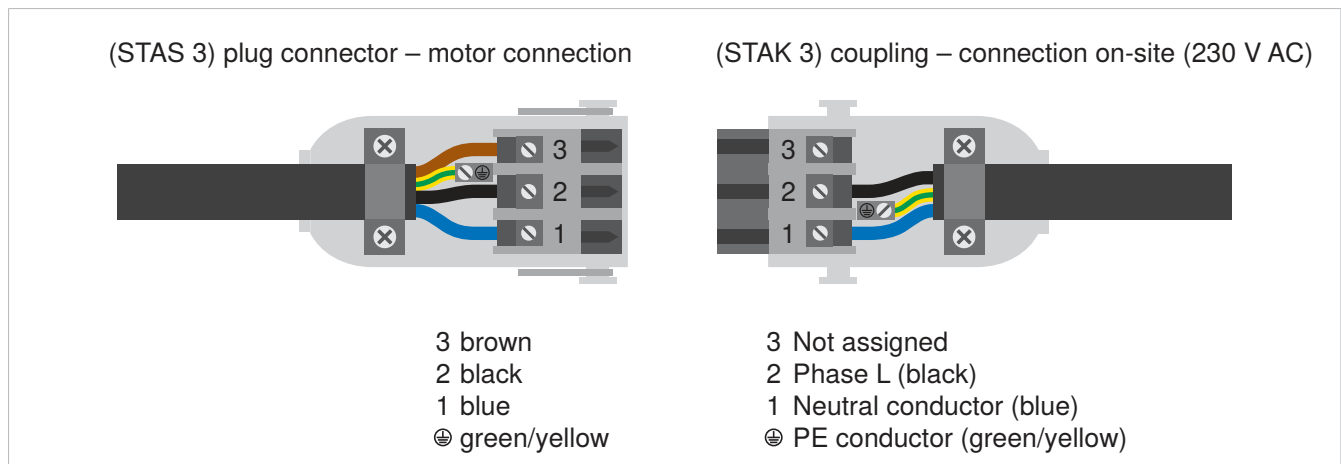
### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Position switch-off top
- Block detection (raising)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Set motor limit positions with WMS Hand-held transmitter, WMS Central transmitter or WMS studio pro
- Bidirectional radio technology
- Position feedback via WMS radio control
- Accurate positioning using WMS radio control
- Intelligent routing function



Frequency	50 Hz
Transmission frequency	2,4 GHz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Radio
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	8 - 50 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,45 - 1,4 A
Rated power consumption	100 - 315 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	Yes
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Test cable latch standard

### Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



## WMS-PM (WMS)

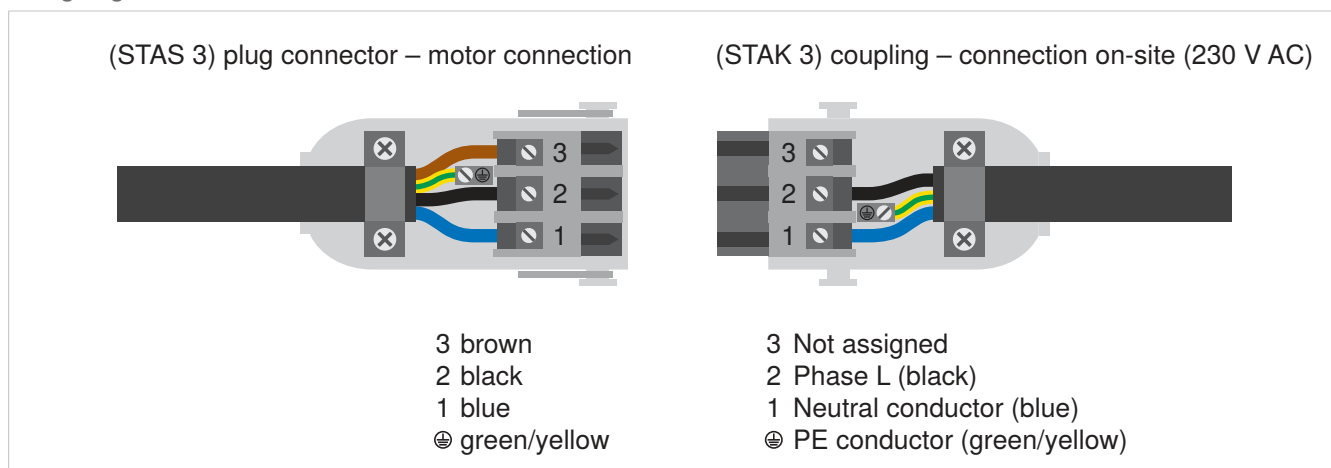
### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (retracting)
- Block detection (extending)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Responsive block detection
- Set motor limit positions with WMS Hand-held transmitter, WMS Central transmitter or WMS studio pro
- Bidirectional radio technology
- Position feedback via WMS radio control
- Accurate positioning using WMS radio control
- Intelligent routing function



Frequency	50 Hz
Transmission frequency	2,4 GHz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Radio
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	12 - 50 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,5 - 1,4 A
Rated power consumption	110 - 315 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	Yes
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Test cable latch standard

### Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



## WMS-WM (WMS)

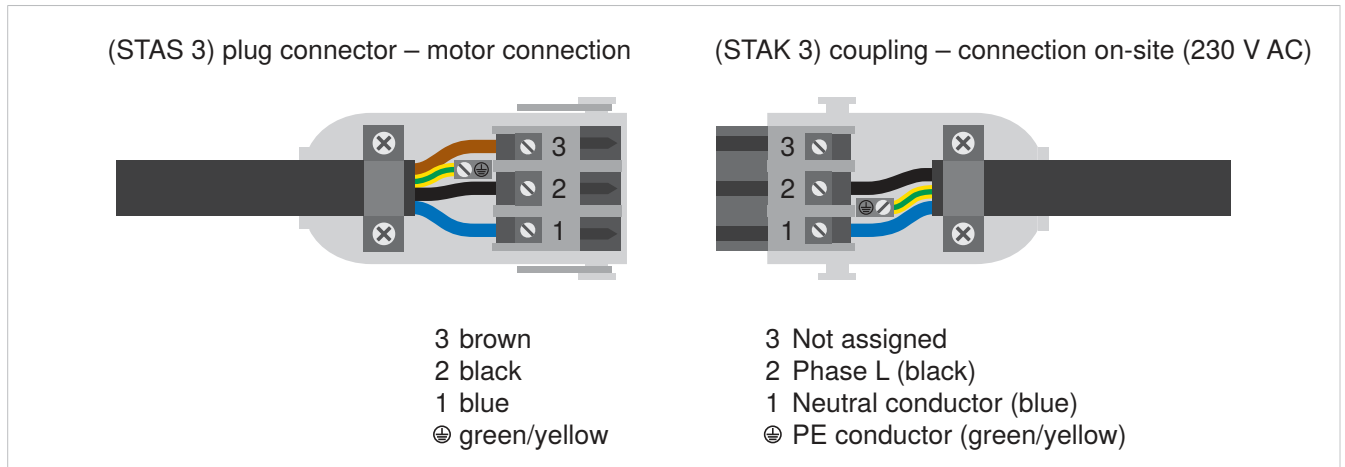
### Description:

- Position switch-off bottom
- Upper torque overload protection
- Optimum box closure
- Fabric tension relief mechanism
- Fabric stretching adjustment
- Block detection (raising)
- Block detection (extending)
- Comfort position (intermediate position)
- Responsive block detection
- Set motor limit positions with WMS Hand-held transmitter, WMS Central transmitter or WMS studio pro
- Bidirectional radio technology
- Position feedback via WMS radio control
- Accurate positioning using WMS radio control
- Intelligent routing function



Frequency	50 Hz
Transmission frequency	2,4 GHz
Degree of protection	IP 44
Motor construction type	Tubular motor
Motor operating type	Radio
Rated voltage	230 V AC
Type of limit switch-off	Electronic
Minimum run time	4 min
Torque	12 - 50 Nm
Speed	17 U/min
Nominal current	0,5 - 1,4 A
Rated power consumption	110 - 315 W
Motor line	500 mm
Plug-in connector	STAS 3
Overheat protection	Yes
Idle losses in standby	Yes
Operating temperature	-10 - 40 °C
Operating temperature, temporary	-20 - 80 °C
Motor lines	- H05RR-F 4 G 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> bk, type WAREMA
Test/programming cable	- WAREMA Smart programming cable - Test cable latch standard

Wiring diagram STAS 3/STAK 3



Planning

Terrea

Perea

Patio  
side screens

Climara

Supplementary  
accessories

Components

Drive  
variants

Standards

## Additional product information

### Functions in detail

#### **Position switch-off (motor limit position)**

Drive stops precisely at an exactly adjustable position.

#### **Torque overload protection (motor limit position)**

Drive moves against a system stop. Switch-off torque optimally matches the sun shading product.

#### **Optimum box closure**

The cassette or cover panel is always closed correctly.

#### **Fabric tension relief mechanism**

Short, optically invisible extension movement after the torque overload protection activates in order to preserve the awning fabric.

#### **Fabric stretching adjustment**

For drives with torque overload protection in the upper limit position, an elongation of the awning fabric is compensated.

#### **Return pulse**

Short return pulse in the lower limit position for fabric tensioning.

#### **Block detection (raising)**

Drive stops in the event of blockages and thus protects the sun shading product from damage

#### **Automatic limit position detection**

Very easy commissioning by means of approaching the end stops in given order.

#### **Comfort position (intermediate position)**

Individually adjustable for EWFS and WMS radio motor.

#### **Drive with connection for additional crank operation**

The product can also be operated via a collapsible crank in the event of a power failure.

#### **Responsive block detection**

Drive reacts sensitively to blockages and thus ensures maximum protection of the sun shading product.

### Note on connecting lines

WAREMA mainly uses halogen-free lines which are resistant to UV rays, approved for permanent use outside and correspond to the requirements of the standard. (Detailed information is available on request).

For convenient on-site connection, WAREMA delivers the matching plug-in connector for on-site wiring, which, if necessary, easily facilitates an all-pole disconnection from the power supply system.

As an additional service, preassembled cable whips, line extensions and rolled products can be ordered from WAREMA in standard dimensions. Special lengths possible on request.

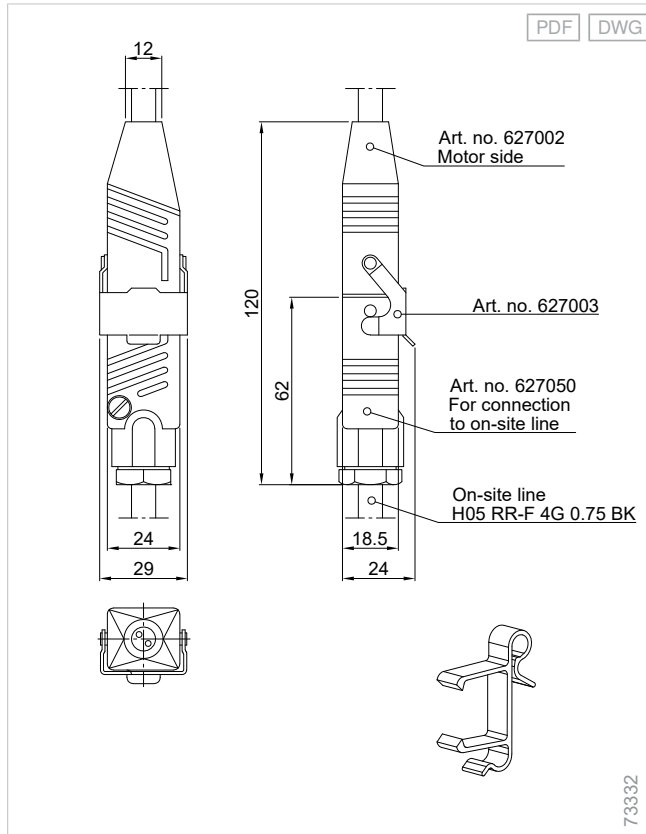
#### **Connecting the plug-in connection - Attention!**

Follow the wiring diagram closely to avoid damaging the motor. WAREMA will not accept liability for damage due to improper installation.

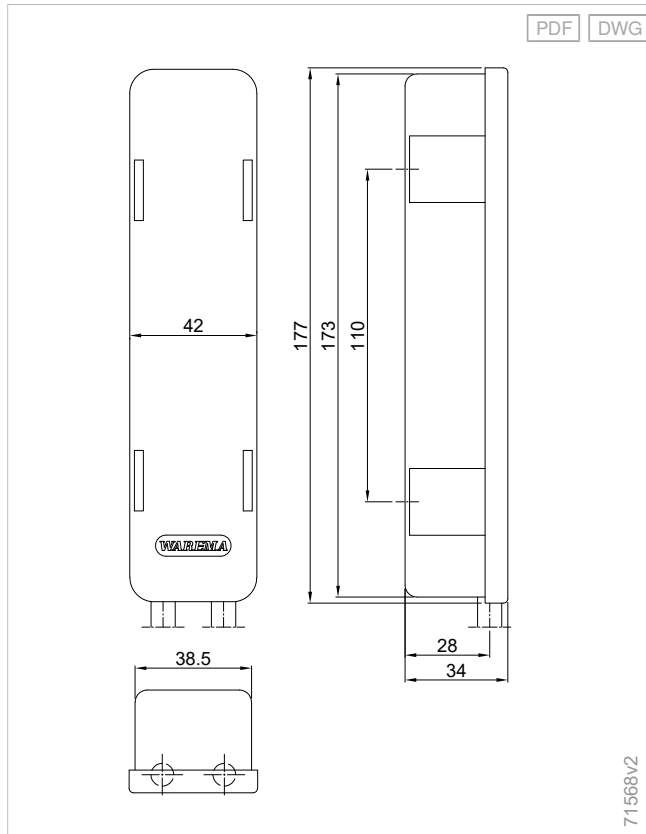


## Plug-in connector/plug receiver

Plug-in connector and plug-in connector holder with integrated cable hook



### Housing for plug-in connector



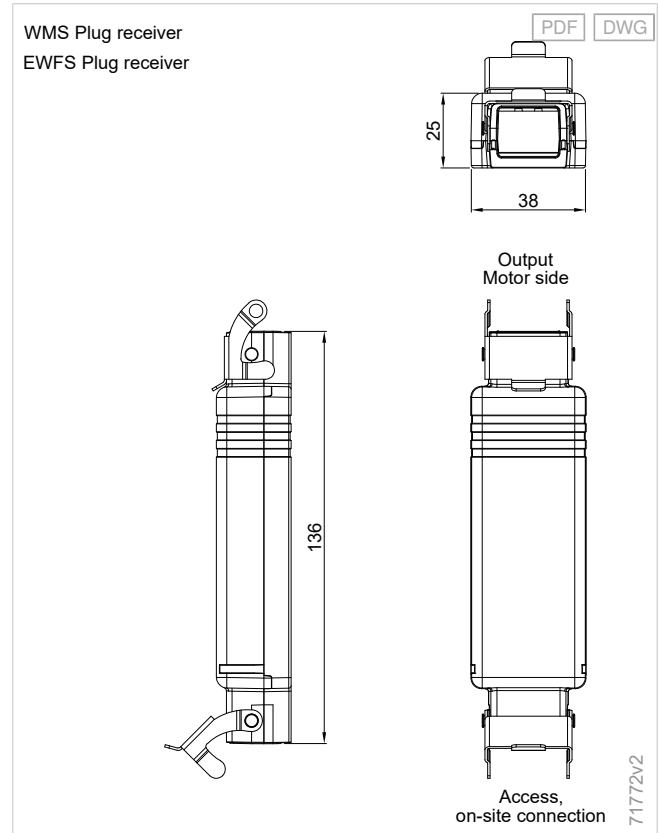
Material: Polypropylene

Art. no. 580135 black

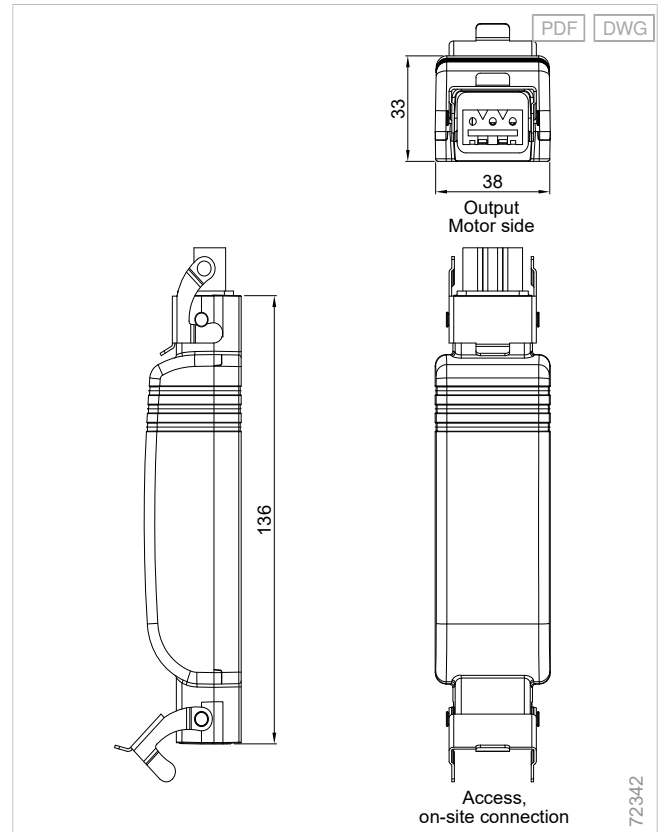
Art. no. 580063 white

Art. no. 580136 grey

### EWFS Plug receiver

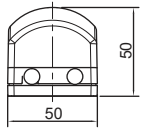


### EWFS Plug receiver

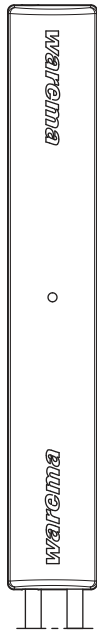
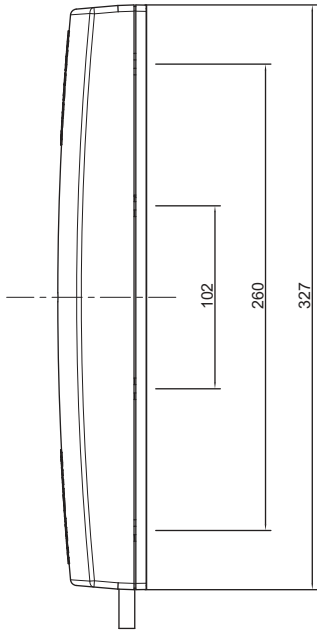


# Housing for WMS/EWFS wireless plug receiver

Material: Polypropylene  
Art. no.: 317745 white  
Art. no.: 317748 grey  
Art. no.: 317751 black



PDF



ansichten\_montagegehaeuse\_2v1





## Drive variants

### Manual operation

#### Independent

A crank drive is ideally suited for retrofitting awnings. With crank operation, no power supply is required.

#### Material-friendly operation

The even crank drive power transmission makes for material-friendly and smooth running during operation.

#### Various technical models

Various transmission types can be used depending on the selected sun shading product.



# Crank

## Crank gear

### Bevel gear with free wheel at the lower limit point

Translation	4,4:1
-------------	-------

### Bevel gear with integrated limit stop 3:1

Translation	3:1
-------------	-----

### Bevel gear with integrated limit stop 5.33:1

Translation	5,33:1
-------------	--------

### Screw gear with limit stop

Translation	7:1
-------------	-----

### Screw gear with spindle lock

Translation	3,5:1
-------------	-------

### Screw gear without limit stop

Translation	9:1
-------------	-----

### Spindle drive

Translation	1:4
-------------	-----

### Angle gear

Translation	4:1
-------------	-----

Attached laterally

## Crank with ball hook

### Crank with ball hook

Material	Galvanised steel
----------	------------------

Material colour	Plain
-----------------	-------

Material, notes	Plastic operating elements, black
-----------------	-----------------------------------

Dimensions, notes	Crank lengths:
	- 800 mm
	- 1000 mm
	- 1200 mm
	- 1400 mm
	- 1600 mm
	- 1800 mm
	- 2000 mm

## Collapsible crank

Detachable collapsible crank for operating the spindle drive for lowerable pole P40.

Position: 910 mm from top edge of finished floor to the inside of the pole

Material	Aluminium
----------	-----------

Surface	Anodised
---------	----------

Material, notes	Plastic handle, grey
-----------------	----------------------

## Manual operation for patio side screen 390

Manual extraction of front rail.

The handle is hung in the handle bracket and locked.

The operating force increases when extending.

# Contents

## Standards

Intended use – on-site requirements.....	504	Planning
Rain class.....	504	
Wind resistance of retracted unit.....	504	
Wind resistance of extended unit, patio awnings.....	505	
Wind forces.....	506	
Allocation of wind resistance class.....	506	Terrea
General information.....	507	
DIN ISO 9001.....	507	
CE mark.....	507	
Durability classes according to DIN EN 14201.....	507	
230 V lines.....	507	
Corrosion.....	507	
Sound insulation in building construction.....	508	Perea
Note on drawing contents.....	508	
		Patio side screens
		Climara
		Supplementary accessories
		Components
		Drive variants

## Intended use – on-site requirements

The user must ensure that the products and services used are tested and suitable for the intended purpose. This includes, among other things, the condition and load-bearing capacity of the mounting substructure and any wind loads acting on the facade. Special features specific to the building project must be checked on-site and passed on to WAREMA as part of the order. That the products are used as intended is the responsibility of the user.

## Rain class

Almost all articulated arm, cassette and pergola awnings achieve rain class 2 in accordance with DIN EN 13561. The respective minimum inclination angles are included in the description of the different types. The rain class is achieved only in the completely extended condition. In the intermediate position, water drainage is not guaranteed and the awning can become damaged. If the inclination is too small, the awning must not be extended in rain, as water bulges can form in the awning fabric. This can damage the awning and endanger people.

## Wind resistance of retracted unit

All WAREMA products intended for outdoor use are designed for a wind load of 1.1 kN/m<sup>2</sup>. The indicated wind load of 1.1 kN/m<sup>2</sup> means that the profiles, which are permanently exposed to wind, must not show any signs of permanent deformation up to this value. The directive entitled "Wind loads for construction of closures and awnings when retracted" (published by the Industrieverband Technische Textilien - Rollladen - Sonnenschutz e.V. - ITRS and the Bundesverband Rollladen + Sonnenschutz e. V.) defines the positions at which these products can be installed without requiring special precautions!

Additional loads on the sun shading product in the form of hanging objects or guy ropes could damage the product or cause it to detach from the wall and are therefore not permissible.



## Wind resistance of extended unit, patio awnings

WAREMA awnings conform to DIN EN 13561 and achieve different wind resistance classes:

The awnings meet the requirements of the specified wind resistance classes in accordance with DIN EN 13561 only if

- the awning is installed with the type and number of consoles recommended by WAREMA, and
- the information from the screw anchor manufacturer was observed when installing the awning, and
- the articulated arm and cassette awning is installed taking into account the screw anchor pull-out force as specified by WAREMA.

An examination of the substructure to check for the required load-bearing capacity must be performed by the fitter/specialist dealer.

Please note that the consoles and fixing material must always correspond to the respective substructure, awning type and size, and the selected wind resistance class. If in doubt, please consult our Applied Engineering department or your screw anchor supplier.

Deviating from the values given in the table below, different wind resistance classes may result depending on the mounting substructure and type of installation.

	Wind resistance class according to DIN EN 13561	Beaufort level
Articulated arm and cassette awnings Terrea	1	5
Pergola awnings Perea	0	6
Conservatory awnings Climara D3, W7, W19	2	5
Conservatory awning Climara W9	2	5
Conservatory awning Climara W10	0	6
Conservatory awnings Climara W20	0	6
Patio side screens	2	5

For the pergola awning Perea P70, use up to Beaufort number 7 is permitted.

## Wind forces

The following Beaufort table contains the average wind speeds allocated to Beaufort degrees and describes the effect of the wind.

Beaufort level	Designation	Average wind speed m/s	Average wind speed km/h	Back pressure q (average value) in N/m <sup>2</sup>	Examples of the effects of inland wind
0	Calm	0–0.2	<1	0	Smoke rises vertically
1	Light air	0.3–1.4	1–5	0.6	Smoke drift indicates wind direction
2	Light breeze	1.5–3.4	6–12	6	Wind felt on exposed skin, leaves rustle, vanes begin to move
3	Light breeze, light wind	3.5–5.4	13–19	16	Leaves and small twigs constantly moving, light flags extended
4	Moderate breeze, moderate wind	5.5–7.4	20–27	30	Dust and loose paper raised, small branches begin to move
5	Fresh breeze fresh wind	7.5–10.4	28–37	60	Small trees in leaf begin to sway, white horses begin to form on lakes
6	Strong wind	10.5–13.4	38–48	110	Large branches in motion, umbrella use becomes difficult, whistling heard in overhead wires
7	High wind	13.5–17.4	49–62	160	Whole trees in motion, effort needed to walk against the wind
8	Gale	17.5–20.4	63–73	230	Some twigs broken from trees, progress on foot is seriously impeded
9	Strong gale	20.5–24.4	74–87	330	Some branches break off trees, minor damage to buildings (roof tiles or smoke covers lifted off)
10	Storm	24.5–28.4	88–102	460	Wind breaks trees, extensive damage to buildings
11	Violent storm	28.5–32.4	103–117	600	Wind uproots trees, wide-spread storm damage
12	Hurricane-force	From 32.5	From 118	770	Serious devastation

The values apply to the mean wind speed at a height of 10 m above ground in an open area.

## Allocation of wind resistance class

Wind resistance class according to DIN EN 13561	Wind speed limit in m/s
0	3 m/s
1	7 m/s
2	10 m/s
3	13 m/s

## General information

### DIN ISO 9001

The certification according to ISO 9001 is an award that emphasises the high quality level of WAREMA sun shading technology. The requirement covers the entire manufacturing process from design and development to production and through to installation and service.

### CE mark

Motorised external and internal sun shading systems are governed by Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC. An EC Declaration of Conformity is available for these products. External sun shading systems, as well as insect screen roller blinds, regardless of the type of drive, are subject to the Construction Products Regulation (EU)/2011. Declarations of performance are available for these products for the mandated property: wind resistance when extended.

All products governed by the Machinery Directive and/or the Construction Products Regulation are provided with a CE-mark.

Manually operated internal sun shading systems are not governed by either of these two directives or regulations and must not, therefore, be provided with a CE-mark. External or internal sun shading systems conform to the relevant standard, which sets out the details therein:

DIN EN 13659, DIN EN 13561 or DIN EN 13120.

Exceptions - the following products are not provided with a CE-mark: sun sails, patio side screens, insect screen products such as fixed frames, swivel doors, etc. - these products are either not mentioned in the harmonised standards or no testing procedure is defined.

### Durability classes according to DIN EN 14201

All WAREMA products are designed to be especially durable. All WAREMA products fulfil durability classes 1, 2 or 3 as standard, tested according to DIN EN 14201.

### 230 V lines

All 230 V lines fulfil Euro class Fca. Special lines are to be requested if necessary.

### Corrosion

WAREMA products achieve the corrosion classes described in the relevant standard. However, under extreme conditions (e.g. close to the coast), some corrosion of exposed stainless steel, chrome-plated or zinc-coated components may occur.



## Sound insulation in building construction

Currently, no recognised testing method for power-operated closures/awnings exists to determine the emissions in accordance with "DIN 4109-1:2018 Sound insulation in building construction". Because of this, it is not possible to provide the planner with concrete values for the respective sun shading system that they can use to determine the occurring immission in the room requiring insulation in advance with a transfer function.

ITRS e. V. shall provide a leaflet for sun shading in combination with sound insulation in building construction as support up until a recognised testing procedure exists.

This leaflet can be found at:

[https://ivrsa.de/technische\\_unterlagen/](https://ivrsa.de/technische_unterlagen/)

## Note on drawing contents

The greyed-out sections of the illustration represent interfaces to general trades which, on the whole, must be planned and performed independently and on-site. WAREMA does not provide services for the greyed-out interfaces and assumes no liability for them.



# WAREMA

## Contacts

### Customer Center

#### External venetian blinds

Tel. +49 9391 20-3140  
raffstoren.international@warema.de

#### Roller shutters

Tel. +49 9391 20-3240  
rollladen.international@warema.de

#### Black-out blinds

Tel. +49 9391 20-3240  
verdunkelungen.international@warema.de

#### Awnings

Tel. +49 9391 20-3440, -3340  
markisen.international@warema.de

#### Internal sun shading systems and glare control

#### Quotations

Tel. +49 9391 20-3540  
inside.international@warema.de

#### Order processing / applied engineering

Tel. +49 3722 710-3540  
inside.international@warema.de

#### Smart Building Solutions

Tel. +49 9391 20-3740  
steuerungssysteme@warema.de

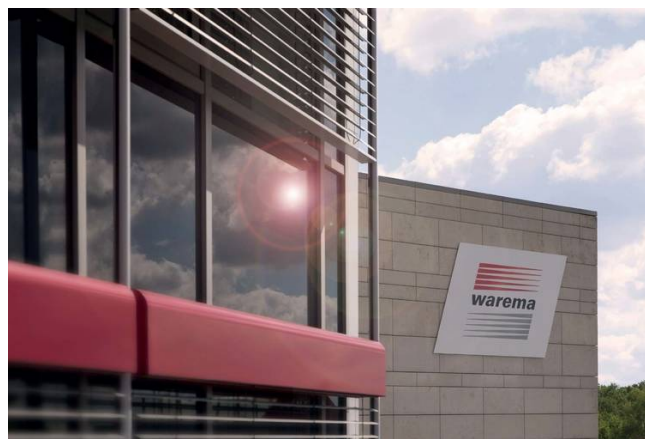
### Maintenance

#### Customers of WAREMA BeNeLux B.V.

Tel. +31 495 53 02 05  
service@warema.nl

#### Customers of WAREMA International

Tel. +49 9391 20-9380 (sun shading systems)  
Tel. +49 9391 20-9370 (controls)  
service@warema.de



**WAREMA Renkhoff SE**

Hans-Wilhelm-Renkhoff-Straße 2  
97828 Marktheidenfeld • Germany  
Postfach 1355 • 97822 Marktheidenfeld  
Tel. +49 9391 20-0  
info@warema.de  
www.warema.de

**WAREMA International GmbH**

Dillberg 14  
97828 Marktheidenfeld • Germany  
Postfach 1355 • 97822 Marktheidenfeld  
Tel. +49 9391 20-0  
info@warema.com  
www.warema.com

**WAREMA Austria GmbH**

Zaunweg 6  
5071 Wals bei Salzburg • Austria  
Tel. +43 662 853015-0  
info@warema.at  
www.warema.at

**WAREMA France SARL**

96, Avenue du Général de Gaulle  
92250 La Garenne Colombes • France  
Tel. +33 1 556609-40  
info@warema.fr  
www.warema.fr

**WAREMA BeNeLux B.V.**

Schepenlaan 3  
6002 EE Weert • Netherlands  
Tel. +31 495 8701-50  
info@warema.nl  
www.warema.nl

**WAREMA Schweiz GmbH**

Stationsstraße 90  
6023 Rothenburg • Switzerland  
Tel. +41 41 553 63-00  
info@warema.ch  
www.warema.ch

**WAREMA Sun Shading Systems  
(Shanghai) Co., Ltd.**

Bldg. 1, No. 123,  
Jiu Ye Road Shanghai Qingpu Industrial  
Zone 201799 Shanghai • P.R. China  
Tel. +86 21 59869-288  
info@warema.cn  
www.warema.cn

**Beijing Office**

Room 803, Building 11  
Jianwai SOHO 39 East 3rd-Ring Road  
Chao Yang District 100022 Beijing • P.R. China  
Tel. +86 10 586942-30  
info@warema.cn  
www.warema.cn



04/2023

**WAREMA International GmbH** • Dillberg 14 • 97828 Marktheidenfeld • Germany  
[www.warema.com](http://www.warema.com) • [info@warema.com](mailto:info@warema.com)

2047921/04.2023\_en|INT